"This book is an indispensable basic manual for the real-life issues that await us in the decades to come. Those who read it, and pay attention to its treasure trove of practical wisdom, will enjoy a huge advantage as the cheap oil fiesta winds down and circumstances compel us to live differently."

—James Howard Kunstler, author of *The Long Emergency*

When Technology Fails

Matthew Stein

Foreword by Richard Heinberg

A Manual for Self-Reliance, Sustainability, and Surviving the Long Emergency

REVISED AND EXPANDED

self-reliance / sustainability / peak oil / climate change / emergency survival / supplies & preparations / energy, heat & power / low-tech medicine & healing / metalworking / utensils / engineering, machines & materials / water quality & treatment / food / shelter & buildings / first aid / clothing & textiles / low-tech chemistry

More praise for the first and revised editions of *When Technology Fails*

"A fascinating collection of concepts and skills that will satisfy everyone from the casual do-ityourself enthusiast to someone who wants to attempt self-reliance and the ultimate emergency preparedness."

—Howard Backer, MD, author of *Wilderness First Aid: Emergency Care for Wilderness Locations* and past president of the Wilderness Medical Society

"If you've been wondering about how to respond to the twin dangers of peak oil and global warming, one of your best choices would be to read this book."

—Greg Pahl, author of *The Citizen-Powered Energy Handbook: Community Solutions to a Global Crisis*

" We may all need a survival reference when technology fails. Matthew provides one—fact-filled, with useful tips on all aspects of survival, clothing, food, shelter, water, etc., including such vital subjects as grazing and the green pharmacy."

—James A. Duke, economic botanist, USDA (ret.), and author of *The Green Pharmacy*

"*When Technology Fails* is a massive project done well. First the book gives a superb presentation of WHY one should be more aware and prepared—and then HOW one should go about this. The scope of this book . . . is thorough. Not only is the information presented well, but a solid bibliography can carry the student as far as he desires in any particular area of interest."

—John McPherson, author of *Primitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills*

" Whether you are seeking self-reliance and a simpler life or fear the collapse of social services, this compendium of practical information for sustainable living belongs on your bookshelf."

—Fred Walters, Editor of *Acres U.S.A.* magazine

"*When Technology Fails* is a comprehensive guide and compendium of the tools society will require as it reaches the convergence of hyper-inflation, oil depletion, and environmental limitations; in other words, at the point where technology fails."

—William Kemp, author of *The Renewable Energy Handbook*

"Matthew Stein has written a clear, concise book on the subject of survival that, while educating, also does what few others have managed to do—entertain and engage the reader."

—John Egan, proprietor of http://SurvivalistBooks.com

" I liked this book. It's carefully researched, comprehensive, well illustrated, and readable. It presents much-needed alternate information, for, in my opinion, technology has already 'failed'. . . so replacement of polluting 'high' technologies with non-polluting 'low' ones is urgent, and Matthew Stein's handbook systematically and accurately surveys a wide array of possible low-tech options. Much hard work, time, and talent went into the building of this basic reference survey of low-tech options."

—Carla Emery, author of *The Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book*

"*When Technology Fails* is the roadmap that you want and need to navigate whatever may lie ahead."

—John L. Chunta, http://PeakOilResources.com

"Stein's excellent guide to simplifying your life, reducing your environmental impact, and pulling yourself out of a jam is sure to gather no dust on your bookshelf. . . . This book is a personal and planetary empowerment tool."

—Richard Heede, PhD, author of *Homemade Money: How to Save Energy and Dollars in Your Home*

"I have no children because I read M. King Hubbert's analyses on the future of oil and other fossil fuels in 1969 and *Limits to Growth* shortly thereafter. It was clear to me then and in every year since that our whole economy, and all of our economic principles, were based on cheap oil that would not last. The reason that economists could get away with criticizing Hubbert and LTG as well as promoting their basically absurd theories that often disregarded and even belittled natural resources was that, in fact, more oil could be pulled out of the ground to make ANY economic theory or policy work, no matter how stupid. Now that the oil spigot is sputtering, the economists' theories and policies are increasingly shown to be failures. We need a whole new way to think about how we do our economies. In the spirit of the old *Whole Earth Catalogues* Mat Stein does a marvelous and diverse job of helping us to think about how we might go about generating an approach to our economies that can make sense. This is a great book to have on your bookshelf as we enter the post-peak second half of the age of oil."

—Professor Charles A.S. Hall, SUNY College of Environmental Science and Forestry

"In this age of over-consumption, truth is lost in a myriad of commercialized details. Matthew Stein picks up and assembles these shattered shards, and by examining each in the meticulous manner of a crime scene investigator, offers valuable insight and practical tools to survive in a world at the brink of chaos. In doing so, he helps maintain sanity in a time of hardening denial about the state of the world—and helps throw open the door to Plato's Cave where so many of us remain uncomfortably shackled."

—Peter Droege, author of *The Renewable City* and *Urban Energy Transition*

"*When Technology Fails* . . . Like that's some sort of unlikely future possibility! Technology is always failing while people stand around befuddled about what to do. With Mat Stein's book, when push comes to shove, you can be your own veritable MacGyver. Not only does it provide us with the information we need to plan for, and deal with, potential emergencies and disasters, it also shows us how we can live more sustainably and self-reliantly in today's world of climate

change and gas prices that are going through the ceiling. This is the sort of ingenuity for which Americans have been famous. *When Technology Fails* is to the mechanical world what *Joy of Cooking* is to the world of cooking. In other words, the encyclopedia every home should have on hand. Keep it right next to the emergency flashlight and your Swiss Army knife."

—David Blume, permaculturist and author of *Alcohol Can Be A Gas!*

WHEN TECHNOLOGY FAILS

WHEN TECHNOLOGY FAILS

A Manual for Self-Reliance, Sustainability, and Surviving the Long Emergency

REVISED AND EXPANDED

MATTHEW STEIN

CHELSEA GREEN PUBLISHING COMPANY
White River Junction, Vermont

Copyright © 2000, 2008 by Matthew Stein. All rights reserved.

No part of this book may be transmitted or reproduced in any form by any means without permission in writing from the publisher.

Developmental Editor: Shay Totten
Project Manager: Bill Bokermann
Copy Editor: Helen Walden
Proofreader: Eric Raetz
Book Designer: Peter Holm

First printing, August 2008
Printed in the United States of America

Our Commitment to Green Publishing
Chelsea Green sees publishing as a tool for cultural change and ecological stewardship. We strive to align our book manufacturing practices with our editorial mission and to reduce the impact of our business enterprise in the environment. We print our books and catalogs on chlorine-free recycled paper, using soy-based inks whenever possible. This book may cost slightly more because we use recycled paper, and we hope you'll agree that it's worth it. Chelsea Green is a member of the Green Press Initiative (www.greenpressinitiative.org), a nonprofit coalition of publishers, manufacturers, and authors working to protect the world's endangered forests and conserve natural resources. *The revised and expanded edition of When Technology Fails* was printed on 60-lb. Joy White, a 30-percent postconsumer-waste recycled paper supplied by Thomson-Shore.

12 11 10 09 08 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Stein, Matthew R.

When technology fails : a manual for self-reliance, sustainability, and surviving the long emergency / Matthew Stein. -- Rev. and expanded.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references.

eBook ISBN: 978-1-6035-8095-3
1. Survival skills. I. Title.

GF86.S75 2008
613.6'9--dc22

2008021406

Chelsea Green Publishing Company
Post Office Box 428
White River Junction, VT 05001
(802) 295-6300
www.chelseagreen.com

This book is dedicated to my wife, Josie, whose deep insight and awesome healing abilities have been a constant source of wonder and inspiration.

Acknowledgments

It is quite a large undertaking to write a book with as large a scope as *When Technology Fails*. I would be dishonest if I said that I was an expert on all the varied topics covered by this book. I owe a debt of gratitude to the many different experts who reviewed chapters, corrected, suggested, and otherwise contributed their years of experience toward making this book a practical and useful guide for the reader.

First, I would like to thank God, my spirit guide, or whatever you may wish to call it, for the inspiration to write this book. Shortly before Thanksgiving of 1997, during my daily session of prayer and meditation, as an answer to a generic request for "guidance and inspiration," I was gifted with a detailed vision showing a pictorial outline for this book from start to finish. Ideas usually grow slowly, changing and evolving with time. This idea was completely different. From the moment that I received it, the concept and scope have remained unchanged. It is only my execution that has changed, and will continue to change, as I make additions, corrections, and improvements.

Second, I would like to thank my wonderful wife, Josie, for her editing help, clarity, suggestions, and patience putting up with me while I tackled this massive project. Her many years of experience as a gifted hypnotherapist contributed immensely to the healing chapter. Special thanks to my son Joshua, for library research and assistance, plus his firearm recommendations and expertise. To my father, Ben, who helped us financially when I wrote the first edition of *When Technology Fails*. To my sister, Jennifer Barker, who has lived a mostly self-sufficient lifestyle for the past twenty years, and helped me with advice, information, and contacts for several chapters. To Charlie Hall, Ph.D. (www.esf.edu/EFB/hall), many thanks for reviewing the second chapter in this new edition and for putting up with my numerous questions. To Howard Backer, M.D., for reviewing the water and first-aid chapters. To my Web designer, Jeremy O'Leary from Portland Peak Oil and EcoGeeks Network (www.EcoGeeks.net), thanks for your helpful suggestions, enthusiasm, and support. To Richard Heinberg, James Howard Kunstler, and Colin Campbell for your inspirational work on the issue of Peak Oil. To Rick Sylvester, whose encouragement and faith in my ability to write helped get this project going. To the late Carla Emery for her charm, friendship, wit, and the wonderful book that is a great source of information and inspiration for self-reliance. I miss you, Carla! To Thom Hartmann, Bill McKibben, Lester Brown, Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, Richard Heede, and other folks at The Worldwatch Institute and the Rocky Mountain Institute for their inspirational writings and information. To John Jeavons and the rest of the Ecology Action crew for their assistance and support.

I am very grateful for the assistance of my second edition editor, Shay Totten, plus Margo Baldwin and the rest of the crew at Chelsea Green. Much credit also goes to my first edition editor, Barbara Kohl. It takes a team to put together a book like this, and I have had a great team! Thanks to Howard Rheingold and Michael Larsen for giving me the professional encouragement and guidance to keep me going in the early stages of this project. Much credit must go to Merri Mckee (line art technical illustrations), Karen Frances (shaded drawings with people and

landscape), and Kristen Schwartz (edible plants) for contributing their artistic talents to the illustrations.

Others who contributed measurably to this project include Dave Ward, Keith Robertson, James T. West, Rick Solinsky, Brother Joseph Nuuanu, Rick Kannisto, Shelly and Phil Rodgers; Andreas Kaupert (emergency preparedness); Dan Vorhis and Howard Backer, M.D. (water); Richard Nielsen and Amigo Cantisano (food); Glen Nadar (animals); Joe Tibbets, Rick Heede, Will Beemer, Fred Webster, Ph.D., P.E., Michael Frerking, Harris Lowenhaupt, Fred Stoenner, Jim Bolton, David Easton, John Stoumen, David Sands, Jeffree Trudeau, Eric Perlman, and Joaquim Karcher (green building); Jennifer Lawler, Ingrid Naiman, Kimbal Chatfield, O.M.D., L.Ac., and James Duke, Ph.D. (herbs); Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., N.D. (naturopathy and herbs); David Edwards, M.D. (healing and homeopathy); Gary Rosen, Ph.D., and the late Dr. Vincent Marinkovich, M.D. (molds); Diane Soucy, Allison Judge, and Carrol Collins (fiber arts); Matt Richards, John McPherson, and Worth Jackson (tanning and leather); Jon Hill, Richard Perez, Windy Dankoff, Don Harris, Paul Cunningham, Chuck Marken, Glenn Rambach, Kevin Cook, Skip Goebel, Ray Darby, Zac Pierce, Mick Sagrillo, and Chris Worchester (renewable energy); Hans Standteiner, John Septien, and Stewart Marshall (metals); Pamela Vandiver, Ph.D., and Dan Martinez (ceramics). To the rest of you who contributed measurably, but whose names I neglected to list, thank you for your help and please forgive my oversight.

Table of Contents

Foreword

1 An Introduction to Self-Reliance

An Uncertain Future

Technology Failures Are Common

Why This Book?

Be Prepared

Preindustrial Self-Sufficiency

Old-Fashioned Self-Reliance and Modern Sustainable Technology

References

2 Present Trends, Possible Futures

Do the Right Thing

The Main Threats to Our Future

A Perspective on Relative Threats

The Eco-Threat

Greenhouse Gases and Global Warming

Deforestation

Systems Modeling and Systems Response

Feedback

Overshoot and Carrying Capacity

Limiting Factor and Drawdown

Collapse

Sources and Sinks

Sustainability and Limits to Growth

The World's Oceans

The Economics of Climate Change
Peak Oil
EROEI, Petroleum, and Biofuels
Facts about Oil and Other Energy Sources
The Bio-Threat
The Terrorism Threat
Other Important Trends
Water and Food
Depletion of the Ozone Layer: A Modern Eco-Success Story
Polar Ice Caps
Earthquakes and Volcanoes
Prophecies
What Can I Do?
References
Resources

3 Supplies and Preparations

Are You Prepared?
Planning for the Short Term
Short-Term Preparedness Checklist
72-Hour "Grab-and-Run" Survival Kits
First-Aid Kits
Earthquake Precautions
In the Event of an Earthquake
Long-Term Planning and Storage
Basic Supplies and Portable Equipment
Calculating a Year's Food Supply
Storage Tips
Dry Ice Fumigation
Vacuum Packaging

Mouse Traps and Rat Poisoning
Shelf-Life Guide
Notes on Camping Gear
Tents
Clothing
Sleeping Bags
Insulating Sleeping Mats
Backpacks
Stoves
Cookware
Footgear
Firearms
Planning for the Long-Term Future
References
Resources

4 Emergency Measures for Survival

Survival Strategies
Basic Strategies
Compact Survival Kit
Developing a Survivor Personality
Typical Survivor Personality Traits
Intuition: A Survivor's Powerful Ally
Water
Requirements
Recommended Emergency Measures
Dehydration
Conserving Water
Fire
Starting a Fire with Matches

Starting a Fire with Flint and Steel

Starting a Fire with Bow and Drill

Starting a Fire with a Hand Drill

Starting a Fire with a Fire Plough

Food

Basic Guidelines

Plants

Insects, Grubs, and Worms

Shelter

Location

Squirrel's Nest

Building on Fallen Trunks and Trees

Scout Pits and Coal Beds

Snow Shelters

Emergency Snow Shoes

Cordage

Recommended Plant Fibers

Fiber Test

Preparing Fibers

Spinning Fibers into Cord

Splicing

Simple Tools

Discoidal Stone Knives

Bone Tools

Surviving a Nuclear Disaster

Types of Nuclear Threats

Protecting Yourself from Direct Radiation

Protecting Yourself from Radioactive Contamination

References

Resources

5 Water

Water Requirements

Stocking Up for Emergencies

Guidelines for Coping with Disaster

The World's Water Crisis

Fossil Aquifers and Virtual Water

Water Pollution

Types of Contamination

Disinfecting Your Water

Heat Sterilization

Portable Water Filters

UV Sterilization—"SteriPEN"

Mixed Halogens—MSR's MIOX Purifier

My Water-Treatment Recommendations

Chemical Sterilization

Preserving Water

Using Silver to Preserve Water

Treating and Finding Water the Low-Tech Way

Treating Water

Finding Water

Wells

Protecting Your Water Source

Modern Water Treatment

Chlorine Treatment

Ozone Treatment

Activated Carbon Filtration

Reverse Osmosis

Distillation

References

Resources

6 Food: Growing, Foraging, Hunting, and Storing

World Population and Food Supply

Agricultural Productivity

Irrigation Gains and Losses

Genetically Engineered Foods

Soil Health and Soil Losses

Sustainable Agriculture

Permaculture

Grow Biointensive

Double-Dug, Raised Beds

Intensive Planting

Composting

Companion Planting

Whole Gardening

Seed Propagation

Pest Control

Extending the Harvest in Cold Climates

Sprouting: Your Own Minigarden on a Windowsill

The Sprouting Process

Foraging for Food

Brief Guide to Wild Edible Foods

Poisonous Plants to Avoid

Preserving and Storing Food

Root Cellars and Other Cold Storage

Drying and Smoking Food

Preserving Meat

Dairy, Tofu, and Tempeh

Making Butter

Ghee

Yogurt

Cheese

Making Rennet for Cheese

Raising Animals

Hunting and Trapping

Bow and Arrow

Traps

Skinning and Cleaning

Fishing

Angling

Catching Fish by Hand

Spearing Fish

Fishing with Net

References

Resources

7 Shelter and Buildings

Green Buildings

Green Certification and “Greenwashing”

A Survey of Various Green Building Systems: Straw Bales

In-Fill (Non-Load-Bearing) Straw Bale Construction

Load-Bearing Straw Bale Construction

Finishing Straw Bale Walls

ICF

SCIP

“Green” Concrete

Pumice-Crete

SIP

Earth-Based Building Systems

Rammed Earth

Adobe

Cob

Cast Earth

Fire-Resistant Green Building

Lessons from the 1993 Laguna Fire

Green and Fire Resistant

Bamboo as a Green Building Material

Passive Solar Design

Passive Solar "Rules of Thumb"

James Kachadorian's Patented Solar Slab

Preventing and/or Battling Mold

Health Effects of Mold

Identifying a Mold Problem

Dealing with Mold

Construction Tips for Preventing Mold

Mat's Mold Wisdom

Traditional Low-Tech Structures

Log Cabins

Timber-Frame Construction

Tipis, Yurts, Wickiups, and Wigwams

Earthquake Resistance

Improving Earthquake Resistance

References

Resources

8 First Aid

Initial Evaluation

Survey the Scene

Consent and Liability

ABCs of First Aid

Treatment Priority

Unconscious Victim

CPR

Survey for Injuries and to Control Bleeding

Pressure Points

Tourniquets

Wounds

Abrasions

Incisions

Puncture Wounds

Abdominal Wounds

Head Wounds

Chest Wounds

Choking

Heimlich Maneuver (Abdominal Thrusts)

Bandages and Dressings

Shock

Symptoms

Treatment for Shock

Fractures and Dislocations

General Guidelines for Treating Dislocations and Fractures

Special Precautions for Fractures

Reducing Dislocations

Sprains and Strains

Heat-Related Trauma

Heat Stroke

Heat Exhaustion

Bites and Stings

Animal Bites

Snakebites

Spider Bites
Tick Bites
Stings
Eyes
First Aid for a Foreign Object in the Eye
Moving Injured People
Clothing Drag for Single Rescuer
Multi-Helper "Stretcher" Rescue
One-and Two-Person Carries
Emergency Childbirth
Signs of Impending Delivery
Stages of Labor
Emergency Childbirth Supplies
Delivery
After Delivery
References

9 When High-Tech Medicine Fails

The Holistic Health Movement
The Low-Tech Medicine Cabinet
Simple, Effective Remedies and Supplements to Have on Hand
The Essence of Healing
Genetics and Cellular Growth
Body Energy
Colloidal and Ionic Silver
Making Your Own Colloidal Silver Generator
Using Your Colloidal Silver Generator
Solutions of Metallic Silver Nano-Particles
Healing with Herbs
Types of Herbal Preparations

Powerful Herbal Combinations for Better Health
Caisse's Tea (Essiac)
Jason Winters' Herbal Tea
Dr. Clark's Herbal Parasite Cleanse
Kidney Cleanse
Liver Cleanse
Detoxification
Naturopathic Healing
Fasting
Supplements and Food
Homeopathy
The Origins of Homeopathy
Homeopathic "Potencies"
Effectiveness of Homeopathy
Homeopathy Practice
Sinus Health and Molds
Health Effects of Molds and Other Fungi
Treatment for Molds and Other Fungi
Electromagnetic Fields
The Beck Protocol
Healing with Energy
A Few Useful Guidelines (No Fixed Rules)
The Power of Prayer
Hypnosis for Pain Control and Healing
Fractional Relaxation Induction
Hypnotic Suggestion
Awakening Technique
Visualization and Mind-Body Healing
General Guidelines
Visualization for Mending a Broken Bone

Egyptian Healing Visualization
Some Notes on Death and Dying
References and Resources

10 Clothing and Textiles

Fiber Arts
Preparing Fibers
Sustainable Fibers
Spinning
Weaving
Knitting and Crocheting
Furs and Skins
Brain Tanning Overview
Dealing with Furs
Bark Tanning Leather
Patterns and Custom-Tailored Clothing
Sinews
Footwear
References
Resources

11 Energy, Heat, and Power

Shifting to Renewable Energy (RE)
Why Renewable Energy?
Energy Conservation, "Negawatts," and RE
RE Systems
Net Metering
AC Versus DC
Alternatives for High-Energy-Consuming Appliances
Photovoltaics Versus Wind Versus Micro-Hydro

Batteries
Backup Generators
System Sizing
Photovoltaics
Insolation
Solar Array Sizing
Panel Orientation
Maximum Power Point Tracking
Wind Power
Wind-Energy Tips
Micro-Hydropower
Micro-Hydro Considerations
Solar Hot Water
Passive Solar "Batch" Heating
Direct Pump Solar Hot-Water Heating
Active Solar Hot Water
Solar Space Heating
Solar Water Pumping
Biofuels
Steam Energy
Fuel Cells
How Fuel Cells Work
Efficiency and Environmental Considerations
Fuel Cells in the Home
Heating with Wood
Efficient Stove Features
Energy, Power, and Electricity Primer
Energy
Power
Electricity

Proper Wire Sizing
Battery Voltage: 12 Volts, 24 Volts, or 48 Volts?
Capacitance
Inductance
References
Resources

12 Metalworking

A Brief Introduction to Metals
Casting Metal
Sand Casting
Furnace
Forging
Low-Tech Heat Treating
References
Resources

13 Utensils and Storage

Making a Simple Wooden Cup or Bowl
Basket Basics
Materials
Making a Basket
Gourds
Growing Gourds
Curing Gourds
Cleaning Gourds
Sealing Gourds
Storing Fluids in Skins and Other Animal Parts
Primitive Pottery
Clay

Pinch Pots
Coil Pottery
Slab Pottery
Throwing on the Wheel
Firing Pottery
References

14 Better Living Through Not-So-Modern Chemistry

Soap
Soapy Plants
Lye Soap
Candles
Wicking
Making Candles
Alcohol
Malt
Mash
Fermentation
Distillation
Vinegar
Natural Glues
Pitch Glue
Hide Glue
Vegetable Oils
References

15 Engineering, Machines, and Materials

Engineering
Forces and Statics
Stress and Strength (Mechanics)

Fluids
Materials
Mathematics
Trigonometry
Logarithms
Conversions
References
Resources

16 Making the Shift to Sustainability

A Poor Track Record
Proactive Success Stories
Limitations to a Free-Market Economic Policy
Tragedy of the Commons
Sustainable Communities
Sustainable Cities
Cradle to Cradle
The Natural Step
Backcasting
Ecological Footprint
Negative Population Growth
Getting a Grip on “King Coal”
Doing Your Part
Planning for the Future
The “Hundredth Monkey Phenomenon”
Plan B: Live Locally, Think Globally
Effective Action
Choose Wisely

References

Resources

Bibliography

Foreword

Technology will fail. You can count on it.

We humans have been making tools for tens of thousands of years. For a similarly long stretch of time we've been talking to ourselves and to one another, developing the other strategy that has made us so formidable as a species— languagemaking. Language helped us refine and expand our toolmaking and tool use (imagine trying to produce something as simple as a stone knife if you couldn't benefit from anyone else's experience); meanwhile, we invented a range of tools to increase our ability to communicate (writing, printing, the telephone, radio, television, computer networks, and so on). These two strategies—toolmaking and languagemaking—have together made us the most successful large-bodied animal species in planetary history.

Energy always sets the rules of the game. All animals obtain their basic biological energy through food (second-hand sunlight), and exert energy through muscles to get what they want and need. Tools helped us leverage muscle energy, and language gave us social power by enabling us to cooperatively strategize, and to diffuse our ideas over distance and time. Both enabled us to appropriate more and more biosphere functions for our own purposes. But always we remained subject to the net energy principle: it takes energy to get energy, and the net marginal profit (from hunting or gardening or farming) was limited and variable, even with the help of bows and arrows, horse collars, and plows.

During the past two centuries, fossil fuels made net energy effectively irrelevant. Suddenly we had access to energy sources produced over geologic time that we could draw down at arbitrarily high rates. The energy required to explore and drill for oil was trivial compared to the energy we could get from burning the stuff. With cheap, high-quality, concentrated fossil energy sources, we could make far more tools than ever before, including mobile ones that carried their energy supply with them. We could make tool networks. We could mechanize production processes. We could free nearly everyone from foodproducing routines for other occupations—as factory workers, managers, salespeople, accountants, computer programmers, or advertising artists.

As a result we now live in what French philosopher Jacques Ellul famously called the "technological society"—though he might equally have called it the "fossil-fuel society." It is a pattern of living so suffused with, and linked by, powered tool and information systems that we have become overwhelming as a species (we've taken over about 40 percent of the biological productivity of the planet), but utterly vulnerable as individuals. All that's necessary to cripple us is for the electricity to go out for a few days.

Indeed, the entire system has failure built into it. It is based on the ever-increasing consumption of depleting, non-renewable energy resources. As we consume the cheapest, most easily accessed of those resources and are forced down the net-energy ladder, the technological systems on which we have come to depend will inevitably shudder and give way.

That's what I mean when I say technology will fail.

But don't take my word for it. A recent issue of *New Scientist* (April 5, 2008) explored the emerging study of how and why complex societies tend to collapse, leading with an article titled,

"Why the Demise of Civilization May Be Inevitable."

Many people think of modern technology as if it were a magical, autonomous entity capable of overcoming our ancient net-energy constraints. In reality, modern technology has merely increased our exposure to collapse. We should stop assuming that just because we're smarter than the ancient Romans and Mayans, we can't be brought down by analogous system failures.

Once we begin to come to terms with all of this, what should we do?

Start by identifying tools that are not dependent on the systems most likely to fail. In other words, find tools you can rely on that don't require fossil fuels or an operating electricity grid system.

Re-learn the skills that enabled our ancestors to thrive without fossil fuels. Get in touch with others who are similarly interested in surviving collapse, and work with them to create community resilience.

Not all of the tools and skills that are likely to be helpful to us are ancient. A good solar cooker, for example, can enable us to heat food cheaply and conveniently without natural gas or electricity—and the solar cookers available today are far more effective than anything that might have been used by tribal peoples in ages past. In other instances, though, we are likely to find ourselves treading well-worn paths, developing ever more respect for how people in traditional societies intelligently solved life's persistent problems.

For the most part, simpler technologies are likely to be less environmentally ruinous than the high-powered tool systems on which we have come to rely. Thus any effort we make to return to more reliable and resilient tools will also constitute a giant step toward sustainability and environmentally responsible self-sufficiency.

Clearly, information resources will be enormously helpful in our learning (or re-learning) process. That's where this book comes in.

When I saw the first edition of *When Technology Fails* in 2000, I was impressed. Here was a comprehensive review of the tools and skills—and the literature—anyone would need in order to get by as technological society hit the skids.

Now, Matthew Stein has updated his classic text, adding a new chapter on proactive actions for making the shift toward sustainability (both personal and global), and updating all the existing chapters with the latest information, including resource guides. The first edition was written before 9/11, when the term "Peak Oil" was relatively unknown and "global warming" was still considered a fringe topic. A lot has changed in the world since then.

A single book can't do everything. There is just too much we need to know. Moreover, many skills need to be learned directly from a teacher (you might be able to learn to operate a fire drill on the basis of diagrams, but for me it took personal interaction with someone who was already good at using one). Nevertheless, *When Technology Fails* succeeds at just about everything we could realistically hope one book might do to inform us ahead of when technology does falter.

Will technology warn us before it fails? It seems to me that it is doing so now. The price of oil is setting new records almost daily. Electricity grids are straining and buckling in countries around the world. Food prices are skyrocketing and food riots are erupting. All you have to do is turn on your computer and surf the Internet for a few minutes and technology will reveal to you all you need to know about how vulnerable technology is making us.

Get ready. Read this book and follow its suggestions for skills development and further

research. Adjust your own oxygen mask before helping others.

RICHARD HEINBERG

1

An Introduction to Self-Reliance

Do Your Best to Change the World
Do Your Best to Be Ready for the Changes in The World

Is it not already too late if one waits until one is thirsty to begin digging a well?

—Chinese proverb

The devastation of New Orleans, combined with the escalating rash of wildfires in the western states, alternating floods and droughts in the eastern half of the United States, and severe weather events around the world, brings home the fact that ***climate change and ecological collapse are bad for business and people's lives***. The events of 9/11, the war without end in Iraq, increasing international instabilities caused by global warming, and the fact that our thirst for Middle Eastern oil puts us on a collision course with violent radical Islamist fundamentalists— all are contributing to widespread feelings of malaise and uncertainty. How many of us long for the days when the dot-coms were booming, oil prices were at a 30-year low (when inflation is factored in), the numbers 9-1-1 meant only an emergency call for help, the Weather Channel still claimed that it was "accurate and dependable," and the Arab-Israeli conflict appeared to be on the verge of peaceful resolution?

Whether we are ready or not, life as we know it has changed since *When Technology Fails* was first released, and it will continue to change radically in the coming decades. I doubt that we will see technology fail completely, but I am certain that we will see numerous environmental and political instabilities that will generate disruptions in the flow of electricity, goods, and essential services to huge numbers of people, and that the United States will not be spared from societal disruptions on a global scale. The question to ask yourself is, "What can I do to be ready for these changes, and how can I best serve my friends, family, country, and the world during these challenging times?"

When Technology Fails provides something for everyone, from folks who just want to help their families when disaster strikes, to the go-it-alone survivalist, to the ecominded person who wishes to tread more lightly on the Earth, whatever the future may hold. Hurricane Katrina, the Indian Ocean tsunami, and 9/11 really bring it home. How many of us are prepared for disruptions of this magnitude? How will you cope if the water stops flowing out of your tap, or if gasoline and electricity are unavailable? If the doctors and hospitals are overloaded, can you deal

with common medical emergencies? How can we do our part to live in a more sustainable way and to help minimize humankind's negative impact on this planet? Can we collectively band together to build a viable future for our children by changing the way our world does business, making sustainable business practices the top priority and, in doing so, avert global collapse?

AN UNCERTAIN FUTURE

When I was a kid, gasoline pumps and cash registers had hand cranks to dispense gas and receive cash when the power went out. Not so anymore. Modern advances in electronics, coupled with years of a reliably consistent supply of electricity, have turned most appliances and machines into sleek microprocessor-controlled wonders of high technology that stand mute and motionless when the power goes out. Without electricity, our air conditioners, credit card machines, gasoline pumps, elevators, water heaters, refrigerators, computers, electric lights, and cash registers cease to function. A few hours after the power goes out, most long-distance automotive traffic runs out of gas and grinds to a halt. In the event of a prolonged power failure, our gas and water utilities will also fail.

> In the summer of 1996, a major power outage blacked out several western states for most of one day. Linda and Dave, my brother and sisterin-law, were driving down California's Central Valley on that particular day and remember it well. The heat was a blistering 115°F. It was the kind of day that melts asphalt and could fry an egg in the sun. When their gas tank reached empty, they reluctantly joined long lines of sweltering motorists waiting at the pumps for the power to come back on. They waited for 5 long hours in overwhelming heat before they were able to buy gas and a cold drink.

What caused this multistate blackout? Was it some terrorist act? Was it a calamitous act of nature? No, it was caused by sagging power lines on a particularly hot summer day in Oregon (CNN News 1996). In the sweltering heat, the lines stretched and expanded, sagging into improperly pruned trees. Because of extremely high demand for electricity from millions of air conditioners, each time the utilities tried to restart the West Coast's electrical power grid, it overloaded somewhere and shut down again. This is one isolated example of the fragility of the complex, centralized systems that almost all of us rely on for our daily food, fuel, and commerce.

If a few insufficiently trimmed tree branches on a hot day can take down the grid across the western states, it is not hard to imagine the devastating effects of a well-coordinated terrorist act or a large scale mega-earthquake, like the 250-mile-long (400-km) fracture zone that generated the Indian Ocean tsunami of 2004. Years after Hurricane Katrina devastated New Orleans, many thousands of Katrina survivors continue to struggle with shattered lives and dead-end existences, living in government-supplied trailers parked in remote fields, often many miles from the nearest job that pays a decent wage.

Disasters can range from small, localized events, where outside supplies and medical assistance are on hand within a matter of hours to a few days, all the way up to global

pandemics, wars, or multinational economic meltdowns that could severely impair the world's global economy. In spite of the fact that when Hurricane Katrina struck, most of the United States was unaffected and was able to absorb and assist many thousands of the storm victims, the shear magnitude of the event, combined with poorly coordinated relief efforts, meant that many victims did not receive food and potable water for 5 days or more.

When a magnitude 7.2 earthquake struck Kobe, Japan, on January 17, 1995, most of that city's roads and infrastructure were in shambles, and the local disaster relief services were totally overwhelmed. The slow response of Japan's central government, coupled with the fact that 40 percent of the city's employees were among the quake victims, meant that it took several days before most of Kobe's quake survivors received emergency medical relief, food, and water (Tierney and Goltz 1997).

> Complaining of a slow government response to the crisis, many survivors fled on foot and in cars, clogging secondary roads connecting Kobe with nearby Osaka. Hundreds of thousands of others packed into evacuation centers to escape the winter chill, the strain of their ordeal clearly showing. Outside one such center, a school gymnasium, an elderly man stood wrapped in a blanket, tears running down his cheeks. "This is like after the Second World War," he said. "We suffered so much. I am too old to suffer the same fate once again."
> **—*Maclean's*, January 30, 1995**

TECHNOLOGY FAILURES ARE COMMON

Technology fails us on a regular basis, but usually the failures are small and insignificant so we take little notice. When a technological failure affects our health, safety, comfort, sustenance, and commerce, it gets our attention. During a heat wave in July 2006, power to New York City's LaGuardia Airport and subways was knocked out when 10 of the 22 Queens District's main power feed lines failed during a thunderstorm that had flooded underground manholes housing the lines. In an effort to quickly restore electrical service to the 400,000 people relying on this system, power was diverted through numerous smaller lines, causing hundreds of underground cables to burn up, leaving more than 100,000 people without power for nearly 2 weeks. For most of these customers, all the food in their refrigerators spoiled, and they suffered in almost unbearable heat. Many left town or stayed with friends, but not everyone had that luxury. Thousands of elderly and handicapped people were trapped in their high-rise apartments, physically incapable of climbing the many flights of stairs to and from their apartments while their elevators sat motionless.

In the past decade, there have been several other huge power outages that affected many millions of people, though not lasting as long as the Queens blackout of 2006. In September 2003, a tree felled by storms severed a main power line that supplied electricity from Switzerland to Italy. The sudden increase in demand caused a failure in several other major power lines coming from both France and Switzerland, causing a cascading power failure that blacked out the entire country of Italy, except for the island of Sardinia. It took 9 hours to restore power to most of the 56 million Italians and Swiss affected by this blackout, and as much as 2 days to restore power to about 5 percent of the population (CNN News, September 2003).

In the middle of the afternoon, on a hot summer day in August 2003, sagging power lines in Ohio shorted against improperly pruned tree limbs, resulting in a cascading power failure that caused 256 power plants to shut down, affecting 10 million people in Ontario (approximately one-third the population of Canada) and 40 million people in eight U.S. states. It took nearly 2 days to restore power to New York City and Toronto and several days before the grids in both Canada and the United States were fully operational. The massive effects of this blackout included a shutdown of major TV networks; the failure of most local cell phone networks; the closing of numerous airports, subways, and railways; the loss of water pressure in several major city water districts resulting in "boil orders"; raw sewage spills into rivers and lakes caused by sewage pump failures; massive gridlock due to lack of traffic lights; traffic jams caused by disabled cars that had run out of gas (the gas pumps were blacked out too); and several backup generator failures at Verizon resulting in significant periods without 911 emergency telephone services (CNN News, August 2003; Sillin 2003).

Coming on the heels of the driest winter since record keeping began 130 years ago (25 percent of normal rainfall), southern California had one of its worst fire seasons ever in the summer and fall of 2007. When hot "Santa Ana" winds fanned the flames on dozens of wildfires from San Diego to Santa Barbara, no amount of technology could stop the fires. It wasn't until days later, after the high winds had finally subsided and more than 1,500 homes had been destroyed, that the flames were finally put out.

Earlier that same year, and close enough to my own home that I could see the smoke rising over the ridge behind my house, a failure of technology was partially responsible for the spread of the fire that left hundreds of South Shore residents homeless. When a group of golfers spotted a large column of smoke rising from the hills above South Lake Tahoe, they called 911 on their cell phones. The call was routed to Truckee, California, about 40 miles away, where dispatchers mistakenly told them that the smoke was from a "controlled burn" and that they should not be alarmed. Others called 911 to report the fire, but were told the same story. Precious minutes were lost as high winds fanned the blaze, transforming it from a small, controllable fire into a large out-of-control conflagration. Eventually, after repeated calls, one of the golfers was able persuade the 911 operators that this was not a small, controlled burn (it turned out there were no controlled burns in the region due to the high fire danger) and the 911 call was finally routed to the fire department, but by this time it was too late. This tragic fire could have been extinguished quickly if the 911 call had been routed locally instead of to a community 40 miles away.

One hundred years ago, most small communities in this country had all the low-technology resources necessary to grow, hunt, or fabricate what they needed to live comfortably. Today, our high-tech society is based on a pyramid of very specialized, yet extremely interdependent, industries and technologies. Most of this country's once mighty factories and heavy industry have been replaced by new facilities located in distant countries where the labor rates are a fraction of what they are in the United States. How will we cope if the ships that carry our goods from places like China and Malaysia stop coming? If our current system of global commerce were to collapse for some reason (climate change, an oil supply crisis, acts of terrorism, war, etc.), it would take years, and an effort similar to the rebuilding of Europe after World War II, to retool and rebuild America's oncemighty heavy industries.

Technology is a highly interdependent web. For example, on July 17, 2007, a 6.8 magnitude earthquake in Kashiwazaki, Japan, damaged the world's largest nuclear reactor, causing it to be

shut down for an extended period of time. The shutdown resulted in widespread power shortages and electricity rationing, affecting thousands of Japanese industries. Extending far beyond those industrial plants that were directly damaged by the quake or experiencing reduced hours of operation due to power rationing, production levels were adversely affected across Japan, where most industries, including Toyota Motors, rely heavily on just-in-time product deliveries to maintain normal production.

Imagine that you and five or six of your friends were transported to a remote location deep in the heart of a vast wilderness. How much of our technology do you think you could collectively reproduce without outside assistance or access to modern tools? If a couple of key cornerstones of our society—such as gasoline and electricity—were knocked out, wouldn't most of us stumble back into the Stone Age?

The long-term future of our food supply is increasingly in question. The destruction of native plant cover, monocropping, and sod-busting practices of tilling soil exacerbated the effects of an extended drought to create the Dust Bowl catastrophe of the 1930s, which resulted in the destruction of millions of acres of farmland. Many scientists anticipate that global climate changes in the next few decades will similarly cause a major reduction in food production and useable farm acreage across much of the grain-growing farmlands of the United States, China, and India. Modern, chemical-intensive farming continues to deplete the nation's farmlands of topsoil and nutrients. A third of the original topsoil in the continental United States is gone, and most of the rest is significantly depleted of nutrients and degraded by pesticides and chemical fertilizers.

Most people agree that our weather patterns seem more erratic now than at any other time in recent history, and the scientific data appear to back this up. Since record keeping began in 1880, 2005 was the warmest year on record, and the ten warmest years on record all occurred since 1990 (Goddard 2007). Some scientists believe that this is the warmest the planet has been in 10,000 years, since our civilization began, and is within one degree Celsius of the highest planetary temperatures in 1 million years.

Not only was 2005 the single hottest year on record, but also three of the ten strongest Atlantic hurricanes ever recorded occurred in 2005 (Worldwatch Institute, *Vital Signs 2006–2007*). At its strongest, Hurricane Katrina was a massive category 5 hurricane with maximum winds of 175 miles per hour (mph). By the time it made landfall in Louisiana, its winds had subsided, and it was downgraded from one of the strongest category 5 storms in history to a category 3 hurricane with sustained winds of 125 mph. Its massive size, combined with its direct hit on New Orleans, caused enough damage to vault it past 1992's Hurricane Andrew as the most expensive natural disaster in U.S. history. In 1998, when Hurricane Mitch stalled over Central America for almost a week, it killed more than 22,000 people and left more than three million people homeless. When you look at insurance company records, it becomes very clear that extreme weather events are happening at an accelerating rate and with increasing severity. Munich Re has published a list of 43 weather-related natural disasters with insured loses of at least a billion dollars. During the 1980s, there were only three of these events. During the 1990s, there were 26 "mega-weather" events and, in just the first 4 years of this decade, prior to the record-breaking year of 2005, there were already 17 mega-weather events. According to Andrew Dlugolecki, a senior officer at the United Kingdom's largest insurance company, if damage from severe weather events continues to grow at the recent rate of 10 percent per year, it will exceed the gross world product by the

year 2065 (Brown 2006, 76–77). There is a very real concern that if global climate change goes unchecked, the results will bankrupt the world's governments and cause untold suffering across the planet.

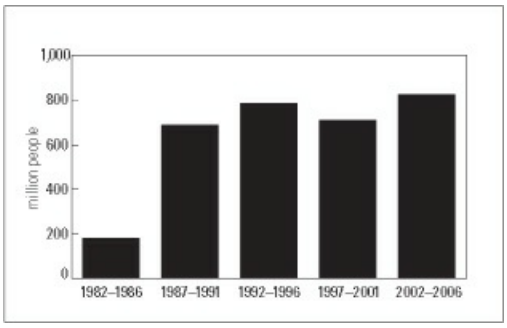


Figure 1-1. The average number of people affected annually by weather-related disasters. (Source: Worldwatch Institute, *Vital Signs 2006–2007*)

WHY THIS BOOK?

> The future belongs to those who prepare for it.
> **—Ralph Waldo Emerson**

With all these future uncertainties, issues, and problems competing for our attention, it is easy to become confused and paralyzed into inaction. A bit of education and preparation can go a long way toward reducing one's personal sense of fear and helplessness. *When Technology Fails* can help you plan and prepare for the possibility of short-term or long-term disruptions in the flow of the goods and essential services that we have become so dependent upon. If you are caught in a natural or human-made disaster, this guide will provide you with basic survival information to help you cope with whatever may come your way.

When Technology Fails is more than just a guide for personal survival—it is also a guide to sustainable technologies and a tool for spreading the awareness of sustainable options. We are living in a finite world with growing populations whose expanding appetites for consuming the world's resources are threatening the quality and stability of life on Earth. The longer we continue to consume global resources at our current rate, the more devastating will be the damage to the natural systems that support life, as we know it, on our planet. The traditional "business-as-usual" goal of endlessly increasing consumption has already taken a severe toll on our planet's major ecosystems and is beginning to reap frightening results, such as global warming, severe weather, crop failures, failed fisheries, and epidemics of modern diseases like AIDS, hepatitis, and cancer. Current rates of consumption are destroying our forests, the atmosphere, and the oceans and are simply not sustainable. According to a recent German study of the world's global oil refinery output (Seager 2007), the world's supply of oil has already peaked in 2006 and is now declining at a much more rapid rate than most experts had previously predicted. In a world fueled and fed by oil that runs our farms, industry, and transportation, this is very bad news indeed. Our only hope for building a positive future for our children lies in controlling population growth, combined with shifting to sustainable technologies and business

models. Whether you simply wish to weather the storms of short-term emergencies and disruptions, or are concerned about long-term societal conditions and creating a sustainable way of life, this book can help you plan and prepare for the future.

BE PREPARED

> New Orleanians learn they have to help themselves rebuild after the worst disaster to shatter their world. Today, two years after their world got turned upside down, New Orleans is Bootstrap City. And Pilltown. **—Harry Shearer, *San Francisco Chronicle,* August 26, 2007**

How well will you fare when a real disaster strikes—like a major hurricane, flood, long-term grid failure, or severe earthquake? I suggest that you use this book to proactively plan for, and deal with, the coming challenges that we will all face in the first part of this century. Between global warming, terrorism, Peak Oil, ecosystem collapse, and the threat of emerging viruses and antibiotic-resistant bacteria, there are plenty of reasons to be concerned about our future. I am not suggesting that we all become survivalists, but I also don't suggest that you stick your head in the sand and pretend that these threats will simply disappear.

Most of us buy car insurance even though we don't plan on being in a car accident. We hope we will never be in a wreck, but if we are involved in an accident, we are grateful that we are covered by insurance. **Emergency preparedness is cheap disaster and terrorism insurance.** It can give you peace of mind to know that you have planned and prepared for a variety of potential crises and emergency situations.

This book can help you create a disaster preparedness plan and purchase supplies for the level of preparedness you feel is necessary. Perhaps you currently feel the need to plan for emergency situations lasting a few days to a week. At some future date, if the world's political or ecological health takes a more drastic dive, you may decide it is time to dust off your copy of *When Technology Fails* and use it to generate a list for purchasing the necessary materials for weathering a long-term lapse in access to essential goods and services. Someday you may thank God that you have a copy of this book in your possession.

Perhaps you are simply seeking to change your lifestyle in order to become more self-sufficient. Do you wish to build an energy-efficient home, grow your own food, or live independently from the electric power distribution grid? In this case, *When Technology Fails* can provide you with information to help you plan your lifestyle change and guide you to the best resources for accomplishing your goals.

In addition to providing basic practical "how-to" instructions and guidance on a wide variety of subjects, each chapter of *When Technology Fails* ends in a resource guide to the best books for further study and to sources for purchasing recommended materials. I encourage you to use these reference guides to add to your library of resources for personal and planetary survival and selfsufficiency.

Some will want to read this book from cover to cover, but others will focus on a few chapters of primary interest. For those of you who bought this book "just in case," I encourage you to skim the entire book to familiarize yourself with the topics and issues it covers. You may find

yourself drawn to chapters that you initially thought would be of little interest. If you purchased this book to prepare yourself for possible emergencies, you should thoroughly read Chapter 3, *"* Supplies and Preparations." At a minimum, I recommend that you follow the guidelines for short-term planning and preparation. I also urge you to read Chapter 2, "Present Trends, Possible Futures*.* " It will give you a realistic view of current trends and help you decide which preparations and lifestyle changes make the most sense to pursue.

I recommend that all readers familiarize themselves with the principles of first aid (see Chapter 8) and get proper first aid and CPR training. If you are suffering from significant health problems or have an interest in alternative healing, you should read Chapter 9, *"*When High-Tech Medicine Fails." This chapter contains a good deal of valuable, practical information on medicinal herbs, alternative medicines, and low-tech healing methods that can boost health in general and may be invaluable in treating various medical conditions that are not responding well to Western medicine, such as viruses, cancer, antibiotic-resistant infections, and chronic conditions.

If you bought this book for short-term survival skills and emergency preparations, the chapters on planning, survival, water, food, and shelter will be the most valuable. If you are concerned with longer-term self-sufficiency and independence from the power grid, all chapters will be of interest. If you find yourself subject to a long-term breakdown in central services, your ability to forage, hunt, and/or grow food will be critical to your success. If you simply want to live a more self-sufficient, planetfriendly lifestyle, the chapters on food, healing, shelter, energy, and creating or joining sustainable communities will probably interest you most.

PREINDUSTRIAL SELF-SUFFICIENCY

For at least 100,000 years, tribal cultures have existed across the planet, living in sustainable harmony with nature. As recently as the 1800s, tribes populated half the Earth, but now comprise only 1 to 2 percent of the world's population. Contrary to popular opinion, studies of a number of tribes, such as the Shoshone culture and the !Kung and Hotentots of Africa, indicate that members of many "primitive" tribes spend an average of only 2 to 4 hours a day attending to gathering food and other necessities of life. The rest of their time is devoted to family, arts, music, and other leisure activities. Few of us in the Western world could claim similar amounts of leisure time. Another common fallacy is that of poor health and short life span among hunter-gatherers. Anthropologist Mark Nathan Cohen, in his book *Health and the Rise of Civilization*, points out that the life spans of agricultural peoples have exceeded those of hunter-gatherers and foragers only during the last 100 years (Cohen 1989, 135). Apparently, most of this gain has been since the introduction of sulfa drugs, penicillin, and other modern antibiotics. Prior to the advent of modern medicine, archaeological records indicate that hunter-gatherers averaged 5 to 6 inches taller, had more teeth left at the time of death, and lived longer than agricultural peoples.

> The older people used to say that the trees, the rocks, the birds, and the animals used to talk. They had a voice, and today, as I realize it, they still have a voice. My People always say that you have to take care of them in order for you to continue on. If you don't, when they die off, you are going to die off with them.
> **—Corbin Harney, spiritual leader of the Western Shoshone Nation, *The Way***

It Is

Admittedly, most of us would not willingly give up our modern conveniences for a return to the huntergatherer lifestyle of our ancestors. However, if we were to find ourselves in a survival situation, some of their skills could help us to survive and perhaps live comfortably until such time as things returned to normal. During the past 30 years, there has been a resurgence of interest in traditional tribal skills such as techniques for starting a fire, making stone knives, tanning animal hides, and fabricating utensils, shelters, and crude twine and ropes from foraged plant fibers. There is a sense of trying to recover something important, something valuable that has been lost.

For more instruction and information on primitive skills, which could make a huge difference in a survival situation, see Chapter 4, "Emergency Measures for Survival."

OLD-FASHIONED SELF-RELIANCE AND MODERN SUSTAINABLE TECHNOLOGY

Since before the days of the American Revolution, Americans have admired the ideals of ingenuity, independence, and self-reliance. Much as we admire those ideals, however, most of us have lost our ability to live a truly independent life. Somewhere between the home mortgage, the supermarket, the cost of medical care, the corporate work week, and the video store, the American ideal of rugged individuality has slipped through our fingers. We sense there was a simpler, yet more satisfying lifestyle in the days of our ancestors. How many of us, after working hard year after year, feel that we have little to show for our work? Or perhaps we have prospered materially, yet still feel that our lives lack deep, inner satisfaction or meaning.

My grandmother grew up on a mini-farm in the small town of Chelmsford, Massachusetts. At that time, over half of all Americans lived on farms, but now only 1 percent of the population is engaged in growing food. When Grandma was a little girl in the 1890s, the family's small farm and other small businesses in her community provided practically everything that was needed to lead a reasonably comfortable life. The miller ground the grain, the cobbler made shoes, the tailor made fine clothes. Things like glassware and windows, iron for the blacksmith, plumbing components, and cloth to sew into dresses came from large industrial factories and mills, but almost everything else was made or grown locally. Once every month or two, the family took a trip to Boston to enjoy the city and to purchase supplies that were not available in their small town. Even though Boston is only 30 miles from Chelmsford, in those days it was a 2-day round trip by horse cart. When I was a child, my grandmother drove about a mile to purchase fresh eggs, vegetables, and butter from local farms. Now those small farms have been

replaced by endless subdivisions that are part of the giant suburban sprawl on the outskirts of Boston.

In the event of a breakdown in the centralized systems that we rely on for our daily needs and comforts, a working knowledge of our ancestors' technologies will go a long way toward helping us to live a comfortable life. Unfortunately, many of the simple technologies of the pioneers are no longer sustainable with today's global population of nearly 7 billion people.

A typical pioneering family might have cut down 30 cords of wood to burn in fireplaces for heating their home during the long, hard New England winters. A single cord is a considerable amount of wood, measuring a stack 4 feet wide by 4 feet tall by 8 feet long. Is it any wonder that the American pioneers cleared practically all the accessible old-growth forests in the eastern United States? Recent design improvements have created cleanburning wood stoves, which heat very efficiently and leave no visible smoke once the stove is warmed up to operating temperatures. These EPA-rated stoves can heat a modern, reasonably well-insulated, 2,000-square-foot New England home for the year on only a few cords of wood. A super-insulated home with a passive solar collection system can make it through a Colorado or Montana winter on the heat given off by the hot water heater, body heat, and light bulbs, with just a little help from a wood stove on consecutive cloudy days.

The best of modern technology combined with oldfashioned self-reliance can provide a comfortable and sustainable lifestyle. Neither the agricultural practices of the 1800s nor today's modern factory farms are sustainable. The good news is that advances in organic and biointensive farming offer sustainable alternatives to chemical-intensive farming that can actually increase productivity while rebuilding depleted soils. Unfortunately, agribusiness continues to deplete the topsoil and pollute the environment. As consumers, we can do our part by supporting organic farming and other planet-friendly practices.

> Standard U.S. agricultural practice today requires at least 45,000 square feet of land to feed a person on a high meat diet, or about 10,000 for a vegetarian. . . . However, biointensive gardening can provide for a vegetarian's entire diet, plus the compost crops needed to sustain the system indefinitely, on only 2,000 to 4,000 square feet, even starting with low quality land. . . . This works so well that biointensive agriculture is being practiced in 107 countries worldwide. **—Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, and L. Hunter Lovins,** ***Natural Capitalism***

REFERENCES

Even if you have no current plans to buy land and move to the country, you might want to pick up some of the following references. If your supply of food and modern goods were disrupted for an extended period of time, the skills found in the following books could be extremely useful.

Books

***e Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book,* by Carla Emery.** 2008, 928 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1570615535. Published by Sasquatch Books, 615 Second Ave., Seattle, WA 98104. List price $29.95

With more than 850 pages packed full of useful, practical information, this is the premier reference for making the move from the city to the country. If you wish to start growing and preserving your own food, raising your own livestock, and living a simpler, more self-sufficient life, there is no better book to start with than this. It will also be useful if you are contemplating a less radical change, such as planting a vegetable garden in your backyard. Carla and her husband Mike moved to the country during the "back to nature" movement in the 1960s. Like many other transplanted city folk, Carla found the transition difficult and genuine practical "howto" information lacking. She drew heavily on the guidance, wisdom, and experience of several old-timers. When one of her beloved old-timer friends died, she realized how important it was to record their wisdom and experience before it disappeared forever. This massive undertaking is a true labor of love, spanning 30 years and nine revised editions. Carla died recently, and I miss her.

***e Self-Sufficient Life and How to Live It: The Complete Back-To-Basics Guide,* by John Seymour.** 2003, 312 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0789493323. Published by DK Publishing, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 98104. List price $30.00

This is an excellent, beautifully illustrated guide to living the self-sufficient life. Written by a man who has lived and taught self-sufficiency for over 40 years, this book provides basic instructions and information on a wide variety of subjects including animal husbandry, gardening, canning, cheese making, butchering, bee keeping, wine making, spinning, weaving, and so on. It is a good companion to Carla Emery's book and the various Storey "how-to" books. Gives a great start to anyone interested in building a home in the country and becoming more self-sufficient.

***orey's Basic Country Skills: A Practical Guide to Self-Reliance,* by John and Martha Storey.** 1999, 564 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580172028. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $24.95

Nearly 200 authors, experts in their fields, contributed to this massive book. It covers a wide variety of skills that contribute to creating and maintaining a self-sufficient life. Like John Seymour's book, it offers basic "how-to" instruction on a wide variety of topics. This is a fine, valuable overall reference, but for specific topics that you wish to go into greater depth, look to some of the other books that are recommended in later chapters of *When Technology Fails*.

***e Foxfire Books: Hog Dressing, Log Cabin Building, Mountain Crafts and Foods, Planting by the Signs, Snake Lore, Hunting Tales, Faith Healing, Moonshining,* edited by Eliot Wigginton.** 1972, 384 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0385073530. An Anchor Book, Published by

Doubleday Division of Bantam Doubleday Publishing Group, Inc., 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $16.95

In the late 1960s, Eliot Wigginton and his students created the *Foxfire* magazine to record and preserve the traditional folk culture, crafts, and skills of the southern Appalachian mountain people. *Foxfire 1*, the first compilation of articles from the magazine, was so popular that it eventually expanded into a series of 13 books. Very entertaining and informative, these books record traditional self-sufficient living skills and folklore. I recommend that you pick up at least the first book plus *Foxfire 2*. Some folks buy the entire series.

***Community Guide to Environmental Health,* by Jeff Conant and Pam Fadem.** 2008, 617 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0942364569. Published by Hesperian, 1919 Addison St., #304, Berkeley, CA 94704. List price $28.00

Produced by the same people who publish *Where There Is No Doctor*, this is an excellent, well-illustrated guide for healthy, self-reliant living at a low-tech village level. It covers the gamut from dealing with toxic contamination from local mines or other industries, to village sewage sanitation for protecting the local water supply, to village health care, sustainable agriculture, pesticide and heavy-metal issues, community renewable energy, community water systems, etc. A terrific resource guide for villages all over the world, especially those where corporate logging, mining, or manufacturing interests have had a negative impact on the health and welfare of the community.

Magazines

The following magazines are devoted to the pursuit of selfsufficiency and lifestyles that express cooperation with the Earth. They contain excellent "howto" and "how I did it" articles on a wide range of topics, including a multitude of gardening techniques and information on animal husbandry, food storage and preparation, alternative energy methods, self-medication, and healing. Each magazine also contains numerous advertisements for the latest products (and catalogs) to assist you in your self-reliance efforts.

ıck Home Magazine. Subscription: $21.97 per year for 6 issues. Back Home Magazine, P.O. Box 70, Hendersonville, NC 28793. Call (800) 992-2546 or see their Web site at www.backhomemagazine.com.

After *The Mother Earth News* was sold and moved to the city, the magazine's original staff founded *Back Home* magazine. This is a fine magazine, devoted to self-reliance, sustainable living, and ecology. Both the homesteader and the suburban dweller with a backyard garden can enjoy this magazine.

ıckwoods Home. Subscription: $24.95 per year for 6 issues. Backwoods Home Magazine, P.O. Box 712, Gold Beach, OR 97444. Call (800) 835-2418 or see their Web site at www.backwoodshome.com.

My sister has lived "off the grid" in remote mountainous locations for nearly 30 years, and this magazine is her personal favorite. It offers numerous practical articles, with the focus on

homesteading and selfreliance. The editorial staff 's strong libertarian political view and survivalist leanings might be difficult for some folks to handle.

ountryside and Small Stock Journal. Subscription: $18 per year for 6 issues. Countryside Publications, 145 Industrial Dr., Medford, WI 54451. Call (715) 785-7979 or see their Web site at www.countrysidemag.com.

User-submitted articles on all aspects of self-reliant country living, since 1917. The focus is on the serious homesteader.

e Mother Earth News. Subscription: $19.95 per year for 6 issues. The Mother Earth News, 1503 SW 42nd St., Topeka, KS 66609. Call (800) 234-3368 or see their Web site at www.motherearthnews.com.

A bit more citified than the other magazines. Urban or suburban dwellers might find this magazine more to their liking. It gives eco-news from around the world, and practical information on sustainable living, renewable energy, self-reliance, and so on.

Tools for Self-Reliance

Lehman's. A major supplier of goods for simple living, this is a terrific source for thousands of useful hand tools, well pumps, books, stoves, old-fashioned kitchen aids, and such, for off-grid and self-reliant living. For $3, they also sell a source list for hard-tofind items, such as Amish buggies, antique stove parts, and horse-drawn farm equipment. Lehman's, P.O. Box 41, Kidron, OH 44636; phone: (877) 438-5346; Web site: www.lehmans.com.

Cumberland General Store. Many old-time useful items, including a fine selection of hand pumps and well accessories, farming tools, beekeeping supplies, kitchen utensils, and so on. For a catalog, phone (800) 334-4640, or send $5 to: Cumberland General Store, P.O. Box 4468, Alpharetta, GA 30023. Web site: www.cumberlandgeneral.com.

2

Present Trends, Possible Futures

> Survival in the recent past does not predict survival in an unprecedented future. To realize this, all you have to do is look at the thousands of species that survived throughout history only to be exterminated in this century. To predict what's needed for the future, we can't just consider the past—we must look to the future.
>
> **—Thom Hartmann, from *The Last Hours of Ancient Sunlight***

DO THE RIGHT THING

Most of us just want to "do the right thing" for ourselves, our friends, and our families, but what is this "right thing"?

First, we must educate ourselves**—knowledge *is* power**—about where our world is headed, so that we have a realistic view of the challenges facing the world in the next few years and the following decades. This chapter will give you a summary of world trends to help you realistically design a course for your own future. It will also help you to recognize signs of imminent world-altering shifts in climate, environment, and/or economics, so you can react quickly and appropriately.

Second, we can do our best to be proactively prepared for life on a changing planet as the business, social, and ecological climates of our world become increasingly unstable. The rapidly escalating prices of gas and oil, which we saw in the wake of Hurricane Katrina and again in 2007, were simply a preview of an endless stream of price escalations that are ramping up now that the world's oil production approaches, and has possibly already passed, its peak ("Peak Oil") and is starting its natural and inevitable decline. Unless our scientists are able to develop a new "miracle" as-yet-undiscovered technology to bail us out (as an MIT engineer, I would not bet on it), our society will soon grapple with an accelerating pace of global climate changes combined with an unending energy crisis. How will the world's economy fare as the rock on which it is built (cheap oil to fuel rapid global industrial expansion and modern methods of food production) begins to crumble? The author James Howard Kunstler aptly coined the term *the long emergency* to describe the general state of the world in the twenty-first century as an expanding and increasingly industrialized population collides with the debilitating effects of global climate change, a decline in world oil production, a decline in global food production, and crashing ecosystems.

Third, once we have a realistic understanding of where our world is headed, we stand a chance of electing the right officials and pushing our governments to make the difficult decisions and policy changes that may help us to avoid global collapse.

THE MAIN THREATS TO OUR FUTURE

As I see it, the four main threats to a stable American and world future are:

- **The eco-threat:** Global warming and other climate changes (superstorms, etc.) coupled with impending major ecosystem collapse are the basis for the *eco-threat*. You don't have to be a scientist to know that our weather is changing. Collapsing fisheries, falling water tables, and an increase in both the number and severity of floods and droughts are making it increasingly difficult to maintain the global food production that is needed to feed today's population of nearly 7 billion people, much less the world's projected population of 9 billion by the year 2050. When you consider that a single degree Fahrenheit of global warming so far has contributed to the changes in weather that we are now seeing (for example, the severity of hurricanes Katrina, Andrew, and Mitch coupled with extended droughts and floods in Africa, India, Europe, Indonesia, Australia, China, and America), and that a continuation of current consumption patterns ("business as usual") is projected to result in global warming that is 2.5 to 10 times greater over the next century, it is obvious there are potentially dire consequences for the stability and quality of human life on our planet.
- **Peak Oil:** The oil crisis of the 1970s and the ensuing global recession combined with rampant price inflation were a result of just a 5 percent drop in global oil production due to the OPEC oil embargo. We are facing an imminent, unavoidable drop in global oil production as most of the world's oil fields are now in decline. In fact, according to the Germany-based Energy Watch Group (EWG), world oil production peaked in 2006, much earlier than most government experts had expected, and they predict that it will decline at roughly 7 percent per year (Seager 2007). This is happening at precisely the same time that the huge populations of China and India are rapidly expanding their industrial capacities and their appetites for oil and other raw materials. China increased its automotive production in 2006 by an astounding 29 percent to overtake Germany as the third largest producer in the world. Within 15 years, at China's current growth rate it will have more cars than the United States, and China already has the trade surplus backed by a stockpile of hundreds of billions of U.S. dollars to carry out an aggressive bidding war for the oil to fuel those cars.
- **The bio-threat:** We face a potential for massive plagues due to (1) the ability of viruses to mutate into new forms that make the jump from animal to human species (i.e., AIDS, bird flu, and swine flu); (2) the widespread use of antibiotics in animal feeds, which makes a perfect breeding ground for growing bacteria that are resistant to modern antibiotics; and (3) the potential for terrorists to secretly infect populations with deadly bacteria or viruses and for them to spread the infection globally (air travel) before it is detected.
- **The terror threat:** The threat of terrorism is obvious. What is not quite as obvious is the connection between our dependence on foreign oil and how it funds terrorism while putting our soldiers, engineers, and oil company personnel in harms way and draws the attacks of fanatical Muslim minorities in their attempt to drive U.S. influence from the entire Middle East. Since more than 60 percent of the remaining global supply of oil lies

in the Middle East and most Western oil fields are in rapid decline, the chances of extricating ourselves from the Middle East without a technological breakthrough are pretty slim.

A Perspective on Relative Threats

In spite of the very real threat of terrorism, I believe that our greatest threats are from the three other main categories. To gain some perspective, let's compare the impact of several major events:

1. **Hurricane Katrina:** The official death toll now stands at 1,836. With damages estimated at $86 billion (2007 USD), $55 billion of it insured, Hurricane Katrina tops Hurricane Andrew as the most expensive natural disaster in U.S. history. More than a million people were displaced—a humanitarian crisis on a scale unseen in the United States since the Great Depression.
2. **1918 Spanish flu epidemic:** 675,000 American fatalities and estimates of 21 to 50 million fatalities worldwide in a single year. By comparison, World War I killed 9 million men over a 4-year period. Recent analysis of 80-year-old specimens preserved in wax indicates that this flu virus originated as a bird virus that mutated into a swine virus that mutated into a human virus.
3. **Destruction of the World Trade Center (9/11/2001):** Estimated fatalities of 2,936. Insured property damage to the World Trade Center and the Pentagon is estimated at a combined total of $19 billion.
4. **Indian Ocean tsunami (12/26/2004, Sumatra– Andaman earthquake):** One of the deadliest natural disasters in modern history, estimated by the United Nations at 229,866 dead or missing people. The earthquake that caused the tsunami has been estimated at 9.1 to 9.3 on the Richter scale, making it the fourth largest quake since 1900. More than 1.7 million people were displaced, and property damage has been estimated at rebuilding costs of more than $15 billion (relatively low due to damage in mostly third-world locations).
5. **Chernobyl nuclear disaster (4/26/1986, Soviet Union):** The worst officially reported accident in nuclear power. An explosion inside the plant resulted in a nuclear-fueled fire that burned for weeks and sent a plume of radioactive fallout across Europe. Large areas of the Ukraine, Belarus, and Russia were heavily contaminated, resulting in the relocation of more than 336,000 people. The World Health Organization (WHO) attributes only 56 direct deaths to the accident, but estimates another 9,000 deaths due to radiation-caused cancers. Other reports estimate far greater numbers of cancer fatalities, including a Greenpeace report that estimates an additional 200,000 deaths to cancer in Belarus, Russia, and the Ukraine between 1990 and 2004.
6. **Hurricane Andrew (8/24/1992, Florida):** 65 fatalities, 600,000 homes and businesses destroyed or badly damaged. Property damage estimated at $26 billion.
7. **Hurricane Mitch (October/November 1998, Central America):** More than 22,000

fatalities, leaving 3 million people homeless, Mitch was the fourth most intense Atlantic hurricane of the century. There is speculation that global warming contributed to Mitch's severity and unusually long duration (it stalled over Central America for almost one week). Property damage was estimated at $8.5 billion (the relatively low figure is due to its third-world location but is higher than the GDP of Honduras and Nicaragua).

8. **Bubonic plague (sixth, fourteenth, and seventeenth centuries, China and Europe):** An outbreak in China spread to Italy in 1347. Over the next 5 years, it spread throughout Europe, killing about 25 million people, roughly one-third of Europe's population at the time. The cities became death traps and were deserted until the plague subsided.
9. **Kobe, Japan earthquake (1/17/1995):** 6,279 fatalities, 34,900 injured, more than 300,000 people left homeless, and an estimated $200 billion in damages (4 percent of Japan's GDP), made the 6.9-magnitude Kobe earthquake the most costly natural disaster on record, though it was not nearly as devastating as the 1923 Great Kanto earthquake, which claimed 140,000 lives in Tokyo and Osaka.
10. **China's Yangtze River flood (summer 1998):** 3,656 fatalities, 33,000 injured, and an astounding 14 million people left homeless, 223 million affected, and more than $20 billion in damages. Severe deforestation (85 percent) of the Yangtze River watershed has been blamed for significantly contributing to the flood's severity by reducing the land's capacity to absorb excessive rainfall.
11. **Bangladesh cyclone (1991):** Killing at least 138,000 people and leaving as many as 10 million homeless, the 1991 Bangladesh cyclone ranks as one of the deadliest tropical cyclones on record.
12. **Shansi, China earthquake (1/23/1956):** Fatalities for this unknown-magnitude event are estimated at 830,000 people.

With the possible exception of biological or nuclear terrorism, from a review of the above statistics one may conclude that natural disasters—such as storms (growing more severe due to global warming), earthquakes, and plagues—far outrank terrorism in scope.

THE ECO-THREAT

> The bottom line is that the world is in what ecologists call an "overshoot-and-collapse" mode. Demand has exceeded the sustainable yield of natural systems at the local level countless times in the past. Now, for the first time, it is doing so at the global level. Forests are shrinking for the world as a whole. Fishery collapses are widespread. Grasslands are deteriorating on every continent. Water tables are falling in many countries. Carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions exceed CO_2 sequestration everywhere. **—Lester Brown, *Plan B 2.0:Rescuing a Planet Under Stress and a Civilization in Trouble***

The eco-threat tops my list, and here's why: The natural systems that have supported life on our planet for millennia are showing signs of severe stress and approaching collapse. In the Short-Term, people located in the Western world already fare the current climate changes much better

than those in the third world, but if this planet goes down, it won't matter much if you are in the "first world" or the "third world." Biosphere 2, a 3.5-acre sealed enclosure in Oracle, Arizona, was designed and built to be a fully self-contained, humanmade, self-supporting ecosystem. The eight inhabitants, who were sealed into its structure from September 1991 until September 1993, all complained of inadequate food supply (they were always hungry), and the sealed indoor atmosphere steadily degraded until the experiment was stopped for safety reasons. If a top-notch engineering team with funding of more than $100 million can't create a self-contained, self-supporting ecosystem for only eight people on the surface of our own planet without the additional problems posed by a hostile environment such as outer space, we had better realize that good planets are hard to find and that we must start taking care of this one before it is too late. This experiment made it perfectly clear that no matter how technologically advanced we may become in the foreseeable future, neither our global economy nor our civilization will survive the collapse of our planet's environmental support systems.

For example, 11 out of 15 of the world's major fisheries are in serious decline or have already collapsed. Fifty percent of the world's trees are gone, and a large part of what is left is in trouble. It is estimated that the world has 50 to 100 years of farmable soil left if we continue using modern farming methods that cause soil depletion. Soil depletion, falling aquifers, salination, complications caused by global climate change, and the rising competition between food and biofuels for agricultural resources indicate that serious changes will be required if we are to feed a global population that is projected to expand to 9 billion people over the next 50 years. Coral reefs, the "rain forests of the ocean," are dying all over the planet. By 2004, an estimated 20 percent of the world's coral reefs had been destroyed (up from only 11 percent in 2000), an additional 24 percent were close to collapsing, and another 26 percent were under longer-term threat of collapse (Allsopp et al. 2007, 10). In 2007, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), a consortium of roughly 2,500 of the world's scientists and experts, concluded (with 90 percent certainty) that the observed global warming over the last 50 years has been caused by human actions that are now resulting in changes to our planet's precipitation, storm intensity, and other instances of extreme weather. Have you ever noticed that the Weather Channel no longer advertises itself as "accurate and dependable"?

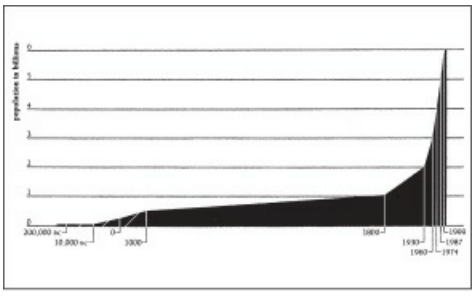


Figure 2-1. Global population growth. (Source: U.S. Census Bureau)

Though some experts (a very small minority) claim that there is no proof that humankind's meddling is resulting in a global warming trend, there are almost daily reports of scientific evidence and consensus that global warming is a real threat, that it is most likely caused by our actions, and that the world appears to be warming at a more rapid rate than previously predicted. Since record keeping began in 1880, 2005 was the warmest year on record, and the ten warmest

years on record all occurred since 1990 (Goddard 2007). Twenty years ago, how many of us would have believed that you could swim in open water at the North Pole and that the Arctic Ocean could see ice-free summers within a few decades? Who would have guessed that the rain forests of Indonesia could burn out of control as they did in 1998?

Since human beings have inhabited the Earth for more than 2 million years, you might wonder how things could get so bad so quickly. It appears to be the result of growing population and industrialization that has doubled world population in the last 40 years and has more than doubled our impact on the planet over the same period. After some great cataclysmic event that occurred about 10,000 years ago, referred to in the Bible as the "Great Flood" and on ancient Sumerian clay tablets as "The Epic of Gilgamesh," it took humankind about 9,000 years to grow the first half a billion people. It took another 800 years to double this to produce the world's first billion people. The next doubling took a mere 130 years. When I was a child, in the early 1960s, the world's population was 3 billion people, but since then it has taken only 40 years to double to the current world population of nearly 7 billion people (see Figure 2-1).

Greenhouse Gases and Global Warming

> Less than three years ago, the Paris-based International Energy Agency (IEA) forecast that China would overtake the U.S. as the world's largest polluter, but not before 2025. More recently it said that China would be first by 2010. Now, however, the growth of its economy (10 percent annually for the past three years and now higher) and its underlying power sector are such, said Faith Birol, the IEA's chief economist, that the Chinese are expected to overtake the American's this year. . . . China is the world's biggest coal producer, burning over 2 billion tones of coal per year. Sulphur dioxide and soot caused by coal combustion results in acid rain, which falls on approximately 30 percent of China's total land area. Oil consumption in China has doubled in the past 20 years. Sixteen of the world's most air polluted cities are in China. **—Michael McCarthy and Clifford Coonan, "The Great Pall of China," *The Independent*, April 25, 2007**

Not only has the world population exploded, but also much of the third world is becoming industrialized in an effort to become consumers just like the Americans. This pressure of growing population, industrialization, and ever-increasing consumption has resulted in deforestation of roughly 50 percent of the world's forests plus a skyrocketing injection of "greenhouse gases," mostly in the form of carbon dioxide, into the atmosphere (see Figures 2-2 and 2-3).

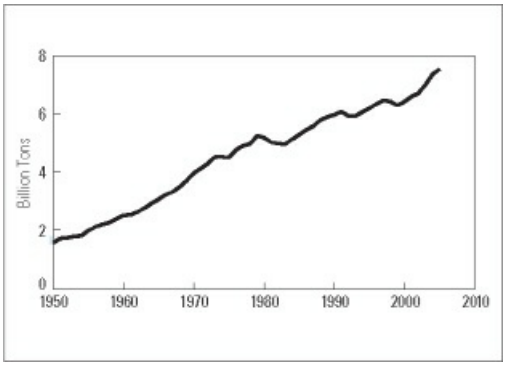


Figure 2-2. Carbon emissions from the burning of fossil fuels.(Source: *Vital Signs 2000: The Environmental Trends That Are Shaping Our Future*, by Lester R. Brown, Christopher Flavin, and Hillary French)

The "greenhouse effect" is a hot topic for many of the world's scientists. The atmosphere is primarily made up of oxygen (21 percent) and nitrogen (78 percent), with the remaining 1 percent made up of a variety of other gases. Both oxygen and nitrogen allow heat and light to pass through them with minimal resistance. Other gases, such as carbon dioxide, act like an insulating blanket, allowing visible light to pass through but trapping and holding heat on the surface of the planet and in the atmosphere. These greenhouse gases trap heat on the planet similar to the way glass helps to hold heat inside a greenhouse.

Carbon dioxide is the most prevalent greenhouse gas, with a 2006 concentration of about 382 parts per million (ppm) (Worldwatch Institute, *Vital Signs 2007–2008,* 43). This seems like a small amount, but it is 41 percent greater than when it was roughly 270 ppm in the 1700s. Estimates for increases over the next century range from an optimistic, and highly unlikely, 23 percent to a rather devastating 173 percent (ARM 2000, 1).

The percentage of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere has a dramatic effect on the temperatures of the planet. Without any carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, this planet would be a frozen desert, with practically all its water stored in frozen ice caps. Venus, on the other hand, has an atmosphere rich in carbon dioxide. Even though it is only 27 percent closer to the sun than the Earth, it has a surface temperature of a blistering 700ºF. The higher atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases are a major part of the reason why Venus is so much hotter than Earth.

Over a period of hundreds of millions of years, as they grew, giant algae blooms, huge prehistoric forests, and coral reefs removed millions of tons of carbon dioxide annually from the Earth's atmosphere. Scientists commonly accept the idea that mammoth deposits of ancient decaying plant and algae material were buried in the earth under huge pressures and eventually became the coal, oil, and natural gas deposits that we burn today for fuel. Our consumption of these "fossil fuels" is a oneshot deal, taking many millions of years to replenish the supply. As we burn these fuels, we are liberating hundreds of millions of years of stored carbon and radically altering the Earth's atmospheric concentrations of these greenhouse gases. In a couple of centuries, we have essentially been changing the Earth's atmospheric composition back to where it may have been many millions of years ago, with potentially drastic consequences for our planet's ecosystems.

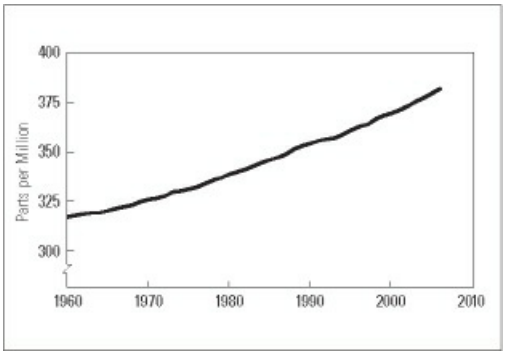


Figure 2-3. Atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide. (Source: *Vital Signs 1998: The Environmental Trends That Are Shaping Our Future*, by Lester R. Brown, Michael Renner, and Christopher Flavin)

Plants are an important part of the cycle that maintains a healthy atmosphere. When animals breathe, they take oxygen out of the air to oxygenate their blood and digest food for energy. They exhale air with higher levels of carbon dioxide, releasing excess carbon from metabolic processes. For plants, it is the opposite process. Plants absorb carbon dioxide and release purified oxygen into the air. Plants use the carbon from the air to combine with minerals gathered by the roots to grow more plant material. Many millions of years ago, Earth's atmosphere had much more carbon in it and the planet was much hotter. Coral reefs, plankton, algae blooms, and forests gradually removed billions of tons of carbon from the air as they grew. Huge ancient forests and algae blooms were fossilized and stored this atmospheric carbon for millions of years as coal, natural gas, and oil, gradually reducing the concentrations of carbon in the atmosphere—that is, until humanity started to liberate ancient carbon by burning coal, oil, and natural gas. Each *gallon* of gasoline burned releases about *19.6 pounds* of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere (CDIAC 2000, 9). Only 5.3 pounds of this is carbon; the rest is oxygen. Burning fossil fuels also release nitrous oxides and sulfur dioxide, which combine with water moisture in clouds to form acid rains that damage ecosystems.

Each year, we release nearly 8 billion tons of ancient stored carbon into the atmosphere by burning fossil fuels (see Figure 2-2). Many scientists estimate that global carbon emissions need to be reduced by roughly 70 percent if the world is to avoid dangerous climactic changes (Brown, *Vital Signs 2000*, 66). According to the IPCC summary report, maintaining today's rate of global carbon emissions could raise average global temperatures by 10°F, which would mean the probable extinction of more than half of the world's plant and animal species and a planet plagued with catastrophic floods and droughts. To get a feel for what this kind of temperature increase would be like, Tucson is an average 10°F hotter than San Francisco and Santa Barbara is an average 2.2°F warmer than San Francisco. I have seen projections that New York City may have a climate akin to today's Atlanta in 100 more years. According to the IPCC, to limit this century's global temperature increase to 4°F (still enough to cause catastrophic results) would require reducing global carbon emissions by 50 to 85 percent before the year 2050 (Kay 2007).

Among the other greenhouse gases, some are naturally occurring, like methane (swamp gas). Some were invented by human beings and are totally new to the planet, like the infamous chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs, more commonly known as Freon), which have a greenhouse potential 4,000 to 8,000 times as high as the same amount of carbon dioxide. Since they are present in much smaller concentrations than carbon dioxide, CFCs have a much smaller

greenhouse effect. Many scientists now believe that these other gases—natural and humanmade—may collectively contribute as much to global warming as does carbon dioxide, effectively doubling the previously predicted warming effect.

Methane's greenhouse contribution is second only to that of carbon dioxide. Even though it is present in far lower concentrations than carbon dioxide, methane is about 22 times more effective at trapping heat than an equal amount of carbon dioxide. Decomposition of landfill wastes, coal mining, digestive gases from domestic animals, and the burning of fossil fuels all release methane gases into the atmosphere. Atmospheric concentrations of methane have increased 246 percent from an estimated preindustrial level of 700 ppb to a 1998 level of 1,720 ppb (ARM 2000, 1). There are enormous quantities of methane gases trapped in icelike structures called *clathrates* both in the frozen arctic tundra and in the icy depths of the deep oceans. These clathrates contain 3,000 times more methane than the atmosphere. If much of the arctic's permafrost melts and releases its trapped methane into the atmosphere, this alone will be enough to cause global climate changes of a proportion that will dwarf current projections. Unfortunately, some scientists believe that just a few degrees warming of the deep oceans could be enough to release the deep-ocean clathrates in a catastrophic "methane burp" with the potential to seriously threaten life on Earth. There is strong geologic evidence that this has already happened twice in the history of planet Earth, causing rapid warming and massive extinctions and die-off, disrupting the climate for more than 100,000 years (Atcheson 2004).

Water vapor is another major greenhouse gas that becomes even more significant as warming continues. As the atmosphere warms, it holds more water vapor (at cooler temperatures water vapor condenses into clouds and precipitation). Increased water vapor may become an important factor in system feedback: As the Earth warms, the atmosphere holds more evaporated water, which may contribute to further warming.

What does all this mean? In Ross Gelbspan's eye-opening book, *The Heat Is On* (1997, 5), he states:

> In November 1995, 2,500 leading climate scientists announced that the planet is warming because all the emissions from coal and oil burning are trapping in more of the sun's heat than is normal for our climate. Even if that warming is not yet obvious, they warned, it is already generating bizarre and extreme changes in the weather. This new period of less stable climate we have entered, the scientists wrote, "is likely to cause widespread economic, social and environmental dislocation." Their report noted that "potentially serious changes have been identified, including an increase in some regions of the incidence of extreme high temperature events, floods, and droughts, with resultant consequences for fires, pest outbreaks and ecosystems."

Gelbspan documents the media campaign that has been successfully waged against the fear of global warming. This campaign is well funded by the oil and coal industries, which have spent many millions of dollars to persuade Americans that global warming isn't happening.

With more than 90 percent of the world's climate scientists in agreement that global warming is a concern of extreme urgency, there is a well-grounded fear within the trillion-dollar-a-year gas, coal, and oil industries that the world's governments might band together to limit the use

(and profits) of fossil fuels. The opposing views of a well-funded tiny minority of scientists, financially supported by members of the fossil fuel industry, get plenty of press. They do not deny the possible effects of greenhouse gases, but state that the data are not conclusive and things might not be as bad as they look. On the other hand, due to feedback effects that are not fully understood, things could be a lot worse than most scientists project.

When you consider that the changes in weather that most of us now acknowledge—the severity of hurricanes Katrina, Andrew, Mitch, and Rita have been exacerbated by a single degree Fahrenheit of global warming, and that a continuation of current consumption patterns will result in a projected global warming that is 2.5 to 10 times as great over the next century, it is obvious that there are potentially dire consequences for the stability and quality of human life on our planet.

Deforestation

> In the next 24 hours, deforestation will release as much CO_2 into the atmosphere as 8 million people flying from London to New York. Stopping the loggers is the fastest and cheapest solution to climate crisis. . . . The rampant slashing and burning of tropical forests is second only to the energy sector as a source of greenhouse gases according to a report published today by the Oxford-based Global Canopy Programme, an alliance of leading rainforest scientists. Figures from the GCP, summarizing the latest findings from the United Nations, and building on estimates contained in the Stern Report, show deforestation accounts for up to 25 percent of global emissions of heat-trapping gases, while transport and industry account for 14 percent each; and aviation makes up only 3 percent of the total. **—Daniel Howden, *The Independent,* May 14, 2007**

Trees are the great shock absorbers of our planet. They are critical to the carbon-oxygen cycle that maintains breathable air and livable temperatures. Trees also act as giant water pumps, sending millions of tons of water back into the atmosphere so it can fall back to the Earth as rainfall at some downwind location (see Figure 2-4). Trees stabilize soils to prevent erosion and build topsoil. They remove minerals from the groundwater and help keep salt levels in the aquifers fit for human consumption and agriculture.

When trees are destroyed, a process called *desertification* begins. Desertification has occurred all over the world, time and time again, but never in our recorded history on the scale and the rate at which it is happening today.

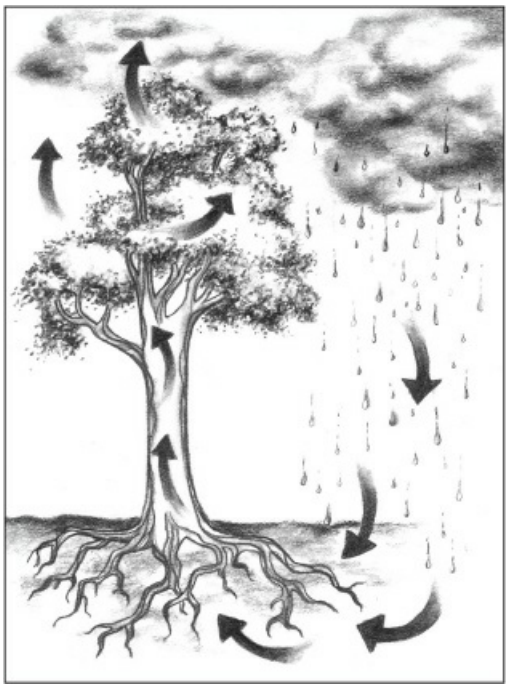


Figure 2-4. Trees and their part in the water cycle. (Illustration by Karen Frances)

The destruction of the trees, combined with accelerating increases in atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases, is likely to have severe long-term effects on global weather. Archaeologists generally place the dawn of modern civilization in an area known as the "Fertile Crescent," the site of the present nations of Iraq, Syria, and Lebanon. At one time Lebanon, the site of the biblical "Cedars of Lebanon," was 90 percent forested. The cedars were cut down centuries ago to provide wood to build Phoenician ships, as well as for housing and fuel. Lebanon's forest cover is now a mere 7 percent. Deforestation has reduced downwind rainfall by over 80 percent, transforming most of the "Fertile Crescent" into desert and wasteland. The process of desertification continues throughout the world, claiming millions of acres of farmland from the plains of Africa to the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains. The famines and extended droughts of North Africa appear to be a direct result of the destruction of Africa's forests. We are witness to a giant experiment that we are inflicting on our planet and no one knows what the outcome will be.

Trees are the main source of topsoil on the planet. Most shrubs and grasses do not have roots deep enough to work below the top few feet of soil, but the deep roots of trees break up rocks and combine minerals from the rocks with carbon from the air to feed the growth of leaves and branches. As this material falls to the ground and decomposes, it rebuilds and enriches the upper layers of soil, which are vital to agriculture.

> By far the most visible human alteration of the planet has been the destruction of the forests. Almost half the forests that once covered expanses of the Earth are already gone. **—Lester Brown et al.,** *Vital Signs 1998,* **from the Worldwatch Institute**

It takes from 200 to 1,000 years for nature to generate one inch of topsoil. Modern agricultural

practices often flush away inches of topsoil in a single year. That's like borrowing $20,000 on high-interest credit cards each year, without repaying any of the principle. How long could anyone keep that up without going bankrupt?

Trees and shrubby forests still cover about 40 percent of the world's landmass, but that amount is rapidly shrinking, and the quality of much of that cover has declined. A young tree or shrub, with a few square feet of evaporative leaf surface area and a few shallow roots, has nowhere near the environmentally stabilizing effect of a mature tree with deep roots. One acre of old-growth rain forest stores three to five times as much carbon as an acre of mature dry forest and recycles many times as much water back into the atmosphere.

One single rain forest tree will recycle 3 million gallons of water back into the atmosphere during its life span. The evaporative surface area of the leaves or needles on one large tree is equal to the surface area of a 40-acre lake (Hartmann 1998, 42). One single acre of rain forest will typically contain more than 200 large trees with an evaporative surface area greater than an 8,000-acre lake.

The total amount of rain forest left on the planet is about the size of the continental United States. Every year, humankind destroys an area of rain forest about equal to the size of Florida. At the current rate of destruction, 38 million acres per year, the world's last rain forests will be totally eliminated within our children's lifetime. The loss of rain forests is one very big variable with an unknown effect on our planet's system response. Do we dare risk their destruction without knowing what the effect will be?

> There are many ways to bring forest harvest rates back down below sustainable limits. None of the necessary measures is impossible. Every one of them is being practiced somewhere in the world, but not in the world as a whole. And so the forests continue to shrink. **—Donella Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows, *Limits to Growth: The 30-Year Update***

In both recent and ancient times, humanity has tampered with ecosystems to such an extent that local ecosystems became unstable and virtually collapsed. The tropical island of Haiti provides a modern example. When Columbus "discovered" America, he landed on the island of Hispaniola, which is now the country of Haiti. Columbus found a tropical paradise virtually covered with lush, green rain forests and populated by the Taino Indians, who had lived in harmony with the land for thousands of years. Today, not one single Taino Indian has survived, and a radically different sight greets visitors to Haiti. According to Thom Hartmann (1998, 33): "If you fly over the country of Haiti on the island of Hispaniola . . . , it looks like someone took a blowtorch and burned away anything green. Even the ocean around the capital of Port au Prince is choked for miles with the brown of human sewage and eroded topsoil. From the air, it looks like a lava flow spilling out into the sea."

SYSTEMS MODELING AND SYSTEMS RESPONSE

The Earth is a complex system. There are thousands of different factors ("variables" in systems terms) that contribute to the response of this system. Some factors are major contributors, while others are minor. Right now, we are witnesses to a great experiment that humankind is inflicting

on our planet. Modern humankind is radically altering many of the significant variables that contribute to the stability and response of the magnificent system called planet Earth. No one knows for sure the final outcome of this great experiment, but both the computer model predictions and the preliminary changes that we are currently seeing point to very disturbing future developments.

To get some idea of what scientists are talking about when they refer to systems theory, systems modeling, and systems response, let's take a look at a relatively simple system that most of us are familiar with—the automobile. A modern automobile employs shock absorbers and suspension springs to give us a smooth ride. Shock absorbers dampen shocks that the automobile receives to its wheels as it drives over bumps in the road. Without shock absorbers, a car bounces so much that it is almost impossible to control. The automobile system without adequate shock absorbers is "underdamped." The automobile hits a bump and starts bouncing; before it can stop bouncing from the first bump, it hits a second bump, and so on.

In the physical world, there are a few major components to our planetary system that act something like a car's shock absorbers and suspension springs. Changing significant Earth variables will have dramatic effects similar to the variations that you might see from worn-out or undersized shocks and springs on a car. The recent rash of severe storms, extreme heat, extended droughts, and record-setting floods are the Earth's response—warning signs that we have damaged its "shock absorbers" and are threatening the stability of worldwide ecosystems.

A lot of people think that global warming, the destruction of the ozone layer, and the deforestation of major chunks of the planet will not harm us in the United States, because we are so technologically advanced and appear to have a sufficient supply of food and natural resources. From the global point of view, this attitude is similar to a first-class passenger on the *Titanic* saying that the little crease from the iceberg doesn't concern him because he's on the upper deck, not below in third class. If this "ship" (Earth) goes down, no amount of money will be enough to buy us a seat on a life raft; a series of floods and droughts can alternately rot and parch crops in the United States just as easily as they do in other parts of the world.

Let's look at the response of some very simple systems to get a graphic idea of what I am talking about. Figure 2-5 is the response of a simple, well-damped car suspension to a sharp bump in the road. Notice that the curve is relatively smooth, with few ripples and bumps. For the Earth system, this would correspond to stable, predictable weather. When we change some variables a bit, to simulate a worn or undersized shock absorber, we get a response similar to that depicted in Figure 2-6. This figure corresponds to significantly fluctuating weather, like what we have seen in recent years.

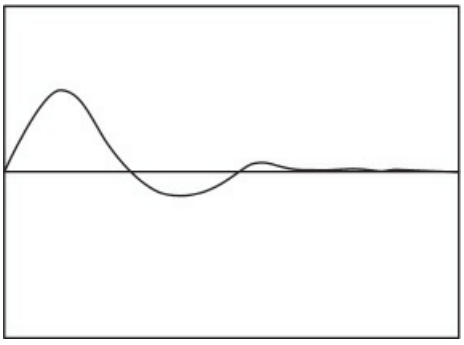


Figure 2-5. Response of a well-damped system (good shock absorbers).

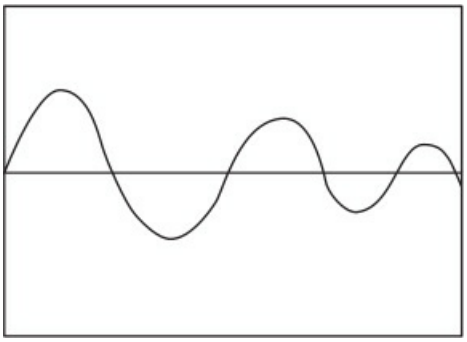


Figure 2-6. Response of an underdamped system (worn-out shock absorbers).

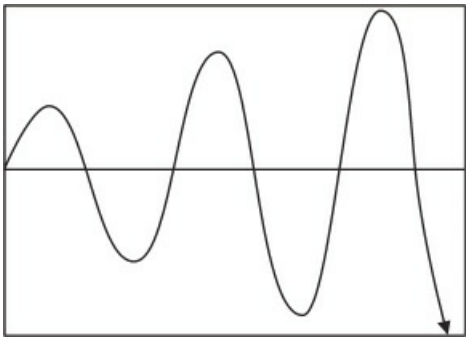


Figure 2-7. Response of an underdamped system with too much feedback (worn-out shock absorbers + feedback = unstable response).

Feedback

Most real-life systems are a little more complicated than a simple car suspension system and are characterized by "feedback." Feedback causes some portion of the output of the system (average temperature, rainfall, ice-cap melt, etc.) to input back into the system, with a resulting effect on the output. Feedbacks form loops. The output affects the input, which affects the output, which affects the input, and so on. Too much feedback, and the system goes crazy with an unstable response, like the one shown in Figure 2-7. The ear-splitting shriek that an audio system lets loose when a microphone gets too close to a speaker is a result of excessive feedback.

One "in our face" example of global warming feedback is the recent dramatic acceleration of the rate at which the polar ice caps are melting and disappearing. As the climate warms, more of the polar ice caps melt. As they melt, there is less shiny white area on planet Earth to reflect sunlight (radiant heat) back into space, and more open water and dark-colored earth to absorb heat from the sun, so the planet warms faster, causing more polar ice to melt, and so on. The record-breaking ice melt in the Arctic Ocean during the summer of 2007 astounded scientists and occurred at a rate that far exceeded what the computer models had previously predicted. When you consider the Earth's weather as a complex system with many different feedback loops, it's not too hard to see how human meddling with the Earth can result in unstable responses (extreme

weather) and, in severe cases, the destruction of entire ecosystems.

Traditionally, scientists believed that major climate changes, like the start and finish of ice ages, took place gradually over periods ranging from several centuries to thousands of years. Recently, however, scientists studying ice-field core samples discovered that climatic changes at the onset of ice ages, on the order of 10ºF), have occurred during a period of time as short as ten years. Apparently, due to some kind of feedback, the Earth's climate has shifted radically and abruptly over short periods of time. Scott Lehman, a Woods Hole Oceanographic Institute researcher, announced the institute's findings in 1993. He stated: "Our results suggest that the present climate system is very delicately poised. The system could snap suddenly between very different conditions with an abruptness that is scary. . . ." (in Gelbspan 1997, 30).

Humankind's meddling could produce radical, irreversible climate changes over a period of just a few years.

Out of the thousands of different variables influencing Earth systems, scientists have identified several major ones. (As our understanding increases, some seemingly insignificant factors will probably also turn out to be very important.) Here are six factors currently recognized as significant climatic system variables:

- Trees of all kinds—not only those in the rain forests
- Ocean currents and temperature
- The concentration of greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide, methane, CFCs, and water vapor in the atmosphere
- The Earth's ozone layer, which acts as a protective blanket, screening out harmful levels of the sun's ultraviolet rays
- The ocean's plankton production, which is a vital part of both the food chain and the oxygen balance in the atmosphere
- The size of the Earth's polar ice caps

All of these significant system factors are interconnected. Major changes in one factor may adversely affect one or more of the others, compounding the overall effects on the system.

Overshoot and Carrying Capacity

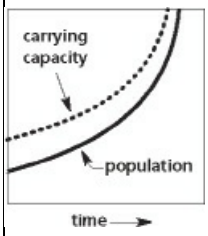
The ***carrying capacity*** of any ecosystem is the maximum number of a specific organism that can be maintained indefinitely ("sustainably") by a particular habitat, given a particular set of stable circumstances, such as weather, rainfall, and level of technology (in the case of humans). ***Overshoot*** is what happens when circumstances become particularly favorable for a local organism for a while, enabling that particular organism to flourish and temporarily exceed the ecological carrying capacity of its local systems. Usually, when a species finds itself in a particularly friendly climate with lots of food and few predators, the population of this organism grows exponentially (also known as a "bloom") until its population has grown so fast, and is so plentiful, that it has significantly overshot the local carrying capacity. When this happens, the

available food is rapidly consumed, there is a rapid die-off, also known as a "crash," and in many cases the local flora and fauna are badly damaged or totally destroyed. The system that once supported the bloom now fails so badly that there is total collapse, and the population dies off to a far lower level than could have been maintained sustainably before all that growth and subsequent damage had occurred.

> For a terrific book that thoroughly explains ecological terms and concepts simply enough for the average person to understand, I highly recommend *Overshoot: The Ecological Basis of Revolutionary Change*, by William R. Catton, Jr. If it were up to me, I would make the reading of this book a prerequisite for graduation from high school and membership in Congress!

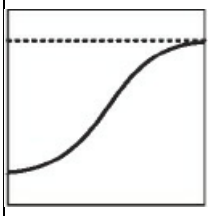
A very simple example of bloom and crash is what happens when a brewery makes a batch of beer. First, the grain is soaked in water and kept at a warm temperature to encourage the grain to sprout. As a natural by-product of the sprouting process, the grain converts complex starches into simple sugars, which yeast like to eat. When the sprouting process has progressed to the point where there is an optimum amount of sugars for the yeast to eat, a batch of starter yeast is introduced into the malted grain. Yeast is used because a natural by-product of the yeast consuming the sugars is their waste product, alcohol. At this point, since the habitat has been carefully cleaned and controlled to eliminate natural bacterial and protozoan predators of yeast, the yeast population explodes exponentially, reaching a number that is trillions of times what it was a few hours earlier. Soon, the yeast's exploding population either eats up all the available food (the malted sugars) or its waste product becomes so concentrated that it has "soiled its nest" to the point where the yeasts die in the toxic concentration of their own defecation (alcohol).

The above example is common, but human-made and artificially simple for economic reasons. If the beer-making process is contaminated by an undesirable predatory protozoa or competing unpalatable yeasts, the whole batch is ruined. A classic example of overshoot and collapse occurred when, in 1944, a small herd of reindeer was introduced to St. Matthew Island, a remote 128-square-mile spot of land in the Bering Sea. This island contained an abundant source of food for the reindeer, but lacked the usual predators to keep reindeer population in check. In 1957, the initial herd of only 29 animals had grown exponentially to at least 1,350. By 1963, the reindeer herd more than quadrupled again to reach a population of 6,000. Based on studies of mainland-based reindeer populations in similar areas, naturalists estimate the carrying capacity for St. Matthew Island at between 13 and 18 reindeer per square mile, which would have equaled 1,600 to 2,300 reindeer.



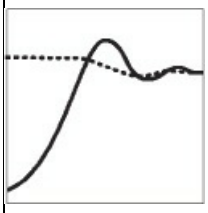
a) Continuous growth results if

- **Physical limits are very far off, or**
- **Physical limits are themselves growing exponentially.**



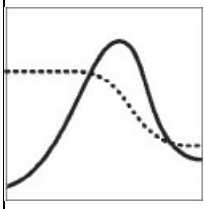
b) Sigmoid growth results if

- **Signals from physical limits to economy are instant, accurate, and responded to immediately, or**
- **The population or economy limits itself without needing signals from external limits.**



c) Overshoot and oscillation results if

- **Signals or responses are delayed, and**
- **Limits are unerodable or are able to recover quickly from erosion.**



d) Overshoot and collapse results if

- **Signals or responses are delayed, and**
- **Limits are erodable (irreversibly degraded when exceeded).**

Figure 2-8. Overshoot and collapse occur when an organism's population growth significantly exceeds the local carrying capacity, and that capacity is significantly eroded by drawdown. (Source: *Limits to Growth: The 30-Year Update*, by Donella Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows)

Limiting Factor and Drawdown

At this point, I want to pause in our story of the St. Matthew Island reindeer to introduce two more ecological terms, "limiting factor" and "drawdown." The limiting factor is whatever condition most limits the growth of a native population. It might be the amount of forage for animals, farmable land, the availability of local wood to support building fishing boats, the stability of the weather, the length of the growing season, and so on. The key is that this "limiting factor" puts a definite cap on an area's ability to sustain long-term growth and is directly linked to its carrying capacity. When a species has exceeded a system's natural carrying capacity, it may temporarily prolong population growth and delay collapse and die-off through

"drawing down" a resource at a rate that is faster than it will regenerate (i.e., it is not sustainable). Eventually, this drawdown will catch up with the offending species, resulting in collapse, significant dieoff, or migration to another area.

For the reindeer, a population far beyond St. Matthew Island's carrying capacity was a catastrophe. Trying to avoid starvation, they seriously overgrazed the entire island, causing both a loss of their food supply and massive soil erosion, which meant that future generations of St. Matthew Island reindeer would never again have the abundant source of food that had allowed the first few generations of reindeer to flourish. Drawdown of both the island's existing supply of food and the local plant cover that stabilized soils had decimated the island's carrying capacity in a few short months, and the resulting collapse devastated the herd's population. In just 3 years, the herd collapsed from a peak population of over 6,000 reindeer to a mere 42 in 1966 (Catton 1982, 216–217).

Collapse

> He thereby proved that Easter (Island), which today supports not a single species of native land bird, was formerly home to at least six of them . . . . More impressive was Easter's prodigious total of at least 25 nesting land seabird species, making it formerly the richest breeding site in all of Polynesia and probably in the whole Pacific. . . . The overall picture for Easter is the most extreme example of deforestation in the Pacific, and among the most extreme in the world: the whole forest gone, and all of its tree species extinct. Immediate consequences for the islanders were losses of raw materials, losses of wild-caught foods (no wood left to build boats for fishing on the open sea) and decreased crop yields. . . . I have often asked myself, "What did the Easter Islander who cut down the last palm tree say while he was doing it?"
>
> The Easter Islanders' isolation probably also explains why I have found that their collapse, more than the collapse of any other preindustrial society, haunts my readers and students. The parallels between Easter Island and the modern world are chillingly obvious. Thanks to globalization, international trade, jet planes, and the Internet, all countries on Earth today share resources and effect each other, just as did Easter's dozen clans. Polynesian Easter Island was as isolated in the Pacific Ocean as the Earth is today in space. When the Easter Islander got into difficulties, there was nowhere to which they could flee, nor to which they could turn for help; nor shall we modern Earthlings have recourse elsewhere if our troubles increase. **—Jared Diamond, *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed***

Can we avoid collapse? I think so. Will we avoid collapse? Perhaps, but that depends on many factors, including the decisions that we make on both individual and governmental scales. When you consider humankind's impact on the carrying capacity of planet Earth, the equation gets far more complicated than the simple example of the St. Matthew Island reindeer herd. Looking at

our history, it becomes clear that key technological advances have greatly increased the apparent carrying capacity (as far as humans are concerned) of the Earth. The use of the plow and beasts of burden in medieval times supported a European population density many times that of most hunter-gatherer societies. By the time Columbus stumbled upon the relatively sparsely populated hunter-gatherer societies in the New World, there were roughly 24 acres of land in Europe to support each person, and life was a struggle for average people to sustain themselves. Through their use of firearms and the spread of deadly diseases that assisted in wiping out native populations, the European conquerors took over vast tracts of land in the Americas. With this age of imperial expansion, the average land available to support each European increased by a factor of five, from 24 acres to 120 acres of land, leading to an age of great prosperity for the Europeans built upon the genocide of the Native Americans (Catton 1982, 24). The advent of fossil fuel–powered machinery, modern pesticides, and fertilizers contributed another giant leap in the apparent carrying capacity of the Earth. As the depletion of the Earth's fossil fuels arrives, fuels that took hundreds of millions of years to accumulate, this huge leap in carrying capacity will evaporate—unless we have used our time and resources wisely, while our technological society is still functioning, to proactively develop new transportation and agricultural technologies that are not based on fossil fuels. If we wait until we are on the verge of collapse, I am afraid it will simply be too late.

The sciences of global climate change, ecology, anthropology, and archeology have progressed by huge leaps and bounds over the past few decades. The merging and sharing of data from widely varying sources using numerous independent scientific protocols have led to a scientific consensus that we have solved some of the great mysteries of my childhood, such as what happened to the civilization that built the huge Easter Island monoliths and why the great city builders of both the Mayan and Anasazi civilizations disappeared without leaving obvious clues to explain their sudden downfall. The scientific consensus now is that the disappearance of these three great prior civilizations, along with numerous other lesser known civilizations, primarily occurred as a result of their long-term growth having outstripped the local habitat's carrying capacity, coupled with short-term climactic spikes that threw their highly developed cultures over the edge, leading to massive die-off, cannibalism, and social collapse.

Today's global economy can be viewed as both a blessing and a curse. On the blessing side of the coin, it is the existence of this global economy that has allowed a number of densely populated, highly technological societies to far exceed their local carrying capacity by drawing on food from the ocean (currently rapidly approaching collapse) plus the natural resources of other more sparsely populated, or more abundantly endowed lands, and in so doing they have not only avoided catastrophic collapse and die-off, they are currently still thriving. In this category, the two most obvious countries that come to mind are Japan and the United Kingdom (UK), but most of the first world shares their predicament to some extent. Both Japan and the UK are supporting vast populations, for the time being, by artificially increasing their apparent carrying capacity through importing large amounts of grain, meat, fish, and fossil fuels from distant areas that are either better endowed with natural resources or simply haven't developed their local standards of living to the point where they consume as much or more than their country can produce, so they have a surplus they are willing to export.

We have known for some decades that the climate change we are creating for the

> twentyfirst century was of a similar magnitude to that seen at the end of the last ice age, but that it was occurring thirty times faster. . . . We have seen that human health, water, and food security are now under threat from the modest amount of climate change that has already occurred. If humans pursue a business-as-usual course for the first half of this century, I believe the collapse of civilization due to climate change becomes inevitable. **—Tim Flannery, *The Weather Makers: How Man Is Changing the Climate and What It Means for Life on Earth***

On the curse side, our global economy has allowed us to "draw down" critical resources all over the planet (timber, oil, fresh water, seafood, critical metals, fertilizers, etc.), temporarily increasing the carrying capacity of our planet but far exceeding the long-term carrying capacity when you account for current limiting factors in critical natural resources on this planet. The basic assumption appears to be that business as usual and supply-side economics will be adequate to keep us in line with an eternally increasing population and consumption patterns. Politicians and economists are often great at expounding the virtues of our society's technological wizards to figure out a technical solution for every problem.

> The reality is that true technological breakthroughs are hard to come by. When I was a kid in the 1960s, nuclear fission was supposed to evolve into energy that would be "too cheap to meter" and nuclear fusion was supposed to be hot on its tail, solving all of humankind's energy needs for the foreseeable future sometime around the year 2000. In a society that has vastly overstressed its natural systems, has already passed the peak production point for its most ubiquitous fuel (oil), and is currently experiencing humanitarian and fiscal catastrophes on a global scale as a result of climate change, how much more time do you think we have to continue counting on some future "miracle of science" to bail us out? In ancient times, significant numbers of people could sometimes escape civilizationbusting ecological disasters by migrating to some distant location and starting all over. The problem with the global economy is that worldwide drawdown of critical resources is what is feeding an ever-increasing population and keeping business as usual flowing. Since we are drawing down the resources of the world, not just local regions, when they are depleted beyond the breaking point, there is nowhere else to turn. If this system collapses catastrophically, how many underpopulated "fertile valleys" and "safe places" will we find in which to weather the storms and start over? And how many other millions of people will be searching for the same thing?

Sources and Sinks

The physical limits to growth are limits to the ability of planetary ***sources*** to provide materials and energy and to the ability of planetary ***sinks*** to absorb

pollution and waste. **—Donella Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows, *Limits to Growth: The 30-Year Update***

Understanding the concepts of "sources" and "sinks" will help us to see more clearly the path to building a sustainable future for our planet. Sources are basically the natural resources of planet Earth, both renewable and nonrenewable. As long as there are people left in our world, there will be a need to consume resources for food, shelter, transportation, and commerce. Renewable resources include water, crops, forests, and seafood. Nonrenewable resources are resources that don't grow or regenerate, like steel, coal, and oil.

Sinks are the systems of the planet that absorb our waste. Sinks can be simple, like a swamp that processes raw sewage and turns it back into plant nutrients through bacterial action. The atmosphere is a sink for numerous pollutants from burning fossil fuels and various by-products of thousands of industrial processes. The interaction of sources and sinks is key to the health of our planetary systems.

For example, of all the CO_2 that man emits into the atmosphere, only about half of it stays there. The other half goes into carbon sinks, the two biggest ones being the oceans and the land "biosphere." CO_2 is either directly dissolved into the ocean, or it is dissolved into raindrops and carried to the ocean in rivers and direct rainfall. Just as land plants sequester CO_2 directly from the atmosphere as they grow, building carbon into their structure, CO_2 that enters the ocean is further sequestered as it grows into the structure and cells of coral reefs and plankton. Recent scientific evidence indicates that the oceans may be reaching their limits as carbon sinks. "University of East Anglia researchers gauged CO_2 absorption through more than 90,000 measurements from merchant ships equipped with automatic instruments. Results of their 10-year study in the North Atlantic show CO_2 uptake halved between the mid-90s and 2000 to 2005." (BBC News 10/20/2007). If we lose the ocean as a major CO_2 sink, that would mean that twice as much of our global CO_2 emissions will stay in the atmosphere and affect our weather for years to come.

The economist Herman Daly has suggested three simple rules to help define sustainability as it concerns sources and sinks:

- For a *renewable resource*—soil, water, forest, fish—the sustainable rate of use can be no greater than the rate of regeneration of its source. (Thus, for example, fish are harvested unsustainably when they are caught at a rate greater than the rate of growth of the remaining fish population.)
- For a *nonrenewable resource*—fossil fuel, highgrade mineral ores, fossil groundwater—the sustainable rate of use can be no greater than the rate at which a renewable resource, used sustainably, can be substituted for it. (For example, an oil deposit would be used sustainably if part of the profits from it were systematically invested in wind farms, photovoltaic arrays, and tree planting, so that when the oil is gone, an equivalent stream of renewable energy is still available.)
- For a *pollutant,* the sustainable rate of emission can be no greater than the rate at which the pollutant can be recycled, absorbed, or rendered harmless in its sink. (For example, sewage can be put into a stream or lake or underground aquifer sustainably no faster than

bacteria and other organisms can absorb its nutrients without themselves overwhelming and destabilizing the aquatic ecosystem.) (Meadows et al. 2004, 54)

Sustainability and Limits to Growth

> Human beings and the natural world are on a collision course. Human activities inflict harsh and often irreversible damage on the environment and on critical resources. If not checked, many of our current practices put at serious risk the future that we wish for human society and the plant and animal kingdoms, and may so alter the living world that it will be unable to sustain life in the manner that we know. Fundamental changes are urgent if we are to avoid the collision our present course will bring about. . . . we are fast approaching many of the earth's limits. Current economic practices which damage the environment, in both developed and underdeveloped nations, cannot be continued without the risk that vital global systems will be damaged beyond repair. Pressures resulting from unrestrained population growth put demands on the natural world that can overwhelm any efforts to achieve a sustainable future. If we are to halt the destruction of our environment, we must accept limits to that growth. **—Union of Concerned Scientists (UCS),*World Scientists' Warning to Humanity,* issued on November 18, 1992, and signed by some 1,700 of the world's leading scientists, including a majority of the living Nobel laureates in the sciences**

In the early 1970s, a team of young scientists from MIT spent 2 years developing and working with a world computer simulation program called "World3." They included a multitude of variables in their computer model in an effort to make its output match the real world as nearly as possible. The computer model results were staggering and made quite a stir when first announced to the world, then subsequently published in *Limits to Growth* by Donella Meadows, Dennis Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and William H. Behrens III. In one scenario after another, unless humankind's consumption and growth patterns were proactively changed, the computer model invariably predicted that human population would swell to the point where it overshot the planet's capability to support the population, and then would come crashing down as one system after another failed in futile attempts to keep people fed, clothed, housed, and to maintain business as usual.

More than 30 years ago, when *Limits to Growth* was first published, it was controversial, and critics blasted it for being overly pessimistic and neglecting the power of man and markets to adapt. In today's world of collapsing fisheries, dying coral reefs, disappearing forests, falling water tables, declining oil production, expanding deserts, and extreme weather events, the trends that their computer models forecast have been shown to be uncannily accurate. It is clear that if we are to avoid the catastrophic collapse predicted by those 30-year-old models describing a continuation of business as usual, we had better make necessary changes to improve our chances for a more benign outcome for planet Earth and humankind.

Mathis Wackernagel and his colleagues have measured the human ecological footprint and

compared it to the carrying capacity of Earth, as reported in their paper published in the Proceedings of the National Academy of Science of the United States of America (PNAS) in 2002. They defined the ecological impact of humanity as "the area of biologically productive land and water required to produce the resources consumed and to assimilate the wastes generated by humanity, under the predominant management and production practices in any given year." What they found was that humanity's load on the Earth's biocapacity was at 70 percent in 1961, 100 percent in 1980, and 120 percent in 1999. This means that since 1980, we have been in overshoot mode, unsustainably drawing down the biosystems that support life on Earth (Wackernagel et al. 2002).

The news from the World3 computer model results is not all bad, and in fact could be used to help chart a path toward a sustainable future and the avoidance of collapse. There are many different parameters programmed into the models. The models clearly showed significantly varying results when humans changed several of these parameters, such as by drastically improving manufacturing transportation and energy efficiencies, stabilizing population growth, and reducing pollution. The models also clearly show that just a twenty-year delay in implementing these changes will make a huge difference in the projected quality of life later in this century, because the sooner we stabilize our growth and consumption patterns at a sustainable level, the better will be the condition of our planet's sources and sinks, and the higher the average quality of life for all living things on Earth.

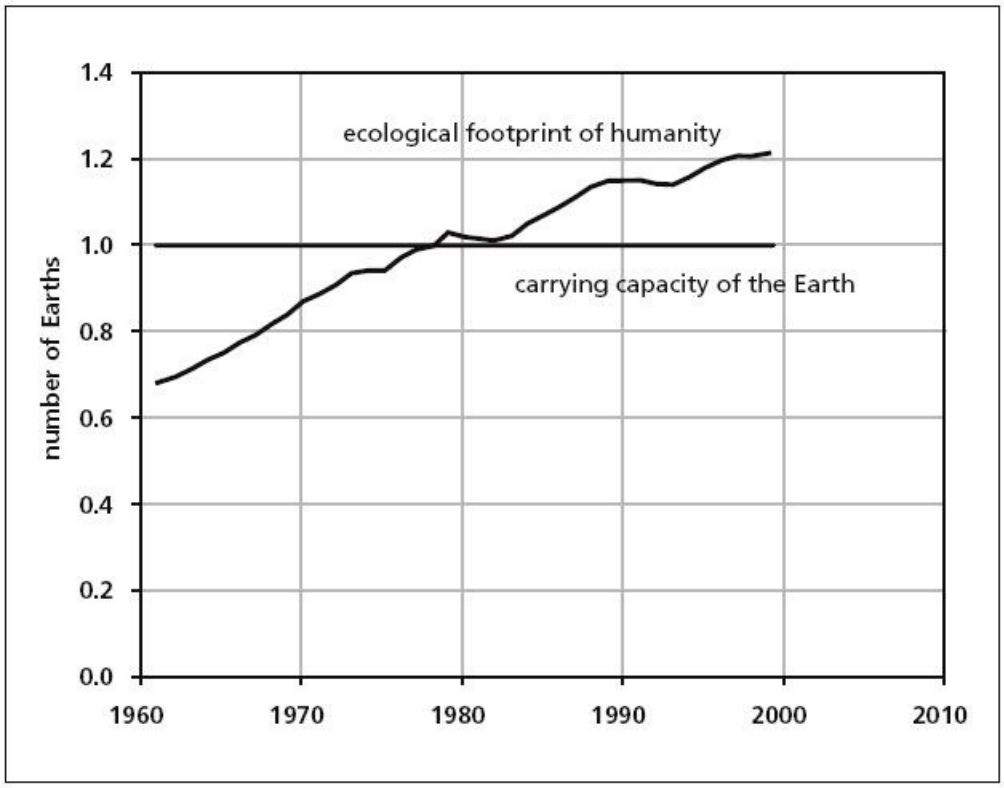


Figure 2-9. Ecological footprint versus carrying capacity.

ource: *Limits to Growth: The 30-Year Update*, by Donella Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows)

The World's Oceans

The world's oceans are showing alarming indications that we have gone far beyond the level of sustainable environmental impact. The ocean's fisheries and coral reefs (the "rain forests of the ocean") are in as just as bad shape as the world's forests, and are declining at an even faster rate. A large percentage of the world's coral reefs are now in distress or dying due to excessively high water temperatures, which causes "coral bleaching," combined with bottom-trawling fishing practices, acidification from atmospheric CO_2, and pollution. By 2004, an estimated 20 percent of the world's coral reefs had been destroyed (up from just 11 percent in 2000), an additional 24 percent were close to collapsing, and another 26 percent were under long-term threat of collapse. In a world that has looked to the oceans to feed growing populations (global seafood consumption has increased eight-fold since 1950), we can pretty much count on the collapse of all major ocean fisheries by the middle of this century unless we gain international cooperation in implementing radical restrictions to protect endangered fisheries. So far, 11 out of 15 of the world's major fisheries are in serious decline or have already collapsed, 25 percent have collapsed, and one 2005 study found that large predatory open-ocean fish, such as tuna, swordfish, and marlin, had declined by an estimated 90 percent since 1952 (Allsopp et al. 2007, 10–14). By the end of 2006, researchers found that almost one-third of commercial ocean fish species have been fished so heavily, or so badly affected by pollution and habitat loss, that their numbers have slipped below 10 percent of previous levels (the commonly accepted threshold of collapse). Extrapolation of current trends indicates a global oceanic collapse of all commercial fish species by the year 2048 unless we are able to turn these trends around (*New York Times*, 2006). Like the Easter Islanders who participated in the destruction of their native forests and animals, if we allow the oceans and rain forests to collapse, our collapse won't be far behind.

The ocean's capacity as a "sink" for mankind's pollutants is also being taxed beyond sustainable limits. When excessive agricultural runoff enters the ocean, giant algae and plankton blooms grow in the polluted waters. As these organisms die and decompose, oxygen levels decrease past the point where fish can survive, causing huge "dead zones" in the ocean that are devoid of animal life. In 2007 there were about 200 of these oceanic dead zones, roughly one-third more than just 2 years earlier. In the Gulf of Mexico, a 20,000-square-kilometer dead zone extends from the mouth of the Mississippi River, and similar monster dead zones exist in the Bay of Bengal, the Arabian Sea, the East China Sea, and the Baltic Sea (Worldwatch Institute, *Vital Signs 2007–2008*, 100).

> As Peter deMenocal put it, "When I began my Ph.D. in 1986, the conventional wisdom was that it took over one thousand years to end an ice age. By the time I finished in 1991, that figure had been reduced by an order of magnitude to one hundred years. Just two years later, Richard Alley showed that climate could change from warm to glacial conditions in two to five years"
> . . . in Broeker's conclusions he wrote, "Through the record kept in Greenland ice, a disturbing characteristic of the Earth's climate system has been revealed, that is, its capability to undergo abrupt switches to very different states of operation. I say 'disturbing' because there is surely a possibility that the ongoing buildup of

greenhouse gases might trigger yet another of these ocean reorganizations and thereby the large atmospheric changes. . . ." **—Eugene Linden, *The Winds of Change: Climate, Weather, and the Destruction of Civilization***

In addition to being a huge source of food and a major carbon sink that removes CO_2 from the atmosphere giving us pure oxygen in return, the ocean's circulating currents are also one of the largest driving forces in the world's wind and weather. In his illuminating book, *The Winds of Change: Climate, Weather, and the Destruction of Civilization*, Eugene Linden chronicles how both ice ages and radical abrupt civilization-busting weather shifts appear to be linked to temperature switches in the ocean currents. During the record-breaking 1997–1998 El Nino, warm ocean-surface temperatures caused neighboring overland average air temperature increases of 1.4°F, roughly the equivalent of the last 100 years of global warming, which caused massive floods in some areas (China and California), while resulting in severe droughts and wildfires in Indonesian and Amazonian rain forests. As another example of how ocean currents affect weather, Northern Europe and Siberia are about the same distance from the North Pole, but Northern Europe has a far more hospitable climate due in a large part to the Gulf Stream, a massive ocean current that pumps heat from the tropics in the Gulf of Mexico to Western Europe, providing a relatively warm and temperate climate, considering its proximity to the Arctic Circle. The Gulf Stream is powered by a combination of surface winds plus temperature gradients, salinity, and density differences between deep ocean bodies of water and surface waters, referred to as *thermohaline circulation* (THC). According to Linden, there are several alarming indicators that our current period of global warming is already contributing to significant changes in the ocean's deepwater temperatures, salt concentrations, and water densities that could jeopardize the stability of THC-powered ocean currents like the Gulf Stream. If the Gulf Stream were to shut down, and there is mounting evidence that this has happened several times in ancient history, it would radically alter our planet's weather in ways that would be extremely hard on humankind and all other living beings.

The Economics of Climate Change

The scientific evidence is now overwhelming: climate change is a serious global threat, and it demands an urgent global response. . . . Climate change will affect the basic elements of life for people around the world—access to water, food production, health, and the environment. Hundreds of millions of people could suffer hunger, water shortages and coastal flooding as the world warms. Using the results from formal economic models, the review estimates that if we don't act, the overall costs and risks of climate change will be equivalent to losing at least 5 percent of global GDP each year, now and forever. If a wider range of risks and impacts is taken into account, the estimates of damage could rise to 20 percent of GDP or more. In contrast, the costs of action—reducing greenhouse gas emissions to avoid the worst impacts of climate change—can be limited to around 1 percent of global GDP each year. **—Nicholas Stern, head of the UK Government Economic Service and former chief economist of the World Bank,** *The*

Economics of Climate Change: The Stern Review

There are many politicians who claim that we can't afford to make the changes that will be required to avert or lessen global climate change, but an increasing number of scientific studies indicate the opposite. In fact, according to many leading scientists, we can't afford to *not* make these changes. According to *The Stern Review*, the cost of climate change is now expected to be larger than many earlier studies suggested. For dry temperate zones—like almost all of Australia, much of Africa, and where most of China's grain is grown—climate models indicate that these areas will probably see an inundation of long-term devastating droughts that will seriously undermine their ability to remain agriculturally productive. A sea-level rise of just 8 to 32 inches (20 to 80 cm), brought on by accelerated melting of the ice caps of Greenland and Antarctica combined with thermal expansion due to warming of the deep ocean waters, is predicted to permanently displace 150 to 200 million people living in low-lying areas by the middle of this century (Stern 2007, 91).

Part of the problem with comparing the costs of our current way of doing business, "business as usual," with the costs of doing business in a sustainable manner is that traditional accounting methods do not build adverse environmental and health costs into the cost of goods. In fact, the opposite is often true. Currently, most of the time the "free market" rewards companies for bad environmental practices, since the companies with poor environmental records have traditionally maintained a higher profit margin by spending minimal amounts to prevent environmental damage. Because these companies are not taxed or charged for the medical costs of the pollution they discharge, the environmental costs for toxic waste cleanup, or the long-term costs of the loss of the resources that they have drained from the earth. For example, the International Center for Technology Assessment published a detailed analysis of the hidden costs of gasoline, called "The Real Price of Gasoline." The center found that the indirect cost, including oil industry tax breaks, subsidies, supply protection costs, and health care costs due to smog-related illness, adds up to around $9 per gallon, which when added to the current pump cost of $5 per gallon yields a total of $14 a gallon (Brown 2006, 231). Additionally, in our free market, big business, such as coal and oil, has been given huge tax advantages and subsidies to promote exploration and capital investments, giving them an unfair advantage over renewable energies, which are expected to hold their own in this sham of a "free market," where the real cost of coal, oil, and nuclear energy is generally much more than what we pay at the pump or on our utility bill.

Current subsidies promote the consumption of our shrinking legacy of nonrenewable resources at faster rates, without building any infrastructure to take their place when they are gone.

If, instead of the current policy, we cut federal subsidies to nonrenewable-resource-polluting industries, taxed businesses appropriately for consuming the natural resources of our world and contributing to declines in health and climate (using taxes similar to the current cigarette taxes), and then used those tax revenues to help build renewable energy systems and sustainable business practices, we would make real progress toward building a sustainable future.

PEAK OIL

An economic crisis is at hand in America today, the kind of dramatic, earth-

> shattering crisis that periodically threatens the very survival of civilization. More specifically, it is an energy crisis brought about by the conflict between rising global demand for energy and our growing inability to increase energy production. . . . Today, developing countries—including Chindia (author's term to describe the fast-growing, rapidly industrializing megapopulations of China and India), with its massive energy needs—make up a far more significant part of the world economy than they did in the 1970's. In this context, we must consider that the dramatic jump in oil and gasoline prices that occurred in 2005 is only a first sign of what will be a generation-long upward trend. Unless our society takes drastic action to alter this trend, oil and gasoline will simply not return to any kind of stable price range, or get any less expensive, ever again. By the end of this decade, $100 oil (per barrel) may seem like the good old days. And when you tell your children or grandchildren that you paid less than $3 a gallon for gasoline in 2005, it will seem as unbelievably inexpensive as a ten-cent chocolate bar or a ten-dollar suit. **—Stephen Leeb, Ph.D., *The Coming Economic Collapse:How You Can Thrive When Oil Costs $200 a Barrel***

Our current economy and culture are largely built upon a reliance on cheap oil. From the cars we drive, to the jets we fly, to the buildings we live in, to the food we eat, to the clothes we wear—almost everything that encompasses the fabric of our modern life is either powered by oil, built from oil, or made by machines powered by oil. Oil is a key chemical component in our pesticides and fertilizers, as well as the fuel powering the machinery that tills the soil, harvests the crops, processes and ships our food, so that we are literally "eating oil." During the past century, a nearly continuous exponential growth in the consumption of oil is what has powered the unprecedented growth of our global economy and fed a world population as it quadrupled in size. Our modern civilization is built on the premise of unending growth and an ever-increasing supply of energy to fuel that growth. **All of this is about to radically change as we slip into the decline of "The Age of Oil."**

For the past decade, a wide variety of groups have been predicting that just as America's domestic oil production peaked in 1970 and has been on a downward slide ever since, similarly world oil production would also peak and decline once most of the world's giant oil fields passed their prime. If you listen to official figures from most government sources, this "Peak Oil" date is still 5 to 20 years away, but when you look at critical analysis from leading geophysical oil industry experts, most of them have placed that date as somewhere between 2000 and 2010. According to a report released in October 2007 by the German Energy Watch Group (EWG), **this momen-tous event, known as "Peak Oil," already happened in 2006.** The rosy predictions that we have plenty of oil to sustain current rates of economic growth for at least another decade or two are based on unsubstantiated national figures for the size of remaining oil reserves (OPEC countries typically inflate their reserve figures so they may be granted higher pumping quotas based on a percentage of stated oil reserves), but the EWG report is based on actual oil production data and is therefore considered more accurate and reliable (Seager 2007). Whether Peak Oil has already occurred, or we are simply on the cusp of this momentous milestone, the world's economy will probably never return to the boom days of the 1990s, and may well slide into a precipitous tailspin.

After the 1973 Yom Kippur War between Israel and its neighboring Arab states, an artificial reduction in the world's oil production was brought on by the Arab oil embargo against the Western world. I remember waking up before daylight to park my car in a long line that had formed two hours before the gas station opened. During this period, gasoline rationing was instituted, and gasoline prices quadrupled in a few months time. Quite sobering, when you consider the fact that all of this economic and social upheaval was caused by an oil embargo that only cut into global production by about 5 percent. The high prices of oil in the late 1970s stimulated the development of previously untapped oil fields in the North Slope of Alaska, Mexico, the North Sea, Angola, Indonesia, and Nigeria, which eventually came online, causing a glut in the oil market and a steep decline in oil prices throughout the 1980s. That one-shot glut has now been spent. Outside of the Middle East and Russia, pretty much all of the oil-producing countries have passed their peak in oil production and are now in decline. For example, Great Britain received a huge boost to its economy when its massive North Sea fields started producing oil, which peaked in 1999 and had already dropped by about half as of October 2007.

In 1950, the United States produced half of the world's oil and was the largest *exporter* of oil in the world. Now we can't even produce half of our own oil, and we have become the world's largest *importer* of oil, consuming roughly 25 percent of the world's oil production with only 5 percent of its population. Even though today's oil exploration technologies are miles beyond where they were 40 to 50 years ago, global oil discoveries peaked back in the 1960s. In recent years, our annual global oil consumption has been around 23 billion barrels, but during this time we have been discovering only about 6 billion barrels a year.

This is happening at precisely the same time that the huge populations of China and India are rapidly expanding their industrial capacities and their appetite for oil. In 2006, China increased its automotive production by an astounding 29 percent to overtake Germany as the third largest automobile producer in the world. If China continues its 2006 automotive growth rate of 29 percent, it will have more cars on the road than the United States in just thirteen more years. Since China already carries much of the paper that covers the United States' burgeoning national debt, and it has a huge trade surplus backed by a stockpile of 1.4 trillion U.S. dollars, it certainly possesses the financial resources to carry out an aggressive bidding war for the oil to fuel those cars. China's neighbor, India, is not far behind. Together, China and India together contain well over a third of the world's population, and both countries clearly believe that increasing energy usage is key to maintaining their record-breaking rates of industrialization and improvements in average standard of living. The future of business as usual in the United States does not look good, and I only hope that we have the wisdom and moral fortitude to proactively develop our renewable energy resources and technologies rather than resorting to an apocalyptic stream of resource wars along the lines of the war in Iraq, which, according to Alan Greenspan, the retired head of the Federal Reserve Bank, was primarily waged over oil.

In 1956, Dr. Hubbert stunned the U.S. government and the oil industry when he predicted that U.S. oil production in the lower 48 states would peak around 1970 and decline thereafter. At the time of his prediction, the United States was the greatest petroleum producer/ exporter in the world. Hubbert's prescient proclamation was rejected by the oil industry, but later vindicated when his analysis proved correct.

The graph shown in Figure 2-10 (often referred to as the "Hubbert curve") is based on an ultimate recovery of conventional oil of 1,750 Gb (Giga = billion barrels), and depicts alternative

scenarios of production. The Swing Case assumes a price leap when the share of world production from a few Middle East countries reaches 30 percent. The price leap is expected to curb demand, leading to a plateau of output until the Swing countries reach the midpoint of their depletion, when resource constraints force output to drop considerably. (See *The Twenty-first Century—The World's Endowment of Conventional Oil and its Depletion*, by Colin Campbell, 1996.) According to EWG, the plateau occurred in 2002 and the final peak in 2006, and we are on the cusp of the steep decline phase, which is right in line with the most pessimistic of the down-sloping curves shown on the right side of the graph.

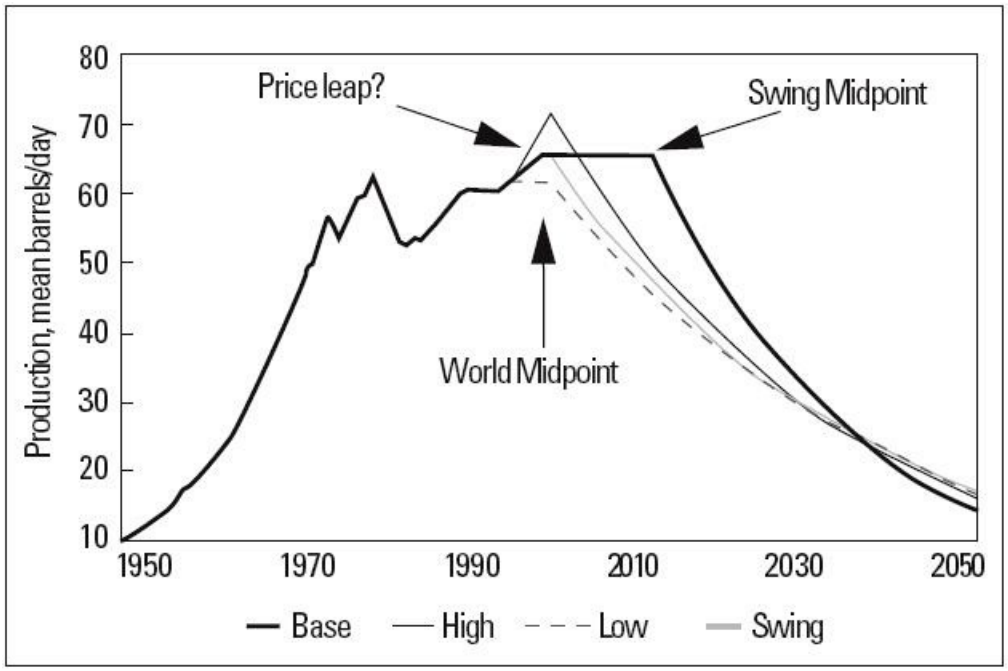


Figure 2-10. The global Hubbert peak, forecast of future global oil output. (Source: *The twenty-First Century—The World's Endowment of Conventional Oil and Its Depletion*, by Colin Campbell, 1996)

The supposedly huge American and Canadian reserves of oil in the form of tar sands and shale oil won't bail us out either. They are expected to have poor economic and ecological outcomes, requiring huge amounts of water and natural gas to steam extract the usable oil, and in the process consuming half to two-thirds as much energy as would be yielded by the end product. The massive scale of tar sand and shale oil mining operations required to replace a significant portion of global oil production would have a devastating environmental impact on our planet, including huge contributions of greenhouse gasses (contributing to more global warming) and severe air and water pollution.

EROEI, Petroleum, and Biofuels

Except for the rare oil-well "gusher," which occurs when an underground oil reservoir is so highly pressurized that the oil literally spurts out of the ground after a well-driller's bit has

pierced the rock dome encapsulating the buried reservoir of oil, it takes energy to remove that oil from its place underground. It also takes energy to transport, store, process, and ultimately transform that fuel into a usable form of energy. In the case of some other sources of fuels, like Canadian tar sands, it also takes considerable energy to process the raw materials into forms that can be used for fuel in automobiles, airplanes, or for heating homes, and for chemical processes. The easy-to-get-to, highquality, and easily processed oil reserves are naturally the most economically processed and first-consumed types of reserves. To compare the efficiency of a particular type or reserve of unprocessed fuel, energy industry scientists and engineers commonly use the term *energy return on energy invested* (EROEI or, more simply, EROI). What this term describes is the ratio of the energy that must be expended to mine, transport, and process a given raw material versus the energy that is available from burning the finished product.

The easy to reach "sweet crude" oil from Texas in the early 1900s, with an EROI of greater than 100, was about as close as you can get to "free" energy. For every unit of energy expended to find and process this oil, the result was more than 100 times as much usable energy. When oil wells begin to decline, there are several tools and techniques that may be employed to boost declining production rates, such as injecting seawater into the wells, but these tricks come at a cost. Once the easy-topump oil has been depleted, geologists can look to places deeper in the ground and further under the ocean to supply the world's thirst for oil. Unfortunately, it takes energy to pump water into wells, and the energy required to pump oil from deep under the ground or ocean is directly proportional to how deep that oil is located, so at some point it can take just as much energy to pump and process the oil as is contained in the end product (gasoline, diesel fuel, etc.). At that point, the EROI has a value of one, and there is no point in going after the oil, unless it is to be used for something more valuable than just to burn as fuel, such as a feedstock to make plastics or pharmaceuticals.

The EROI for imported oil has dropped from about 27 in 2001 to around 10 in 2007, which clearly shows a marked trend of diminishing returns (Hall et al. 2008, 15). The EROI for producing ethanol from corn in the United States runs around .8 to 1.6 (depending on which study you look at). This process might work better in the tropics with sugarcane as the ethanol feedstock. A detailed study on Brazilian sugarcane ethanol, by Isaias de Carvalho Macedo of Brazil, shows an alcohol energy return of more than eight to nine units of output for every single unit of input—and this study accounts for everything right down to smelting the ore to make steel for the tractors (Blume 2007, 25, 521). According to Blume, both Brazil and India power their farm machinery and ethanol refineries completely on biofuels and biomass, and they fertilize crops with effluent from the fermentation process. Brazil produces an excess of electricity at its ethanol plants, so it is essentially a carbonneutral process and consumes no petroleum, except for what was consumed in making the machinery.

Eighty-seven percent of the corn grown in the United States is used to feed livestock, and the remains from the distillation process, called "distiller's dried grains with solubles" (DDGS) has been used as a superior cattle food for more than 100 years. Thus, you can actually grow 14 to 17 percent more meat from the by-product of corn grown for ethanol than if you fed that corn straight to cattle, so you get both the food value plus the ethanol just for the cost of distilling the ethanol. The real potential for making a huge dent in our petroleum habit comes from developing the ethanol process for using cellulosetype feedstocks combined with starches and sugars. This

process allows for sustainably multicropping U.S. farmlands to produce 5,000 to 10,000 gallons per acre while improving soil fertility and feeding livestock (Blume 2007, 28).

According to recent studies, the EROI for agriculturally derived biodiesel fuels runs from 2.35 to 4.50 using soy, sunflower, and canola oil feedstocks (ignoring the Pimentel studies, which appear to have a petroleum-industry bias). A promising new biodiesel technology has biodiesel fuel processed from algae grown in conjunction with coal-fired power plants. Emissions gases from the coal-fired power plants are scrubbed with water to sequester CO_2 and NOx emissions. The warm, highly carbonated scrubbing waters become the feedstocks for special, oil-intensive algae. "GreenFuels estimates their closed algae system to be 20 to 40 percent less expensive than equivalent scrubbers for a power plant," so for a little more than the cost of scrubbers that must be added to clean coal power plant emissions in the United States, you can turn these emissions into biodiesel fuel (Hall et al. 2008, 84). In the case of biodiesels fed from coal-fired power plant emissions, the biodiesel fuel does not reduce the carbon emissions from the burning of the coal, since it eventually gets burned in an engine, but it does offset the carbon emissions from an equivalent amount of petroleum and also decreases our dependency on oil imports.

Facts about Oil and Other Energy Sources

- In 2004, the world produced about 30.5 billion barrels of oil, but discovered only about 7.5 billion barrels of new oil, which is typical of the trend for the past decade or two.
- With 5 percent of the world population, the United States consumed 24 percent of world oil production in 2006 and has only 3 percent of the world's remaining known oil reserves.
- U.S. oil production peaked in 1970 at about 10 million barrels a day and has since declined to about 5 million barrels a day in 2003.
- World oil production essentially reached a plateau in 2002 and may have actually peaked in 2006.
- Every year since 2001, oil companies have spent more money looking for oil than the oil they found was currently worth. For example, in the years 2002–2004, oil companies spent roughly $8 billion per year on exploration, but on average found less than $4 billion worth of oil for each of these years. Considering the current rate of oil depletion and inflating prices, that oil is bound to be worth more by the time they pump it out of the ground.
- More than 400 gallons of oil equivalent are expended to feed each American each year (Heinberg 2006, 52).
- Since 1947, the U.S. government has spent $145 billion on nuclear R and D (research and development), compared with around $5 billion on renewable energy R and D.
- About 65 percent of the world's known oil reserves lie in the Middle East.
- It took China 20 years to build an automobile fleet of 10 million cars in 2003, but only 3 years to double that number in 2006. China is expected to surpass the United States in oil consumption around 2010.

- In 2005, China consumed almost 40 percent of the world's coal production (coal is the number-one contributor to both air pollution and greenhouse gases) and the United States came in second at about 20 percent. Due to its high coal usage, China now surpasses the United States as the world's number-one contributor of greenhouse gases.
- West African oil reserves are only about one-tenth the size of those in the Middle East.
- Due to extensive worldwide geophysical exploration efforts during the past three decades, many petroleum geologists believe that roughly 95 percent of the world's petroleum resources have already been discovered. According to renowned geologist and petroleum industry executive Colin Campbell, "It is almost inconceivable now that major fields remain to be found."
- According to physicist Amory Lovins, in simple terms, electricity from new light-water nuclear reactors will cost twice as much as from new wind farms, five to ten times as much as distributed, gas-fired co-generation or tri-generation in buildings and factories, and three to thirty times as much as the cost of saving an equivalent amount of energy through investing in energy and end-use efficiency improvements (Lovins 2005, 258).
- The EROI for making ethanol from corn is, at best, only a little over one returned for one invested, meaning you get just a little more energy back than you put into making ethanol from corn, so if we had to depend on corn as the future of biofuels to wean us from our oil addiction, we would be out of luck. Fortunately, there are ethanol processes and feedstocks that offer far better returns than factory-farmed corn. In an exhaustive study of Brazilian ethanol production, taking all aspects of production of farm and processing equipment (steel mining, casting, rubber tires, etc.), Isaias Macedo's analysis shows an EROI of 9:1 using sugarcane. According to ethanol pioneer David Blume, using sustainably grown polycultures of mixed cellulose/starch/sugar crops can yield more than 10,000 gallons of ethanol per acre compared with the hundreds of gallons per acre from ethanol production using traditional starch and sugar monocropping (Blume 2007, 29).
- Natural gas is the number one feedstock in the production of synthetic fertilizers, comprising 80 to 90 percent of the cost of fertilizer, which is used to grow the food that feeds about one-third of the world's 6.6 billion people. Natural gas produces 20 percent of the electricity and heats more than half the homes in the United States. As oil production goes into decline and greenhouse gases get more attention, many countries are seeking to shift more energy consumption onto natural gas, since its use produces far less greenhouse gases than both coal and oil. Unfortunately, natural gas wells have similar life curves to oil wells. Production of natural gas peaked in the United States in 1973 and has been declining irregularly ever since. A similar world peak in production could occur around 2020, if current trends continue for shifting energy production to natural gas and the world economy continues to grow (Darley 2004, 122). **—Adapted from James Howard Kunstler's *The Long Emergency: Surviving the Converging Catastrophes of the Twenty First Century* plus other sources**

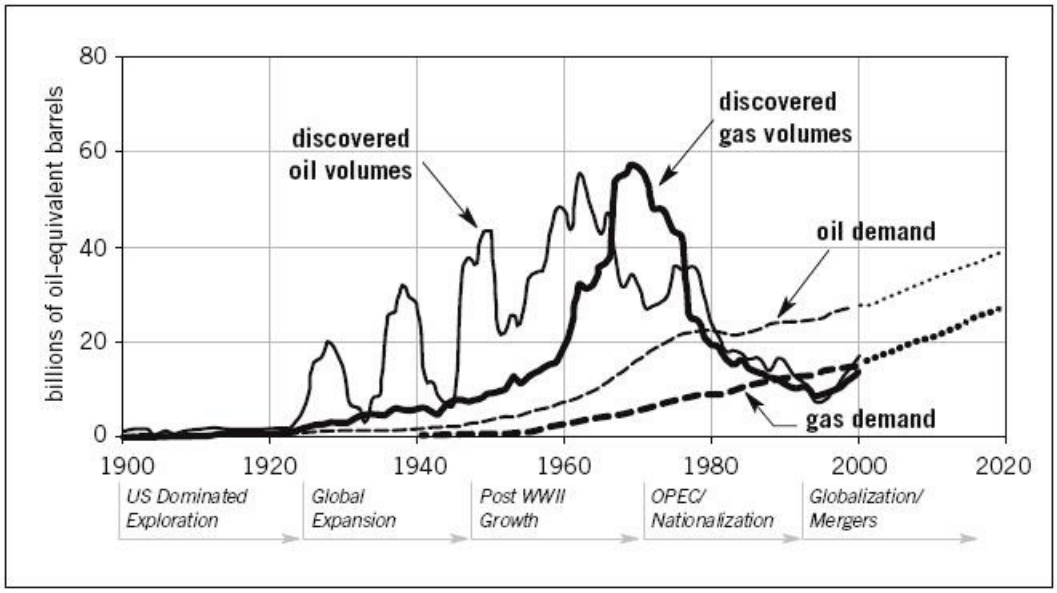


Figure 2-11. World oil and gas discovery and production (called demand here), with predictions, according to ExxonMobil. (Source: Laherrère, 2003)

THE BIO-THREAT

> Certain bacterial infections now defy all antibiotics. **—Stuart Levy, M.D.**

> The heightened alarm comes in response to a federal report indicating that the bacteria, Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, or MRSA, are responsible for more deaths in the United States each year than AIDS. **—Ian Urbina, *New York Times,* October 19, 2007**

Most of us believe that widespread plagues are a thing of the past, that diseases can never again slaughter huge numbers of people and ravage the planet as they have for countless centuries. Quite the opposite is true. Due to the potential for viruses to mutate into deadly new strains, the increasing number of antibiotic-resistant strains of bacteria, the widespread opportunities for bio-weapons to fall into terrorist hands, and the almost instantaneous intercontinental transport of humans and animals via air travel, the risk of worldwide plagues is probably worse now than ever before.

Imagine a Hurricane Katrina–sized catastrophe occurring in 50 major U.S. cities at the same time, and you have an idea of the worst-case scenario for a crippling global pandemic. Medical centers, essential services, and government personnel would be overwhelmed. If there was no viable vaccine, or if one was only available in limited quantities, healthcare workers would desert medical facilities to care for the sick in their own homes or to simply get out of the cities to improve their own chances for survival. If this sounds far-fetched, realize that this was exactly the scenario when the Spanish flu hit the United States in 1918, killing more people in a few short months than had died in all of WWI. When Hurricane Katrina struck New Orleans,

most of the city's emergency personnel evacuated with their families, leaving the poor and elderly behind. In the aftermath of Kobe, Japan's devastating quake, the initial response was terribly slow, partially due to the fact that a high percentage of the local public workers and medical personnel were themselves victims of the quake.

Viruses do not respond readily to antibiotics, and it often takes many years to develop vaccines for specific viruses. For example, after spending billions of dollars on research, scientists have yet to produce viable vaccines for the AIDS, Ebola, and dengue hemorrhagic fever viruses. Just like the flu virus of 1918, which killed an estimated 20 to 50 million victims worldwide, a new strain of deadly virulent virus could emerge at any time and quickly spread throughout the world. Or a plague could spread from an existing bio-weapons virus, like the dreaded Marburg virus, first introduced into the Soviet arsenal in 1990.

During the winter of 2006–2007, there were almostweekly articles in major media about the potential for the avian flu virus (H5N1) to mutate into a more virulent form that could cause a global pandemic. This particular avian influenza virus is both highly resistant to antiviral medications and very deadly to humans. The death rate for reported human cases of avian flu is slightly more than 60 percent (a shockingly high death rate). Luckily, this strain of virus is not currently contagious among humans, with only approximately 335 reported cases as of November 12, 2007, and most of those cases resulting from direct contact with infected domestic fowl (World Health Organization 2007). You might ask, "If bird flu is not contagious, and mostly infects farm workers in direct contact with sick birds, why worry?" Good question. The concern is due to the ability for common viruses to share genetic material between different strains, sometimes resulting in mutations that combine the deadly properties of one strain with the contagious properties of another. Of course, any virus has this potential for gene swapping, not just bird flu. If luck is on our side, and so far it has been, the bird flu will continue to pass us by, like the swine flu did in 1976. Unfortunately, there are other "super bugs" out there that are already both virulent and antibiotic resistant, so they are much more of a present threat than the bird flu. Take the case of MDR (multidrug-resistant) and XDR (extensively drug-resistant) tuberculosis, which are a major concern to health officials around the world. Estimates for the number of people in the world infected with these diseases vary from one-half million to 1.5 million people. The XDR version is much rarer than MDR. However, it is also much more difficult to treat, with a treatment success rate of only about 30 percent in areas with good TB-control programs, so it has officials worried about the potential for pandemic should the XDR form start to show up more often (World Health Organization 2007).

In May 2007, the story of an American man honeymooning in Europe, who was believed to have contracted the XDR form of TB, made headlines when he disappeared from health officials' radar and hopped a public plane from Europe to Canada. The Centers for Disease Control (CDC) were so concerned about the threat that he posed to the general public that they tracked him down in upstate New York, issued a federal isolation order (the first such order issued in four decades), and forced him to wait in isolation at a hospital in Manhattan for a few days until they could pick him up in a private CDC jet. They transported him to Grady Hospital in Atlanta and then on to Denver in a medevac plane for further tests and treatment (*New York Times*, July 5, 2007).

XDR-TB is very serious—we are potentially getting close to a bacteria that we

have no tools, no weapons against. **—Paul Sommerfeld, *Stop TB,* BBC News, September 6, 2006**

The good news is that there are many alternative medicines, herbs, and treatments that provide excellent results against a wide variety of viruses and antibiotic resistant bacteria to which mainstream Western medicine has little or nothing to offer. The bad news is that 99 percent of the doctors in our hospitals are not trained in these alternatives, and if you wait until a pandemic starts, you will have only a slim chance for locating an available health practitioner familiar with one of these alternative tools.

> During Spanish flu pandemic of 1918, which killed up to 50 million people worldwide, homeopathic physicians in the U.S. reported very low mortality rates among their patients, while flu patients treated by conventional physicians faced mortality rates of around 30 percent. W. A. Dewey, M.D., gathered data from homeopathic physicians treating flu patients around the country in 1918 and published his findings in the Journal of the American Institute of Homeopathy in 1920. Homeopathic physicians in Philadelphia, for example, reported a mortality rate of just over one percent for the more than 26,000 flu patients they treated during the pandemic.
>
> Today, a number of homeopathic remedies for the flu are available, including oscillo, or oscillococcinum, which has been shown to shorten the duration of symptoms when taken within 48 hours of onset. Homeopaths have been given this remedy since 1925. Interestingly, it's made from the heart and liver of ducks, which carry flu viruses in their digestive tracts. **—Excerpted from "Could Homeopathy Prevent a Pandemic?" by Tijn Touber and Kim Ridley, *Ode Magazine,* January 2006, issue 30**

Not all biological threats come from terrorists and third-world viruses. A significant and growing threat is cultivated in the United States on our modern factory farms. Some bright researchers figured out that farm animals fed subclinical doses of antibiotics grow faster than animals that eat regular feed. This has been a boon to the pharmaceutical industry (40 percent of U.S.-made antibiotics are fed to animals), but it is also leading to the end of "The Age of Wonder Drugs." Since bacteria reproduce at 500,000 times the rate of humans, natural genetic selection has made antibiotic-fed farm animals into a perfect breeding ground for growing super-microbes that are resistant to modern medicines. When Jim Henson, the beloved creator of *The Muppets*, succumbed to a pneumonia-like infection from an antibiotic-resistant form of strep (Group A beta-hemolytic streptococci), the best doctors and antibiotics that money could buy were not able to save his life.

When it comes to antibiotic-resistant bacteria and deadly viruses, so-called "alternative medicine," including herbs and a variety of other treatments, could be your most effective form of treatment and prevention. A few years ago, my wife suffered from an antibiotic-resistant urinary infection that was probably caused by the same strain of antibiotic-resistant *E. coli* that reportedly plagued women across the country. We spent more than $1,000 on doctors and multiple courses of three different antibiotics, including the infamous Cipro, but the infection returned every time we tried to discontinue the Cipro, which was the only antibiotic that had any

positive effect.

After months of unsuccessful medical treatment, she was finally able to kick the infection when she resorted to an alternative medicine combination of grapefruit seed extract (from the health food store) and large quantities of homemade antibiotic colloidal silver solution. I highly recommend that you spend some time reading Chapter 9, "When High-Tech Medicine Fails." That chapter covers herbs for boosting your immune system and alternative medicines that could work when Western-style allopathic medicines fail or are simply unavailable. It also includes instructions on how to make your own colloidal silver generator using three 9-volt batteries, silver wire, and other simple components readily available at Radio Shack. Colloidal silver has been shown to be effective against over 600 strains of bacteria that have not shown the ability to develop resistance to colloidal silver.

For more information on herbs and alternative medicines and therapies that could make a huge difference when dealing with the bio-threat, see Chapter 9, "When High-Tech Medicine Fails."

THE TERRORISM THREAT

"For over seven years," bin Laden averred in 1998, "the United States has been occupying the lands of Islam in the holiest of places, the Arabian Peninsula, plundering its riches, dictating to its rulers, humiliating its people, terrorizing its neighbors, and turning its bases in the Peninsula into a spearhead through which to fight the neighboring Muslim peoples." To erase this blight on the Muslim world, he thundered, it was "an individual duty for every Muslim" to "kill the Americans" and drive their armies "out of all the lands of Islam." **—Michael T. Klare, *Blood and Oil: The Dangers and Consequences of America's Growing Dependency on Imported Petroleum***

For the life of me, I cannot understand why the terrorists have not attacked our food supply, because it is so easy to do. **—Tommy Thompson, Health and Human Services Secretary, CNN News, *Paula Zahn Now,* December 6, 2004**

I could sit down now with my training in the CIA and people I know and do a concerted military attack on Saudi facilities, standoff attacks with rockets, and take five, six million barrels off the market (Baer). . . . So could a plane packed with explosives if it crashed into Ras Tanura, a 9/11 style scenario that Baer says is also possible. The loss of more than one-half of the desert kingdom's (Saudi Arabia) normal production would turn disaster here into a global economic nightmare. (Robertson) **—Robert Baer, former CIA officer, and Nic Robertson, CNN senior international correspondent, CNN News, *Paula Zahn Now,* December 6, 2004**

The destruction of the World Trade Center and the continuing terrorist threats in today's world have plunged a lot of people into a downward spiral of fear. For some, this fear has been paralyzing. For others, it simply brings restless nights and anxiety. In spite of the fact that our chances of being caught directly in the midst of some terrorist act has been estimated at one in 80,000, much smaller than being caught in a bad traffic accident, most of us find it hard to shake the fear that terrorism could strike ourselves or our loved ones (Mueller 2006).

We are all well aware of the potential for horrendous accidents on our freeways, yet we drive on our freeways with only passing concerns about traffic accidents. Victims of both terrorism and car accidents are usually innocent people who happened to be in the wrong place at the wrong time, so what makes the image of a fatal accident on the freeway so much less intimidating than those jets flying into the Twin Towers? The most obvious answer is the magnitude of the events, but another key factor is insurance. Most of us have automotive and medical insurance, but who has insurance against terrorism? Emergency preparedness is one form of terrorism insurance that can help you put your mind at ease, knowing that you have done your best to protect yourself and family.

Before September 11, if you mentioned emergency preparedness, it tended to conjure up images of survivalists crawling around in the woods, shooting at each other with paintball guns and preparing to fight off the starving hordes in some grim apocalyptic fantasy. Not so anymore. In today's world of terrorist acts, global warming, and super-storms, we recognize that most of us will probably experience significant disruptions in the flow of electricity and goods at some point in our lives. Stocking up on a few extra supplies, learning some new skills, and formulating a simple family disaster plan doesn't take a lot of time or money, and it's cheap insurance that can foster peace of mind in turbulent times. I suggest that you do the right thing for yourselves, your friends, and your family, by spending some time in Chapter 3 to generate a disaster-preparedness plan, and putting together an emergency supply kit to help carry you through at least a few days without access to potable water or central services, should the need ever occur.

> For more instruction and information on what you can do to be prepared for disasters and emergencies, see Chapter 3, "Supplies and Preparations."

OTHER IMPORTANT TRENDS

Water and Food

> The drought- and heat-damaged US grain harvest in 1988, which fell below domestic consumption for the first time in history, gives us a glimpse of how hotter summers may affect agriculture over the longer term. **—Lester R.Brown, Christopher Flavin, and Sandra Postel, *Saving the Planet***

According to Worldwatch Institute Senior Fellow Sandra Postel, 40 percent of the world's food

comes from irrigated cropland, and this irrigation accounts for two-thirds of global water usage. So much water is now being used for irrigation and other human purposes that little or none of the fresh water from several major rivers—including the Yellow in China, the Colorado in the American Southwest, the Indus in Pakistan, the Nile in Egypt, the Chao Phraya in Thailand, and the Ganges in India—reaches the sea for significant portions of the year (Postel 1999, 71). Overpumping of groundwater for irrigation is also causing rising groundwater salinity and steadily dropping water table levels in many of the major grain-producing areas of the world. Wherever this trend continues, groundwater eventually becomes unusable or too costly to use for irrigation. Worldwide, one in five acres of irrigated land suffers from a buildup of salt in the soil. Two-thirds of California's rampant groundwater depletion occurs in the Central Valley, which supplies about half the country's fruits and vegetables. Spreading water shortages threaten to reduce global food production by 10 percent at a time when population could double within 50 years. For a detailed analysis and possible solutions to the coming irrigation crisis, check out Postel's book, *Pillar of Sand: Can the Irrigation Miracle Last?*

> The stream of food that sustains the human population is being produced by constantly moving onto new land while leaving behind exhausted, salted, eroded, or paved soils. Obviously this practice can't go on forever. . . . Water sustainability is not possible without climate sustainability, which means energy sustainability. Humanity is dealing with one, large, interlinked system. **—Donella Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows, *Limits to Growth: The 30-Year Update***

The giant agricultural businesses that supply most of our food rely heavily on oil to fuel the tractors, transport the food, and produce the fertilizers and pesticides currently used to maintain high levels of productivity. Some experts have said that we are literally eating oil, since it is oil that has fueled the world's dramatic increase in food productivity over the last century. As oil production declines, available water for irrigation decreases, and arable cropland is lost to rising salinity, how will we feed a planet with a population of 9 billion people?

Depletion of the Ozone Layer: A Modern Eco-Success Story

> I just came home one night and told my wife, "The work is going very well, but it looks like the end of the world." **—Scientist Sherwood F.Rowland, on his research into the ozone-eating capacity of the chlorine molecule (McKibben 1989, 41)**

The discovery of the ozone-depleting nature of CFCs (the classic refrigerant gases known by the trade name Freon), its potentially catastrophic effects on human and animal life on Earth, and the resulting successful multinational action, is a story well worth relating here. When the initial scientific discovery of CFC-caused ozone depletion was announced, scientists were very skeptical of the results and were sure that things could not be as bad as preliminary findings indicated. They were wrong. Dr. Michael McElroy, chair of Harvard University's Earth and

Planetary Sciences Department, explained, “When researchers finally conducted actual ozone measurements in the atmosphere, their findings were far worse than the worst-case scenarios of the models. . . . Just because a situation is uncertain does not imply that the underlying reality is benign” (Gelbspan 1997, 31).

Almost everyone has heard that the Earth’s ozone layer is thinning and had developed holes. What is ozone and why is it important to the planet? Ozone is a molecule made up of three atoms of oxygen, instead of the usual two. At ground level, ozone is very unstable and highly reactive. As it reacts with other substances, ozone’s third oxygen atom splits off to oxidize whatever it reacts with, leaving behind an ordinary oxygen molecule instead of ozone. In the upper atmosphere, ozone normally forms a stable, self-regenerating layer that plays a critical part in shielding out harmful concentrations of ultraviolet radiation. Ultraviolet radiation is the part of sunlight that causes sunburn and contributes to skin cancers. Most earthly plant and animal life developed under this umbrella of ozone and, as a result, cannot live without the shielding effects of the ozone layer.

Manufactured compounds—especially CFCs—have been implicated in the destruction of atmospheric ozone. CFCs are normally very stable, lasting 50 to 100 years before finally breaking down. Unfortunately, even though CFCs are slightly heavier than air, swirling winds provide enough driving force to cause CFCs to slowly migrate from the lower levels of the atmosphere into the upper levels, where high-energy rays from the sun break them apart, liberating a chlorine atom into the ozone layer. Each free atom of chlorine acts as a catalyst, causing thousands of ozone molecules to disintegrate before finally reacting with something other than ozone, which removes it from circulation. In addition to CFCs, each new launch of a space shuttle delivers tons of chlorine molecules from burned rocket fuel directly to the upper atmosphere, where they eat away at the planet’s ozone shield. Because of the long lifetime of the CFC molecules in the lower atmosphere, the ozone destruction effects are somewhat cumulative.

The good news is that CFC concentrations in the lower atmosphere are gradually decreasing. This is a powerful example of humans acknowledging a true environmental crisis and taking positive unified international action to remedy the situation. The Montreal Protocol of 1987 introduced international guidelines to control the worldwide phase-out of the production of CFCs. Even though their concentration in the lower atmosphere is now diminishing, CFCs are expected to generate dangerously low concentrations of ozone in the upper atmosphere for at least the next 30 years and will continue to affect ozone concentrations for the next century. For a more complete and highly informative description of the ozone problem, its reactions, and chemistry, see Bill McKibben’s *The End of Nature*.

Polar Ice Caps

> In January of 1995 a vast section of ice, the size of Rhode Island, broke off the Larsen ice shelf in Antarctica. Although it received scant coverage in the press, it was one of the most spectacular and nightmarish manifestations yet of the ominous changes occurring on the planet. **—Ross Gelbspan, *The Heat Is On***

> Hans Jensen is a cartographer at the Geological Survey of Denmark and Greenland, which produces topographical maps for mining and oil companies. Last summer he spotted several new islands in an area where a massive ice shelf had broken up. . . . The sudden appearance of the islands is a symptom of an ice sheet going into retreat, scientists say. Greenland is covered by 630,000 cubic miles of ice, enough water to raise global sea levels by 23 feet. Carl Egede Boggild, a professor of snow-and-ice physics at the university of Svalbard, said Greenland could be losing more than 80 cubic miles of ice per year. "That corresponds to three times the volume of all the glaciers in the Alps," Dr. Boggild said . . . "Global warming has profoundly altered the nature of polar exploration, said Mr. Schmitt, who in 40 years has logged more than 100 Arctic expeditions. Routes once pioneered on a dogsled are routinely paddled in a kayak now; many features, like the Ward Hunt Ice Shelf in Greenland's northwest, have disappeared for good. **—John Collins Rudolf, "The Warming of Greenland,"** ***New York Times,*** **January 16, 2007**

The melting of polar ice caps and the rapid shrinking of most of the Earth's glaciers is not a far-off future event. It is happening now. Measurements on the antarctic peninsula show that its average annual temperature has risen 5ºF during the past 20 years. Dr. Rodolfo del Valle, an Argentine research scientist who witnessed the gargantuan disintegration of the Antarctic Larsen ice shelf, said that he and his colleagues had predicted the ice shelf would disintegrate in 10 years, "but it happened in 2 months." He went on to say, "Recently I've seen rocks poke through the surface of the ice that had been buried for 20,000 years" (Gelbspan 1997, 2). In the north, the area covered by Arctic Ocean sea ice has shrunk by 6 percent since 1978, and this icepack has thinned by an almost unbelievable 40 percent in less than 30 years (Mastny 2000, 3).

The polar ice caps affect the balance of the Earth's system in at least two major ways. They store huge amounts of water and they act as giant reflectors, reflecting the sun's radiation back into space. Archaeological records indicate that the Earth's oceans were 500 feet lower during the last ice age than they are now, and according to leading Australian marine scientist John Church, sea levels were 12 to 24 feet higher more than 100,000 years ago, when temperatures were at levels expected to be reached at the end of this century (Byrnes 2007). The IPCC has released rather dire predictions for sea-level rise, but according to a study by the University of California's National Snow Data Center, arctic ice has been declining at a rate of 7.8 percent a decade, which is three times faster than the 2.5 percent rate predicted by the IPCC computer models. If things keep going along these trends, it looks like global warming and devastating sea-level increases may well occur two to three times as fast, and two to three times as extreme, as the experts have been predicting (Lean 2007). If significant portions of the polar ice caps continue to melt, not only will the oceans rise, but also the Earth will probably warm even more due to increased absorption and decreased reflection of the sun's rays from the polar regions—another probable feedback loop with potentially dire consequences.

EARTHQUAKES AND VOLCANOES

I live in the High Sierra Mountains, near Lake Tahoe on the California–Nevada border. In February 1998, my family was shaken out of bed by a 5.3 magnitude earthquake centered about 7 miles from our home. The quake that shook us out of bed was from a fault that had been labeled "inactive" and caughtthe geologists totally by surprise. Most people think that California is all sunshine and warmth, but our high mountain town of Truckee is widely known for regularly having record-low temperatures. On this particular morning, the temperature was hovering a little below 0°F. Needless to say, we would have had a rough time if our car keys, wallets, and clothes had disappeared in a collapsed house, leaving us standing in our pajamas in subzero weather. Certainly this drives home the importance of keeping an emergency kit, including a few clothes and rations, in the family car.

Most Americans think earthquakes are only a problem in California and possibly Alaska, but that isn't necessarily the case. Remember that earthquake predictions are based on statistical averages. Living in an area that is not known for earthquakes does not mean you won't ever experience a major earthquake. What it does mean is that you have a smaller chance of experiencing one. It is a little-known fact that the largest earthquakes on record in the United States did not happen in California but along the Mississippi River in New Madrid, Missouri, in late 1811 and early 1812. The quakes were so powerful that they shook down chimneys 360 miles away in Cincinnati and changed the course of the Mississippi River for more than 100 miles.

Earthquake prediction is based on the study of past earthquake patterns. It generates statistics about the probability of an earthquake within a certain magnitude range occurring in a specified region over a specified period of time. A typical prediction for the San Francisco Bay area might read something like, "The San Francisco Bay Area is overdue for a significant earthquake. We believe that this area has a 70 percent chance of having an earthquake in the 7.5 to 9.5 range sometime in the next 30 years." Except in rare instances when undeniable geological signs indicate that a major quake is imminent, modern scientific methods cannot give accurate earthquake warnings. And we think weather forecasters have a hard time being accurate!

Could California fall into the ocean? It is highly unlikely that a quake could accomplish this feat, but it is both likely and probable that California will be struck by violent quakes in the not-too-distant future. It is simply a question of when, where, and how severe they will be. In recent geologic history, smaller chunks of land have fallen into the ocean—part of the island of Crete disappeared under the sea during the time of the Minoan civilization. At no time in recorded history, however, has a physical earth change occurred on the magnitude of California falling into the ocean. There are tales of such disasters, such as the great flood, handed down in the biblical story of Noah and the older epic of Gilgamesh. If disasters on this order of magnitude have already occurred, they may have wiped out civilizations, leaving only legends, like the stories of the fabled lost continent of Atlantis.

Increasing volcanic activity in the Pacific Rim of Fire (the ring of volcanoes around the Pacific Ocean) is one potential sign that the Earth is "waking up" from a period of relative calm to a more geologically active period that will bring both earthquakes and volcanic eruptions. Unlike

major earthquakes, volcanic eruptions are apt to give distinct warnings, provided the volcanoes are carefully monitored.

I watched a documentary program on the 1994 eruption of dual volcanoes outside the city of Rabaul, the one-time capital of Pau Pau, New Guinea**.** The first part of the program showed a beautiful tropical island paradise. The island's main city, Rabaul, is located on a bay formed from an ancient caldera—a huge crater-like depression created by a volcanic explosion or the collapse of a volcano. The islanders had all been evacuated following weeks of increasingly strong and closely spaced earthquakes. Three days later, when the island's two volcanic peaks erupted, cameramen were on location to film the eruption. The film footage captured its violence: plumes of smoke and ash extended miles into the sky from peaks on both sides of the city's bay. Footage of the island, 1 year after the eruption, looked like film clips from a science fiction movie about the end of the world. An eerie moon-like landscape had replaced the lush, green, tropical paradise. A few old jalopies were seen driving along tracks in the volcanic dust. The stripped remains of palm trees and old buildings dotted the landscape of rolling mounds of ash. California's Long Valley, located near Mammoth Mountain ski resort, and Wyoming's Yellowstone National Park are both active geothermal calderas formed when ancient volcanoes blew their tops in mega-explosions that would have made the eruption of Mount St. Helens look mild. In recent years, both of these calderas are showing signs of increasing seismic and geothermal activity similar to those shown by Rabaul in the years leading up to its eruption.

Although there is no reason to panic, I suggest that it is reasonable to consider and create a plan for the possibility of a significant earthquake happening in your neighborhood, even if you don't live in an area that is prone to earthquakes. And if you live in an area like the Pacific Coast, where significant volcanic eruptions and earthquakes are commonly acknowledged as an ever-present danger, you should plan accordingly.

PROPHECIES

> Our prophecies predict a period of forty years of pollution of the land, air, and water that is so severe only a few will survive. We call this the Day of Purification, and for many white people it is the Day of Judgment. It's the same thing and the cycle has already started—four decades of destruction, natural disasters and a general breakdown in society. Only a few places will be safe, and it will be the end of modern society as we know it. . . . Before anyone from Europe came to this land it was written on the rocks that a great gourd of ashes will drop on this world and pollute it. . . . I have seen in a vision that survivors will come walking out of the cities. Thousands of hungry and cold people will leave California, walking down I-80 carrying their belongings on their backs. . . . If spiritual people get together and put things back in their proper order, the prophecies can be changed. **—Rolling Thunder, Native American medicine man, from *Rolling Thunder Speaks: A Message for Turtle Island***

Quite a number of widely believed gloom-and-doom prophecies have never come to pass. Before the year 1000 A.D., many Christians believed that the previous millennium would bring the second coming of Christ and the battle of Armageddon. In the 1890s, numerous Plains tribal

members believed that their participation in the Ghost Dance would guarantee their survival and deliver them from the white man.

Most Native American tribes have recorded prophecies and visions of a coming time of tribulation and cleansing of the planet, followed by a return to a long period of peace and harmony. A Hopi prophecy spoke of a "gourd of ashes, making the rivers boil and the fish turn up on their bellies" dropped upon the Earth (nuclear bombs?), signaling the approach of these times. Hopi Elders have addressed the United Nations assembly with their concerns. According to their legends, we are nearing the end of the "fourth world." Hopi elders say that humankind has developed three previous highly technological societies, and that each of these was destroyed in cataclysmic Earth changes, after these societies fell out of balance and abused the Earth. The last of these cataclysms is considered to be the great flood, as recorded in the Bible and the epic of Gilgamesh. Prophecies of many different tribes speak of a time when indigenous peoples will unite with white men who are "Indians in their heart" to revitalize the planet.

In contrast to the deterministic view of a fixed future, there is the belief that the individual and collective actions of humankind are what determine our future. Many seers and visionaries, such as Edgar Cayce and Rolling Thunder, state that the future is constantly in a state of flux and that the collective consciousness of the planet has a powerful influence on the timing and magnitude of major future events. Depending on your viewpoint, you might say that this is either the excuse or the reason for the inaccuracy of the dates and magnitude of psychic predictions. The following biblical selection indicates that even biblical prophecy is not cast in stone:

> Jonah obeyed the word of the Lord and went to Nineveh. . . . and He proclaimed: "Forty more days and Nineveh will be destroyed." The Ninevites believed God. They declared a fast and all of them, from the greatest to the least, put on sack cloth. . . . When God saw what they did and how they turned from their evil ways, He had compassion and did not bring upon them the destruction He had threatened. **Jonah (3:3–3:10)**

The sparing of the people of Nineveh indicates a biblical precedent for the belief in humankind's potential to change the course of the future. Some modern prophets are not so sanguine. Thom Hartmann, in *The Prophet's Way*, describes a chilling vision of the Earth that he experienced on waking from a sound sleep:

> In the air a few feet in front of me, a globe materialized, slowly spinning. . . . I immediately recognized it as the Earth, as seen from space. . . . It was both real and not-real: like a hologram projected into the air. As I watched, the land masses began to darken. Small black pustules formed, like little blisters or cancers on the Earth. The blue of the oceans became brown and muddy around these areas. The cancers slowly expanded, blackening the Earth and cracking it in places, until they covered virtually all the land of the planet. The clouds turned a death-like yellow-gray, and the waters no longer sparkled blue but were a dull and putrid greenbrown.
>
> A thought came into my mind as if a voice were speaking to me: "The Earth is a living thing. It is infected."

> Then the Earth shuddered as it spun. It jerked to one side, as if the spin were changing, and the blackened areas split open. The Earth shuddered again, and the black areas cracked and shattered into fragments, falling off into the air around the image and vanishing. The Earth was once again clear and clean, spinning gracefully, displaying oceans the color of lapis lazuli and land richly covered with green. The voice in my mind said, "The Earth has healed itself."
>
> The image vanished and I lay back in my bed, realizing that the infection in my vision was humankind. . . .
>
> I couldn't sleep, so I pulled out a Bible from the stack of books next to my bed. I flipped it open to a random page toward the end and my eyes looked down at the words of the Book of Revelation (11:18): . . . and I shall destroy them which destroy the Earth."

Hartmann interpreted this vision as a warning. Every major change, he believes, is "preceded by signs and markers."

WHAT CAN I DO ?

> We must do what we can. Always. At night we must go to sleep knowing that we have done our best, and there is no more you can do than that. Do not let the problems overwhelm you. Start somewhere, anywhere, with just the smallest gesture of compassion, and you have made a dent against the evil of the world. — **Gottfried Muller, in Thom Hartmann's *The Prophet's Way***

I sincerely believe that there are solutions with positive outcomes for our planet. It is my hope that, as a race, we will develop the vision and commitment needed to find and implement these solutions. When societies are highly motivated, they can marshal huge forces to accomplish great things. When Hitler joined forces with Mussolini and Japan, the threat was enough to unite the Russians and Americans with the rest of the world in a common goal. If we could put humans on the moon, build the Panama Canal, defeat Hitler, and rebuild Europe after WWII, why can't we unite to create a viable planetary civilization? So far, we lack not the means, but only the will and the leadership. We can all take actions both to individually prepare for the future and to influence the global outcome. Martin Luther, the founder of the Protestant movement, was quoted as saying, "If I knew that the world was going to end tomorrow, I would still plant my apple tree today." Even if we can't individually alter the course of the universe, collectively we can, and we must remember that there is satisfaction, joy, and personal empowerment in taking action.

A friend of mine once described insanity as "doing the same thing over and over again and expecting a different result." This could also serve as a definition of normal human activity. As a race, we continue to do the same thing over and over again, refusing to take seriously the results of past actions. It is clear that new and different actions must be taken on personal, communal, and global levels if we wish to create a positive future for ourselves, our children, and our children's children.

One might compare humanity's treatment of our planet to long-term alcoholics' treatment of their bodies. At first, drinking is fun. Developing alcoholics suffer from the occasional hangover, but they are young and their bodies can take it. As time passes, the detrimental effects of years of heavy drinking creep up on them. Their faces age prematurely and they are often sick. Denial is their way of life. "I can handle it," they say, believing they can quit any time they want to. One day, an alcoholic awakes in a hospital bed to be told by a doctor that continued drinking will cause liver failure, followed by an early and very painful death. Does the alcoholic listen to the wake-up call and finally become motivated to positive action?

What will the people of our world collectively choose for our future? Will we choose denial right up to the point where we are on our planetary deathbed?

As with battling alcoholism, positive action to change the present situation is accomplished in steps. The first step is to align our thinking with our goals—to emerge from denial and educate ourselves about the current global situation and prospects for the future. I suggest you start by reading Lester Brown's *Plan B 3.0: Mobilizing to Save Civilization*, Thom Hartmann's *The Last Hours of Ancient Sunlight: The Fate of the World and What We Can Do Before It's Too Late,* Jared Diamond's brilliant *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed,* and William Catton's visionary *Overshoot: The Ecological Basis of Revolutionary Change*. These four books are sure to open your eyes as to what is really happening on our planet, and to what needs to be done if our civilization is not going to let business as usual drive us into collapse, famine, and massive die-off.

Our thinking needs to reflect personal empowerment, the realization that each of us is as powerful as the most powerful human being on this planet. We each have the ability to use our common birthright of conscious awareness and free will. Each of us can make a difference. Our thinking also needs to reflect interconnectedness. Seeing all life as interconnected and sacred helps to dissipate greed—the urge to use, exploit, control, and dominate. Directly experiencing nature—taking walks, camping, or hiking—helps to develop the sense of connection and reverence. Once our thinking is totally clear, we can act with conviction.

> Take a look at Chapter 16 for a deeper discussion of how we can help our world to make the shift to sustainability, and for a list of specific actions that we might take on the personal, community, and global levels.

REFERENCES

Trends and Solutions

***an B 3.0: Mobilizing to Save Civilization,* by Lester R. Brown.** 2008, 399 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393330878. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110 List price $16.95

If you want to read a single book that summarizes clearly the current state of the world and

how we got there, followed by a clear road map for how we must change our personal habits and government policies to give us the best chance to turn over a decent world to our children while avoiding global collapse, then this is the book for you. Brown shows us that if the United States would devote just one-sixth of its current military budget toward his Plan B budget, we would stand a good chance of turning our world around. *Plan B* is usually updated to a new edition every year or two, so make sure you get the latest edition (4.0, 5.0, etc.).

***e Last Hours of Ancient Sunlight: The Fate of the World and What We Can Do Before It's Too Late,* by Thom Hartmann.** 2004, 378 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1400051571. Published by Crown Publishing Group, 299 Park Ave., New York, NY 10171. List price $14.95

This book has inspired thousands of people, including actor Leonardo DiCaprio, to environmental action. Clear insights about how we got to where we are and how we might influence where we are headed. Great ideas and inspiration for finding our way to a positive, sustainable future for our world. *Highly recommended.*

***llapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed,* by Jared Diamond.** 2005, 592 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0143036555. Published by The Penguin Group, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $17.00

This is a masterful work written by a Pulitzer Prize–winning author. Don't let the sheer size of this book intimidate you. It is fascinating reading and goes remarkably fast. *Collapse* takes you on a journey through both ancient failed civilizations and modern ecological "hot-spots" to give the reader a clear view of paths that different societies have taken, and how they determined whether their peoples lived in long-term sustainable harmony or fell into social and ecological chaos and collapse. The parallels and lessons for our modern world are undeniable. The question is whether we will choose to learn from our planet's past and build a viable future or will choose to repeat old patterns and fall into the abyss. *Highly recommended.*

***inventing Collapse: The Soviet Example and American Prospects,* by Dimitry Orlov.** 2008, 176 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865716063. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, BC V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $17.95

If you are concerned about how the impending peak in world oil production might affect us here in the United States, I highly recommend you pick up a copy of Dimitri Orlov's *Reinventing Collapse*. Dimitri grew up in the former Soviet Union and immigrated to the United States about 10 years before the Soviet collapse. He traveled back and forth several times between these two countries, shortly before, during, and after the fall of the former Soviet Union. Orlov witnessed firsthand the effects on the Russian people as their systems of commerce, government, and paper currency totally collapsed. He draws poignant correlations between the United States' current precarious economic situation and Russia's precursors to collapse that are illuminating, sobering, and frightening. The observations and advice that Dimitri provides could prove extremely helpful for navigating your way through an all-toonear future. *Highly recommended.*

***ershoot: The Ecological Basis of Revolutionary Change,* by William R. Catton, Jr.** 1982, 298 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0252009884. Published by University of Illinois Press, 1325 South Oak Street, Champaign, IL 61820. List price $24.00

This terrific book is even more pertinent today than when it was written in 1982. I can't say enough good things about this book. *Overshoot* outlines ecological concepts, imperatives, and

terms more clearly and succinctly than any other book that I have ever read. If it were up to me, I would make this book required reading for both graduation from high school and entry into Congress. *Highly recommended.*

***ıtural Capitalism: Creating the Next Industrial Revolution,* by Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, and L. Hunter Lovins.** 1999, 378 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0316353007. Published by Little, Brown and Co., Time-Life Building, Sixth Ave., New York, NY 10020. List price $18.99

I wish *Natural Capitalism* were required reading for all engineers, businesspeople, and politicians. This book provides a blueprint for a worldwide business revolution that could go a long way toward providing a sustainable future for our children. *Natural Capitalism* explores changes that could reduce our current use of resources (the "natural capital" of the planet) by factors on the order of 10 to 1, without reducing our standard of living, by applying existing technologies and redirecting the way we do business. A rational, well-documented book with many case examples, it was written by three well-respected members of the ecological movement, including founders of the Rocky Mountain Institute. *Highly recommended.*

***mits to Growth: The 30-Year Update,* by Donella Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows.** 2004, 338 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498586. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing Company, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $22.50

Back in the early 1970s, a team of young scientists from MIT spent 2 years developing and working with a world computer simulation program called "World3" that was designed to study the potential consequences of current global patterns of growth and consumption. The computer model results were staggering and made quite a stir when announced to the world and subsequently published in *Limits to Growth* by Donella Meadows, Dennis Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and William H. Behrens III. In one scenario after another, the computer model invariably predicted that human population would swell to the point where it overshot the planet's capability to support the population, and then come crashing down as one system after another failed in mankind's final attempts to keep people fed, clothed, and housed. This 30-year update explores alternatives to change the course from collapse to sustainability. *Highly recommended.*

***rangely Like War: The Global Assault on Forests,* by Derrick Jensen and George Draffan.** 2003, 185 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498456. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing Company, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $15.00

With deforestation contributing as much as 25 percent of global greenhouse gas emissions and an epidemic of desertification across the planet, stemming the tide of deforestation may well make the difference between life and death for our species. Read this book to understand more about this critical issue. *Highly recommended.*

***ep Economy: The Wealth of Communities and the Durable Future,* by Bill McKibben**. 2007, 261 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0805076264. Published by Times Books, Henry Holt and Company, 175 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10010. List price $25.00

In this book Bill McKibben, author of the groundbreaking *End of Nature*, challenges the cult of growth and globalization and explores both what is working in our world and what is not. He offers us a glimpse of a better world where business takes place on a smaller, more personal level with a better shot at ushering in a sustainable future.

***08 State of the World: Innovations for a Sustainable Economy,* by The Worldwatch Institute.** 2008, 250 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393330311. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $18.95

The Worldwatch Institute comes out with a new edition of their excellent *State of the World* every year. *State of the World* summarizes current trends and includes several excellent informative chapters, contributed by different Worldwatch staff members and guest authors, on topics concerning the state and future of the world. This year's edition is exceptional. A collection of top-notch authors have each contributed articles on their personal areas of expertise pertaining to creating a viable sustainable world economy.

***tal Signs 2007–2008: The Trends That Are Shaping Our Future,* by The Worldwatch Institute.** 2006, 192 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393331295. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $16.95

The Worldwatch Institute also releases a new volume of their *Vital Signs* series each year. *Vital Signs* documents global trends in a broad variety of areas. It provides an excellent bird's-eye view of the state of the world via numerous brief articles on current trends and findings. Articles are heavily supported through graphical representations of relevant data.

***n Inconvenient Truth: The Planetary Emergency of Global Warming and What We Can Do about It,* by Al Gore.** 2006, 328 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1594865671. Published by Rodale Books, 33 E. Minor St., Emmaus, PA 18098. List price $23.95

This is a beautiful, graphic, eloquent, book that helps to explain global climate change and key related issues in a way that is easily understandable for the layperson. Al Gore's efforts to awaken the public to the need for action on these issues earned him the Nobel Peace Prize in 2007.

***e Winds of Change: Climate, Weather, and the Destruction of Civilizations,* by Eugene Linden.** 2006, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0684863535. Published by Simon and Schuster, 1230 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $15.00

This book greatly added to my understanding of how multiple scientific disciplines combine to give us a picture of past climactic changes and their effects on the peoples of the world. It provides a detailed picture of the science surrounding the climactic changes discussed in Jared Diamond's *Collapse* and how they pertain to today's world and the changes we are effecting. *Highly recommended.*

***e Weather Makers: How Man Is Changing the Climate and What It Means for Life on Earth,* by Tim Flannery.** 2005, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0802142924. Published by Atlantic Monthly Press, 841 Broadway, New York, NY 10003. List price $15.00

A very readable and illuminating book on this important topic. Coupled with *The Winds of Change*, these two books will tell you everything you need to know about global climate change, plus what you didn't want to know about greedy lobbyists paid by the oil, coal, and nuclear industries to wage a disinformation war in their attempts to head off organized public actions that might cut into their profits.

***eld Notes from a Catastrophe: Man, Nature, and Climate Change,* by Elizabeth Kolbert.** 2006, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1596911307. Published by Bloomsbury Publishing, 175 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10010. List price $13.95

In *Field Notes from a Catastrophe*, Elizabeth Kolbert takes us around the world in a firsthand account of how life is already changing drastically due to the effects of global climate change. From parched deserts, to houseboats on canals in the Netherlands, to Alaskan villages perched precariously on melting permafrost, her writings take global warming out of the abstract and into the world of in-your-face, life-shattering climate events.

***hen the Rivers Run Dry: Water—The Defining Crisis of the twenty-First Century,* by Fred Pearce.** 2007, 324 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0807085738. Published by Beacon Press, 25 Beacon St., Boston, MA 02108. List price $16.00

A very illuminating book on the water crisis that is currently engulfing our planet. The crisis in freshwater is critically linked to global climate change, industrialization, and the need to feed our growing population. We are on a collision course between shrinking resources and increasing demands, and water is one of the key limiting factors that have already reached crisis proportions. *Highly recommended.*

***rth: The Sequel: The Race to Reinvent Energy and Stop Global Warming,* by Fred Krupp and Miriam Horn.** 2008, 279 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0393066906. Published by W. W. Norton and Company., Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $24.95

Co-authored by the president of the Environmental Defense Fund, this fine book provides an inspiring survey of the gamut of near-term energy technologies and the companies turning them into reality. These are the technologies that stand a chance of solving global warming, providing badly need jobs, and salvaging our technological society in a world that has passed the peak in oil production. A pleasure to read some good news for a change!

***oubled Water: Saints, Sinners, Truths and Lies about the Global Water Crisis,* by Anita Roddick.** 2004, 138 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0954395933. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing Company, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $17.95

Along the lines of Al Gore's *Inconvenient Truth*, this book presents the current global water crisis in bold graphical terms. Not as meaty as *When the Rivers Run Dry,* it is an entertaining and illuminating quick read that brought my attention to, among other things, the negative effects of privatization on the public water supplies that so may of the people in the world rely on for their survival.

***ohazard: The Chilling True Story of the Largest Covert Biological Weapons Program in the World—Told from Inside by the Man Who Ran It,* by Ken Alibek.** 2000, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0385334969. Published by Delta Publishing, 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $16.00

If you want to know more about the bio-threats that lie hidden in secret laboratories around the world and are sometimes available for an exorbitant price to the highest bidder, then read this book. Sobering, chilling, and authored by the man who actually ran the Soviet biological weapons program before resigning his position and fleeing to the United States in 1992. Not a fun read, but very readable and very educational.

Peak Oil and Related Topics

***e Party's Over: Oil, War and the Fate of Industrial Societies,* 2nd edition, by Richard Heinberg.** 2005, 306 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715295. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, BC V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $17.95

This book and Kunstler's *The Long Emergency* are still my two favorite comprehensive introductions to the topic of Peak Oil. Of these two books, *The Party's Over* is a bit more rigorous and scholarly in its orientation (more details, graphs, and figures) whereas *The Long Emergency* is a bit more sharp and witty in its writing style. Both books are very readable, very educational, and make an excellent starting point for learning about Peak Oil and its ramifications for both our immediate and our long-term future. *Highly recommended.*

***e Long Emergency: Surviving the End of Oil, Climate Change and Other Converging Catastrophes of the Twenty-First Century,* by James Howard Kunstler.** 2006, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0802142498. Published by Atlantic Monthly Press, 841 Broadway, New York, NY 10003. List price $14.00

Heinberg's *The Party's Over* and this book are still my two favorite comprehensive introductions to the topic of Peak Oil. *The Long Emergency* is a wake-up call for America to snap out of our business-as-usual mode and realize that if we do not quickly change the energy base of our economy, and our way of doing business in general, then the same oil-based economy that fueled America's rise to its position as the greatest superpower on the planet will also be our downfall. I personally believe that a more positive future than Kunstler predicts is within our grasp, but only if we wake up and rapidly implement a new "Plan B" similar to the way we used the Marshall Plan to rebuild Europe and Japan after WWII. *Highly recommended.*

***cohol Can Be a Gas: Fueling an Ethanol Revolution for the 21st Century,* by David Blume.** 2007, 592 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0979043772. Published by The International Institute for Ecological Agriculture, 309 Cedar St. #127, Santa Cruz, CA 95060. List price $47.00

David Blume's opus, *Alcohol Can Be a Gas*, is the definitive guide to weaning America from the oil habit via biofuels. In great detail, it thoroughly debunks the myth that ethanol production takes nearly as much energy to run the process as it produces, and shows how America can thrive by sustainably growing both an abundant food supply and biofuels at the same time (they can actually feed each other synergistically). Blume shows us a pathway to personal and national energy independence. David Blume has been an alcohol pioneer since Buckminster Fuller, one of America's foremost visionary geniuses, coached and coaxed Blume in the '70s to continue to pursue their united dream of energy independence through biofuels. Blume is a hands-on kind of guy, having been an organic farmer, inventor, permaculture teacher, and alcohol pioneer during the past 30 years. This book is encyclopedic in scope, and is for everyone from policymakers to consumers to the backyard tinker who wishes to make his or her own ethanol and convert an existing gasoline-powered car to run on ethanol fuel. *Highly recommended.*

***gh Noon for Natural Gas: The New Energy Crisis,* by Julian Darley.** 2004, 266 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498531. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing Company, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $18.00

Many public policymakers have banked the future of clean, low-carbon emission (as compared to coal) electrical power generation on the use of natural gas. What Julian Darley points out is that natural gas production in the United States peaked in the 1970s, just a few years behind the peak in U.S. oil production, and globally will peak a only a decade or so behind the

peak in the world's oil production. *High Noon for Natural Gas* is about far more than just the impending peak in global natural gas production; it is also about the peak in fossil fuels in general and the geopolitics of the energy business. This is an excellent complement to the Heinberg and Kunstler books and will fill in some of the gaps in those publications. *Highly recommended.*

***inning the Oil Endgame: Innovation for Profits, Jobs, and Security,* by Amory B. Lovins, E. Kyle Datta, Odd-Even Bustnes, Jonathan G. Koomey, and Nathan J. Glasgow.** 2005, 305 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1844071944. Published by the Rocky Mountain Institute, 1739 Snowmass Creek Road, Snowmass, CO 81654. List price $40.00

Amory Lovins, physicist, ecologist, technical innovator and founder of the Rocky Mountain Institute, has coauthored a clear, practical blueprint for weaning America from our oil addiction while jump-starting the economy and regaining our position as the world's leader in sustainable technology and innovation. The Rocky Mountain Institute has been hired by many governments and large corporations, including Wal-Mart and the Department of Defense, to study their systems and make recommendations for improving materials, process, and energy efficiencies. If you are a person who is technically oriented and likes details, facts, and figures, then this is the book for you. Lovins, who invented the term "negawatts" and has been a pioneer in the sustainability movement, clearly shows us that we can thrive while beating Peak Oil if we would just do the right things on a national and global scale. *Highly recommended.*

***e Oil Depletion Protocol: A Plan to Avert Oil Wars, Terrorism and Economic Collapse,* by Richard Heinberg.** 2006, 195 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715639. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, BC V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $16.95

Since we have now officially passed the peak on global oil production, we will soon be dealing with the geopolitical and economic consequences of having a world economy that is fueled by oil, when there is not enough oil to meet the demands of this economy. The world's leaders may choose to proactively and peacefully manage the transition to a new, reduced-oil economy, or we will slide into oil wars, anarchy, and survival of the meanest. Richard's simple plan, based on work by Colin Campbell (one of the world's leading petroleum industry consultants), is a blueprint for how the world's governments can work together to peacefully manage this period of massive change and challenge.

***ting Fossil Fuels: Oil, Food and the Coming Crisis in Agriculture,* by Dale Allen Pfeiffer.** 2006, 127 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715653. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, BC V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $11.95

Concerned about food and how a world economy fueled by oil will continue to feed more than 7 billion people when the oil squeeze comes? I suggest you read this book. Pfeiffer, a geologist and science journalist who has been intimately involved with Peak Oil issues for more than 10 years, provides profound insight with his analysis of how the impending peak in oil production will affect global food production. He describes in detail how the different choices that Cuba and North Korea made, while dealing with the nearly instantaneous loss of their oil supplies when the Soviet Union broke up, radically affected the quality of life for their citizens. In the case of North Korea, the economy was shattered and millions of people died of starvation and disease. In the case of Cuba, people lost weight and made do with less, but a shift to sustainable agriculture and natural healing averted catastrophe. Cuba provides us with a glimpse of a possible future that

avoids violent collapse and provides a reasonable quality of life, in spite of having to live while consuming less energy and buying less stuff.

RESOURCES —CLIMATE AND SUSTAINABILITY

orldwatch Institute, 1776 Massachusetts Ave., N.W., Washington, DC 20036-1904; phone: (202) 452-1999; fax: (202) 296-7365; Web site: www.world-watch.org.

Check out WI books and the Web site for accurate and enlightening information on the state of the world. WI is dedicated to fostering the evolution of an environmentally sustainable society—one in which human needs are met in ways that do not threaten the health of the natural environment or the prospects of future generations. The institute seeks to achieve this goal through the conduct of interdisciplinary nonpartisan research on emerging global environmental issues, the results of which are widely disseminated throughout the world. The Web site contains lots of information and links to other informative sites.

ɔcky Mountain Institute, 1739 Snowmass Creek Road, Snowmass, CO 81654; phone: (970) 927-3851; fax: (970) 927-3420; Web site: www.rmi.org.

Rocky Mountain Institute is a nonprofit research and educational foundation with a vision across boundaries. Its mission is to foster the efficient and sustainable use of resources as a path to global security. The Institute creates—and helps individuals and private sector businesses to practice—new solutions to old problems, mainly by harnessing the problemsolving power of market economics and of advanced techniques for resource efficiency. These people are real shakers and movers in the movement to create a sustainable future for our planet. They consult for several mega-corporations, and have helped Wal-Mart and the Department of Defense to radically improve their energy and materials efficiencies.

ıion of Concerned Scientists, 2 Brattle Square, Cambridge, MA 02238-9105; phone: (617) 547-5552; fax: (617) 864-9405; Web site: www.ucsusa.org.

UCS is an independent, nonprofit alliance of 50,000 concerned citizens and scientists across the country. They augment rigorous scientific analysis with innovative thinking and committed citizen advocacy to build a cleaner, healthier environment and a safer world. Search their Web site for many well-documented articles on environmental topics, including global warming. They publish a quarterly journal and unite scientists, engineers, and citizens as a positive political force for change.

orld Resources Institute, 10 G Street, NE, Suite 800, Washington, DC 20002; Web site: www.wri.org.

The World Resources Institute's mission is to move human society to live in ways that protect the Earth's environment and its capacity to provide for the needs and aspirations of current and future generations. They believe that a healthy environment and a healthy economy can coexist. Because people are inspired by ideas, empowered by knowledge, and moved to change by greater understanding, WRI provides—and helps other institutions provide—objective information and practical proposals for policy and institutional change that will foster environmentally sound, socially equitable development.

reenpeace USA, 702 H Street, NW, Washington, DC 20001; phone: (202) 462-1177; fax: (202) 462-4507; Web site: www.greenpeace.org.

This is one of the oldest and most popular organizations devoted to environmental education, awareness, and activism. Their Web site search engine offers access to a tremendous volume of archived environmental information plus a multitude of links to other related sites.

obal Canopy Programme, John Krebs Field Station, Wytham, Oxford OX2 8QJ, United Kingdom; phone: +44 (0) 1865 724 222; fax: +44 (0) 1865 724 555; Web site: www.globalcanopy.org.

The Global Canopy Programme is an alliance of 29 of the world's leading scientific institutions in nineteen countries active in understanding interactions between forests and the atmosphere in relation to climate change. In their illuminating report, *Forests First in the Fight Against Climate Change* (available online) they point out that the quickest and cheapest way to rapidly cut carbon emissions immediately is to stop slashing and burning the rain forests. A very informative and inspiring Web site.

ternational Institute for Ecological Agriculture, 309 Cedar St. #127, Santa Cruz, CA 95060; phone: (831) 471-9164; fax: (831) 471-9166; Web site: www.permaculture.com.

Want to do something practical to learn how to live self-sufficiently and sustainably? How about learning how to distill your own alcohol and convert your vehicles to run on home-grown ethanol? Or learn the principles of permaculture from people who live what they teach? This organization offers terrific "how-to" workshops on permaculture and biofuels.

ırthSave International, P.O. Box 96, New York, NY 10108; phone: (718) 459-7503; fax: (718) 228-2491; Web site: www.earthsave.org.

EarthSave is based on the principles developed in John Robbins' book, *Diet for a New America*. EarthSave promotes environmental well-being and improved human health through positive food choices. The organization raises awareness of the vast ecological destruction resulting from the unsustainable production of animal foods, promoting instead a delicious, planet-friendly diet.

ternational Forum on Globalization, 1009 General Kennedy Ave. #2, San Francisco, CA 94129; phone: (415) 561-7650; fax: (415) 561-7651; Web site: www.ifg.org.

The Forum advocates equitable, democratic, and ecologically sustainable economics. It was formed in response to the current worldwide drive toward a globalized economic system dominated by supranational corporate trade and banking institutions that are not accountable to democratic processes or national governments. These current trends toward globalization are neither historically inevitable nor desirable. The goal of the IFG is twofold: Expose the multiple effects of economic globalization in order to stimulate debate, and seek to reverse the globalization process by encouraging ideas and activities that revitalize local economies and communities and ensure long-term ecological stability.

w Center on Global Climate Change, 2101 Wilson Blvd., Suite 550, Arlington, VA 22201; phone: (703) 516-4146; fax: (703) 841-1422; Web site: www.pewclimate.org.

The Pew Center on Global Climate Change was established in 1998 as a nonprofit, nonpartisan, and independent organization. The center's mission is to provide credible

information, straight answers, and innovative solutions in the effort to address global climate change. Working on an issue that is often polarized and politicized, the Pew Center provides a forum for objective research and analysis and for the development of pragmatic policies and solutions. In its first 8 years, the Pew Center has become a leading voice for sensible action to address the most pressing global environmental problem of the twenty-first century.

RealClimate, Web site: www.realclimate.org.

RealClimate is a commentary site on climate science by working climate scientists for the interested public and journalists. It aims to provide a quick response to developing stories and provide the context sometimes missing in mainstream commentary. The discussion on RealClimate is restricted to scientific topics and will not get involved in any political or economic implications of the science.

RESOURCES —FOCUSED ON PEAK OIL

ssociation for the Study of Peak Oil (ASPO), Klintvagen 42, SE-765 55 Uppsala, Sweden; phone: +46 70 4250604; fax: (415) 561-7651; Web site:www.peakoil.net.

ASPO is a network of scientists, affiliated with European institutions and universities, that have an interest in determining the date and impact of the peak and decline of the world's production of oil and gas due to resource constraints. Their Web site contains links to numerous Peak Oil–related sites all over the world.

st Carbon Institute, 6969 Sebastopol Ave., Sebastopol, CA 95472; phone: (800) 590-7745; fax: (866) 797-5820; Web site: www.postcarbon.org.

Post Carbon Institute's Web site is a very valuable U.S.-based Peak Oil resource. They are a *think, action,* and *education* tank offering research, project tools, education, and information to implement proactive strategies to adapt to an energy-constrained world. The development of Post Carbon Institute came out of concern for the environmental, social, political, and economic ramifications of global overreliance on cheap energy. The institute's main response to these concerns is the strategy of relocalization, which aims to rebuild societies based on the local production of food and energy, and the relocalization of currency, governance, and culture. The main goals of relocalization are to increase community energy security, strengthen local economies, and dramatically improve environmental conditions and social equity.

ıe Oil Drum: Discussions About Energy and Our Future, Web site: www.theoildrum.com.

The Oil Drum posts articles from around the world on the topics of energy and oil. They try to be the bridge between the doomers, the technopians, and the cornucopians, to present as many sides of the myriad arguments as they can. They don't tell you what to think, they just ask that you think critically and empirically, and give many links to other Peak Oil sites and blogs. If you are concerned about Peak Oil, you should check out this informative Web site.

ıe Oil Depletion Analysis Centre (ODAC), phone: +44 (0)20 8144 8359; Web site: www.odac-info.org.

Another valuable site offering access to top-notch reports and assessments, ODAC is an independent, UK-based, educational charity working to raise international public awareness and promote better understanding of the world's oil-depletion problem. Their trustees and advisors

include the likes of Colin Campbell, Julian Darley, and Mathew Simmons, among many others, representing many of the world's foremost experts in this field.

chard Heinberg (Peak Oil author), Web site: www.richardheinberg.com.

University professor Richard Heinberg is one of the world's most prolific writers on the subject of Peak Oil. His Web site offers numerous free essays, and you can sign up for his very worthwhile "Museletter" for a modest fee, to stay updated on the latest in the world of Peak Oil and other sustainability issues.

rtland Peak Oil, Web site: www.portlandpeakoil.org.

Portland Peak Oil's Web site has a good deal of information, links, blogs, and forums concerning Peak Oil and its ramifications. Portland Peak Oil is a grassroots group of concerned citizens in Portland, Oregon, who have come together to create a community, prepare, and do public outreach in anticipation of coming crises due to the end of cheap energy.

fe After the Oil Crash (LATOC), Web site: www.lifeaftertheoilcrash.net.

Matt Savinar's Peak Oil Web site provides a wealth of information and resources about Peak Oil and for dealing with a world with a declining supply of oil.

y Dipstick, Web site: www.drydipstick.com.

Another Peak Oil Web site with lots of free information and a multitude of links that make it easy to start learning more about Peak Oil.

3

Supplies and Preparations

It is not the strongest of the species that survives, nor the most intelligent, but the one most responsive to change.

—Charles Darwin

We are living in an era of global climate change, international terrorism, and increasingly destructive earthquakes. It would be foolish to assume that there will not be significant disruptions in the supply of electricity to your local grid at some time in the not-too-distant future. Remember that when electricity stops flowing, furnaces, cash registers, gasoline pumps, refrigerators, elevators, phones, and air conditioners all stop working, except for the rare facilities that are hooked up to a backup source of power. Without gas and electricity, most municipal water treatment and waste removal systems will soon shut down, and emergency medical services are usually severely limited. If temperatures are well below freezing, without a backup source of heat (or winterized plumbing), toilet bowls and pipes can start to freeze and burst within a day or two after the power goes out.

ARE YOU PREPARED?

As I mentioned in the previous chapter, emergency preparedness isn't about a bunch of survivalists crawling around in the woods, preparing to fight off the starving hordes in some grim, post-9/11, apocalyptic fantasy. In today's world of terrorist acts, global warming, and superstorms, we recognize that most of us will probably experience significant disruptions in the flow of electricity and goods at some point in our lives. Stocking up on a few extra supplies, learning some new skills, and making a few emergency contingency plans doesn't take a lot of time or money, and it's cheap insurance that can foster peace of mind in turbulent times.

Disturbances such as floods, earthquakes, major storms, or terrorist acts may disrupt the distribution of electricity, food, fuel, goods, and services for significant periods of time. In 1998, a severe ice storm in the Northeast knocked out power for periods ranging from 3 days to several weeks, and many of the survivors of Japan's Kobe quake did not receive food or potable water until a week after the quake. Could you keep your pipes from freezing if your power went out for several days during a winter's cold snap?

If a major hurricane or other natural disaster such as a severe earthquake were to strike your community, would you be well prepared? Before a magnitude 6.9 earthquake struck Kobe, Japan, in 1995, Japanese engineers and politicians thought they were better prepared for earthquake disasters than any other country in the world. Japan's freeways and buildings are theoretically designed to handle much stronger quakes than the one that struck Kobe, yet most of

Kobe's downtown freeways and tall buildings either fell down during the quake or had to be torn down afterward because of structural damage. This disaster was a harsh blow for hundreds of thousands of survivors who lost friends, family members, and most of their possessions. How well would you fare if you could not purchase any food, water, or gasoline for a week?

What about a month or longer?

No one really knows what the future will bring. You can't plan for all possible scenarios, but a wise person plans for several of the most likely possibilities and stores at least a few basic supplies for emergencies. This chapter helps readers to evaluate their own particular needs and goals, and offers guidance to help you plan for both short-term and long-term situations. I suggest that everyone should have at least a 72-hour grab-and-run kit, plus a minimum of 2 weeks of food supplies on hand at all times. In the event that the world situation should rapidly degrade, whether it is due to a nuclear exchange between Pakistan and India; escalating violence in the Middle East; a well-coordinated, large-scale terrorist act; or some other form of societal meltdown, it might be obvious that the time is at hand to use the information in this chapter to put together supplies to cover the basics for a year or longer. Once a crisis hits, don't wait too long to make this decision, because it won't be long before stores are wiped clean of many of the supplies you will need.

To help you organize your thoughts and guide your actions, ask yourself the following questions while making your emergency plans and building your backup supplies and skills:

- What natural hazards are there in my area? Have I taken precautions to protect my home?
- What is my potential for being caught in a significant earthquake, flood, hurricane, or tornado?
- How long do I anticipate that I might be without access to utilities and supplies?
- If the electricity goes out for an extended period of time, how will I cook, and how will I heat and light my home?
- Do I have supplies and training to deal with medical emergencies if medical help is unavailable?
- If I must evacuate my home, do I have portable emergency supplies readily available to bring with me?
- How many people do I wish to store supplies for? What about my friends, neighbors, or relatives?
- Do I have pets that I wish to feed and care for?
- Do I have small children or infants with special needs?
- Do I require prescription medications or are there any addictions I wish to provide for if distribution systems go down for a period of time?

PLANNING FOR THE SHORT TERM

The following information on short-term planning is designed to help you to prepare for emergencies when services are disrupted for periods of up to 1 week. Everyone should have enough food, water, and other emergency supplies to last for at least 3 days (72-hour emergency kits), and preferably 2 or more weeks.

I suggest making these preparations as soon as possible. It is hard to focus on this task when skies are blue and nothing is threatening, but it is usually too late once a disaster strikes or is close at hand. When the tourists come to our town in the High Sierras, just the threat of a major winter storm is enough to send swarms of people to the local supermarkets, where they stock up on food. Once the highway over Donner Summit closes to trucks for 1 or 2 days, local market shelves are quickly stripped bare.

Short-Term Preparedness Checklist

- Store at least one 72-hour emergency survival kit in or near your home and condensed versions in your cars.
- Determine a local meeting place with a large open area, such as a park or school, where your household can gather if you are separated and do not have access to your home during emergencies.
- Make sure that all capable members of your family know how and where to shut off the water, gas, and electricity for your home in the event of an emergency.
- Stash spare keys to your vehicles somewhere on the vehicle and an additional supply of keys somewhere outside of your home (securely hidden).
- Store at least a 2-week supply of food for your household.
- Store a combination of water, water treatment chemicals, and water-purifying filters to provide for your household for at least a week (see Chapter 5, "Water," for more information on filters and purification).
- Keep a survival manual in each car with a first-aid kit, spare clothing, and a water filter, if not a full 72-hour kit.
- Get proper first aid and CPR training for all capable members of your family. See the American Red Cross for first-aid training and assistance with local emergency planning.
- Arrange for an out-of-state emergency contact to reach for coordination and communication. After an emergency, it may be easier to call long distance than locally, or your family may be separated and need an outside contact to communicate through.
- Locate your nearest emergency shelter (call your local Red Cross for this information). Practice the route to the shelter, if it's not conveniently located.
- Make sure that you have smoke detectors in your home. Change their batteries at least once each year.
- Store your important papers in one easily accessible location, preferably in a waterproof and flameproof box.
- Discuss your emergency preparedness plans with all members of your household. Keep the discussion light and positive.

72-hour "Grab-and-Run" Survival Kits

These short-term emergency kits should be readily accessible and cover the basic daily needs of your family for a period of at least 3 days. Please note that 3 days is a minimal time period (in Kobe, Japan, it was **9 days** before many survivors received food and water) and that you should have at least a 2-week supply of food stored in or around your home. You may purchase ready-made, 72-hour kits from various survival supply outlets, or you can put together your own. Large families should probably divide up the stores between several easily grabbed small backpacks or plastic containers. One advantage to building your own kits is that you get to choose foods that you like. Remember that all foods have some kind of shelf life. *Rotate stores, and use them or lose them.* Bug-infested, rancid, or rotten food doesn't do anyone any good. Consider placing all of the following items in your 72-hour survival kit:

- Portable radio, preferably one that works with dead or no batteries, such as by a hand crank or combination powered with solar cells (available through survival and surplus outlets).
- First-aid kit with first-aid and survival handbooks (this book covers both).
- Water, water purification chemicals, and/or purifying filter. Enough to provide 1 gallon per person per day (see Chapter 5). Retort (foil) pouches can handle freezing in a car trunk, but most other water containers can't handle freezing without the potential for bursting. Three gallons per person is heavy (24 lb), so I strongly suggest that you include a water filter and water treatment chemicals. I suggest pump-type backcountry filters, such as those made by Katadyn or MSR, that are rated to filter out all bacteria and have a carbon core to remove toxic chemicals. Also, supplement your filter(s) with purifying iodine crystals (or other chemicals), such as a "Polar Pure" water purification kit, to kill all viruses. Pump filters that are rated for virus removal have tiny pore sizes and tend to clog quickly (a clogged filter is worthless). Sports bottle–type purifying water filters are simple, reliable, compact, and inexpensive, but clog easier and won't purify nearly as many gallons of water as the pump-type filters.
- Waterproof and windproof matches in a waterproof container, and a utility-type butane (large, with extended tip) lighter.
- Wool or pile blankets (avoid cotton) because they are warm when wet, or a sleeping bag. Also, a heat-reflective, waterproof "space blanket." Fiberpile, mountaineering-quality sleeping bags are great, if you have the space (avoid down sleeping bags, because they are worthless if wet).
- Flashlight with spare batteries, or a solar recharge flashlight. I highly recommend that you purchase a headlamp with LED bulbs. Headlamps leave your hands free to carry things, or work on things. LED bulbs use a fraction of the power, are far more shock resistant, and last far longer than traditional light bulbs, so your batteries last many times longer.
- Candles (useful for lighting fires with damp wood) and light sticks (emergency light when nothing else works or explosive gases are present).
- Toiletries, including toilet paper, toothbrush, soap, razor, shampoo, sanitary napkins (also good for severe bleeding wounds), a pack of dental floss (for sewing and tying things), sunscreen, extra eyeglasses, diapers, and so on.
- Food for 3 days per person, minimum. Use foods you will eat and that store well, such as nuts, sport bars, canned vegetables, fruits, meats, dry cereals, and military-type preserved

meals (available at surplus and survival stores).

- A Swiss Army knife, Leatherman, or other stainless steel multitool knife with scissors, can opener, blades, and screwdrivers.
- Map, compass, and whistle. When you are in a weakened state, or have a parched throat, a whistle may draw someone's attention and save your life. In smoke or fog, a compass may be the only thing pointing you in the right direction. The dial on the compass should glow in the dark.
- Sewing kit with extra heavy-duty thread. Should be strong enough to stitch a torn strap onto your backpack (I never travel in the backcountry without a sewing kit).
- Towel or dishcloth.
- Knives, forks, spoons, and so on. A camping

"mess kit" is a compact set of utensils.

- Tent and/or 50-foot roll of plastic sheeting for shelter.
- Extra clothing, such as long underwear, hat, jacket, waterproof mittens, leather work gloves, rain coat or poncho, sturdy boots, and so on. Remember that cotton is very cold when wet, but wool and specialty outdoor clothing (usually polyester) wick moisture and are warm when wet.
- Entertainment for kids and other special needs (prescription medicines, diapers, extra glasses, etc.).
- 25 kitchen-size garbage bags and lime or sewage treatment chemicals (powdered type preferred) for garbage and toilet sewage. A few large heavy-duty garbage bags can double for raincoats, ground cloths, and shelter.
- 50 feet of heavy-duty nylon string or light rope.
- Record of bank numbers and important telephone numbers.
- Spare checks and cash. Many Katrina victims were caught without any cash. **TIP:** Use a bank that has widespread branch locations so their records won't disappear in a severe local disaster, leaving you with no bank account access.
- OPTIONAL ITEMS: A compact stove with fuel, like one of the MSR multifuel stoves.

First-aid Kits

Get yourself a decent first-aid kit. Each car should have a kit and your house should have one. Most preparedness/ survival suppliers stock an assortment of first-aid kits, from simple to field surgical quality. Here are suggestions for a modest first-aid kit:

- Two Ace bandages
- One box of adhesive bandages (at least 12 Band-Aids) of varying sizes, with at least two 2-inch or larger square bandages
- Six butterfly bandages
- One large roll of 2-inch cloth adhesive tape (may be torn or cut to smaller widths)

- Several 4-inch-by-4-inch sterile, nonadhesive dressings
- Three 3-inch-wide gauze rolls
- Two triangular bandages
- *Triple antibiotic ointment
- Mouth shield for mouth-to-mouth resuscitation (precaution against AIDS, tuberculosis, and hepatitis)
- Three sterile applicator sticks, cotton tipped
- *Alcohol and/or 10 prepackaged alcohol squares
- Instant cold-pack/icepack
- First-aid manual
- Thermometer
- Safety pins and sterile needle
- Scissors
- Surgical rubber gloves (several pairs)
- *Pain-reliever tablets (aspirin, acetaminophen, etc.)
- *Laxative
- *Antidiarrhea medication
- *Syrup of ipecac (to induce vomiting)

***NOTE: Check expiration dates and try to rotate stock every year.**

Add the following items for a more advanced first-aid kit:

- Snakebite kit
- Emergency suture kit
- Splinting material (air splint, traction splint, hard splint, etc.)
- Tourniquet
- Thumb/finger splint
- Burn gel and “second skin”
- Echinacea, colloidal silver, spilanthes-usnea, and grapefruit seed extract natural antibiotics and antifungal (internal and external)
- Tea tree oil natural antifungal and antibiotic (external only)
- Single-edged razor blades and surgical scalpel kit
- Kelley hemostats
- Surgical blunt-tip and pointed scissors
- Silver nitrate to cauterize bleeding (powdered goldenseal herb also does a good job at stopping bleeding from wounds)
- Prescription antibiotics and painkillers
- Sterile thread

EARTHQUAKE PRECAUTIONS

When I was living in Santa Cruz, California, a few years before the Loma Prieta earthquake, I experienced my first significant quake. My desk started bumping against my leg and I saw the lights swinging from the ceiling. Most of my coworkers were native Californians. They paused from their work just long enough to say "earthquake!" Of more than 200 employees, only one other person and I headed out the door. My co-evacuee told me that he grew up in Chile, where he experienced a devastating earthquake. He related that he was walking down the street when that earthquake struck. It was one of the most powerful quakes of this century and was of such magnitude (estimated 9.5 on the Richter scale) that it immediately knocked him off his feet. Each time he tried to stand, the quake knocked him down again. Unable to do anything more than crawl, he watched as nearly all surrounding buildings tumbled down. After hearing his story, I understood why he had left the building so quickly at the first tremor.

Even though you may not live in an area prone to earthquakes, I recommend that you read this section on earthquake preparedness and follow the guidelines. It is a little-known fact that the largest earthquakes on record in the United States did not happen in California but along the Mississippi River near New Madrid, Missouri, in late 1811 and early 1812. The quakes were so powerful that they shook down chimneys 360 miles away in Cincinnati and changed the course of the Mississippi River for more than 100 miles. Most people do not realize it, but even New England is not safe from earthquakes and is overdue for another big one. Prior destructive New England quakes include the 1755 Cape Ann quake estimated at a magnitude of 6.2 and a 1638 New Hampshire quake estimated at 7.0 (Miller 2006).

Several recent significant earthquakes have occurred on faults that were considered inactive or were totally unknown to geologists. Earthquake faults crisscross the entire country. The fact that most of them have not moved significantly in recent geological history does not mean that they can't or won't move within your lifetime.

Because major earthquakes could happen at almost any location, you should take the following precautions:

- Make sure that your home hot-water heater is secured with "earthquake straps" or metal plumber's tape to prevent it from toppling and rupturing gas and/or water lines during an earthquake.
- Store a sturdy pair of shoes and leather work gloves under each bed. Broken glass often covers the floor during quakes.
- If you live in a climate subject to freezing temperatures, store extra antifreeze (preferably the nontoxic, RV type) for winterizing your toilet bowls and sink traps.
- Keep a backup propane, kerosene, or wood heater (and fuel) for emergency space heating.
- Store a roll of plastic sheeting, 50 feet minimum (available at hardware or contractor's supply stores).

- Keep well-stocked, 72-hour emergency kits in the car (or other outside location), including spare clothing.
- Use child locks on your kitchen cabinets to prevent your dishes from flying out of the cabinets during an earthquake. Attach heavy bookcases and other tall furniture to the wall. Use Velcro straps to secure computers in place.
- Keep spare car keys stored on your car (or other outside location). If your clothes, wallet, and keys disappear in a collapsed house on a cold winter's day, you will be grateful for a spare key.
- Keep a permanent shutoff wrench attached to your gas shutoff (available at surplus and survival stores).
- If you are an urban dweller and have no car, or store your car under a large building, you might consider arranging with friends or relatives to store some supplies in their garage, garden shed, and so on.

In the Event of an Earthquake

If you are stuck inside a building during a severe quake, the safest places to be are in doorways or under a heavyduty desk or table, because those offer some protection from falling debris.

> **CAUTION: If you smell gas, or the quake was severe, immediately turn off the outside electrical and gas utility supply to your house (gas utility personnel may need to turn it back on).**

If a gas leak is suspected, do not light an open flame or turn on an electric switch. All common electric switches arc when turned on or off, and may ignite explosive gases. If you suspect a gas leak and need to turn on a flashlight, turn it on or off outside, in the open air. Glow sticks are a safe light source that will not ignite flammable gases.

LONG-TERM PLANNING AND STORAGE

If you are planning to store food, water, and other items to supply your household for significant periods of time (more than 1 month), the packaging, preservation, and nutritive quality of your food stores will be vitally important. You can purchase specialty prepackaged bulk foods from preparedness/survival suppliers, or package your own foods. If you have more time than money, packaging your own supplies will be far less expensive than the prepackaged types and gives you the best chance for ensuring that your stored food is of the quality and variety that you will want to eat.

You will probably want to store a significant variety of foods preserved by a variety of methods. Traditional high-heat canning processes destroy a significant portion of the food's nutritive value, but low-heat dehydration results in a loss of only about 10 percent. Many canned foods do have the advantage of providing syrups or juices, which can be a significant source of water if you are experiencing scarcity. If you have access to a source of water, however, it makes

better sense to use dehydrated foods. A pound of dry grains or beans will contain many times the calories of a typical pound of canned foods. Each pound of dehydrated fruits or vegetables is equivalent to 10 to 12 pounds of fresh, canned, or frozen produce, and a pound of dry meat is equal to about 3 to 4 pounds of fresh meat.

Stored whole grains may be sprouted to give you the nutritive value of fresh, “live” food. Most whole grains and beans can be sprouted. The sprouting process converts proteins in the seeds into different essential amino acids and dramatically increases their vitamin content. For example, sprouted soybeans have 700 percent more vitamin C than the dry beans, though they have a lower caloric content. Vitamin C is a natural detoxifier, destroying damaging toxins in the body. It is essential for helping the body maintain an effective immune system and for preventing deficiency conditions, such as scurvy. However, minerals, protein, and caloric content are not improved by sprouting.

The downside to whole grains is that unless they are kept cool, they contain oils that can go rancid, thereby ruining them for consumption. A useful fact to remember is that most foods retain useful nutritive value long after they have lost their aesthetic appeal. However, foods that smell rotten, rancid, or moldy should be thrown out. Mold may be cut off the outside of cheese, apples, and meats, but moldy grain, fruits, fats, and vegetables should be thrown out. Most molds give off aflotoxins, which are highly toxic poisons, so your living area and foods should be kept as mold free as possible.

Whole grains last much longer than grains ground into flour, because finely ground particles have far more surface area for oxidation (degradation). A grain mill, preferably hand cranked or combination hand and electric powered, is useful for turning your stored grain into flour as it is required. Most long-term storage programs stress wheat storage, because properly stored wheat has an indefinite shelf life. Some wheat discovered in the pyramids was found to be viable after thousands of years. Brown rice, on the other hand, has a typical shelf life of 6 months to 1 year, which may be extended to 2 to 3 years when packaged with nitrogen or CO_2 in properly sealed containers.

Basic Supplies and Portable Equipment

- **Water, stored supplies, and treatment.** Water is the most important commodity. You can live for a long time without food, but only three or four days without water.
- **Wheat and other grains, flours, and beans.** These are the easiest bulk materials to store for calorie, shelf life, and nutritive value.
- **Grain grinder.** Buy a quality grinder for grinding grains into flour. You should have a hand-cranked or combination hand and power unit that works without power, but an electric grinder is much easier if you use it a lot. It is best to have one by hand. electric-powered grain mill and one that operates
- **Cooking catalysts and seasonings.** Includes oils, shortenings, salt, leavenings, herbs, and spices. Herbs and spices will provide essential phytonutrients and add much needed variety to the usual monotony of stored grain and beans.

- **Powdered milk, dairy products, and eggs.** These are good for nutritive value and variety in cooking options.
- **Sprouting seeds and supplies.** With a couple of jars, some nylon stockings, and a variety of seeds, you can eat garden-fresh live foods for pennies a day. I suggest alfalfa seeds, any whole grains, mung beans, soybeans, lentils, and cabbage, radish, and broccoli seeds. See Chapter 6 on food for detailed sprouting instructions.
- **Sweeteners.** Honey, sugar, and maple syrup are not essential, but may help sweeten an otherwise bitter experience. Honey has the advantage of being a natural topical antibiotic. It has been used for centuries on the battlefield for helping wounds to heal.
- **Canned and dried fruits, vegetables, and soups.** Store a variety of your family's favorites.
- **Canned, dried, or frozen meats and fish.** Store these if you will use them.
- **Dietary supplements.** Vitamins and minerals to supplement the limited nutritional value of stored foods. I suggest using quality supplements manufactured from live foods wherever possible (check your local health food store).
- **Fuels, lighting sources, camping gear.** Camping gear can provide you with portable shelter and materials for living comfortably if you must evacuate your home (see "Notes on Camping Gear" in this chapter).
- **Medicines and first-aid kits.**
- **Pet food and personal items.** Don't forget the things in life that help you stay happy and centered. A couple of decks of cards and a copy of Hoyle's book of card games can break the tension and generate a lot of laughs when times are tough.
- **Open-pollinated seeds for gardening.** I recommend that you store a variety of seeds for gardening (see Chapter 6). Use open-pollinated seeds, not hybrids, so you can save seeds from your garden for future needs, if necessary. *Do not eat seeds for planting. If they are dyed a bright color, they may be poisonous. Also, they will provide a hundred times more nutrition after the harvest than if eaten first.*
- **Pleasure foods, including snacks, treats, sweets, and beverages**. These may not have much nutritive value, but they are great for lifting morale or giving yourself a little reward.

Calculating a Year's Food Supply

> Store what you eat. Eat what you store. Use it or lose it! **—James Talmage Stevens, *Making the Best of Basics: Family Preparedness Handbook***

Because most stored foods have a limited shelf life, you are throwing money away if you do not store food that your family will eat. The day that your life depends on your food stores is the wrong time to find out you have an allergy to 90 percent of your stored food. Develop a plan of rotating through and replacing your stored food to ensure that the food does not exceed its shelf life and that you will actually eat the kinds of food that you have stored. The average American

diet of 3,500 calories a day leads to obesity. When the Soviet Union collapsed and Cuba lost its main source for food imports, the average Cuban diet slipped from 2,908 calories in 1989 to 1,863 calories in 1995, and most Cubans lost about 20 pounds (Pfeiffer 2006). The following food storage quantities are for one typical adult American male, for 1 year, consuming roughly 2,600 calories per day. Divide these numbers by 12 for a 1-month supply and by 52 for a 1-week supply. Since not everyone has the same food requirements, refer to the following family factors chart to estimate how much food you should store. Totaling the values will give you the equivalent number of typical adult males, which you will multiply by the figures for the various foods (see example below table). Make your own adjustments based on family members, such as counting a teenage female with an unusually large appetite the same as a teenage male (equal to 1.4 typical adult males).

> **NOTE: For details on canning, drying, and other preservation methods for foodstuffs, see Chapter 6.**

Food Storage Quantities for One Average Adult Male for 1 Year

- **Grains—375 lb.** You will probably want to store a variety of grains, including whole wheat, pasta, oats, corn, rice, barley, and so on. Due to its longevity, most long-term storage plans focus on wheat. Brown rice goes rancid in 6 months to a year (longer if stored with CO_2 or nitrogen), but white rice can keep for many years if stored properly. Whole grains can be sprouted, increasing their food value.

Calculating food requirements (in typical equivalent adult males)*

Food factor	Equivalent adult males
Multiply the number of adult males × 1.0	_____
Multiply the number of adult females × .85	_____
Multiply the number of teenage males × 1.4	_____
Multiply the number of teenage females × .95	_____
Multiply the number of male children (7 to 11) × .95	_____
Multiply the number of female children (7 to 11) × .75	_____
Multiply the number of children (4 to 6) × 0.6	_____
Multiply the number of infants (1 to 3) × 0.4	_____
Total	_____

*For example, if the members of your family consist of: 1 man (1.0), 1 woman (0.85), 1 boy between ages 7 and 11 (0.95), and 1 other child between 4 and 6 (0.6), your family should store the amount of food needed by the equivalent of 3.4 men. So, 325 lbs. of grain × 3.4 (adult male equivalents) = 1,095 lbs. of grain to feed your family of four for one year. (Adapted from *Making the Best of Basics: Family Preparedness Handbook* by James Talmage Stevens.)

- **Legumes—60 lb (dry).** This includes many different varieties of beans, peas, lentils, seeds, and so on. Soybeans offer a very high protein content, but it is a good idea to store several other legumes for taste and variety.
- **Milk, dairy products, and eggs—60 lb (dry).** Nonfat dry milk keeps longer than dried

whole milk. Dehydrated eggs and powdered milk greatly expand your cooking possibilities. Also, you can make a variety of cheeses from powdered milk.

- **Meat and meat substitutes—20 lb (dry).** Dried vegetarian meat substitutes and freeze-dried meats are very light. They are best cooked into stews and soups for extra flavor.
- **Fruits and vegetables—10 to 30 lb (dry).** Traditionally, dehydrated fruits and vegetables are much less expensive than freeze dried.
- **Sweeteners—65 lb.** These include sugar, honey, syrups, and so on. Honey is preferred for its nutritive and antibiotic values.
- **Fats, oils, and shortenings—22 lb (2 gal liquid plus 6 lb shortening).** Includes butter, margarine, powdered butter, shortening, cooking oil, nut butters, and so on. Hydrogenated processed oils are nonnutritive, but last for years (bacteria can't eat them, and our bodies can't do much with them either). cold-pressed oils, such as olive and safflower, provide essential fatty acids that your body needs to metabolize foods, but do not last as long. Storing a combination of mostly coldpressed unprocessed oils plus a smaller portion of hydrogenated oils offers a blend of good nutrition and longevity.
- **Sprouting seeds and supplies—20 to 50 lb.** These provide live foods and essential vitamins and are great for variety and nutrition. For best results, use untreated organic whole grains, beans, and seeds. I suggest alfalfa seeds, all types of whole grains, mung beans, soybeans, lentils, and cabbage, radish, and broccoli seeds. (See Chapter 6 for sprouting instructions.)
- **Leavenings**. Include approximately ¾ lb dry active yeast, 1 lb baking powder, and one box of baking soda.
- **Miscellaneous foods and seasonings.** These include spices, cocoa powder, seasoning sauces, condiments, vitamins, minerals, other nutritional supplements, and so on. Include at least 8 lb of salt.
- **Multivitamins (with minerals).** Include 365 (one a day).

Storage Tips

The main culprits responsible for destroying your food stores are time, moisture, heat, oxygen, mold, and pests. Poor food selection and improper packaging can compound the problem. Time is always working against you. Try to store what you normally eat, so you can rotate stocks. Do not store dented cans or other goods with damaged packaging. Molds can grow in low-moisture environments and are extremely toxic. *Do not eat moldy foods or food from bulging cans—sickness or death may result.*

Keep stored foods cool, clean, dark, and dry. Try to keep them below 70ºF. The optimum storage for most nonfrozen foods is 35ºF. Shelf life decreases by 50 percent for each 20ºF increase, even for canned foods. Moisture, food, oxygen, and above-freezing temperatures are the key ingredients insects need to grow. A few bug eggs, once they hatch, can rapidly destroy a sealed container of dry food, if they have an adequate supply of oxygen and moisture. Sunlight also contributes to the degradation of many stored foods.

Store foods in manageable sizes of containers. If you are packaging food yourself, I recommend #10 cans (approximately 1 gallon) or the 5-gallon size. Garbage cans will not keep critters out without airtight liners, are heavy to move, and you risk losing large amounts of food from a single contamination.

Commercial foods are generally free of pests, but paper packaging will not keep pests out for long. All goods packaged in paper, or other flimsy materials, must be repackaged for long-term storage.

Mice, rats, cockroaches, and beetles are "dirty" pests that carry diseases. The foods they have spoiled should be discarded. Weevils, found in many flours and grains, are "clean" pests and are not harmful if consumed.

You can freeze containers of food to destroy living insects, but this will not usually kill their eggs. Refreeze the container after thirty days to destroy bugs that have hatched. Freeze in an upright or chest freezer (not the freezer section of a standard kitchen refrigerator) for 72 hours at 0ºF or lower.

You can heat dry food in an oven to destroy living insects, but this method may also kill "live" food. Pour infested foods into shallow pans to a depth of ½ inch and bake for 15 to 20 minutes at 150ºF.

CAUTION: Foods will scorch if left in the oven for too long.

Do not store food containers directly on concrete floors, due to moisture wicking from the floor. Stack on wood slats for ventilation and reduced moisture.

Use dry ice, vacuum packaging, oxygen absorbers, or nitrogen packaging to reduce oxygen levels, kill pests, and increase the longevity of stored dry foods. You can package foods yourself using these methods (except for nitrogen packing, which requires commercial equipment), or purchase prepackaged foods from preparedness/survival suppliers.

You can dust grains, legumes, and so on with diatomaceous earth to kill bugs when they try to eat your stored food. Diatomaceous earth, available from most garden supply, hardware centers, and building supply stores, is deadly to bugs but nontoxic for humans and animals. It is a good source of silica (helpful for mending bones and joints) and is formed from the shells of single-celled diatoms. These diatom skeletons contain microscopic sharp edges, which wreak havoc with little critters' insides, but have no harmful effects on humans. Insert 1¼ cups of diatomaceous earth for each 5 gallons of food, then shake, stir, and roll the container until all the contents are thoroughly dusted. Diatomaceous earth is easily rinsed from stored food prior to cooking.

CAUTION: If you rely on frozen food for long-term storage, ensure that you have an adequate source of backup power to prevent losing your food stores to a long-term power outage.

Dry Ice Fumigation

A good way to repackage dry foods and protect them from pests is with dry ice fumigation. Dry ice is frozen carbon dioxide. A properly sized block of dry ice, placed on the top or bottom of a

container of dry foods, will gradually evaporate (dry ice melts straight into gas through a process called sublimation). As it evaporates, the heavierthan-air carbon dioxide floats the lighter air out the top of the container. Bugs cannot live in an atmosphere of carbon dioxide. Dry ice can be stored for a short while in an ice chest (use no regular ice or liquids with the dry ice) and is available at most supermarkets and restaurant supply stores. Wrap it with newspaper for handling. Break it into appropriately sized chunks with a hammer and chisel or screwdriver.

CAUTION: Do not handle dry ice with your bare hands. Contact with bare skin immediately results in frostbite!

Procedure

Place a properly sized block of dry ice (see chart below) on the top or bottom (preferred for the most thorough purging) of a container of dry food. If frost crystals are present on the surface of the dry ice, wipe clean with a cloth to prevent the introduction of extra moisture into your food. Press the lid down gently, leaving a small gap for air to escape. After 20 to 30 minutes, check to see whether the dry ice has fully evaporated. If it has, seal the container. For the bottom-of-the-bucket method, seal the container after 20 to 30 minutes. If the lid pops off, or the container bulges, crack the lid open and try again in 5 minutes.

CAUTION: A bulging container may burst.

NOTE: For the dry ice method to be effective for the long-term, the container must be airtight.

Basic dry ice treatment chart

Basic dry ice treatment chart

Container size	Food quantity (lbs)	Dry ice required (oz)	Expansion space
Metal containers			
#10 can	3 to 5½	1	¼"
5 gal	15 to 35	2 to 3	½"
25 to 30 gal	100	8	½"
Plastic containers			
1 gal	3½ to 7	1	¼"
4 gal	13 to 30	4	½"
5 gal	15 to 35	4	½"

Figure 3-1. Basic dry ice treatment chart. (Source: *Making the Best of Basics: Family Preparedness Handbook*, by James Talmage Stevens)

Vacuum Packaging

Vacuum packaging removes the oxygen and excess moisture from dry foods, killing critters and extending shelf life. A simple, but only partially effective, vacuum-packing method is to pack food in plastic bags and suck as much air out of the bags with a soda straw as you can prior to

sealing the bags. Heat sealers are the most effective vapor barrier, with zip locks a second best. Modestly priced electric and hand-operated vacuum pumps are available for vacuum-packing goods in jars, cans, and bags for long-term storage.

Mouse Traps and Rat Poisoning

Don't forget to buy a bunch of mouse traps and DECON (or similar rat poisoning) to protect your food stores. The mouse traps that work best for me are the traps with a food-scented yellow plastic bait paddle. I find that mice can't resist the trap when I spread a little peanut butter on its bait paddle, and the wide plastic paddles are so easily tripped that mice almost never escape with the bait. Be careful if you use poison, because it can also poison children, and if your cat eats a poisoned mouse, your cat will be poisoned too.

Shelf-Life Guide

The following list is for foods stored at room temperature (70ºF). Shelf life decreases by roughly 50 percent with every 20ºF increase in temperature. The ideal storage temperature for most nonfrozen foods is around 35º to 40ºF. Remember, whenever possible, to keep cool, dark, and dry (CDD). Once a container is opened, the contents may not last long. I suggest dating containers with a grease pen, so you can change markings if the container is opened or reused. Many dry or canned foods will last longer than their official shelf life, but *can't be relied on* to last longer.

- **Indefinite.** Indefinite means that under the right conditions, these materials will last a very long time, possibly longer than you live. Honey, sugar, salt, soy sauce, apple cider vinegar, black pepper, Worcestershire sauce, and properly packaged wheat fall into this category.
- **5 to 10 years.** Most dried legumes and most whole grains are in this category, as are dehydrated cheese, instant coffee, vacuum-packed coffee, baking powder, powdered eggs, and frozen butter.
- **Up to 5 years.** Processed (partially hydrogenated) liquid vegetable oils, Crisco shortening, cornmeal and corn flour, and nonfat powdered milk.
- **2 to 3 years.** Bouillon cubes, cornstarch, white rice, powdered gelatin, white wheat flour, white flour pasta (dry), tapioca, textured vegetable protein (TVP), hydrogenated peanut butter, catsup, canned salmon and sardines, most dried fruits, and most other canned foods except for meats, some fish, and fruits. Sprouting seeds, such as alfalfa, mung, soybean, wheat, and so on, will keep for 2 to 3 years.
- **Up to 18 months.** Canned meats, canned seafood (halibut, mackerel, tuna, and shrimp), unshelled raw nuts, dry active yeast, bag-packaged snack chips, cake mixes, dry puddings, herb teas, black teas, bottled juices, most seasonings and extracts, jams and jellies, canned noncitrus fruits (blackberries, blueberries, cherries, pears, peaches, plums,

etc.), cranberry sauce, pickles, canned rhubarb, and sauerkraut.

- **1 year.** Canned nuts, packaged dry breakfast cereals, rolled oats (oatmeal), bottled dressings, mayonnaise, natural liquid vegetable oils, candy bars, bottled juices (grapefruit, pineapple, apricot, and orange), canned citrus fruits, and natural nut butters.
- **6 months.** Most store-packaged food in boxes, fresh potatoes (keep cool, dark, and dry), granola, shelled raw nuts, and unshelled roasted nuts (Stevens 1997, 22–34; Spigarelli 2002, 97–127; Danks 1998, 73).

NOTES ON CAMPING GEAR

If you ever need to evacuate your home and emergency shelters are either full or unavailable, camping gear can make a big difference in your comfort and mobility. Chapters 4 through 7 provide additional instructions for getting by with no gear. This section offers suggestions for selecting practical, high-quality camping equipment.

Tents

Your tent is your shelter from the elements. What kind of weather do you anticipate you might encounter? Low-cost dome tents are available from major discount stores and price clubs. They will do an adequate job when the weather is not severe, but will keep you awake in moderate winds due to flapping fabric, and will probably fall apart in winds over 40 mph. Specialty backcountry stores stock four-season tents, which will hold up under significant snow loads and high winds. Expedition tents, proven in arctic conditions and the Himalayan Mountains, will hold up under hurricane-force winds (provided they are anchored to something that does not blow away), and can provide shelter when roofs are blowing off buildings, though they provide little protection from flying debris. Naturally, they cost several times what the cheap discount tents cost. Expedition tents do not have the comfort and headroom of low-cost family tents, which are adequate for moderate weather conditions. Several top-quality brands of tents that I can recommend are Wild Country, Sierra Designs, Bibler, North Face, Gauruda, and Walrus.

CAUTION: Synthetic materials, such as nylon, have limited resistance to the sun's ultraviolet rays.

If you are living in your tent for extended periods, pitch your tent in the shade, or shade your tent with a tarp that you are willing to sacrifice. After a couple of seasons in the sun, most synthetic materials will lose their strength and shred easily. With deterioration from the sun, your $600 expedition tent could fall apart even in moderate winds. Natural fibers, such as cotton and wool, will age much better provided that they are protected from mildew, moths, and critters. A UV-protection product, called UV Tech from McNett Outdoor Corp., is available from backcountry suppliers. When applied to plastics and synthetic fabrics, it filters out most UV rays and greatly extends the life of synthetics regularly exposed to the sun.

Clothing

Wool and the new synthetic piles are warm when wet. Synthetic pile sheds water quickly and dries fast. Cotton clothing is terribly cold when wet, and is referred to as “death cloth” by my friends in Yosemite Search and Rescue. A good set of long underwear, made from wool, silk, or one of the synthetic moisture-wicking materials, can make a huge difference in keeping you warm. When your body is covered but your head is not, you will lose most of your heat through your head, so get yourself a warm hat that covers your ears. If the weather is severe, you should have a thick balaclava, which is a knit hat that can be pulled down to cover your face and neck. In addition, your head should be covered with a hood or another hat to add an extra layer over the ears. A breathable waterproof jacket or a waterproof poncho is a must for keeping yourself dry. Breathable waterproof fabrics such as Gore-Tex should have factory-sealed seams. Specialty backcountry stores and many camping/surplus stores carry these items.

Sleeping Bags

A good sleeping bag will keep you warm, even in severely cold temperatures. Down has long been known for providing the greatest warmth with the least weight, but it is totally worthless when wet. When used over long periods of time in subfreezing temperatures, down collects frozen condensation from body moisture and gradually loses its insulating value. The new fiber piles, such as Dupont Hollofill, are not as light or resilient as down, but remain warm when wet. You can dunk one of these fiber-filled sleeping bags in an ice-cold river, wring it out with your hands, then climb right inside to get warm.

> **CAUTION: Check the temperature ratings on the bag that you are buying and add a 10°F to 20°F safety margin unless you are a warm sleeper. The ratings are notoriously optimistic.**

Mummy-style bags are more constricting, but allow you to cover your head and are much more efficient insulators than traditional, inexpensive rectangular sleeping bags. Discount stores carry fiber-filled bags, but specialty backcountry stores will have the best selection.

Insulating Sleeping Mats

A good insulating pad is important for both comfort and warmth. Without extra insulation under your body, most of your body heat will be lost into the ground, especially if you are camping on snow. Stiff, closed-cell foam pads are lightweight and excellent for insulation, but are not the best for comfort. Traditional air mattresses are cheap, but not as warm as closed-cell foam and are often unreliable. A great modern invention, developed by Thermarest, is the nylon-covered, self-inflating camping pad with an inner foam layer. The foam gives shape to the air mattress and prevents internal convection air currents from robbing heat from your sleeping body. These mats are comfortable and light, and provide excellent insulation. They are usually available at discount stores and price clubs, but you will find a better selection in specialty backcountry stores. When snow camping, I like to combine a short closed-cell foam pad (can’t puncture or deflate), placed

under my midsection, along with a full-length self-inflating pad, for outstanding thermal insulation and comfort.

Backpacks

If the need arises, a large capacity pack (at least 4,000 cubic inches, and preferably over 5,000 cubic inches) can help you transport your gear, food, and water on foot. The traditional frame pack, with a rigid welded frame of tubular aluminum, is best for carrying maximum loads. Personally, I prefer the mountaineering-style soft packs, with internal molded or bendable frames, because they allow more freedom of movement for traveling over rough terrain, plus they stuff better into car trunks or other tight places. Whether you choose an internal or external frame model, a good, comfortable, padded hip belt is essential to take some of the load off your shoulders. Proper fit is also important. If the pack is too long or short for your torso, you will have a hard time adjusting the hip belt and shoulder straps to distribute the load properly. Some recommended manufacturers of mountaineering packs are Osprey, Gregory, Dana Designs, North Face, Arc'teryx, and Lowe Alpine. Specialty backcountry stores will have the best selection.

Stoves

For pure convenience, two- or three-burner Coleman stoves are hard to beat, but they are bulky, heavy, and inefficient. For occasional use, and if you are planning to use your stove inside your house, propane fuel stoves are the most convenient and emit the least fumes. If you use your stove for an extended period, you will find that white gas (Coleman fuel) is much cheaper and more compact than the propane canisters used on propane stoves. For portability, efficiency, and reliability, the hands-down backcountry choice is one of the MSR stoves. Their multifuel models can run on white gas, kerosene, and other fuels. All MSR stoves can be dismantled without tools and can be serviced with simple repair kits. The original MSR patent appears to have expired, since Primus now makes several stoves that are very similar to MSR. Coleman stoves are available at most outlet and surplus stores, but MSR stoves are mostly available at specialty backcountry suppliers. Optimus makes an excellent multifuel stove. It is less compact than the MSR stoves but compact enough for backpacking.

Cookware

Cast-iron Dutch ovens and frying pans are great for cooking over an open fire. Heavy-duty, cast-iron pots spread the heat of a fire evenly, but are too heavy for most backpacking needs. For backpacking, I prefer lightweight spun stainless steel cookware. It weighs about the same as aluminum cookware, but does not leave traces of aluminum in your food (aluminum has been

linked to Alzheimer's disease). It's not a bad idea to have both heavy-duty and lightweight cookware on hand.

Footgear

For support, durability, warmth, and heavyduty use, it's hard to beat a full-grain leather boot with a Vibram-type, rubber-lug sole. These types of boots are heavy and should be worn for several days to break them in (and harden your feet) prior to leaving on a backcountry trip. Leather boots must be preserved and waterproofed with an appropriate boot grease or synthetic sealer. New, modern lightweight hiking boots can provide waterproof materials and support with considerably improved comfort and reduced weight, but will not usually offer the durability and protection of a heavy, full-grain leather boot. For protection from extreme cold and travel across snow, the common Sorel-type boot is a good choice. This type of boot has a removable, heavy wool felt liner, an upper of heavy fabric or leather, and a lower outer rubber boot with a steel shank.

I recommend trying on boots and climbing shoes to be sure of a good fit, rather than purchasing them from a mail order catalog. Blisters from badly fitting boots can cripple your attempts to travel on foot. Always bring moleskin and cloth athletic tape along in your pack, and please *do yourself a favor by dealing with sore spots before they turn into blisters*. Rotate socks to keep your feet dry and comfortable. For multiday snow country travel, I bring along a supply of thin grocery store produce bags. I wear these under my socks to form a vapor barrier and prevent sweat from wetting my socks and causing cold feet. They also help prevent blisters by adhering to your skin and slipping against the socks.

Firearms

Both for personal protection and to hunt game, a modest selection of firearms and ammunition could make a huge difference if you had to survive the loss of central services and utilities for an extended period of time. In a survival situation, whether it is for self-defense or for hunting, a firearm with a clip or multishot chamber improves your chances for success. In general, a pump-action cartridge feed is more reliable and less prone to jamming, but slower than a gas-operated semiautomatic cartridge feed. Hunting rifles should be scoped, and all rifles should have shooting slings. The following is a short list of recommended firearms:

- **12-gauge shotgun**: Preferably pump action or semiautomatic multishot. With a slug at short range, it will stop a grizzly bear and easily take down deer, moose, elk, and so on. With buckshot, it will take down birds and small game, and will provide personal protection without you having to be a good marksman (though your chances of success are better with a little practice). Lighterframed persons might want to consider a 20-gauge shotgun instead, as it has much less kick.
- **.308 rifle**: With a good scope, it will take down large game at long distances. Available

with a clip for multishot capacity.

- **.30-06 rifle**: Standard deer hunting rifle, not available with a clip. With a good scope, it will take down large game at long distances.
- **.22 rifle**: Good for shooting small game and birds. Available with a clip for high multishot capacity. Very low cost rounds. Very economical and lightweight.
- **.44 magnum pistol**: Large, heavy pistol with a lot of power and a strong kick. Will stop a large bear at close range, but bulky and heavy.
- **9 mm pistol**: Smaller and easier to handle than the .44 magnum, it is more for self-defense than for bear country.

NOTE: You should purchase a gun-cleaning kit, with the appropriate sized brushes and lots of extra cleaning patches, bore cleaner, and gun oil. Clean your gun after every use, and carefully oil and wrap your gun if it is to be stored for long periods of time. A cartridge reloading kit, for packing used shells with new primers, bullets, and gunpowder, will save money on your cartridges and could come in handy some day if you have no access to storebought cartridges. NEVER LEAVE A GUN IN AN UNLOCKED, UNSECURED LOCATION WHERE CHILDREN MIGHT HAVE ACCESS TO IT! IT IS BEST TO ERR ON THE SIDE OF CAUTION. IT IS ALWAYS SAFEST TO STORE YOUR AMMUNITION AND GUNS IN A SEPARATE SPOT, ESPECIALLY IF CHILDREN ARE PRESENT OR MIGHT VISIT AT TIMES.

PLANNING FOR THE LONG-TERM FUTURE

Planning for the long haul depends on the possible futures you wish to plan for. If you are planning for the possibility that central distribution systems may break down for extended periods, all the chapters of this book will be useful. It will take tools, supplies, skills, hard work, and many spare parts to maintain a somewhat modern existence in the event of the loss of central services. The instructions and illustrations given in this book are basic information designed to get you started and familiarize you with the range of skills and resources needed to create an alternative lifestyle. The suggested readings and resources in each chapter provide the detailed information that will allow you to go into each subject in much greater depth.

When concerned about the long haul, the quality and durability of your tools and other purchases are vitally important. You may not always be able to purchase the items that you need. A few hand tools will allow you to fabricate useful things from abandoned cars and other abandoned materials. Your ability to fabricate spare parts and simple tools will enable you to keep equipment working year after year. If you have access to an alternative power source, shop tools, such as mills and lathes, would be helpful.

Practically all the easily reached metal ores were stripped from the ground many years ago, and our society has dumped tons of these metals back into the ground. Japan has already begun “mining” their older dumps to recapture these materials, and our old dumpsites could be similarly mined as excellent sources of semi-raw materials. It doesn’t take much steel to make a

simple plow, a few pounds of nails, or a set of horseshoes. See Chapter 12 on metalworking for more details.

Simple things that we take for granted—such as light switches, faucet washers, and heating elements—eventually wear out. Not-so-simple things—such as refrigerator compressors, DC power inverters, transmissions and motors of all kinds, lead acid storage batteries, solar panels, and hot-water tanks—also wear out. No one can stock everything, and there are many items we can easily do without. Think carefully about low-cost items that are easy to stock. Also consider the big-ticket items that you really would rather not do without (or that many other items depend on), such as electrical circuit breakers and your main power inverter (if you have a solar or wind system). You can purchase durable traditional hand-operated goods from several supply houses such as Lehman's. Lehman's and others cater to the Amish, who live comfortably without electricity.

REFERENCES

Books

***ıre To Prepare!* by Holly Drennan Deyo.** 2006, 544 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0908477067. Published by Deyo Enterprises LLC, P.O. Box 7711, Pueblo West, CO 81007. List price $39.95

This is the ultimate preparedness manual to help you prepare a thorough, well-stocked storehouse to weather any kind of short- or long-term emergency. This book covers the gamut from food, to medicine, to firearms, to surviving biological, nuclear, and chemical terrorist attacks. Order from their Web site at www.standeyocart.com or Matt Savinar's Peak Oil Web site at www.lifeaftertheoilcrash.net. *Highly recommended.*

***ısis Preparedness Handbook: A Comprehensive Guide to Home Storage and Physical Survival,* by Jack A. Spigarelli.** 2002, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0936348070. Published by Cross-Current Publishing, 333 North 425 East, Alpine, UT 84004. List price $19.95

Another excellent preparedness guide, this covers everything from food, to medicine, to firearms, to stocking up on your survival library. It has a small section on biological, nuclear, and chemical terrorist attacks. *Highly recommended.*

***hen All Hell Breaks Loose: Stuff You Need to Survive When Disaster Strikes,* by Cody Lundin.** 2007, 450 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1423601050. Published by Gibbs Smith, P.O. Box 667, Layton, UT 84041. List price $19.95

I like this book. It is entertaining and offers a lot of great advice for mental and physical preparation that could get you out of a jam in times of trouble. It would be a fine addition to your preparedness library. Paranoia not required.

***aking the Best of Basics: Family Preparedness Handbook*, by James Talmage Stevens.** 1997, 240 pp. (plus 120 pages of appendices) (paperback), ISBN 978-1882723256. Published by Gold Leaf Press, 14675 Interurban Ave. South, Seattle, WA 98168-4664. List price $22.95

Recently updated and now in its tenth edition, this book has been the family preparedness

bible for many years. It contains a wealth of information and many excellent checklists for storing a wide variety of foods and other materials (medical supplies, camping gear, seeds, fuel, etc.), to prepare for long-term supply problems. It includes a huge, cross-indexed "yellow pages" directory of over 3,000 suppliers, but no notes on recommended suppliers. Several chapters are devoted to cooking with typical stored foods, and there is a good section on nutritional supplementation.

Magazines

ckpacker Magazine. Subscription: 14.95 per year for 9 issues. Backpacker Magazine, 33 East Minor St., Emmaus, PA 18098; Call (610) 967-8296 or see their Web site at www.bpbasecamp.com.

For the latest info on gear, and articles about travel in the backcountry, check out this magazine. Magazine staff regularly test products with field tests by a team of independent backcountry enthusiasts. Their product evaluations are considered the best in the industry and are often quoted by salespeople in backcountry specialty stores.

> **NOTE: See the list of magazines in the References at the end of Chapter 1 for self-reliant living magazines that will offer numerous advertisements for suppliers of goods that pertain to this chapter's topic.**

RESOURCES

This is not an exhaustive list by any means, but it will give you a good start:

1 Products, 700 East Shawntel Smith Blvd., P.O. Box 1376, Muldrow, OK 74948; phone: (918) 427-3600; Web site: www.baproducts.com.

Offering an unusual combination of spiritual books and preparedness/survival goods, Byron and Annie Kirkwood (BA) founded this store after receiving information supposedly channeled by the Mother Mary about the future of the world.

sco, 2595 Palmer Ave., University Park, IL 60466; phone: (800) 776-3786; Web site:www.bascousa.com.

Basco is a bulk supplier of food and water storage containers and seals.

ptain Dave's Survival Center, P.O. Box 72298, Durham, NC 27722; phone: (877) 413-2837; Web site: www.captaindaves.com.

This is a hard-core survivalist shop. Very complete, it has excellent advice on many survival topics, including firearm and ammunition recommendations.

F. Resources, P.O. Box 405, Kit Carson, CO 80825; phone: (719) 962-3288; Web site: www.cfamilyresources.com.

This company offers a wide selection of grain mills, canning resources, water treatment products, and natural healing supplies.

***nergency Essentials**,* 653 North 1500 West, Orem, UT 94057; phone: (800) 999-1863; Web site: www.beprepared.com.

This company offers 1-year food supplies, water storage accessories, and a variety of other preparedness kits and supplies.

***icenter Supplies**,* 384 Wallis St. #2, Eugene OR 97402; phone (541) 684-0717; Web site: www.theepicenter.com.

Stocks a wide selection of preparedness supplies, including 72-hour kits, MREs, military surplus, and renewable energy systems.

***ajor Surplus and Survival**,* 435 W. Alora Blvd., Gardena, CA 90248; phone: (800) 441-8855; Web site: www.majorsurplus.com.

This preparedness/survival supplier offers outdoor survival gear plus a larger selection of military-oriented products than most of the other listed suppliers.

***tro-Pak Preparedness Center**,* 151 North Main St., Heber City, UT 84032; phone: (800) 866-4876; Web site: www.nitro-pak.com.

A preparedness superstore with a huge selection! This supplier's large online catalog offers a wide variety of preparedness/survival goods, including food storage, water filter/purifiers, first-aid supplies, survival kits, self-reliance literature, and so on.

***wervision Emergency Food Storage Solutions**,* 128 W. Windsong, Pleasant Grove, UT 84062; Web site: www.permapak.net.

This company carries Perma Pak 1-year food storage packages, emergency kits, water filters/storage, grain mills, and so on. Also has a free newsletter.

***eparedness Now**,* P.O. Box 148, Humansville, MO 65674; phone: (417) 754-1222; Web site: www.preparednessnow.com.

Pam Stegner's *Preparedness Now* puts together a syndicated talk show on preparedness. Her Web site offers books, videos, and some special home health care products.

fety Central, 311 East Perkins St., Ukiah, CA 95482; phone: (707) 472-0288; Web site: www.safetycentral.com.

A preparedness superstore. This supplier's large catalog offers a wide variety of preparedness/survival goods, including food storage, water filters/purifiers, first-aid supplies, survival kits, self-reliance literature, and so on.

SA Emergency Supply, P.O. Box 4884, Chapel Hill, NC 27515; Web site: www.usaemergencysupply.com.

A large Web-based preparedness store with the usual array of food storage, emergency supplies, first aid, and so on. There are also many free articles you can download from their Web site.

·ain Mills

·ain mills will turn stored grains into flour, cracked wheat, and so forth. There are many grain lls on the market, with a variety of attachments for different tasks. The Country Living and amant grain mills have hand cranks and flywheels for optional motor-powered belt drives, and : recommended for their quality, durability, and ability for use without electricity. These

ɔducts, and less expensive mills, are available through health food stores and ɛparedness/survival suppliers.

> The **Country Living** heavy-duty grain mill comes with a 20-year warranty and is available from Country Living, 14727 56th Ave., NW, Stanwood, WA 98292. Call (360) 652-0761 for a free information pack. Web site: www.countrylivinggrainmills.com.
> The **Diamant** heavy-duty grain mill comes with a 20-year warranty and is available at some preparedness suppliers and health food stores.
> The **K-TEC** kitchen mill is a quality all-electric mill that easily, quickly (up to 90 lb per hour), and economically grinds all kinds of flours, but not nut butters.

ıtdoor Clothing and Equipment

ıeck your phone directory under backpacking for local suppliers of quality backcountry gear, or ɔp at the large suppliers listed below.

ıbela's, phone: (800) 237-4444; Web site: www.cabelas.com.

A camping, hunting, fishing superstore with about 30 retail outlets and a huge Web store.

ımpmor, Inc., P.O. Box 700, Saddle River, NJ 07458; phone: (888) 226-7667; Web site: www.campmor.com.

Not as large as EMS or REI, but offers a good selection of midrange to high-quality gear, with many significantly discounted items (good deals). Call (800) 226-7667 for a catalog.

ıeaper Than Dirt, P.O. Box 162087, Fort Worth, TX 76161; phone: (800) 559-0943; Web site:www.cheaperthandirt.com.

A large sportsman's outlet, with the emphasis more on the hunting, guns, and ammo crowd.

MS (Eastern Mountain Sports), EMS Direct, 327 Jaffrey Road, Peterborough, NH 03458; phone: (888) 463-6367; Web site: www.ems.com.

A huge selection of outdoor gear and backcountry products at more than 80 stores.

ƐI (Recreational Equipment Inc.), 1700 45th Street, East, Sumner, WA 98352; phone: (800) 426-4840; Web site: www.rei.com.

A user-owned cooperative founded in 1938, with a huge selection of outdoor gear and backcountry products. If you join the co-op, you will receive a dividend rebate on your purchases of about 8 to 10 percent. You can shop at more than 60 stores or online at their Web site www.rei.com, or check the site to locate the store nearest you. For closeouts and discounts, check www.rei-outlet.com.

Suppliers of Goods for Simple Living

Lehman's. A major supplier of goods for simple living. This is a terrific source for thousands of useful hand tools, well pumps, books, stoves, old-fashioned kitchen aids, and so on for off-grid and self-reliant living. For $3, they also sell a source list for hard-tofind items, such as

Amish buggies, antique stove parts, horse-drawn farm equipment, and so on. Lehman's, P.O. Box 41, Kidron, OH 44636; phone: (877) 438-5346; Web site: www.lehmans.com.

Cumberland General Store. Many old-time useful items, including a fine selection of hand pumps and well accessories, farming tools, beekeeping supplies, kitchen utensils, and such. For a catalog, phone (800) 334-4640, or send $5 to: Cumberland General Store, P.O. Box 4468, Alpharetta, GA 30023. Web site: www.cumberlandgeneral.com.

4

Emergency Measures for Survival

> It's easy to imagine that wilderness survival would involve equipment, training, and experience. It turns out that, at the moment of truth, those might be good things to have but they aren't decisive. Those of us who go into the wilderness or seek our thrills in contact with the forces of nature soon learn, in fact, that experience, training, and modern equipment can betray you. The maddening thing for someone with a Western scientific turn of mind is that it's not what's in your pack that separates the quick from the dead. It's not even what's in your mind. Corny as it sounds, it's what's in your heart.
>
> **—Laurence Gonzales, from *Deep Survival: Who Lives, Who Dies, and Why***

Your personal survival in harsh physical conditions and other emergency situations involves more than simply applying the right techniques. A synergistic combination of skill, intuition, action, wisdom, good judgment, training, preparation, and the most important factor of all—the determination to survive—will give you the best chance for success. It pays to be both mentally and physically prepared for survival. The mentally prepared person has a "can do" attitude, sees problems as obstacles to surmount, and has learned basic skills for dealing with survival situations. The common personality traits of survivors are just as useful for adapting and thriving under the changing conditions of modern society as they are for dealing with emergencies. Physically prepared people tend to have supplies on hand to deal with emergencies and respect their bodies enough to maintain some kind of physical conditioning, so their bodies can perform when needed.

SURVIVAL STRATEGIES

Twenty years ago, I nearly made a tragic mistake while trekking through the High Sierra Mountains during a severe snowstorm. I started this trip dressed in a wool sweater and a pair of pile pants. Heavy snow and high winds settled in about a half hour after leaving the trailhead. I was moving quickly, and my body temperature stayed pretty warm for most of the next hour. Initially, I delayed putting on additional clothing because I wanted to avoid overheating and consequently drenching my clothes with sweat. As I got wetter and colder, I delayed because I knew that as soon as I stopped moving and took my pack off my sweaty back, the icy winds would make me feel miserably cold. I was hoping for a break in the winds, but they only grew stronger. When I finally stopped to

put my gloves and coat on, I realized that I had a serious problem. Even though my body core felt just a little cool, I was shocked to find that my hands had chilled to the point where they were numb and nearly useless. They felt like lumps of clay. The winds had picked up to about 60 miles per hour, blasting snow onto my hands and face. I realized that it was absolutely critical that I get myself into protective clothing, but my fingers were unable to work the zippers, straps, and buckles on my pack. After 15 minutes, using my teeth and near useless hands, I managed to open my pack and remove my mittens and coat. During this time, I started to shiver violently, but I knew that if I gave up, I would lose my fingers to frostbite and might perish in the snow. I managed to slip my coat on, but it took another 10 minutes of warming my hands in my armpits before I could work my mittens over my fingers. I am an experienced mountaineer. It was very sobering to see how close I had come to disaster through procrastination and ignoring a few simple signs!

That day, I committed two common blunders that nearly led to my demise. First, I *failed to react quickly to rapidly changing conditions*, and second, I *failed to conserve my resources*. In emergencies, it is often vitally important to *conserve what you have*. In this case, I failed to conserve body heat. In spite of the wind and snow, I was moving rapidly and felt that I was generating enough body heat from exercise, but I was wrong. Many people facing emergencies squander their resources in the first few hours. Expecting a speedy rescue, they thoughtlessly consume their available food and water supplies before the reality of their situation sets in. Wasted resources can also include fuel, physical energy, health, and dry clothing. It is usually easier to conserve the resources at your immediate disposal than to find new ones.

The original 28 survivors of the 1972 airplane crash in the Andes Mountains (made famous by the book and the movie *Alive*) also squandered their resources in the first few critical days of their epic struggle to survive. Expecting a speedy rescue, they freely ate and drank from the plane's supplies. Up until the third night, they failed to conserve precious heat and energy, allowing the icy winds to blow unchecked through the plane wreck. It was several days before they decided to ration food and water. Their food ran out on the tenth day, and after that some starved, while the rest sooner or later resorted to cannibalism. Finally, realizing that no one was going to find them, two of the survivors spent 8 days climbing and hiking out of the Andes Mountains to a remote ranch, where they were fed and the authorities were notified about the crash site, where a number of survivors were still hanging onto life sheltered by the wreckage of the plane. Of the original 28 survivors of the crash, only 16 made it out alive.

Rex Lucas, in *Men in Crisis: A Study of a Mine Disaster*, relates similar wasteful actions in the first two days of a mining disaster. Trapped 12,000 feet underground in a major mine collapse and expecting a speedy rescue, the survivors freely drank from their canteens and wasted valuable physical reserves trying to dig themselves out. On the third day, once they realized that rescue might take many days, they began conservation efforts that allowed them to survive for several more days until they were rescued.

Basic Strategies

First Things First

Quickly scan the situation. If you are in immediate bodily danger, you must deal with this first, and you might have to act with lightning speed. But, if you have the time, don't rush into a decision. In *Survive the Savage Sea*, Dougal Robertson credits his wife's quick thinking with saving his family's life. After whales rammed a large hole in their sailboat, Dougal wasted precious time examining the hole in their hull, but his wife used their remaining 3 minutes to gather the necessary survival gear into their life raft. Expect that there is some positive action that you can do, and be willing to consider *any* possible action or reaction that might promote your survival.

Don't Panic

> Only 10 to 20 percent of people can stay calm and think in the midst of a survival emergency. They are the ones who can perceive their situation clearly; they can plan and take correct action, all of which are key elements of survival. Confronted with a changing environment, they readily adapt. . . . The first rule is: Face reality. Good survivors aren't immune to fear. They know what's happening, and it does "scare the living shit out of " them. It's all a question of what you do next. . . . In a true survival situation, you are by definition looking death in the face, and if you can't find something droll and even something wondrous and inspiring in it, you are already in a world of hurt. **—Laurence Gonzales, *Deep Survival: Who Lives, Who Dies, and Why***

Try to remain calm, but do not become paralyzed. Action will most likely be required to see you through your ordeal, but it must be the right kind of action. When you are unable to think clearly, it is a poor time to make major decisions. It is important not to waste precious energy and resources doing the wrong things or going to the wrong places. When you are tense and bound by fear, try breathing deeply and repeating a simple word or phrase, such as "stay calm" or "God is good." From decades of extreme rock climbing, I have observed that when my breathing is shallow and tense, my muscles are also tense, and I waste my energy by fighting one muscle against another. By consciously controlling my breathing through forcing myself to breath deeply, I can send a wave of energy and relaxation to my arms and legs, helping me to overcome the debilitating effects of fear. From numerous survival accounts, it is quite clear that a large percentage of survivors resorted to prayer, even if they didn't believe in God. Praying, focusing on rhythmic deep breathing, or reciting a simple "mantra" (a short, simple word or set of words) can help to calm the endless stream of tortuous thoughts blazing through a tormented mind, returning your mind to some semblance of peace, where it stands a chance of hearing the quiet voice of intuitional guidance or of making a decent rational decision.

Conserve What You Have

The assumption that help will be along soon has been the downfall of many. Conservation includes body heat, dry clothing, water, food, fuel, medicine, and so on. Try to tap nature's resources for food and water before using your own reserves. Seek shelter *before* you are cold and wet. In survival situations people frequently underestimate the need for rest. Adrenaline tells you to go, go, go, but the truth is that you need to take your time, conserve your strength, energy,

fluids, and warmth. Operate at about 60 percent capacity, if possible, and rehydrate regularly when water is available. If you are sweating at cold temperatures, you are probably working too hard and will burn out quickly.

Be Realistic

Rambo types are often the first to go. Use a healthy mix of positive attitude and determination to survive, tempered by realistic appraisal of pitfalls and dangers. When lost, don't panic. Backtrack, if at all possible. On a number of occasions, I have salvaged a wrong turn in the backcountry through backtracking (researchers have found that few people who got seriously lost ever backtracked), and on other occasions when I found I had taken a wrong turn several miles back, I calmly assessed the situation and sometimes altered my route based on where I now found myself, even though it was not according to my original plan. Better to accept a mistake, change plans and deal with it, than to plunge foolishly forward.

Use Your Intuition

Intuitive hunches have been credited with saving many a person's life. On the other hand, there are a lot of people, myself included, who wish they had followed their intuitive hunches. In 1981, Debbie Kiley and four other members of the crew hired to sail 1,000 miles to deliver a large sailboat to its owner were cast adrift in a small raft for 5 days at sea when the sailboat sank during a hurricane. While drifting in shark-infested waters without food, water, or adequate clothing, three of the five crew members succumbed before Kiley and the other remaining crew member, Brad Cavanagh, were rescued. When author Laurence Gonzales asked her what advice she had for others, she replied, "Trust your gut. I had misgivings about the trip all along. It just didn't feel right. So I have just one piece of advice for people: Your gut tells you what to do. Believe it. I didn't, and a lot of people are dead, and I have to live with it. Also, never forget that you can't depend on anybody. You really have to have it within yourself to do it."

That thought or picture that just happens to snap into your mind may be the key to your survival. I remember hearing a powerfully moving account of one woman's survival of the Nazi Holocaust:

> On a hot summer's day, when she was a teenager in Germany, her father received a strong intuitive message. He told his daughter to wear her ski boots to school that day. Later in the morning, all the Jewish children were rounded up and forced into railroad cars. The following winter, she was marched, along with 800 other children, through heavy snows for several weeks. While many of the other children's feet froze solid, hers were protected by her ski boots. She was one of fewer than 100 survivors of the march through the snow.

Don't Give Up

Survivors are not saints who never doubt and never have moments of weakness where they give up hope. But at some time during their ordeal, most survivors relate that they had an epiphany, a moment when they felt certain that they would survive their ordeal, and that this moment gave them added strength to battle their inner demons and regain control over negative defeatist thoughts.

My father in-law, Joseph Jussen, was a resistance fighter in WWII and a Dutch soldier during the Indonesian revolution. He was credited with saving many Jewish, Dutch, and Indonesian lives and with numerous courageous acts of resistance and sabotage. In the first part of 1943, Joseph was captured while driving a truckload of smuggled food for the resistance, and accused of being a saboteur and an "enemy of the people." Such accusations were usually followed by execution. He was imprisoned, and routinely tortured, for a period of 6½ months as they attempted to crack his spirit and force him to release the names of his friends in the underground. When he passed out, they would revive him with buckets of ice water and begin the torture again. Faithfully Joseph stuck to his story that he worked alone and had no accomplices, because he knew that if he cracked, he would be sentencing his friends and comrades to a similar fate of torture and death. In an effort to break his spirit, on three separate occasions he was placed in front of a firing squad and shot with blank bullets. Joseph never gave up. Finally, when they realized that they could not break him, he was sentenced to death in a public trial held by the puppet government under the control of the Nazis. A friend of Joseph's was sitting in the audience during the trial. He caught Joseph's eye and winked at him. On the day scheduled for his execution, several resistance fighters disguised as Nazi officers boldly walked into the prison where Joseph was held and requested to "take the prisoner to the yard for execution." When he got to the prison yard, instead of the anticipated firing squad, they surprised Joseph by hoisting him to the top of the tall prison yard wall. Joseph leapt to the sidewalk below, breaking both ankles, and was carried into a waiting getaway car. The authorities posted his picture throughout the area, so for the next year, until the liberation of Europe by Allied Forces, he was unable to show his face in the light of day.

Compact Survival Kit

Be prepared. The following basic survival kit is small enough to slip into the top pocket of a knapsack or a coat pocket. It fits into a 2-ounce tobacco tin or other small case, and its weight is hardly noticeable. Polish the inside of the case to a mirror finish for signaling. Check the contents of the case regularly, to replace items that have exceeded their shelf lives. Tape the box seams with duct tape to waterproof the container.

- **Matches.** Fire can be started by other means, but matches are the easiest. Waterproof matches are useful, but bulkier than ordinary stick matches. You can waterproof ordinary matches by dipping them in molten candle wax. Break large kitchen matches in half to save room for more matches. Include a striker torn from a book of paper matches.
- **Candle.** Great for helping to start a fire with damp wood, as well as for a light and heat source. Shave it square to save space in your kit.
- **Flint with steel striker.** Flint will last long after your matches are used up. You must find

very dry, fine tinder to start a fire with sparks from a flint. Solid magnesium fire-starter kits are an excellent improvement on the traditional flint with steel. Using a knife to scrape magnesium shavings from the magnesium bar, you light the shavings with a spark from the flint, and they burn hotly to easily ignite the tinder.

- **Magnifying glass.** Useful for starting a fire with direct sunlight or for finding splinters.
- **Needle and thread.** Choose several needles, including at least one with a very large eye, which can handle yarn, sinew, or heavy thread. Wrap with several feet of extra-strong thread.
- **Fishhooks and line.** A selection of different hooks in a small tin or packet. Include several small, split-lead sinkers and as much fishing line as possible.
- **Compass.** A small, luminous-dial compass (for night reading). Make sure that you know how to read it and that the needle swings freely. A string is handy for hanging it around your neck for regular reference.
- **Micro-flashlight.** A keychain LED-type (lightemitting diode) lamp, such as the Photon Microlight II. It is useful for reading a map at night or following a trail when there is no moon.
- **Brass wire.** Three to five feet of lightweight brass wire. Wire is useful for making snares and repairing things.
- **Flexible saw.** These come with large rings for handles that can be removed to allow it to fit into your kit. While using the saw, insert sticks through the end loops for more useful and comfortable handles. Coat the saw with a film of grease or oil to protect it from rust.
- **Survival knife.** For overnight backcountry travel or as part of your car kit, I would also carry a stout knife with about a 6-inch blade. If the knife has a folding blade, it should have a heavy-duty blade lock. It should be strong enough to use as a pry and to split branches and cut hardwoods without damage. You may need a knife to fabricate crude tools, such as a bow and drill for starting a fire without matches. A variety of “survival” knives are available; they are capable of cutting various materials, including thin sheet metal, and will do nicely. If the knife has a fixed blade, it should be covered in a sheath that it can’t easily cut through. Some knives come with a small sharpening stone in the sheath, which is a nice feature.

Figure 4-1. Compact survival kit.

- **Condom.** When placed in a sock or other cloth for protection and support, this makes a good emergency water bottle.
- **Compact medical kit.** Vary the contents depending on your skill and needs. Pack medicines in airtight containers with cotton balls to prevent powdering and rattling. The following list, which is a rough guide, will cover most needs.
- *Mild pain reliever.* Pack at least ten of your favorite aspirin, ibuprofen, Tylenol, or other pain reliever.
- *Diarrhea medicine.* Immodium is usually favored. Take two capsules initially, and then one each time a loose stool is passed.
- *Antibiotic.* For general infections. People who are sensitive to penicillin can use tetracycline. Carry enough for a full course of 5 to 7 days. Use *Echinacea* or grapefruit seed extract from the health food store, if prescription antibiotics are not available.
- *Antihistamine.* For allergies, insect bites, and stings, use Benadryl or equivalent.
- *Water purification tablets.* Much lighter and more compact than a filter. For use when you can't boil your water.
- *Potassium permanganate.* Has several uses. Add to water and mix until water becomes bright pink to sterilize it, a deeper pink to make a topical antiseptic, and a full red to treat fungal diseases, such as athlete's foot.
- *Salt tablets.* Salt depletion can lead to muscle cramps and loss of energy. Carry 5 to 10 salt tablets.
- *Surgical blades.* At least two scalpel blades of different sizes. A handle can be made of

wood, if required.

- *Butterfly sutures.* To hold edges of wounds together.
- *Band-Aids.* Assorted sizes, preferably waterproof, for covering minor wounds and keeping them clean. Can be cut to make butterfly sutures (adapted from Wiseman 1996, 16).

DEVELOPING A SURVIVOR PERSONALITY

> The best survivors spend almost no time, especially in emergencies, getting upset about what has been lost, or feeling distressed about things going badly. . . . Life's best survivors can be both positive and negative, both optimistic and pessimistic at the same time. **—Al Siebert, Ph.D., *The Survivor Personality***

The struggle for survival is a fascinating and inspiring subject, forming the basis for many of the most memorable books and movies. Psychologist Al Siebert's personal fascination with survivors began when he received his military training from a group of veteran paratroopers. His teachers were legendary members of the 503rd Airborne Infantry Regiment. They had lost nine out of ten members in combat in the Korean War. Siebert found that these "survivors" were not the crusty, yelling drill sergeants that he had anticipated. They were tough, yet showed patience. They had a good sense of humor and were likely to laugh at mistakes. They were positive, yet also looked at the downside of things. They didn't act mean or tough, even though they could be as mean and tough as anyone. Siebert noticed that each of these men had a type of personal radar, which was always on "scan." He realized that it was not dumb luck that had brought these men through their ordeals, but a synergistic combination of qualities that tilted the odds in their favor. Al believes that we can all benefit in our daily lives by nurturing and developing these positive character traits within our own personalities.

> In 1943 Robert Muller was a member of the French Resistance. Using the name Parizot, he had infiltrated an agency of the Vichy government, where he gathered information on German troop movements. Tipped off that the Nazis had just driven up to arrest him, he fled to the attic of his office building. Word came that half a dozen Gestapo men, knowing he was there, were methodically searching the premises. Having been impressed when a friend used Dr. Emile Coué's program of autosuggestion and positive thinking to cure himself of advanced tuberculosis, Muller quickly calmed himself and took control over his thoughts. He repeated to himself that the situation could be seen as a thrilling adventure, and switched his perspective to a calm, confident, positive state of mind. Muller told himself that nothing was hopeless and that he must find the one-in-athousand chance of escape.
>
> Suddenly he realized that the one thing the Nazis would not expect him to do was to walk downstairs to meet them. By taking off his glasses, slicking down his hair with water, grabbing a file folder from a vacant desk, and lighting a cigarette, Parizot managed to change his appearance somewhat. Walking downstairs he came upon his secretary as she was being interrogated. He asked her what all the

excitement was about. Her heart pounding, she managed to maintain an outward appearance of calm, and replied that the "gentlemen" were looking for Mr. Parizot. "Parizot?" he exclaimed, "But I just saw him a few minutes ago on the fourth floor!" The Gestapos rushed upstairs, giving Muller the break he needed to proceed toward his next obstacle, the guards at the front door. In the main lobby, the concierge informed Muller that there was another exit, and guided Muller to the garage, where he stole a bicycle and rode to safety. **—Robert Muller, *Most of All, They Taught Me Happiness***

Typical Survivor Personality Traits

- **Flexibility:** The number-one trait to which many survivors attribute their success is the ability to adapt to the situation.
- **Commitment to survive:** When conditions are extremely difficult, it takes a strong will and commitment to survive. Jewish Holocaust and Bataan Death March survivors tell tales of watching their friends lose the will to survive. Under these harsh conditions, once the drive to survive was lost, they usually lasted a short while, ranging from a few hours to a few days.
- **Staying cool:** Survivors have the ability to stay calm, or regain calmness, so they can think clearly and intuitively "feel" their way to a correct choice, without being hampered by emotions that have run amok.
- **Playful curiosity:** Survivors usually like to know how things work. They show a playful curiosity that helps them adapt to changing circumstances.
- **Sense of humor:** The ability to laugh helps people manage under the worst conditions. My father in-law, Joseph Jussen, a Dutch resistance fighter and WWII hero, was captured and tortured by the Nazis for months before he was freed in a daring escape. Later, as a Dutch marine in the Indonesian revolution, he survived while most of his company was killed. Throughout his life he maintained a great sense of humor and loved nothing more than to make people laugh. His favorite saying was, "Make you happy!"
- **A mixture of opposites:** The typical survivor is not always either hot or cold. Survivors have the ability to blend optimism with pessimism, so they can see the faults in a plan, but are not paralyzed by negativity. They combine humor with seriousness, self-confidence with a critical eye, and so on.
- **Intuition:** At some point in our lives, we have all had demonstrations of the power of intuition. The rational mind makes decisions based on the available information, which is always imperfect at best. Intuition appears to give us the ability to move beyond the limits of time and space, to "see around corners" that the rational mind can't breach.
- **"Get over it":** Most survivors don't waste a lot of time lamenting mistakes and losses. They move on and deal with the situation, unhampered by paralyzing regrets and disappointments.
- **"Bad patients":** Bernie Siegal, founder of Exceptional Cancer Patients, observed that

survivors who beat the odds against cancer and other life-threatening diseases were usually "bad patients." These patients typically questioned their doctors and took an active role in their recovery, whereas "good patients" did just as they were told, questioned very little, and often died right on schedule.

- **Rule followers:** Like the "bad patients," survivors are generally not good "rule followers." Many of the victims of the 9/11 World Trade Center collapse were told by security guards that the second tower was safe and to return to their offices. Others were told by firefighters to stay put until they returned and escorted them out. In his book, *Deep Survival*, Laurence Gonzales tells the story of Julianne Koepcke, a 17-year-old teenage girl who survived the midflight breakup of an airplane flying over the Peruvian rain forest. Ill equipped and without any survival training, she took 11 days to find her way out of the jungle to a hunting cabin and rescue. During the same period of time, a dozen adult survivors of the same crash "followed the rules," stayed put, and died while waiting for rescue (Gonzales 2004, 172–174).

Intuition: A Survivor's Powerful Ally

> We think conscious thought is better, when in fact, intuition is soaring flight compared to the plodding of logic. Nature's greatest accomplishment, the human brain, is never more efficient or invested than when its host is at risk. Then, intuition is catapulted to another level entirely, a height at which it can accurately be called graceful, even miraculous. Intuition is the journey from A to Z without stopping at any other letter along the way. It is knowing without knowing why. . . . Some people say about rape, for example, "do not resist," while others say "always resist." Neither strategy is right for all situations, but one strategy is: Listen to your intuition. I do not know what might be best for you in some hazardous situation because I don't have all the information. Do not listen to the TV checklist of what to do, or the magazine article's checklist of what to do, or the story about what your friend did. Listen to the wisdom that comes from having heard it all by listening to yourself. **—Gavin de Becker, *The Gift of Fear: And Other Survival Signals That Protect Us from Violence***

From climate change, to terrorism, to an economy clouded by the peak in global oil production, we all face a future filled with uncertainty. Whatever actions and strategies we may have used successfully to guide or lives and businesses over the past few decades may not continue to work in this next period of rapid change. Clear intuitive messages can provide the extra guidance needed to navigate the murky waters of an uncertain future. I like to call it *the intuitive edge*, and many businessmen take high-priced seminars from intuitive experts to improve their "gut feel" and the accuracy of their business decisions.

Intuition is a powerful ally, especially in dangerous situations. Intuition is one of nature's gifts to us. It is a beautiful example of how natural selection has biologically programmed into human beings an incredible survival mechanism to protect the organism (us) in times of trouble. The

rational mind processes information and reaches conclusions that are founded on an information base that is usually incomplete and imperfect. Intuition appears to give us the ability to move beyond the limits of time and space, to "see around corners" in a way the rational mind can't. Intuitive hunches have been credited with saving many a person's life, and with guiding numerous entrepreneurs and investors on their road to success. I'm sure that nearly all of us can remember times when we received strong intuitive guidance about something. If we listened to that guidance, we usually found that we were glad we did. If we didn't listen, we may have been "burned" in some kind of painful life lesson. I suggest that you use some of the recommended references to help you develop intuitive tools to assist you in navigating our changing world.

When my boss, Jim, was the engineering manager of a well-known, high-tech electronics manufacturer, he told me this story: Jim and his friend were on their way to Lake Tahoe for a weekend of skiing. It was snowing heavily and Jim's friend was driving. Due to an accident, traffic on the freeway had come to a stop. For a few minutes, Jim's friend pulled up behind the stopped traffic, then he said, "I've got a bad feeling about this." He backed his car up several feet and pulled to the side in the breakdown lane. Two minutes later, a car came speeding down the freeway and plowed into the stopped traffic, wrecking about 20 cars and injuring many people. Had Jim's friend not listened to his intuitive guidance, he and Jim would very likely have been among the injured.

The difficulty in dealing with intuitive messages is to distinguish between the different inner voices. Which is speaking? Is it the voice of fear, ego, fantasy, or true inner guidance and wisdom? Many times I have allowed my strong rational mind to overrule my inner messages, only to regret later listening to this mind that thinks it always knows everything. In recent years, increasing numbers of businesspeople have found that developing their intuition gives them an extra advantage in today's tough business environment. The authors of the recommended references on intuition (see the end of this chapter) teach high-priced seminars to Fortune 500 business leaders to help them develop their intuitive business skills. You can learn and develop these skills on your own, using the exercises in their books. In addition to boosting your chances of success in emergencies and survival situations, these skills can help you deal more effectively with everyday decision making.

Testing Your Intuition—"Pit of the Stomach" Exercise

My mother in-law, Jackie Jussen, told me the following story: Orphaned at the age of five, Jackie was raised by her grandmother on a remote coffee plantation on the island of Java, Indonesia. Living far from any sizable community, her grandmother relied on natural herbal medicines. When a neighbor's son was deathly ill with malaria, Jackie's grandmother used her herbs to nurse him back to health. The neighbor was a Japanese immigrant and presented her with the gift of a kimono, which bore the seal of a powerful Japanese family.

Years later, during the World War II Japanese occupation of Java, civilians were forbidden to listen to the radio. All radios were registered with the state and fitted with official seals to indicate whether the radio had been used. Jackie's grandmother broke the seal on her radio so she could hear foreign news. When officials discovered the broken seal, she was ordered to appear in court. To maintain order and obedience, Japanese wartime justice was typically cruel and swift. Infractions, such as breaking the seal on the radio, usually resulted in a public beheading in the square immediately after sentencing. As her grandmother prepared to leave for the court hearing, an inner voice told her to wear the kimono. When the magistrate saw the seal of a royal family on her kimono, he asked her how she had come to own this kimono. On hearing her story, he reprimanded her, but spared her life.

I use the following technique for intuitively "testing" the outcome of a potential action:

First, decide which potential paths of action are your prime choices.

Second, take several deep, slow breaths to calm your mind and alter your consciousness. As you do this, offer a simple prayer asking for guidance. Focus your attention on the pit of your stomach, behind your belly button. Keep breathing deeply until you find that your stomach muscles are totally relaxed and your mind's thoughts are quieted.

Third, once you find that both your thoughts and stomach muscles are calm and relaxed, make a mental picture of one of the potential actions, paths, or decision. Check for physical reactions in your stomach area. If you have an expanded, relaxed feeling, your pictured action is probably a good path to follow. If you get a clenched, tight feeling in your gut, it's probably a good idea to avoid the pictured action. If you get nothing, either the choice is unimportant, or you simply are not intuitively in touch with it.

Fourth, repeat the process for each of the other potential course(s) of action, first calming yourself, then picturing the course of action and sensing the feeling in the pit of your stomach to determine which course is best.

Intuitive Messages

The only real valuable thing is intuition.
—Albert Einstein

For more than 20 years, I have been receiving occasional intuitive messages and inspiration. As a design engineer, when I was stuck on a problem, unhappy with the solutions that I had managed to come up with, I would often meditate on the problem and ask internally for help. On several different occasions, this method yielded "snapshots" of creative solutions that simply appeared on the inner screen of my mind. Subsequently, a number of these solutions earned U.S. patents.

In a twist on this creative method, some time shortly before Thanksgiving of 1997 during my morning session of prayer and meditation, I made a common request that I have made many times before—I simply asked for "guidance and direction." Usually when I make this generic request, I receive one or two simple suggestions such as how to improve a family relationship that I have been neglecting. However, on this day a bomb was dropped in my lap. I received a title and pictorial outline for a huge book project to help people become more self-reliant, live

more sustainably on the planet, prepare for potential emergencies, and cope with future failures and disruptions in modern technology.

I was overwhelmed with the scope of this project, and was quite inclined to simply ignore it, but the internal "still small voice" of inner guidance was too persistent to ignore and eventually blossomed into this book. I definitely did not see myelf as smart enough to figure out the entire outline for this book in an instant. Just writing a college term paper was a major ordeal for me. Unlike most prior inspirations that I had received in meditation, I could not attribute this to something that my conscious and subconscious mind had already been working on. Until the inspiration was dumped in my lap in an instantaneous flash, I had never even remotely considered writing anything like this. I do believe that the inspiration for this book came from a higher source, but that source did not tell me whom it was (I can't claim it was Jesus, Buddha, or God himself). At the time I received this inspiration (November 1997), dotcoms were booming, oil prices were at a 30-year low when inflation was factored in, and the Arab–Israeli situation looked like it was going to be resolved peacefully in short order. Life seemed quite rosy in general, and I seriously questioned the need for a book such as this. In today's post–Hurricane Katrina, post-9/11, and post–Peak Oil world, the need for such a book is quite obvious.

WATER

Requirements

Water is essential for survival. Most of us could live for several weeks without food, but only about 3 to 4 days without water under average conditions, and in extreme heat we would be in serious trouble after a single day. The typical adult requires about 2 quarts of drinking water per day under normal conditions and 1 to 2 gallons per day in hot-weather conditions. Usually one gallon per adult per day is enough for drinking and some limited washing.

Recommended Emergency Measures

- Any surface water in the United States may be contaminated, and should be boiled or otherwise purified prior to drinking.
- Bring water to a full boil. At any elevation, by the time water has reached the boiling point, it has killed all living organisms except for *prions*, which are responsible for mad cow disease, scrapie, and other related illnesses. Prions appear to be formed of proteins, and are not living organisms in the traditional sense. They are not destroyed by traditional heat sterilization methods, and may be found in the nervous systems of infected animals.
- Floods and earthquakes often contaminate public water systems. When in doubt, boil or otherwise purify tap water until authorities say the water is fit for drinking.
- If warned of an impending crisis, store water in as many containers as possible, including

sinks and bathtubs.

- hotwater heaters and your home's piping are good sources of stored water. Turn off the gas or electricity to your hot-water heater before draining it. If the water contains sediment, do not discard it, but allow the sediment to settle. To drain household piping, turn on the uppermost faucet slightly, to release suction in the system, and drain from the lowermost faucet (or other plumbing connection).
- Your body needs water to digest food. If you have little or no water, limit your intake of dry foods to the bare minimum.

Dehydration

Avoid dehydration, because it will sap your body strength, but ration your water usage if you have a limited supply.

Signs of dehydration include thirst, fatigue, dizziness, dry mouth, headache, loss of appetite, dark-colored urine, and sleepiness. If you need physical energy to deal with your situation, you must do your best to find and conserve water.

Conserving Water

- If traveling in hot country, stay in the shade as much as possible. Avoid midday travel. Travel at night, if possible.
- Wear loose clothing because it will provide an insulating layer of air, which will help to reduce evaporative water losses by maintaining high humidity close to the skin.
- Do not go shirtless. It will feel cooler, but you will lose more water through evaporation and may sunburn. Severe sunburn can lead to a toxic condition known as "sun poisoning."
- Move slowly and avoid overexertion. Try to breathe through the nose—you will lose less water than by breathing through the mouth.
- Drink in small sips, not big gulps.
- Sucking on a small pebble, twig, or blade of grass can help generate saliva and minimize the discomfort of thirst.
- The human body seeks to maintain a certain level of humidity at the skin surface. In cold, dry climates, this results in the daily loss of significant amounts of water, since the body is slowly pumping water into the air at all times. Mountaineers often use "vapor barriers" to minimize water consumption and the use of fuel to melt snow for water. Vapor barriers are created by wearing waterproof clothing and using plastic bags as inner sock liners. In subfreezing temperatures, and especially when using down sleeping bags, the use of a vapor barrier sleeping bag liner helps to prevent the daily loss of the sleeping bag's insulating value due to the condensation of perspiration into its outer layers.

- Do not waste potable water to cool yourself or wash clothing. Wash in untreated water, if available and not polluted. You can spread clothes out in direct sunlight to deodorize and disinfect, at least to some degree.

For more information on finding, storing, and treating water, see Chapter 5.

FIRE

Your ability to start a fire is important for staying warm in cold climates, for cooking food, and for sterilizing water. I'll start with simple instructions for city folks on building a campfire with matches and paper, and then proceed through the more Spartan methods, ending with the difficult process of starting a fire by rubbing two sticks together.

Starting a Fire with Matches

Materials

I like to separate my materials into piles by size. Start by gathering a couple handfuls of tinder, about a third of a shopping bag's worth of kindling, at least a half shopping bag's worth of small sticks (½ to 2 inches thick), and at least a shopping bag's worth of thicker wood (2 to 12 inches thick).

Tinder

Any kind of material that takes very little heat to start it on fire can be used for tinder. Paper makes great tinder, if you have matches. If you don't have matches and are attempting to build a fire with a spark (see "Starting a Fire with Flint and Steel" below), you will need extra-fine dry tinder. Dry pine needles, fine dry grasses, shredded paper, birch bark, dried moss, bird down, mouse nests, cotton balls, wood shavings, pulverized dry pinecones, and fibrous inner cedar bark make good tinder.

Kindling

Kindling must catch on fire within a few seconds from burning tinder, yet burns for only a few minutes to ignite the larger pieces of wood. Dry pine needles, still stuck to branches, are perfect.

Small twigs, ⅛ to ¼ inch thick, are also excellent. Test the sticks to see whether they are dry or wet. If the sticks can be bent and twisted without snapping, they are wet and will not do for kindling. If all available kindling is wet, you can still burn green pine needles or else you must find standing wood, which can be split with an axe or shaved down to find a dry core. You can make "feather sticks" for kindling from larger sticks of wood by carving many shallow cuts with a knife to create fine, curved shavings protruding from the side of the sticks.

Positioning the Fire

Build your fire in a protected spot, especially if the area is windy. If it is exceptionally windy, you may have to dig a trench for your fire or build it on the leeward side of a fallen tree or large

rock. If the ground is swampy or the snow is deep, you may have to build your fire on a platform of green logs covered by dirt.

> **CAUTION: Do not use stones from a riverbed or porous stones around or under a fire. These stones can explode when heated due to internal steam pockets.**

Building the Fire

If you have paper, crumple a couple of sheets, build a small pile of fine kindling on top of the paper, then light the paper in several places. If you don't have paper, use two handfuls of extremely fine, dry tinder instead. Make sure you don't smother the tiny flames of the beginning fire with a pile that's too big or too tightly packed, or by stacking larger wood too quickly onto the fire. As the kindling catches on fire, pile on more kindling and gradually add thicker chunks of wood. Make sure the fire gets enough air circulating through it. Either build your fire in a crisscross fashion or lean the wood against itself in a tepee-like cone shape, to ensure that there are plenty of gaps between the wood for air circulation. A well-built fire, with dry wood and plenty of gaps for air circulation, will not smoke much.

Figure 4-2. Crisscross- and tepee-style fires.

Starting a Fire with Flint and Steel

Flint is a naturally occurring stone that yields heavy sparks when struck by a knife or other sharp stones. Artificial flints do the same thing and may come with a saw striker, which creates lots of good sparks. Starting a fire with the spark from the flint requires patience, shelter from wind, and very fine, dry tinder. Strike sparks into your tinder, and gently blow on a spark resting in the tinder until it grows into flames. Continue building your fire following the previous set of instructions. A modern improvement on the flint and steel is a commercial magnesium block with a flint. Using a knife, shave a pile of fine magnesium filings from the side of the block. When struck by a spark from a flint, magnesium filings rapidly burst into a hot flame, easily

igniting kindling or tinder.

Starting a Fire with Bow and Drill

A fire can be started by rapidly spinning a wooden "drill"—under pressure—against a notch in a board, until enough heat is generated to create a small coal, which is dropped into tinder and fanned into fire. This is not easy, but it's about a hundred times easier than starting a fire with a hand-spun stick.

Bow

Use any stick, preferably curved, and roughly ½ to ¾ inch thick by 30 inches long. With your knife, make a shallow groove around each end (about an inch from the ends) to make a spot to tie your bowstring. Use a hefty, strong string or leather thong (not rope) to tie the bow. Braided leather thongs or ⅛- to ¼-inch nylon cord work well as bowstring. Typically, plant fiber cordage must be doubled back on itself and corded a second time to make it strong enough for the bowstring on a fire drill bow. The string may stretch as you work the bow. Tie the bowstring with a little slack to allow for the string to wrap around the drill. Experiment with different string tensions and with using your fingers to tweak the string for more or less tension while using the bow.

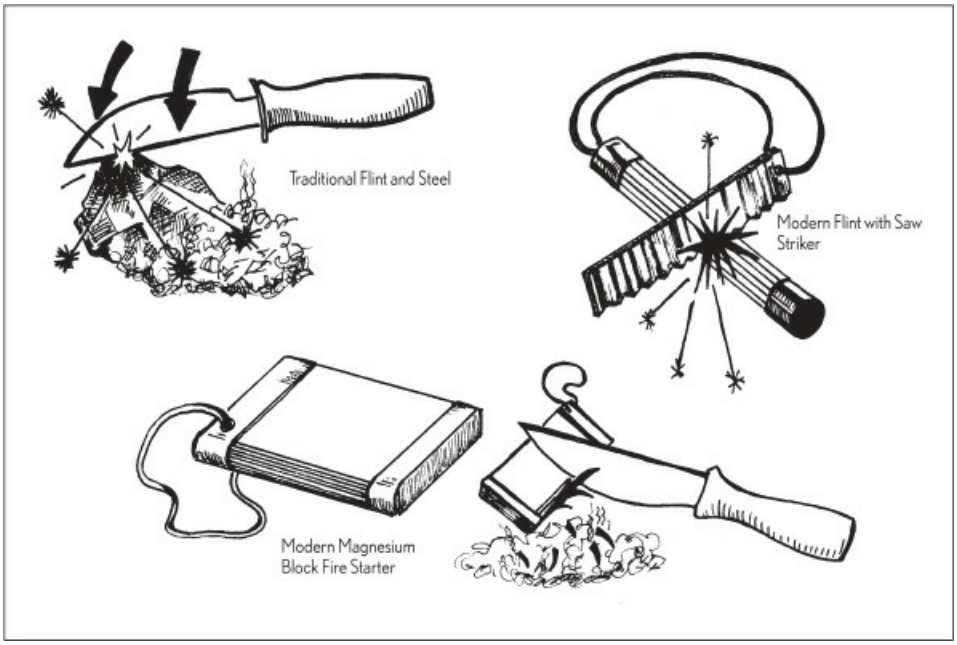


Figure 4-3. Starting a fire with flint and steel.

Drill

Usually the drill and the fireboard will be made from the same material, though the choice of wood for the fireboard (also known as hearthboard) is most critical. For a fire drill and hearth

board to make fire, they must be very dry and they must generate an extremely fine powder when spun together. Try to pick freestanding wood with the bark weathered away, because wood lying on the ground usually picks up ground moisture. If your pieces of wood generate coarse, gritty wood shavings, you should find another chunk of wood. The best woods are usually softwoods that are not very resinous. Resins such as those found in most pines, spruce, and firs tend to act like a grease, making it difficult or impossible to get enough friction going to make a fire. Some recommended varieties of wood are cottonwood, aspen, sagebrush, yucca, birch, and poplar. Other woods that work, but not as easily, include box elder, elderberry, and willow.

NOTE: Even pieces of the recommended varieties will not work well if they are moist or resinous or generate coarse shavings.

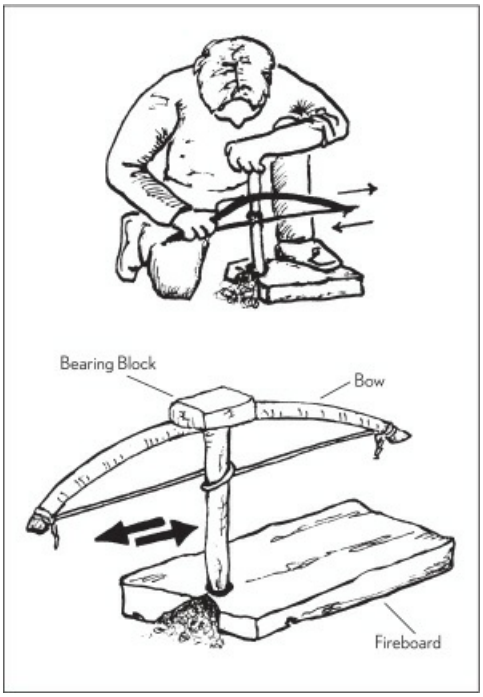


Figure 4-4. Fire bow and drill.

The drill should be about ½ to ¾ inch in diameter and about 6 to 10 inches long. The wood should dent somewhat under your thumbnail, being neither too hard nor extremely soft. Round the drill end for the fireboard and trim the corners of the drill end for the bearing block at about 45 degrees.

Fireboard

The exact dimensions of the fireboard are not important but, like the drill, the type and condition of the wood are critical. The fireboard should be long enough to steady with your foot and significantly wider than the drill; about 1½ to 2 inches wide by a couple of feet long works well. In a real-life situation, you will use a fireboard many times, until its entire length has been used up. Using your knife, split an appropriate branch for fabricating your fireboard. Shave down the round side until it's about ½ inch thick, and then square up the sides. By rotating your knife tip, make a shallow depression in the fireboard just over one-half the diameter of the drill from the

board edge. This depression must hold the drill as it spins. Cut a narrow V-notch from the edge of the board to the center of the depression you just gouged into the fireboard. This V-notch will collect bits of wood shavings, which eventually smolder as you work the drill.

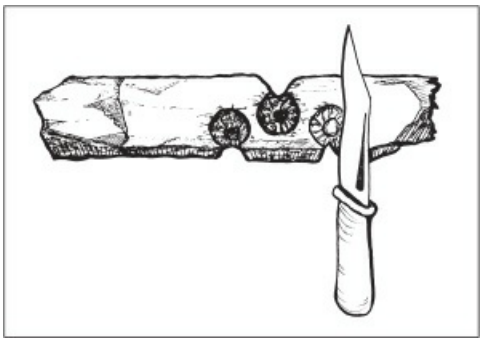


Figure 4-5. The fireboard.

Bearing Block

You can use many different materials for the bearing block. The main requirements are that the materials be hard and slippery. A one-ounce shot glass, a smooth stone with a depression, a chunk of bone, a knot of resinous softwood, or a knot of hardwood works well. Make a shallow hole in the bearing block to capture the end of the drill. If it's made of wood, a little ChapStick, some Crisco, or animal fat will help to lubricate the bearing block. Make sure you don't contaminate the fireboard end of your drill with the lubricant.

Tinder

Almost any dry, fibrous material will work for tinder. The inner bark of cedar is great, and cottonwood works well, as do many dried grasses. Roll these around between your fingers until they are shredded fine like a cotton ball. Make a small bird's nest out of your tinder, with a depression in the middle to catch the glowing ember. Set it to the side on a piece of bark, so you can carry it when it bursts into flame without burning your hands. Make sure that you have kindling and dry wood ready, too. Unlike matches, a second chance with a bow drill involves considerable effort.

Procedure

Place a piece of bark under the fireboard notch to catch the ember and to insulate it from the ground. Wrap the bowstring in a single full loop around the drill. Kneel down with one foot firmly standing on top of the fireboard next to the V-notch. Get comfortable, because this will probably take twenty minutes or more. Apply pressure with the bearing block, and start rotating the drill with a full back-and-forth stroke of the bow. Very little will happen until the drill seats itself into the cavity on the fireboard; at that point it will develop considerably more friction and start to smolder. Once the spark inside the dust pile is clearly smoldering, relax and lift the spark on its bark bed, dumping the spark into your bird's nest of tinder. Blow on the spark until the tinder bursts into flame. Congratulations, you have made fire!

Starting a Fire with a Hand Drill

This is tough, but doable. Prepare the tinder, kindling, and fireboard as above. The fireboard should be a little thinner, perhaps as thin as ¼ inch. The drill should be about ¼ inch in diameter and about 30 inches long. Dried cattails are a favored drill material. Persistence, tough hands, and lots of rapid drilling with steady downward pressure are the keys to success. Use the full length of your hands and apply downward pressure as you spin the drill between your hands. Some people are able to flutter their hands up the drill, while maintaining the drill spin, to prevent it from cooling down as they shift their hands to the top of the drill to begin another round of downward pressure spins. If you find that you must stop drilling to shift your hands, do so as quickly as possible to minimize cooling. Thumb loops of string or a leather thong attached to the top of the hand drill can help you start a fire faster by applying steady downward pressure as you spin the drill.

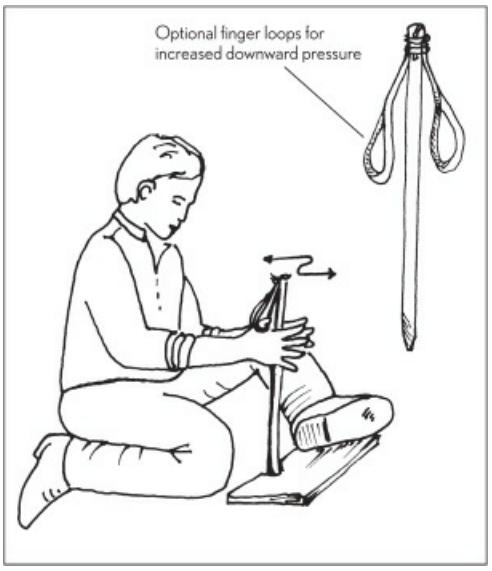


Figure 4-6. Using a hand fire drill.

Starting a Fire with a Fire Plough

Cut a lengthwise shallow groove in an 18-inch fireboard made from soft, nonresinous wood that is at least 1½ inches wide. Prepare your tinder and kindling in the same way as for starting a fire with a bow drill. Using a hardwood or other nonresinous stick, drive the stick back and forth under considerable pressure to generate friction, sawdust, and eventually a spark.

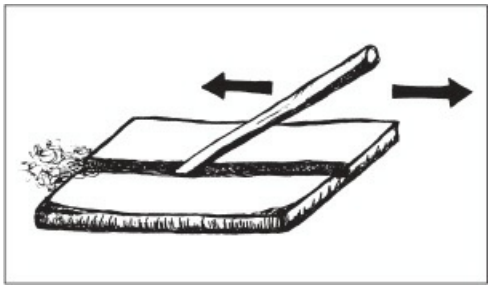


Figure 4-7. Using a fire plough to start a fire.

FOOD

Most people can live for weeks without food, but longterm survival depends on finding and preparing a variety of foods. If you lived in the middle of a rabbit paradise or trout heaven, you would eventually starve to death if you just ate either rabbit or trout, since they wouldn't provide you with all the vitamins and minerals necessary for long-term sustenance and they are low in fat and calories. This section gives you some basic guidelines and suggestions. See Chapter 6 for more information. If you are stuck without food for extended periods, intestinal cleansing will help you to feel better and to work at a surprising level of functionality. I once ran for 11 miles through the High Sierra Mountains on the last day of a 10-day fast, and my energy level was remarkably good. For more information on this subject, see the section on fasting in Chapter 9.

I heard this story from a man who taught survival classes in Arizona. He talked about the experience of a group of college-age men and women taking part in a wilderness survival class in which they had to forage and hunt for all of their food and water for 3 days, using their bare hands or what simple tools they could fabricate from found materials. He said that their experience was pretty typical of what most participants experience in their classes. On the first day, the group divided into men and women. They each discussed their game plan. The men's group decided to focus on hunting and trapping to find their daily food, while the women's group chose to pursue foraging for their sustenance. After the first day, none of the men had been successful at hunting or fishing for food, while the women had found a few berries and edible roots. Both groups chose to continue with their individual game plans. By the morning of the third day, the men's group had not managed to kill a single animal for food and hungrily shared the roots and other edible plants that the women's group had to offer them.

Basic Guidelines

- Don't spend more energy looking for food than you get from food.

- Avoid scurvy, which is caused by vitamin C deficiency. Scurvy is characterized by swollen or bleeding gums, followed by weakness and bruises or wounds that won't heal. For a natural source of vitamin C, chew on wild rose hips or green pine needles (or make a tea out of them). The bright green, fresh pine needle tips are the most palatable. Vitamin C plays an important role in the immune system and is a natural detoxifier.
- If you are dehydrated, do not eat unless the food contains a significant amount of water. Water is required to digest and metabolize food. Eating dry food when severely dehydrated will not give you energy but will make the dehydration worse.
- In most locations, there will be some kind of vegetation that you can eat to sustain yourself. The trick is to identify and prepare the local edible vegetation.
- Trim moldy areas off food before eating. My mom used to say, "It's just penicillin," but don't you believe it. Molds manufacture aflatoxins, which are extremely poisonous substances. Penicillium is one of the few molds not harmful to most humans. Discard grain that shows signs of mold.

Plants

I highly recommend that you pick up a field guide to edible plants in your area (see the references). A brief guide to 19 common edible plants is included in Chapter 6.

Edibility is the first consideration when foraging. There are many thousands of edible plants in North America. Since you can't always be sure that you have a field guide in your back pocket, the following test can be used to determine the edibility of unknown plants. Only one person should test each plant. If stomach problems arise, drink lots of hot water for relief. If necessary, induce vomiting by sticking your finger down your throat or swallowing some charcoal.

> **CAUTION: Do not assume that a plant is safe to eat because birds, insects, or animals have eaten it. Many plants that are poisonous to humans serve as food sources for certain animals, birds, or insects.**

Edibility Test

- Don't skip a step—go slow and be thorough.
- Do not use the edibility test for mushrooms. Mushrooms must be positively identified. Improperly identified mushrooms may taste fine but prove deadly in small amounts.
- Do not eat plants with milky sap, except for dandelions.

1. **Smell:** Crush some of the plant. If it smells like almonds or peaches, it probably contains the common plant poison hydrocyanic acid. Reject plants with this smell.
2. **Skin irritation:** Crush a small portion and rub some of the juice onto the skin of a sensitive area, such as the inside of your arm or thigh. If you experience any discomfort, rash, swelling, or burning sensations, reject this plant. Oxalic acid, a common plant poison, can be recognized by the sharp dry stinging or burning feeling it leaves on the skin or tongue.
3. **Mouth test:** If the test plant passed the skin test, cautiously proceed with the mouth test. At the first sign of burning, irritation, swelling, stomach ache, nausea, dizziness, or other ill

effects, spit it out and reject this plant. First, crush a little bit of the plant and place a small amount on the lips for at least 10 seconds. Next, place a pea-sized portion in a corner of the mouth for 10 more seconds. Move this portion to the tip of the tongue for another 10 seconds. Hold it under the tongue for 10 more seconds. Chew and then hold in the mouth for about 15 minutes total. Spit it out, and then wait for 5 hours.

4. **First swallow test:** If there are no ill effects after 5 hours, chew and swallow one teaspoon-sized bite. Wait 10 hours, drinking and eating nothing else during this period.
5. **Second swallow test:** Eat about one-third of a cup of this plant. Wait 24 hours. If there are no ill effects, consider this plant edible. When in doubt, go slow!

Tree Bark

Animals and starving people have survived through the winter months solely by eating the inner live layer of tree bark (cambium layer). You can eat it raw, cook it like spaghetti, or dry and grind it into flour. It can be added to stews for nutrition and to give the stew some body. Peel off a large section of tree bark, keeping the extra for later use. Do not cut bark from more than halfway around the tree, or you might kill it. The light-colored layer of inner bark is the edible portion; sometimes it has a green hue. The more edible barks are aspens, birch, willows, slippery elm, tamarack, maples, spruces, pines, and hemlocks. The buds and shoots of these trees are also edible, except for tamarack and hemlock, which are poisonous.

> **CAUTION: All parts of the plant known as hemlock are extremely poisonous, even though it looks very inviting and similar to wild celery.The young shoots can look quite a bit like carrot tops. This is not the same plant as the hemlock tree. All contact with the poisonous hemlock plant should be avoided!**

Grasses

Grasses are edible. The best parts to eat are the soft white stems just below the surface of the ground. Make sure it's really grass that you are eating, and do not eat grass that has been sprayed. Some grasses and other plants have tiny hooks on their stems and leaf edges that will irritate the digestive tract and should be avoided.

Seeds and Grains

All grass seeds are edible, but some other seeds are poisonous. Use the edibility test on unknown seeds. Tasting will do you no harm, but do not swallow any seed that is bitter, burning, or otherwise unpalatable.

> **CAUTION: Discard all grains from clusters that are blackened or carry black, enlarged bean-like grains. These grains are infected with ergot mold, a powerfully toxic substance.**

Roots and Tubers

The starch granules in most roots and tubers are insoluble in cold water. Most edible roots and tubers should be cooked, since cooking ruptures the starch granules and makes them more digestible.

Seaweed

Most sea vegetables are edible, except for some thin thread-like seaweeds. Collect seaweed from below the high water line, and do not eat if from polluted waters. They are rich in vitamins and minerals, but many have a strong fishy taste. Soak in fresh water to remove salt and improve the taste. Eat seaweed raw or cooked into soups and stews, or dry it for later use. Fresh seaweed spoils quickly.

Insects, Grubs, and Worms

Insects can be a valuable source of necessary protein in emergency situations. Pound for pound they have more food value than vegetables and are usually much easier to hunt and gather than mammals. Since they may contain harmful parasites, insects should be cooked before eating. Boiling is the safest method, but roasting in hot coals or on a hot rock will suffice if no pots are available. To make them more palatable, you can chop them finely, or dry and grind them up before adding to soups or stews. Some varieties of grubs can taste like cheese or sweets and are considered delicacies in certain parts of the world. Look for grubs in rotting stumps or under peeling tree bark.

> **CAUTION: Brightly colored insects, including their caterpillars, are usually poisonous.**

Ants

Most ants have a stinging bite containing formic acid, which is quite bitter and odorous. Cook these ants for at least six minutes to destroy this poison.

Caterpillars

If hairy, you can squeeze to remove head and guts. Discard the hairy outside.

Grasshoppers, Crickets, and Cicadas

Remove the head, wings, and legs before roasting or boiling. The legs have fine barbs, which will irritate your stomach. Gather in the morning, when they are cold or sluggish, or trap them by laying out a wool blanket at night in a meadow. Barbs on their legs will catch in the wool, like burrs stuck to a sweater.

Worms

Worms are an excellent source of food for robins and humans. Starve them for a day, or squeeze them to get the dirt out of their bellies. Try drying them and grinding to a powder to make them more palatable.

Slugs and Snails

Avoid sea snails and any snails with bright shells, especially tropical ones (possibly poisonous). Starve them for a few days to remove any toxins from the food they have been eating.

SHELTER

In severe climates, some kind of fabricated shelter from the elements will be essential for your survival. In more moderate climates, a shelter may not be necessary, but can make your daily life a lot more pleasant and comfortable. This section will cover several rudimentary shelters that you can build from foraged materials. See Chapter 7 for more elaborate, permanent structures. A good shelter can keep you dry and warm, even in torrential rains or subfreezing weather.

Location

- **Water:** Try to locate your shelter near a good water supply, but above high-water marks and never in a dry stream bed or wash. Stay at least 30 yards from your water source to avoid polluting it. If insects are a problem, stay away from stagnant water, especially wet, boggy areas.
- **Building materials and fuel:** Choose a location where you can find building materials and fuel nearby so you are not hauling them a long way.
- **Visibility:** If you are seeking rescue, make sure you are visible and not too near a noisy river that might obscure the sounds of rescuers approaching.
- **Natural shelter:** Utilize natural bluffs, fallen trees, caves, ridges, and so on for protection from the wind and rain.
- **Comfort:** The site should be flat enough and smooth enough for comfortable sleeping. Before pitching a tent, it's a good idea to lie on the ground first to see how the spot feels.
- **Drainage:** Make sure that the site will drain. Avoid hollows that can turn into ponds in the rain. Trenches can help to divert small streams in a downpour, but you can't move a pond.
- **What to avoid:** Don't try to build a shelter on hard, rocky ground. Check the area for stinging ants, bee nests, and so on, and avoid high wind areas, such as hilltops and ridge tops (unless you want high winds to keep insects away). Avoid areas with danger of falling rocks or large dead branches from overhead trees. Valley bottoms and hollows can collect cold, frosty air at night.

Squirrel's Nest

This is the simplest of survival shelters. It's a drag to get in and out of, so you should really make something else if you will be using it more than once. The basic idea is to heap as much dry debris as you can into a pile, and then crawl into it to stay dry and warm. Use leaves, pine boughs, bark, and so on. The debris is your sleeping bag, so the thicker it is the warmer you will be. To insulate yourself from the ground, make sure you have an insulating layer under you as well as on top. Without a poncho or tarp on top, it won't be very effective at keeping you dry in a rainstorm.

Building on Fallen Trunks and Trees

It is usually easier to start a primitive shelter from an existing feature. A fallen trunk makes an excellent support for a simple lean-to. Shingling is an important part of primitive structures, and can be made from any materials that will keep rain from penetrating your shelter. Shingling can consist of thatch, bark, sod, or sticks and dirt. The basic idea is to make enough layers of overlapping sloped materials so that water runs down the outside without penetrating the structure and getting you wet. Traditional thatch is made from bundles of straw with the straw strands all oriented in the same direction. The capillary action of water causes rain to flow along the straw strands, rather than penetrating through the straw, and is very effective at keeping rain outside of a shelter when the thatch bundles are laid in overlapping shingle fashion.

Figure 4-8. Fallen-log shelter.

Scout Pits and Coal Beds

It takes considerable effort, but you can spend a comfortable warm night in a “scout pit,” even when it’s very cold outside. First, dig a trench about 2 feet deep by 2 feet wide and a few feet longer than your body length. Build a fire in the trench that covers the entire length. After the fire has roasted the ground for an hour or two, cover the coals with several inches of dirt. Bridge the top of the trench with a layer of sticks and cover with leaves for insulation, finishing with a layer of dirt. Crawl in and enjoy the warmth of the heated ground. If the trench is big enough, you can use it a second time by heating rocks in an outside fire and dragging them in at night to heat your scout pit. One alternative is to build a fire in a shallower trench, 6 to 12 inches deep. When the fire is down to coals, cover the coals with a few inches of dirt, followed by debris insulation. You can pull some of this insulation over you for a preheated squirrel’s nest shelter. If you have a tarp, place it underneath your body, to act as a vapor barrier for protection from ground moisture due to steam rising from the heated earth.

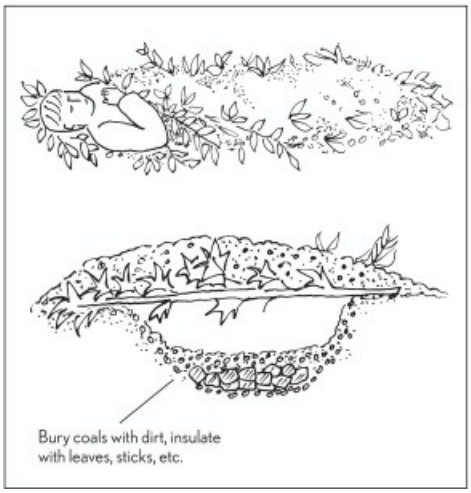


Figure 4-9. Scout pit.

Snow Shelters

Snow is a good insulator and can protect you from fierce winds and bitter cold. If your clothing is cotton, or otherwise poorly designed for snow country, beware of getting yourself wet while constructing your snow shelter. Unless you are traveling in the arctic, with wind-packed snow and little contour to the land, you will probably be better off constructing a snow cave or a shelter under the boughs of a tree than trying to construct a traditional igloo. Create a raised platform for sleeping on, with a lower area to collect the coldest air. Insulate the sleeping platform with pine boughs, when available, to keep yourself relatively warm and dry.

> **CAUTION: You must provide ventilation in snow shelters. Your body heat will eventually raise the inside temperature above freezing to the point where it glazes over the inside of a snow cave. You can suffocate without a hole for ventilation (I suggest a fist-sized hole).**

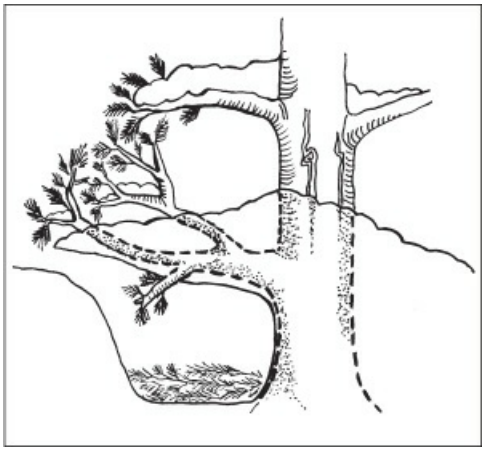


Figure 4-10. Tree-well snow shelter.

If you can't find a firm snowdrift or a suitable tree well for your snow cave, you can pile soft snow into a heap, trample it some, and let it firm up for a couple hours before digging it out to make a snow cave. Make sure that you carve the ceiling into a curved dome shape to prevent sagging and collapse of the ceiling.

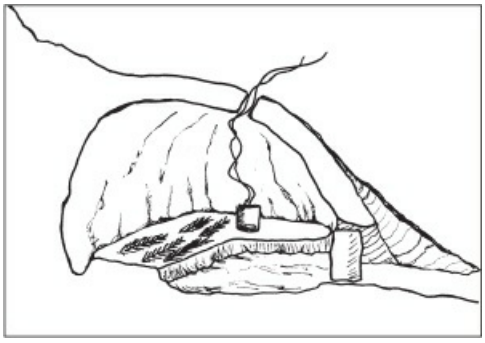


Figure 4-11. Snow cave.

EMERGENCY SNOWSHOES

Boughs of flexible spruce branches with a healthy supply of green needles will suffice for snowshoes in an emergency. Use string or green branches to tie boughs to your feet. Weaving a second or third branch into the boughs ties individual branches together for better flotation and more stability. With a roll of duct tape or string, you can make a decent pair of pine bough snowshoes in a short period of time. The task will be tougher if you must rely solely on green branches for holding the snowshoes onto your feet.

CORDAGE

Primitive living can be greatly enhanced with cordage, which is just a fancy term for string, twine, and rope. Cordage is handy for thatching your roof, lashing together branches for your shelter, stringing a bow, sewing your garments, making nets for fish, snaring animals, and so on. Many indigenous societies have been literally held together with string. You can make cordage from a variety of materials, including hair, fur, hides, narrow strips of cloth, and a multitude of plant fibers. Of the recommended references on primitive skills, *Primitive Technology: A Book of Earth Skills* has the best information on cordage.

Recommended Plant Fibers

For many thousands of years, native peoples have gathered and spun plant fibers from thousands of different plants. Their cords have made ropes strong enough to hold elephants and carry suspension bridges across hundredfoot-wide gorges in the Himalayas. Archaeologists have discovered 10,000-year-old fishing nets that are still intact. Any strong flexible plant can make

cordage. The following list is for starters, but use the "fiber test" to ensure that the plants you are working with are adequate for cordage. Some of the plants on the list can work well only at certain times of the year or under certain conditions. Common plant fiber sources are listed below.

- **Leaf fibers:** Yucca, cattail, reeds, iris, agave, and palmetto.
- **Dry outer bark:** Bulrush, sage, willow, and cattail.
- **Wet inner bark:** Aspen, cottonwood, sage, juniper, willow, cedar, mesquite, walnut, cherry, slippery elm, and hawthorn.
- **Bast fibers:** Soft fibers located between the outer bark and a woody stem on many common weeds, such as dogbane, milkweed, hemp, stinging nettle, evening primrose, flax, fireweed, hollyhock, and wild licorice. Dogbane is commonly acknowledged as one of the best fibers for cordage.
- **Roots:** Spruces, poplar, and lupines.
- **Whole plants:** Rushes, cattail, sedge, and various grasses (most grasses are weak when dry).

Fiber Test

- Tie a knot in a small bundle of fibers to check for flexibility. If it breaks, the fibers are too brittle.
- Spin a small length of twine. Pull on the twine to check for strength. Good fibers for cordage grip together when spun tightly, but fibers that are too slippery and smooth will not hold together.
- Remember that some fibers are stronger wet, while some are better dry. You may be able to make adequate cordage for a fire drill from green grasses that breaks once the grasses dry.

Preparing Fibers

Different fiber types must be prepared in different ways. Leaf fibers, such as yucca, are usually best harvested green. Bast fibers, such as hemp and dogbane, are best processed dry, but the plants can be harvested green and then bundled to dry before processing (allow for ventilation so they don't rot).

Bast Fibers

Start by trying to scrape off the papery outer bark with a knife held perpendicular to the stalk (if the plant is dry and the outer bark is cracked, skip this step). Buff the stalks over your pant leg to remove what's left of the outer bark. Use a smooth rock or a wooden mallet/chunk to gently crack/split the stalks, without cutting the fibers.

You are trying to split the fiber sheath and remove it from the woody core. Using your fingers, bend the fibers and peel out sections of the woody core. Roll the fibers back and forth between the palms of your hands to separate the fibers and clean the remaining bits of bark and woody core out of the fiber bundle. Chunks of this stuff will weaken your cordage and leave it messy looking.

Yucca and Agave

These and other similar tough leaf fibers are usually processed most easily when green or after they have been soaked for a while. Yucca and agave make very strong cordage and can be used to make packs, sandals, and more. Generally, the long leaves will be pounded to split the fibers from the fleshy parts. Soaking the pounded leaves can remove alkaloids, which can be irritating to the skin. Use a knife or the smooth edge of a stone to scrape the fleshy parts from the fibers. Roll the fibers between the palms of your hands to further clean and separate the fibers.

Retting

Some plant and bark fibers are most easily processed through "retting"—soaking and letting them partially rot to facilitate separating the fibers and/or their substrates. Retting might take as short a time as one or two days, but can also take as long as two weeks. The retting process uses bacteria in the water to eat away the fleshy binders that hold the fibers together.

Spinning Fibers into Cord

In general, more twists per inch make for stronger and stiffer cordage. For ease of handling, most hand cordage is spun from two strands of fibers at a time, but you can spin from three or more, if you wish. You can spin cords into ropes by the identical process, or you can "plait" (braid) three strands into rope. Since hand-twisting makes for the tightest, cleanest, strongest cordage, it is best for things like bowstring, where performance is critical. Leg-rolling is faster, but not as tight, so primitive cordage that requires a high volume of spun materials, such as rope and netting, is usually made by leg-rolling.

1. **Start:** Tie the end of your fiber bundle in a knot and split the bundle into two roughly equal bundles. Alternately roll both ends of the bundle between your thumb and forefingers until it kinks in the middle.
2. **Spin:** Slip the knotted end over something to hold it or bite the kink in the center of the fiber bundle to hold it in your teeth. Spin two strands of fibers tightly, both in the same direction—either clockwise or counterclockwise.
3. **Spin and twist:** Now, twist both of your spun fiber bundles into cord. The direction of twist is critical. Twist the fiber bundles in the opposite direction from the way each bundle was spun. Good tension, tight spinning, and the proper directions of spin and twist are what hold the fibers in cordage.
4. **Repeat:** Keep working your way down a few inches of cord at a time. Splice in fibers as you need them.

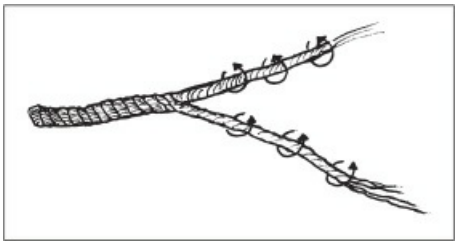


Figure 4-12. Twisting fibers to make two-ply cordage.

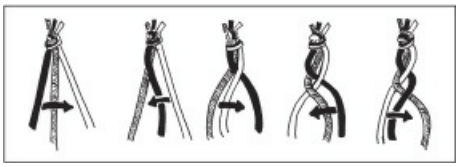


Figure 4-13. Braiding cordage into ropes.

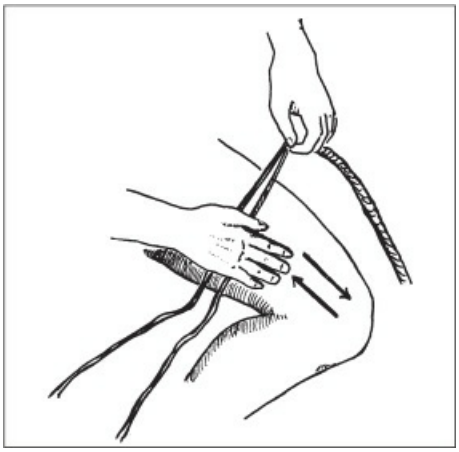


Figure 4-14. Leg-rolling cordage.

Splicing

Unless you are making short cords from a long bundle of fiber, you will need to add fibers by splicing. It's best to blend in splices by staggering and thinning the fiber ends in the splice and the ends of the cord bundle so that they blend together well. Unravel the ends of the cordage until the fibers are roughly parallel, and then place the splice bundle next to the cordage ends. Twisting the fibers locks the splice fibers to the existing cordage fibers. Splice fibers to either side of two-ply cordage, or bend the splice bundle and splice into both sides of the cordage at the same time. Stagger the splices to prevent weak spots in the cordage.

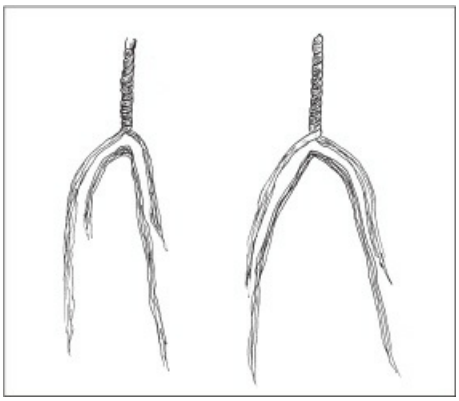


Figure 4-15. Splicing fibers into hand-rolled cordage.

SIMPLE TOOLS

Until recently, scientists and philosophers believed that human beings are the only makers and users of tools. Then anthropologist Jane Goodall discovered that chimpanzees make termite-fetching tools by stripping the bark off properly sized green twigs. The chimps stick their fabricated tools down termite nests, causing the termites to attack the invading stick. The chimpanzees retrieve their "termite tools" from the nest with gobs of attached termites, which provide a delicious treat. Indigenous peoples have fashioned tools since before the dawn of history. Even though monkeys have joined our ranks as makers and users of tools, you may find yourself surprisingly proud of your first efforts to fashion a piece of bone, stone, or wood into a usable tool.

Discoidal Stone Knives

Probably the simplest way to get a knife, without access to modern tools, is to make a discoidal knife. Start with a fine-grained glassy rock, such as quartzite or basalt, preferably oval shaped. Obsidian, which is volcanic glass, breaks into sharper edges than the finest metal scalpels and razor blades. Strike this rock (call it a "cobble") against a larger rock (an "anvil") to bust off a sharp flake or disc of rock from the end. Riverbeds often contain many fine-grained, rounded stones suitable for making into stone knives. Once you have broken one disc off the cobble, it is usually easier to break the cobble into more sharp flakes.

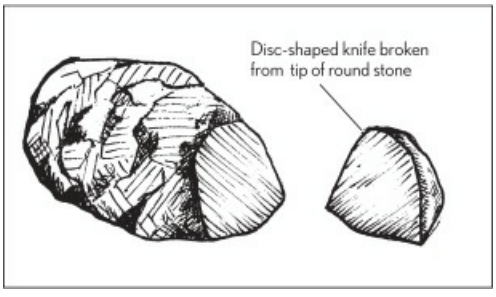


Figure 4-16. Making a discoidal knife.

Cautions about Working with Stone

It is essential to wear safety glasses or goggles when working with stone. Flying shards can damage your eyes or even blind you. Additionally, the dust from stone cutting contains tiny particles with sharp edges that act like tiny knives, settling into lungs and creating scar tissue and cumulative damage. Breathing too much stone dust over a period of years can lead to silicosis (similar to asbestosis). Do your stone cutting and grinding outside, protect your lungs with a dust mask, and wash the particles out of your clothing. Cut stone is sharp, so protect your skin and keep plenty of Band-Aids around when learning these arts. Of course, in a survival situation, simply do your best to protect your skin and eyes without modern safety goggles or gloves.

Flintknapping

Flintknapping is the art of chipping away at a stone to make it into something useful with a sharp edge. I'm no expert, and will just give you a few guidelines. Both *PrimitiveWilderness Living and Survival Skills* and *Primitive Technology: A Book of Earth Skills* have decent sections on flintknapping. John and Geri McPherson, authors of *Primitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills*, have a new instructional flintknapping video called *Breaking Rock* (see "Prairie Wolf " in the resources for this chapter). Given the quality of their books and other videos, I'm sure that this new video offers clear, easy-to-follow instructions. For more information on this subject, you might also try *Flintknapping: Making and Understanding Stone Tools,* by John C. Whittaker, or *Flintknapping—The Art of Making Stone Tools,* by Paul Hellweg.

True flints can be hard to find in most locations, but most cherts, jaspers, agates, quartz, and so forth will work as long as they are fine grained and fracture with sharp edges. When flintknapping, the main principle to remember is that stone tends to break into a wide cone, at roughly 120 degrees from the line of impact. Most people would intuitively guess that the stone would break roughly in line with the impact, so you must modify your blows to a shallower angle to account for the breaking angle. Chose a hard, round stone for your hammerstone, which you will pound against the flint to remove flakes. Fist-sized hammerstones are easy to handle.

Because a somewhat squared flat platform is the best edge to hit against to remove good, clean flakes from your base material, you may need to spend some time squaring the edge of your stock between hammer blows. Stock can be squared by grinding against other stones or lightly chipping the edge. Fine flakes can be removed from flint edges by applying pressure with a sharply pointed stick or pointy bone, such as an antler. Called *pressure-flaking*, this method is often used for finishing or sharpening up edges. To avoid splitting the brittle flint flakes while pressure-flaking, try supporting the flint on a thick piece of leather.

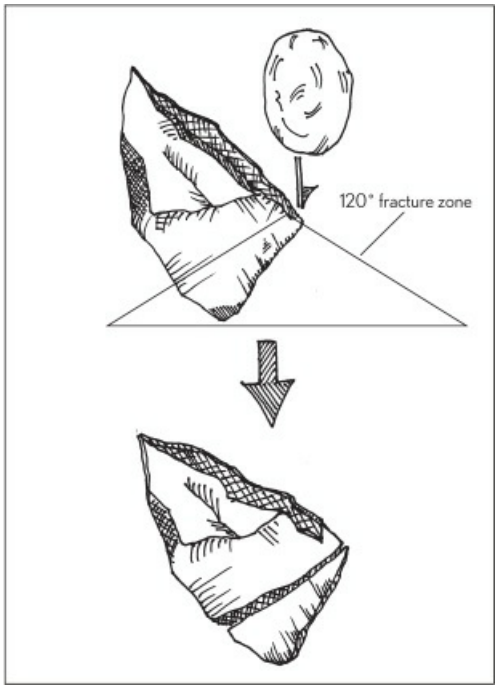


Figure 4-17. 120° fracture of large flakes.

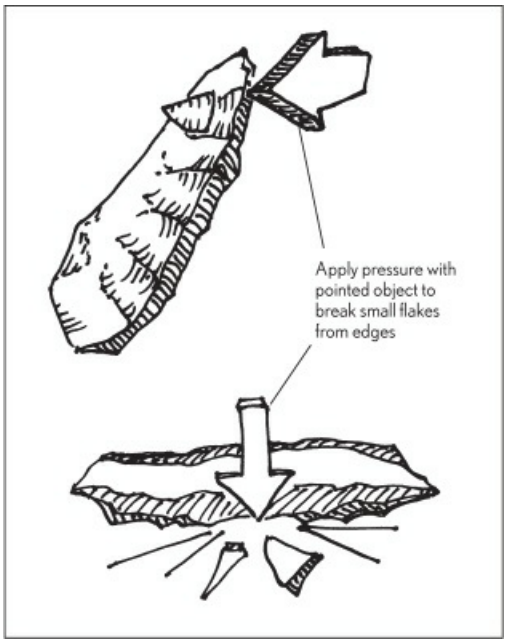


Figure 4-18. Pressure-flaking small flakes from edges.

Bone Tools

Bone is more easily ground and shaped and is less brittle than stone. Though not as sharp, nor as deadly for bringing down large game, bone arrowheads are more durable and less likely to

fracture than flint arrowheads. Antlers and thighbones of larger animals make good stock for bone tools. To use thighbones, start by cutting the heavy ends off with a saw or stone knife, then split the bone lengthwise with a sturdy knife. Grind the bone into the desired shape by abrading it against a rough piece of rock, such as sandstone or granite.

SURVIVING A NUCLEAR DISASTER

After the collapse of the Soviet Union in the early 1990s, there was a drastic reduction in the probability that our world might end in a conflagration of thermonuclear detonations, and many breathed a giant sigh of relief. Unfortunately, the collapse of the Soviet Union also left thousands of nuclear devices and massive amounts of radioactive materials under the jurisdiction of a variety of relatively unstable governments. These dangerous materials have at times been guarded by people who were being paid very little, if anything, so one might assume that there has been ample opportunity for well-funded terrorist groups to bribe the appropriate officials and purchase some of these materials. In addition to the potential for a terrorist group or unstable government to detonate a nuclear weapon or a "dirty bomb" (traditional explosive encased in radioactive material designed to spread radioactive contamination upon detonation), due to the presence of nuclear reactors in many parts of the world, there is always the potential for an earthquake, industrial accident, or terrorist act to breach the containment vessel of a nuclear reactor, causing widespread radioactive contamination.

When the Russian nuclear reactor at Chernobyl blew the roof off its containment building and burned out of control for several weeks, it spread many tons of radioactive contamination over large parts of Russia and other European countries. After a partial reactor core meltdown caused the evacuation of all personnel from the U.S. nuclear reactor on Three Mile Island, it was three days before American officials were certain that this reactor was not going to burst its containment vessel and contaminate a huge geographical area in much the same way as the Russian reactor in Chernobyl. I am not trying to scare anyone, but I do wish to provide my readers with a Common-Sense of practical information that could help people to make rational life-saving decisions should they ever find themselves in the unfortunate situation of being downwind from a nuclear disaster.

Types of Nuclear Threats

There are three different types of radiation that may be given off by radioactive materials and nuclear detonations. The first type of radiation is direct electromagnetic radiation, similar to the sun's rays, only of a higher intensity, mostly in the form of intense heat and/or high-energy "gamma radiation" radiating directly from a nuclear detonation's fireball. Gamma rays are a form of electromagnetic radiation that has enough energy to penetrate through flesh and building walls and is the most serious form of radiation that typical fallout shelters are designed to protect against. Additionally, radioactive particles, such as nuclear-blast "fallout," can also emit "gamma rays," "alpha particles," and "beta particles." Beta particles are simply free-flying high-energy electrons, which can penetrate light clothing or about an eighth of an inch of flesh, causing

surface “beta burns” when radioactive fallout is left on the skin for more than a few minutes. Alpha particles don’t have much penetrating power, being stopped by skin and clothing, so they don’t pose much of a threat unless they are emitted by radioactive particles that have been ingested and become lodged in organs of the body, where over time they may contribute to cancerous growths and tumors. Fallout-contaminated clothing should be shaken off regularly and before entering your shelter. Washing in contaminated water is better than nothing, but it is preferable to wash in a source of clean, uncontaminated water if available. Radiation sickness, characterized by vomiting, loss of hair, skin burns, spontaneous bruising/hemorrhaging, plus other symptoms typical of shock, is usually a result of the cumulative exposure to radiation. There is no way of knowing exactly how much radiation one has been exposed to unless one is wearing a high-tech “dosimeter,” which indicates cumulative exposure to radioactivity.

In the event of a nuclear catastrophe, if you are able to determine the nature of this disaster, to some extent this will dictate what course of action should be followed. If the disaster is related to a nuclear power plant that has breached its containment vessel, the radioactivity downwind will continue to rise with time, and your best bet is to get out of the downwind area as soon as possible, while doing your best to prevent breathing contaminated air or ingesting contaminated food and water. Radioactive iodine tends to concentrate in the thyroid gland, often resulting in tumors in the years following the ingestion of food or water that was contaminated by radioactive fallout. A simple way to avoid this problem is to ingest clean iodized salt, so the body takes in uncontaminated iodine rather than drawing its iodine from contaminated food.

In the event of a dirty-bomb detonation, or a nucleardevice detonation, the most dangerous levels of radiation will diminish fairly quickly, so your best bet is to hole up in an area that is shielded from direct radiation and protected from radioactive fallout until the worst of the high levels of radiation have subsided, then remove yourself to an area that is upwind of the contaminated zone. There were huge numbers of people who survived the bombings of Nagasaki and Hiroshima, and they had no idea whatsoever of what was going on. After a terrorist attack or nuclear power plant accident, unless you are very close to the site of the actual detonation, if you are armed with some information and make the right decisions, you stand a decent chance of coming out of your ordeal in relatively good shape.

Protecting Yourself from Direct Radiation

In the event of an actual nuclear detonation, short-term high-level radiation will be a huge threat. This comes in two forms. The first is the radiation burst coming from the actual detonation, and the second is in the form of highly radioactive “fallout.” You will have no control over the initial radiation burst, since that will travel at the speed of light, reaching victims before they hear anything or even have a chance to blink or shield their eyes. If possible, avoid looking at a blast’s fireball. This will help prevent short-term blindness caused by exposing your eyes to the thermal radiation emitted by a nuclear fireball. “Fallout” is formed from a combination of radioactive materials and other debris contained in the mushroom cloud. This material may look like salt, grains of rice, ash, or may fall in the form of “black rain.” A nuclear detonation tends to create its own weather pattern, causing shifting winds and usually resulting in a rainstorm even if the

detonation was on a clear day. It is absolutely imperative that you find shelter from direct contact with fallout and black rain, as they contain highly radioactive materials. Fallout poses threats from contamination through breathing and ingesting radioactive particles, as well as from exposure to direct radiation that is emitted from the fallout when it settles to the Earth and on top of objects such as buildings and cars.

The radioactive components of fallout that give off the most deadly radiation (gamma rays) decay very quickly. Fallout will lose about 90 percent of its gamma radiation after the first 7 hours and will decay about 90 percent more over the next 48 hours (leaving only 1 percent of the original level of radioactivity), making it relatively safe for you to leave your place of shelter and seek a location outside of the contaminated zone. If you have the good fortune to have access to a true fallout shelter with adequate food, water, its own independent power source, and HEPA-type air filtration, your safest course of action is to stay put for two weeks, at which point the gamma radiation will have subsided to roughly one thousandth of what it was originally (Deyo 2006, 389).

Dense materials, such as earth, stone, concrete, and water, will provide the best shielding from gamma radiation emitted by freshly fallen radioactive fallout. For every 3.6 inches of packed earth, gamma radiation is cut by a factor of two. According to FEMA, the minimal recommended makeshift fallout shelter shielding is provided by the following equivalents: 5 to 6 inches of bricks; 7 inches of earth; 8 inches of hollow concrete blocks; 10 inches of water; 14 inches of books or magazines; or 18 inches of wood (Deyo 2006, 401). The more shielding the better. In his classic book, *Nuclear War Survival Skills*, Cresson Kearny suggests building a makeshift shelter by digging a 3-foot-wide by 4-foot-deep trench, covering it with 7-foot-long logs and heaping earth on top of these logs. Lining the trench with plastic tarps before building its roof is recommended to improve the comfort of the cramped living space provided by such a shelter. Kearny says that 2 feet or more of earth will provide excellent shelter from gamma radiation emitted by fresh radioactive fallout. For quick shelter inside existing buildings, a basement location is usually best, provided that air circulation is minimized to prevent the circulation of fallout into your shelter from outside. In general, the basement locations that will receive the fewest gamma rays will be sitting crouched against an earth-protected wall to minimize the "angle of incidence" exposure to gamma rays entering through the more marginal radiation shielding provided by walls and ceilings that don't have an outer layer of packed earth (Kearny 1999).

A true fallout shelter with HEPA-type air filtration, a protected supply of water, an independent power source, and a month's supply of food would be best, but if you already have all of that put together, then you don't need to be reading this section of my book. The middle of a taller building could be a good location. Avoid ground floors along outside walls, floors located directly beneath roofs, and any other locations adjacent to where fallout may settle onto flat or gently sloping surfaces. The farther you are away from a highly radioactive gamma-ray source (such as freshly settled radioactive fallout), and the greater the thickness of dense shielding materials that separate you from that source, the better.

Protecting Yourself from Radioactive Contamination

The easiest and quickest way for radioactive contamination to lodge inside your body is by breathing it in through your lungs, ingesting contaminated food or water, or by absorption through your skin. If you have access to a common painter's respirator with carbon air-filter canisters, or an army surplus gas mask, these will filter out most of the radioactive particles from the air you breath, and their continuous use is highly recommended during the critical first 48 hours after a nuclear disaster, or if you need to travel through a contaminated zone during your evacuation. Running water through a water filter with a carbon-block cartridge will similarly filter out most radioactive components from drinking water, since they will generally be stuck to larger particles that are removed by the filter. Beware of drinking from contaminated open waters. After the World War II bombing of Hiroshima, thousands of people sought refuge in the local rivers and ponds, unwittingly ingesting large amounts of radioactive material from the contaminated water.

If you can't find shelter in a suitable basement room, I suggest you find a windowless room in the center of a building that has sheetrock or plaster on the walls (sheetrock is a dense material that is also sealed to block air flow). Try to seal off the door, and any windows, with duct tape and plastic sheeting to minimize air penetration. If you are lucky enough to have a scuba diver's air tank on hand, you may crack this tank every so often to supply fresh air to the room and to provide "positive pressure," which ensures that air primarily flows out from your room and prevents contaminated air from flowing in. If you must go outside, I suggest you shake your clothes often, change clothes at the door to your shelter, and leave your contaminated clothing in an entry area so as to minimize contamination of your shelter area. If you have a source for electric power, the use of a HEPA-type portable air filter will continuously sweep radioactive particles out of the air inside your shelter. The filter itself will become progressively more radioactive as it filters particles out of the air, so keep your distance from it.

If the nuclear disaster is from a breached reactor containment vessel, as was the case of the Chernobyl disaster, your best bet is to get out of the downwind contaminated area as soon as possible, since the radioactive contamination level will only increase with time, and radiation poisoning has a cumulative effect. The longer you are in the contaminated area, the more radiation you will receive and the more radioactive material you will ingest or absorb into your body. In the case of a terrorist's "dirty bomb," there will probably be little highly radioactive gamma-type radiation, so once the local winds have had a chance to clear out the smoke and dust particles from the detonation, your best bet is to get out of the downwind contaminated area as soon as possible to avoid picking up radioactive contamination that could make you sick in the short term and cause cancer in the long run. Filtering the air you breathe and the water you drink will improve your chances of avoiding ingestion of radioactive particles.

If the threat of a nuclear disaster is keeping you up at night, I suggest you pick up a copy of Cresson Kearny's classic *Nuclear War Survival Skills* (see the following references) and *Dare to Prepare* by Holly Drennan Deyo (see Chapter 3). These books provide detailed information on radiation, fallout, shelter design, and preparations for surviving a nuclear disaster.

REFERENCES

Survival Handbooks

***e SAS Survival Handbook: How to Survive in the Wild, in Any Climate, on Land or at Sea,* by John "Lofty" Wiseman.** 2004, 576 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0060578794. Published by Harper Collins Publishers, 77-85 Fulham Place Road, Hammersmith, London W6 8JB, England. List price $19.95

This leading survival manual is authored by John Wiseman, who was a professional soldier for 26 years with the British armed services. John was the survival instructor for the elite unit of the British Army, the Special Air Service (SAS). His book would be an excellent addition to your personal library. It gives a great simplified overview to many subjects, but should be supplemented with edible plant handbooks plus several of the recommended books on primitive living skills, if you really want to know how to do some of the things that will count most if you someday find yourself deprived of access to modern conveniences for an extended period of time.

***mping & Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*, by Paul Tawrell.** 1996, 1080 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0974082028. This book is self-published and is available through many bookstores, backcountry specialty stores, and by calling (888) 266-5054. List price $35.00

This excellent, massive book on outdoor travel and survival is giving the *SAS Survival Guide* some stiff competition. It is copiously illustrated and somewhat broader in scope than the *SAS Handbook*.

***uild the Perfect Survival Kit*, by John D. McCann.** 2005, 192 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0873499675. Published by KP Books, 700 East State St., Iola, WI 54990. List price $12.99

If having the ultimate survival kit is your thing, then get this book. Otherwise, skip it.

Backcountry Skills References

***ountaineering: Freedom of the Hills*, *7th Edition*, by The Mountaineers, Steven M. Cox (editor).** 2003, 575 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0898868289. Published by Mountaineers Books, 1001 SW Klickitat Way, Suite 201, Seattle, WA 98134. List price $29.95

This is the classic mountaineer's bible for safely traveling in rugged mountainous country. From river crossings to scaling cliffs to crossing glaciers, this book tells you how to do it safely and properly and what gear to have along. When I was a child, I pored over this book, and it probably contributed to my surviving early mountaineering adventures in one piece.

***e National Outdoor Leadership School's Wilderness Guide: The Classic Handbook, Revised and Updated*, by Mark Harvey.** 1999, 272 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0684859095. Published by Fireside, Simon and Schuster, 1230 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $16.00

A classic text for traveling in the wilderness by one of the most successful backcountry skills schools of all time. It is more compact and easier to carry with you than *Mountaineering: Freedom of the Hills,* but not as thorough. Contains good, practical information that will make your backcountry experience safer and more enjoyable.

Basic Skills References

In a survival situation, if one were deprived of access to modern tools, a working knowledge of these basic skills could make a huge difference. Even though these skills may seem simple, practitioners will tell you that many of them take work, practice, and patience to yield good results. I have listed several references, which will give you the benefit of their authors' years of experience. These books are narrower in scope than the recommended survival handbooks, but offer much more detailed instructions for key skills useful for living comfortably without modern technology.

> **CAUTION: It is much easier to perfect the use of basic skills, such as using a bow and drill to make a fire, while in the comfort of your backyard rather than when you are cold and wet and your life depends on it.**

***imitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills,* by John and Geri McPherson.** 1993, 408 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0967877778. Published by Prairie Wolf, P.O. Box 96, Randolph, KS 66554. List price $24.95

Of the many books that I reviewed, this book has the best instructions for the primitive living skills most closely linked to your survival. If I were to purchase just one book on basic skills, I would buy this one, but each of the recommended books contains information not found in the others. The authors have practiced and lived what they teach for many years. Their book includes excellent sections on primitive tanning of hides, sinew preparation and sewing, bows and arrows, containers, utensils, tools, shelters, pottery, cordage, and fire making. Lacks information on edible plants, which is best found from a complete color illustrated field guide to edible plants for your particular area.

***imitive Technology: A Book of Earth Skills*, from The Society of Primitive Technology, David Wescott (editor).** 2001, 232 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0879059118. Published by Gibbs Smith, P.O. Box 667, Layton, UT 84041. List price $25.95

This book contains many excellent articles on a wide variety of subjects. It is the broadest and most interesting of the primitive skill books that I reviewed. The articles are written by members of The Society of Primitive Technology, each of whom writes about their personal area of expertise. The authors stress that "primitive" means first, and not necessarily worse, citing bond strengths of 20,000 pounds per square inch (PSI) for some hot hide glues. The book includes strong chapters on fire making, building reasonably comfortable and permanent primitive structures, glue, cordage and fibers, stone and bone tools, and various hunting implements. It lacks sections on hides, furs, pottery, herbs, and edible plants.

***rticipating in Nature: Thomas J. Elpel's Guide to Primitive Living Skills,* by Thomas J. Elpel.** 2002, 200 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1892784124. Published by HOPS Press, 12 Quartz Street, Pony, MT 59747-0691. List price $25.00

The author, who runs a school for primitive outdoor living, lives and teaches what he preaches. He includes good sections on tanning hides, primitive cooking, fire making, primitive shelters, and edible plants (this section should be supplemented with books devoted entirely to edible plants, however). Some of the descriptions are not as detailed nor do they cover as many

variations as the ones in the other references on primitive skills, but his writing is entertaining and I like his wilderness philosophy.

Edible Plant References

***lible Wild Plants: A North American Field Guide,* by Thomas S. Elias and Peter A. Dykeman.** 1990, 288 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0806974880. Published by Sterling Publishing Co., Inc., 387 Park Ave. South, New York, NY 10016. List price $17.95

Unlike many of the other field guides, this book covers all of North America, not just a specific zone. This is a very thorough guide, with excellent pictures as well as gathering and preparation tips. It includes seasonal photographs for fall and winter identification of certain plants and gives detailed descriptions of poisonous lookalikes. If I were to buy one guide for North America, I would buy this one.

***entifying and Harvesting Edible and Medicinal Plants in Wild (and Not So Wild) Places,* by Steve Brill with Evelyn Dean.** 1994, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0688114251. Published by Hearst Books, 1350 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10019. List price $21.95

Good recipes and great information from a man who is totally into his subject. The illustrations are beautifully drawn in black and white, which may not be as effective as color photos for identifying plants. A great book for the inexperienced forager, it covers a few hundred of the most common and useful edible and medicinal plants in North America. It is not exhaustive, but very usable and practical. Folk wisdom, firsthand practical experience, and scientific fact are blended with humorous and interesting anecdotes that help to make this a very readable and valuable guide. Best to combine it with one of the field guides that have color photo illustrations.

***eld Guide to Edible Wild Plants: Eastern and Central North America,* by Roger Tory Peterson and Lee A. Peterson.** 1999, 352 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0395926222. Published by Houghton Mifflin Co., 222 Berkeley St., Boston, MA 02116. List price $18.00

Many people swear by this guide and claim it is *the* book to buy for edible plant identification. Good for identification, but short on preparation information, it also has a limited geographical spread, which is fine if you are east of the Rocky Mountains.

***lible and Medicinal Plants of the West,* by Gregory L. Tilford.** 1997, 239 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0878423590. Published by Mountain Press Publishing Co., P.O. Box 2399, Missoula, MT 59806. List price $21.00

If you live in the western states, this field guide is for you. Fully illustrated with color photographs. Not exhaustive, but a valuable guide written by an herbalist who regularly "gets his hands dirty" foraging for wild edible and medicinal plants and herbs. Quite useful.

***e Encyclopedia of Edible Plants of North America:Nature's Green Feast,* by Francois Couplan, Ph.D.** 1998, 584 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0879838218. Published by Keats Publishing, Inc., 27 Pine St., New Canaan, CT 06840. List price $19.95

This is a good backup reference to add to your library. Contains a lot of useful information on

plants and plant uses that you may not find in other places, but is somewhat limited in usefulness due to lack of color photos. There are line drawings for less than half the plants, and you will have to guess what the rest of them look like, since they are listed without illustrations of any kind.

Mental Strategies

***ep Survival: Who Lives, Who Dies, and Why,* by Laurence Gonzales.** 2004, 318 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393326154. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $14.95

Read this book—it could save your life someday. As a long-time outdoor enthusiast who has been involved in more than my share of risky endeavors, I thoroughly enjoyed *Deep Survival*. It is definitely not an outdoor survival handbook, but it is a collection of fascinating survival stories, along with the author's commentaries, about what makes the difference in a survival struggle and what it takes to pull through a situation that most others would not survive. Why, for instance, do 4 to 6 year olds fare better statistically than 8 to 12 year olds when lost in the wilderness? And how did an untrained, poorly equipped, 17-year-old girl make it out of the jungle alive when twelve adults, who survived the same plane crash, did not? The book ends with a summary of tips for decision making, when it counts, that may well pull you out of a jam some day.

***e Gift of Fear: And Other Survival Signals That Protect Us from Violence,* by Gavin de Becker.** 1999, 384 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0440508830. Published by Dell Publishing, Random House, 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $15.00

This is a terrific book that explores how we are all protected by amazing powers of intuition that are biologically programmed to alert us to potential dangers through built-in fear alarms and that can also guide us to choose the right course of action to protect ourselves, provided we do not let our rational thinking minds get in the way of this powerful guiding force. Mr. de Becker has developed a hugely successful business protecting and advising celebrities, politicians, and government organizations with a set of powerful observations, techniques, and special skills that he has developed over the years. Malcolm Gladwell's book, *Blink*, tells a lot of cool stories about the human brain's amazing powers of processing micro-bits of information to quickly make intuitive judgments that the brain could not rationally figure out, but never really gives you any practical advice on how to harness these powers. *The Gift of Fear*, on the other hand, offers up a generous helping of terrific stories that are coupled with the practicalities of how to utilize your inborn intuitive "compass" to alert you to potential dangers and then guide you safely through dangerous waters to a successful outcome. *Highly recommended.*

***e Survivor Personality: Why Some People Are Stronger, Smarter, and More Skillful at Handling Life's Difficulties . . . and How You Can Be Too,* by Al Siebert, Ph.D.** 1996, 293 pp. (paperback), ISBN 0-399-52230-1. A Perigee Book, published by The Berkeley Publishing Group, Penguin Putnam, Inc., 375 Hudson Street, New York, NY 10014. List price $12.00

This self-help book aims at guiding readers to develop and apply the adaptive and coping

skills of survivors in confronting difficult life situations. *The Survivor Personality* provides detailed descriptions of the mental "techniques" of survival, which are just as applicable to thriving in today's rapidly changing world as they are to surviving in emergencies. I found this book a little slow at the start, but fascinating and hard to put down once I got into it. Includes many examples, exercises, and interesting anecdotes.

Developing Intuition

***actical Intuition: How to Harness the Power of Your Instinct and Make It Work for You,* by Laura Day.** 1997, 208 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0767900348. Published by Broadway Books, a division of Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $14.95

Laura Day is a renowned teacher and business consultant who helps celebrities, scientists, and business leaders to develop their "sixth sense" to improve all aspects of their lives. This book provides a step-by-step program to help anyone unlock remarkable powers of the mind and become productively intuitive. Endorsed by Nobel laureate James Watson, Brad Pitt, Demi Moore, and others.

***wer vs. Force: The Hidden Determinants of Human Behavior,* by David R. Hawkins, M.D., Ph.D.** 2002, 341 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1561709335. Published by Hay House, P.O. Box 5100, Carlsbad, CA 92018. List price $14.95

How would you like to have access to an infallible "lie detector" to help you evaluate the truth of any statement, the integrity of any politician, whether a food or drug is really good for you, or whether a particular business or personal choice is to your benefit or detriment? It turns out that we all have this capacity built into each and every one of us. In fact, data correlated from roughly 15 million tests on a huge sample of humans from all over the world verifies the validity of this process (kinesiology), which utilizes simple muscle testing that anyone can do with a partner. In the 1960s, at the age of 38, Dr. Hawkins was stricken with a progressive and fatal illness that failed to respond to any treatment. At the point of death and in a state of extreme anguish and despair, this agnostic doctor asked, "If there is a God, I ask Him to help me now!" What followed was a complete and total healing, coupled with long periods of God-conscious enlightened states. David Hawkins went on to become one of the most successful psychiatrists in the world, was interviewed on numerous television shows, and coauthored the groundbreaking work, *Orthomolecular Psychiatry,* with Nobel Prize-winner Linus Pauling. *Highly recommended.*

***vine Intuition: Your Guide to Creating a Life You Love,* by Lynn A. Robinson, M.Ed.** 2001, 192 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0789467683. Published by Dorling Kindersley Publishing, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $15.00

This is a truly beautiful book about developing your intuition to help it guide your life in a positive and beneficial manner. It is spiritually oriented, in a nondenominational way, so it may not appeal to everyone.

RESOURCES —PRIMITIVE LIVING AND SURVIVAL

airie Wolf, P.O. Box 96, Randolph, KS 66554; phone: (785) 293-5310; Web site: www.prairiewolf.net.

John and Geri McPherson have lived and taught primitive wilderness living and survival skills for three decades. During the early 1990s, before becoming famous as television's "Survivorman," Les Stroud refined his survival and primitive living skills with a few classes at Prairie Wolf. The United States military continues to send their special operations survival instructors to Prairie Wolf to hone their primitive living skills, but the McPhersons have stopped teaching classes to the general public. However, you can still take advantage of their vast practical knowledge of these ancient skills from viewing their set of excellent instructional videos. Visit their Web site to order books and videos or to get an introduction to the primitive lifestyle that they live, love, and teach. Their videos include *"how-to" Construct the Asiatic Composite Bow; Braintanning Buckskin; Breaking Rock: On the Art of Flintknapping; Primitive Fire and Cordage; Deer from Field to Freezer;* and so on.

llowtop Outdoor Primitive School, 5338 Highway 41, Silver Star, MT 59751; phone: (406) 287-3605; Web site: www.hollowtop.com.

Primitive skills allow a person to get closer to nature by experiencing nature directly. Instead of merely hiking through or camping in nature, the skills of primitive living allow one to move in and become part of the process. You learn about nature as you use it to meet your daily needs for shelter, clothing, fire, water, and food. Tom Elpel's Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School offers classes in brain tanning hides, edible wild plants, and primitive living "expeditions" where you learn primitive skills on wilderness treks with minimal gear. Staff members maintain an online guide to primitive living skill schools that is helpful for locating one in your area. Hollowtop offers a Green University for adults, plus day, weekend, and longer programs for small children and teenagers. Lots of interesting articles and links through their Web site.

rth Knack, P.O. Box 508, Crestone, CO 81131; phone: (719) 256-4909; Web site: www.earthknack.com.

Owned and operated by Robin Blankenship, a true pioneer in primitive living and one of the authors of *Earth Knack: Stone Age Skills for the 21st Century*. The authors have explored and rediscovered many ancient crafts and skills, which they practice and teach. Earth Knack offers excellent hands-on classes on primitive and outdoor skills. Class topics include blacksmithing, earth skills (fire making, stone tools, cordage from plant fibers, etc.), family survival, soap making, candle making, Earth Knack Instructor Course, and so on. The site, located on the slopes of the Sangre De Cristo Mountains in southern Colorado, is bordered by a pristine fish-filled creek that pours off the surrounding 14,000-foot peaks.

m Brown Jr.'s Tracker School, P.O. Box 927, Waretown, NJ 08758; phone: (609) 242-0350; fax: (609) 242-0352; Web site: www.trackerschool.com.

As a child, Tom Brown was mentored by an elderly Native American man who taught him traditional skills including tracking, hunting, fishing, and trapping with homemade implements. At one point, he disappeared into the wilderness for a period of a year with just his knife and the clothes on his back. This is his school.

ciety of Primitive Technology, P.O. Box 905, Rexburg, ID 83440; phone or fax: (208) 359-2400; Web site: www.primitive.org.

The Society of Primitive Technology is a nonprofit organization dedicated to the research, practice, and teaching of primitive technology. Membership benefits include a subscription to *The Bulletin of Primitive Technology* (biannual), networking with practitioners and researchers of primitive skills, notices for workshops and classes, literature reviews, tool and supply sources, and free classified notices in the *Bulletin*.

regon Institute of Science and Medicine (OISM), P.O. Box 1279, Cave Junction, OR 97523; phone: (541) 592-4142; Web site: www.oism.org.

This is an excellent source for Kearny's book on *Nuclear War Survival Skills*, as well as a 6-DVD set that teaches and expands on the information from Kearny's book. They also offer a free online version of *Nuclear War Survival Skills* on their Web site.

RESOURCES — INTUITION DEVELOPMENT

Laura Day's Practical Intuition. Web site: www.practicalintuition.com. This is an excellent place to hone your intuitional skills, offering workshops and interactive forums.

Intuitivethinking.com.au This Australian Web site offers good materials to help you develop your intuition for business and personal enhancement. The authors/teachers have a very impressive set of business and academic credentials, and may appeal to those turned off by more "touchy-feely" approaches.

5

Water

Ninety-three percent of the surface water in the United States is polluted. . . . Eighty percent of all disease in developing countries is spread by consuming unsafe water. . . . By the late 1980s, the water was not fit to drink in at least 33 major U.S. cities. . . . Ninety-eight percent of China's sewage goes into rivers untreated. . . . Waterborne pathogens and pollution kill 25 million people in developing countries every year, accounting for about one-third of all deaths in those countries. . . . If the world is facing a future of water scarcity, it is also facing a future of food scarcity. . . . Water scarcity is now the single biggest threat to global food production.

—Worldwatch Institute special reports

WATER REQUIREMENTS

Water is absolutely essential for human survival; it plays a part in all of the body's biochemical reactions. Most of us could survive for several weeks without food, but in average conditions we would only last 3 to 4 days without water, and we would be very miserable for all but the first of those days. Water requirements vary depending on activity level and temperature. When you eat dehydrated foods, you will require more water under any set of conditions.

The absolute minimum for survival is about one quart of drinking water per day, with little or no activity and cool conditions. Two quarts of water per day will usually sustain moderate activity at an acceptable level of comfort, under moderate conditions with minimal urination (you will feel somewhat dehydrated). In fact, the standard hospital maintenance level for adults is 2.5 liters (roughly 2.6 quarts) of intravenous fluids per day to maintain comfort and good kidney function, with no activity. When the weather is hot, just a few hours without water leads to dehydration and fatigue. More than 1 quart of water every hour can be required to perform heavy physical labor under extremely hot conditions. When I was working on a construction site in Hawaii, I drank over 1 gallon of water for every 8-hour shift, and that was barely enough!

In general, 1 gallon of water per adult per day is enough for drinking and some limited washing (sponge bath style). This is a good figure to use when calculating water for storage.

> In 1984, while climbing El Capitan in Yosemite Valley, we hauled the standard 2 quarts of water per person per day for 3 days of rock climbing. We baked in the sun for 3 days of a record-breaking heat wave. By the time we drank our last mouthful of water around noon on day three, we were already severely dehydrated. Temperatures on the southfacing rock walls exceeded 100°F, with no shelter or shade. My throat hurt terribly, and my mouth and throat were almost as dry as the back of my hand. Whenever I tried to talk, my tongue would stick like

glue to the roof of my mouth and I would start to gag and retch. By the end of day three, our need for water exceeded our need for rest, so we climbed into the night, joining forces with the party above us, who had also run out of water. Around midnight, we reached the top and found a mountain stream, where we guzzled water to our heart's content.

STOCKING UP FOR EMERGENCIES

Grocery stores typically run out of bottled water in the first few hours after a public water system fails. I recommend that all households store at least 5 gallons of drinking water to cover Short-term glitches in public water systems. An adequate 2-week supply of water would be 14 gallons per person. A 55-gallon plastic drum of stored drinking water does not take up much space in the corner of a garage and would provide a family of four with a 2week emergency supply of drinking water in case of an earthquake or other disaster.

NOTE: Be sure to protect water in storage containers from freezing, and stock chemicals (or purifying filters) to treat water in these containers, as untreated water will grow bacteria over time.

Home-bottled chlorinated tap water should be changed every month, treated before use, or preserved to prevent bacterial growth. Use commercial water preservatives or two to four drops of household bleach per quart of clean potable water to preserve stored drinking water. If stored water is tightly sealed, taste it monthly or chemically test for residual chlorine, and treat again if the chlorine has disappeared. If the container is not sealed, re-treat every few days during usage periods. Preparedness/survival suppliers sell food-grade plastic drums, smaller water containers, and water preservatives such as the Katadyn Micropur products, which preserve home-bottled water for long-term storage.

GUIDELINES FOR COPING WITH DISASTER

Several years ago, my friends David and Nancy flew to the island of Kauai for their vacation. On the first day of their vacation, they went for a walk on the beach. As they gazed out to sea, they watched a dark and sinister looking cloud build and boil on the horizon. When the waterline receded about 20 feet out to sea, they knew that something serious was about to hit. They rushed back to their rented cottage, a mile down the beach and a few houses back from the shore. By the time they reached their cottage, the winds had increased to over 80 miles per hour as Hurricane Iniki approached the island. Since David was an employee of the public utility district in a mountain community, he knew the importance of preserving a supply of potable water. Immediately, he filled all the sinks and bathtubs in the house with water and instructed the other occupants not to flush toilets or wash with the stored water.

As the day progressed, winds increased to an almost unbelievable 175 miles per hour. The terrified occupants crouched in corners, away from windows, and watched fearfully as large chunks of the neighboring houses blew by. Their house was constantly pelted with flying debris and the roar of the wind was deafening. Hours later, when the storm cleared, there was an eerie silence. Downed trees cluttered the roads, making automotive travel impossible. The stores quickly ran out of food and water. The water that David had stored in the bathtubs and sinks provided drinking water for several households. Electricity and water were restored to most of the island more than 3 weeks later.

In a disaster situation, *conservation counts, because your life may depend on it*. Use rivers, lakes, or ponds for washing (provided that they are not severely polluted) to conserve potable water for drinking. If you are aware of an impending natural disaster, such as a hurricane or tornado, or you have just survived a significant earthquake and your house is still intact, take the precautions listed below.

- **Immediately fill your bathtubs, sinks, and other available containers with water.** This will provide your household with a short-term supply of clean, potable water.
- **Conserve stored water.** There is a supply of clean, potable water in the toilet tanks, hot-water heater, and piping in your house.
- **Tape off all toilets.** When you notice that the tap water has stopped flowing, conserve the water in your toilet tanks (the tanks, not the bowl, contain potable water) and immediately notify the occupants to not flush the toilets.

  CAUTION: Do not drink the toilet tank water if you use an automatic toilet cleaner (it turns the water blue).
- **Drain your water heater.** Water heaters are supplied with a vent located near the top of the tank and a drain near the bottom of the tank. Open the top vent (pull on the little lever on the spigot) and drain the tank into containers as needed. If there is dirt and sediment in the water coming out of the tank, *do not discard this water.* Simply allow the sediment to settle and drink the water off the top.

  CAUTION: Turn off the gas or the electric power to your water heater before draining, or you will damage the heater.
- **Shut off the utility water supply to your house if there's reason to believe the public water supply may have been contaminated.** Otherwise, you risk contaminating the usable water in your plumbing.
- **Drain the pipes in your house.** These typically hold several gallons of water, which can be drained into containers by slightly opening a high-point tap and draining from a low-point tap.

THE WORLD'S WATER CRISIS

Half a century of pumping on the Great Plains of the United States has removed water that will take two thousand years of rain to replace. In India, farmers whose

> fathers lifted water from wells with a bucket now sink boreholes more than a mile into the rocks—and they still find no water. . . . Each aquifer has its own countdown to extinction. But even so, as Tushaar Shah puts it, "The overuse of water in Asia's underground aquifers will spell disaster for millions of the region's poor people, who depend on it." And as each aquifer dries up, it will undermine the world's ability to feed itself. . . . A new dustbowl looms in the breadbasket of China, reminiscent of the disaster in the US High Plains in the 1930's. The World Bank warns that the desiccation will bring "catastrophic consequences" for China's ability to feed itself. This matters to the world. As China's grain imports soared, the world's granaries emptied and global grain prices rose by a third. . . . The rule of thumb seems to be that dry areas will become drier while wet areas will become wetter. Globally, climate will become more extreme, and rivers will respond in kind. . . . the US government climatologist Kevin Trenberth showed that after a century of little change, there has been a surge in instances of severe drought around the world since 1970. The proportion of the earth's land surface suffering very dry conditions rose from 15 percent to 30 percent at the start of the twenty-first century. . . . And some rivers will live a switchback life in a greenhouse world. They will become increasingly unpredictable and dangerous, with flood and drought alternating even more than they do today. —**Fred Pearce,** ***When the Rivers Run Dry: Water—The Defining Crisis of the Twenty-First Century***

The world's global water crisis, along with Peak Oil and global climate change, form the triumvirate of key factors contributing to "the long emergency" of the twenty-first century. We are facing a crisis in water quality as well as water quantity. In many third-world locations, to reduce the risk of sickness from waterborne diseases, contaminated surface water sources have been replaced by wells drilled by the UN and other organizations. Unfortunately, in places like India and Bangladesh, it was assumed that these deep "tube wells" would naturally have adequate water quality and were rarely tested for possible contaminants. It was only after thousands of children started showing up with crippling bone deformities, and both children and adults started suffering with similar flesh afflictions and cancerous carcinomas, that people started testing significant numbers of the million-plus tube wells that had been drilled by charities to "improve the health" of third-world villagers. What these tests showed was that more than half of the tube wells in India and Bangladesh contained water that was poisoned by dangerous levels of arsenic (causing flesh disorders, chronic nervous system diseases, and carcinomas) and/or fluoride (resulting in bone deformities such as hunched backs and crippling bowed leg bones). Both of these poisons are cumulative and kill or maim people over the long term, so many millions of poor villagers have been drinking the poisoned water for a decade or more before discovering that the cause of their growing afflictions was their so-called "safe drinking water."

FOSSIL AQUIFERS AND VIRTUAL WATER

Economists call the water involved in the growing and manufacture of products

> traded around the world "virtual water." In this terminology, every ton of wheat arriving dockside carries with it in virtual form the thousand tons of water needed to grow it. . . . The biggest net exporter of virtual water is the United States. It exports around a third of the water it withdraws from the natural environment. Much of that is in grains, either directly or via meat. The United States is emptying critical underground water reserves, such as those beneath the High Plains, to grow grain for export. It also exports an amazing 80 million acre feet of virtual water in beef. **—Fred Pearce, *When the Rivers Run Dry: Water—The Defining Crisis of the Twenty-First Century***

Most of us only drink about a gallon of water, or at most a gallon and a half, each day. When you include flushing toilets, washing clothes, and some lawn watering, the average European household consumes about 40 gallons per day and the average U.S. household consumes about 100 gallons per day. The water to grow what we eat and manufacture the goods we consume increases the amount of virtual water used to support our Western way of life by more than a factor of ten. It takes 130 gallons to grow a pound of wheat, 65 gallons for a pound of potatoes, and 250 to 650 gallons to grow a pound of rice. If you feed grain to beef cattle, it takes 1,200 gallons of water to produce a pound of ground beef. It takes about 500 to 1,000 gallons of water to produce a quart of milk and about 650 gallons of water to produce a pound of cheddar cheese. Since cotton grows best in hot, arid lands, many of the world's major rivers in temperate areas are used for irrigation to grow cotton as well as grain and other crops. Between modern cities' thirst for water—water to supply industry and water to irrigate land for grain and cotton—the result is that many of the world's great rivers (the Nile in Egypt, the Indus in Pakistan, the Colorado and the Rio Grande in the United States, and the Yellow in China) are reduced to barely a trickle, or completely dry up, for significant parts of each year.

To keep up with the world's demand for food and water, with rivers running dry long before they reach many of the world's "breadbasket" zones that were traditionally irrigated from these rivers, many farms have resorted to pumping water from local aquifers. With the advent of low-cost Japanese pumps, tube wells have shot up all over the world and are pumping irrigation waters, and water for municipal water systems, at rates far beyond the sustainable recharge rate for these aquifers. As a consequence, wells often run dry and need to be redrilled at ever greater depths.

Some of these aquifers have very slow recharge rates and are known as "fossil aquifers," such as the giant Libyan aquifer buried beneath the Sahara Desert. This Libyan legacy is being depleted at jet speed by a $27 billion project to pump and pipe this ancient water to irrigate crops on Libya's coast. The fossil aquifer that supplies China's megalopolis of Beijing with its water, and irrigates China's north-plain wheat fields, has been rapidly declining for decades. This situation has become so serious that the Chinese government is spending $60 billion on a three-stage, 20-year project to route water from the Yangtze River, which is 800 miles south of Beijing and is the world's fourth-largest river. Another "fossil aquifer" that is in trouble is the great Ogallala aquifer that stretches beneath most of Nebraska, southern South Dakota, western Kansas, Oklahoma, Texas, and parts of eastern New Mexico, Colorado, and Wyoming.

We are currently unsustainably overpumping our supply of this fossil water to grow grain for export to China, Russia, Egypt, and numerous other countries that can't grow enough food to

feed themselves. One of the easiest ways for water-poor countries, such as China and Egypt, to supplement their dwindling supplies of water is to import grain, since they are effectively importing 260,000 gallons of virtual water with every ton of imported wheat and a million gallons of virtual water with every ton of imported rice (Pearce 2006).

WATER POLLUTION

> Water systems face . . . challenges in some of the new, hard-to-kill bacteria that crop up with growing frequency. Among the most feared is *Cryptosporidium*, the parasite that polluted Milwaukee's water in 1993, killing 111 people and sickening more than 403,000. It was the worst case of waterborne illness in modern U.S. history. The city's treatment system at the time wasn't good enough to kill the bug, which can evade conventional filters and is resistant to chlorine, most systems' main defense. **—Peter Eisler, "Powerful New Pollutants Imperil Drinking Water Supply," *USA Today,* October 12, 1998**
>
> **IMPORTANT : All surface water sources in the United States should be considered unsafe to drink without treatment.**

Just because water is clear, smells good, and tastes good does not mean that it is safe to drink. When I was a child, I often went hiking in the mountains of New England. We drank eagerly from all the sweet-tasting streams and creeks along the trailside. It was a treat to drink from these unchlorinated, natural water sources, and we never gave it a second thought. Forty years later, I will not drink from these same sources without first running the water through a portable filter, chemically treating it, or boiling it to remove or kill organisms such as *Giardia* or *Cryptosporidium*. The water still looks and tastes the same, but these organisms can live in clear, clean water. In the High Sierra of California, it is estimated that about 50 percent of the wild animal feces contain traces of *Giardia*. Surface waters in agricultural areas are usually even more severely infected with *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium* than the mountainous regions, since cattle are major carriers of these pests.

Western nations have developed vast systems of water purification, storage, and distribution designed to protect us from traditional waterborne diseases, but waterborne diseases and parasites continue to plague most of the population of this planet, particularly in the third world. In typical disaster situations, modern systems for purifying and distributing clean water often fail. In these situations, to protect your health, you must purify your own water. Basic information on contaminants is presented here so that you will better understand the limitations of particular water treatment options. Subsequently, a variety of water treatment options are presented, and I offer my personal recommendations on particular brands and types of water treatment.

Types of Contamination

Bacteria

Bacteria, commonly called "germs," are single-celled organisms; they are spread by wind, water, person-to-person contact, animal feces, and contaminated food. You can't be sure that any surface water is free of harmful bacteria, even when it is crystal clear and there are no signs of human habitation. Some examples of harmful waterborne bacteria are cholera, *Campylobacter jejuni*, salmonella, and some varieties of *E. coli.* They multiply by cell division when they are in a "friendly" host environment, which provides them with food and temperatures suitable for growth. Given a positive growth environment, like feces-polluted water or a human body with a compromised immune system, one bacterium cell may multiply into millions within just a few hours. Signs of bacterial infection usually show up from 6 hours to 3 days after exposure.

Bacteria are killed by boiling, ultraviolet sterilization, ozone, or chemical treatment, provided the treatments are applied at the proper concentration and temperature and for the proper length of time. Bacteria are tiny, on the order of 0.3 microns to several microns in size, and visible only under a powerful microscope. One micron is a millionth of a meter long. To give you a better idea of how tiny a micron is, realize that a single human hair is about 76 microns thick. Filters rated at 0.2 microns or less are usually effective against bacteria, but bacteria can grow through some filter media over a period of time.

CAUTION: Not all filters perform equally well. See the "Portable Water Filters" section following.

Protozoa

Protozoa, such as *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium,* are single-celled animals. Unlike bacteria, they are able to move themselves around, and don't just sit there waiting for something external to push them around. They are microscopic but relatively large (3 to 10 microns), which makes them considerably easier to filter out of your drinking water. However, they have the capacity to transform themselves into a cyst, which is a form that is very tough to kill chemically with traditional iodine and chlorine water treatments. When these little animals get into a harsh environment, such as one that is too cold or has no food (like clean water), they change into cysts. A cyst cannot move itself around or feed itself, but it can passively survive in harsh environmental conditions that would kill most bacteria. The cysts remain dormant waiting for a positive growth environment, such as the intestinal tract of an animal or polluted water. In a positive growth environment, protozoa change back to the active form and begin to eat and multiply. Protozoan infections usually take considerably longer to show symptoms—from a week to several months. Boiling and ultraviolet sterilization will kill protozoa and their cysts. Protozoan infections can be extremely difficult to treat once they have become entrenched in the body.

Viruses

Viruses are different organisms altogether. They are much smaller than bacteria, on the order of 0.004 to 0.06 microns (Wilkerson 1992, 72) and are much harder to filter out. Viral contamination of drinking water is not as problematic as bacterial or protozoan contamination, but waterborne outbreaks are not uncommon. Viruses are so small that they may be visible only through the use of an electron microscope. Viruses multiply by invading the cells of a host

organism and “stealing” some of the genetic material of the host cell to reproduce the virus. This process usually destroys the host cells and reproduces the virus. Some common harmful waterborne viruses are hepatitis A, polio, and Norwalk virus. Over the past few years, the Norwalk virus has been in the news quite a bit for showing up in the water systems of a number of cruise ships and seriously sickening several thousand passengers (Sardone 2007). Proper iodine and chlorine chemical treatments, as well as boiling, ozone, and UV sterilization, will kill viruses. Waterborne viruses are usually spread by human feces. Unlike bacteria, viruses generally do not cross from animals to humans, so the chance of getting viral infections in pristine remote locations is rather small, unless there has been a viral outbreak in the local human population. Viruses usually, but not always, attach themselves to larger particles, which can be effectively filtered out by standard microbial filters, so these types of filters offer some protection against viruses even though their pore size is far larger than the size of the virus.

Parasites

Parasites live off the bodies of host organisms for at least part of their life cycles. Parasites may be microscopic, such as malaria or trichinosis. Single-celled animals like *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium* can be considered parasites. Some parasites are several inches long, such as liver flukes, or several feet long, such as intestinal tapeworms. Parasites remain the scourge of many millions of people throughout the third world and infect a surprisingly large percentage of the Western world. Research scientist Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., believes that twentieth-century solvents tend to collect in some of the organs of our bodies and make them unusually good hosts for a variety of parasites (Clark 1995, 332). According to Clark, these solvents, and the parasites they nurture, contribute significantly to high rates of cancer. In the West, most parasites appear to be picked up through contact with house pets or while preparing raw meat. In the third world, parasites are often spread by eating raw meat or through poor sanitation and lack of water treatment. Usually parasites do not kill their hosts, but sap health, body strength, and vitality. (See Chapter 9 for low-tech solutions to parasite infections.)

Parasites are killed by boiling, chlorine dioxide treatment, and UV sterilization, but may survive iodine and traditional chlorine treatments if they are in cyst form. Their relatively large size makes them easy to filter out of contaminated water. All known parasites are filtered out of the water by filters rated at 2 microns or less.

Chemical and Radioactive Contaminants

Potentially harmful chemical contaminants in our drinking water include heavy metals, such as arsenic and lead from industrial pollution or naturally occurring deposits in deep well water, organic compounds from various industries or chlorine treatment of surface water, and nitrates and pesticides from modern farms. In some parts of the world, pollutants also include radioactive contamination from the refining of radioactive materials or industrial accidents, such as the partial meltdown of the reactor at Chernobyl.

Organic compounds are large molecules that consist of chains of carbon and hydrogen atoms with various other atoms attached to them. The modern world has invented huge numbers of organic compounds and refined and concentrated many other naturally occurring organic compounds. Some examples of these are gasoline, solvents, pesticides, latex paint, and plastics. When chlorine combines with organic debris, like dead leaves, it makes carcinogenic (cancer-

causing) compounds called trihalomethanes (THMs). Boiling your water will kill microorganisms but will usually have no effect on chemical or radioactive pollutants. Distillation will kill all kinds of microorganisms, but simple distillers will not remove volatile organic compounds since they evaporate and condense along with the water vapor. To remove volatile organic compounds, more advanced distillers include either fractional distillation or an activated carbon cartridge to remove these pollutants. The common reverse osmosis (RO) systems, which include activated carbon filters, will remove most organic compounds and heavy metals (see the section on water treatment).

DISINFECTING YOUR WATER

Contrary to popular opinion, clear, sparkling water is often unsafe for drinking. Even spring water may not be safe. Deep-water springs from gravel or sand sources are usually safe, but may be contaminated by runoff from agricultural fertilizers, septic systems, sewer lines, and so on. Springs emerging from rock crevices can be exit points for underground streams carrying pollutants from far-off sources. When unsure about the source of your water, it is safest to boil, chemically treat, or filter the water through a certified water filter.

Boiling all your daily drinking water is time and energy consuming, and will not remove bad tastes, odors, or toxic chemicals. Most chemical treatments leave an aftertaste and should be used with care to ensure the proper concentration and contact time for the temperature of application, plus they will not remove toxic chemicals or bad tastes and odors. Traditional iodine and chlorine water treatments, except for the relatively new two-part chlorine dioxide water treatment products (trade name Aquamira), do not provide guaranteed protection from *Cryptosporidium* cysts, which have been found to survive a 24-hour soak in undiluted household bleach. Portable filters can rapidly process surface water into potable water and, if they have a carbon block inside the filter, they will remove bad tastes, odors, and many chemical contaminants, but some filters may not purify as well as their labels lead you to believe. When your water source is highly questionable, the safest method for portable, fast, reliable water disinfection is to combine either chemical or UV treatment with bacteriological filtration, or to simply use the Aquamira products, which will kill all organisms in 5 to 10 minutes. Recommended methods for sterilizing and disinfecting water are summarized below.

Heat Sterilization

Water sterilization by boiling is preferred over any method of chemical disinfection. This time-honored method is safe and a sure thing, because disease-causing microorganisms cannot survive the heat of a sterilizing boil. The CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention) recommends that you boil water at a vigorous rolling boil for at least one minute at sea level. At altitudes above 6,000 feet, they recommend three minutes of rolling boil, since water boils at lower temperatures as the altitude increases. Some references (Wilkerson 1992, 71) state that, regardless of elevation, the boiling temperature and the time to reach that temperature are sufficient to kill all pathogenic organisms. Since milk is pasteurized at 160°F, I tend to agree

with those experts who say that by the time water has reached a full boil, regardless of elevation, it has long since killed any living organisms, except for prions (mad cow disease, scrapie, etc.), which are rare and are in a totally different class (not really an organism, per se) and can survive steam sterilization. Boiled water can be used after cooling (do not add ice, which may be contaminated), but it takes considerable time and fuel to boil all your drinking water.

NOTE: Boiling usually has no impact on chemical or radioactive pollutants, which must be dealt with by other methods.

Portable Water Filters

There are many different portable water filters on the market. A filter is called a "purifier" if it is certified to remove protozoa, bacteria, and viruses. Other certified filters may remove only bacteria or perhaps just cysts. Many home water filters will remove unpleasant tastes and odors, but will not remove microorganisms. *Read the label, but realize that not all similarly rated filters perform the same,* nor do all filter manufacturers perform the same tests in the same manner. You can tell whether a filter's pump is working or whether the filter is clogged, but you can't tell whether the filter itself is working effectively against organisms. Actual lab tests to verify microbiological filter function are expensive, and there is no thorough testing protocol to ensure that all filters are tested in a standardized way by any lab that does the testing. Having personally designed medical intravenous filters, consumer water filters, and commercial filtration systems, I will give you my opinion and recommendations later in this chapter.

Purifying Filters

Almost any backcountry bacteriological filter, including those not given a "purifier" rating, will do a good job of removing protozoa and their cysts, like *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium*. Most "purifying" filters have iodineimpregnated resin beads in the filter media, which release iodine into the water to kill viruses and bacteria. These chemically active resins require sufficiently warm water temperatures and relatively long contact times to kill bacteria and viruses. Some lab tests indicate that most or all iodine-based purifiers may not pass the EPA "purifier" standard without pumping water through the device more than once or at extremely slow flow rates (Vorhis 1997, 13). If viral contamination is a big concern, I personally would not trust the iodine resin in my purifying filter, but would pretreat the water with a chemical treatment before running it through my filter to remove protozoan cysts and the bad taste of the chemicals, or zap it with UV sterilization from a "SteriPEN" after I had filtered it to clarify the water and remove bad tastes and harmful chemicals. There is one certified purifying filter, the First Need Deluxe Purifier, which uses no iodine to remove bacteria and viruses, and is not as prone to the temperature, flow rate, and usage factors that might allow viruses to slip through most other purifiers, but if your water supply is dirty, it will clog this filter in short order.

The new sports-bottle type backcountry water filters are inexpensive, simple, and effective against *Giardia,* and some are certified purifiers. They are extremely simple, using the squeeze bottle as the pump to drive water through the filter. I would exercise extreme caution using any

of these filters to purify water from an urban or agricultural area or for treating brackish or foul-smelling water, and suggest pretreating the water with chlorine or iodine prior to running it thorough your sports bottle filter.

If you do use a certified "purifying" water filter on dirty water, like a duck pond or urban stream, without secondary chemical treatment, I would be extra careful to run the water through the filters at a *very slow rate* and suggest *running the water through the filter twice*. Katadyne, First Need, Berkey, and Sweetwater make certified "purifying" filters, which cost on the order of $40 to $130, and have fairly low capacities (about 10 to 20 gallons if you are treating reasonably clear, clean water).

Ceramic Versus Carbon Cartridge Filters

If you might be using your backcountry water filter a lot, I would recommend that you purchase a filter with a ceramic filter element, like the Katadyn or MSR units. These units offer far longer life at a much lower cost per filtered gallon than carbon-based or pleated-membrane filter elements. All filter elements have clogging problems that will severely reduce their capacity (useful life), if used with dirty water. Ceramic cartridges will clog faster than the other types of cartridges, but can be serviced fairly easily by scrubbing the outer clogging layer with a scrubbing pad that is supplied with the filter to restore the filter to near its original performance. Some filters have replaceable prefilters, which help somewhat with clogging, but since the pore size of the prefilter is usually much larger then the pore size of the main filter, small particles tend to slip through the prefilter and continue to clog the main filter. Backwashing capabilities can also help extend filter life. A lot of people swear by the backcountry water filters with pleated membranes and carbon block cores, like the Katadyne Hiker Pro or the MSR Sweetwater, which pump water faster and easier than the filters with ceramic-type cartridges (MSR Miniworks and Katadyne Combi Filter) but have the disadvantage that they cannot be field serviced and cleaned when clogged, as with the ceramic-cartridge types of filters.

Filters generally work on two principles. The first principle is called *sieving*. Sieving is the same as straining particles out through holes in a screen. If the particle is too big to fit through the hole, it doesn't pass through the screen. In addition, most filter media are very thick and create a tortuous path that strains out particles much smaller than the average pore size. Ceramic filter media and most filter membranes work primarily on the principle of sieving.

The second filter principle is adsorption. When a particle sticks to the filter media the way iron filings stick to a magnet, the process is called *adsorption*. All filters use a combination of sieving and adsorption, but activated carbon filter media are heavy on the adsorption side. Activated carbon has millions of tiny nooks and crannies. A teaspoon of activated carbon has an absorption surface area about equal to the size of a football field, making it an excellent adsorption material. Carbon is great for sucking up pesticides, iodine, and organic compounds that tend to give water a bad taste and may be toxic (like Hurricane Katrina flood water or water from your local duck pond). After a while, the sticky adsorptive surfaces of the activated carbon get filled up, so the filter stops removing bad tastes, chemicals, and odors.

UV Sterilization—"SteriPEN"

A terrific new invention came out a few years ago called a "SteriPEN." This handy gadget consists of a UV lamp that has a built-in timer to treat 1-quart (1-liter) and 1-pint (½-liter) bottles of water in seconds. It only takes about a minute to kill bacteria, viruses, and protozoa in your drinking water. The catch is that in order to be effective, the water must be clear so the light shines through the water, otherwise the sterilization will not be complete. You can even take it with you into restaurants and use it to zap your glass of drinking water to ensure that you won't get Montezuma's revenge while traveling. All bets are off, however, if you have ice in your drink or are zapping a colored drink like a margarita. The device requires batteries, so I suggest you have a backup water treatment along in case the batteries go dead or your SteriPEN stops working.

Mixed Halogens—MSR's MIOX Purifier

Another nifty recent invention is MSR's MIOX purifier. It only weighs four ounces, and is about the size of a felt-tip marker, so it is very compact and easy to use. Developed in conjunction with the U.S. Department of Defense, this compact sterilizer uses rock salt and batteries to generate a small dose of powerful halogens that will sterilize water and deactivate chemical warfare toxins in drinking water. This will work in water regardless of whether it is clear or not. The main drawback is that it does require significant dwell time to ensure that the halogens have had enough time to kill all the microorganisms. The required dwell time is 15 minutes for bacteria and viruses, 30 minutes for *Giardia*, and 4 hours for *Cryptosporidium* cysts. The process leaves almost no aftertaste, which is a major plus when compared to traditional iodine or chlorine tablets and drops, which leave a rather unpleasant aftertaste and have similar dwell times.

My Water-Treatment Recommendations

There are lots of filters on the market. In this section I provide my opinions on quality filters to help you decide what to buy. See backcountry specialty stores or preparedness/survival suppliers for the best selection of portable water filters.

> **NOTE: Most filter manufacturers rate their filter life with an "up to" gallon rating based on use with very clean water. Unless you know that you will only use your backcountry water filter with extremely clean water, figure on a realistic life of roughly one-third the manufacturer's rated life. Sad, but field tests show that this is generally true.**

Occasional or Emergency Use

For simplicity, one of the certified purifiers (Katadyne, First Need, MSR, etc.) would be a good choice. If viral contamination is a major concern, I would not rely solely on the iodine resin in most purifying filters, but would either pre-treat the water with a chemical treatment, then run it through the purifier to remove protozoa cysts and the bad taste of chemical treatment, or post-

treat filtered water with a SteriPEN. Of course, if you are going to do this, you might as well buy a cheaper, longer-lasting filter and treat the water with chemicals or a UV SteriPEN when filtering suspicious water. My personal recommendation is to buy either an MSR or Katadyne filter with a carbon core, and also a SteriPEN. I suggest purchasing a compact Polar Pure iodine crystal kit (it treats up to 2,000 liters of water) as a backup in case your SteriPEN fails. Use the UV SteriPEN to zap clear, sweet-smelling water without bothering to filter it first. If using scummy water, such as city duck ponds or brackish water in the backcountry, first run the scummy water through the filter to clarify the water and remove bad tastes, toxic chemicals, and most (if not all) microorganisms, then zap it with your SteriPEN to make extra sure any stray viruses are killed. Also stock at least one spare filter cartridge, since the cartridges can clog quickly with dirty water. I find that when using filters with ceramic cartridges to treat relatively clear water, the carbon cores in the ceramictype cartridges tend to stop removing chlorine and other bad tastes long before repeated cartridge cleanings have worn down the ceramic filters to the point where their bacterial filtering capabilities are reduced and they need to be replaced. These types of water filters come with a gauge to tell you when cartridge cleanings have reached the point where replacement is necessary.

The sports bottle–type bacteriological filters, available from Katadyne or Berkey, are a good, low-cost alternative for storing in the trunk of your car for emergencies, or to carry on day hikes, backcountry runs, and so on. They are also useful as a backup in case the pump on your primary water filter breaks.

Significant Use, Portable

I recommend using a filter with a cleanable ceramic cartridge and a carbon core, such as the Katadyn Combi Filter ($140), MSR MiniWorks ($90), or the MSR WaterWorks II ($145).

For reduction of bacteria, tests indicate that the MSR WaterWorks II and the Katadyn Combi Filter perform the best out of the longer-lasting portable filters. Test users liked the Katadyn Pocket Filter and the MSR MiniWorks best for simplicity and ease of use and service. After testing numerous models, the U.S. Marine Corps selected the MSR MiniWorks for use by its Amphibious Raids and Reconnaissance Division. Katadyn was the thirdworld traveler's standard for many years, but MSR is giving Katadyn a lot of competition.

The MSR units and the Katadyn Combi Filter have the benefit of activated carbon, which will help remove chemicals, bad tastes, and unpleasant odors until the carbon is used up (the ceramic filter element should continue to provide bacterial and protozoa protection long after the carbon is spent).

Even though these units remove about 99 percent of most viruses, they are not rated as purifiers, so if viruses are a significant concern (for example, if your only source for water is the local duck pond or a river in a highly populated area), you should chemically treat your water before running it through one of these filters or zap it with a SteriPEN after filtering.

Heavy Usage, Not So Portable

If I wanted to provide purified water for several people over a significant period of time, I would buy one of the recommended gravity-fed units. The per gallon cost of these units is a fraction of the cost per gallon of using a small portable pump purifier, plus you do not have to sit there and

pump away for long periods of time to provide a large quantity of purified water.

Gravity-fed units either have a top reservoir that holds the source water while it slowly percolates through the filter media into the bottom reservoir of purified water, or they are siphon-type units designed to siphon water from one container to another. Gravity-fed units require no pumping but cannot produce water nearly as fast as the recommended high-volume, pump-type unit.

Where viruses are a concern, you should chemically treat your water before running it through one of these filters, or zap it with a SteriPEN after filtering.

Recommended gravity-fed units are the various Berkey models, the Katadyn Drip Filter, and the AquaRain model 200 and model 400 filters. The Big Berkey filter, with two "Black Berkey" purification elements ($279) has a rated capacity of 4 gallons per hour, a life of up to 6,000 gallons, and the carbon block filter elements may be cleaned with a Scotch Brite pad to restore the flow rate.

The Katadyn TRK Gravidyn Drip Filter ($250) has a rated capacity of up to 13 gallons per day and a life of about 2,300 gallons before the carbon core is saturated, but will continue to remove bacteria for approximately 13,000 gallons, if necessary. This filter utilizes a set of three silver-impregnated ceramic cartridges with carbon cores.

The AquaRain models use state-of-the-art, award-winning ceramic cartridges from Marathon (a MSR subsidiary) and contain replaceable silver-impregnated activated carbon cartridges for removing chemicals, tastes, and odor. AquaRain model 200 ($199) has a rated capacity of 12 to 15 gallons per day and a life of many thousands of gallons. Their model 400 ($260) has twice as many filter elements and can process 24 to 30 gallons per day. The complete AquaRain unit has not been through EPA purifier certification; however, the Marathon ceramic elements used in the AquaRain unit have been thoroughly tested, indicating an excellent microbiological performance.

> **NOTE: Filter life is dependent on water quality, filter surface area, filter thickness, and ceramic hardness. In actual use, the large-capacity Berkey models and the AquaRain model 400 will probably have about double the useful life of the smaller Berkeys, the AquaRain model 200, and the Katadyn unit.**

The recommended high-volume, pump-type unit is the pricey Katadyn Expedition Group Filter ($1,200), which will pump more than one gallon per minute (much faster than the gravity-fed units) and has a rated life of 26,000 gallons. Gravity-fed units are considerably less expensive than pump units with equivalent lifetime capacities. This filter has no carbon core, so it won't remove bad tastes, odors, or toxic chemicals. It is very popular with river guides and disaster relief organizations.

Chemical Sterilization

Various forms of chlorine and iodine chemical treatments are commonly used to disinfect

drinking water. Chlorination is the most common method of chemically disinfecting water because it is easy to apply, readily available, and inexpensive. Chemical treatments, except for chlorine dioxide (Aquamira and Micropur) and the MSR MIOX pen, usually leave an aftertaste that most people find unpleasant. The taste is caused by traces of chlorine or iodine, which are active halogens that can also cause harmful health effects over long periods of time.

> **CAUTION: Except for chlorine dioxide solutions (trade names Aquamira and Micropur), and the MSR MIOX mixed halogens, neither chlorine nor iodine disinfection is effective against *Cryptosporidium* cysts.**

If treated water has a strong chlorine or iodine taste, you can improve the taste by allowing the water to stand exposed to the air for a few hours, pouring it back and forth several times between containers, adding a pinch of salt, or adding some lemon juice. A pinch of powdered vitamin C (available at health food stores) in a quart of treated water will react with free chlorine or iodine and totally remove the bad taste. Running the water through an activated carbon filter will also remove free chlorine, iodine, and bad tastes.

> **CAUTION: Do not remove free chlorine or iodine until the water has set for the proper sterilization time (see the following table), and do not remove traces of chlorine or iodine from water that is to be stored for long periods of time.**

Chlorine Bleach

Liquid chlorine bleaches, such as Purex and Clorox, contain a chlorine compound in solution that will effectively disinfect water. There are some products on the market sold as "bleach" for laundry use that do not contain chlorine and could be harmful, *so be sure to read the label.* The procedure for disinfecting drinking water is usually written on the labels of Purex and Clorox brand chlorine bleaches. When the procedure is not given, use the following percentage of available chlorine as a guide (see the following table). Chlorine bleach is not as stable and reliable as the recommended iodine treatments. Chlorine is very pH sensitive, and alkaline waters significantly reduce its antimicrobial effectiveness (Wilkerson 1992, 72).

> **CAUTION: Do not use powdered bleach or bleach with conditioning additives, scents, or colorfast additives.**

To purify, add four drops of standard liquid chlorine bleach (5 percent concentration) per quart of water, and double that amount for turbid or colored water. The treated water should be mixed thoroughly and allowed to stand for 30 minutes. The water should have a slight chlorine odor.

If it doesn't, repeat the dosage and allow it to stand for an additional 15 minutes. The slight chlorine taste of treated water is additional evidence of safety. Chlorine bleach loses strength over time, so if your bleach is over one year old, the amount used to disinfect should be doubled.

Chlorine Dioxide

With the discovery that *Cryptosporidium* cysts pose a significant health threat and often survive traditional chlorine water disinfection treatments, many municipalities have included chlorine dioxide in their water treatment process. Much like ozone water treatments, chlorine dioxide is a powerful oxidizing agent that can kill C*ryptosporidium* cysts and rapidly purify water. It does not leave the active halogen of free chlorine in the water, so it makes for better-tasting water (no

aftertaste) than water treated with traditional chlorination.

The Aquamira kit ($14.95) is the first portable water treatment product to utilize chlorine dioxide. It is a twopart liquid dropper kit, will treat up to 30 gallons per kit, and will purify even frigid water in 5 to 10 minutes. It purifies relatively quickly and leaves no aftertaste. Katadyne sells their chlorine dioxide tablets under the trade name Micropur MP1 ($14.99) with 30 tablets that treat 1 quart each (7.5 gallons total).

Chlorine Tablets

Chlorine tablets containing the necessary dosage for drinking water disinfection can be purchased in a commercially prepared form. Sources for chlorine disinfection tablets are sporting goods stores, army surplus stores, backpacking stores, preparedness/survival suppliers, and so on. Tablets should be used as stated on the instructions. Chlorine tablets can be stored for years. Their small size and precisely measured amount of chlorine in each tablet make them convenient, accurate, and easy to use. For disinfecting large quantities of water, their cost may be prohibitive, but they are a lot lighter and easier to carry than gallons of pure water.

CAUTION: Traditional chlorine tablets will not kill *Cryptosporidium* cysts.

Redi Chlor tablets, from Continental Technologies, are premeasured tablets of calcium hypochlorite that are handy for disinfecting significant quantities of drinking water. Each tablet treats 5 gallons of water, so a single bottle of 100 tablets treats 500 gallons of water for about $19.95, which is far cheaper than the per gallon cost of small purifying filters.

Granular Calcium Hypochlorite

Granular calcium hypochlorite is used for chlorinating swimming pools and fairly large quantities of water and for making stock disinfectant solution. It is best stored in a garage or storage building far enough away from other products, since it can cause pitting and corrosion. Granular calcium hypochlorite is packaged for sale in plastic bottles or drums. Sources of calcium hypochlorite are hardware stores, sporting goods stores, pharmacies, chemical suppliers, and swimming pool supply companies.

CAUTION: This chemical is poisonous and extremely corrosive.

To make a disinfecting solution, dissolve 1 heaping teaspoon of granular calcium hypochlorite (about ¼ ounce) for each 2 gallons of water. This will yield a concentrated chlorine solution of approximately 500 milligrams per liter. To sterilize water, add this chlorine solution in the ratio of 1 part chlorine solution to 100 parts of water to be disinfected (Le Baron 1998, 115). This is roughly equal to adding 1 pint (16 ounces) of concentrated chlorine solution to each 12.5 gallons of water. If this seems unnecessarily complicated, use the Redi Chlor tablets as described under “Chlorine Tablets.”

Disinfection techniques and halogen doses (All doses added to 1 quart of water)

Sterilization technique	**Quantity for 4 ppm (parts per million)**	**Quantity for 8 (parts per million)ppm**
Iodine tabs (tetraglycine hydroperiodide; Potable-Agua and Globaline products)	½tab	1 tab

2 percent iodine solution (tincture)	5 drops (0.2 ml)	10 drops (0.4 ml)
10 percent povidone-iodine solution	8 drops (0.35 ml)	16 drops (0.70 ml)
Saturated iodine crystals in water (Polar Pure product)	2½ teaspoons (13 ml)	5 teaspoons (26 ml)
Saturated iodine crystals in alcohol	2 drops (0.1 ml)	4 drops (0.2 ml)
Household bleach (soldium hypochlorite)	(5 percent) 2 drops (0.1 ml)	4 drops (0.2 ml)

Halogen concentration	Sterilization time in minutes at various water temperatures		
	41°F (5°C)	59°F (15°C)	86°F (30°C)
2 ppm	240	180	60
4 ppm	180	60	45
8 ppm	60	30	15

NOTE: Recent data indicate that very cold water requires prolonged contact time with iodine or chlorine to kill *Giardia* cysts (both disinfectants are ineffective against *Cryptosporidium* cysts). These contact times in cold water have been extended from the usual recommendations to account for this and for the uncertainty of residual concentration.

(Source: Adapted from the *Wilderness Medical Society Practice Guidelines for Wilderness Emergency Care*, 1995)

Iodine Disinfection

Iodine is one of the best and most dependable germicides and is widely used as a skin disinfectant for the treatment of superficial wounds. You can use iodine to disinfect your drinking water, and it is commonly impregnated into modern water filter media to kill bacteria and viruses inside water filters. However, iodine is not effective against *Cryptosporidium* cysts. Iodine-treated water has a peculiar odor and taste that some people find unpleasant.

> **CAUTION: Pregnant or nursing women, or people with thyroid problems, should not ingest iodine-treated water. The EPA recommends that devices that add iodine to the water should not be used for periods extending beyond 2 to 3 weeks at a time.**

Tincture of Iodine

Eight drops of 2 percent tincture of iodine (Salvato 1982, 372) can be used to disinfect 1 quart of clear water (8 milligrams per liter dose). Allow water to stand at least 30 minutes before it is used. Studies of the usefulness of elemental iodine show it to be a good disinfectant over a pH range of 3 to 8. It is effective against enteric bacteria, amoebic cysts, *Cerariae*, *Leptospira*, and viruses within 30 minutes.

Iodine Tablets

The use of tetraglycine hydroperiodide tablets is an effective method of disinfecting small quantities of water. Tetraglycine hydroperiodide tablets sell under the brand names of Globaline, Portable-Agua, and Coghland's. Iodine tablets are handy, compact, and light. The tablets are very effective as a water disinfectant if directions are correctly followed. If the water to be treated is cloudy, it should be filtered or treated with double the number of iodine tablets.

You can purchase Portable-Agua with vitamin C–based taste-neutralizer tablets to totally eliminate the iodine aftertaste. Tablets can be purchased from pharmacies, preparedness/survival suppliers, and sporting goods stores. Once opened, iodine tablets have a shelf life of up to 1 year.

Iodine Crystal Solution

You can purchase a handy, ready-made iodine crystal water treatment kit from Polar Pure (includes crystals and bottle with thermometer), or you can make your own iodine crystal solution with about 5 grams (1/5 ounce) of iodine crystals and a 2-ounce glass bottle. The Polar Pure kit treats about 500 gallons of water for about $10. Cover the crystals with a small amount of water to preserve them from evaporation (sublimation).

When you are ready to use the iodine solution, fill the 2-ounce bottle with water, put the cap on, and shake the bottle for several minutes. Let the heavy crystals settle, then carefully pour out approximately 3 tablespoons (almost all the solution) into 1 gallon of clear water. ***Use only the iodine solution: leave the crystals in the bottle (the crystals are poisonous).*** Stir the water, and let it stand for approximately 30 minutes. If the water is very cold, let it stand for 1 hour.

You can use the crystals up to about 300 times before they completely dissolve. Be sure to label the bottle "Poison" and keep it out of reach of children. Elemental iodine is poisonous by ingestion (in concentrated form). Elemental iodine crystals are inexpensive and can be obtained at pharmacies and chemical supply companies. The methods in the above table have been carefully researched, and are time tested and effective. They are safe when the directions are correctly followed. The raw materials used in purification are inexpensive, but they are *poisonous in concentrated form. Use caution and keep them out of reach of children.*

PRESERVING WATER

Using Silver to Preserve Water

Improperly stored water quickly grows bacteria, which may have effects ranging from unpleasant to life threatening. In industrialized nations, residents' digestive tracts have grown accustomed to water sources free of harmful bacteria. As a result, most of us do not have built-in immunities to common local bacteria, which quickly reproduce in untreated stagnant reservoirs. Many a traveler to Mexico has suffered a bout of Montezuma's revenge, often introduced through seemingly harmless ice cubes made from the local water.

The ancients knew about the antibacterial properties of silver. Alexander the Great used silver urns to store water for his troops on extended sea journeys. The ancients didn't know anything about bacteria, but they knew that drinking "old water" could make them sick unless it was stored with silver. Solid silver will not usually disinfect water, but putting some of grandma's old silverware or some silver jewelry into a storage container is a good way to prevent the growth of potentially harmful bacteria over long periods of time. The silver introduces metal ions into the water that retard or prohibit bacterial growth. Katadyn makes a variety of commercial silver nitrate products (trade name Micropur) for preserving stored water with silver. There are several

nonsilver water preservatives, such as "Aerobic 07," for preventing bacterial growth in long-term stored containers of water. See preparedness/survival and surplus stores for these products. Silver-based water purification products are available in Europe, but these are not approved for use in the United States.

You can make your own colloidal silver solution for preserving your water if you have a colloidal silver generator (see Chapter 9). The Environmental Protection Agency has set a limit for the silver introduced into drinking water by bacteriostatic silver-impregnated filters at 50 micrograms per liter (equal to 0.05 parts per million). At this level of silver concentration, several different tests have indicated that silver is only partially effective over periods of time (greater than one hour) against certain bacteria and has little effect against viruses. To obtain these concentrations, you would dilute a 5 parts per million (ppm) colloidal silver solution 100:1 with the water to be preserved.

High concentrations of silver, on the order of 5 ppm, might properly purify clear water, but I have no data to support this premise, and these concentrations are well beyond the EPA limit. To be safe, I would stick with one of the proven technologies over silver for purifying my water. If I had only a colloidal silver generator, it would be better than nothing, but I would use fairly high concentrations of silver and would let the water sit for at least an hour before drinking.

TREATING AND FINDING WATER THE LOW-TECH WAY

With a few simple materials, if you can dig your way to moist soil or find some healthy green bushes, you should be able to provide yourself with drinking water.

Treating Water

Slow Sand Filters

You can use a slow sand filter to clean and partially purify your drinking water. Sand filtering is probably the oldest public water treatment method. Filtering water through 3 to 5 feet of sand will remove many microorganisms (like *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium)*, most debris, and most radioactive fallout.

As a sand filter ages, a gelatinous layer forms in the upper layer. The gelatinous layer contains many bacteria, which do most of the processing and filtering. These friendly bacteria will destroy many harmful bacteria, though some harmful bacteria, like *Salmonella paratyhi*, can travel quite a distance through sand filters. The top layer of your sand filter must be cleaned off and replaced regularly.

While sand filters are not as reliable as chemical treatment, they are often incorporated into the primary stages of modern commercial water treatment systems prior to chemical treatment. One or two layers of charcoal can be included in your sand filter if bad taste, odor, or solvents and other organic chemical contamination are a problem.

> **CAUTION: Many industrial chemicals and other toxic pollutants will not be removed by sand filters.**

Tips on Creating a Sand Filter

If you have sandy soil near a lake or river, you can utilize this soil to partially filter the water from the lake or river. If you can, it is best to boil, filter, or chemically treat the water from your sand filter reservoir.

For fresh water, you can dig a trench 5 to 10 feet from the water's edge. For salt water, the trench should be about 100 feet from shore. Filtered water will gradually seep into your trench.

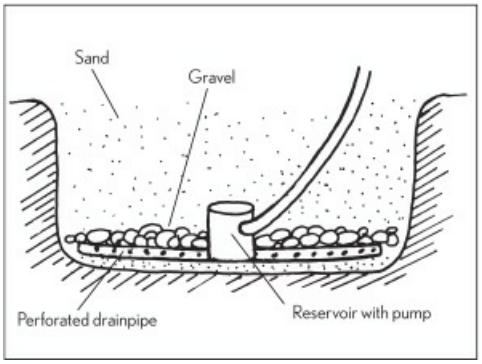


Figure 5-1. Slow sand filter reservoir.

If you have access to power and modern materials, you can use gravel, drainpipe, sand, and a pump to make a slow sand-filtered water supply (see Figure 5-1). If you have access to a wheelbarrow, it is preferable to wash the sand prior to loading it into your filter bed. Place a few buckets of sand into the wheelbarrow and fill it with water. Swirl the sand and water mixture, and pour off the muddy water. What remains is relatively clean sand.

You can also filter wet and muddy earth through layers of cloth into a suitable catch basin (see Figure 5-2) to collect water from wet earth. Let the water sit for a while to settle out some of the silt.

Solar Water Disinfection (SODIS)

The solar disinfection of drinking water (SODIS) is promoted by the World Health Organization (WHO), and others throughout the third world, as a viable treatment for disinfecting drinking water and reducing the incidence of waterborne diseases. Health workers stress that boiling, or chemical treatment like chlorination, is much preferred over SODIS, since boiling is 100 percent reliable at killing pathogens, and chemical treatment is close to 100 percent reliable except for hard-to-kill pathogens like *Cryptosporidium*. SODIS is not nearly as reliable as boiling or chlorination, but since boiling requires fuel or other resources that are often in short supply in thirdworld locations, SODIS is promoted as being far better than drinking untreated water.

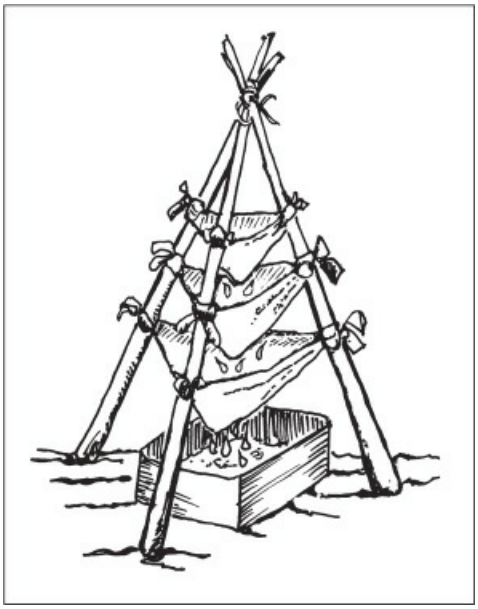


Figure 5-2. Crude sand filter.

The treatment of water with solar radiation was practiced in ancient India more than four thousand years ago, and the modern practice of SODIS using clear water in plastic bottles placed in the sun was developed in Lebanon in the 1980s. The SODIS process uses a combination of UV-A radiation and heat from sunlight to kill pathogens in drinking water. The standard procedure is to fill used, clean, clear PET soda bottles with water and to lay them flat in full sunlight for 6 hours. Cloudy skies require 2 days of daylight exposure and the process does not work at all during rainy weather, when rainwater collection is recommended instead.

SODIS requires clear water and works best at water depths of 4 inches or less, so it is not suitable for large containers of water. If the water is murky enough to prevent you from reading newsprint through the filled PET bottle, it won't work for SODIS. Clear plastic bags and glass bottles also work well for SODIS, but window glass does not. Ninety-nine percent of glass bottles let most of the sun's UV radiation pass through the glass, but typical window glass filters out the UV-A radiation, so it won't work for SODIS.

In hotter climates, painting one half of the SODIS bottle black (to act as a solar collector) or placing the bottles on a black or reflective surface will heat the water to higher temperatures, increasing the pasteurization effect. Clear bottles in hot sun can reach temperatures of 131°F (55°C), which kills many pathogenic bacteria over a period of hours. With a black painted surface or a metal container in hot sun, the water temperature can reach 140°F (60°C) or more, where true pasteurization can occur, rapidly deactivating most enteric viruses, bacteria, and parasites (Sobsey 2002, 14). In places like Nepal, where temperatures are cooler but UV-A radiation is higher due to the altitude, it has been found that SODIS treatment is more effective without any paint on the bottles. For an excellent source of both basic information on SODIS and links to numerous technical papers, see www.sodis.ch.

The Bangladesh Sari Filter

In Bangladesh, where annual flooding often contaminates nearly all surface waters and where

over half of the tube wells are severely contaminated with arsenic and fluoride, villagers have been trained to make a reasonably effective filter out of a minimum of eight layers of a folded sari. Actual scientific controlled tests have verified the efficacy of these low-tech "sari filters." It turns out that older saris work better than ones made of new cloth, because after several launderings the thread fibers tend to become soft and loose, reducing the pore size compared with pore size on new sari cloth. The folded sari filters are held snugly over the neck of a large water jug as it is dipped in a river or pond until filled. After each use, the sari is first rinsed out in the source water, followed by a rinsing in filtered water, then laid out in the sun for further drying and natural UV sterilization.

> **CAUTION: The use of sari filters is not 100 percent safe. In controlled tests, the method reduced cholera infections by 52 percent, and a large number of mothers using sari filtration perceived a significant decline in the incidence of diarrhea within their families. It is better than nothing, but if you have other more surefire treatment options, I suggest you use them (Colwell 2003).**

Charcoal Filters

You can make your own crude charcoal filters to remove bad tastes, odors, and some pollutants such as organic toxic chemicals and radioactive fallout. The easiest way to make charcoal is to burn some wood and pick the bigger partially burned chunks out of the fire. Place these chunks into a 5-gallon bucket and pour the water to be treated into the bucket. Shake vigorously for a few seconds, then allow to stand for several minutes before filtering this water through a cloth, sand filter, or coffee filter back into a suitable container. If toxic organic chemicals or radioactive fallout are significant concerns, you should filter your water through at least 3 to 5 feet of sand including two 3-inch-thick layers of charcoal. A 50-gallon drum filled with sand and charcoal layers, with a few holes punched in the bottom, could do the job nicely. If you crush the charcoal with some rocks, it will do a better job of filtering.

A more efficient way to make charcoal is with an oldfashioned charcoal kiln, which bakes wood in a closed chamber above a fire. This process makes charcoal without burning the wood sealed into the upper part of the kiln, since that section of the kiln does not allow enough oxygen flow to support combustion. Another traditional method for making charcoal is by first covering a huge pile of wood with a layer of straw or pine needles followed by a thick layer of dirt, leaving a small chimney flue in the top center. Vent holes were scratched into the sides of the dirt and the pine needles or straw were ignited through these vent holes. The chimney and vent holes were partially covered to control the amount of air to ensure that the wood charred into charcoal rather than burned into ash. The charcoal mound was watched carefully for several days, then the chimney and vent holes were completely plugged for several more until the mound cooled down. If the mound keeper was not careful, the pile would build into a roaring fire and burn all the wood to ashes (Wigginton 1979, 97–99).

If the need should ever arise, common household ionexchange water softeners and carbon or slow sand filters are particularly effective at removing radioactive materials from contaminated water sources.

Solar Still

Under a survival situation in dry climates, you can provide yourself with small quantities of pure

water with a homemade solar still, using a clear sheet of plastic and a container to catch dripping water. Dig a hole in the ground in an area with wet or moist soil that is also directly exposed to the sun. If the soil is very wet or damp, you may only have to dig a couple of feet. Place a pail or other catch basin in the center of your pit. If you do not have a container, a piece of plastic or waterproof material covering a depression in the earth will suffice. Cover the pit with the sheet of clear plastic, and seal the edges of the sheeting with more soil or rocks (see Figure 5-3). Weight the center of the sheeting with a stick, stone, or some dirt.

The sun's rays passing through the plastic sheet will warm the earth, evaporating water from the moist soil. This water vapor rises until it hits the plastic sheeting, which is cooled by the outside air, causing the water vapor to condense and run down the inside of the sheet until it drips off the low point into the container.

Plant Water Pump and Still

A variation on the solar still, this technique uses a living plant as a pump to gather water from under the ground with its roots. You must have a plastic bag or tarp to wrap around a leafy, healthy green plant. Pick a plant that is not too big for your tarp. Dig a small hole on one side of the plant. Wrap your bag or tarp around the plant, lining the shallow hole with the bag or tarp. Tie your bag around the base of the plant and arrange the tarp so that condensing water will trickle down the inside of the tarp and collect in the hole (see Figure 5-4).

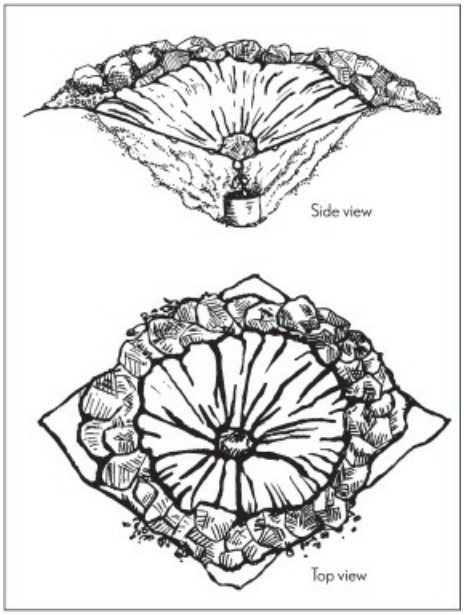


Figure 5-3. Solar still.

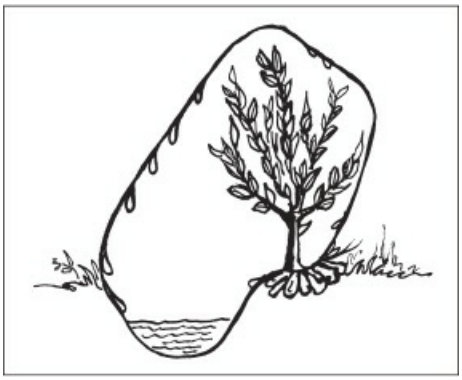


Figure 5-4. Plant water pump and still.

Water vapor evaporating off the plant's leaves will condense on the inside of your covering and provide you with a source of water.

> **CAUTION: If the plant receives too much sun for too long, it will cook and die under your plastic cover.**

Traditional Water Distillation

All kinds of water, from brackish to recycled urine, can be purified with a simple distillation process. Distillation uses a significant amount of energy, because it requires boiling water in one container, capturing the water vapor, and transporting that vapor to a cooler enclosed container where it condenses back into liquid.

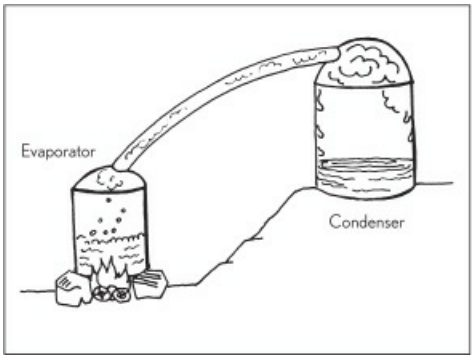


Figure 5-5. Water distillation.

"Holy Water"

For countless centuries, holy men, priests, and shamans have engaged in the practice of "blessing the water." Perhaps there is more to this than we would care to admit or believe. If I had nothing else with which to treat my water, I would take a moment to invite the Holy Spirit (or other spiritual power that you feel comfortable with) to bless and purify my water before I drank it. Leah told me the following story about drinking "blessed water."

Leah grew up in a farming community somewhere in California's Central

Valley. The water on her farm was terrible. Between the odor and the taste, it made you gag to drink it, so all the local residents relied on bottled water for drinking. Leah had been learning spiritual healing techniques in a class. As one of the recommended class exercises, she filled a large jug with tap water and placed it by the entrance to their front door. Each time she entered or left the house, Leah would place her hand over the jug of tap water and say a short prayer, asking the Holy Spirit to bless the water.

One day, Leah's brother was terribly ill. He had a very high fever that left his throat parched. At the time, Leah was out of the house, so her niece was attending to the sick brother. He cried out for a drink of water, but the niece could not find any bottled water in the house. Desperate for water, she remembered the jug sitting by the front door. She fetched a glass of water from the jug and gave it to her uncle to drink. The uncle eagerly gulped the water, thanked the niece, and promptly fell into a deep sleep. The next morning, he awoke feeling totally well and amazingly fit. He asked the niece where she had found that water, saying that it was "the sweetest tasting water that I have ever drunk." She replied that he had drunk water from the jug by the front door.

Knowing that this jug contained local tap water, Leah's brother found it hard to believe that the water he drank could have come from that jug. The niece fetched the jug. When he tasted it, he knew it was the same sweet water he had drunk the night before. They asked the local Culligan representative if the taste of their tap water would be improved while standing in a jug for a couple of weeks. The expert replied that they could put their tap water in a jug for years and it would still taste terrible without being run through a special filter to remove several minerals.

Finding Water

Plant Indicators

Look for leafy, green plants that require a lot of water to survive. Cattails, reeds, willows, elderberries, cottonwoods, poplars, and greasewood all require a plentiful supply of water and indicate a high water table. Dig a shallow well at the base of these plants or trees, and you should soon reach wet soil, which will slowly percolate into your pit.

Animal Indicators

Animals and insects are very good indicators for water. Most insects require water and live within flying range of surface water. In particular, watch the directions in which bees fly. Grazing animals, like deer and elk, will travel to water each day. Look for well-worn animal trails, which will usually lead to water. Most birds, except for birds of prey, require significant water several times a day. Look for water in areas where birds congregate, circle, or roost.

Physical Indicators

Dry riverbeds usually offer areas where water breaks the surface or at least comes close to the surface. Dig for water at outside bends in the river or follow the riverbed to areas where bedrock forces the water to the surface. Look for water at the base of cliffs, where green vegetation suggests a water source.

Cactus

Some cacti, such as the barrel cactus (but not the giant Saguaro), contain a watery pulp that can be crushed or sucked to release a jelly-like liquid.

Wells

Modern equipment can drill through hundreds of feet to reach water deep within the earth. The time-honored method of digging a 20- to 30-foot hole by hand is very hard work—a backhoe makes digging a shallow well much easier. However you dig your well, it must be lined with some durable material to prevent the walls from collapsing, and the well should be capped or covered to prevent contamination. Without a cap, everything from bird feces to dead critters will find their way into your well.

For dug wells, the traditional lining was hand-laid stone, but modern concrete well tiles are far easier to lay and do a much better job of sealing the upper reaches of the well tube from surface water contamination. A minimum of one foot of clean, washed gravel should surround and fill the bottom of the well shaft. Drilled wells are typically lined with pipe. See *Cottage Water Systems* by Max Burns or *The Home Water Supply* by Stu Campbell for excellent introductions to wells and small water systems for the do-it-yourselfer.

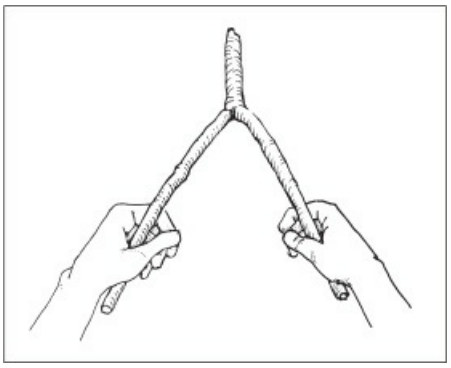


Figure 5-6. The traditional dousing rod.

Water Witching (Dousing)

If you plan to dig a well, and the location of the well is not an obvious water source, do yourself a favor and water witch for the optimal location. There is no definitive scientific explanation for water witching, but many thousands of people swear by it. I have yet to see a successful well-

drilling operation that does not use water witching, at least some of the time. Not everyone will be successful at water witching. Some of us seem to have the gift, while some of us don't. Some skeptics have been amazed when they tried it and the forked stick twisted so hard that it felt as if it might take the skin off the palms of their hands. Some true believers don't feel a thing when they try water witching.

There are many different techniques for water witching and no hard-and-fast rules. The traditional water-witching tool is a Y-shaped willow branch, with two "handles" about 16 inches long and with a straight section about 12 inches long at the bottom of the Y. Holding your hands palm up and arms bent at the elbows, grasp each side of the forked branch in one hand (see Figure 5-6). The short section should point forward and slightly upward. Walk around your land, waiting for the branch to quiver significantly or perhaps take a dive downward.

My father was an architect with a practice in Vermont. He said that whenever road crews were about to dig in the streets, they would witch for the buried water pipes using bent welding rods or coat hangers. Select two ⅛-inch-diameter rods or straightened coat hanger wires 2 to 3 feet long. To form the "handles," bend each wire at right angles, 6 inches from one end. Grasp the wire handles loosely in each fist, holding them vertical with the long ends extending horizontally and parallel in front of you (see Figure 5-7). You will probably find the rods crossing dramatically in an obvious "X" when you pass over water, but may find them spreading apart instead.

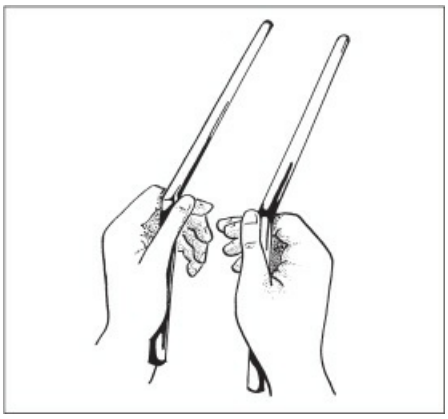


Figure 5-7. Dousing with bent metal rods.

Pumps

Getting the water out of your well can be a problem, especially if there is a power outage. In addition to the old-fashioned pail, rope, and bucket method, water can be moved by either being pushed or sucked by a pump. Electronic submersible pumps sit near the bottom of deep wells and push the water to the surface. These pumps can pump well water from depths of several hundred feet underground. Many old-fashioned hand pumps (see Figure 5-8), or other surface-mounted pumps, suck the water from a position located some distance above the water source. If these pumps could develop a perfect vacuum (which they can't), they could only suck water from a maximum depth of 34 feet. Realistically, suctiontype surface pumps can't draw water from a source more than 20 to 25 feet below the pump.

There are surface pumps, called deep-well jet pumps, that get around this 25-foot limit by

pumping water down one line to help boost a larger quantity of water up a second line. Deep-well jet pumps can lift water as high as 120 feet. There are also hand pumps with long handles and a shaft extending down the well hole to a submerged pump cylinder, which push the water up the well and can pump water from a maximum depth of around 300 feet (see Figure 5-9). For more details on pumps and water systems, see *Cottage Water Systems* by Max Burns or *The Home Water Supply* by Stu Campbell.

When sizing pumps and water system components, there is a common term called "pressure head" or just "head." This simply refers to suction or output pressure in terms of the pressure (or vacuum) required to suck or push a column of water the specified number of vertical feet. For example, a self-priming pump with a suction head rating of 20 feet and an output head rating of 150 feet could draw water from a source 20 feet below the pump and deliver water to a source 150 feet above the source. For help with figuring out pump and pipe sizing and details like "pressure head," see a reputable plumbing supply house.

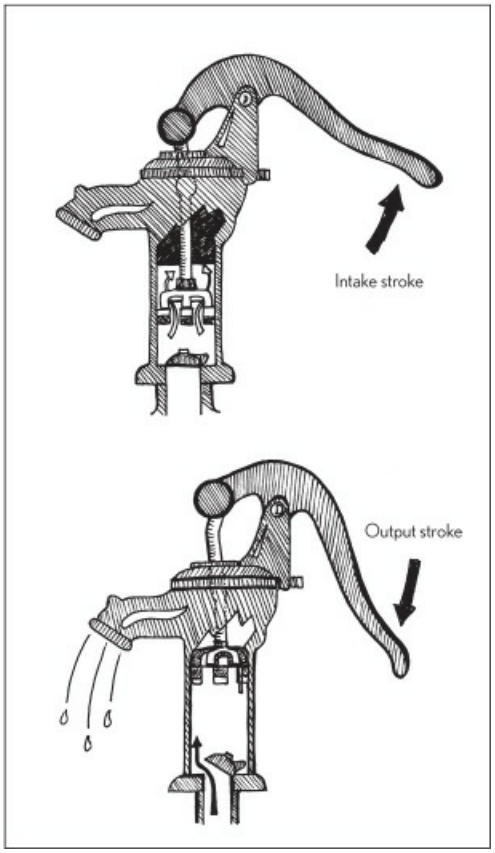


Figure 5-8. Shallow-well hand pump.

When the power goes out, or if there is no readily available power source, a hand pump or a solar-powered pump can provide uninterrupted water service from wells. Solar-powered pumps are typically designed for high efficiency and low output to slowly fill a pressure tank or cistern. The smallest solar pumps require less than 150 watts of power (equal to two 75-watt light bulbs) and can lift 1½ gallons of water per minute from depths of more than 200 feet. This doesn't sound like much, but it would amount to 900 gallons of water over a 10-hour sunny day. That's

enough water to provide for the needs of several families, thirty head of cattle, or forty fruit trees. Another solar option is to use a voltage inverter coupled with a solar-charged, 12-volt DC battery storage system to provide 120-volt AC power for a regular jet pump or submersible pump water system (see Chapter 11, “Renewable Energy Dealers”).

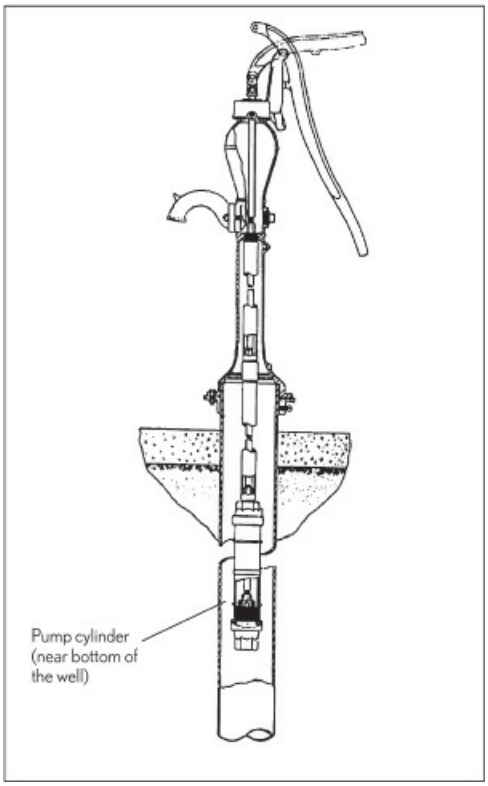


Figure 5-9. Deep-well hand pump. (Illustration courtesy of Baker Manufacturing Company, Monitor Division)

PROTECTING YOUR WATER SOURCE

Your drinking water source is your lifeblood, so be sure to protect it. Dispose of your sewage in a manner that threatens neither your water supply nor that of your neighbors. The following table provides some general setback guidelines for protecting your water source. (Remember to check with local authorities for codes and approvals.) If you are residing in one spot for a while, some kind of septic system, pit toilet, or outhouse should be constructed. There are lots of alternatives to outhouses if you have access to modern building materials. Composting toilets, electric incinerating toilets, septic tanks, and leach fields are all fine alternatives, each with their own merits and drawbacks. If you need to take care of a large volume of raw sewage, you might consider making an artificial swamp to treat your sewage. As an ecofriendly alternative to modern chemical treatment plants, some cities are resorting to artificial swamps. Apparently, as the light changes with each day and night, plant and bacterial processing of the raw sewage causes the acidity of the treatment swamp to fluctuate drastically, destroying potentially harmful bacteria in the sewage.

Suggested minimum setbacks for wells

Pit toilet from dug, bored, or driven well	100 ft
Pit toilet from well with watertight casing, at least 20 ft deep	50 ft
Septic system absorption area from dug, bored, or driven well	150 ft
Septic system absorption area from well with watertight casing, at least 20 ft deep	100 ft
Vault-type outhouse	50 ft
Gravity-draining sewer line or building foundation drain	50 ft
Barn housing animals	50 ft
Manure storage site, automobile wrecking yard, and so on	250 ft
Property line, building, or driveway	10 ft
Sewage lagoon or landfill/dump site	1000 ft
Cemetery	50 ft
Additional setbacks for drinking water springs	
Human habitation/activity downhill from spring	50 ft
Human habitation/activity laterally (sideways) from spring	100 ft
Human habitation/activity uphill from spring	200 ft

(Source: Max Burns, Cottage Water Systems, 1999)

A pit toilet can be as simple as a hole 3 feet deep with a couple of logs to sit across, or it could be a beautifully crafted wooden masterpiece, complete with a proper ventilation system, the privacy of four walls, a roof, and a door. The traditional “privy” is about 4 by 4 by 7 feet tall at the front. The seat should be 12 to 16 inches high. A 4- to 5-inch vent pipe should rise from under the seat to about 2 feet above the roof to vent odors. Periodically sprinkling lime into the pit will help reduce odor, especially in the summer months.

MODERN WATER TREATMENT

Chlorine Treatment

In the Western world, most potable water systems that purify surface water for the public first filter the water to remove silt and debris, then chlorinate it to kill potentially dangerous organisms. Chlorine in water forms a very active free radical. Free radicals are a hot topic in

nutritional literature, but most people do not understand what they are. Free radicals are electrically charged atoms or compounds that are chemically very active. They easily attach themselves to other compounds and react with them, changing the chemistry of both parts. The free chlorine in our water systems reacts with and kills bacteria floating in the water.

Chlorine is also not very good for the human body, since those same free radicals react with our cells. Our bodies have repair and defense mechanisms that help us to deal with chlorine and other free radicals, but over long periods of time exposure to free radicals contributes to aging and many degenerative diseases. Many studies have confirmed that the presence of chlorine in our drinking water has wide-ranging, long-term detrimental health effects, such as the loss of calcium in our bones and significantly increased cancer rates.

Ozone Treatment

To improve the quality of drinking water, some municipal water systems have incorporated ozone generators into their systems. Ozone is an extremely unstable, highly reactive molecule of oxygen. It contains three bonded atoms of oxygen instead of the usual two oxygen atoms that form the more stable regular oxygen molecules in the air. The third oxygen atom of the ozone molecule easily splits off to react with surrounding atoms and molecules, and oxidize them. These extra oxygen atoms rapidly react with and destroy unwanted bacteria and other organisms floating in the water. Ozone has the added benefit of reacting with heavy metals and other undesirable contaminants, turning them into precipitates or silts, which can be easily filtered out of the water supply. The process of reaction continues until all the ozone molecules have reacted with other substances, leaving only stable regular oxygen and pure, sweet-tasting water with no free radicals to cause long-term detrimental health effects.

Most municipal ozone systems also insert a little chlorine into the water to prevent the possibility that stray bacteria start to grow somewhere within the water system. Since ozone treatment leaves the water very pure, not much residual chlorine is required to maintain longlasting protection against bacterial growth. In traditional chlorinated water systems, the more organic material (food for bacteria) present in the water, the more chlorine is required to safeguard against the survival and growth of potentially dangerous bacteria.

Activated Carbon Filtration

Bad tastes, odors, chlorine, and harmful organic pollutants such as THMs (trihalomethanes) can be removed with activated carbon filters, reverse osmosis filters, ozonation, or distillation of water. Trihalomethanes are common carcinogenic compounds that are created when chlorine reacts with organic material, such as dead leaves. Activated carbon works by a process called *adsorption*. Adsorption filter materials have huge amounts of convoluted surface area that attract and trap undesirable pollutants. Activated carbon is formed from carbonaceous materials, such as charred coconut shells, coal, or wood. The carbon base material is typically ground up into fine

powder and then either contained loose in a filter bed or combined with a binder and pressed into a porous filter block. Under a microscope, activated carbon looks incredibly convoluted, with millions of tiny nooks and crannies to trap debris and organic compounds. Activated carbon can help remove a wide variety of toxic organic compounds and radioactive contaminants. A single pound of activated carbon can contain 150 acres of adsorption surface area.

By itself, activated carbon is not very effective at removing most forms of heavy metal contamination from drinking water. It usually works well at first, but then dumps high concentrations back into the water. For this reason, many carbon filters have special compounds mixed into the medium to bind specifically to heavy metals. If your local water has a problem with heavy metals such as lead, arsenic, or mercury, make sure your home water filter is designed to remove heavy metals. Except for areas prone to runoff from old mines, backcountry water sources do not usually suffer from heavy metal contamination, but in many parts of the world, the local rocks leach toxic levels of arsenic and/or fluoride into the aquifers tapped by deep tube wells.

Adsorption filters have a finite useful life and should be replaced when they have been depleted. Testing for free chlorine in chlorinated water that has passed through a carbon filter is one way of determining whether the filter is still effective.

A simple carbon filter will remove chlorine and organic compounds to make your water taste better, but will not guarantee the removal of bacteria and other potentially harmful organisms. Some home water purifiers use carbon filters to remove chlorine, sediment, and various toxic compounds, then pass the water under a high-intensity UV lamp to kill any microorganisms. These systems work well as long as the carbon cartridges are routinely changed, the UV lamp is functioning properly, and the lamp's rays are not blocked by dirt or silt.

Carbon filters are usually either made from loose granular activated carbon (GAC) or from solid blocks of carbon that are composed of pressed, extruded, or molded carbon powder mixed with a binding agent. Most carbon block filters are effective at removing larger microorganisms such as *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium*. Additionally, carbon block filters are usually more effective than GAC filters at removing other contaminants, since GAC filters are prone to "channeling," where water streams through channels formed in the loose media resulting in less contact with the carbon. The drawbacks to carbon blocks are their lower flow rates and higher costs compared with similar-sized GAC filters.

Reverse Osmosis

Reverse osmosis systems typically incorporate sediment and carbon-type prefilters to remove most of the contaminants before passing the water through a microporous membrane, which removes almost all the heavy metals, dissolved salts, and other contaminants not picked up by the carbon filters. The disadvantages of reverse osmosis systems are low output (the output of average-sized units is in the range of 1 to 4 gallons per day) and the fact that the reverse osmosis membrane is kept clean by flushing several gallons of water down the drain for every gallon of processed pure water. Most reverse osmosis systems include an air-charged pressure tank reservoir to store one to two gallons of pure water for ready use. I personally use a multistage

reverse osmosis system that includes two carbon block prefilters and a carbon postfilter in my kitchen to supply our family with high-quality drinking water, since it is quite effective at removing both chlorine and arsenic from the water supplied by the well-drawn local public water supply. Over the course of a year, I spend about as much to process my own drinking water in this way as I would spend for a 2-week supply of bottled water, and it provides us with water that is of better quality than bottled water that has been sitting in plastic bottles for months.

Reverse Osmosis for Desalinating Seawater

There are several very expensive hand-pump and/or 12-volt-driven reverse osmosis systems for extracting fresh water from salt water. These systems are popular items for life rafts and yachts. Katadyne has a manual unit selling for about $750. The company also sells a 12-volt unit for $2,995 that converts to manual operation in emergency situations. A solar still can be used instead, if you are in a location where you can dig a hole in the ground. Such stills are nowhere near as handy, but a lot cheaper.

Distillation

Distillation systems boil water and then condense it, in the process purifying the water and removing contaminants. Distillation will kill all kinds of microorganisms, but simple distillers will not remove volatile organic compounds, since they evaporate and condense along with the water vapor. To remove volatile organic compounds, more advanced distillers include either fractional distillation or an activated carbon cartridge to remove these pollutants. When considering the purchase of a drinking water distiller, make sure that the distiller includes at least one of these features to remove volatile organic compounds. Drawbacks to distillation systems include their high consumption of electric power to evaporate the water, the flat taste of distilled water, and low volume throughput in the same range as reverse osmosis systems.

REFERENCES

***e Drinking Water Book: How to Eliminate the Most Harmful Toxins from Your Water,* by Colin Ingram.** 2006, 185 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1587612572. Published by Celestial Arts, an imprint of Ten Speed Press, P.O. Box 7123, Berkeley, CA 94707. List price $14.95

After living in a remote Appalachian community that was besieged with an epidemic of cancer, the author went on a 5-year personal crusade to evaluate and test public drinking water and commercial bottled water, and to test point-of-use treatment options to determine what really worked best in different situations. Currently, this is the best book on the subject of water quality and offers specific recommendations both for types of water treatment processes, and specific brands for treating a variety of home water quality issues.

***ttage Water Systems: An Out-of-the City Guide to Pumps, Plumbing, Water Purification, and Privies,* by Max Burns.** 1999, 150 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0969692201. Published by Cottage Life Books, 54 St. Patrick Street, Toronto, Ontario M5T 1V1, Canada. List price $24.95

Cottage Water Systems is a country-living guide to pumps, plumbing, water purification, and privies (outhouses). It is an excellent source of information for building or maintaining your own water and sewage systems. This book would not be very useful in an emergency situation, but it's a great reference for building or maintaining a country home. It appears to be out of print at this time, so you may need to check your library or used book store.

***ıe Home Water Supply: How to Find, Filter, Store and Conserve It,* by Stu Campbell.** 1983, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0882663241. Published by Storey Books, Schoolhouse Road, Pownal, VT 05261. List price $18.95

This book covers much of the same material as *Cottage Water Systems*. It is informative, well written, and has a much better section on water witching than *Cottage Water Systems.* Besides, the author was one of my ski coaches when I was a kid. Even though it was written some time ago, the information is still quite useful.

***ıater Storage: Tanks, Cisterns, Aquifers, and Ponds for Domestic Supply, Fire, and Emergency Use—Includes How to Make Ferrocement Water Tanks,* by Art Ludwig.** 2005, 125 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0964343368. Published by Oasis Design, 5 San Marcos Trout Club, Santa Barbara, CA 93105. List price $19.95

A fine, up-to-date book for building your own country water supply tank or pond. Lots of creative ideas, practical how-to information, and basic engineering details.

***hen the Rivers Run Dry: Water—The Defining Crisis of the Twenty-First Century,* by Fred Pearce.** 2007, 324 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0807085738. Published by Beacon Press, 25 Beacon St., Boston, MA 02108. List price $16.00

A very illuminating book on the water crisis that is currently engulfing our planet. The crisis in freshwater is critically linked to global climate change, industrialization, and the need to feed our growing population. We are on a collision course between shrinking resources and increasing demands, and water is one of the key limiting factors that have already reached crisis proportions. *Highly recommended.*

***oubled Water: Saints, Sinners, Truths, and Lies about the Global Water Crisis,* by Anita Roddick.** 2004, 138 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0954395933. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing Company, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $17.95

Along the lines of Al Gore's *Inconvenient Truth*, this book presents the current global water crisis in bold, graphical terms. Not as meaty as *When the Rivers Run Dry,* it is an entertaining and illuminating quick read that brought my attention to, among other things, the negative effects of privatization on the public water supplies that so many of the people in the world rely on for their survival.

***ıe Blue Death: Disease, Disaster, and the Water We Drink,* by Dr. Robert D. Morris.** 2007, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0060730895. Published by Harper Collins Publishers, 10 East 53rd St., New York, NY 10022. List price $24.95

A fascinating look into modern water treatment strategies and waterborne diseases in recent history, from the London cholera epidemics in the 1800s, to Milwaukee's *Cryptosporidium* epidemic of April 1993, to cholera's "perfect storm" epidemic in a refugee camp in Goma, Zaire, where more than 60,000 people died in less than one month. Sobering, this book alerts us to just how difficult it can be to find the cause of an epidemic of waterborne disease when that cause is

not something that the local water treatment officials are looking for. This book is an absorbing read and offers valuable information, but is not a "how-to" kind of book.

For more information on water systems and how they integrate into green building schemes, see the reference section at the end of Chapter 7.

RESOURCES

Hand Pumps

ıker Mfg. Company, 133 Enterprise St., Evansville, WI 535536; phone: (800) 356-5130; Web site: www.bakermonitor.com.

These people make the classic long-handled cast-iron well pumps that I grew up drinking from at roadside parks in the White Mountains of New Hampshire and on farms. They make an entire product line of related pump and water system products.

ntoul's Hand Pumps, RR#2, Tobermory, Ontario N0H 2R0, Canada; phone: (519) 596-2612; Web site: www.handpumps.com.

A great source for hand-operated pumps, including old-fashioned, deep-well pumps.

ıe Simple Pump Company, 1140 Amarillo Drive, Gardnerville, NV 89460; toll-free phone: (877) 492-8711; Web site: www.simplepump.com.

Simple Pump has a great product line for putting a backup hand pump down your well casing right next to your existing electrical submersible well pump. If your power goes out, you can still charge your house's pressure tank with the hand pump. Simple Pump also has a 12-volt gear motor attachment for battery or solar operation that is easily converted in about five minutes between DC and manual operation in case of electrical supply failure. This pump is extremely reliable and works well down to depths of about 200 feet. For deeper wells, you should stick with a submersible pump.

ehman's, P.O. Box 41, Kidron, OH 44636; phone: (877) 438-5346; Web site: www.lehmans.com.

A major supplier of goods for simple living. This is a terrific source for thousands of useful hand tools, well pumps, books, stoves, old-fashioned kitchen aids, and so on for off-grid and self reliant living.

ımberland General Store, P.O. Box 4468, Alpharetta, GA 30023. Web site: www.cumberlandgeneral.com.

Many old-time useful items, including a fine selection of hand pumps and well accessories, farming tools, beekeeping supplies, kitchen utensils, and so on. For a catalog, phone (800) 334-4640, or send $5.

Solar Water Pumps

Most solar suppliers sell solar water pumps. Check out your local phone directory or see the resources section of Chapter 11 on energy for a list of major solar suppliers.

Hydraulic Rams

Hydraulic rams use flowing water from a stream to drive a pump. If you have a source of hillside water, using a hydraulic ram is a great way to pump. Hydraulic rams are sold by many RE/solar dealers.

Lehman's and the **Cumberland General Store** carry hydraulic rams, or you can buy direct from the **RAM Company**, 512 Dillard Hill Road, Lowesville, VA 22967; phone: (800) 227-8511. The RAM Company also makes solar pumps.

Water Testing

Municipal water systems are required to test their water regularly and should be able to provide you with a copy of the test results. If you have a well, or don't trust your local water supply, you should have your water tested occasionally. You don't want to end up like the millions of poor villagers in Bangladesh who trusted the good-tasting water from their tube wells, only to find that they had been slowly poisoned by extremely high levels of arsenic and fluoride contamination. Test results include the EPA's (Environmental Protection Agency) recommended MCL (minimum contamination level) for handy reference. The following companies provide reputable testing services.

ıtional Testing Laboratories, Ltd., 6571 Wilson Mills Rd., Cleveland, OH 44143; phone: (800) 458-3330; Web site: www.ntllabs.com.

The nation's largest independent drinking water laboratory provides extensive tests at a reasonable price. Call or check their Web site for test kits, prices, and instructions.

ıburban Water Testing Labs, Inc., 4600 Kutztown Road, Temple, PA 19560; phone: (800) 433-6595; Web site: www.h2otest.com.

Another excellent independent drinking water laboratory. Call or check their Web site for test kits, prices, and instructions.

6

Food: Growing, Foraging, Hunting, and Storing

> Today the annual addition of more than 70 million people to a world population of over 6 billion at a time when water tables are falling, temperatures are rising, and oil supplies will soon be shrinking suggests that the food supply again may be the vulnerable link between the environment and the economy. The first big test of the international community's capacity to manage scarcity may come with oil or it could come with grain. If the latter is the case, this could occur when China—whose grain harvest fell by 34 million tons, or 9 percent, between 1998 and 2005—turns to the world market for massive imports of 30 million, 50 million or 100 million tons per year. . . . The most imminent risk is that China's entry into the world market, combined with the growing diversion of farm commodities to biofuels, will drive grain prices so high that many low-income developing countries will not be able to import enough grain. This in turn could lead to escalating food prices and political instability on a scale that will disrupt global economic progress.
>
> **—Lester R. Brown, *Plan B 2.0: Rescuing a Planet Under Stress and a Civilization in Trouble***

WORLD POPULATION AND FOOD SUPPLY

Over the next 30 years, as weather patterns continue to destabilize due to global climate change, population growth adds another 2 billion people to the planet (unless plagues, famine, or war diminish this growth), and the gap between world oil production and demand continues to increase due to declining oil fields, your ability to grow, forage, and hunt for your own food supply will become increasingly important. If long-term disruptions in central services should ever occur, a stored supply of food and the ability to generate more food will be of utmost importance. This chapter will introduce you to a number of practical techniques for food production and preservation, but for detailed and thorough information, do yourself a favor and pick up several of the recommended references.

Two hundred years ago, the British clergyman Thomas Robert Malthus penned his famous essay on population growth and future food shortages. He based his dire predictions on the observation that food production was rising linearly, but population was growing exponentially. One hundred years later, Sir William Crookes warned the British Association for the Advancement of Science that unless science came up with new methods to radically boost grain production, the world would face widespread starvation by the 1930s.

Fortunately, as the global population soared, so has the agricultural output from the world's farms. Over the past century, worldwide grain production has increased by a factor of five. The

last 50 years have seen the production of major crops more than double, and grain output has tripled. These gains are truly astounding, initially significantly surpassing population growth, but for the last decade they have been losing ground. The population of our planet took many thousands of years to reach its first billion sometime around 1800, but it took only another 130 years to add the second billion. Since I was a small child in 1960, the global population of 3 billion took only 47 years to more than double to 6.6 billion by the end of 2007 (U.S. Census Bureau 2007).

Even though the rate of population growth has shrunk from a high of 2.1 percent in 1964 to 1.2 percent in 2006, the world population continues to grow by about 70 million people annually, which is roughly equal to adding one-quarter of the population of the United States every year. At the 2006 rate of growth, global population will double in 58 years, but few scientists believe that our planet will be able to sustain such growth. Most of the world's food supply comes from agriculture, fisheries, and grazing animals. Until recently, food production gains were spread across all three of these categories, but since most of the world's fisheries are now in collapse or nearing collapse and pasturelands have reached or exceeded their sustainable loads, it looks like this growth in population must be fed via gains in fish aquaculture and farming output and by increasing the net available grain through reducing the amount of grain used to grow livestock.

Global fish exports grew fivefold from 1970 until peaking in 1997, but now show disturbing symptoms of impending decline. Starting with the well-publicized collapse of the huge North Atlantic fisheries, the breakdown of large fisheries has now occurred in all of the world's oceans. The United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) estimates that 11 out of 15 of the world's most important fisheries are now in serious decline or collapse, including 25 percent that have already collapsed, and one 2005 study found that essentially all large predatory open-ocean fish (such as tuna, swordfish, and marlin) had declined by an estimated 90 percent since 1952 (Allsopp et al. 2007, 10–14). The huge growth in "factory harvesting" of seafood over the past few decades has resulted in declining fishery populations throughout the world. If the world's fishing fleets continue to harvest the oceans in these ways, without implementing enforced sustainable global fishing management regulations, extrapolation of current trends indicates a global collapse of all commercial ocean fish species by the year 2048 (*New York Times* 2006). The increasing use of aquaculture fish farms is only a partial solution, because fish farms require grain or high-protein feedstock to nurture farmed fish. For example, from 1985 to 1995 shrimp farmers used 36 million tons of wild fish to produce 7.2 million tons of shrimp—not a very efficient use of resources in a world that is having problems feeding its current population. On the positive side of aquaculture, certain herbivorous species—such as carp, catfish, and tilapia—are so efficient at converting grain to protein that eating them is more land- and water-efficient than growing soybeans and eating tofu (Brown 2006, 179).

Poorly managed livestock grazing has caused degradation and decreased output in roughly 20 percent of the world's pasture and rangelands. In all likelihood, due to limits on available land, the number and productivity of the world's livestock herds will not increase significantly in the forseeable future.

Agricultural Productivity

Several factors have contributed to the unprecedented rise in the world's agricultural output over the past century. The twentieth century has seen the introduction of chemical fertilizers and pesticides, the replacement of beasts of burden by modern farm machinery, the introduction of genetically manipulated strains of high-productivity crops, and the explosion in the use of irrigation both to boost crop returns and to expand cropland to areas that do not normally receive enough rainfall. Numerous signs indicate that the period of rapid growth in world food production has come to an end.

Grain consumption directly accounts for about half the calories consumed in the world and, through livestock feed, indirectly accounts for much of the supply of meat, milk, eggs, and poultry. Between 1950 and 1984, world grain output grew at a rate of 3 percent per year (Brown et al. 1991, 84), which was significantly faster than the population growth rate. This resulted in a 2.6-fold increase in grain output. However, since 1984, increases in grain productivity slowed to around 1 percent per year before reaching a peak in 1997. In 1998, world grain production dropped by about 0.5 percent, followed by a drop of more than 1 percent in 1999, and world grain production fell by 2.7 percent in 2006.

With the recent huge price increases in oil, it has often become more economical to use corn to produce ethanol rather than to feed people or livestock. In just 6 years, the amount of U.S. corn used for ethanol grew from only 6 percent in 2000 to 20 percent in 2006, and there are enough new ethanol plants under construction in 2007 to double the U.S. capacity. It takes as much grain to produce enough ethanol to fill a single 25-gallon tank as it does to feed one person for a whole year. If these trends continue, the ranks of the hungry and underfed may swell by billions of people throughout the next century (Brown 2007, 3). During 2007 and 2008, food riots and related unrest erupted in several parts of the world, including Egypt, Haiti, Burma, Indonesia, Bolivia, the Philippines, and Uzbekistan. The Washington-based International Food Policy Research Institute reported that the price of staple food has risen by 80 percent from 2005 to the spring of 2008, including a surge of 40 percent in 2007 (Sands 2008).

> Of the one-ninth of the earth's land that was considered arable in 1900, little remains really healthy; most is stressed and losses are generally accelerating. —
> **Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, and L. Hunter Lovins, *Natural Capitalism***

In the earlier part of the twentieth century, acreage devoted to cropland grew dramatically, contributing a healthy share to increasing world food production. For example, cropland devoted to grain grew by 25 percent from 587 million hectares in 1950 to the all-time high of 732 million hectares in 1981. However, from 1981 to 1999, grain cropland shrank by 6 percent to 690 million hectares (Brown et al. 1999, 120). The combination of population growth, desertification, soil depletion, insect resistance to pesticides, overpumping of groundwater, and the drying up of major rivers appears to have caught up with worldwide efforts to pace food production gains with population growth through improved productivity and by farming ever-increasing amounts of land.

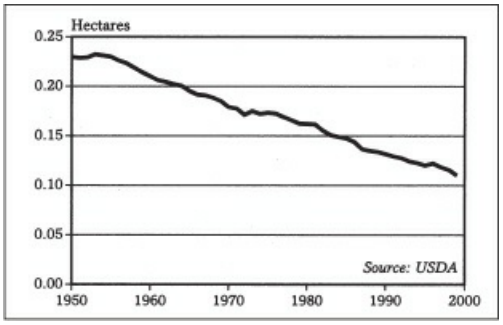


Figure 6-1. World grain harvested area per person, 1950–99 (Brown et al., 2000b, 45).

Irrigation Gains and Losses

> Today, poor developing countries like India, China, and Pakistan have three quarters of all the world's irrigated farmland. And many of them have defied the doomsayers by moving from famine to self-sufficiency in their staple grains. The problem now is escalating shortages of water. Today some 70 percent of all the water extracted from rivers and underground reserves is being spread onto the 670 million acres of irrigated land that grows a third of the world's food. This massive global undertaking has kept the world's granaries full, but it has emptied the rivers. . . . The United Nations' Food and Agriculture Organization says that on at least a third of the world's fields today, "water rather than land is the binding constraint" on production. . . . Salt from the irrigation water is invading the fields and rendering large areas sterile and useless. Each year 25 million acres of fields around the world are lost to its toxic embrace. Projects that initially greened the desert are now creating desert. . . . without a second agricultural revolution that targets water, a "blue revolution," then the gains of the past generation could be wiped out as rivers run dry, underground water reserves are exhausted, and fields are caked in salt. **—Fred Pearce, *When Rivers Run Dry: Water—The Defining Crisis of the Twenty-First Century***

Irrigated land comprises only about 16 percent of the world's cropland but contributes about 40 percent of the world's food production (Postel 1999, 5). In 1900, the world's irrigated land was estimated at 48 million hectares. By 1960, this amount nearly doubled to 94 million hectares. From 1950 to 1999, the amount of irrigated land first radically increased, then climbed more slowly to 260 million hectares in 1999 (Brown et al. 1999, 123). In the 1980s, as major rivers began to run dry for parts of the year and most of the best sites for dams and reservoirs were already developed, the per capita net world irrigated area began to shrink for the first time in the modern era (see Figure 6-2).

In the modern world, downstream farmers are getting an increasingly short end of the stick. China's great Yellow River first ran dry for 15 days in 1972. In 1997, due to droughts and heavy irrigation usage, the Yellow River failed to reach the ocean for a record 226 days out of the year. For much of each year, the Colorado River shrinks to a trickle of polluted, unusable water before

it empties into the Gulf of Mexico, depriving Mexican farmers and indigenous peoples of their traditional source of water for drinking and irrigation, and destroying a once-healthy fishery at the mouth of the river. Other large rivers—such as the Nile, the Rio Grande, the Ganges, the Indus, the Amu Darya, the Syr Darya, and Africa's Chao Phraya—face similar problems. In addition, overpumping of groundwater for irrigation and other human needs is resulting in declining water levels, failed wells, and increasing salinity of major aquifers in California's Central Valley, China's grainbelt middle plains, India's principal breadbasket provinces, North Africa, the Arabian Peninsula, and the giant Ogallala aquifer in the south-central United States (Postel 1999, 65–86).

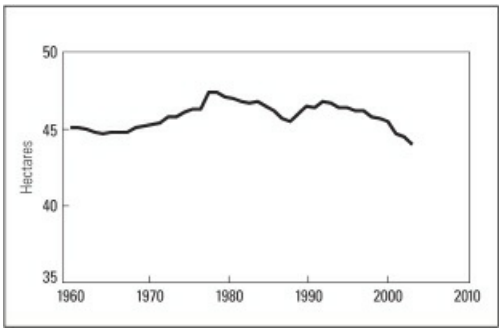


Figure 6-2. World irrigated area per thousand people, 1961– 2003. (Source: *Vital Signs 2007–2008*, Worldwatch Institute)

Genetically Engineered Foods

> It is industry influence, not sound science, which has allowed these foods (genetically modified) onto the market. Moreover, if overwhelming scientific research suggests anything, it is that the foods should never have been approved. . . . The regulations in the US are so lax, there are no required pre-market safety tests. There is no way to determine if these GM (genetically modified) foods are creating serious health problems. People get sick all the time without tracking their illness to food, or pesticides, or air or water pollution. The causes remain well hidden. . . . According to a March 2001 article in the *New York Times*, "The CDC (Center for Disease Control) now says that food is responsible for twice the number of illnesses in the United States as scientists thought just seven years ago.". . . This increase roughly corresponds to the period when Americans have been eating GM food. In addition, obesity has skyrocketed. In 1990, no state had 15 percent or more of its population in the obese category. By 2001, only one state didn't. Diabetes rose by 33 percent from 1990 to 1998, lymphatic cancers are up, and many other illnesses are on the rise. Is there a connection to GM food? We have no way of knowing because no one has looked for one. **—Jeffrey M. Smith, *Seeds of Deception: Exposing Industry and Government Lies about the Safety of the Genetically Engineered Foods You're Eating***

All over the Western world, scientists have been muzzled, bribed, forced to resign their

positions, had their research files stolen, and come under unprecedented pressures to keep quiet about the disturbing results of their scientific tests concerning the suitability of numerous genetically modified (GM) foods for human and animal consumption. There are a tremendous number of testimonies by reputable scientists and overwhelming evidence that numerous biotech companies—Monsanto being the biggest and most powerful leader in this pack—have basically bought their way through the government approval processes with the assistance of backroom politics, bribes, threats, and shoddy scientific studies performed with grants funded by the GM companies themselves, and specifically designed to miss many of the potential health problems that these kinds of studies are supposed to be looking for.

In the United States, there has been a hugely successful media campaign, run on behalf of the GM food companies, to persuade the American people and politicians that genetically modified foods are the same as regular foods, and therefore there is no reason to label our foods to allow consumers to make this choice for themselves. The campaign that invisibly slipped these foods into U.S. diets without our consent was narrowly defeated in Europe with the help of several high-ranking biotech research scientists who risked financial and professional ruin to bring the damning results of their research to the attention of authorities, many of whom had already clandestinely approved the introduction of GM foods into the marketplace without labels or rigorous scientific validation of their safety.

What are GM foods, and why should we be concerned? Genetic engineering is the process of artificially splitting apart strands of DNA, which carry all the genetic codes of organisms in separate packets, called genes, to take some genes from one organism with characteristics that we want and insert them into another organism's DNA to bring the "useful" characteristic from one species into the other. For example, genes from a North Atlantic flounder, which has a protein in its body that makes it resistant to freezing, were spliced into a tomato to make the tomato resistant to frost damage. Advocates of GM foods will say that animal breeders and farmers have been "genetically engineering" their crops and livestock for years through breeding selected animals and strains to optimize desired characteristics. For example, a hardy wild rice might be crossed with a high-producing variety of commercial rice to obtain a new high-producing commercial variety that has the hardy disease and drought resistance of the wild variety. This may sound the same as GM, but it is not. Nature has built-in safeguards to prevent tomatoes from crossing with avocados, monkeys with dogs, and certainly flounder with tomatoes. The modern genetic scientist has broken through this barrier. The new GM foods might look and taste like the foods we are used to eating, but without exhaustive controlled scientific tests, we can't know for sure whether that is really the case, and several of the most thorough tests so far indicate that they are not the same when it comes to both their nutritional value and, in some cases, have serious negative health effects when consumed by animals and humans.

The theory of GM foods sounds great. It promises to allow us to create super-producing crops that are disease resistant, requiring fewer pesticides and less fertilizer. Promoters of GM foods tout them as the answer to our world's hunger problem, saying that they are the key to feeding a world of 9 billion people. What the controlled scientific animal studies indicate, and what both farm and wild animals intuitively know, is quite contrary to the U.S. government's enthusiastic assurances that these foods are as good, or better, for you than our traditional foods. Farmers report that wild geese will circumvent fields planted with GM soy to feed on fields planted with

traditional soy. Other farmers report that their cattle will not eat from troughs containing GM corn if given the alternative to feed from troughs with traditional corn, and cows grazing on cornstalk stubble in the fields will purposefully avoid fields planted with GM corn in favor of those planted with traditional corn.

In one study conducted on FlavrSavr tomatoes, GM engineered for prolonged shelf life and the first GM crop approved in the United States, "Documents revealed that many of the rats that ate the GM tomatoes developed lesions in their stomachs. For unknown reasons, researchers did not examine tissues elsewhere in the digestive tract. They also did not provide an explanation as to why 7 of the 40 rats that were fed the GM tomatoes died unexpectedly within two weeks." (Smith 2003, 37). I don't know why anyone should be concerned—after all, it was only a 17 percent fatality rate! It is clear that the governing bodies of the European Union, the wild geese, and the farmer's cows all know something that the average American doesn't know, and that for unscrupulous reasons, large corporations have made it a point of keeping this information out of the major media and the public's eye in the United States. For your own safety and health, I strongly suggest you pick up a copy of Jeffrey Smith's *Seeds of Deception* (see the references at the end of this chapter). That book is well documented and quite shocking in both its discussion of the negative test data concerning the harmful effects of GM foods, as well as several almost unbelievable stories of government collusion, bribery, unethical coercion, theft, and burglary on the part of GM corporations in their mostly successful attempts to sweep their products into our food system through the back door. Reading the cases described in this book, it is hard to comprehend that these events are happening in the United States and the United Kingdom, and not just in some third-world dictatorship or communist country.

Soil Health and Soil Losses

In addition to increasing the use of irrigation and the physical space allotted to agricultural lands, the introduction of modern chemical-based factory farming has been a major contributor to the tremendous increase in agricultural output over the last 100 years. The success of the twentieth century's "green revolution" in feeding our planet as its population tripled was due, in a large part, to the discovery of the Haber-Bosch process to synthesize ammonia for synthetic fertilizers using atmospheric nitrogen combined with the hydrogen from fossil fuels. In the West, natural gas is the primary feedstock for producing chemical fertilizers, accounting for 70 to 80 percent of their cost (Pfeiffer 2003). Since the production of natural gas in the United States peaked in the 1970s and its subsequent decline has resulted in huge price increases in the United States, the cost of fertilizer has skyrocketed and caused many U.S. fertilizer plants to shut down due to competition from foreign fertilizer plants located in areas with lower natural gas costs. Farmers all over the world are usually not seeing the benefit of higher grain prices as their costs have also risen due to rapidly escalating fertilizer and fuel prices.

Although initially dramatic results were obtained using chemical fertilizers and pesticides, today's farms are experiencing diminishing returns in both of these areas. As the long-term depletion of soils continues due to modern chemical-intensive farming methods, many farmers are finding that they must consume ever-increasing quantities of fertilizers just to maintain

current yields. The use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides contributes to killing the natural microbial actions that promote healthy soils and plants. As insects grow increasingly resistant to chemical insecticides, monocropping farming methods provide a haven for exploding insect populations. In 1948, when the use of chemical pesticides was in its infancy, people in the United States consumed 50 million pounds of insecticides a year while losing 7 percent of its crops to pests. In 1999, U.S. crop losses to insects were 13 percent, which is 20 percent higher than pre-pesticide days, yet pesticide use has increased 20 times, to almost a billion pounds a year (Hawken 1999, 196).

> A third of the original topsoil in the United States is now gone.
>
> It is estimated that the world has from 50 to 100 years of farmable soil, using current farming practices.
>
> It takes an average of 500 years for nature to build one inch of topsoil.
>
> United States farms have cut soil losses to about 18 times the rate of nature's replacement.
>
> Developing nations continue to deplete soil at an average of 36 times replacement, but China currently depletes soil at a rate of 54 times replacement.
>
> If used properly, biointensive farming practices, based on ancient sustainable methods, can build soils at a rate 60 times as fast as nature.
> **—Ecology Action, January 2000**

It has taken hundreds of millions of years for our planet to develop the thin mantle of topsoil that nurtures plant life on the surface of the Earth and grows most of the food that we eat. Modern farming practices, yielding high gains in the short-term, are flushing away this precious heritage at an alarming rate.

Healthy soil contains adequate nutrients to sustain plant growth, good structure to hold water and promote root propagation, and a myriad of living organisms. Earthworms, microbes, and fungi are essential for recycling organic material, storing nutrients for slow release to plants, fixing nitrogen from the air, and breaking down soil minerals into forms that plants can utilize. Good soil contains 3 to 8 percent humus, which is decomposed and recombined organic material. Research has shown that simply by increasing poor soil's humus content (typically at about 0.5 percent) in the upper foot of soil to 2 percent, rainfall or irrigation requirements can be reduced by as much as 75 percent. Within one single teaspoon of cured humus live as many as 6 billion microorganisms. That's roughly equal to the entire human population of the planet (Jeavons 1995, 34). These bacteria and fungi release organic acids and other organic compounds into the soil that are an essential part of the food chain for plants. The acids dissolve soil minerals and turn them into a form that is easily used by the plants. Even with lots of chemical fertilizer, plants may still not grow well if there is no organic matter in the soil to sustain healthy microbial action.

In the long run, soil health can only be maintained by recycling organic material back into the soil. Observations of long-term experiments with wheat/fallow systems in the semiarid Northwest found that the soil's levels of organic carbon and nitrogen have been steadily

declining since the study was started in the 1930s, except for where manure has been applied. In Asia, where population density is quite high compared with several other world regions, people already recycle most of their own waste to help support agriculture.

About half of good soil's weight is solid matter. Of this, a tenth is organic material, which holds about as much water and more nutrients than the other 90 percent. In addition, the organic matter and the worms and other organisms it supports help to maintain a good soil structure, with millions of tiny nooks and crannies for roots to grow into. Roots do not grow through solid rock, but require spaces and gaps for propagation. Healthy soil is not compact, but loose and filled with tiny spaces. Soil that is too coarse, like sand, does not hold many nutrients or water in its matrix. Soil that is too fine, such as clay, compacts easily, stays wet too long, and is hard to till. Whether the soil is too coarse or too fine, adding decomposed organic matter (humus) will improve its texture, water-retaining capacity, and fertility.

Sustainable Agriculture

> A sustainable agriculture is one that, over the long term, enhances the environmental quality and the resource base on which agriculture depends; provides for basic human food and fiber needs; is economically viable; and enhances the quality of life for farmers and society as a whole. **—American Society of Agronomy**

Prior to the recent upheavals caused by humanity's meddling with the Earth's magnificent natural systems, our planet was the perfect example of a self-sustaining system. Everything was recycled in an endless circle of birth, consumption, death, and rebirth in the form of a new organism—a fungus, bacteria, plant, or animal form. Modern factory-farming methods have been adopted to maximize yields with a minimum of labor, with little regard for the natural systems that have survived on this planet for eons. On the other hand, sustainable agricultural methods are based on careful observation of natural systems, mimicking their features in a controlled and nurtured way to produce an abundance of crops without depleting the natural resources (soil, water, purity of the air, etc.) that are so necessary for the survival of humans and millions of other creatures.

Before the advent of chemical fertilizers, this country's traditional farming practice was to cut down a chunk of forest (or plow a parcel of prairie), farm the soil for a few years until the soil was depleted, then move on to the next chunk of land, and repeat the same pattern. With growing populations and shrinking sources of arable land, this kind of farming cycle cannot be sustained. When it was discovered that certain essential nutrients could be added back into the soil in the form of chemical fertilizers, yields were maintained over longer periods of time. Unfortunately, these artificial nutrients do not protect or regenerate the topsoil or provide many of the trace nutrients essential to sustain long-term plant and animal health.

"Natural" Recycling

The New Guinea highlands were one of only nine independent centers of plant

> domestication in the world, and that agriculture has been going on there for about 7,000 years—one of the world's longest-running experiments in sustainable food production. . . . To maintain soil fertility, especially in areas of high population density where short fallow periods or even continuous growing of crops were essential to produce enough food, they resorted to a whole suite of techniques besides the silviculture that I'll explain in a moment. They added weeds, grass, old vines, and other organic matter to the soil as compost at up to 16 tons per acre. They applied garbage, ash from fires, vegetation cut from fields resting in fallow, rotten logs, and chicken manure as mulches and fertilizers to the soil surface. Legume food crops that fix atmospheric nitrogen, such as beans, were rotated with other crops—in effect, an independent New Guinean invention of a crop rotation principle now widespread in the First World agriculture for maintaining soil nitrogen levels. **—Jared Diamond, *Collapse:How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed***

Forests draw carbon and nitrogen from the air and soil; water, minerals, and trace elements from the soil; and then harness the power of the sun through photosynthesis to grow branches and leaves. These branches and leaves eventually fall to the earth, where they are broken down into organic material and recycled back into the soil by the action of worms, insects, and a multitude of microorganisms. The roots of a single plant, often hundreds of twisted miles long, and weighing as much or more than the portion above ground, become another source of organic matter and humus when they die and decompose.

Certain crops, such as corn, millet, wheat, oats, amaranth, and rice, contain a lot of carbon in their stalks. "Grow Biointensive" sustainable farming techniques grow a high percentage of these kinds of crops (roughly 70 percent) to return organic matter to the soil in the form of cured compost, simulating the forest's recycling of leaves, roots, and branches. Deep-rooted crops that are particularly good at drawing minerals from deeper soils, like alfalfa, clovers, and vetch, are valuable as "green manures." The root systems of these plants contributes to the depth and structure of the soil. When composted, mulched, or tilled into the soil, green manures provide a source of organic minerals and other nutrients to plant varieties less adept at utilizing raw minerals in the soil. If we focus only on harvesting as much as possible in a short period of time, we will eventually deplete the soil of most nutrients and end up with soil capable of growing only a few weeds. Sustainable agriculture concerns itself with growing soil as well as crops.

Plant Spacings and Companion Planting

Nature does not grow plants in neat, widely spaced rows. Widely spaced rows are convenient for machinery and harvesting but provide poor microclimates for nourishing plants. Wide-open areas between rows resemble deserts more than nature's gardens. They dry out quickly and provide an ideal space for weeds to grow in. Walking down the rows makes harvesting and weeding easy, but leads to rapid soil compaction. Grow Biointensive farming practices and Masanobu Fukuoka's "no till" food-raising methods use closely spaced plantings that resemble natural settings. Closely spaced plants quickly provide shade that helps to reduce weed infestations. Companion planting of different species that grow well together reduces insect infestations and helps create a synergistic effect that increases crop yields. Simply spacing plants closer together is no guarantee of sustainability or increased productivity. Plants that are spaced too close

together will choke themselves, stunting their growth and reducing yields. If care is not taken to replenish the soils with crop rotations, "green manures," and/or cured compost, closely spaced plantings will deplete soils at a faster rate than traditionally spaced plantings.

Natural Farming

After a severe illness culminating in a life-changing spiritual experience that he refers to as "the experience of God," Masanobu Fukuoka quit his job as a research scientist specializing in plant pathology and turned to a simple life of farming. Through careful observation of nature, he developed the principles of "natural farming." Even though he sometimes refers to his methods as "do nothing farming" because they eliminate tilling the soil and the use of fertilizers and pesticides, his methods do require work and careful planning. By doing the right things at the right time and in the right order, Fukuoka has continued to improve his yields, soil quality, and topsoil depths over a period of thirty years using natural farming methods. He consistently harvests rice yields equal to those achieved by modern chemical-intensive methods, while his winter grain yields are somewhat higher than those on neighboring farms using "modern methods." All of this is done with minimal intervention, minimal labor, and no composting or addition of soil amendments, although the rice and wheat straw from his harvests are all returned to the land as mulch, eventually decomposing to become part of the soil. For more information on his natural farming methods, see *The One-Straw Revolution* and *The Road Back to Nature* by Masanobu Fukuoka. (Both are fine books, but currently out of print. See your local library or used book store.)

Grazing Animals

It is important to note that grazing and other forms of meat production may be managed sustainably or in ways that are highly detrimental to the environment. When animals graze on grasslands, they turn basically unusable cellulosic materials (grasses) into valuable products like meat, dairy, leather, and natural fibers. On the other hand, when livestock are fed on grain, there is always a loss of food value. For instance, it takes several pounds of grain to grow a single pound of meat. In the case of cattle, it takes an average of 7 pounds of grain to produce 1 pound of beef, but can take as much as 20 pounds. For pork, the food loss is close to 4:1, and for poultry it is just over 2:1. Fish farms lead the pack with a grain-to-feed conversion efficiency of less than 2 (Brown et al. 1999, 130). Wherever animals are grown in a feedlot, there is the added environmental load from the consumption of water, fertilizer, and petrochemicals used to grow their feed, as well as significant nitrogen runoff into the water table from the resulting giant manure piles.

To maintain the health of grasslands that once evolved with grazing animals (buffalo, wildebeest, gazelle, deer, etc.), it is important to restore and maintain grazing by cattle or other grazing animals. In the wilds, native grazing animals tend to graze heavily in very concentrated areas for short periods of time. When the herd moves on to another area, it leaves behind a heavily churned surface, trapping rain, seeds, and manure to plant and nurture next year's crop of grasses. Modern grazing practices, called management-intensive rotational grazing (MIRG), mimic these natural grazing patterns. Recently, MIRG has spread through the beef, pork, and dairy industries of the U.S. Midwest (Hawken 1999, 208), where it is contributing to the revitalization of the range-fed livestock industry and grasslands. With MIRG, animals are corraled in temporary paddocks where they graze in a concentrated and managed fashion. When

they have optimally grazed one area, the paddock is moved on to the next pasture.

PERMACULTURE

> Permaculture (permanent agriculture) is the conscious design and maintenance of agriculturally productive ecosystems which have the diversity, stability, and resilience of natural ecosystems. It is the harmonious integration of landscape and people providing their food, energy, shelter, and other material and non-material needs in a sustainable way. Without permanent agriculture there is no possibility of a stable social order. **—Bill Mollison, *Permaculture: A Designer's Manual***

In the 1970s, Bill Mollison and David Holmgren developed an approach for building sustainable, ecologically integrated, and agriculturally based communities that mimic successful natural systems. The permaculture movement has grown by leaps and bounds, and there are now numerous permaculture institutes and schools spread across the planet and many thousands of enthusiastic graduates of permaculture training programs.

I highly recommend that you pick up a few of the permaculture books listed in the reference section at the end of this chapter. Permaculture philosophy is directly applicable to creating a sustainable world, and permaculture design principles can be practically applied to situations ranging from laying out an inner city backyard garden, to building a home on acreage, to building entire sustainable communities.

GROW BIOINTENSIVE

> Population will increase rapidly, more rapidly than in former times, and 'ere long, the most valuable of all arts will be the art of deriving a comfortable subsistence from the smallest area of soil. **—Abraham Lincoln, 1857**

The advantages of biointensive agriculture are listed below:

- Has the potential to build soil up to 60 times faster than occurs in nature
- Can reduce water consumption by 67 to 88 percent, energy consumption by 99 percent, and the amount of purchased fertilizer required by 50 percent or more per pound of food produced compared with conventional agricultural practices
- Can produce two to six times the yield per unit of area compared with standard commercial agriculture
- Can reduce by more than half the land area necessary to grow food, compared with standard agricultural methods
- Can produce a 100+ percent increase in soil fertility while productivity increases and resource use decreases, and a 100+ percent increase in income per unit of area

The Grow Biointensive method is simple to learn and requires no expensive machinery. Based on sophisticated principles dating back 4,000 years in China, 2,000 years in Greece, and 300 years in Europe, it was synthesized and brought to the United States by the English master

horticulturist, Alan Chadwick. Grow Biointensive practices enable a family in the United States to produce an abundant supply of fresh vegetables in a typical backyard. Thousands of third-world farmers on marginal lands have used Grow Biointensive practices to turn desperate subsistence farms into successful minifarms that provide a plentiful supply of food for their families and reap substantial profits on as little as one-fifth of an acre of land. For detailed instructions on Grow Biointensive principles, planting charts, and fertilizing recommendations, see *How to Grow More Vegetables (and Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine,* by John Jeavons. Important aspects of the Grow Biointensive method are summarized below.

- Double-dug, raised beds
- Intensive planting
- Composting, including carbon farming for compost
- Calorie farming for complete diets
- Open-pollinated seeds for genetic diversity
- Companion planting
- A "whole gardening" method

Letter from a Kenyan farmer

I am basically a tiny farmer. I came here to Mabusi village of Kakamega district in 1993 following the clashes that displaced my family from our former home at Chukura in Uasin-Gishu district of Rift Valley province. The ethnic clashes made me lose my 10-acre family land, 5 head of cattle, houses and other property that had taken me years and years to acquire.

The loss of these things caused my hope and that of my children to evaporate from our bodies. I was reduced to nothing. Luckily enough, I managed to purchase 0.3 acres of land here with the help of one of my son's savings. . . .

A year later, toward the end of 1994, a Mr. Eric Kisiangani was introduced to me by one of our neighbors at our newly-found home, Mabusi. . . . Over the course of time, Eric and I became friends, and my respect for his integrity and ability grew. Each time he visited my family he taught us one or two aspects of biointensive mini-farming, including doubledigging, compost, offset planting, and natural pest control techniques.

On May 13th, 1995, Eric asked me if I could accompany Konambaga Women's Group to Manor House Agricultural Centre for a 1-week course. The lessons I had from Manor House and those that I continue to receive from Eric and his colleagues at Rural Technology Centre have moved my household from misery to normal rich life comparatively. My small "shamba" is producing surplus, which I sell for income. Last season, April to June, I earned Kshs. 15,000 (U.S. $268) from sales of Sukuma Wiki (similar to tree collards).

My 0.3 acres of land is producing plenty and healthy vegetables that bring money to knock at my door in the wee hours of the day. I mean, people come

knocking at the door of my house before 6:00 AM wanting to buy vegetables. . . . Biointensive farming has recreated hope in me and my household. I can now face the future proudly.

—Susan Wekesa, Kenya

Double-Dug, Raised Beds

At the heart of Grow Biointensive is this special soil preparation. Crops are planted in beds that are "double-dug." The soil is loosened "two spades deep" (approximately 24 inches) as compared to modern soil tilling practices, which loosen the soil to a depth of only about 6 inches. The loosened soil enables plant roots to quickly propagate deep into the soil, makes weeding an easy chore due to the looseness of the soil, allows for good penetration and retention of water, and tills fertilizers and composts into the soil. Typical beds are 3 to 5 feet wide and as long as you wish to make them. Double-digging the soil incorporates air into the soil, thereby increasing its volume, and naturally raises the surface of the bed with this extra volume.

Unless you live in an area with high-quality soil, the initial preparation and planting of a 100-square-foot raised bed can take considerable time and effort, on the order of 5 to 9.5 hours. Once the bed is established, the soil will have better structure, and the next year's preparation will take much less time. Even though initially the raised beds take more time to prepare, the Irish call this the "lazy bed" method, because the beds require less time weeding, watering, and fertilizing than other gardening methods. Because yields average between two and six times those of traditional methods, you need only tend and till about one-quarter the area to get the same yield.

With proper crop rotations and composting, the soil fertility and crop yields of double-dug beds increase with each successive year. Be patient—it takes 5 to 10 years to build both the soil and one's horticultural skill. Initially, you should test your soil to determine what nutrients are lacking. A professional soil test is best, but a selftest kit (as described in Jeavons' book) is much better than guessing. Testing your soil will save you money by preventing you from under- or overfertilizing. (It is easy, for example, to add too much nitrogen, which will cause the soil's important organic matter to break down too quickly and lead to insect infestations.) See Jeavons' *How to Grow More Vegetables (and Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine* or the books by Eliot Coleman for organic fertilization recommendations that will contribute to the long-term health of your soil. With proper nutrient recycling through the compost pile, you may not need to add fertilizers after the first year or two.

The Initial Double-Dig Process

Before double-digging your planting beds, you should perform a soil test to determine optimum fertilization. As mentioned previously, typical beds are 3 to 5 feet wide and as long as you wish to make them. The description of the process here is adapted from Jeavons' *How to Grow More Vegetables (and Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine*.

1. Soak the planting area with a sprinkler. After soil is lightly moistened 1 to 2 feet deep,

pre-loosen the entire planting area 12 inches deep using a spading (dig across the short direction of the bed). Place fork (it looks like a heavy-duty pitchfork).

2. Spread a 1-inch layer of cured compost (preferable) or aged manure over the entire area to be dug. If your soil has a heavy clay content (fine grain, sticky soil) you should add sand; if it is high in sand content, you should add clay. In general, you should not add more than a 1-inch layer of clay or sand at one time. Mix it thoroughly into the upper 12 inches with a spading fork.
3. Dig a 1-foot-wide by 1-foot-deep trench across one end of the area marked out for the planting bed the soil removed from this first trench into a soil storage area for use in making compost and flat (sprouting) soil.

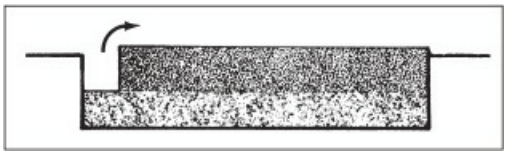


Figure 6-3. Dig first trench and remove soil for compost and flats. (Reprinted with permission from *How to Grow More Vegetables* by John Jeavons. Copyright 1974, 1979, 1982, 1990, 1991, 1995, 2001, 2002, 2006 by Ecology Action of the Midpeninsula, Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, CA. www.tenspeed.com.)

4. Loosen soil (double-dig) at the bottom of the first trench an additional 12 inches deep. In softer soil, loosen by digging with your spade and allowing the dirt to slip off the spade back into the trench. In harder ground, loosen the soil with a back-andforth action, using your spading fork. Soil is now loosened to a total depth of 24 inches. If your soil is hard and you can't loosen the lower layer to the full 24-inch depth, just do the best that you can. With each succeeding year's double-dig, the soil will soften and you will be able to till deeper.
5. Dig out the second 1-foot-wide by 1-foot-deep trench, and move this soil over to fill the first trench, mixing the layers as little as possible. Do not turn the upper layer over when it is moved from one trench to the next. You are trying to loosen and aerate the soil without destroying the natural soil stratification. Stand on a digging board, roughly 2 feet wide by 3 feet long, to prevent compacting the soil and collapsing the edges of your trench.

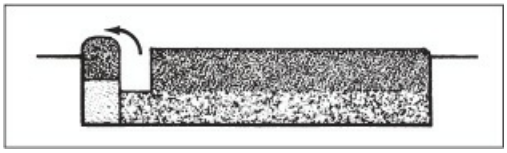


Figure 6-4. Start the next trench and dig over to fill in the top layer of the preceding one. (Reprinted with permission from *How to Grow More Vegetables* by John Jeavons. Copyright 1974, 1979, 1982, 1990, 1991, 1995, 2001, 2002, 2006 by Ecology Action of the Midpeninsula, Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, CA. www.tenspeed.com.)

6. Loosen the lower 12 inches of the second trench (double-dig).
7. Continue the trenching and doubledigging process all the way across the planting bed.

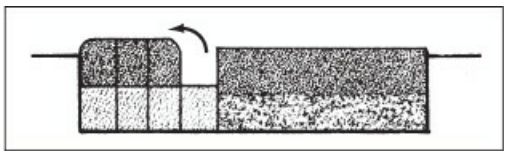


Figure 6-5. Continuing the trenching and doubledigging process. (Reprinted with permission from *How to Grow More Vegetables* by John Jeavons. Copyright 1974, 1979, 1982, 1990, 1991, 1995, 2001, 2002, 2006 by Ecology Action of the Midpeninsula, Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, CA. www.tenspeed.com.)

8. Your bed is now a "raised bed" because the soil volume has been increased by the double-digging process. Shape the raised bed by raking. As indicated by your soil test, add organic nitrogen, phosphorous, potash, calcium, and trace mineral fertilizers (such as wood ash, eggshell, or the meals of blood, fish, kelp, alfalfa, bone, or hoof and horn). Also include the needed levels of pH modifiers, such as leaf/pine needle compost to make the soil less alkaline or lime to make the soil less acid. Sprinkle the fertilizers and modifiers over the surface of the bed and sift in only 3 to 4 inches deep. Reshape the bed, if necessary, and tamp down the soil by standing on the digging board in various positions to remove excess air.
9. Plant seeds or transplant seedlings into the raised double-dug bed.

The Ongoing Double-Dig Process

The first year, you may not see yield improvements with double-dug raised beds. With each succeeding year, the double-digging process will become easier, the soil quality will improve, and your yields should improve. Start the ongoing double-dig process by removing any remaining bed vegetation for composting. Next, dig the first trench and remove this trench soil, saving approximately one-seventh of this soil for flat soil and six-sevenths for compost. Continue to double dig across the entire length of the raised bed, as in the initial double-dig process. When the soil is in reasonably good shape (usually after at least two double-digs), you could save time by substituting a U-bar dig to loosen and aerate the soil (see Figure 6-6). If you use a U-bar regularly, double-dig again when you notice increased compaction.

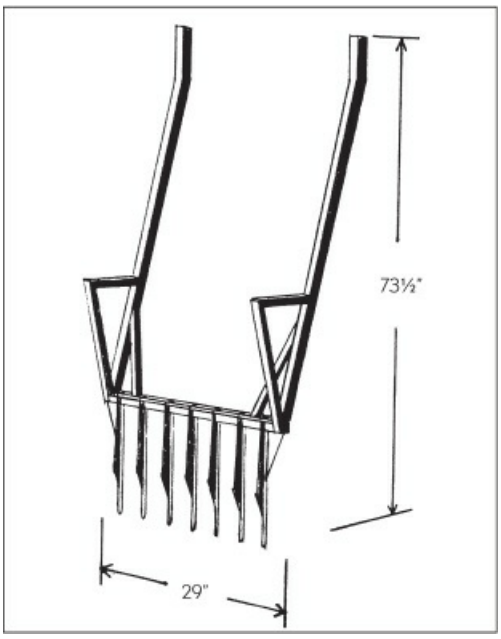


Figure 6-6. U-bar for loosening the soil with less effort. (Reprinted with permission from *How to Grow More Vegetables* by John Jeavons. Copyright 1974, 1979, 1982, 1990, 1991, 1995, 2001, 2002, 2006 by Ecology Action of the Midpeninsula, Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, CA. www.tenspeed.com.)

Level and shape the bed, and then water gently by hand. Sprinkle any fertilizers and pH modifiers, as indicated by the soil test, on top of the bed and spread a 1-inch layer of compost over the bed. Adding compost *after* the double dig minimizes leaching of nitrogen out of looser soils. Sift in materials 3 to 4 inches deep. Plant seeds or transplant seedlings into the raised double-dug bed (Jeavons 1995, 9).

Intensive Planting

Seeds or seedlings are planted in 3- to 5-foot-wide beds using a hexagonal spacing pattern (see Figure 6-7). Each plant is placed the same distance from the adjoining plants so that when the plants mature, their leaves touch. This creates a miniclimate under the leaves that is similar to natural growth patterns, retains moisture, protects the microbial life in the soil, retards weed growth, and provides for high yields. A partial list of Grow Biointensive planting spacings follows:

- Plant on 2-inch centers: radishes and salsify
- Plant on 3-inch centers: carrots, bush peas, and bunching onions
- Plant on 4-inch centers: beets, garlic, kohlrabi, onions, parsnips, pole peas, shallots, turnips, lentils, mung beans, garbanzo beans, and rice

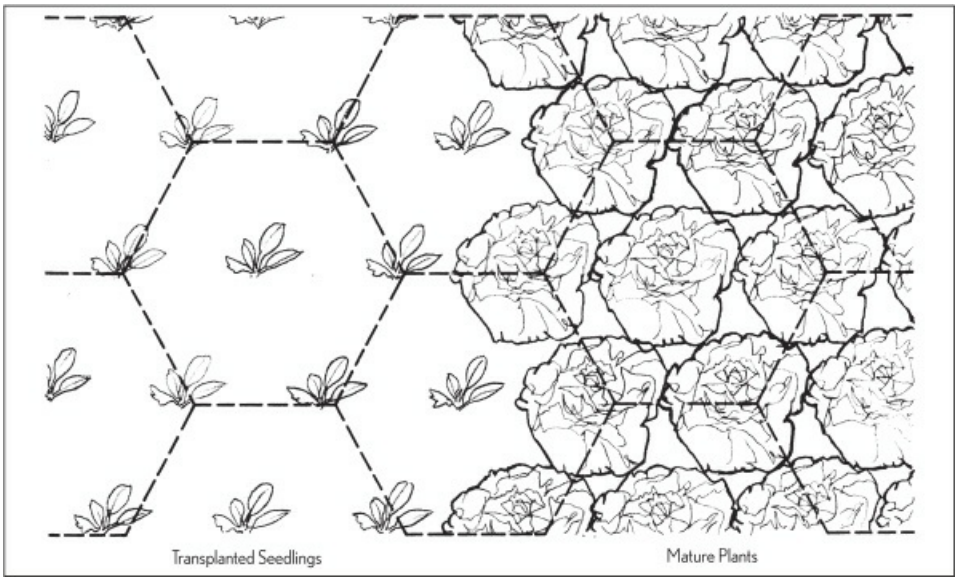


Figure 6-7. Hexagonal-spaced planting. (Reprinted with permission from *How to Grow More Vegetables* by John Jeavons. Copyright 1974, 1979, 1982, 1990, 1991, 1995, 2001, 2002, 2006 by Ecology Action of the Midpeninsula, Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, CA. www.tenspeed.com.)

- Plant on 5-inch centers: parsley, barley, oats, rye, wheat, and alfalfa
- Plant on 6-inch centers: basil, lima bush beans, snap bush beans, snap pole beans, celery, leeks, mustard, rutabagas, spinach, kidney beans, pinto beans, red beans, white beans, sesame, and soybeans
- Plant on 7-inch centers: mangels, millet, and sugar beets
- Plant on 8-inch centers: fava beans, lima pole beans, and Swiss chard
- Plant on 9-inch centers: leaf lettuce, Irish potatoes (9 inches deep), sweet potatoes (6 inches deep), peanuts, and rapeseed
- Plant on 10-inch centers: Chinese cabbage
- Plant on 12-inch centers: collards, cucumber, horseradish, head lettuce, okra, peppers, New Zealand Malabar spinach, and quinoa
- Plant on 15-inch centers: broccoli, cabbage, cauliflower, sweet corn, kale, melons, crookneck squash, and patty pan squash
- Plant on 18-inch centers: Brussels sprouts, hybrid and flour or fodder corn, winter squash, zucchini, and safflower
- Tomatoes: 18 inches for cherry tomatoes, 21 inches for regular size, and 24 inches for large ones.
- Watermelon: 12 inches for midget varieties, 18 inches for 5 to 7 pounds, 21 inches for 10 to 15 pounds, and 24 inches for the largest varieties (Jeavons 1995, 80–108)

See *How to Grow More Vegetables (Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine* by John Jeavons for complete planting and fertilization charts, orchard and garden layouts, seed propagation, and planting and transplanting techniques.

Composting

> Well-made compost has been shown to have plant-growing benefits far in excess of its simple "nutrient analysis" and to be an active factor in suppressing plant diseases and increasing plant resistance to pests. . . . The organic matter portion of the soil is more than simply a source of plant food and physical stability. It is also the power supply, so to speak. Organic matter is the engine that drives all the biological (and some of the chemical) processes in the soil. . . . All things being equal, if I were to suggest just one practice it would be to make as much first-class, well-decomposed compost as possible and use it liberally. **—Elliot Coleman, *The New Organic Grower***

The higher yields offered by intensive planting would not be sustainable without a way of maintaining the health and vigor of the soil. Chemical fertilizers, which are derived from increasingly expensive nonrenewable petroleum products, have been shown to deplete the soil over time. As soil quality deteriorates, increasing quantities of chemical fertilizers are needed to sustain yields, causing further harm to soil structure and microbiotic life in the soil. The Grow Biointensive food-raising method avoids these problems through recycling organic waste products in the form of compost. Kitchen scraps, garden trimmings, and many other forms of organic matter, when properly composted, provide the elements necessary to maintain the biological life cycles that exist in the home garden. The structure and the microbiotic life of the soil are improved by compost, which creates better aeration and water retention. As the soil's health improves, optimum plant health is maintained and the garden's yields are maximized.

There are many different styles of compost piles and recipes for composting, but they all try to accomplish the same thing: the rapid decomposition of organic material into humus. A compost pile magically transforms backyard debris and smelly garbage into dark, rich, sweet-smelling humus with the look and consistency of crumbled chocolate fudge cake. The best times to build a compost pile are in the spring or fall, since too much heat can kill the microorganisms and too little heat slows or halts the decay process. A spot under the limbs of a deciduous tree provides shade from a hot summer's sun, yet lets the spring sun through to warm the compost heap. Composting is done in a pile to hold internal heat (up to 140°F) and moisture for nurturing the process.

Green plant materials will compost quickly, since they have a high nitrogen content that bacteria thrive on. Carbon-rich, low-nitrogen materials such as straw, sawdust, wood chips, and dry leaves will decompose slowly unless combined with high-nitrogen materials like fresh manure, blood meal, green grass, or vegetable wastes. The best composts are from a mixture of brown (old, dry materials like straw and dead leaves) and green (fresh materials like kitchen scraps, grass clippings, and freshly pulled weeds) materials for an optimum mixture of high-nitrogen and carbon-rich materials. Soil is always mixed into the compost heap to provide a starter supply of microorganisms. Oxygen is the other key ingredient to fuel the bacterial feast, making straw an optimal "brown" material since it provides abundant channels for air infiltration into the pile. If the pile gets smelly, it is either too tightly compacted (not enough air) or has too much nitrogen content, which yields an ammonia smell. To solve the problem in either case,

refork the pile, adding more layers of straw as you go.

Longtime professional organic grower Elliot Coleman likes to block in his small-scale compost heaps with straw bales piled two or three high, leaving gaps between bales for air infiltration. The bales usually last for a couple years before becoming part of the next compost heap. His recipe for compost is to alternate 2- to 3-inch layers of brown materials with 1- to 6-inch layers of green ingredients, covering each green layer with a thin layer of topsoil. Because the pile is insulated by straw bales, it decomposes right to the bales and requires no turning. These piles may be used after a few months, but are optimal in about one and a half years. John Jeavons offers a similar recipe for Biointensive compost composed of one-third rehydrated dry vegetation, one-third green vegetation (including kitchen scraps), and one-third soil, all by weight. Before starting, loosen 12 inches of soil beneath the pile to promote good drainage. The pile should be kept moist, but not wet, like a damp sponge that has been wrung out. You may want to cover the pile during rainy periods to prevent excessive moisture and leaching of nutrients out of the pile. Turning the pile improves aeration and speeds decomposition. Cover kitchen scraps and manure with a ¼- to ½-inch layer of soil to prevent flies and obnoxious odors.

Companion Planting

Research has shown that many plants grow better when near certain other plants. For example, green beans and strawberries thrive better when they are grown together. Some plants are useful in repelling pests, while others attract beneficial insect life. Borage, for example, helps control tomato worms, while its blue flowers attract bees. Additionally, many wild plants have a healthy effect on the soil; their deep roots loosen the subsoil and bring up previously unavailable trace minerals and nutrients. Use of companion planting aids the gardener to produce finequality vegetables, reduce pest problems, and create and maintain a healthy, vibrant soil. For more information on companion planting, see *Great Garden Companions* by Sally Jean Cunningham or Jeavons' *How to Grow More Vegetables (and Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine.*

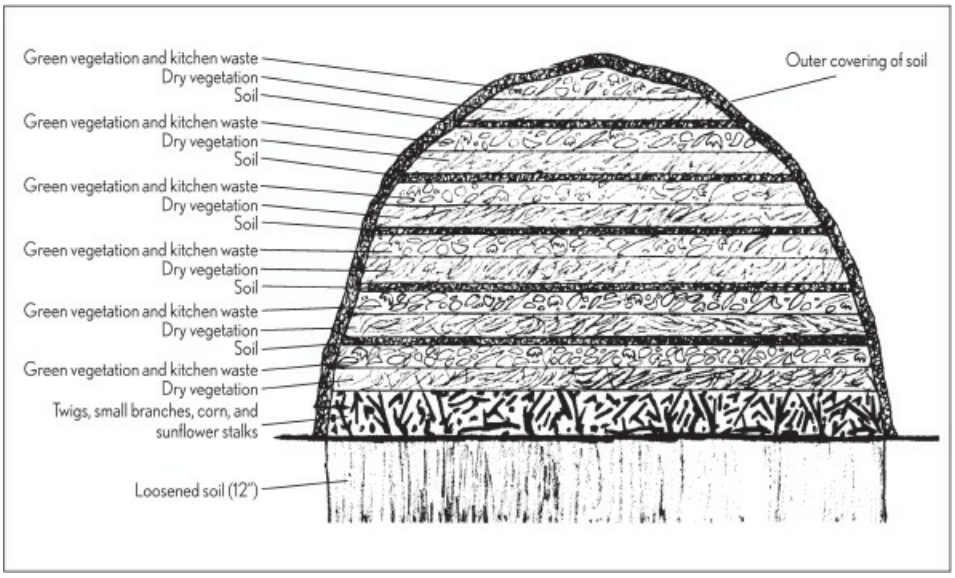


Figure 6-8. Cross section of a biointensive compost pile. (Reprinted with permission from *How to Grow More Vegetables* by John Jeavons. Copyright 1974, 1979, 1982, 1990, 1991, 1995, 2001, 2002, 2006 by Ecology Action of the Midpeninsula, Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, CA. www.tenspeed.com.)

Whole Gardening

It is important to realize that the Grow Biointensive method is a whole system and that the components of the method must all be used together for the optimum effect. For example, if you plant your crops close together without tending to soil health and fertility, you will reduce your yields and quality while lowering plant resistance to insects and disease.

Seed Propagation

The natural inclination of seeds is to germinate and grow when given the right moisture, soil, and warmth. Whether planting in beds or flats, the seed should be planted in moist, fertile soil (with lots of humus), and two to four times as deep into the soil as the seed's thickness, in the small direction. For most varieties, you will extend the growing season (harvest more times during the year) if seeds are propagated in potting soil within flats or cold frames, then transplanted to the garden. When planting seeds in flats, place them 1 to 2 inches apart, preferably in a hexagonal pattern, so the seedlings will quickly create a miniclimate of their own.

A classic planting soil mixture for sprouting flats (by weight) is one part compost, one part gritty sand, and one part turf loam. A simpler flat soil mixture consists of equal parts sifted compost and bed soil. If you have double-dug raised beds, combine the soil from the first trench of the double-dig with compost for your bed soil. Gently water seedlings both before and after transplanting to minimize plant shock. Handle seedlings by the leaves or scoop up with a protective ball of soil to avoid damaging the stem and roots. See the "Growing Food" references

for more details.

Pest Control

> There is a direct relationship between the growing conditions of plants and the susceptibility of those plants to pests. Problems in the garden are our fault through unsuccessful gardening practices, rather than nature's fault through malicious intent. The way to approach pest problems in the garden is to correct the cause rather than treat the symptom. **—Eliot Coleman, *Four-Season Harvest***

A growing number of successful organic farmers agree that insects and disease do not attack healthy unstressed plants, but go for plants that have been compromised in some way. In a healthy ecosystem, nature uses pests to destroy and recycle inferior plants while leaving the hardy plants alone so that they might continue to thrive. Modern scientific research has found that stressed plants have more available nitrogen and less protein, making them ideal feeding grounds for insects and disease. Overfertilizing, especially with chemical fertilizers, supplies excess nitrogen and increases susceptibility to insects.

Your first and best line of defense is therefore soil preparation. Make sure that you provide your crops with lots of composted organic matter. In *The New Organic Grower*, Coleman tells a story about visiting a German organic farm with a group of U.S. Department of Agriculture researchers in 1979. One member of the group was an entomologist (bug specialist) who was totally amazed by the lack of pests and crop damage in the organic farm's fields, stating, "We can't do this well even *with* pesticides."

Integrated Pest Management

For those situations where optimal soil fertility has not yet been established, or where a crop is threatened by blight or insect infestation, integrated pest management (IPM) offers "least toxic" alternatives to modern, chemical-intensive pesticides. IPM is a term used to describe a pest-control philosophy that focuses on the whole picture of pests, plants, and environment to maximize the effectiveness of natural and nontoxic pest-control techniques and minimize the use of toxic chemicals. IPM acknowledges that chemical toxins have detrimental environmental effects, killing natural predators as well as the targeted pests. Throwing natural systems off balance often results in creating long-term problems with increasing numbers of pests. Due to their short life cycles and rapid reproduction rates, insects tend to develop genetic resistance to chemical pesticides faster than we can invent new ones.

For an introduction to IPM and sustainable agriculture, see the ATTRA (Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas) Web site at www.attra.org. ATTRA is a national information service that offers information and technical service free of charge to people and organizations involved in commercial U.S. agriculture.

The Bio-Integral Resource Center (BIRC) is one of the leading organizations in the world providing experience and practical technical and policy information in least toxic urban and agricultural IPM and sustainable agriculture. They have an excellent quarterly publication, the

Common Sense Pest Control Quarterly, featuring descriptions of the latest research, practical information, products, resources, book reviews, and direct answers to member questions (see chapter resources). BIRC has also published two excellent books on commonsense pest control.

Nontoxic pest-control techniques include the following:

- Supporting and introducing natural predators, such as birds, toads, praying mantises, and ladybugs
- Buying disease-resistant varieties of plants
- Rotating crops to keep from providing multiple years of unrestricted breeding for plant-specific pests
- Using companion planting techniques that have been successful at reducing pests
- Removing insects by vacuuming plants, washing plant leaves, hand-picking insects, and so on
- Removing infected plants
- Using various insect baits and traps
- Providing barriers to pests, such as insect screen covers over crops
- Using nontoxic dry materials, such as diatomaceous earth and fine-ground basalt (harms beneficial insects as well as pests)
- Using nontoxic wet sprays, such as plant pyrethrin (harms beneficial insects as well as pests)

Extending the Harvest in Cold Climates

Garden-fresh vegetables can be harvested year-round in harsh climates either by providing them with heated and well-lit greenhouse spaces or by utilizing a variety of low-tech solutions to protect hardy plant varieties from the harsh climate changes of winter. Many crops grown in the late summer and throughout the fall will not grow significantly during the winter months, yet can still provide a delicious harvest of fresh, nutritious vegetables throughout the entire season. In the harsh climate of his farm at Harborside, Maine, Coleman has refined traditional techniques for protecting cold-resistant crops throughout the winter months. Coleman explains that he loves fresh vegetables, but is not much of a technocrat, so he prefers the ease and low cost of low-tech solutions over heated greenhouses. To take advantage of Coleman's 35 years of experience and experimentation, pick up his book, *Four-Season Harvest.*

Winter harvesting relies on growing cold-resistant crops in the fall, and then protecting them somewhat from the extremes of winter winds and temperature fluctuations. Many crops can handle freezing temperatures, but do not handle severe fluctuations in conditions, such as wet/dry, hot/freezing, and gale/calm. Simply covering plants will mellow out these conditions significantly by cutting wind, reducing heat loss, and taking advantage of the relatively warm thermal mass of the earth.

Cold Frames

A simple cold frame is a traditional method for covering plants to extend both the growing

season and the harvest (see Figure 6-9). A cold frame is a shallow wooden box with no bottom and a clear top. Glaze the frame with either double-strength tempered glass or rigid plastic greenhouse material. The top must be removable or hinged to allow for watering and venting. A crop can easily cook inside a cold frame, even on a cold winter's day, when the sun shines brightly. The use of automatic greenhouse vent openers (available at greenhouse and gardener's suppliers) will lift the cold frame cover whenever the internal temperatures get hot, but may not be able to lift a heavy cover glazed with thick glass. Most winter vegetables can withstand freezing and thawing while growing, but may wilt if harvested frozen and then thawed after harvesting. To prevent wilting, do not cut while frozen, but wait until thawed at midday (Coleman 1992, 86).

Figure 6-9. Cold frames.

Other Season-Extending Methods

Other season-extending plant covers include plastic tunnels that are strung over hoops. These can be moved to protect different plants. The use of black plastic mulch can hold heat in and help propagate plants outdoors in early spring when the air temperatures are still too cold for normal propagation. Sprouting seedlings indoors in flats or on windowsills can help you get a jumpstart on spring planting, and can be essential when growing seasons are very short. You can make a lazy person's root cellar by placing straw bales over your root crops in the fall. Simply cut off the plant greens about one inch above the soil, prior to covering with bales. The bales will insulate the ground and keep the roots from freezing. Any time of the winter, roll the bales off a section of garden when you want to harvest fresh root crops. Watch for signs of mice and other critters, or you may find that they beat you to the harvest.

SPROUTING: YOUR OWN MINIGARDEN ON A WINDOWSILL

Seeds are one of nature's most perfect foods. They contain all the nutrients necessary to sustain the growth of budding seedlings until the seedling has developed a root system large enough to

sustain growth from soil sources. One of the few foods more perfect than raw seeds are sprouted seeds. The sprouting process decreases the carbohydrate and increases the vitamin and protein content in these "live" foods.

Richard Nielsen, owner of Life Sprouts, a large organic seed and sprouting equipment business, tells the following story about an experiment he ran raising chickens.

Richard grew up on a farm. Like his father before him, Richard raised baby chicks on a steady diet of mash, reaching a typical mature weight of 5 to 5½ pounds. After a friend told him that they could increase the weight of their chickens using sprouts, he and his 8-year-old son decided to try feeding some 3-day-old sprouted grains to their chickens. That year, their chickens averaged 6 to 6½ pounds. The experiment was such a success that the next year they decided to feed their chickens solely on a "live food" diet consisting of sprouted grains. That year, not one chicken was under 8 pounds, and some were over 8½ pounds. Incredibly, these chickens reached their prize-worthy weights on 25 percent less grain than consumed in previous years, indicating how significantly the nutritional value of dry grain is increased by the sprouting process.

Sprouting is a simple process, and the equipment is very inexpensive. You can sprout seeds in your own home, creating a low-cost source of fresh vegetables all year long. All you need for starting your indoor sprout garden is a 1-quart glass jar, untreated whole seeds, a piece of nylon stocking (or cheesecloth, screen, nylon mesh, etc.), and a rubber band or canning jar seal to hold the mesh over the jar. Richard Nielsen's company, Life Sprouts (see resources), sells organic sprouting seeds and supplies, including an excellent covered combination crisper and sprouting tray.

Though most nutritious in their raw form, sprouts can be sautéed, stir-fried, boiled, or cooked into almost any dish. In just a few days, sprouts provide a source of garden-fresh vegetables any time of the year. Nearly all seeds can be sprouted, including most whole grains and legumes. Grains and legumes are probably the most compact and inexpensive type of food that can be stored for emergency preparedness.

The Sprouting Process

CAUTION: Potato and tomato sprouts are poisonous. Do not sprout commercial seeds for planting, because these are usually treated with a poisonous fungicide.

1. Measure the seed batch according to the sprouting chart below. Use only untreated whole seeds, preferably organic (available at health food stores). Inspect and pick debris out of the seeds.

2. Place the seeds in a quart jar (or sprouting tray) halffilled with warm water (preferably unchlorinated). Cover the jar with nylon stocking (or cheesecloth, screen, etc.) and put the rubber band in place.
3. Soak overnight or as directed in the chart. Drain and rinse with cool water (always rinse with cool water). If you use tap water, let the water sit in an open container for a few hours before using, to get rid of the chlorine.
4 Keep the jar warm and covered with a dark cloth, or keep it in a cabinet, while germinating. For greener sprouts, give them more light as they grow, but usually keep them out of direct sunlight. For whiter sprouts, keep them out of the light. Experiment to find how you think they taste best.
5. Rinse and drain well two to three times a day (or as recommended in the chart) to keep sprouts from spoiling or souring.

Sprouting chart

Seed	Quantity per quart jar	Soak time (hours)	Rinses per day	Average number of days to sprout	Harvest length (inches)
Adzuki bean	½ cup	6–12	3–5	2–5	½–1½
Alfalfa	2 tbsp	3–8	2–5	3–6	½–2
Almond	1 cup	10–12	2–3	2–5	when split
Amaranth	12 tbsp	none	3–4	2–3	¼
Barley	1½ cups	5–10	2–4	2–4	0–¼
Cabbage	3 tbsp	7–10	2–3	3–5	½–¾
Cabbage, Chinese	3 tbsp	4–7	2–3	3–5	1–1½
Clover	1½ tbsp	4–8	2–3	3–5	1–2
Corn	1½ cups	8–12	2–3	2–3	¼–½
Garbanzo (chickpeas)	1 cup	8–12	3–4	2–4	½
Kidney beans	¾ cup	8–12	3–4	2–4	½–1
Lentil	¾ cup	5–10	2–4	2–4	¼–1
Lettuce	3 tbsp	3–7	2–3	3–5	1–1½
Millet	1½ cups	4–8	2–3	2–4	⅛–¼
Mung bean	½ cup	6–10	3–4	3–5	1–3
Mustard	3 tbsp	5–8	2–3	3–5	1–1½
Oats	1½ cups	3–5	1–2	1–2	0–¼
Pea (not split)	2 cups	7–10	2–3	2–3	¼–½
Peanut	1 cup	8–12	2–3	3–5	¼–1
Pinto bean	1 cup	8–12	3–4	3–4	½–1¼
Pumpkin	1½ cups	5–10	2–3	2–3	⅛–¼
Quinoa	1/3 cup	3–5	2–3	1–2	¼–1½
Radish	3 tbsp	5–8	2–3	3–5	¼–1½
Rice	1½ cups	10–20	2–3	2–4	seed length
Rye	1 cup	6–10	2–3	2–3	¼–½
Sesame	1½ cups	6–10	3–4	2–3	seed length
Soybean	1 cup	10–20	5–6	3–6	½–2
Spinach	3 tbsp	5–8	2–3	3–5	½–2
Sunflower (hulled)	1 cup	2–6	2–3	½–3	½–2
Triticale	1½ cups	6–10	2–3	2–3	¼–½
Wheat	1cup	6–10	2–3	2–5	¼–½

(Sources: Stevens 1997, 198; Emery 1998, 114)

6. Sprouting time is a matter of personal taste, but peak nutritive value is reached in 2 to 3

days. Sprouts can be kept in the refrigerator for a week. Freeze them if you wish to store for longer periods.

7. Some people recommend that you lightly steam bean sprouts to destroy toxins found in raw beans (Stevens 1997, 198).

FORAGING FOR FOOD

After a long winter, our ancestors usually ran outside and picked a fresh salad from the first green shoots of spring. After living on salt pork, dried beans, and old roots from the root cellar, fresh greens were a welcome change. One spring, I remember going hunting for a wild spring delicacy called "fiddleheads" (young fern shoots). We found what we thought were fiddleheads, brought them home, steamed a batch and gave them a try. They were awful! They made your mouth pucker and your throat gag. Not knowing any better, we had picked the furry kind of fern shoot, instead of the "furless" fern shoots. The next week, we found some of the right kind of fiddleheads, and they were sweet, tender, and delicious.

> Carla Emery tells a story about some visitors to her area whose misadventures with wild plants were not as forgiving as mine. She just happened to see a family of three unwittingly dine on a sprig of poison hemlock after a local so-called "expert" on edible plants assured them that it was "Indian celery" (a close look-alike to poison hemlock). Carla rushed them to the drugstore for syrup of Ipecac to help them throw up their snack. Unfortunately, one of the three wouldn't throw it up, so she was taken to the hospital for stomach pumping. Wondering if all that fuss was for nothing, one of these unfortunates picked a branch of what they had eaten and took it to the office of a poison weed specialist. The specialist's eyes widened when the visitor said that he had eaten some of this, telling him that he would be dead right now if it weren't for Carla's help. She also relates that both a local forest ranger and a child died from mistakenly eating some wild poison hemlock during the summer of 1975. **—Adapted from Carla Emery, *The Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book*, 1998, 401**
>
> **WARNING: Never eat any wild plant unless you have 100 percent positive identification that it is edible, or you have taken the time to complete the 2-day plant edibility test described in Chapter 4. A small bite of certain plants is enough to kill an adult.**

Brief Guide to Wild Edible Foods

There are thousands of edible varieties of plants in North America. Some edible plants are truly delicious, but many considered edible taste bad and are primarily useful only in survival situations. A few of the more common and tasty wild edible plants are listed below. I suggest that you pick up one or two "real" guides to edible plants in your geographical region. Steve

Brill's *Identifying and Harvesting Edible and Medicinal Plants in Wild (and Not So Wild) Places* is an excellent start. It is entertaining, practical, and offers varied cooking suggestions and recipes.

A good plant guide will also warn you about potentially poisonous "look-alike" plants that might be confused with the one that you think you are identifying. Harvesting wild edible plants can be fun and will help you make your diet more complete by adding more vitamins, minerals, and trace elements than are found in typical grocery store veggies. Use caution in your forays into wild edible plants, because nibbling on wild plants can kill you if you make a serious mistake. (For a list of recommended edible and medicinal plant guides, see the suggested references in Chapters 4 and 9.) In addition, *Foxfire 2* has an excellent section on foraging and cooking with wild greens from the Southern Appalachians.

Acorns. Acorns are the nuts from about 55 varieties of native oak trees. Gathered in the fall, acorns were traditional staple foods for several indigenous peoples. They were stored in baskets and crushed or ground into flour for cooking. In my local area, grinding depressions, where indigenous peoples ground their nuts into meal, are a common sight on the granite slabs adjacent to lakes and rivers. Some varieties of acorns are sweet and may be used without special preparation, but bitter varieties require treatment to remove excess tannic acid prior to eating. To remove bitterness, shell the acorns and boil in water until the water turns brown. Drain and repeat until the water stops changing color. If boiling is not an easy alternative, wrap nutmeats in a cloth and soak in a clear running stream for a few days until they taste sweet. Soaking acorn mush to remove bitterness takes less time than soaking the whole seed. Acorn meal makes excellent pancakes and muffins.

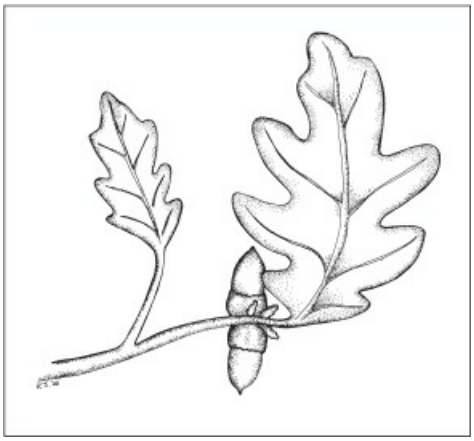


Figure 6-10. Acorns.

Figure 6-11. Black mustard.

Black mustard, field mustard, and others. These weeds grow more or less anywhere in fields and disturbed areas. Most mustard leaves are best when harvested young in the spring, but some in the mustard family are good throughout the summer. Seeds can be harvested, ground, and mixed with vinegar, like commercial mustard. Young basal rosette looks similar to dandelions, only there is no milky sap. This is a tangy treat if you like strong flavors. There are no poisonous look-alikes.

Bulrush. Like cattails, bulrushes provide a source of year-round food. Found in wet, marshy areas and shallow waters of lakes or ponds. Identified by long, nonbranching stems, with a spiky cluster of flowers. Young roots and shoots can be used as a vegetable. Older roots can be pounded to remove fibers and then ground into flour.

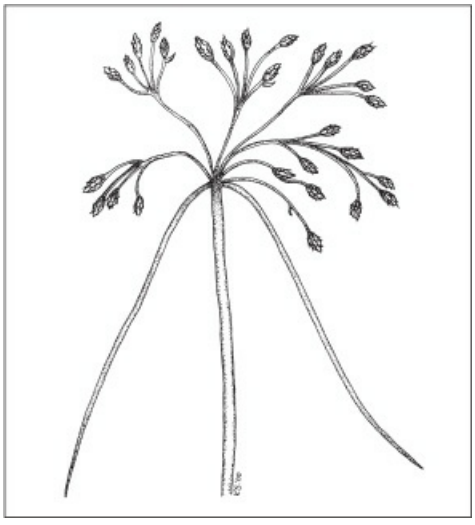


Figure 6-12. Bulrush.

Burdock. Burdock grows throughout the United States on roadsides and in fields and disturbed areas. The large broad leaves look a bit like rhubarb leaves (and rhubarb leaves are poisonous), so be careful. The leaves are bitter tasting, but the first-year plant's long taproot tastes like a delicious cross between potato and artichoke heart. The root may be harvested until the second year flowering, when it becomes inedible. Peel roots, slice to break fibers, and then boil or sauté. Burdock root has excellent nutritional and healing properties for the skin and kidneys, and for overall health. Young flower stalks may be peeled and eaten raw or boiled. Burdock flowers with purple to pink crests grow into sharp, hooked, little burr balls that are either annoying or great toys, depending on your point of view.

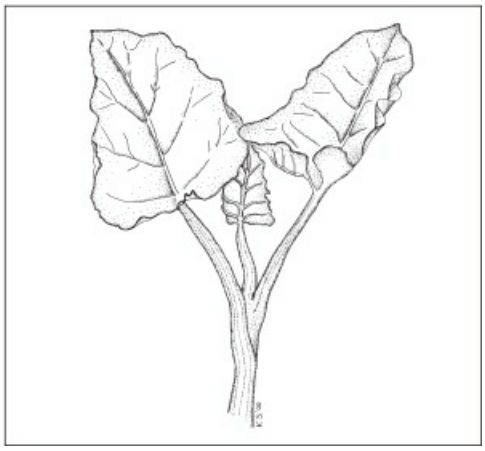


Figure 6-13. Burdock.

Cattail. Another staple of indigenous peoples, cattails are still used for food throughout the world. Find cattails in shallow waters of swampy areas. You can dig up roots in early spring to find delicious sprouts that can be eaten raw. Young summer stalks, up to 2 or 3 feet tall, may be peeled for their tasty core (known as "Cossack asparagus"), which is eaten raw, steamed, or boiled. Young buds can be picked before pollen ripens and boiled like mini corn on the cob. Roots can be harvested in the fall through spring. Dig, dry, and peel, and then pound into flour. Pounded roots may be soaked and then decanted to render starchy material. Poisonous look-alikes are the stalks and roots of wild irises, so be sure to identify stalks by the presence of old cattails. Pollens can be harvested as a flour or flour extender.

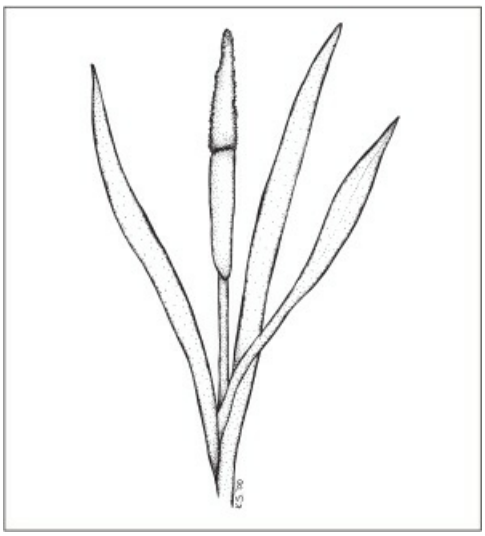


Figure 6-14. Cattail.

Chicory. Like its close relative the dandelion, chicory is a staple green in many countries and has a long taproot. When young, the leaves look like dandelion leaves with the addition of irregular hairs on most of the leaves. When it matures, the resemblance to the dandelion disappears as it grows a tall hairy flower stalk with numerous sky-blue fringed flowers. Widespread, chicory is found in fields and other disturbed areas. Harvest leaves and shoots early in spring. Older leaves may require boiling and water changes if bitter. The taproot is rather bitter, but makes a good caffeine-free coffee substitute when roasted at 250°F for 2 to 4 hours until brown, and then ground.

Curled dock, yellow dock, and sour dock. In early spring, this plant is easily recognized by its rosette of long, narrow leaves—up to 2 feet long—with curly edges. It grows throughout the country in fields, disturbed soil, and near water. Early spring leaves are delicious steamed and may be acceptable raw, but should be washed first. For later harvests, boil the leaves with multiple water changes to reduce bitterness. In summer, the flower stalk may be peeled and steamed as a vegetable. With much difficulty, the seeds may be threshed and ground into flour. Dock was a staple green during the Depression. The taproot is too bitter for eating, but is a useful medicinal herb for skin and liver conditions.

Figure 6-15. Chicory.

Figure 6-16. Curled dock.

Dandelion. The common dandelion is quite a versatile and delicious plant. It is found throughout the country in open fields and disturbed areas. The young leaves are excellent as salad greens, and are more nutritious than any you can buy in the grocery store. Peel young roots and eat raw or slice thin and boil. If leaves or roots are bitter, boiling in a couple water changes improves the taste. Dip the blossoms in fritter batter and fry in oil, like tempura veggies.

Fiddleheads (bracken and ostrich ferns). Collect young ferns in midspring, before the round "fiddlehead" has started to unfurl (up to about 8 inches tall). Wash to remove fur or unpleasant scales. I found the not-so-furry ostrich ferns much sweeter and not bitter like the furry bracken ferns. Perhaps it was just due to local effects or the age of the fiddleheads? Steam or boil bracken

fiddleheads to remove mild toxicity. Large quantities of mature bracken have been known to poison cattle. Fiddleheads are an expensive delicacy in upscale restaurants. Please leave a few fiddleheads in every cluster, as they will not return if you harvest the whole lot.

Figure 6-17. Dandelion.

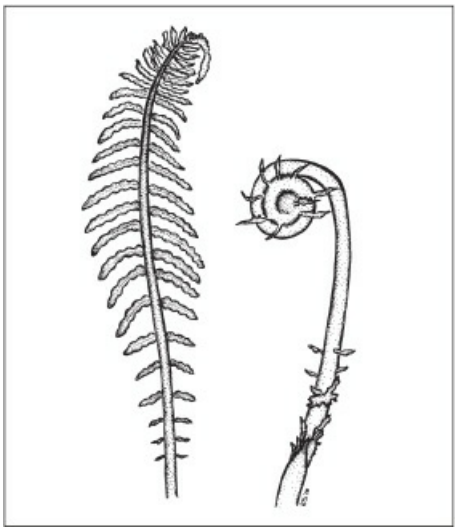


Figure 6-18. Fiddleheads.

Lamb's quarters, goosefoot. "Along with dandelions and watercress, lamb's quarters is one of the most nutritious of foods" (Brill 1994, 47). Being widespread, tasty, long-seasoned, and easily identified, lamb's quarters is a prime candidate for the beginner to learn to identify. This plant has little or no odor, so if the plant you pick has an odor, it's not lamb's quarters and may be poisonous. Leaves are alternating, almost triangular, with a blunt tip and jagged edges. Leaves may develop a white tinge, but they remain perfectly edible. Harvest young shoots up to 10 inches tall, or tender new growth until late fall. This plant is a good pot herb, although it shrinks by about two-thirds when cooked.

Figure 6-19. Lamb's quarters.

Pigweed (amaranth). Similar to lamb's quarters (which is sometimes also called pigweed), but with smoother, more elongated leaves. Use young leaves as a lettuce substitute. Harvest seeds and grind for flour. Seeds have more nutrition and higher protein than grains. Amaranth was a key staple cultivated by the Aztecs for its seeds. Pigweed concentrates nitrates, so use sparingly if taken from fertilized fields.

Pine trees. Harvest pine nuts in the fall from hard, green pine cones. Open the cones in the heat of a fire to reach the pine nuts buried inside. "Open" cones have probably already dropped their nuts. Pine nuts from the piñon pines were once a staple food for the indigenous peoples of Nevada. One of the ways that the U.S. government used to force these tribes to move off their land and onto reservations was to destroy the piñon pines, thereby removing one of their major sources of wild food. Pine needles can be boiled in water to make a tea rich in vitamin C, and in a survival crunch the inner bark can be eaten.

Figure 6-20. Pigweed.

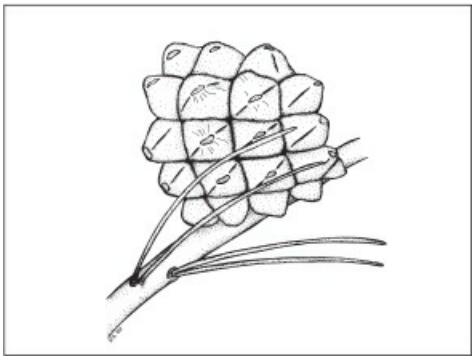


Figure 6-21. Piñon pine.

***Plantain*.** Plantains are identified by their distinctive parallel veins, running the length of the leaves. This plant is another weed common to fields and disturbed areas. Leaves grow in a basal rosette and the plant grows a long, green, central flower stalk. Harvest young greens and new growth for salads or as a pot herb. After midspring, the leaves become very fibrous and are mostly good for vegetable stock or as survival food. Harvest seeds for storage and sprouts.

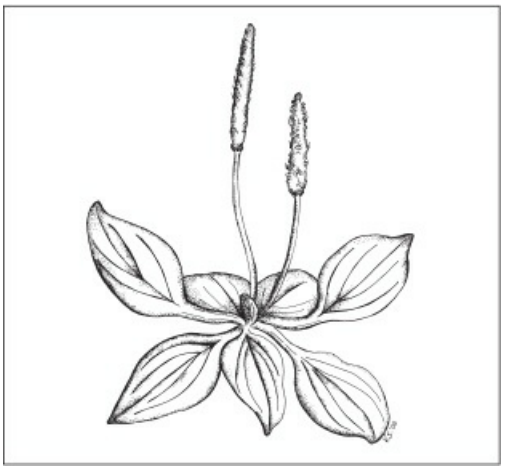


Figure 6-22. Plantain.

Purslane. Cultivated in ancient times, purslane is now mostly seen by gardeners as a pesky weed. Both the seeds and the greens are very nutritious. This plant has succulent-like, smooth, fleshy leaves, often reddish-purple, and tends to lie flat in thick mats. Pinch or cut leafy tips from June through September. Purslane shoots are excellent cooked or raw in salads. This weed likes fields and disturbed areas, and has spread across the country. It has no poisonous look-alikes.

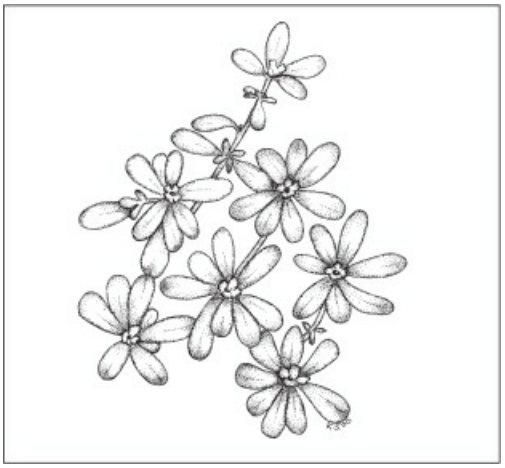


Figure 6-23. Purslane.

Ramps (wild leeks). Similar to its close cousins, wild onions and wild garlic, ramps are found ranging from the Great Lakes to New England and south to the mountains of Georgia. Wild leeks thrive in partially shaded, moist, rich woodlands, often under maples. They have long leaves with parallel veins, similar to many poisonous members of the lily family. Crush a piece of one leaf and smell for the characteristic strong onion odor. Plants that smell like onions are not poisonous. In early spring, they look much like smaller versions of grocery store leeks before the leaves shrivel and are replaced by a slender stalk with an umbrella-like cluster of small white flowers. When a few of the small, three-lobed seed clusters survive the fall, they point to an underground winter supply of delicious bulbs. Harvest green leaves in the spring or the bulbs any time of the year. Use as flavoring in soups and stews or sauté like onions.

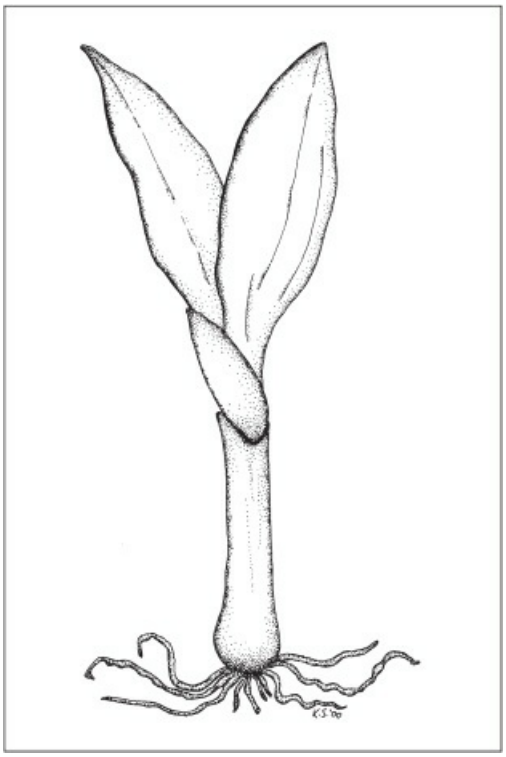


Figure 6-24. Ramp.

Rose hips. Wild roses are found in many different varieties across the United States. Their fruits are a fantastic source of vitamin C. The larger fruits can be quite good raw, although you may want to avoid the bitter seeds. Many people collect rose hips for a delicious tea. They may be boiled and strained to make a sauce with the consistency of applesauce.

Figure 6-25. Rose hips.

Sheep sorrel. An excellent green, sheep sorrel is one of the few wild plants that does not get bitter as summer comes along. It is distinguished by its elongated arrowlike leaves with “ears” that resemble the front view of a sheep’s head, and is found in fields and disturbed areas or areas

of poor soil. There are no poisonous look-alikes, but this plant sometimes grows alongside the poisonous vines nightshade and bindweed that also have arrowshaped leaves. Sheep sorrel leaves are tangy, tart, and kind of lemony. Mix them in salads with blander greens.

***Watercress*.** "Along with dandelions and lamb's quarters, watercress is one of the most nutritious of foods" (Brill 1994, 256). Watercress is another Eurasian-introduced, cultivated green-turned-weed that has spread across America. It is usually found in clear running water, such as springs and small creeks. Wild watercress looks like the store-bought variety and is excellent in salads, sandwiches, and cooked like spinach. Collect young growth nearly all year, but it is best in the spring and autumn. Each sprig of leaves grows alternating off the main stalk and contains paired leaves with a single central leaf at the tip. It flowers in clusters of small, white, four-petaled flowers about one-fifth of an inch across and produces slender, capsuleshaped, ¾-inch-long seeds. The look of the watercress in my local spring varies considerably with the season. In early spring, the leaves sprout with dense, closely spaced, fleshy leaves that lay on the surface of the water. In early summer, shoots rise up out of the water, bearing thin, widely spaced leaves and flowers that look more like the illustration. It is very delicious with a slight peppery taste.

Figure 6-26. Sheep sorrel.

Figure 6-27. Watercress.

Wild onion. Wild onions are found throughout the United States, except in the hot and dry areas. They are found on the plains, hills, and mountains, usually in open areas, and all have the characteristic onion or garlic smell. Its bulb is usually reddish-purple, and the plant has tall slender stalks with a typical allium cluster of flowers. Avoid all onion look-alikes that do not have a strong onion smell when the leaves are crushed, because they may be poisonous.

Poisonous Plants to Avoid

Some poisonous plants to look out for are listed below. A few of these plants are also listed as medicinal herbs, but they are poisonous when eaten in quantity. Both *Edible Wild Plants: A North American Field Guide* by Elias and Dykeman and *Edible Native Plants of the Rocky Mountains* by Harrington contain illustrated guides to some of the common poisonous wild plants.

Figure 6-28. Wild onion.

Common poisonous plants		
American false hellebore	Anemone *(wind flower)*	Angel's trumpet *(Datura)*
Arrowgrass	Azalea	Baneberry (pretty white or red berries)
Bleeding heart	Bloodroot	Bouncing bet
Black locust	Butterflyweed	Castor oil plant
Celadine poppy	Christmas rose	Chokecherry
Cocklebur	Columbine	Corn cockle
Crocus	Daffodil	Daphne
Deadly nightshade	Death camas	Desert rose
Dieffenbachia	Dutchman's pipe	European bittersweet
Foxglove *(Digitalis)*	Frangipani *(Plumeria)*	Horse chestnut
Horsetail	Horse nettle	Hyacinth
Iris	Jack in the pulpit	Jimsonweed
Jessamine	Larkspur (annual delphinium)	Laurel
Leafy spurge	Lily, flame	Lily, glory
Lily of the valley	Lobelia	Lupine
Marvel of Peru *(Mirabilis)*	Marsh marigold	Mayapple (except fruit)
Mistletoe	Monkshood	Morning glory
Mountain laurel	Narcissus	Oleander
Poinsettia	Poison hemlock	Poison ivy
Poison milkweed	Poison oak	Pokeweed
Poppy, horned	Poppy, Iceland	Poppy *(Somniferum)*
Privet	Purple cockle	Rhododendron
Rhubarb (leaves)	Rosary pea	Skunk cabbage
Snowdrops	Solomon's seal	Star of Bethlehem
St. Johnswort	Tobacco	Water hemlock
Wild black cherry	Wisteria	Yew

(Sources: Emery 1998, 400; Harrington 1998, 8–52; Elias 1990, 258–273; Runyon 1995, 5)

PRESERVING AND STORING FOOD

Once upon a time, unless you lived in the tropics, one key to living a comfortable life was to preserve and store summer's bounty to carry you through the winter months. Between the food supplies stored in the form of living animals, cheeses, salted and dried meats, grains, rootcellared and dried fruits and vegetables, a typical family stored most of the food that they would need

until spring greens began to sprout. With the invention of canning, freezing, and cold storage warehouses, the variety and availability of food stores increased dramatically.

Production, storage, and distribution of the incredible variety of food available today are almost entirely dependent on the plentiful and steady supply of petroleum and electricity. If for some reason these supplies were disrupted, your ability to preserve and store a supply of food would be very important. In addition, if you are producing and storing your own food, you are in control of the quality of that food and the additives and chemicals that go (or don't go) into it. In the following, I provide a few pointers and basic information on food preservation, but suggest that you look to the recommended references for detailed instructions. Keeping written records of what you use and store each year will help you to plan more accurately for the following year. Frozen and canned foods do not last forever, but have a limited shelf life. Try to rotate stocks, and use what you store each year to avoid wasting your food stores.

Root Cellars and Other Cold Storage

Light and heat are the enemies of most stored food. A root cellar is the traditional way of storing fresh foods for use throughout the winter. Even canned foods last far longer when stored at lower temperatures. The shelf life of canned foods is doubled for each 20°F decrease in storage temperature (Stevens 1997, 41). Ideal storage temperatures for most nonfrozen foods are 35°F to 40°F. Most fruits and vegetables shrivel rapidly unless they are kept in a moist environment, so either store them in cartons layered with moist sawdust, burlap, sphagnum moss, and so on, or keep cold storage areas moist by spraying water on the floor at regular intervals. Too much moisture causes rot, so make sure that moisture is not condensing on the ceiling and produce. Root cellars offer a means of storing "live" food for use throughout the winter. Unlike fresh fruits and vegetables, dry fruits, vegetables, seeds, nuts, and grains must be kept as dry as possible, so they should be kept in sealed containers or in a separate, dry, cold storage area.

Freezing is simple, quick, and easy, but has higher energy costs than other preservation methods and requires a steady source of power (or an extremely cold winter). Deep freezers can keep food for years, but the regular frost-free home freezer is only good for about six months. Propane refrigerators and freezers are a good option in remote locations, in solar homes to take the load off solar panels, and where power outages are frequent.

You can build an efficient root cellar in the basement of your house, in the outside stairway to your basement, in a pit outside, or above ground in an insulated structure. The keys to success are temperature and moisture control, and effectively keeping critters away from your stores.

A handy basement root cellar can be made by walling off an unheated corner of the basement with insulated stud walls (see Figure 6-29). Building the walls on a double runner of pressure-treated wood sills allows for wetting down the floor without rotting the walls. If possible, pick a north wall for one of the walls of the root cellar. A window or some type of screened ventilation pipe is required to vent stale air and allow cooler air into the root cellar. Do not insulate the exterior walls. You are using the thermal mass of the earth (at about 55°F) and the colder north wall outside temperatures to help keep your root cellar optimally cold. Place a reliable thermometer inside the root cellar and one outside the window or vent. Open and close the

vent/window to try and keep the cellar temperatures between 35°F and 40°F. Place slats under wooden crates stored on the floor to allow for air circulation and prevent rot.

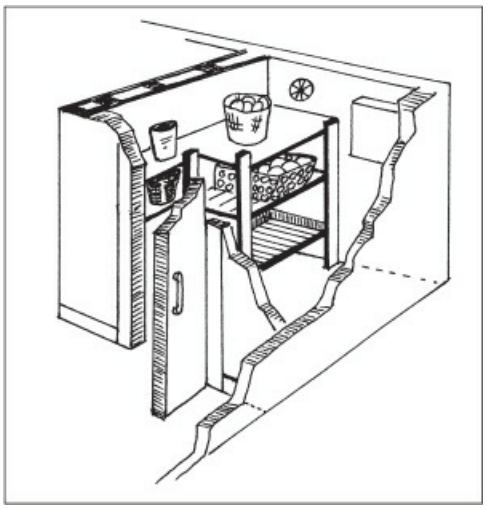


Figure 6-29. In-home root cellar.

You can make an in-ground root cellar when a basement is not available. The main things to watch for are water infiltration/drainage, pest barriers, and adequate insulation from the top to prevent freezing. Some people bury garbage cans or old refrigerators. In severe climates, the storage container should be insulated from above with hay bales, rigid styrene foam panels, or at least one foot of loose snow.

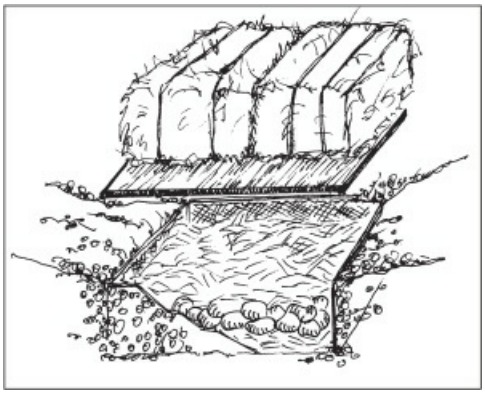


Figure 6-30. In-ground food storage.

lowtech, aboveground storage can consist of a hay bale shack or vented “mounds” to keep food stored through the winter months. Both methods rely on the latent heat of the earth and a thick layer of topside insulation to keep produce cold but not frozen. If vented, the vent should be capped during extremely cold weather. Unfortunately, mice and gophers may enjoy the great nest and food supply that these methods provide, so regular inspection is a must.

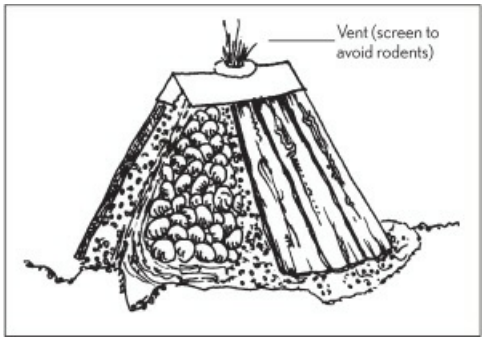


Figure 6-31. Aboveground storage: vented mound.

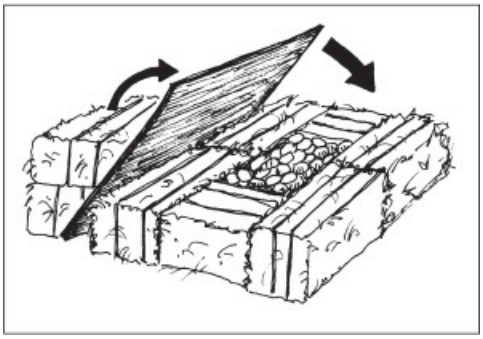


Figure 6-32. Aboveground storage: hay bale shack.

Drying and Smoking Food

Since prehistoric times, humankind has relied on drying and smoking food to preserve a supply for winter or travel. If you have plenty of sunshine and reliable, hot, dry weather, outdoor food drying can be practical and easy. If you have unreliable weather, a commercial or homemade dryer is a lot more practical. Electric thermostat-controlled food dryers will give you the most consistent results with little fuss and effort. You can dry food in your kitchen oven, provided you keep temperatures below 145°F, the point where nutritional content begins to suffer significantly (Hupping 1986, 145). Where there is a good supply of sunshine, solar dryers can dry large quantities of food quickly while keeping insects off the produce. *Stocking Up III,* by Carol Hupping, has a good section on drying and illustrates several different plans for homemade dryers.

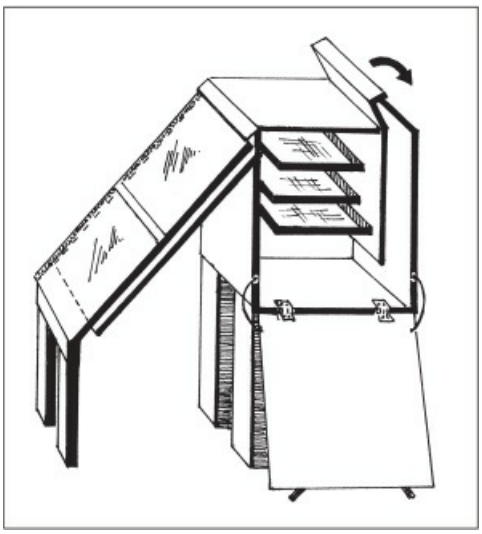


Figure 6-33. Solar dryer.

For outdoor drying, use trays with a nylon mesh screen to lay produce on, which allows for ventilation to all sides of the produce. Cover drying trays with cheesecloth or screen to keep pests off your drying food. Check your dryers with a high-low thermometer. Try to keep drying temperatures between 95°F and 130°F.

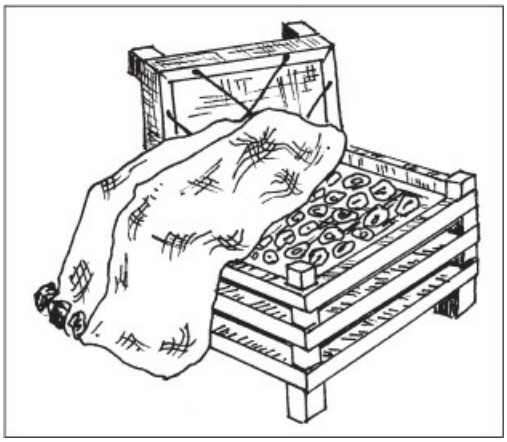


Figure 6-34. Outdoor drying trays.

Preserving Meat

Traditionally, meats and fish have been preserved by smoking, salting, and drying. The addition of nitrates, often by use of the chemical “saltpeter,” is a reliable preservative, but is also a known carcinogen. In addition, smoke tars are known carcinogens. If faced with the necessity to preserve meat, smoking, drying, and salting are all methods that I would use. However, given the health concerns and the hassle, why bother with smoking unless you have no alternative? When available, the freezer is your easiest and cleanest method.

Except for cold storage and canning, meat preservation usually begins with a salt cure. Detailed instructions for curing meat are beyond the scope of this book. To summarize, either submerge meats in a heavy brine solution (about 1½ pounds of salt per gallon of water) or dry pack in pickling salt (not iodized table salt) for several days. Follow this with cold smoking at a temperature of 70°F to 90°F for several more days. Smoked, cured meats should be stored in cool areas and checked regularly for insect infestation. Non-oily fish can be salt cured for several days and then dried in the sun. Fish spoil quickly, so they should be cleaned and started in the salt cure shortly after catching.

Jerky is dry meat that will keep for months to years, if stored with some ventilation. To make jerky, wet cure 1-inch-thick slabs of meat in pickling brine or dry cure in a heavy salt coating for 3 to 6 days, and then slice ¼-inch thick and cold smoke for 12 to 36 hours at 75°F to 85°F. Alternately, smoke at 100°F to 120°F for 2 to 4 hours, and then oven dry at 175°F to 200°F. For primitive, lowtech jerky, simply cut fresh meat into strips ⅛- to ¼-inch thick and hang on racks or branches in the sun to dry. Jerky is done when it snaps if bent back on itself, rather than folding. Overdrying decreases the nutritional value of the jerky.

DAIRY, TOFU, AND TEMPEH

Before the advent of refrigeration, cheese making was the only way to preserve dairy products for a significant period of time. Warm milk quickly spoils, but cultured cheeses and yogurts spoil milk with "friendly" bacteria that yields a good-tasting product rather than just plain old sour milk. Making butter is one way of preserving cream. The salt in butter helps it to keep for a while, but in hot climates without refrigeration, the only solution is to make "ghee" (clarified butter), which keeps well and is used like cooking oil and olive oil. Making your own cheese, butter, and yogurt is a lot simpler than most people think.

Asian cultures make a myriad of healthier low-fat soy products, such as tofu and tempeh. These foods are high in protein and used much like cheese, although some would say they are a far cry from the flavor of cheese. Most products made from tofu rely on spices and sauces for their flavor, because the soybean base is rather bland. In Indonesia, tasty dishes are made with tempeh, a cultured soy product that is strong flavored and very chewy or crunchy, depending on how it is cooked. Carla Emery's *The Encyclopedia of Country Living* has good instructions and recipes for making quite a variety of cheeses, yogurts, tofu, and tempeh. *Stocking Up III* has good chapters on making cheese, butter, yogurt, and ice cream. If you really get into making your own cheese or tofu, check out one of the recommended specialty books.

Making Butter

Making a pound of butter requires about a gallon of cream. Cow's milk separates pretty easily into cream and milk, but goat's milk does not. If you have goats, or a large number of cows, you should probably get a centrifugal separator to separate the cream for butter, cheese, sour cream, and so on. The simple method for cow's milk is to put it into a tall container in a cool location

for 24 to 48 hours, allowing most of the cream to float to the top.

Churning the butter is pretty simple and is accomplished by a variety of methods. Essentially, you are beating the cream until the fat globules stick to each other and separate from what is left of the milk, now called *buttermilk*. The old-fashioned wooden butter churns were pretty ineffective and have mostly become museum pieces. The simplest way to churn, and the one requiring the most work, is to put the cream in a jar and roll it around on the floor or shake it for about a half hour. Blenders (use low speed), food processors, electric drills with a paint-stirring paddle, and butter churns with handor electric-cranked paddles all work well. Lehman's carries all the necessary supplies for efficient butter making.

Once the cream has separated into butter and buttermilk, drain the buttermilk into a separate container through a strainer to catch pieces of butter. Rinse the butter a few times with clean cold water until the rinse comes out clear. Mix about ¾ ounces of salt per pound to help preserve the butter and bring out the flavor. Gather the butter into a ball, then press it out into a thin layer, and keep repeating the process until all the water is worked out and the salt is fully mixed in. Keep the butter cool to store. If butterballs are kept cool and covered by a heavy brine solution (enough salt to float an egg), they can keep for over a month without refrigeration.

Ghee

In hot climates, butter simply will not keep without refrigeration. The Middle Eastern solution is to make clarified butter, known as ghee. Ghee is used just like cooking oil or olive oil, and tastes like vegetable oil with a mild buttery taste. It can keep for months without refrigeration. To make ghee, simmer butter in a pan under low heat for about 30 minutes. Don't let the butter smoke, brown, or burn. Skim off the scum as it forms. When the butter looks totally clear, except for crud that has separated out, strain it through several layers of clean cheesecloth into a scalded container. Scalding kills bacteria in the container and helps keep the ghee from spoiling quickly.

Yogurt

Fresh whole milk and cream spoil rapidly without refrigeration, but by adding cultures of "friendly" bacteria, you can control the way your milk sours. The result is yogurt, which will keep in a cool room for several days. You can start your yogurt with commercial cultures, three tablespoons of commercial yogurt containing "live cultures," or some of your last batch of homemade yogurt. To make your own yogurt, take the following steps:

1. Heat the milk to 150°F to pasteurize it (do not boil).
2. Cool the milk to between 105°F and 110°F.
3. Mix in 2 tablespoons of starter yogurt per quart of milk. Add powdered milk if desired for added thickness.
4. Cover and keep warm until thickened. On top of a refrigerator overnight is a good place to keep it warm. Wrap the container in thick towels if there is no warm place.

5. Refrigerate.

Cheese

Cheesemaking is part skill, science, art, environment, and technique. Like making homemade beer, cheesemaking is a traditional craft that more and more people are enjoying at home. Cleanliness, accurate temperature control, basic instructions, a few modest supplies, and lots of milk are the requirements for successful cheesemaking.

Cottage cheese is the simplest cheese to make, but ricotta and cream cheeses are also fairly easy. It is best to start out making these cheeses first, before moving on to more difficult varieties. See Emery's *The Encyclopedia of Country Living*, *Stocking Up III*, or Carroll's *Home Cheesemaking* for an excellent introduction to making these cheeses. Because hard cheese keeps longer than soft cheese, and you may need to preserve your milk by making it into cheese, I have included a recipe for a simple semihard cheese. Making a pound of hard cheese will require about 5 quarts of milk. A typical small batch of firm cheese starts with 12 to 15 quarts of milk; smaller amounts tend to not work out very well. Use an accurate dairy thermometer. Keep all utensils scrupulously clean, and avoid contaminating with dirty fingers and by tasting. Wash your hands each time before placing them in the curd or handling the cheese.

1. Ripening the Milk

Real cheese is made with the help of bacteria. The wrong bacteria growing in your cheese will ruin it. The sure way to start off right is to use 10 to 15 gallons of pasteurized milk and culture it with ½ cup to 1 quart of fresh cultured buttermilk (with active lactobacillus).

CAUTION: Use a large stainless steel or enameled pot, not aluminum or cast iron.

If the milk is already pasteurized, warm it to 86°F, and then add the cultured buttermilk. Mix thoroughly, and keep covered while holding at 86°F for 30 to 60 minutes as the culture ripens the milk. If the milk requires pasteurization, heat it to 145°F and hold for 30 minutes, cooling rapidly to 86°F. Many people prefer to use raw milk and skip the pasteurization step. A traditional, but less sure technique, is to ripen 11 gallons of fresh milk with 1 gallon of soured milk, mixing thoroughly and allowing it to stand for 15 minutes before adding the rennet in the next step.

2. Curdling the Milk

Keep the milk at 86°F, and add ¼ to ½ teaspoon of liquid rennet diluted in ½ cup of cool water. Rennet is a product made from a cow's stomach that quickly and efficiently curdles the milk. Bacteria, lemon juice, and several plant products can do the same job as rennet. See Carla Emery's *The Encyclopedia of Country Living* for instructions on making several different rennets, including vegetarian rennet. If using rennet tablets, follow directions on the package, or dissolve roughly ¼ tablet in ½ cup of cool water for every 2 gallons of milk. Stir thoroughly, and then cover and hold at 86°F for about 30 minutes until the curd has formed. Test the curd by inserting your washed finger at an angle into the curd. Lift your finger slowly and see whether the curd breaks cleanly around your finger. If it breaks cleanly, it's done. If it has the consistency

of yogurt, it's not done yet.

3. Cutting the Curd

Using a long knife, cut all the way through the curd in a crisscross pattern spaced about ½ inch apart. Cut the curd horizontally into ½-inch cubes, either with a stiff wire or by sticking your hand in the curd and using a knife. Alternately, hold the knife at a 45° angle and cut repeatedly in both directions to cut the curd strips into shorter pieces.

4. Heating the Curd

Stir the curd gently for a couple of minutes, then *slowly* heat to 102°F. Stir constantly to avoid burning the curd on the bottom of the pot. It should take 30 to 60 minutes to heat it from 86°F to 102°F. During this time, a yellowish liquid, the whey, will start separating from the curds. Hold at this temperature for about a half hour, until the curds reach the desired firmness. To test for firmness, squeeze and quickly release a handful of curds. If the curds are elastic and tend to not stick together, they are done.

5. Remove the Whey and Add Salt

Put cheesecloth over a large colander, and pour the curds into the colander. Save the whey for bread, animals, or the compost heap (it's very nutritious). Once the curds are well drained, sprinkle with two tablespoons of salt and mix well.

6. Pressing the Cheese

Either tie the ends of the cheesecloth together to make a bag, and hang it where it can drip for the rest of the day, or use a cheese press to squeeze the liquid out of the cheese. You may fashion a crude cheese press from a cylindrical bucket (perhaps a large coffee can?) with holes drilled in the bottom and sides, weighting the top with a bucket filled with stones or water, or a pile of books. To get by with fewer weights, use a long pole as a lever and hang a bucket from the end to weight your homemade cheese press. Press for about a half hour under a light weight (approximately 10 to 15 pounds). Then increase the weight to about 40 to 60 pounds and press for 16 to 20 more hours. If you used the hanging method, wrap the cheese bag with a band of cloth, like a headband, and press all night between two paper plates weighted with a heavy flatiron or something similar. If you plan on making cheese regularly, do yourself a favor and either buy or make a cheese press (see resources section).

7. Drying the Cheese

Remove the cheesecloth and bandage the cheese with a clean, dry cloth. Set the cheese in a cool (50°F to 60°F), dry place and turn it every day as it dries until it forms a hard rind. If it shows signs of mold, just rub it with butter and cut the mold away before paraffining.

8. Paraffining

Wrap your wheel of cheese in one or two layers of cheesecloth. Melt 1 to 2 pounds of paraffin to almost boiling and dip or brush the wheel in the wax.

9. Cure the Cheese

Keep your wheel of cheese in a cool (50°F to 60°F), dry place while it cures. Turn the wheel every few days to discourage mold, and wash the shelf to keep it clean and free of mold. A little

mold under the wax is okay. If the cheese starts to swell, that means that some of the wrong kind of bacteria invaded it and ruined your wheel of cheese. Cure the wheel for 6 weeks for a mild flavor, or 4 to 6 months if you like sharp cheese (Emery 1998, 775; Cobleigh 1996, 53).

Making Rennet for Cheese

If you have to, you can make your own rennet from a suckling calf, pig, or lamb that has not yet eaten solid food. Take the biggest stomach, cut it into strips, salt it, and dry like it jerky. Cut a 1-inch square and add it to milk for the equivalent of two drops of liquid rennet (Emery 1998, 751).

RAISING ANIMALS

We used to live on 10 acres in the foothills of the Sierra Nevada, where we had a large organic garden and about fifteen chickens. Our "girls" would greet us excitedly each day to see what kind of delicious kitchen scraps we had for them. They were especially excited when we gave them the leftover pulp from a batch of fresh carrot juice. In return for our garbage, they rewarded us with wonderful delicious eggs that had bright yellow-orange yolks and were often so big that they wouldn't fit into our recycled supermarket egg cartons.

I can't begin to do justice to the broad subject of animal husbandry in the limited space of this chapter, but what I can do is offer you a few words of wisdom and point you in the direction of a number of fine books to help you get started. Emery's *The Encyclopedia of Country Living* is a great all-around reference that will teach you most of what you need to know about raising and caring for animals as well as preparing food from animal products. If you want to know more about raising animals in sustainable ways and maybe even making a healthy profit off of a small farm, check out one of Joe Salatin's books (see references). Joe has become highly successful using sustainable humane farming practices and capitalizing on the growing market for wholesome nutritious meat, dairy, and poultry products. For an excellent selection of books and videos on horse care and saddlery, see Centaur Forge listed in the Chapter 12 resources or see *Small Farmer's Journal* (the emphasis is on farming with draft animals) listed in the magazine section of this chapter's references. For more books on animal husbandry, see the references section at the end of this chapter, the Acres U.S.A. catalog, or the Storey Publishing catalog.

Raising a few animals alongside your garden can be a great boost to both garden and animal. Chickens love to feast on grubs and other bugs that would otherwise feast on your garden. The carbon-rich straw that makes such wonderful bedding for animals also makes great compost when mixed with nitrogen-rich manure. Heavy rains carried runoff from our chicken coop directly into our garden, contributing to a particularly rich soil. A word of caution about predators—they can be remarkably persistent in their efforts to feast on your livestock. At one point we found ourselves losing one chicken a night. It turned out that a raccoon was climbing up the outside 8-foot walls of our chicken coop and squeezing in through a gap between the roof joists where he had peeled back a piece of steel grating that allowed for ventilation. We knew one man who got so tired of a pack of dogs digging under both a fence and the walls of his chicken coop that he eventually trapped six of the marauding dogs with a bear trap. Finally, he

found a permanent solution to this problem when he poured a cement floor in his chicken coop.

HUNTING AND TRAPPING

Traditional Native Americans respected the spirit and lives of the animals they hunted, killing only as much as they needed for food and utilizing nearly every part of the animal. Using only a primitive bow and arrow, a knife, or bare hands, stalking and hunting larger animals was often a slow, multi-day process. Today, with modern rifles and much larger human populations, wild animals and game would probably grow scarce days after a significant disaster that forced people into hunting for survival. For good instructions on hunting and trapping with primitive tools, check out *Exploring the Outdoors with Indian Secrets* by Allan A. Macfarlan (originally published as *Modern Hunting with Indian Secrets*). Allan grew up as a neighbor of the Iroquois and was a friend to many of the chiefs of the Ojibway, Cheyenne, Comanche, Haida, and Blackfoot tribes, chronicling Native American culture in a half-dozen books.

If hunting without a rifle, please respect your prey and try to shoot it at close range, or make your traps well, to minimize the animal's suffering and improve your chances of success. In the recommended survival references for Chapter 4, you will find detailed instructions and descriptive diagrams for many more varieties of traps and primitive hunting implements than I can show here. For rudimentary instructions on flintknapping (arrowheads, stone knives, and so on) and bone tools, see Chapter 4. If you want to know how to make traditional flintlock rifles, see *Foxfire 5*, edited by Elliot Wigginton.

Bow and Arrow

The bow and arrow is probably the most effective of the traditional hunting weapons, and is not too difficult to make. Seasoned, resilient, long-grained woods are best for bow making. English longbows were traditionally made from yew trees, but fir, cedar, hickory, juniper, oak, white elm, birch, willow, hemlock, maple, and alder will usually do. "Green" wood bows tend to lose their strength or crack after a couple weeks, needing replacement. Traditional crafting of bows often extended for over a year, beginning with the careful selection and curing of wood for the stave.

Bow

For the short-term, crude bows of many different green woods will suffice. For durable bows, select strong, straight, resilient, knot-free young saplings such as yew, greasewood, ironwood, hickory, or ash. For the bow stave, select one or two supple limbs, about 1½ to 2 inches thick in the middle, and free of knots and branches. Fire-killed standing wood has already been seasoned. Test the flex of your chosen wood and discard if it shows any signs of cracking. Depending on the stiffness and spring of the wood, either shave flats in the center section of each stave and fasten two curved staves together for a double bow (see Figure 6-35) or shape the stave so that it is about 2 inches thick at the handle, tapering uniformly to ⅝ inch thick at the ends (see Figure 6-36). Notch the ends for the bowstring. Repeatedly greasing and heating a carved bow in front

of the fire over a period of several days will deter cracking and make it more durable. The best strings are made from sinew (see Chapter 10 on textiles) or rawhide, but you can use any strong string or make your own cordage from animal fur, hair, or plant fibers (see Chapter 4). Rather than twisting extra-thick clusters of plant fibers, stronger bowstrings are made by braiding or twisting together multiple strands of finer cordage to make thicker cordage. When not in use, loosen the bowstring to save the bow's power. Once a bow has lost its power, throw it away and make another one. A cloth or piece of leather strapped to the inside of your forearm can help prevent chafing from the bowstring.

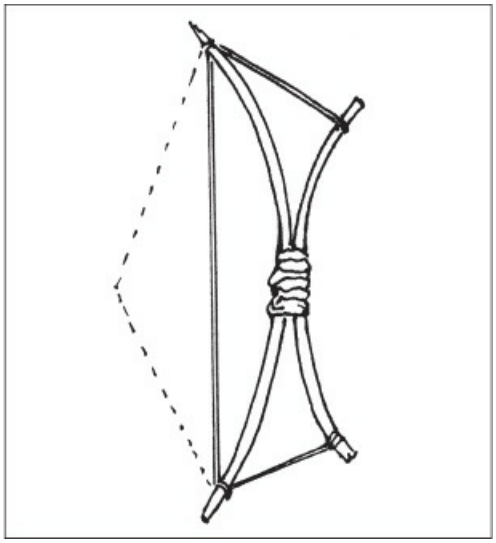


Figure 6-35. Double bow.

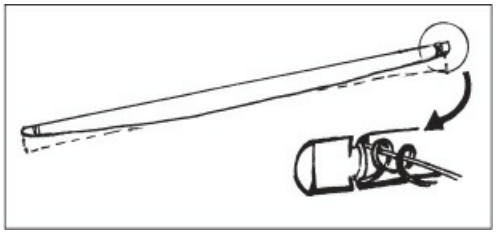


Figure 6-36. Shaping the bow stave.

Arrows

Any straight wood will do for arrows, but birch and willow sucker branches sprouting from the base of tree trunks work particularly well. Make arrows about ¼ inch in diameter and the length of your arm. Notch one end for the bowstring to catch on (the "nock"). Some type of fletching should be attached about 2 to 3 inches in front of the nock to stabilize the arrow and ensure a reasonably straight and long-distance flight. Split feathers work best for fletching, but paper, cloth, or even split leaves will do. Attach three or four feathers to the shaft. The simplest arrowhead is a sharpened and flame-hardened wooden point. For larger game and more durability, fashion arrowheads from sheet metal, stone, or bone (see Chapter 4 for basic flintknapping). Attach the arrowheads and fletching to the arrow shaft using fine cordage. Wet sinew works best, because it shrinks and sticks to itself as it dries. Seal the binding with boiled

pine pitch to prevent unraveling.

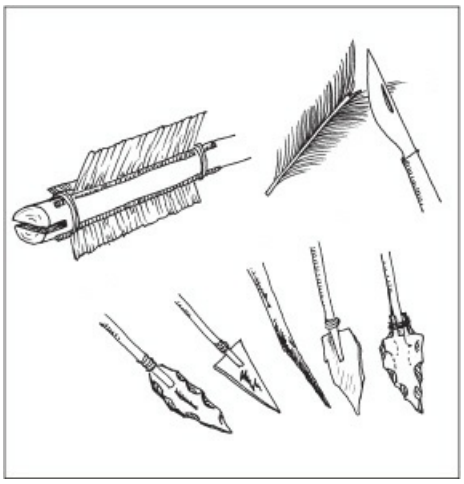


Figure 6-37. Traditional arrows.

Traps

Using traps is a very effective way of catching animals for food, but may result in prolonged suffering for the trapped animal. Traps are not selective. They can kill the neighbor's dog or harm an unsuspecting human who stumbles into them, so use traps only in survival situations and dismantle your practice traps when finished. Set traps in areas near abundant food or a water source that animals frequent. Look for animal scat and signs of feeding to locate a good spot for your trap. Fabricate and test your trap in camp before setting it at the trap location. Disturb the area around the trap minimally and spend as little time there as possible. Animals have a keen sense of smell. You might want to mask your scent by holding your trap materials in the smoke of a fire before setting them or by rubbing them with crushed, nonpoisonous leaves. Smoke on your hands can also cover your scent when you handle the traps. Baited traps are usually effective in semi-open areas. Baitless traps are best set in animal runs where vegetation and natural features force animals to follow a narrow path. Many animals are smarter than you might think, so make traps look as natural as possible. Leave bark on branches, and mask carved areas by darkening them with smoke or smearing dirt on the fresh cuts.

There are many designs for traps and snares, but most are variations on a few basic themes. Traps typically try to strangle, dangle, or mangle the prey. The *SAS Survival Handbook*, *Camping Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*, and *Tom Brown's Field Guide to Wilderness Survival* (see Chapter 4) all have numerous illustrations for traps and snares. John and Geri McPherson, in their book *Primitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills,* go more for quality than quantity. They provide detailed pictures and instructions for several traps that they find particularly useful.

Figure-Four Deadfall

This classic deadfall trap does not use cordage and can be made to any size. Three sticks are

carved and stacked to support a massive weight, such as a large rock, log, group of lashed logs, and so on. An upright stake is driven into the ground to support the entire mechanism. The bait bar is notched in the center and at the far end. The center notch hooks a flat on the middle zone of the upright stake, while the end notch of the bait bar catches the locking arm. A notch in the locking arm pivots on the chamfered end of the upright stake. The deadfall weight is balanced against the locking arm, dropping the deadfall weight when the bait bar is tugged. To figure the proper spots for notching the various parts, lay them flat on the ground and mark the notch locations.

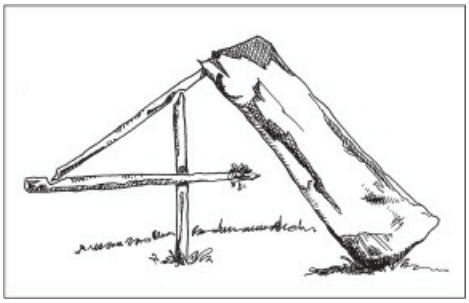


Figure 6-38a. Figure-four deadfall.

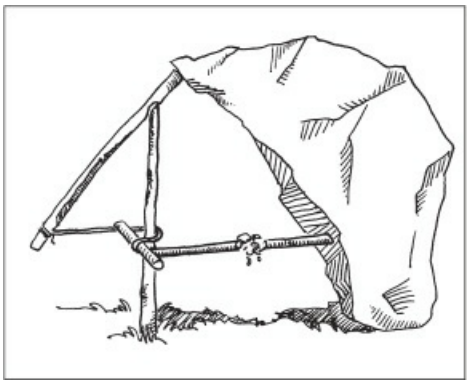


Figure 6-38b. Figure-four deadfall.

Rolling Snare

There are numerous variations on this theme. Baitless varieties are placed next to an animal run, where a passing animal will stick its nose through the snare noose and trigger the trap. Baited varieties are set in semiopen areas where passing animals will go for the bait. A forked stake, or notched peg, is driven into the ground for an anchor. A second forked stick, or notched peg, is tied to cordage attached to the top of a springy sapling. The sapling is bent down, and the trigger is hooked under the notch in the anchor stake. A loop of cordage makes a loose, wide, open noose that is held open across the game run via small twigs stuck in the ground. A passing animal triggers the snare and is held in the air by the noose.

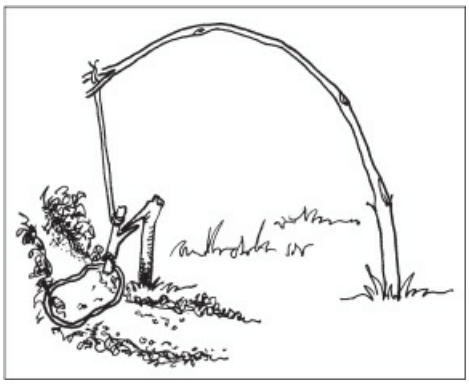


Figure 6-39. Rolling snare.

T-Bar Snare

The T-bar snare is a baited snare, similar to the rolling snare. Start forming a circle of stakes by driving two notched stakes into the ground. Form the rest of the circle with plain vertical stakes. The bait bar hooks into the notches on the first two anchor stakes. Flatten the top of the bait bar just enough so that it catches in the anchor stakes and holds horizontal under tension. The vertical stakes force the game to reach its head through the snare noose to reach the bait bar. Carve the notches in the anchor stakes and the flats on the bait bar so that a slight upward tug on the bait bar releases the snare.

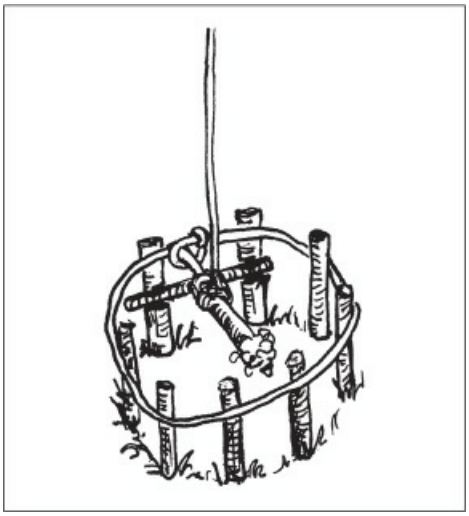


Figure 6-40. T-bar snare.

Bola

Bolas are traditional weapons used by Eskimos and many indigenous tribes for hunting birds. Stones are either tied directly to string or held in circles of material tied to string ends, with each string about 3 feet long. The bola is twirled around and then thrown to tackle birds in flight or on the ground, tangling in their wings.

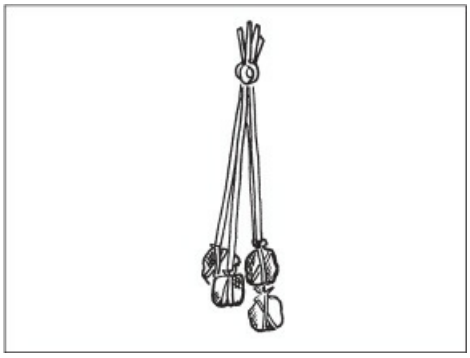


Figure 6-41. Bola.

Skinning and Cleaning

Mammals should be bled, and all animals must be gutted to avoid rapid spoilage. Birds should be plucked, saving their feathers for use as bait, insulation, arrows, or for tying fishing flies. You can usually leave the skin on birds, but skin lizards and other animals, being careful not to damage the pelt if it is to be used for something else. Most of the animal can be put to use. Brains can be eaten or used to tan hides (see Chapter 10); hearts, liver, and kidneys can be eaten or used as bait; stomachs and intestines can be used for bottles and containers (turn them inside out and wash them first). Hooves can be used for glue, and bones can be split for marrow and used to fabricate a variety of tools. Blood is a rich source of vitamins and minerals and can enrich and thicken stews.

When cleaning an animal, take care not to puncture the entrails or scent glands. Use your eyes and nose to alert you to signs of disease in the organs (funny color and smell) and discard them if there is any question of their quality. If you have any skin cuts, take precautions to prevent infecting yourself from the animal.

Cleaning Procedure

1. Hang larger animals by the rear legs, with ropes tied just above the knees, and cut the large neck vein (jugular) to bleed thoroughly. If the blood is not drained, the meat will spoil quickly.
2. On males, tie off the penis to avoid getting urine on the meat. Remove the scent glands, which might taint the meat. Some deer have scent glands located on their rear legs, just behind the knee.
3. Cut a ring through the skin around each leg and arm by the knee joint.
4. Cut down the inside of the rear legs from the knee to the crotch, making a circle around the genitals.
5. Make a shallow incision through the skin from the tail all the way up the belly to the chin. Pointing the knife's sharp edge outward and working your fingers behind the blade will help keep it from cutting too deep.
6. Make cuts on the inside of the forelegs to the chin.

7. Peel the skin from the flesh. To keep from damaging the pelt, use your knife minimally while peeling.
8. Pinch the flesh in front of the anus and sex organs, and then make a shallow incision into the abdominal cavity. Using the fingers to guide your knife, open the abdominal cavity all the way to the windpipe and gullet, being careful to avoid piercing the entrails. The bulk of the internal organs will spill out and may be inspected and stored for use. The anus should be clear, showing daylight through it.
9. Provided the weather is cool, hanging the carcass for several days will tenderize the meat, and harmful parasitic bacteria will die. Keep flies off the meat. Protect your meat from predators and scavengers.

Fat

Fat will go rancid quickly unless it is rendered. To render fat, heat it until it turns liquid, and then filter it twice through dried grasses until it becomes pure tallow. Tallow may be used for lanterns, candles, cooking grease, and waterproofing, or may be mixed with equal parts of jerky and dried, crushed berries to make a highly concentrated trail food called *pemmican* (the original "trail mix") that can keep for years without spoiling.

FISHING

You don't need fancy fishing gear to catch a fish, but if there are 500 other fisherman out fishing nearby, chances are slim that you will catch much. My wife was recently talking with a friend of hers who lives on the windward side of the island of Oahu. He was lamenting the fact that as the human population of Oahu exploded, the fish population took a dive. Walter told her, "Forty years ago, when I was a child, I could catch ten to twenty fish in a single afternoon of fishing out there on the reef. Nowadays, I could fish for two full days and not catch a single fish." Of course, not every place is as densely populated as Oahu, so here are a few techniques that might come in handy sometime.

You will find that fish generally feed early in the morning around sunrise, just before sunset, and just before the onset of a storm. On sunny, hot days, the fish generally head toward deeper water or seek shelter in the shade of fallen trees or riverbanks. On cold days, they often warm themselves in shallow pools. You can catch fish with your bare hands, nets, traps, baskets, baited hooks, spears, and arrows. Take your time to observe the fish and what they are eating. Bait that is the same as what the fish are eating, or closely resembles it, often works well.

Angling

You can improvise fishing line and hooks from a wide variety of materials. A fishing pole is not required, but a simple young sapling makes an acceptable rod and can help to cast the bait into the water or guide the line. For fishing line, handmade cordage (see Chapter 4) or sinew (see Chapter 10) will do. You may scavenge materials such as electrical wire or use cordage methods to braid common thread into stronger line. Small hooks can catch large and small fish, but large

hooks will only catch large fish. You can improvise hooks from a wide variety of materials, such as bone, pins, nails, thorns, and carved wood (see Figure 6-42). Probably the simplest improvised hook is a sharpened, slender piece of stick or bone tied around its middle. The sharpened stick is pushed into the bait so that it is held flush against the line. When the bait is eaten, the stick tends to toggle outward and stick into the fish's belly or throat.

For bait, try grasshoppers, flies, meat, berries, fish eggs, worms, minnows, and grubs. If the bait is still alive and wriggling, it is usually more effective. You can tie bits of feathers and tufts of fur onto hooks to make your own fishing "flies." Artificial lures can be carved from wood to simulate minnows, or you can make your own "spinners" by attaching a shiny bit of foil or metal above the hook in such a way that it moves and reflects light, simulating light flashing off a minnow as it swims. Attach a weight and a float to the line to position live bait at the desired depth, where the fish are hanging out. Lines can have multiple hooks and bait at different depths to improve your chances by fishing several levels at once. Crude floats could be made from some wood or a piece of animal intestine inflated with air.

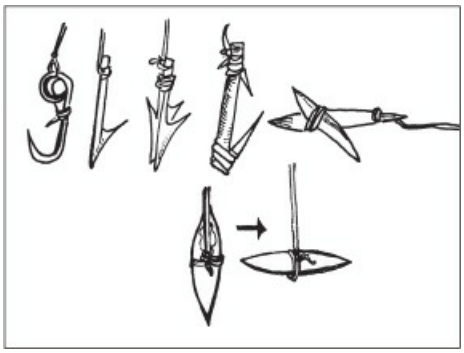


Figure 6-42. Homemade hooks.

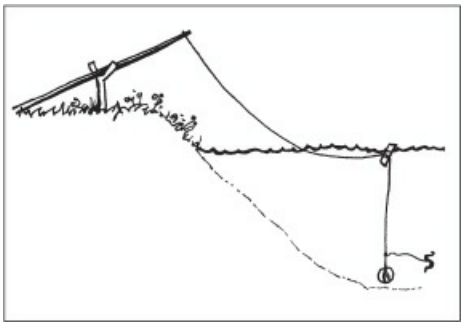


Figure 6-43. Fishing line with float and weights.

Catching Fish by Hand

This takes patience, unless there are tons of fish, such as when the salmon are spawning. Wade into the water and stand very still. Fish will often come up to your legs and nibble on your leg hairs. Slowly lower your hands into the water and allow the fish to come near. Have your hands

near the bottom. If the fish is big, try to grasp the fish by the gills and throw it out of the water onto the shore. If the fish is small, just try to scoop it up and quickly throw it onto the shore. Late in the summer, in the High Sierra of California, friends of mine have fished like this to their hearts' content when large numbers of fish were trapped in shrinking pools as creeks were running dry.

Spearing Fish

When fish congregate in shallow waters, spear fishing is relatively fast and easy. A barbed, double-pronged, forked spear is far more effective at catching and holding fish than a single-tipped spear. The addition of a central fork to make a trident spear increases efficiency and is worth the extra effort. Fire-harden wooden tips by rotating them in a flame until they sizzle and brown, but do not allow them to char.

Check for hardness by creasing with your thumbnail.

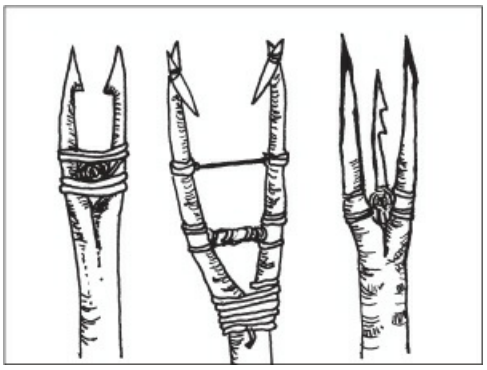
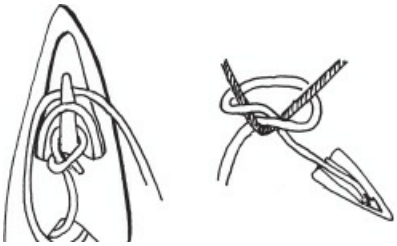


Figure 6-44. Fish spears.

Fishing with Nets

If you have a good source of plant fiber, such as dogbane, milkweed, hemp, or yucca, you can make your own fishing nets. Attach a net to a hoop on a pole, stretch it across a narrows in a fast-moving creek, or fish from a boat. Archeologists have found plant-fiber fishing nets that are hundreds of years old and are still usable. See Chapter 4 for basic instructions and references for cordage to make fishing nets. Even though hand-twisted fibers make the tightest and strongest cordage, fishing nets were almost always made from leg-rolled fibers due to the greater efficiency of leg rolling the large amounts of cordage that go into a single net.

> **CAUTION: Fishing with large "gill nets"stretched across a river can rapidly deplete the local fish population, jeopardizing future fish harvests.**



ɛtting needle

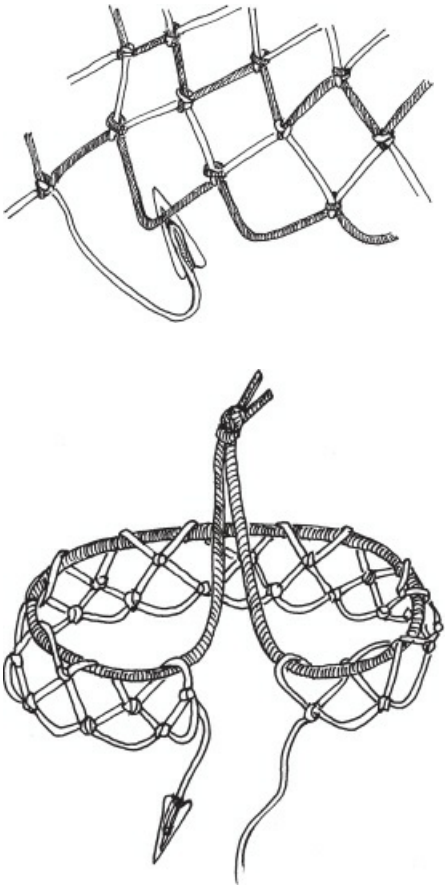


Figure 6-45. Handmade netting.

REFERENCES

Growing Food

Books

ɔw to Grow More Vegetables (and Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine, **by John Jeavons.** 2006, Parasite

program quick reference chart, ISBN 978-1580087964. Published by Ten Speed Press, P.O. Box 7123, Berkeley, CA 94707. List price $19.95

Truly a landmark book on the "Grow Biointensive Food-Raising Method" for sustainably growing high yields of crops on a minimum of land without machinery and with minimal use of water, energy, and fertilizers. People in over 110 countries, in a great variety of climates and soils, are using Grow Biointensive methods to grow food for their families and communities. The book contains excellent information on soil health, fertility, and sustainability. You might want to supplement it with one or two of the other gardening references.

***ur-Season Harvest,* by Eliot Coleman.** 1999, 236 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132279. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $24.95

Whether you are a beginner or an experienced gardener, this is an excellent all-around book on organic gardening. Written by one of the world's master organic growers, this beautifully illustrated and well-written book also explains methods for extending the harvest of garden-fresh vegetables throughout the winter months. In the harsh climate of his farm in Harborside, Maine, Coleman refined traditional techniques for protecting cold-resistant crops through the winter months. This book will show you how to provide your home with a source of garden-fresh vegetables all year long without expensive equipment or a heated greenhouse, and has been updated with additional information and knowledge gleaned from another 10 years of personal experience and a visit to French winter gardens.

***e New Organic Grower: A Master's Manual of Tools and Techniques for the Home and Market Gardener,* by Eliot Coleman.** 1995, 340 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0930031756. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $24.95

Back in 1965, when Eliot Coleman began farming organically, the common belief was that organic farming couldn't possibly compete with farms using chemical pesticides and fertilizers. Through hard work, careful observation, experimentation, and continuous practical innovation, Eliot proved them wrong. This is an excellent handbook for the serious gardener or small-scale grower, filled with practical advice from an expert who learned by doing, and by doing it well. If you were to buy just a single book on organic gardening, you could not go wrong with this one!

***e Vegetable Gardener's Bible: Discover Ed's High-Yield W-O-R-D System for all North American Gardening Regions,* by Edward C. Smith.** 2000, 310 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580172127. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $24.95

A fine, practical handbook by a top-notch organic gardener who grows incredible vegetables in his large garden in Vermont's Northeast Kingdom. This book would be very helpful for anyone wishing to start a garden. Beautifully illustrated with very clear photographs and color drawings.

***ganic Gardening: The Natural No-Dig Way,* by Charles Dowding.** 2007, 223 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1903998915. Published by Green Books, Ltd., Foxhole, Dartington, Totnes, Devon TQ9 6EB, England. Distributed in the United States by Chelsea Geeen Publishing. List price $22.00

Let master gardener Charles Dowding show you how to grow incredible organic vegetables without tilling the soil. Good tips, instructions, and recipes from a man who has had a successful business selling organic produce to local shops and restaurants for over 25 years.

ırdening When It Counts: Growing Food in Hard Times, *by Steve Solomon.* 2006, 340 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715530. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $19.95

A very practical book by a long-time grower, excommercial seedsman, and someone who has lived for many years with little income, eating mainly what grew in his own garden, so his garden had to produce or he went hungry. Having worked with the Jeavons biointensive approach for a number of years, this author's experiences growing crops for his seed business persuaded him to change his methods to improve yields with less water consumption and fewer soil amendments. A good book for starting your first garden, or a fine addition to your gardening library.

lviva: How to Grow $500,000 on One Acre and Peace on Earth, **by Anna Edey.** 1998, 232 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0966234909. Published by Trailblazer Press, RFD 1 Box 582, Vineyard Haven, MA 02568. List price $35.00

This is a very inspiring, practical, well-illustrated, "how-I-did-it" book written by Anna Edey, who developed her own version of "bio-benign living design" and in the late 1970s built a solar home and solar greenhouse on a cold, cloudy New England island (Martha's Vineyard) where people said it couldn't be done. She not only did it, but both structures also performed better than she had imagined in every way—from requiring no more heat in the greenhouse (even when it was -4°F outside) than was provided by the limited winter sun plus one hundred chickens and thirty angora rabbits, to creating a lush semitropical interior living space, to providing an abundance of superior-quality vegetables and garden greens year-round. This produce provided Anna with an outstanding organic diet plus a generous income earned through selling her exceptional produce to upscale Boston and Martha's Vineyard restaurants. As a green builder, I found her flush-toilet composting system quite interesting, since some of my off-grid friends have stated that composting toilets are the least favored appliances in their green homes. Our current "modern" sewage treatment practice of using septic systems in suburban areas causes high volumes of nitrates to leach into public water and aquifers, polluting drinking water and disrupting ecosystems. Anna's alternate systems (utilized in other commercial structures in addition to her farm and home) capture these pollutants and remove them from her wastewater, utilizing them instead as natural fertilizers for her bountiful gardens.

ıe Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book**, by Carla Emery.** 2008, 928 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1570615535. Published by Sasquatch Books, 615 Seco Ave., Seattle, WA 98104. List price $29.95

This is a great all-around reference, containing a wealth of information and resource lists for growing your own food. It is voluminous, thorough, and practical. See the description in the references section of Chapter 1 for more details.

l New Square Foot Gardening: Grow More in Less Space! **by Mel Bartholomew.** 2006, 272 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1591862024. Published by Cool Springs Press, 101 Forrest Crossing Blvd., Franklin, TN 37064. List price $19.99

An excellent book for intensively planting a small backyard, rooftop, or window garden. An efficient, wellorganized, low-maintenance gardening method developed by a retired engineer turned famous gardener.

***dale's All-New Encyclopedia of Organic Gardening: The Indispensable Resource for Every Gardener,* Fern Marshall Bradley and Barbara W. Ellis (editors).** 1993, 704 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0875965994. Published by Rodale Press, 33 East Minor St., Emmaus, PA 18098. List price $19.95

This volume contains more than 400 entries collected from a national team of gardening experts. With contents arranged alphabetically by topic, the experienced gardener will easily find answers to most questions or detailed information on most common plants. The book is encyclopedic in scope, the writing is dry (not inspiring), and many of the topics are covered only in brief summary detail. Good as a reference guide but not as a book to design and plan your first garden.

***e Organic Gardener's Handbook of Natural Insect and Disease Control: A Complete Problem-Solving Guide to Keeping Your Garden and Yard Healthy Without Chemicals,* Barbara W. Ellis and Fern Marshall Bradley (editors).** 1996, 544 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0875967530. Published by Rodale Press, 33 East Minor St., Emmaus, PA 18098. List price $21.95

This book is an excellent source of information for prevention, diagnosis, and treatments that avoid the use of toxic chemicals. Very thorough, it covers many different techniques and has several lists of suppliers of different kinds of natural and nontoxic pest controls.

***e Gardener's Guide to Common-Sense Pest Control,* by William Olkowski, Sheila Daar, and Helga Olkowski.** 1996, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1561581498. Published by Taunton Press, 63 South Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06740-5506. List price $19.95

An excellent source of information on integrated pest management (IPM). Here are all the low- to notoxicity methods for ridding your lawn, garden, and trees of destructive pests without poisoning yourself. They also publish the larger hardcover handbook, *Common-Sense Pest Control: Least-Toxic Solutions for Your Home, Garden, Pets and Community* (1991, 715 pp., ISBN 0-94239-163-2, list price $39.95), which covers all kinds of pest control, not only those for the garden and plants.

***e Humanure Handbook: A Guide to Composting Human Manure,* by Joseph C. Jenkins.** 2005, 255 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0964425835. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $25.00

The author has been up to his elbows in deep doodoo for the past 20 years, since he started recycling and composting his family's "humanure" in 1979. Amusing and well researched, this book includes sections on greywater systems, composting toilets, state regulations, and how to safely compost human waste without significant health risks. Recycling human organic waste is definitely a significant component in building a sustainable society. In Asia, where the pressures of human populations are far greater than in the United States, they already recycle most of their organic human waste. Properly composted human waste is cleaner and more sterile than most commercially available animal waste–based manures.

***ed to Seed: Seed Saving and Growing Techniques for Vegetable Gardeners,* by Susan**

Ashworth. 2002, 228 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1882424580. Published by Seed Savers Exchange, 3076 North Winn Road, Decorah, IA 52101. List price $24.95

A terrific manual for preserving, growing, pollinating, and sprouting a large variety of seeds. This book contains detailed information about each vegetable, including its botanical classification, flower structure and means of pollination, required population size, isolation distance, techniques for caging or hand-pollination, and also the proper methods for harvesting, drying, cleaning, and storing the seeds. *Seed to Seed* is widely acknowledged as the best guide available for home gardeners to learn effective ways to produce and store seeds on a small scale.

***ındy Farm Devices and How to Make Them,* by Rolfe Cobleigh.** 2007, 304 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-160239103. Published by Skyhorse Publishing, 555 8th Ave., Suite 903, New York, NY 10018. List price $9.95

First published in 1909, this is a valuable little book for the homesteader on a budget. Some of the sketches are for absurd little devices that are more amusing than practical, but most are for handy constructions that could come in useful if one wanted (or had to) do things for oneself. Illustrations include chicken coops, cistern filters, miter boxes, stump pullers, grain bins, cheese making, fleecing, farm gates, and more. These are mostly simple sketches, so don't expect any detailed do-it-yourself plans or complete written instructions.

Magazines

ɾres USA: A Voice for Eco-Agriculture. Subscription: $27.00 per year for 12 issues. Acres USA, P.O. Box 91299, Austin, TX 78709. Call (800) 355-5313 or see their Web site at www.acresusa.com.

An excellent publication for the serious organic gardener or commercial farmer, Acres USA is devoted to publicizing the latest information on planet-friendly sustainable organic agricultural practices. *Acres USA* also has a very extensive mail-order book catalog for organic farming, raising chemical-free livestock, homesteading, and natural health.

ɾganic Gardening. Subscription: $23.94 for two years for 12 issues. Organic Gardening Magazine, P.O. Box 7320, Red Oak, IA 51591. Call (800) 666-2206 or see their Web site at www.organicgardening.com.

This is Rodale's classic magazine on organic gardening. Their Web site has a library of useful online articles.

ıall Farmer's Journal. Subscription: $35.00 per year for 4 issues. Small Farmer's Journal, P.O. Box 1627, Sisters, OR 97759. Call (800) 876-2893 or see their Web site at www.smallfarmersjournal.com.

This is the magazine to get if you wish to run a small farm with animal power (draft horses, oxen, mules, etc.). It also covers organic farming, sustainable agriculture, livestock, etc. They publish and distribute an excellent selection of books on draft animals, horsedrawn carriages, balers, etc.

> **NOTE: See also the magazines listed in the references section of Chapter 1. Each of these has regular articles on growing your own food, herbs, and animals.**

Permaculture

***rth User's Guide to Permaculture,* 2nd edition, by Rosemary Morrow.** 2006, 128 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0731812714. Published by Kangaroo Press, an imprint of Simon and Schuster Pty Limited, Suite 2, Lower Ground Floor, 14-16 Suakin St., Pymble NSW, Australia 2073. List price $16.00

This is probably the best simple, clear, and easy-toread introduction to permaculture concepts. If you want a low-cost introduction to permaculture, this is the book for you. The serious permaculturist should pick up Bill Mollison's *Permaculture: A Designer's Manual*, and for those living in temperate North American zones, I recommend you also pick up Dave Jacke's masterpiece, *Edible Forest Gardens Volume One* and *Edible Forest Gardens Volume Two*.

***rmaculture: A Designer's Manual,* by Bill Mollison**. 1999, 576 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0908228010. Published by Tagari Publications, P.O. Box 1, Tyalgum, NSW 2484, Australia. List price $87.00

This is really a fabulous, illuminating, and highly useful book. In the 1970s, Bill Mollison and David Holmgren worked out the concepts of a naturemimicking ecological system of sustainable agriculture and earth-friendly communities (**perma**nent agri**culture**) and coined the term "permaculture." He further defines permaculture as "the conscious design and maintenance of agriculturally productive ecosystems which have the diversity, stability, and resilience of natural ecosystems." This is a handbook that combines science, biology, botany, and commonsense principles to form a practical guide for designing sustainable homes, minifarms, villages, and larger communities. The concepts are applicable to all climate zones, though there is more focus on tropical and desert climates than on temperate regions, since the originators of permaculture live in Australia.

***lible Forest Gardens: Ecological Vision and Theory for Temperate Climate Permaculture, Volume One: Vision and Theory,* by Dave Jacke with Eric Toensmeier.** 2005, 378 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1931498791. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $75.00

> Essentially, edible forest gardening is the art and science of putting plants together in woodland-like patterns that forge mutually beneficial relationships, creating a garden ecosystem that is more than the sum of its parts. You can grow fruits, nuts, vegetables, herbs, mushrooms, other useful plants, and animals in a way that mimics natural ecosystems. You can create a beautiful, diverse, high-yield garden that is largely self-maintained. **—From the Introduction**

Jacke, a long-time permaculture teacher and designer, has written an ecological gardening masterpiece in this two-volume set. You can also buy each volume individually. The first volume is devoted to the vision and principles of the ecological forest garden. There are many details and case studies in volume one that form the groundwork for volume two, which has a wealth of information pertaining to design details. Taken together, the two volumes offer an advanced course in ecological gardening—one that will forever change the way you look at plants and

your environment. This project took the authors seven years to complete, and the quality and depth of their work is a testament to their efforts.

***lible Forest Gardens: Ecological Design and Practice for Temperate Climate Permaculture, Volume Two: Design and Practice,* by Dave Jacke with Eric Toensmeier.** 2005, 655 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1931498807. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $75.00

Volume two has a wealth of information pertaining to design details. Case studies and examples are presented, as well as tables, illustrations, and a uniquely valuable "plant matrix" that lists hundreds of the best edible and useful species. This book provides an incredible amount of the latest information, gleaned from many years of research, teaching, and practical development of permaculture gardens and properties, compiled into easily accessible and usable forms that simply cannot be found anywhere else.

***ıe Earth Care Manual: A Permaculture Handbook for Britain and Other Temperate Climates,* by Patricia Whitefield.** 2006, 469 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1856230216. Published by Permanent Publications, Hyden House Limited, The Sustainability Centre, East Meon, Hampshire GU32 1HR, England. List price $75.00

An excellent book for those living in temperate zones, like the northern United States, southern Canada, or the UK. This is a detailed advanced permaculture handbook along the lines of Mollison's *Designer's Manual*, but specifically focused on wetter and colder climates.

***ıia's Garden: A Guide to Home-Scale Permaculture,* by Toby Hemenway.** 2001, 222 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132521. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $24.95

This is an excellent book for applying permaculture principles to the backyard garden. This book has pretty much become the standard for gardening with permaculture in a suburban or urban setting, and gets rave reviews form both beginner and experienced gardeners.

***ɾennial Vegetables: From Artichoke to 'Zuiki' Taro, a Gardener's Guide to Over 100 Delicious, Easy-to-Grow Edibles,* by Eric Toensmeier.** 2007, 241 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498401. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $35.00

Master gardener and permaculturist Eric Toensmeier has pulled together an outstanding collection of perennial vegetables from around the world that will continue to produce bountiful delicious harvests year after year with minimal care and attention. This is a "must-have" addition to the serious gardner or permaculturist's library.

Magazines

ıe Permaculture Activist. Subscription: $23.00 per year for 4 issues. The Permaculture Activist, P.O. Box 5516, Bloomington, IN 47407. Call (812) 335-0383 or see their Web site at www.permacultureactivist.net.

This is the "official" permaculture periodical in the United States, with lots of great articles, book reviews, product reviews, etc. Their Web site offers a wealth of information, permaculture links, calendars of events, permaculture course listings, seed sources, etc.

Preserving and Storing Food

***ocking Up: The Third Edition of America's Classic Preserving Guide,* by Carol Hupping.** 1990, 627 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0671693954. Published by Fireside, Simon and Schuster, 1230 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $20.00

This is a complete "bible" on preserving and storing foods, including dairy products, fruits, vegetables, seeds, grains, meat, fish, and poultry. This book contains quite a variety of recipes, including stews, soups, pickles, breads, cheese making, yogurt, ice cream, jams, jellies, homemade butter, and so on. It has several sketches of homemade food dryers.

***eserving Food Without Freezing or Canning: Traditional Techniques Using Salt, Oil, Sugar, Alcohol, Vinegar, Drying, Cold Storage, and Lactic Fermentation,* by the Gardeners and Farmers of Terre Vivante.** 2007, 208pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1933392592. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $25.00

This gem of a book captures the techniques and recipes of country folk in France, who for countless generations have made and preserved real food that tastes great. Lots of exquisite recipes that you won't find in *The Joy of Cooking*! Whether you wish to improve your diet with better-tasting home-grown and preserved food today, or wish to arm yourself with tools to survive and thrive if/when the trucks stop delivering produce to your local Safeway, this is a fine book to have in your collection.

***ot Cellaring: Natural Cold Storage of Fruits and Vegetables,* by Mike and Nancy Bubel**. 1991, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0882667034. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $14.95

This book is not nearly as extensive as *Stocking Up III*, but offers far more detailed instructions for constructing a variety of root cellars. Good tips for harvesting and storing produce through the winter. It appears to be out of print now, so it's best to find a used copy or use the tips in Coleman's *Four-Season Harvest.*

***ild Fermentation: The Flavor, Nutrition, and Craft of Live-Culture Foods,* by Sandor Elix Katz**. 2003, 187 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498234. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $25.00

> Fermentation gives us many of our most basic staples, such as bread and cheese, and our most pleasurable treats, including chocolate, coffee, wine, and beer. Cultures around the globe enjoy countless exotic fermented delicacies. The process of fermentation makes food more digestible and nutritious. Live, unpasteurized, fermented foods also carry beneficial bacteria directly into our digestive systems, where they exist symbiotically, breaking down food and aiding digestion. . . . Fermented foods not only nourish, they help protect us from potentially harmful organisms and contribute to immunity.
> **—Sandor Katz**

Without canning, refrigeration, or drying, the difference between rotten food and wholesome,

delicious, and nutritiously beneficial foods is often just a matter of technique and culture—not the kind of culture gained at the ballet or theatre, but the kind of culture that comes from beneficial bacteria. This author is totally into fermented foods, and his enthusiasm and expertise clearly show in this fine collection of instructions, recipes, and illustrations. This terrific collection of recipes and techniques covers the gamut, from a variety of beers to sauerkraut, kimchi, chutney, miso, elderberry wine, and many more.

***ıe Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book*, by Carla Emery.** 2008, 928 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1570615535. Published by Sasquatch Books, 615 Seco Ave., Seattle, WA 98104. List price $29.95

Not as thorough as *Root Cellaring and Stocking Up III*, but probably more than adequate for most people's needs. The chapter on food preservation has good sections on root cellaring, drying, freezing, canning, and jams/jellies. Carla has great lists of sources for information and equipment for preserving and storing food. See the description in the references section of Chapter 1 for more details.

***ısic Butchering of Livestock and Game,* by John J.Mettler Jr., D.V.M.** 1986, 208 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0882663913. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $16.95

Everything you need to know for the hunter or do-it-yourself butcher of one's own livestock, plus some tips for preserving meat.

***Guide to Canning, Freezing, Curing and Smoking of Meat, Fish and Game,* by Wilbur F. Eastman.** 2002, 192 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580174572. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $16.95

The title says it all. This third edition is completely revised and updated, and includes numerous recipes for homemade meat staples and treats, like beef jerky, pemmican, pepperoni, venison mincemeat, liverwurst, bologna, etc.

Animal Husbandry

***ıckyard Livestock: Raising Good, Natural Food for Your Family,* by Steven Thomas and George P. Looby, D.V.M.** 2007, 247 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0881507607. Published by Countryman Press, P.O. Box 748, Woodstock, VT 05091. List price $16.95

This is probably the best all-around introduction to growing livestock on a small scale. It covers everything from breed selection to feed, bedding, dehorning, castration, and basic health issues. If you want to start raising a few of your own animals, this book will offer you the experience of both authors' lifetimes of experience raising livestock, and one of them is a Doctor of Veterinary Medicine (D.V.M.).

***ıe Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book,* by Carla Emery.** 2008, 928 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1570615535. Published by Sasquatch Books, 615 Seco Ave., Seattle, WA 98104. List price $29.95

A great overall reference for raising cows, chickens, sheep, goats, pigs, bees, etc. This one-

stop book covers everything from birthing and doctoring to barns, fencing, feed, dairying, and butchering. A great source for how-to information as well as lists of other sources for detailed information and equipment. You may want to start with just this book, then add others on your particular areas of interest. See the description in the references section of Chapter 1 for more details.

***orey's Guide to Raising Chickens: Care, Feeding, Facilities,* by Gail Damerow.** 1995, 352 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580173254. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $18.95

An excellent ABC guide to raising chickens for the first time. Good solid knowledge includes advice on choosing stock, housing, feeding, meat bird management, butchering, egg production, breeding, chick care, etc. The health section covers conventional drugbased farm practices.

***stured Poultry Profits: Net $25,000 in 6 Months on 20 Acres,* by Joel Salatin.** 1996, 334 pp. (paperback), ISBN 979-0963810907. Published by Polyface, Inc., 363 Shuey Road, Swoope, VA 24479. List price $35.00

Joel Salatin will show you how to grow healthy chickens on natural range. Take your tips from a highly successful farmer who raises livestock with sustainable methods and near zero off-farm inputs. Highly recommended by professionals.

***orey's Guide to Raising Sheep: Breeds, Care, Facilities,* by Paula Simmons.** 2000, 288 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580172622. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $18.95

Everyone I know who raises sheep recommends this book. It is considered the sheep-raising bible for beginners to small-scale sheep farmers and miniranches. Covers everything from birthing and breeding to health issues, medication, feeding, and shearing. This is a significantly updated and improved new edition.

***orey's Guide to Raising Dairy Goats: Breeds, Care, Dairying,* by Jerry Belanger.** 2000, 288 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580172592. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $18.95

A fine book for raising goats. If you are serious about raising goats as a business, you should also pick up a used copy of *Goat Husbandry* by David Mackenzie and Ruth Goodwin, a detailed technical book from the UK, which is currently out of print.

***orey's Guide to Raising Pigs: Care, Facilities, Management, Breed Selection,* by Kelly Klober.** 1997, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580173261. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $18.95

An entertaining and comprehensive book about raising pigs.

***eeping a Family Cow,* by Joann S. Grohman.** 2000, 180 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0963181442. Published by Coburn Farm Press, P.O. Box 635, Dixfield, ME 04224. List price $22.95

The book to get if you want to raise your own dairy cow and enjoy fresh, organic, unadulterated, raw, healthy, whole milk.

***lad Bar Beef,* by Joel Salatin.** 1996, 368 pp. (paperback), ISBN 0-9638109-1-X. Published by Polyface, Inc., 363 Shuey Road, Swoope, VA 24479. List price $30.00

Let Joel Salatin show you how to grow healthy cattle on natural range. Take your tips from a highly successful farmer who raises livestock with sustainable methods and near zero off-farm inputs. Highly recommended by professionals.

***u Can Farm: The Entrepreneur's Guide to Start and Succeed in a Farming Enterprise,* by Joe Salatin.** 1996, 368 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0963810915. Published by Polyface, Inc., 363 Shuey Road, Swoope, VA 24479. List price $35.00

For those interested in living, loving, and learning on a piece of land, this is a true guide to establishing a small profitable farm. Take your tips from a highly successful farmer who raises crops and livestock with sustainable methods and near zero off-farm inputs. Highly recommended by professionals. Available from Acres U.S.A. (see resources below).

***nall-Scale Livestock Farming: A Grass-Based Approach for Health, Sustainability, and Profit,* by Carol Ekarius.** 1999, 217 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580171625. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $18.95

This is a systems-oriented book for helping people to raise and nurture livestock in a planet-friendly way. The author has been involved with the sustainable agriculture movement for many years and includes stories and information about other farmers and ranchers from throughout the United States, highlighting the things that have allowed them to be successful.

***e Complete Herbal Handbook for Farm and Stable,* by Juliette De Bairacli-Levy.** 1991, 471 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0571161164. Published by Faber and Faber, 19 Union Square, West, New York, NY 10003-3304. List price $20.00

This fascinating book is a valuable guide for farmers and the general public concerned about the overuse of chemical medicines, herbicides, and insecticides in farm management and animal husbandry. Offers not only an extensive list of plants and their uses, but also specific protocols for a variety of illnesses, all clearly explained. She outlines specific dietary regimens for the purpose of achieving and maintaining maximum health and supporting an ill animal through the healing process.

***terinary Guide for Animal Owners,* by C. E.Spaulding, D.V.M.** 2001, 432 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0882668840. Published by Rodale Press, 33 East Minor St., Emmaus, PA 18098. List price $17.95

A fine, no-nonsense, clear, and very helpful guide for owners of livestock and/or pets. Written by a renowned Doctor of Veterinary Medicine (D.V.M.).

Traditional Hunting, Fishing, and Trapping

***ploring the Outdoors with Indian Secrets: Skills for Observing and Matching Wits with Nature,* by Allan A. Macfarlan.** 1982, 223 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0811721837. Published by Stackpole Books, 5067 Ritter Road, Mechanicsburg, PA 17055. List price $16.95

Originally published under the title *Modern Hunting with Indian Secrets*, this book is about combining traditional Indian trapping and hunting skills with modern tools. The author grew up as a neighbor to a band of Iroquois Indians, spent much of his life among various Indian tribes

(Ojibway, Cheyenne, Comanche, Haida, Blackfoot, etc.), and authored about a half-dozen books on native peoples' culture. He has good advice and first-hand knowledge about tracking, hunting, fishing, and trapping using traditional tools and methods, though the other books on primitive skills (see the Chapter 4) offer better, more complete instructions for how to make implements such as bows, arrows, and stone tools. This book is stronger on the action strategies and techniques but weaker on fabrication details.

***Field Guide to Mammal Tracking in North America,* by James C. Halfpenny.** 1986, 176 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0933472983. Published by Johnson Books, 3005 Center Green Drive, Suite 220, Boulder, CO 80301. List price $14.95

Whether you are a nature lover or hunter, or simply wish to build a thorough survival library, this is the definitive guide to tracking animals, with a particular focus on North American species.

NOTE: For additional sources on this topic, see the references section in Chapter 4.

Miscellaneous

***eds of Deception: Exposing Industry and Government Lies about the Safety of the Genetically Engineered Foods You're Eating*, by Jeffrey M. Smith.** 2003, 304 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0972966580. Published by Yes Books, P.O. Box 469, Fairfield, IA 52556. List price $17.95

Do yourself and your family a favor by reading this book. This book is well documented and quite shocking in its discussion of the negative test data concerning the harmful effects of GM foods, as well as several almost unbelievable stories of government collusion, bribery, unethical coercion, theft, and burglary on the part of GM corporations to bypass stringent scientific safety testing and sweep their products into our food system through the back door. Also gives simple, clear guidelines on how to keep most genetically modified foods out of your diet, since once you read about these case studies, you will probably want to avoid ingesting GM foods whenever possible.

***ooking with Sunshine: The Complete Guide to Solar Cuisine with 150 Easy Sun-Cooked Recipes,* by Lorraine Anderson and Rick Palkovic.** 2006, 224 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1569243008. Published by Marlowe & Company, 245 West 17th St., 11th Floor, New York, NY 10011. List price $16.95

Solar ovens provide a clean, planet-friendly alternative to cooking with wood, gas, or electricity. In thirdworld nations, much of the deforestation is the result of foraging for wood to cook with. *Cooking With Sunshine* presents easy-to-follow instructions for how to build a simple, inexpensive solar oven. One hundred fifty recipes are included, designed especially for solar cooking. For long-term regular usage, Beth and Dan Halacy's book, *Cooking with the Sun: How to Build and Use Solar Cookers,* contains plans to build a more complicated, but more durable, solar oven and solar hot plate. I believe that this book is currently out of print, so check out your local library or a used book store.

***e Morning Hill Solar Cookery Book,* by Jennifer S.Barker**. 1999, 101 pp. (paperback), ISBN 0-9642977-1-X. Published by Morning Hill Associates, 15013 Geary Cr. Rd, Canyon City, OR 97820. List price $14.95

Expand your repertoire of solar recipes with Jennifer's delicious whole-foods vegetarian recipes, including main dishes, breads, muffins, and desserts. Available at www.highdesertnet.com/morninghill/solarcook.htm.

***me Cheesemaking: Recipes for 75 Homemade Cheeses,* by Ricki Carroll.** 2002, 278 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580174640. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $16.95

This is an improved and expanded version of her earlier book, *Cheesemaking Made Easy*. The "bible" of home-based cheesemaking, it gives step-by-step instructions and recipes for 75 different cheeses, instructions for making your own cheese press, equipment lists, and troubleshooting charts. As the co-founder of New England Cheesemaking Supply, Ricki knows her cheese.

***nerican Farmstead Cheese: The Complete Guide to Making and Selling Artisan Cheeses* by Paul Kindstedt.** 2005, 300 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498777. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $40.00

This is not an introductory cheesemaking book. It has no recipes for cheese. However, for the serious home-based cheesemaker or the small-time, commercial artisan cheesemaker who wants to improve their techniques for making better cheese and/or more profit, it is an essential source of valuable information.

RESOURCES

Growing Your Own Food

General

:res U.S.A., P.O. Box 91299, Austin, TX 78709; phone: (800) 355-5313; fax: (512) 892-4448; Web site: www.acresusa.com.

In addition to publishing the cutting-edge magazine on soil-friendly farming technologies, Acres U.S.A. also publishes a terrific catalog containing a very impressive selection of eco-books on sustainable agriculture, animal husbandry, and a host of other self-reliance and sustainability topics.

ITRA (Appropriate Technology Transfer for Rural Areas), P.O. Box 3657, Fayetteville, AR 72702; phone: (800) 346-9140; fax: (501) 442-9842; Web site: www.attra.org.

ATTRA is a national information service dedicated to fostering sustainable agricultural practices. This organization offers information and technical services free of charge to people and organizations involved in commercial agriculture in the United States. Check out their Web site for a good introduction to integrated pest management (IPM), holistic farm management principles for improving profitability, and other sustainable agricultural practices.

o-Integral Resource Center (BIRC), P.O. Box 7414, Berkeley, CA 94707; phone: (510) 524-2567; fax: (510) 524-1758; Web site: www.birc.org.

BIRC is one of the leading organizations in the world providing practical technical and policy information in least-toxic urban and agricultural integrated pest management (IPM) and sustainable agriculture. BIRC is a nonprofit organization with over 25 years of experience and leadership in this area, and has an excellent technical staff to assist professionals with IPM problems and solutions. Check out the BIRC publication, the *Common Sense Pest Control Quarterly*, which features descriptions of the latest research, practical information, products, resources, book reviews, and direct answers to member questions. It comes highly recommended by a professional grower and consultant to commercial organic farmers. The BIRC has also coordinated two thorough books on commonsense pest control.

:ology Action, 5798 Ridgewood Road, Willits, CA 95490; phone: (707) 459-0150; fax: (707) 459-5409; Web site: www.growbiointensive.org.

The work of Ecology Action has touched, nourished, and enriched the lives of millions of people worldwide. For the past 28 years, Ecology Action has researched, developed, and shared millennia-old techniques for growing more food in a small area, using simple tools and seeds, and maintaining or increasing the health and productivity of the soil. Helping the world to feed more people on less land and growing fertile soil, healthy food, and beautiful gardens is what Ecology Action is all about. Ecology Action publishes numerous small booklets and papers on Grow Biointensive topics.

orey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247; phone: (800) 441-5700; fax: (802) 865-3429; Web site: www.storey.com.

Storey Publishing puts out a huge selection of practical books on self-reliance and sustainable living, including quite a number of books on animal husbandry, small farms, and gardening.

stainable Agriculture Network (SAN), **Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE)**, USDACSREES, Stop 2223, 1400 Independence Ave., SW., Washington, DC 20250; phone: (202) 720-5384; fax: (202) 720-6071; Web site: www.sare.org.

SAN is a cooperative effort of university, government, farm, business, and nonprofit organizations dedicated to the exchange of scientific and practical information on sustainable agricultural systems. Developed by a committee of people from diverse organizations, SAN encourages the exchange of information with a variety of printed and electronic communications tools. SAN is funded by the U.S. Department of Agriculture's Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE) program. SAN produces information on sustainable farming practices, principles, and systems. Check out their Web site for access to their many publications and links.

ols, Greenhouses, Seeds, and Amendments

untiful Gardens, 18001 Shafer Ranch Road, Willits, CA 95490; phone: (707) 459-6410; fax: (707) 459-1925; Web site: www.bountifulgardens.org.www.bountifulgardens.org

Bountiful Gardens is an excellent source for untreated, open-pollinated seeds, gardening tools for the Biointensive method, soil test kits, a wide variety of books, and eco-friendly pest controls. This organization is a project of Ecology Action.

dco, P.O. Box 520, Waterville, ME 04903; phone: (207) 873-7333; fax: (207) 872-8317; Web

site: www.fedcoseeds.com.

Fedco is a cooperative operation that offers an excellent variety of untreated hybrid and open-pollinated seeds. They also have a tree/shrub division, a bulb division, and divisions called "Organic Grower Supplies" (organic fertilizers and pest controls) and "Moose Tubers" (quite a variety of potato seed stocks). Being a co-op run and owned by growers, their mission is to provide low-cost, high-quality products direct from the growers instead of multinational corporations.

ardener's Supply Company, 128 Intervale Road, Burlington, VT 05401-2850; phone: (888) 833-1412; fax: (800) 551-6712; Web site: www.gardeners.com.

You can find a wide variety of special products for the serious gardener at Gardener's Supply. This company offers greenhouses, compost bins, trellises, quality hand tools, various goods for propagating your own seeds, and all kinds of specialty gardening gadgets.

aceful Valley Farm and Garden Supply, P.O. Box 2209, Grass Valley, CA 95945; phone: (888) 784-1722; fax: (530) 272-4794; Web site: www.groworganic.com.

Peaceful Valley has been promoting sustainable agriculture for over 23 years by providing farmers and gardeners with cost-effective, state-of-the-art organic growing supplies and the information and tools needed to apply them. Product lines include fertilizers, weed and pest controls, beneficial insects, vegetable and cover crop seeds, greenhouses and cold frames, row covers and shade cloth, drip irrigation and watering supplies, composting tools, soil testing and monitoring instruments, pruning and gardening tools, and books.

chols Garden Nursery, 1190 North Pacific Highway, Albany, OR 97321-4580; phone: (800) 422-3985; fax: (800) 231-5306; Web site: www.nicholsgardennursery.com.

This nursery sells lots of seeds, tea plants, bees and beekeeping supplies, and various gardening implements and books. A good source for herbs and rare seed.

rk Seed Company, 1 Parkton Ave., Greenwood, SC 29647; phone: (800) 213-0076; fax: (888) 709-7333; Web site: www.parkseed.com, www.organicseed.com.

Park Seed has always offered nongenetically modified (non-GM), open-pollinated seed. Since they bought Sow Organic Seeds, they now offer organic herb, vegetable, and flower seeds.

chters Herbs, 357 Highway 47, Goodwood, Ontario, L0C 1A0, Canada; phone: (905) 640-6677; fax: (905) 640-6641; Web site: www.richters.com.

The site for herbs, both seeds and live, medicinal and flavorful. Richters carries quite a variety of organic gourmet vegetable seeds, nontoxic pest controls, essential oils, and books. They also have online articles related to herbs.

dwood City Seed Company, P.O. Box 361, Redwood City, CA 94064; phone: (650) 325-7333; fax: (650) 325-4056; Web site: www.ecoseeds.com.

An excellent source for open-pollinated organic seeds for vegetables, herbs, and flowers, including a huge selection of hot pepper plants.

ed Savers Exchange, 3094 North Winn Road, Decorah, IA 52101; phone: (563) 382-5990; fax: (563) 382-5872; Web site: www.seedsavers.org.

Check out their Web site for an eye-opening tour of some of the incredible varieties of

heirloom seeds that this organization is helping to save from extinction. Kent Whealy, founder of Seed Savers Exchange (SSE), made the comment, “Hundreds of years of selective breeding by successful farmers could easily disappear in a bowl of porridge one day.” SSE is a nonprofit tax-exempt organization that is saving “heirloom” (handed-down) garden seeds from extinction. SSE’s 8,000 members grow and distribute heirloom varieties (you may purchase them from SSE) of vegetables, fruits, and grains. They focus on heirloom varieties that gardeners and farmers brought to North America when their families immigrated, and traditional varieties grown by Native Americans, Mennonites, and the Amish. Since SSE was founded in 1975, members have distributed an estimated 750,000 samples of endangered seeds not available through catalogs and often on the verge of extinction.

ıelter Logic, 150 Callendar Road, Watertown, CT 06795; phone: (800) 932-9344; fax: (203) 931-4754; Web site: www.shelterlogic.com.

Shelter Logic (which used to be called Cover-It) manufactures a multitude of different sizes and shapes of instant greenhouses, barns, sheds, garages, hangars, etc. Their structures range from small backyard varieties to huge structures for commercial growers and airports.

Miscellaneous Supplies

:w England Cheesemaking Supply Company, P.O. Box 85, Ashfield, MA 01330; phone: (413) 628-3808; fax: (413) 628-4061; Web site: www.cheesemaking.com.

Cheesemaking at home is easier than you think. This company offers all the ingredients, know-how, cultures, equipment, and other supplies for making your own cheese. Visit their Web site for a great introduction to making cheese at home, online recipes, an extensive list of additional cheesemaking books and journals, plus a professional reviewer’s opinions about these books. If you are into making cheese on your own, this is the source for you. Founded and operated by Riki Carroll, the author of the homemade cheese bible, *Home Cheesemaking*.

fe Sprouts, P.O. Box 150, Hyrum, UT 84319; phone: (800) 241-1516; Web site: www.lifesprouts.com.

Life Sprouts carries a wide variety of organic sprouting seeds and quality sprouting supplies to make sprouting easier and sprouts last longer. Also has good sprouting tips and FAQ online.

7

Shelter and Buildings

Buildings, however much we take them for granted, are where Americans spend about 90 percent of their time. They use one-third of our total energy and about two-thirds of our electricity. Their construction consumes one-fourth of all wood harvested; 3 billion tons of raw materials are used annually to construct buildings worldwide.

—Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, and L. Hunter Lovins, *Natural Capitalism*

In addition to the statistics mentioned above, when you consider that nearly 60 percent of the timber cut in the United States is used to build homes, that deforestation contributes as much as 25 percent to global emissions of greenhouse gases, and that concrete contributes another 8 percent to greenhouse gas emissions, it becomes quite clear that humankind's building boom contributes to a huge chunk of our ecological impact on Earth. Because we are living in a world that has finite resources and a continuously growing population of humans, it is my hope that the principles of green building rapidly become the rule rather than the exception.

What started out as a quiet revolution in building design and construction, referred to as "green building," has grown into a huge movement that threatens to leave behind those builders who don't embrace its practices and philosophies. Green buildings are designed and constructed in ways that use resources efficiently, are environmentally sensitive, conserve energy and materials, and provide pleasant and healthy environments for living, working, and playing. Green building principles employ the *whole building design approach*, which asks members of the design and construction teams to look at materials, systems, and assemblies from different perspectives. A design is evaluated for diverse elements, such as cost, quality of life, energy and resource efficiency, overall environmental impact, productivity, maintenance, and a healthy indoor environment. A huge amount of natural resources goes into building a home, and houses are the largest single expense in most people's lifetimes.

GREEN BUILDINGS

> One of the biggest differences between conventional building and green building is that green building requires a larger investment in upfront design, particularly if such energy features as passive solar, daylighting, and natural cooling are planned. Taking the time to find a qualified designer and builder will make all the difference in your new home. **—Alex Wilson, *Your Green Home: A Guide to Planning a Healthy, Environmentally Friendly New Home***

A few facts and characteristics of green buildings are listed below. Green buildings:

- Provide shelter at a fraction of the environmental impact of conventional housing.

- Use natural lighting where possible to make for more pleasant living spaces, reduce energy use, and boost productivity.
- Conserve natural resources in their construction by using locally available materials, incorporate building systems that efficiently use durable materials with higher than average life cycles, and/or use recycled construction materials wherever appropriate.
- Conserve energy. Efficient new buildings conserve around 70 to 90 percent of traditional energy use. Some green buildings save over 95 percent of traditional energy use or become net exporters of energy generated by photovoltaic roofing tiles or panels.
- Are oriented, designed, and constructed in ways sensitive to the local environment.
- Build small. There is a growing movement to build attractive, efficient, well-thought-out, smaller living spaces that is the reverse of the "McMansion" trend toward ever-larger homes. Smaller homes use less of everything—wood, roofing, concrete, steel, glass, and so on; create less waste during construction; and consume fewer resources to furnish, heat, and cool.
- Are well insulated (or super-insulated) to reduce heating and cooling requirements.
- Often use superwindows (triple pane, gas or vacuum filled, high insulating value, with thermal reflective coatings) to reduce heating and cooling requirements.
- Use energy-conserving appliances and business machines to reduce heating and cooling requirements.
- Tend to sell or lease faster because they provide a more pleasant living or working space with lower operating costs.

There is no single "right" way to design a green building. The term loosely applies to quite a variety of design and construction methods that result in comfortable, healthy buildings that use less energy and natural resources. For a good overview of modern green building, I suggest you look at *The New Ecological Home: A Complete Guide to Green Building Options,* by Daniel D. Chiras; *Your Green Home: A Guide to Planning a Healthy, Environmentally Friendly New Home,* by Alex Wilson; and *Green Remodeling: Changing the World One Room at a Time,* by David Johnston and Kim Master. Here are a few examples of green development:

- **Village Homes housing development in Davis, California.** Passive solar orientation, well-planned design, quality construction methods, and good insulation cut each home's utility bills to roughly half of the norm. Natural drainage, native landscaping, and cluster housing with abundant green zones all work together to reduce local impact and contribute to making Village Homes a very desirable subdivision. Although modestly priced when originally introduced, these homes now command some of the highest dollars per square foot of any development in Davis.
- **Southern California Gas Company Energy Resource Center.** An old office building was torn down, and its steel, concrete, and wiring were recycled. The new building was erected on the same site, using 80 percent recycled materials, superwindows, advanced day-lighting features, and drought-resistant landscaping. The result is a showcase building that's very attractive, architecturally exciting, and physically comfortable and functional, that cost $3.2 million less to build than with conventional construction (40 percent savings) and uses $21,000 to $31,000 less electricity annually than typical commercial construction.

- **ING bank headquarters, the Netherlands.** The design process for this remarkable building complex involved all the employees, the architect, the subcontractors, and the various designers of each of the building's systems to optimize the building features for aesthetics, efficiency, and comfort. The outstanding results far exceeded everyone's initial expectations. Built for roughly the same costs as other similarly sized commercial buildings, the ING headquarters has become a national landmark. The employees enjoy the integrated art, day lighting, gardens, and fresh air so much that absenteeism dropped 15 percent and they regularly schedule social events at the bank after-hours. Energy usage runs at just 8 percent of average conventional buildings constructed during the same time period, and the annual energy savings of $2.9 million paid for the energy-saving systems in the first three months of occupancy. As an added bonus, the publicity gained from their dramatic new headquarters, and their improved public image, have helped this bank to grow from the fourth largest to the second largest bank in Holland (*Green Developments*, 1997 CD-ROM by RMI).

Many green buildings combine enough energy-conserving measures to eliminate or drastically downsize costly mechanical systems, such as central heat and air conditioning. The elimination or drastic downsizing of these systems can compensate for most or all of the extra costs for superwindows and superinsulation. In the past, photovoltaics and other sources of renewable energy (RE) were usually only cost effective in remote installations where the cost of connecting to the nearest utility could justify paying a large sum for an RE system. However, recent advances in photovoltaics, mini-hydroelectrics, and wind energy have drastically reduced the cost of RE systems. For the first time in modern history, RE systems can be cost effective in urban situations as well. When the capital costs for installing a renewable energy system can be included in the mortgage loan for new construction, the monthly mortgage payment increase to build in your own power system may cost less than the monthly utility payments to the power company (see Chapter 11).

When generating your own power with photovoltaics, it is almost always cost effective to purchase highly energy-efficient appliances, because the extra cost for purchasing these appliances is generally less than the cost to make your photovoltaic system larger to accommodate appliances with lower efficiencies. The size of your home also has a direct correlation to its impact on the planet. In an affluent society, where success is often measured in terms of how much you consume and how big you build, it may be hard to adjust to the concept that "small is beautiful." No matter which energy- and materials-conserving methods you choose, when you choose smaller, you make a choice for reduced impact.

GREEN CERTIFICATION AND "GREENWASHING"

To evaluate whether a given building material or system is truly "green," one must look at the whole life cycle of the material and/or system. For example, since wood is a renewable resource, it is "green" if it is sustainably harvested, but it's not green if its unsustainable harvest contributes to deforestation. Consider the case of cement, which is the glue that makes concrete hard and strong. Cement is an energy-intensive material to manufacture (contributing to 8 percent to global greenhouse gas emissions), and requires quarrying huge tracts of land to obtain

its raw materials. Due to the extreme longevity of concrete-based construction, which can last for many centuries, its use can be considered "green" if it is part of a building system that uses cement efficiently and has insulating features that minimize heating and cooling requirements.

For example, a building with exterior walls composed of solid, concrete-filled, uninsulated concrete blocks, and located in a cold or hot climate, not only uses a high volume of cement to construct the building, but will also require large inputs of energy to heat and/or cool the building over its entire lifetime. On the other hand, various concrete-based building systems using insulated concrete forms (ICFs) will use less cement, and the end result will be a highly insulated, energy-efficient building that consumes a fraction of the energy of an average home. In additional to ICFs, there are other concretebased building systems using structural insulated concrete panels (SCIPs) that further optimize and reduce both the cement and structural steel content and offer the benefit of a high thermal mass in contact with the living spaces to help stabilize inside air temperatures, further reducing both initial material requirements and energy consumption.

Another example is the use of recycled building materials. In the case of recycled lumber, its use clearly reduces deforestation and saves the energy inputs needed to cut, mill, and transport additional lumber, so it is obviously a "green" alternative. However, to recycle an old window may be a false saving, if the climate is hot or cold and using the old window results in large energy inputs over the life of the building for heating and/or cooling. In this case, the use of the recycled window is definitely not green.

In today's market, selling yourself or your product as "green" has proven to be a valuable marketing tool. In fact, "greenwashing" (representing a builder, building system, or product as "green" even when it isn't) has become a real problem. So how is one to know what is truly green and what is not? Most of us don't have the time, energy, or technical training to properly make this determination on our own. Fortunately, there are organizations out there whose business is to evaluate products, materials, and systems in an unbiased manner, so we can use their certifications and recommendations to help us to make truly green choices in our building decisions.

A great place to start is with BuildingGreen Inc.'s *Green Building Products: The GreenSpec Guide to Residential Building Materials*. This encyclopedia of green building materials includes paint, structural systems, certified lumber, appliances, site preparations, landscaping, and so on. Manufacturers do not pay to be included in *GreenSpec,* and the decisions about which products to be included in *GreenSpec* are based totally on criteria developed by the *GreenSpec* and *Environmental Building News* editorial teams. The introduction to *Green Building Products* offers an excellent description of what makes a product "green," and they offer a huge amount of free information and articles at www.BuildingGreen.com.

There are independent "green" certification organizations whose stamps you can trust, but be aware that there are also several industry-sponsored look-alikes whose certifications are meaningless (greenwashing). For example, in general you can trust that the FSC (Forest Stewardship Council) stamp on lumber indicates that it was harvested by a lumber company that has gone through independent third-party certification to certify that it is operating using sustainable forest management practices. On the other hand, you can't trust certification from industry-funded knock-offs like the Sustainable Forestry Initiative (SFI), which does not require independent, third-party certification, so that basically the fox is guarding the henhouse.

Other trustworthy, independent "green" certifications include LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) and BEES (Building for Environmental and Economic Sustainability). Also, a set of standards is being developed for EPP (Environmentally Preferable Products) by a consortium of green-certification organizations such as Scientific Certification Systems (SCS), Green Seal, GreenBlue, and the Institute for Market Transformation to Sustainability (MTS). Even though LEED certification generally applies to commercial buildings and large-scale residential developments, the LEED principles for guiding and evaluating the design and construction process are just as applicable to smallscale residential buildings.

A SURVEY OF VARIOUS GREEN BUILDING SYSTEMS : STRAW BALES

> If all the straw left in the United States after the harvest of major grains was baled instead of burned, five million 2,000 square foot houses could be built every year.
> **—Matts Myhrman, founder of *Out on Bale***

For an excellent visual introduction to this exciting and versatile "green building" alternative, take a look at *The Beauty of Straw Bale Homes* by Athena and Bill Steen. Taking advantage of an abundant "waste" material, straw bales provide walls of high insulation value, structure, and form with low environmental impact and low materials costs. Straw is the dry grass left over after the seed has been harvested, whereas hay has higher nutritive value and is usually cut green with the seed attached. Most straw is burned or plowed under rather than baled. Straw is both cheaper and less nutritious than hay, so it is better for a building material. For thousands of years, straw has been used as a building material to reinforce mud, thatch houses, and insulate walls.

If you are building your own home with a lot of "sweat equity," a straw bale house could be your ticket to a lowcost dream home that is comfortable, durable, energy efficient, and has an old world, hand-hewn, thick-walled look to it. Even though straw bales are cheap, finishing off exterior and interior straw bale walls is a labor-intensive job. Family and friends can rapidly help stack or finish your straw bale walls, further contributing to your sweat equity. If you are hiring a contractor and crew to build your straw bale home, it will cost more per square foot than standard stick-frame construction, but you will save on your energy bills, and the end result will be a unique, finely crafted home that is incredibly comfortable and energy efficient while going easy on our remaining forests.

Straw bale building construction originated in Nebraska during the late 1800s. The lack of a good supply of cheap wood, an abundance of straw, and the invention of both horse-powered and steam balers made straw bales a logical building material. Many of those early straw bale buildings are still around today, showing that straw bale construction is durable as well as practical. The early straw bale buildings were typically constructed with bales supporting the entire roof load. This type of construction is commonly referred to as "load-bearing" construction. Because straw bales are not rigid materials (they will settle under load), special design consideration must be given to load-bearing straw bale walls. Although there are many load-bearing straw bale structures built today, most modern straw bale homes are built with some kind of load-bearing post-and-beam construction wherein the bales insulate and give form to the

walls but do not carry structural loads. This type of construction is commonly referred to as "in-fill" walls. With both types of construction, the bales are usually plastered (cement stucco, adobe mud, lime plaster, etc.) but may be covered with sheetrock, wood siding, or almost any other kind of standard wall covering.

In-Fill (Non-Load–Bearing) Straw Bale Construction

If you think you might have trouble getting your straw bale house past the local building inspector, you might stick with "in-fill" straw bale construction. All structural loads, including roof, seismic, and snow loads, are carried on some form of post-and-beam frame. The straw bales provide insulation and shape to the walls but carry no load. Due to the wide section of the walls, there are some lumber-conserving methods for modified post-and-beam walls that may actually require less lumber than load-bearing straw bale walls. For the latest how-to information on straw bale building technology, including a wide variety of construction methods and details, I suggest you check out *Serious Straw Bale,* by Paul Lacinski and Michael Bergeron, and *More Straw Bale,* by Chris Magwood, Peter Mack, and Tina Therrien. One method of framing, referred to as "modified post-and-beam construction," utilizes floor-to-ceiling, plywood-sheathed 2-by-4 framed box beams at all windows and doors, and 4-by-4 posts at each corner as the sole support of a glue-lam bond beam support for the roof. This system appears to be easy to construct and uses wood sparingly (see Figure 7-1). The bond beam must be sized to adequately support roof loads across the maximum gap between post supports.

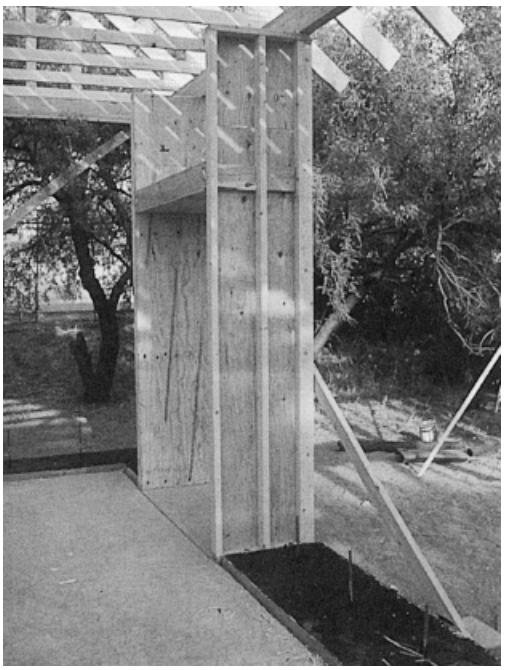


Figure 7-1. Modified post-and-beam, in-fill wall structure. (Illustration courtesy of *The Straw Bale House*, by Athena Swentzell Steen, Bill Steen, and David Brainbridge, with David Eisenberg, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1994)

The bales in the in-fill wall system are typically pinned or otherwise attached to each other, the

foundation, the posts, and the door/window frames. This increases the wall's resistance to shear loads due to wind and seismic loading. Shear loads are sideways loads that effectively try to push walls over, unlike compression loads, which squeeze walls from above. Rebar pins are typically cast into the foundation to pierce through the first 1½ courses of straw bales (see Figure 7-3). Foundation rebar pins are spaced so that two pins pierce each bale. As more courses of bales are added, rebar pins are driven down through the bales to tie all the bales together. One tested system uses 5-foot-long, #4 rebar (½-inch nominal diameter) pins driven down through every course, starting at the fourth. Wooden dowels can attach frames and beams horizontally to end bales. Alternately, expanded metal can be nailed to posts and frames and then bent at a right angle and nailed to straw bales.

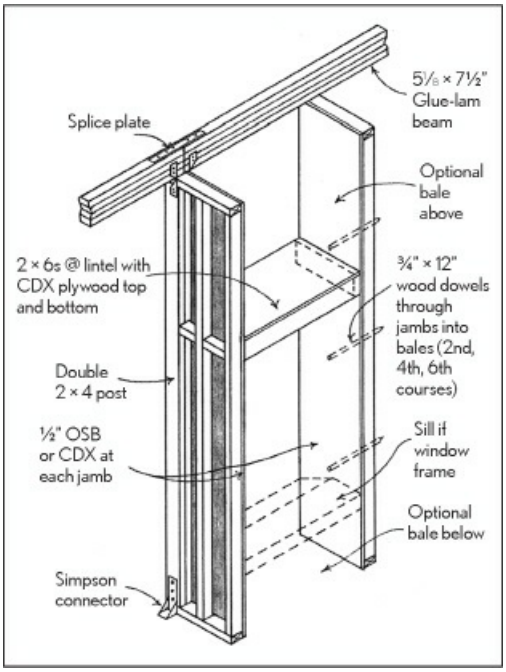

5⅛ × 7½" Glue-lam beam
Splice plate
Optional bale above
2 × 6s @ lintel with CDX plywood top and bottom
¾" × 12" wood dowels through jambs into bales (2nd, 4th, 6th courses)
Double 2 × 4 post
½" OSB or CDX at each jamb
Sill if window frame
Optional bale below
Simpson connector

Figure 7-2. Box column detail for modified post-and-beam. (Illustration courtesy of *The Straw Bale House*, by Athena Swentzell Steen, Bill Steen, and David Brainbridge, with David Eisenberg, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1994)

Load-Bearing Straw Bale Construction

The use of straw bales as a load-bearing structural material requires paying special attention to both design and construction methods due to the compressible nature of the straw bales. Under loads they will compress and settle over time. Windows, doorframes, and stucco wall finishes are relatively rigid materials that do not compress alongside the straw bales. To prevent cracked windows and stucco, or sticky windows and doors, load-bearing straw bale walls must be either precompressed or loaded by the roof and given time to settle before doorjambs or window lintels are shimmed to the bond beam and the exterior walls are finished.

It is a good idea to limit the use of load-bearing straw bale walls to fairly small structures that have walls with small openings for windows and doors, because large openings require rigid

supports that will not settle like the rest of the wall. Gypsum, wood, stucco, and plaster wall finishes are rigid materials. As the bales continue to settle over time, a higher proportion of the roof load will shift from the bales to the rigid exterior wall coverings. Stucco and plaster are weak in tension, so in the case of earthquakes acting on load-bearing straw bale walls, the exterior finish may crack, shifting the loads from the rigid exterior finish back to the straw bales.

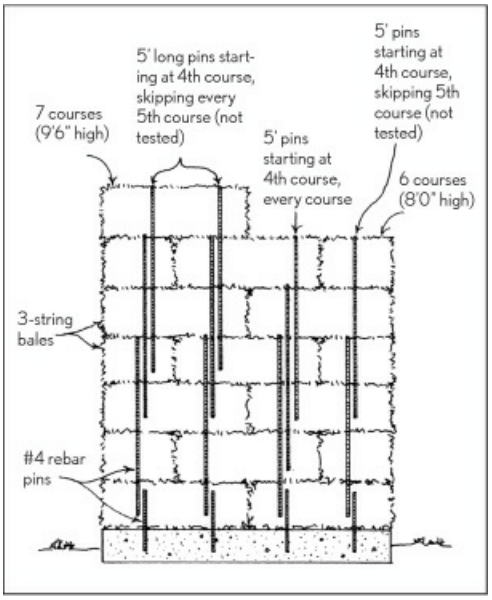

5' long pins starting at 4th course, skipping every 5th course (not tested)
5' pins starting at 4th course, skipping 5th course (not tested)
7 courses (9'6" high)
5' pins starting at 4th course, every course
6 courses (8'0" high)
3-string bales
#4 rebar pins

Figure 7-3. Bale-pinning options. (Illustration courtesy of *The Straw Bale House*, by Athena Swentzell Steen, Bill Steen, and David Bainbridge, with David Eisenberg, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1994)

In areas with potentially heavy snow loads, I suggest avoiding the use of load-bearing straw bale walls, because the added weight of a heavy snow load could cause the walls to compress further, cracking the rigid external wall facing. When the first load-bearing straw bale structures were built in Nebraska, the walls were left unfinished for months and were not plastered until the weight of the roof had fully compressed the walls and they stopped settling. Additionally, these structures had small window and door openings, and the lintels over doors and windows extended several feet into the straw walls on both sides of the opening to spread the roof load out over several bales.

Due to the possibility that a roof might take off and fly like a bird in high winds, load-bearing straw bale walls require some kind of tie-down system. This has been accomplished by a variety of methods, including threaded steel rods that pierce the straw bales ("all-thread"), steel strapping, steel cables, and polyester strapping (the kind used to strap heavy boxes to pallets for shipping), and some rely just on the wire stucco netting that is embedded in stucco. In attempts to shorten the building process, many builders have used these tie-down methods to preload the structure, rapidly compressing the straw bales. The goal is to compress the bales in excess of the combined roof load and dead loads (snow, people, furniture, etc.) to cause the structure's straw bale walls to settle in a few days instead of a few months. For a good discussion of this effort and the options with the best success rates, see *Build It with Bales,* by Matts Myhrman and S. O. MacDonald.

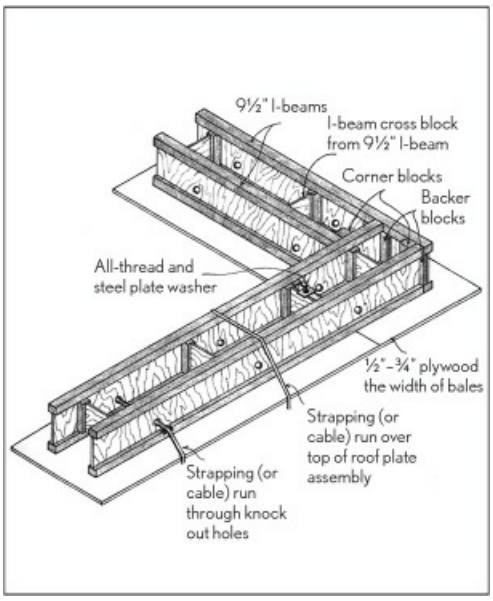

9½" I-beams
I-beam cross block from 9½" I-beam
Corner blocks
Backer blocks
All-thread and steel plate washer
½"–¾" plywood the width of bales
Strapping (or cable) run over top of roof plate assembly
Strapping (or cable) run through knock out holes

Figure 7-4. Bond beam for loadbearing walls, showing strapping and all-thread options. (Illustration courtesy of *The Straw Bale House*, by Athena Swentzell Steen, Bill Steen, and David Bainbridge, with David Eisenberg, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1994)

Finishing Straw Bale Walls

The enemy of straw bales is moisture. As long as the moisture content is kept low, rot and vermin will tend to leave the bales alone. Bugs like termites prefer wooden posts, beams, and window frames to dry straw. A vapor barrier, such as asphalt roofing paper, is typically laid between the first course of bales and the foundation and then folded upward to cover the exterior of the bottom course. Interior walls should be similarly protected against such common problems as overflowing toilets. The top row of bales is protected from roof condensation and leaks by a drip cap. Some prefer to use clay-based adobe mud or lime-based plasters instead of cement-based stucco because their manufacture consumes less fossil fuels they are more breathable, allowing bales to dry over time with less chance for the problem of moisture penetration going undetected. The general consensus among straw bale builders is that breathable lime and earthen plasters, paints, and stuccos are more conducive to creating a healthy home than impermeable cement stuccos and paints, which have a tendency to trap condensation and keep water penetration issues hidden until after they have already caused mold and/or structural problems.

Plasters are typically applied in at least two or three coats. The first coat, known as the "scratch coat," is a thick layer that typically bonds to the bales and covers all of the expanded metal mesh and wire stucco netting (if used). The expanded metal mesh is applied to areas particularly prone to stress and cracking, such as window and door frames or anywhere else that straw bales attach to rigid wood. Stucco wire netting (chicken wire) covers the rest of the straw walls to provide some internal reinforcement to help prevent cracking. Earth-based plasters are cheap (sometimes free if your site has acceptable soil with lots of clay), eco-friendly, easy to apply, usually eliminate the cost of stucco netting, and have a nice soft feel to them. On the

downside, they have relatively poor water resistance, tend to drop fine particles of dust, and are not very hard. Lime-based plasters and stuccos are much more water resistant than earth-based plasters; require far less energy to manufacture and give off much less carbon dioxide in the manufacturing and curing processes than cement; are softer and more flexible than cement; and "breath," making them more suitable for plastering straw bales and earthen structures, since they will be less prone to cracking and will tend to have fewer condensation, moisture, or overdrying problems in these applications. For good discussions of plastering techniques, materials, and options, see *Serious Straw Bale,* by Lacinski and Michael Bergeron; *Building with Cob,* by Adam Weismann and Katy Bryce; and *The Natural Plaster Book: Earth, Lime and Gypsum Plasters for Natural Homes,* by Cedar Rose Guelberth and Dan Chiras.

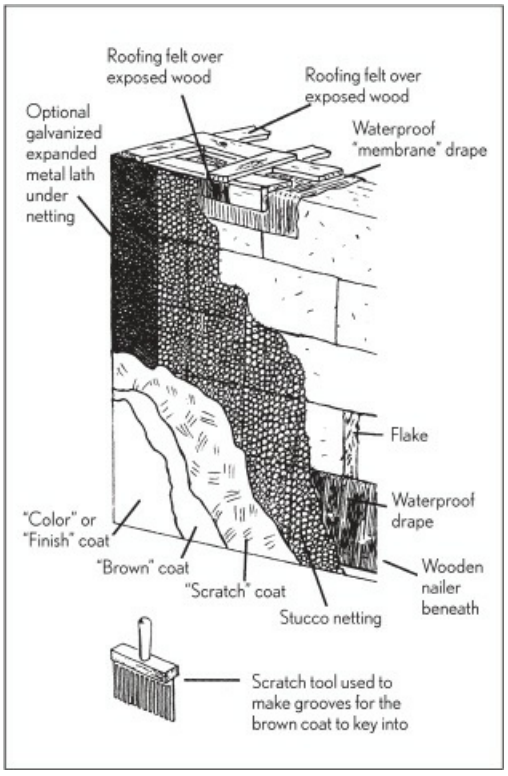

Roofing felt over exposed wood
Roofing felt over exposed wood
Optional galvanized expanded metal lath under netting
Waterproof "membrane" drape
Flake
Waterproof drape
"Color" or "Finish" coat
"Brown" coat
"Scratch" coat
Stucco netting
Wooden nailer beneath
Scratch tool used to make grooves for the brown coat to key into

Figure 7-5. Plaster finish on a straw bale wall. (Illustration courtesy of *Build It with Bales*, by Matts Myhrman and S. O. MacDonald)

ICF

> [O]ne ton of cement produces over one ton of CO_2, and (annual) world cement production was around 1.3 billion tons a few years ago, so we're putting an equal or larger amount of CO_2 into the atmosphere. This is about 8 percent of CO_2 emissions worldwide, a huge percentage for one industry. . . . As you know, it (CO_2) is the primary greenhouse gas that is contributing to global warming. — **Scott Shell, *Environmental Impacts of Cement and Flyash***

Three significant drawbacks to concrete walls are the low insulating value of concrete, the need to either cast concrete within forms or build walls block by block from precast concrete blocks, and the huge amounts of greenhouse gases that are released into the atmosphere each year as a result of concrete production. A relatively new concrete-efficient construction technique is the use of insulated concrete forms (ICF), where the walls are built out of Lego-like fibrous composite or foam blocks stacked together to form building walls with hollow channels. Steel reinforcing rods (rebar) are inserted into the ICF channels, and then concrete is poured into the channels to encase the rebar and form the structure of loadbearing walls. The result is a well-insulated, termite- and rot-resistant wall that, in most ICF systems, uses considerably less concrete than solid wall construction and may even use less cement than cement-stabilized rammed earth walls. Cement content varies significantly between different ICF systems, so if you wish to make your project as green as possible, take this into consideration when selecting a particular brand of ICF (lower overall cement content means less contribution to greenhouse gas emissions). Many ICF blocks have inserts for attaching siding, which may include sheetrock, stucco, wood, and so on. Buildings incorporating ICFs can be designed for exceptional earthquake and hurricane resistance.

Figure 7-6. Stoumen residence, built with fire-resistant Durisol ICFs, near Lake Tahoe. (Photo courtesy of John Stoumen, architect)

Cement is fabricated from limestone and clay, which is kiln fired at 2,700°F to drive water out of the limestone. Cement kilns are the largest items of moving industrial equipment in the world. The mining, kiln firing, grinding, and transportation of cement require the consumption of huge quantities of fossil fuels. Cement kilns are mostly fired with coal, which releases large amounts of carbon dioxide (CO_2), nitrous oxides, sulfur oxides, and particulates into the atmosphere. Additionally, when cement is curing, a chemical reaction called calcining takes place, which releases large amounts of CO_2 as a byproduct of this chemical reaction.

Concrete is a mixture of cement (usually not from a local source) with sand, water, and gravel (usually locally sourced). The use of cement to stabilize a rammed earth wall—whether for seismic resistance, waterproofing, or simply to strengthen local soil—can rapidly make a “green building” not as green as it appears. Concrete, rammed earth, and soil-cement mixtures are often referred to by the number of sacks of cement in the mixture to make a finished cubic yard of material. For example, a six-sack mix of concrete contains sand, gravel, water, and six sacks of concrete to make a cubic yard (27 cubic feet) of concrete. One 94-pound U.S. sack of Portland

cement contains ½ cubic foot of material (weights and volumes of cement sacks vary with location, a 50-kilo sack probably being most common in the world). A common soil-stabilizing mix for rammed earth in earthquake country of 1½ sacks of cement per yard would use as much cement to make a 24-inch-thick, rammed earth wall as a 6-inch-thick, six-sack, solid concrete wall. An ICF wall will usually use significantly less cement, so in that respect, many ICFs are "greener" than thick walls of cement-stabilized earth.

Figure 7-7. Perlman residence, built with ICFs sheathed with Certainteed cement-based weatherboard. (Photo courtesy of Eric Perlman)

There are numerous manufacturers of insulated concrete forms. Some well-known trade names are Arxx, Cempo, Durisol, ECO-Block, Insul-Deck, Keeva, Nudura, Polysteel, and Quad-Lock. The *Green Building Products: The GreenSpec Guide to Residential Building Materials* offers brief descriptions of numerous ICFs, along with other structural building systems, that meet their "green" criteria. If you check the Internet under "insulated concrete forms," you can find manufacturers of these systems and contractors who do this kind of work. Talk to manufacturers for referrals to local contractors, check your phone directory, or search the Internet.

SCIP

When Amory Lovins built the headquarters for the Rocky Mountain Institute (RMI) at an elevation of nearly 8,000 feet in Old Snowmass, Colorado, he accomplished what most people thought was impossible. Using a combination of slip-cast concrete walls with a layer of insulating foam sandwiched in the center of each wall and super-insulated windows and roofing, Lovins created a beautiful, energy-efficient structure that is a joy to live and work in, and is kept warm with the help of the sun and backup heat from a small woodstove that is only needed after multiple days without sunshine. This same building is also famous for growing an abundant crop of winter bananas and other tropical plants in its solarium.

Figure 7-8. The RMI Headquarters solarium produces an annual wintertime banana crop at an 8,000-foot elevation in the Rocky Mountains without a central heating system. (Photo courtesy of RMI)

Lovins built the RMI headquarters at a cost of $130 per square foot, which is not expensive by today's standards but was fairly expensive in its day due to the need to form all of the concrete walls for the slip-cast method. Today, there is a building system called structural concrete insulated panels (SCIPs)—also known by trade names such as 3D Panel, TridiPanel, and Green Sandwich Panels—which provides thermal performance that is equal to or better than Lovins' slip-cast walls, at a fraction of what they would cost today.

SCIPs provide an insulated, concrete-based, structural wall-building system that uses about half the cement and steel of average ICF walls, is well insulated, and includes internal wall skins that have high thermal mass to store solar heat for passive solar applications and nighttime cooling for reduced air-conditioning requirements in hot locations. This building system type also offers an outstanding strength-to-weight ratio and is fireproof, making it a perfect choice for seismically active areas and/or fire-prone regions typically found in many of the western states. Since I live in an area that is both seismically active and prone to wildfires, this building system is my personal favorite. For hurricane- and tornado-prone areas, even the roofs can be made from SCIP panels. For seismic areas, it is probably best to go with lighter-weight traditional roofing rather than a heavy concrete roof.

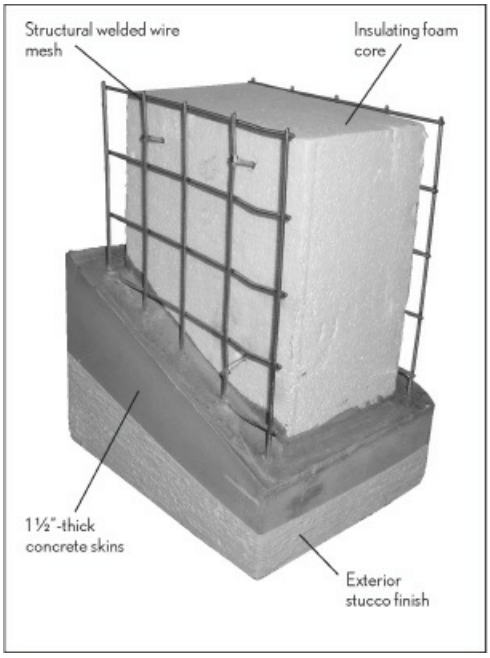


Figure 7-9. SCIP wall cutaway view. (Author's collection)

A SCIP is formed of a foam panel with two layers of structural steel mesh—one on the outside and one on the inside—connected by welded wire trusses that poke through the foam core to connect the inner and outer mesh layers. Building panels are structurally tied to the foundation with steel rebar, window and door openings are usually framed with wood, and panel joints are tacked together and covered with wire mesh. Then the structural walls are coated with a thin layer of high-strength concrete (typically 1½ to 2 inches). Much like an I-beam, the resulting walls have the bulk of their structural materials contained in the 1½-inch-thick inner and outer skins (see Figure 7-9).

Structural engineers know that a rectangular beam's strength goes up with the cube of its height. Therefore, if you double the height of a beam, you get eight times the strength—but if you double its width, you only double its strength. An I-beam is constructed with a thin web of material connecting the outer rectangular structural members to save material while optimizing strength, because the center of a simple rectangular beam contributes only a small amount to its strength. The SCIP building systems optimize their strength-to-material ratio by locating almost all of their structural steel and concrete in relatively thin outer skins. On the other hand, most ICFs locate the bulk of their structural concrete and steel in the center of the wall, where you get the least structural bang for your buck, and where the mass of the structure is thermally isolated from the living areas by an insulation layer, effectively eliminating its use as a thermal mass to store and release solar heating or cooling.

Figure 7-10. Hurricane-resistant SCIP home in Hawaii. (Author's collection)

The downside to SCIPs is that they are not as userfriendly as ICFs. Their installation requires concrete application and finishing skills that are beyond the scope of most owner-builders. For overseas construction projects where there is an abundance of hand labor skilled at stucco application, a handy owner-builder could tackle a SCIP construction on his or her own, but in the United States my advice is to find an experienced crew to ensure that the walls are square, plumb, and finished properly. When I built the Pratt home in Hawaii using 3D panels, we shotcreted the walls and roof, which was a dirty job that would have damaged the neighbors' cars and homes had they been in close proximity (see Figure 7-11).

Today a system is available for applying high-strength sand and cement mixtures to SCIP walls using a plaster pump instead of blasting a mix of pea-gravel, sand, and cement known as "shotcrete." The plaster pump system wastes far less material than is normally wasted as shotcrete "overspray" (typically on the order of 10 percent or more), and does not endanger people and property with the potential for being blasted by overspray. There is also a new concrete additive developed in Russia, called Kalmatron, which enables the application of concrete to SCIPs in subfreezing temperatures down to -28°F. If you decide to take on a SCIP panel project, be advised that even though the walls are relatively simple, when it comes to large concrete ceilings and roofs the project becomes much more complex—requiring the use of structural engineers experienced with commercial concrete buildings, temporary structural steel supports, and an experienced structural concrete crew. My advice is to use the SCIPs for external walls, but stick to conventional roof and floor framing unless you have a contractor with considerable concrete experience.

Figure 7-11. Applying shotcrete to SCIP wall. (Author's collection)

Figure 7-12. Dolan SCIP residence in Reno. (Photo courtesy of Tim Bolton, 3D Smart Structures, Inc.)

"GREEN" CONCRETE

> If we are going to produce structures that have a service life of at least 100 years, HFA (High Fly Ash) concrete and concrete with high volumes of other pozzolans such as slag, rice hull ash and metakaolin, will be the concrete of choice. Straight Portland cement concrete is being replaced by a superior concrete product. — **Burt Lockwood, Central Concrete Supply Manager, Technical Services, from *Making Better Concrete: Guidelines to Using Fly Ash for Higher Quality ecofriendly Structures* by Bruce King**

Originally thought of as a filler in concrete, fly ash is now recognized as a valuable additive that can replace 50 percent or more of the Portland cement in a typical concrete mix, yielding concrete with superior long-term performance while cutting the concrete's greenhouse gas contribution in half and keeping a nasty pollutant out of the atmosphere and ecosystem. Fly ash is a waste by-product that is created when coal is burned in power plants. In the United States and Europe, most fly ash is recovered through the use of expensive smokestack "scrubbers" that remove the fly ash from the waste smoke of power plants, but in places like India and China almost all of it goes "up in smoke," creating a terrible health hazard and wasting a valuable

resource.

Fly ash is classified as a "pozzolan," a group of materials that is itself not cementitious but will react with calcium hydroxide at room temperatures to form compounds with cement-like properties. Thousands of years before the invention of Portland cement in the early 1800s, Roman builders discovered that when they mixed lime plasters with certain ground-up volcanic soils from the region of Pozzuoli, the end result was much harder and more durable than the original plaster, and became known as the famous Roman concrete that has withstood the test of time to this day. Modern fly ash, a waste product from burning coal, behaves chemically much the same as the ancient Romans' natural pozzolans from the region of Pozzuoli. Unfortunately, only about 7 percent of the world's fly ash is captured for use in concrete. What a waste!

In a given mix of concrete, when properly formulated and cured, the replacement of a significant portion of cement with fly ash makes the following improvements in the concrete:

- longterm strength is improved. The concrete will cure at a slower rate, but will continue to develop strength over time, eventually far surpassing standard concrete.
- Water permeability and corrosion resistance are improved. The pozzolans minimize microcracking, far reducing the permeability of the concrete, which protects internal rebar from corrosion. This will reduce long-term corrosion and spalling problems, especially when subject to salt-water sprays, such as when used in homes built near the ocean. Decreased moisture permeability means less tendency to promote mold growth and less long-term frost damage.
- There is improved workability of concrete mix using less water. The tiny round particles of fly ash help to lubricate the concrete mix, making it easier to pump and easier to keep moisture content down, which yields higher strength concrete. Fly ash has been described as the "poor man's super-plasticizer" because its use improves mix flow and reduces water requirements much like commercial plasticizer admixes.
- It produces a lighter-color concrete (closer to white).

IMPORTANT: There are a number of considerations that need to be addressed when using high fly ash concretes. All fly ash concrete mixes should be tested using local materials to ensure that the desired properties are achieved. There are several special considerations, such as longer cure times, potential difficulties with cold weather pours, and the need to ensure proper mix hydration (keep slabs from drying out) during the extended concrete cure period, so if you wish to include fly ash in the concrete in your building project, I highly recommend that you (or your contractor) start your education by picking up a copy of Bruce King's *Making Better Concrete: Guidelines to Using Fly Ash for Higher Quality Eco-Friendly Structures.*

PUMICE-CRETE

Pumice-Crete is an energy and resource-efficient, low-density concrete made from pumice aggregate, Portland cement, and water. Pumice is a featherweight volcanic rock that is an excellent insulator and is found in many parts of the world where volcanoes are present. This spongelike stony material is formed by expansion of gases when molten lava rapidly cools. It is found in very shallow deposits in such places as New Mexico, Arizona, California, Oregon, Washington, and Idaho. If you happen to live within reasonable trucking distance from a supply

of pumice aggregate, the use of Pumice-Crete can provide you with a beautiful, functional, superenergy-efficient home at a reasonable cost using traditional concrete-forming technology. This system is not for the owner-builder, since it requires concrete forming and pouring skills at the contractor level.

Typically, Pumice-Crete is poured on-site in a wall thickness of 14 inches or greater without additional insulation or structural components (unless you are in an active seismic zone). Wall surfaces are finished by applying plaster coats to the interior and stucco to the exterior. The walls are very durable, fireproof, have good noise resistance, are high in thermal mass, and are aesthetically pleasing. Typical Pumice-Crete walls have an R-value of at least 1.5 per inch of thickness, giving an R-value of 27 for an 18-inch-thick wall. A mix of about 2 to 2.5 sacks of cement per cubic yard of Pumice-Crete yields a good balance of strength and insulating value (Berger 2000, 33). Compressive strength for this mix of Pumice-Crete typically runs somewhere around 400 psi, about the same as for goodquality rammed earth and stabilized adobe. Increasing the cement content makes the walls stronger and more expensive while decreasing the insulating value. Reducing the cement content weakens the walls. The use of Pumice-Crete conserves wood and steel but does not cut cement usage due to the increased thickness of the walls. For more information on Pumice-Crete, check out the Pumice-Crete Building Systems of New Mexico Web site at www.pumicecrete.com.

SIP

> Structural insulated panels reduce exterior framing lumber on a typical house by 25 to 50 percent. Combining prefabricated roof trusses and structural panels for exterior walls may reduce total wood used on a building site by up to 25 percent and can reduce framing costs by several thousands of dollars per house. **—Daniel D. Chiras,** ***The New Ecological Home: A Complete Guide to Green Building Options***

Structural insulated panels (SIPs) are typically formed from a sandwich of structural plywood or oriented strand board (OSB) on the outside with a thick layer of rigid insulating foam on the inside. The result is a highly insulated, very strong exterior structural building panel that is often installed on-site in just one or two days. Window and door openings are usually precut at the factory along with internal panel grooves routed into the foam core to run electrical wiring. As with all building systems there is a bit of a learning curve, but builders who use SIP construction on a regular basis swear by it. SIPs have no built-in thermal mass, so they are usually combined with other features (such as concrete slabs with radiant floor heating) to add thermal mass to create a super-comfortable, energy-efficient home.

If you go the SIP route, make sure that your manufacturer builds their SIPs with either plywood or OSB that is made using formaldehyde-free, low-VOC (volatile organic compounds) glues to ensure that your home will be a healthy home. Most SIPs are built with low-VOC materials, but some construction materials give off toxic VOCs that can make chemically sensitive people very sick or cause healthy people to develop chemical sensitivities.

Figure 7-13. SIP residence under construction. (Architectural design by Fred Stoenner, architect. SIPs provided by Better Building Systems, Inc.)

Figure 7-14. Merriam residence, SIP construction. (Architectural design by Fred Stoenner, architect. SIPs provided by Better Building Systems, Inc.)

EARTH-BASED BUILDING SYSTEMS

> Five million years after the evolution of the opposable thumb and 130,000 years after the appearance of the first *Homo sapiens*, most of the planet's species and 50 percent of the planet's humans still live in shelters made of earth. **—David Easton, *The Rammed Earth House***

When compared to the traditional log home, modern "stick-frame" construction methods cut costs and reduced raw materials usage through the efficient use of lumber cut into standardized sizes. Back in 1980 when I was a carpenter, beautiful bug- and rot-resistant, high-quality redwood decking was readily available. Since then, nearly all of the remaining old-growth redwood forests, outside of national parks and forest reserves, have been logged. Redwood decking is now scarce, expensive, and usually of poor quality. Old-growth forests have nearly disappeared from the continental United States, and deforestation has been shown to contribute as much as 25 percent of global greenhouse gas emissions. There is a clear need to further reduce

the use of wood in construction, sparking renewed interest in the modern application of ancient building methods utilizing earth, mud, and stone as building materials. Not only do these construction methods save wood and energy during initial building construction, they also continue to save more over the lifetime of the building. Stick-frame constructed houses have a typical life span of around 100 years before becoming just another pile of debris in a landfill site. Well-constructed rammed earth or adobe structures can last for several hundred years.

Rammed Earth

Rick Heede of the Rocky Mountain Institute (RMI) built his rammed earth home near Aspen, Colorado, during the early 1990s. He hired an experienced rammed earth construction firm to form and ram the walls, but still figures he put in about 3,000 hours of his own time building his 4,100-square-foot home (including 700 feet of solar-heated finished basement). External walls were insulated with four to eight inches of rigid foam, then covered with a stucco exterior finish. Rick used high-efficiency, gas-filled superwindows throughout. The building was oriented for passive solar heating and the roof was superinsulated to R-50 (see under "Insulation" for an explanation of R values). On the occasional winter's day when passive solar heat is not enough to keep his home warm, the propane hot water system provides radiant hydronic heat by circulating hot water through pipes embedded in the cork-and-carpet-covered concrete floors. The net result is a beautiful, solid, super-comfortable, energy-efficient home that should last for centuries. It was built for the low cost of $35 per square foot plus lots of sweat and time.

Rick's home is located at 7,500 feet elevation in the Rocky Mountains of Colorado, but only uses one-fifth as much energy per square foot as the national average. In 1999, Rick's average electricity bill was $25 per month, which included the use of an electric clothes dryer, and he spent about $550 on propane for a year of space and water heating. He is preparing to hook up several solar hot water panels that should practically eliminate his propane usage. To get some idea of the scale of Rick's energy savings, I compared it to a 25-year old, 2,500-square-foot home with insulated fourinch studs and 25-year-old double-pane windows, located at 6,200 feet in California's High Sierra (similar climate to Rick's). Even though this house is almost 40 percent smaller than Rick's, over the same period of time it cost about five times as much for gas and electricity. In 1999, energy bills on this house were $2,500 for a year of natural gas heat (which is about 20 percent cheaper than propane) and an average of $135 per month for electricity.

For many thousands of years, earth and mud have been traditional building materials. Rammed earth building techniques developed in numerous locations scattered around the globe where the

right combinations of sand and clay are naturally present. Throughout France's Rhone River valley, *pise de terre* (rammed earth) has been a dominant wall-building method for 2,000 years. From the deserts of Yemen, to villages in China, to tall Berber structures in the Atlas Mountains of Morocco, rammed earth has been utilized to build beautiful, durable structures that have outlasted many generations of occupants.

Traditional rammed earth structures were built in areas having a natural soil mixture of roughly 70 percent sand/ gravel with 30 percent of the right type of clay (the wrong kind swells too much when wet, and then cracks when dry). Soil with these proportions has almost magical properties. When moistened and rammed (compressed by thorough tamping of thin layers, one on top of another), the clay and water act like a glue or binder, holding the sand particles together. The result is a hard, durable aggregate material that resembles sandstone. Using soil stabilizers, such as Portland cement, modern rammed earth construction can utilize soils outside of the traditional 70/30 proportion, and can achieve stronger, more weather-resistant results.

To meet stringent earthquake codes in areas like California's San Francisco Bay Area, rammed earth buildings typically incorporate steel rebar reinforcing and integrally cast concrete beams. This is not to say that traditional construction methods were not strong and durable. French *pise de terre* buildings have survived for hundreds of years in a severe wet climate. In California, there are about a hundred earth-walled buildings that have survived more than a century of earthquakes—some without foundations and all without the use of cement, steel, or modern fasteners.

The massive walls of rammed earth buildings lend a feeling of strength, quiet, and permanence, as well as being a giant thermal mass, making them cool in the summer and warm in the winter. Even though the walls are thick (typically on the order of 18 to 24 inches), rammed earth is not a particularly good insulator, so an insulating layer is added to either the center or the outside of rammed earth walls when built in cold climates.

In the following pages, I describe several rammed earth construction basics. For a beautifully illustrated design guide and handbook to building with rammed earth, see David Easton's *The Rammed Earth House*. If you live in earthquake country, or just want to get your rammed earth building past the local building inspector, it is probably a good idea to pick up a copy of *Buildings of Earth and Straw: Structural Design for Rammed Earth and Straw-Bale Architecture,* by Bruce King. This book is written both for the layperson as well as the professional engineer, and is surprisingly readable. Even if you do not understand all the engineering jargon, a copy of this book could give your structural engineer just what he or she needs to get your project approved by the local building department (and to make sure it's done right).

The Process

In the Atlas Mountains of Morocco, Berber tribes continue to use methods that are hundreds of years old to make their rammed earth structures. In the traditional process, the outline of the building is traced on the ground or some kind of foundation is constructed. Wooden forms, roughly 2 feet high and 6 or 8 feet long, are clamped or tied around two end panels that determine the wall thickness (typically 1½ to 2 feet), while moist earth from on or near the building site is rammed into the form. Loose earth is laid in shallow layers (approximately 4 to 6 inches deep) in the form, and then tamped with about a 10-pound block of wood mounted on a

long handle. The hand rammer is repeatedly lifted one to two feet in the air and then dropped onto the moist soil layer. The rammer should be heavy enough to ram the earth with its mass, yet light enough for the worker to lift it thousands of times a day. The combination of vibration and compaction helps to solidify the earth into a rock-like aggregate. As the soil becomes compacted, the sound from the rammer changes from a dull thud to a ringing sound, which signals that it's time to add the next layer of soil.

Traditionally, once the 2-foot-high form has been rammed to the top, the form is moved horizontally along the perimeter of the walls. After the first wall layer is rammed all the way around the perimeter of the building, the form is stacked on the top of the first layer of wall, then worked around the perimeter to form the second layer, and so on. Forms are placed in the wall to block off space for openings such as windows and doors, and the earth is rammed around the forms. Wooden beams bridge across the tops of window and door openings.

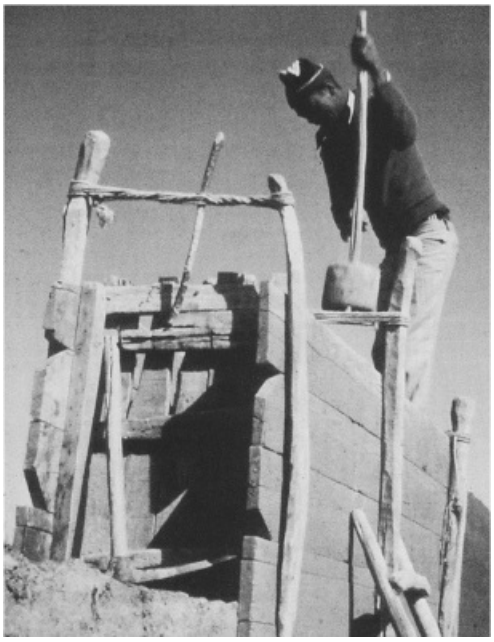


Figure 7-15. Traditional rammed earth forms. (Illustration courtesy of *The Rammed Earth House*, by David Easton, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2007)

Buckets and hand rammers are still cost effective where labor is very inexpensive. Where labor rates are high and construction machinery is available, modern mechanized methods greatly speed the process. Modern rammed earth structures start with a steel-reinforced concrete foundation, including a footing and stem wall. In both the Australian form method and David Easton's rammed earth works (REW) method, forms are clamped to the foundation to build full-height wall sections, rather than working round and round while raising all the walls two feet at a time, as in traditional rammed earth construction. Rototillers, portable batch plants, and cement mixers are effective tools for mixing the soil with stabilizers. Tractor buckets and cranes replace the traditional bucket brigades for lifting the soil into the forms. Pneumatic rammers, run by large air compressors, replace most of the hand tamping except for careful hand tamping around electrical conduits and plumbing.

In earthquake zones, engineered steel-reinforced concrete columns are cast as an integral part

of the walls between panels of rammed earth, and steel rebar is incorporated into the rammed earth panels as well as used to connect the panels to the foundation. An integrally cast, steelreinforced concrete "bond beam" caps the rammed earth wall panels, providing anchors for a wooden cap and the roof. Piping and electrical conduit are roughed in before the wall forms are placed, essentially becoming "cast in stone" as the walls are rammed around them. If you wish to carve alcoves, niches, or cubbyholes into the rammed earth walls, it should be done in the first few days after the walls are formed. As the walls cure, they become "rock hard" and carving becomes extremely difficult.

Soils

Traditional rammed earth structures were built only in locations with appropriate soils available on-site. Using Portland cement as a soil stabilizer has enabled modern builders to use a broader range of soils.

> **NOTE: Because the manufacturing of Portland cement consumes a considerable amount of energy, contributing significantly toward global warming, it is not a "green" material, but even "green buildings" will usually use at least some cement for building the foundation. The use of a "rubble trench"–style foundation and high-fly-ash concrete can reduce the cement content of a home by well over 50 percent.**

If your soil is not too far from the ideal, adding either sand or clay may make it workable. Begin your quest by making a simple preliminary field test. At several different locations around your building site, dig through the topsoil layer and fill a labeled bucket with soil from each location. Because organic material in topsoil would severely weaken the walls, your soil should be from the lighter-colored, hard subsoil, a foot below the topsoil. Place a couple cups of this soil into a glass jar and fill the rest with water. Shake the jar to thoroughly mix the soil with the water, and then let it sit for a couple hours until the soil has settled. The fine particles of clay and silt should settle out clearly above the sand. If it is nearly all clay and silt, or all sand, you will have to look elsewhere for your materials (local sand and gravel quarries are a good source). If it is roughly one-fifth to one-third fine particles and the rest is sand (some gravel is okay), then you can probably work with your local soil. In the "jar test," it is hard to tell the difference between clay and silt. Too much silt and your soil will be too weak for rammed earth walls, so lab tests or functional tests will still be required for making the final decision about your local dirt (Easton 1996, 93).

If your soil looks promising, the next step is to make some test blocks to evaluate the material for strength, weatherability, and color. Cylinders can be rammed into typical 3-inch-diameter by 6-inch-long, concretestyle test cylinders for lab strength tests. Like concrete, test cylinders are broken at 7, 14, and 28 days to determine the cured strength. For your personal aesthetic and durability evaluations, ram the moistened earth into a wooden 12-inch by 16-inch form with 2-by-4 spacers, held together with ½-inch bolts. Place the cured slab in the spray from garden sprinklers to determine its moisture resistance. If the building is in a wet climate, and the test slab degrades under a firm hose spray, the soil should be stabilized with Portland cement. Take your time and be very thorough with your soil testing and selection process. The success of your project depends on getting this right. See Easton's *The Rammed Earth House* for further soil tests

and for advice on working with quarried materials, such as road base, structural backfill, or the less expensive quarry fines. Quarry fines are waste materials that often work well for rammed earth and are usually available for less than half the cost of road base.

Your topsoil is a valuable resource for landscaping and gardening. Prior to the start of construction, scrape topsoil off the building site into piles, including cleared greenery, for composting while the building is under construction. When construction is completed, the composted waste vegetation and topsoil will be a wonderful landscaping aid.

Getting the moisture content right for rammed earth is more of an art than a science. The typical moisture content is a very scientific-sounding 8 percent, arrived at through very unscientific methods. If it is freshly dug from the ground, it will probably already have about the right moisture content. An experienced builder will take an appropriately sized pile of dry earth and put a garden sprinkler on it overnight to arrive at the 8 percent moisture content by morning. It is best to add the moisture to the soil from between several hours to a few days before use. It takes time for the moisture to fully wet the microscopic clay platelets that form the glue in the rammed earth. Stabilizers, such as Portland cement, must be worked into the pile before loading into forms, and the soil must be thoroughly mixed into a homogeneous mass before use. Typical cement stabilization is 4 to 6 percent by weight. One of the easier ways to mix your soil is with the use of a rototiller. Probably the fastest method is for an experienced tractor handler to thoroughly mix the soil by many back-and-forth sweeps with the tractor bucket.

Moisture Test

The classic test for proper moisture content is the "dirt ball drop." Proper moisture content is a drier mix than the average person would guess. The mixture is damp, but not at all wet or muddy. With both hands, scoop up enough moist earth to gather into a sphere the size of a softball, then firmly pack into a hard ball of earth. The earth ball should be moist enough to hold its shape, even when held by fingers spread widely apart. Drop the ball from a height of about 5 feet onto the ground. If it shatters into its former loose state, it's fine, but if it doesn't break or it breaks into clumps, it's too wet (Easton 1996, 141).

The Forms

You can build the forms yourself, hire a rammed earth construction company that has its own forms, or lease them from construction rental companies. As mentioned previously, in both Australia and the United States, modern rammed earth practice is to build fullheight walls a section at a time, rather than the traditional method of building the walls round and round two feet at a time. The Australians have standardized stackable 2-foot-high by 8-foot-long forms that are easy to handle but require numerous concrete ties to keep the forms from bulging under the pressure of the rammed earth. These ties are tapered and use threaded steel rods that are time-consuming to install, plus they leave holes that must be patched when removed. Easton's rammed earth works (REW) form method uses 8- to 10-foot wide plywood forms with floating 2-foot by 10-foot or 2-foot by 12-foot stiffening boards (called "walers" in concrete-forming terminology) to allow him to drastically reduce the numbers of required clamps and clamp holes that need to be patched. He uses ¾-inch pipe and quick-action "pony" clamps to rapidly clamp the forms around full-height plywood end plates that set the wall thickness. Pipes are pushed through holes in the forms, and then walers are set on top of the pipes and pony clamps are slid over the pipes to clamp the forms together through the stiffening walers. Hardwood wedges are

tapped between the pipes and the end panels to hold the end panels precisely in position yet allow for removal of the pipes after ramming. The pressure of the rammed earth pins the end panels tightly against the pipes. Tapping the wedges out relieves the pressure on the pipes and allows for their removal. Walers spaced 15 inches apart make a convenient ladder for climbing up and down the form to ram the earth. Easton prefers to use ¾-inch by 10-foot sheets of HDO (high density overlay) plywood for reusable forms, but ¾-inch AC plywood or 1⅛-inch plywood subflooring will do and can be used later for roof sheeting or flooring.

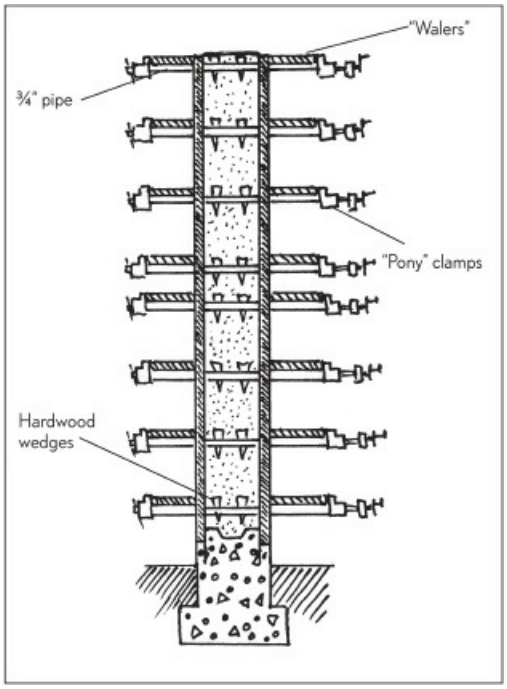


Figure 7-16. David Easton's rammed earth works forms. (Adapted from an illustration from *The Rammed Earth House*, by David Easton, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2007)

Wall Systems

Typically, the corners are formed first. They are more difficult to form than straight sections, and will define the outline of the building, providing alignment points for each panel. Corners are formed using a roughly 3-foot-square form, with a smaller hollow form to make the inside of the corner.

If you have a limited number of forms, the simplest wall system is to form 6- or 8-foot wall panels one at a time. Form every other panel first, allowing the individual panels to cure and harden a couple of days before forming connecting panels. Until the connecting panels are formed, your project will start to look a little like Stonehenge. A keyway is formed into the top of the foundation stem wall and both ends of each individually formed wall panel, so that each wall section locks to the foundation and the other sections via the keyway (see Figure 7-18). To form the keyway into wall sections, attach a full-length, beveled 2-by-4 to the inside center of each end board in the form. The sides of the keyway 2-by-4s are beveled at a significant taper so that they will release from the rammed earth when the forms are taken down. In the individual panel system, small 45-degree bevel strips are attached to the inside corners of each end board to

make for clean expansion joints at each panel junction. The rammed earth walls are capped with either a wooden beam or a reinforced concrete “bond beam” that is cast in place after all wall sections have been rammed. The bond beam is keyed to each wall section, structurally tying them all together and providing steel ties for attaching the roof.

Figure 7-17. Corner forming.

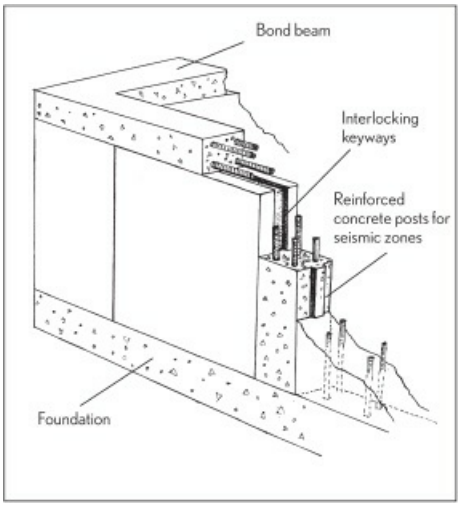


Figure 7-18. Rammed earth wall section (note interlocking keyways).

If you have lots of available forms, walls of stepped heights, or a need for a crane, it is cleaner and faster to form entire walls at once. In the continuous wall-forming system, expansion joints are eliminated, and there is no need for separate forms to form the bond beam because it is cast as the top section of the continuous wall. In seismic zones, a freestanding panel system is the norm, with rammed earth panels connected by narrow, steelreinforced concrete columns, all tied together by the top concrete bond beam. After the foundation is poured and the corners rammed, each freestanding panel is rammed with keyways formed into both ends. Concrete columns are poured into the gaps between the panels, forming a continuous wall with built-in, post-and-beam

style, loadbearing reinforced concrete columns (see *The Rammed Earth House* for more detail).

Windows and Doors

With multipanel systems, spaces for windows are often made using short window-width panels rammed to the height of the windowsill, placed between full-height wall panels. Door spaces can be precise gaps between full wall panels. Beam lintels over windows and doors can consist of just the bond beam; cast reinforced concrete; steel; or rot-resistant timbers, such as redwood, cedar, or pressure-treated lumber. In continuous wall systems, strong removable boxes are constructed to the size of the opening. Easton refers to these forms as volume displacement boxes (VDB). These boxes are precisely dimensioned to allow for sills, trim, and so on. VDBs must be assembled in such a manner that they can be disassembled from the outside, after the form walls have been removed, while under significant pressure from the rammed earth. As is typical of thick-walled construction, most window openings should be formed with an outward bevel to bring more light in and restrict less of the view. VDBs can be used to form bookcases, niches, alcoves, fireplaces, and chimneys directly within the rammed earth walls.

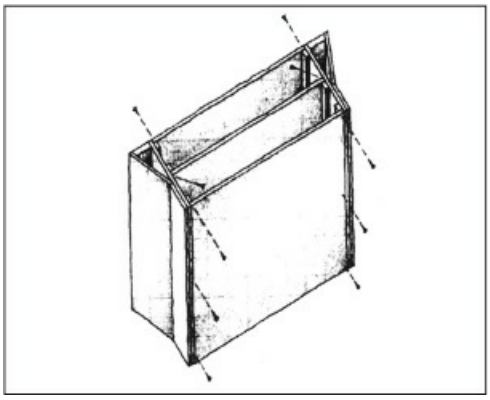


Figure 7-19. Volume displacement box (VDB) for forming window opening. (Illustration courtesy of *The Rammed Earth House*, by David Easton, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1996)

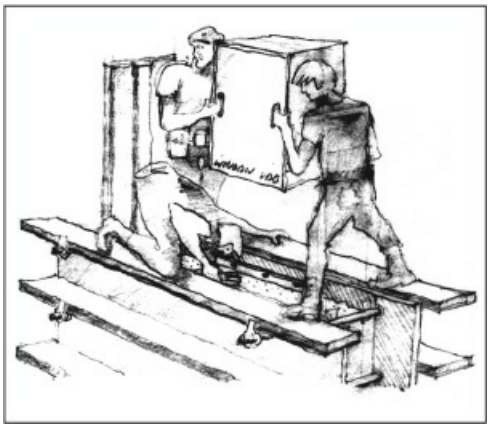


Figure 7-20. Placement of volume displacement box (VDB) for forming window opening. (Illustration courtesy of *The Rammed Earth House*, by David Easton, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1996)

Adobe

> One of the most exciting developments in earth building techniques in recent years is the use of lime to stabilize compressed earth blocks. While building a new development of roughly 6,000 homes at Loreto Bay, Baja California Sur, Mexico, using compressed earth blocks stabilized with 5 percent lime, the project was struck by hurricane John, which dropped over twenty inches of rain with sustained winds of 80 mph. . . . The storm did no damage to walls or structures of the Loreto project, a certain test of the lime-stabilized earth block walls. **—Joe Tibbets, *Adobe Builder Magazine***

Adobe is a traditional earth wall-building material that has been used for many centuries. The Pueblo Indians of the U.S. Southwest have built passive, solar-heated, apartment-like buildings out of adobe since long before Columbus arrived in the Americas. Traditional adobe is a true "green" building material, being made from local earth and straw. The optimum soil mixture of about onethird sand, one-third silt, and one-third clay is roughly the same as for rammed earth. The soil mixture should have practically no organic content (don't use topsoil) except for optional added straw, which acts as a fibrous reinforcement to deter cracking. For traditional adobe construction, a wet soil and chopped straw mixture is poured into individual wood molds or large, oiled-wood "gang" molds. The earth is wet enough to fill the molds with minimal tamping, yet dry enough to stay put without slumping when the molds are immediately lifted off the bricks so another set of bricks can be cast. When the bricks have dried enough to resist cracking, they are placed on edge to dry completely.

As with rammed earth, the soil composition is critical to the strength of the end product. Stabilizers such as Portland cement, lime, or asphalt emulsion may be added at roughly 5 percent of the overall volume to improve the moisture resistance and strength of adobe bricks. Bricks are stacked into thick-walled structures, using adobe mud for mortar between the bricks. Massive adobe walls tend to be warm in winter and cool in summer, although like rammed earth, adobe is not a great insulator. Consequently, for cold climates, modern adobe construction incorporates foam insulation either in the center or on the exterior of the wall. In moderate climates, a double wall of adobe bricks with a 2-inch air gap between the inner and outer walls may add sufficient insulation and provides a convenient space to run plumbing and electricity.

In traditional structures, wooden beams bridge window and door openings, and peeled logs support a flat roof, which is sealed with a thick layer of clay-rich adobe. Adobe mud is smeared over the outside surface walls to give it a stucco-like finish that "breathes." The traditional adobe mud exterior is not waterproof, so a fresh mud coating is typically reapplied every 1 to 5 years (depending on rain erosion). When I visited the famous 200-year-old adobe Catholic church in Taos, New Mexico, I was told that 30 years earlier the church had tired of the annual reapplication of a mud adobe exterior finish, so they had applied a Portland cement stucco exterior coating sealed with latex paint. After 20 years, this nonbreathable finish started to cause degradation in the structural walls, so the church had to strip the cement stucco and return to the annual practice of applying an adobe mud surface coat. Since returning to the traditional breathable finish, the structural degradation has stabilized.

Modern Adobe Methods

Most modern adobe buildings start with a steel-reinforced concrete foundation, similar to the foundations used for rammed earth. The foundation usually has a short stem wall to protect the adobe from moisture penetration. Like rammed earth, massive adobe walls require adequate support and must be specially engineered for seismic zones. Using Frank Lloyd Wright's foundation system of rubble-filled trenches and floating, shallow cast footings is a good way to minimize the use of concrete (concrete contributes to greenhouse gases). Similar to rammed earth construction, a wooden or reinforced concrete "bond beam" caps adobe walls, structurally tying the walls together and providing strong attachment points for the roofing system. Designing the roofing system to act like a structural "diaphragm" ties opposing walls together for improved seismic resistance. Building roofs with significant overhangs, although departing from the traditional adobe look, can provide water protection in wetter climates and shade from the high summer sun.

Building with adobe bricks is a labor-intensive process. For the owner-builder, with a lot of available time and perhaps an abundance of low-skilled family labor (sweat equity), building with adobe can be one way of providing yourself with a beautiful, energy-efficient home at a very low cost per square foot. If you purchase adobe bricks, the bricks can be pricey due to the labor involved in making them. A time- and cost-saving device available to the modern adobe contractor and at some rental yards is the use of automated hydraulic machines for making pressed adobe blocks from local dirt right on the building site. If the soil is of the right composition, the pressed adobe blocks need no stabilizers and are stronger than traditional adobe. Making the bricks on-site saves handling labor, transportation costs, and raw materials expense. Remember that the soil content is important: garbage in equals garbage out.

Building the walls brick by brick is also labor intensive. Traditionally, adobe mud is used as a mortar between the horizontal brick surfaces, but the vertical brick surfaces were left as dry gaps to provide cracks for the plastered mud finish to grip to. Walls are usually plastered with either a Portland cement–based stucco (waterproof but not breathable), lime-based plaster (very high water resistant and breathable), or clay-based adobe plaster (moderately water resistant and breathable). Today, interior walls are often finished with a handcrafted look that leaves the adobe blocks visible to show off the structure of the adobe block walls.

An interesting alternative to adobe bricks was developed in the 1990s by Arizona metallurgist Harris Lowenhaupt and architect/contractor Michael Frerking, who developed a special breakthrough formula and process for "cast earth." Cast earth uses gypsum and a proprietary retardant to stabilize earth mixtures and reduce shrinkage, allowing for the use of standard concrete industry labor-saving machinery, forms, and techniques to make walls of cast earth. Normally, adobe cannot be cast into thick walls, because it would take weeks to dry and would crack from shrinkage as it dried. Cast earth quickly wethardens to a point where the forms can be stripped and it can support modest structural loads. When fully dried and cured, it has compressive strengths that exceed standards for stabilized rammed earth and adobe. Cast earth has the potential to commercially produce earth-walled homes for about the same cost as stick-frame housing (Carpenter 1997, 18). See a following section of this chapter for more information on the cast earth process.

Although it is a bit dated, Paul G. McHenry's *Adobe: Build It Yourself* is still the best practical

introductory guide for building with adobe blocks, including code-approved foundations and bond beams. For the latest in up-to-date information on modern rammed earth, cast earth, and adobe building equipment, suppliers, contractors, and methods, plus a variety of hands-on natural building classes, check out the Southwest Solar Adobe School, their quarterly trade journal *Adobe Builder* (www.adobebuilder.com), and their *Earthbuilder's Encyclopedia* on CD-ROM. The *Earthbuilder's Encyclopedia* contains numerous photos and illustrations of both finished projects and construction details that you will not find in any other source.

Adobe Blocks

Whether you are mixing adobe mud in a traditional earthen pit or using modern machinery, your adobe blocks should be strong enough to pass the Uniform Building Code (UBC) 300 psi compressive strength requirement. Commercial adobes are almost always certified to meet or exceed this specification, and their manufacturers should provide material certifications upon request. Cured adobes should be strong enough to survive a five-foot drop without breaking. A crude strength test is to stand in the center of a single adobe block supported by the outer couple inches of two opposing edges. If it collapses under the weight of a 160-pound person, it is probably too weak. If you are making your own adobe blocks, you should cast sample adobe cylinders and have them tested at a local concrete lab for strength (call your building inspector or concrete lab for details).

Begin your quest for adequate soil by checking local soil with the "jar test" as described in the rammed earth section above. Next, mix some adobe mud and cast a sample block in a rectangular wooden form (10 inches by 4 inches by 14 inches is one of the most popular standard sizes). Production adobes are typically made in gang forms of oiled 2-by-4s to make six to sixteen adobes at once. The forms should be placed on dry flat ground on top of a thin layer of sand. Mix the earth with enough water to make a doughy, but not soupy, mass. Traditional mixing was done in an earth pit, but cement mixers work decently and pug mills work best. Make sure that the mud mixture has been worked long enough for moisture to penetrate evenly into all the little balls of earth before pouring into prewetted forms. Scrape across the top of the adobe form with a straight wooden bar ("screed") to make a smooth surface that is even with the top of the form.

After an initial set, the adobe block should be stiff enough to carefully lift the forms off the blocks without slumping. If there is too much clay in the soil (the most common problem), the block will shrink considerably and will usually start to crack within 24 hours. Add more sand or straw if blocks crack. The strongest blocks have the highest clay content without cracking. Too much silt or sand makes for weak blocks. Traditionally, adobes relied on high clay content for moisture resistance. Chopped straw helps clay-rich adobes to resist cracking, but straw also tends to wick moisture into adobes and is considered undesirable in modern adobe construction. Commercial adobes often include stabilizing additives to improve water resistance, which allows for less clay and the elimination of the straw. Adding 2.5 to 5 percent (by weight) asphalt stabilizer to the adobe mix will make the blocks waterproof. Adding 4 to 6 percent (by weight) Portland cement will both strengthen and improve water resistance, allowing for use of a greater range of soils, but also increases the cost. Stack adobe blocks on edge to cure for several weeks before using (longer if the weather has been humid). Keep them sheltered from rains, and stack them in such a way that they do not "domino."

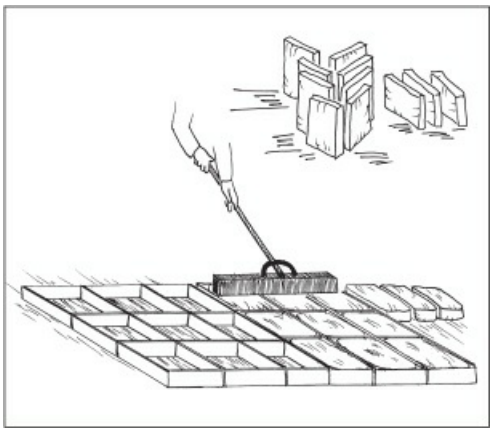


Figure 7-21. Adobe gang molds and hand screed.

In the 1950s, Colombian engineer Raoul Ramirez invented a simple, long-armed hand press, called a "CinvaRam," for compressing moist earth into adobe blocks. The Cinva-Ram speeds the process of making adobes by eliminating the lengthy cure time for cast blocks. Cinva-Rams can be welded from simple steel stock or purchased from a variety of sources. Pressed adobe blocks can be stabilized with 4 to 6 percent of Portland cement or lime, but cannot use asphalt emulsion because the pressed blocks require moist rather than wet soil mixes. Modern equipment manufacturers have developed automated machines that hydraulically compress earth into strong and consistent adobe blocks. These machines are expensive ($5,000 for slower, manually operated machines, and up to $200,000 for computerized, high-production models), but they greatly speed up the process for making consistently strong adobe blocks right on the job site or at an adobe factory. Pressed blocks can make high-strength adobe out of soils that do not cast well, but too much clay can cause blocks to splay and crack if they absorb moisture, and too much sand or silt can result in low strength.

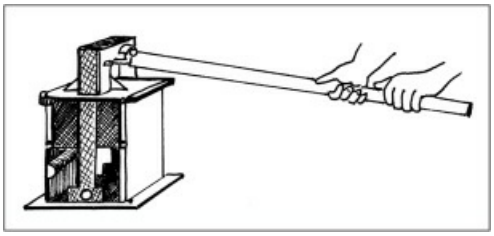


Figure 7-22. Making adobe bricks in a Cinva-Ram.

CAUTION: Test your blocks!

Adobe Walls

Traditional adobes were built on a stone foundation with mud mortar or laid directly on the ground. Modern adobes generally use a cast, reinforced concrete foundation with a concrete block or cast stem wall, raising the adobe blocks above ground level to prevent water damage. Adobe walls must be protected from moisture. If unstabilized adobe blocks become wetted throughout the full thickness of the wall, the massive weight of the upper adobe wall will squirt the lower wet adobes out the side, like toothpaste.

For traditional adobe blocks, spread a layer of adobe mud ½- to 1-inch thick as mortar between the blocks. The mud is the same as that used for the bricks, except that it should be screened through a ¼-inch mesh to remove all stones larger than ¼ inch. If your blocks are stabilized, you should also stabilize your adobe mortar. Score adobe blocks with a hard tool and break them over a sharp edge to make shorter end blocks for staggering alternate rows. Stagger blocks in the walls by at least 4 inches. Begin laying blocks at the corners and lay toward the middle. Run a tight string from corner to corner to keep the rows level, straight, and even. Thick adobe walls (18 to 28 inches) have better stability in earthquakes than thin (10-inch) walls, have much more thermal mass to store the sun's heat, and use many more bricks.

Doors and windows should be rough-framed with timbers or cast-concrete frames. For load-bearing lintels across door and window openings, use either heavy timbers or cast, reinforced concrete beams. Adobes carry only modest compressive loads, so either provide loadbearing posts to support lintels or extend lintels on both sides of openings to spread lintel loads over several feet of wall (distance varies with loads). In seismic zones, properly engineered, reinforced concrete columns and rebar poked through holes in the adobe blocks typically tie the bond beam to the foundation. Traditional adobe construction avoids wall openings within four feet of corners and sometimes adds massive external buttresses to outside corners of buildings to provide extra support. Wooden "gringo" blocks, the same width as adobe blocks, or narrow wooden nailing strips inserted between layers of blocks, are built into the adobe walls around window/ door frames or where shelves are required. Because you cannot nail or screw objects directly to adobe bricks, these wooden inserts provide anchor points.

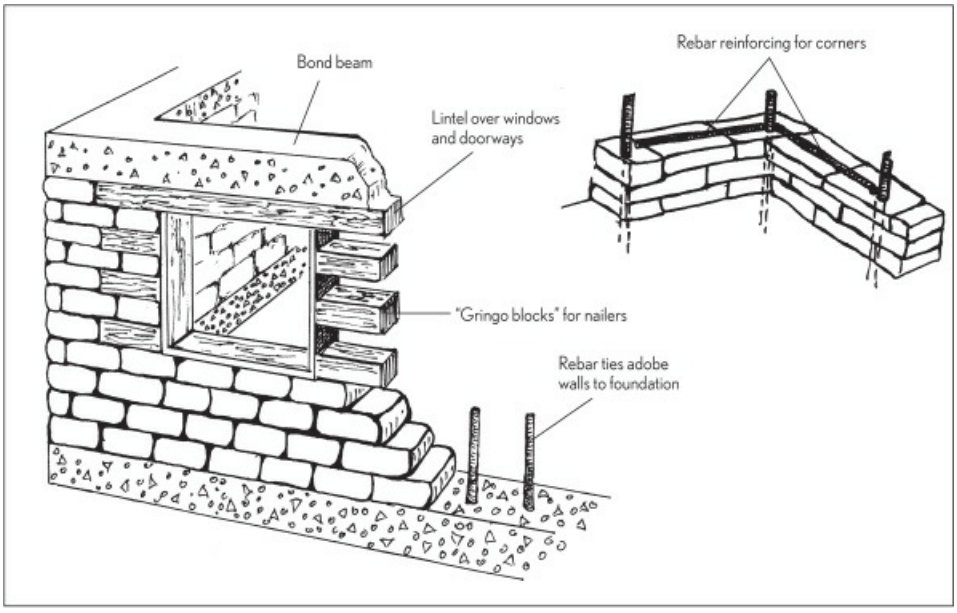

Bond beam
Lintel over windows and doorways
"Gringo blocks" for nailers
Rebar ties adobe walls to foundation
Rebar reinforcing for corners

Figure 7-23. Typical adobe wall construction.

Adobe plaster will adhere directly to adobe walls, but must be renewed every few years because it erodes with rainfall. Cement stucco is waterproof, but must be applied over stucco wire and expanded metal lath nailed to the adobe walls, wall opening rough frames, and beams. Due to the difference in thermal expansion rates between cement stucco and adobe, cement

stucco will not adhere directly to adobe over time. Use the expanded metal lath where beams and frames join adobe walls to prevent cracks from forming in the plastered finish.

Adobe Roofs

Traditional adobe structures have massive earth-covered flat roofs. The high clay content in the soil roof swells when wet and seals out water, but usually requires annual maintenance to seal cracks in the soil. Heavy log beams or "vigas" provided support for the earthen roof, which may be as much as 18 inches thick and weigh more than 100 pounds per square foot. Walls had to be extremely thick to support the massive loads of these roofs.

Modern roofs may be flat or vaulted. The use of modern roofing materials drastically reduces the weight of the roof, which is a big plus in seismic zones. Roofs should be insulated with rigid foam or batt/loose insulation between joist spacers. "Flat" roofs are not entirely flat. They typically have a slope of at least ¼ inch per foot to ensure adequate drainage. Provide roof drainage that won't erode adobe walls. There are a variety of modern roofing materials to choose from (see your local roofing contractor). In hot, sunny locations, using light-colored roofing materials can significantly reduce your air-conditioning bill.

Cob

Cob is a term applied to a traditional building technique for making thick monolithic walls from a combination of soil, clay, sand, and straw. It is basically adobe without the bricks. Cob lends itself to a wide variety of climates, including wet temperate zones like Great Britain and Oregon. Like rammed earth and adobe, cob has great thermal mass but requires very thick walls both for strength and insulation. Cob building is labor intensive and appeals to sculptor types who don't like to be constricted by square corners and perfectly flat walls.

Traditional cob structures were built on a foundation of flat stones to keep the cob walls separated from wet soils and above flood levels. Load-bearing walls are generally 12 to 24 inches thick. As with adobe and rammed earth, the cob mixture must have the right proportion of sand, clay, and soil, so you should begin your cob quest with a soil test (as described in the section on rammed earth) and finish with the adobe brick test, to ensure that your cob mixture will have enough strength to hold up your roof. For an excellent handbook that walks you through all aspects of cob construction plus complementary natural building techniques such as polished earthen floors, lime and earthen plasters, thatch and turf roofs, and natural breathable paints, I highly recommend *Building With Cob: A Step-By-Step Guide,* by Adam Weismann and Katy Bryce.

Figure 7-24. Hilde Dawe's house in British Columbia, built by Patrick Hennebery. (Photo from *The HandSculpted House*, by Ianto Evans, Michael G. Smith, and Linda Smiley)

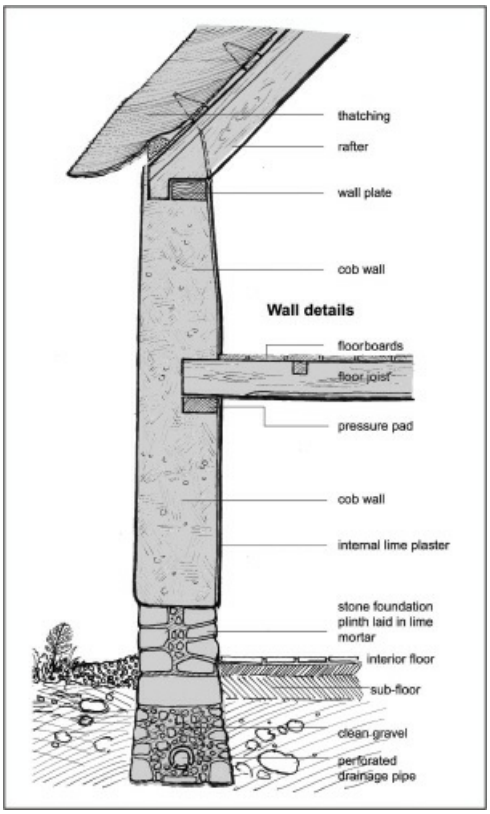


Figure 7-25. Typical profile of the elements making up a cob and thatch building. (Illustration from *Building With Cob: A Step-By-Step Guide*, by Adam Weismann and Katy Bryce, Green Books Ltd., 2006)

Cast Earth

An exciting and promising new eco-friendly building process is cast earth. This process has been used on a variety of residential projects and could compete favorably with stick-frame construction on a finished-cost basis. Traditional earth building methods are extremely labor intensive and usually cost significantly more than stickframe construction if the labor costs of a construction crew are figured in. Adobe bricks are usually made by labor-intensive processes,

and adobe buildings require the hand placement of thousands of adobe bricks. Even with modern forms and pneumatic tampers, rammed earth construction also requires a considerable amount of labor.

The cast earth method utilizes gypsum and a proprietary retardant to stabilize earth mixtures and reduce shrinkage, allowing for the use of existing concrete industry labor-saving machinery, forms, and techniques to make walls of cast earth. When walls are poured with the cast earth mixture, the forms can be removed on the same day as the pour, since the wet material sets up quickly to the point where it is strong enough to support a complete wall. Lower levels set before the wall height grows significantly, allowing use of lightweight forms and fewer ties than rammed earth requires. Because of the glue-like nature of the calcined gypsum and its slight expansion on setting, shrinkage and cracking are not a problem. With the cast earth method, it is possible to use a much wider range of soils than have historically been employed for earth building, but it does require a mix of about 10 to 15 percent of gypsum (by weight). In general, steel reinforcing is not used in the cast earth method, but for seismic locations the addition of reinforcing steel is not a problem. This is a proprietary process that requires training and licensing, is not for the owner-builder, and does not become cost effective for a contractor unless used on multiple projects.

Unlike the manufacturing of cement, which releases large amounts of CO_2 (the major greenhouse gas) directly into the atmosphere as a result of a chemical reaction, the chemical reaction of calcining gypsum directly releases water, but no CO_2 (Lowenhaupt 2000, 9). The burning of fossil fuels to generate the required heat for calcining gypsum does release some CO_2. However, because the calcining of gypsum occurs at much lower temperatures than are required by the cement process, significantly less energy is consumed to make a sack of gypsum than a sack of cement, resulting in far less CO_2 released into the atmosphere. By my calculations, processing gypsum releases roughly a tenth as much CO_2 as processing an equivalent amount of cement. For more information on this new technology, see Cast Earth in the resources section of this chapter (www.castearth.com).

FIRE-RESISTANT GREEN BUILDING

In October 1993, when a vicious wildfire broke out in Laguna Beach, a southern California beach town, firefighter John Henderson was called down from his home in the Sierras of northern California to fight the blaze. The combination of extremely dangerous fire conditions, brought on by three consecutive drought years coupled with 60 to 70 mph hot and dry Santa Ana winds, quickly whipped the fire into an unstoppable conflagration. When John rounded a corner on the Pacific Coast Highway, just north of Laguna Beach, he saw a sight that he will never forget. He and his partner watched the firestorm rush down the dry hills toward the ocean. The heat of the firestorm was so intense that, even after blowing across four lanes of pavement, it was hot enough to ignite a mile-long stretch of wooden telephone poles on the ocean side of the road. From a distance, he said they looked like a string of matchsticks stuck in the sand, igniting one

after the other until there were perhaps a hundred telephone poles burning at once.

If current scientific predictions of global warming prove anywhere near correct, then the horrific 2007 fires outside of San Diego and the 1993 Laguna Beach fires are simply a preview of future wildfires that will endanger hundreds of thousands of homes in the coming years. Whether you are a homeowner wishing to improve the fire resistance of your current dwelling or are planning to build a new home, there are a number of actions you can take to improve the chances that your home will survive a local wildfire.

Lessons from the 1993 Laguna Fire

- Many (if not most) homes in this fire burned from the inside out when firestorm heat radiated through closed windows and slipped inside through foundation and roof vents to ignite interior curtains, rugs, and so on. Double-pane windows and heavily insulated walls will slow the rate of heat penetration into interior spaces.
- The only buildings to survive the Laguna fire had insulated walls, double-pane windows, and blocked or minimized venting. A well-insulated, well-sealed building envelope and high thermal mass will slow interior heating and ignition.
- Minimize venting, and screen all vent openings to prevent flaming embers from entering vents. Removable firewall vent blocks should be placed in front of foundation and roof vents during periods of extreme fire danger to keep hot air from easily penetrating the building envelope.
- Defensible space: One of the few Laguna homes in the path of the firestorm to survive had a 40foot-wide strip of the green succulent called “ice plant” and a concrete-tiled roof. The firestorm blew right over the top of the ice plant and the house, dropped burning embers on the concrete tile roof, roasted a 10-foot-wide swath of ice plant, but failed to ignite the building’s structure.
- Stucco, cement, or earthen walls are preferred. If wood siding is desired, it should be applied over a 5/8-inch sheetrock firewall for improved fire resistance. Cement-based weatherboard (Hardie Board, Certainteed, etc.) can look like wood but give you cement board’s superior fire resistance. Even with a stucco or cement weatherboard sheath, an underlying wood-framed wall might ignite if the firestorm gets hot enough.
- All projections (roof eaves, etc.) should be protected on the underside with cement stucco or cement board (preferably), or natural wood may be painted with a coating to improve its fire resistance. Hot air rises and can easily ignite roof overhangs in a firestorm.
- Decks: Coat wood decks with multiple layers of a fire-resistant urethane deck covering (Pacific Polymers or similar) or treat wood decking with fire-resistant coatings (Fire Stop or similar). A stucco coat (¾ inch or thicker) on the underside of wooden decks was credited with saving two homes in the Laguna Beach fire. There is a new fly-ash composite decking board from LifeTime Lumber that has a Class A fireproof rating, and is LEED certified for its recycled content, that can be used to build high-quality, fireproof

decks. Trex has a new Class B fire-resistant-rated recyled plastic-and-wood composite decking, and other manufacturers are coming out with similar products.

- Roofs: Use only "Class A" fire-rated roofing systems, which are rated to prevent both the roofing material itself and roofing underlayment (plywood) from catching fire when covered with burning embers. Most asphalt and fiberglass shingles are Class A rated, but metal roofing usually requires the use of Versashield underlayment (or equal) to achieve this rating. "Living" roofs (planted sod) have excellent fire resistance as well as thermal mass and insulation. With Class A roofing, the eaves and overhangs are the most vulnerable areas of the roof due to the fire down below.

(Adapted from "Fire-Resistant Details: Studying the Houses That Survived the 1993 Laguna Beach Fire Storm Yields Lessons in Building to Withstand the Heat," by John Underwood, Fine Home Building.com)

My fireman friends tell me that when they enter a neighborhood, they take mental notes about which homes have maintained a defensible space and which have not. They don't waste their time focusing on homes without a defensible space, but spend their time defending homes where they stand a decent chance of success, while keeping a watchful eye on nearby flames. These are brave guys, risking their necks where most of us would not go, but they have wives and kids—so when a vicious firestorm gets dangerously close, they simply have to leave the neighborhood and let nature take its course.

Green and Fire Resistant

There are a number of "green building" systems that are inherently fire resistant. Basically, if a system is earth or concrete based, it is very fire resistant. Also, if you fill the wall with foam or straw to eliminate dead air spaces and the chimney effect, and sheath the wall with stucco, earthen plasters, or cement board, even if it is wood framed it will have good fire resistance. Do your best to make your roof, eaves, and decks fire resistant too, since your home will only be as fire resistant as its weakest link. The following is a partial list of fire-resistant green building modes of construction:

- **SCIP (Structural Concrete Insulated Panel):** The concrete skins, high insulation, and thermal mass of SCIP walls make this form of building extremely fire resistant, especially if you make the roof out of SCIPs too.
- **Cob:** The high thermal mass of thick, earth-based cob walls are also extremely fire resistant.
- **ICF (Insulated Concrete Forms):** The concrete and steel structural heart of ICF walls is fireproof, but the foam and exterior wall sheathing of some ICFs may not hold up well under fire even though their high thermal mass and insulation should prevent internal ignition. Some ICFs, like the Durisol system, are inherently fireproof, but other systems, especially if they are sheeted with wood siding instead of cement board or stucco, could be severely damaged or burned in a fire.
- **Adobe:** Another high-mass, earth-based system that is inherently fire resistant. Pay

attention to the above suggestions pertaining to roofs, venting, and windows.

- **Rammed Earth/PISE:** High-mass, earth-based systems are inherently fire resistant. Pay attention to the above suggestions pertaining to roofs, venting, and windows. PISE is a system developed by David Easton for seismic zones to replace rammed earth with shotcreted soil cements that are heavily reinforced with structural steel rebar.
- **Straw Bale:** When covered with stucco, earthen, or lime based plasters, straw bale walls have been shown to be extremely fire resistant. When encapsulated, it is extremely difficult to get a straw bale to ignite. Some straws, such as rice straw, have a high silica content that makes them naturally fire resistant.
- **SIP (Structural Insulated Panels):** When sheathed with cement board siding, SIPs have a fire resistance that is far superior to traditional stick framed walls, but not as good as the earth or cement based systems.

BAMBOO AS A GREEN BUILDING MATERIAL

Bamboo is a fast-growing material that can provide an ecological alternative to wood as a structural, siding, and flooring material. Here are some characteristics that put bamboo high on the list of "green building" materials:

- **Bamboo is the fastest growing plant.** It produces greater biomass and 30 percent more oxygen than a hardwood forest on the same area, while improving watersheds, preventing erosion, restoring soil, providing sweet edible shoots, and removing toxins from contaminated soil. Bamboo produces structural beams, flooring, wall paneling, fencing, and many more sustainable by-products of environmental restoration.
- **Bamboo timber can be harvested every year** after seven years, compared to 30 to 50 years for trees. With a 10 to 30 percent annual increase in biomass versus 2 to 5 percent for trees, bamboo can yield 20 times more timber than trees on the same area. Bamboo can be selectively harvested annually and regenerates without replanting.
- **Bamboo generates 30 percent more oxygen than trees.** It helps reduce carbon dioxide gases blamed for global warming. Some bamboo sequesters up to 12 tons of carbon dioxide per hectare, which makes it an efficient replenisher of fresh air.
- **Bamboo is a natural water-control barrier.** Because of its widespread root system and large canopy, bamboo greatly reduces rain runoff, prevents massive soil erosion, and traps twice as much water in the watershed (as trees). Bamboo helps mitigate water pollution due to its high nitrogen consumption, making it a solution for excess nutrient uptake of wastewater from manufacturing, livestock farming, and sewage treatment.
- **Bamboo can restore degraded lands.** It is a pioneering plant and can be grown in soil damaged by overgrazing and poor agriculture. Proper harvesting does not kill the bamboo plant, so topsoil is held in place. Because of its dense litter on the forest floor, it feeds topsoil, restoring healthy agricultural lands for generations to come.

On the downside, at least in the United States, bamboo is not a local material and must be shipped long distances to reach its final destination, which increases its carbon footprint due to the fuel burned for shipping. However, according to an engineering study performed at the Delft

University of Technology in the Netherlands, even when you include the environmental impacts of ocean transportation, the environmental cost of structural bamboo is still a tiny fraction of the cost of sustainably grown lumber (Lugt and Dobbelsteen 2004). Additionally, bamboo is a round, irregular material. Though visually stunning, it requires high-end finish carpentry "scribe trim" skills to join bamboo pieces together or to trim bamboo structures with traditional woods. Bamboo Technologies, based on the island of Maui, gets around the difficulties inherent in working with bamboo through the use of prefabricated building panels, made at their Vietnam factory, for installation in a variety of climates, including insulated versions for cold climates. If you enjoy the exotic South Seas look and want to build with a beautiful organic natural material that has a fraction of the environmental impact of building with wood or concrete, check out their impressive array of standard and customized designs at www.bambooliving.com.

Figure 7-26. A home built with Bamboo Technologies prefabricated structural wall and roofing panels. (Photo courtesy of Bamboo Technologies)

PASSIVE SOLAR DESIGN

Heat from the sun is free and falls on most homes for a good part of the winter. Even in cloudy parts of the country, most homes could benefit from passive solar design for about half of all winter days. Passive solar design is the use of building orientation, insulation, windows, thermal mass, the right materials, and smart design features to make buildings that heat and cool themselves with minimal inputs of electricity and fossil fuels. Well-designed passive solar buildings are cool in the summer and warm in the winter. Unlike some of the complicated active solar systems utilizing pumps, controllers, and hot water storage tanks, passive solar designs tend to be simple. They typically require no extra maintenance, are no more complicated to operate than opening a vent or lowering a shade, and can be incorporated into perfectly normallooking home designs for a modest additional cost.

The principles of passive solar design are fairly simple to grasp. I know of several owner-builders who designed and built beautiful, functional solar homes without an engineering or design background and with just a little help from a few books. If the math involved in a detailed solar analysis is intimidating, find yourself an experienced solar designer to help. The use of the sun to heat the home is not a new concept. The ancient cliff dwellings in the U.S. Southwest are

some of the oldest surviving examples of passive solar design. These structures are typically oriented in such a way as to catch most of the rays from the low winter sun but are shaded from the high, hot summer sun by rock overhangs. With a little thought, and for the same or slightly more money than you would spend for conventional construction, you can build a home that requires only 5 to 50 percent of the energy that it takes to heat an average new home.

Passive Solar "Rules of Thumb"

- **Orientation.** Normally, the optimum solar orientation for a building is with the long walls and main windows facing due south (true south, not magnetic south). For other reasons, such as to benefit from a nice view, you may choose to vary this orientation from due south. For modest rotations off true south, you don't lose much solar efficiency. You will lose only about 8 percent of your solar gain for 22½ degrees off true south, 20 percent for a 45-degree orientation, and 36 percent at a 67½-degree orientation (Kachadorian 1997, 18).
- **Minimize north-facing windows.** Placing bathrooms, bedrooms, closets, storage areas, and garages on the north side helps to minimize windows and acts as a thermal block.
- **South-facing glass.** Place most of your glass window surface area on the south side of the home. The square footage of south-, west-, and east-facing windows should equal about 15 percent of the total surface area of all external heated walls put together. Too much south-facing glass turns a home into a solar oven during the day and a refrigerator on cold clear nights. Too little glass and your house is dark and gains little heat from the sun. The Sustainable Buildings Industry Council (SBIC) suggests limiting the square footage of south-facing glass to 12 percent of the total square footage of heated floor area (Alexander 1997, 38).
- **Insulation.** Insulate the walls, ceilings, roof, and foundation perimeter. Modern super-insulated passive solar homes will often have R-30 walls with R-60 roofs in temperate climates and R-40 walls with R-80 roofs in extreme hot or cold climates. A typical "Energy Star" home in colder climates will have wall insulation of R-19 or better. The "R-value" describes the thermal resistance of a wall or material. Higher R-values mean better insulation with less heat loss. With conventional stick-frame construction, use at least 6-inch studs with R-19 insulation. A slightly better theoretical R-value that is actually much better in real-world performance is obtained using 4-inch studs with fiberglass batts, plus 1-inch rigid foam external insulation that acts as a thermal block over the studs and minimizes air infiltration, for a total wall R-value of about R-21. Insulate under solar slabs with at least 2 inches of rigid foam board, and insulate the foundation perimeter with 2 to 4 inches of rigid foam. Because hot air rises, roof insulation should be of a higher R-value, such as at least R-30 with 9-inch batts. Super-insulated walls are in the R-30 to R-50 range, and superinsulated ceilings may run R-50 and up. Due to air infiltration problems and concerns about the potential carcinogenic properties of airborne glass fibers, there are new greener alternatives to fiberglass bats, such as stabilized cellulosic insulation and CFC-free, blown-in-place foams, which have

higher R values for a given thickness, seal wall cavities from air penetration, and don't give off irritating and potentially toxic fibers or VOCs.

- **Vapor barriers.** All loose insulation, such as fiberglass bats, should have a vapor barrier on its inside wall surface. Warm air holds much more moisture than cold air. If warm, moist, house air infiltrates exterior walls, moisture will condense against cold wall surfaces, eventually wetting the insulation and causing rot and possibly mold in your walls and ceilings. In addition, wet insulation has lost most of its insulating value. Each electrical wall and ceiling light fixture box provides an air leakage point in traditional wood-framed houses and should be sealed with quick-setting insulated foam, straw, clay, adobe, or cob.
- **Thermal mass.** Provide thermal mass for heat storage. Thermal mass, typically in the form of a concrete slab floor and/or thick masonry, rammed earth, or adobe walls absorbs heat from a day of sunshine and then releases that heat at night to warm the house. Without thermal mass, the house gets uncomfortably hot during the day and uncomfortably cold at night. In the summer, thermal mass helps to reduce cooling requirements. The mass is cooled by venting to outside air at night, and then the cool thermal mass absorbs excess heat during the middle of hot days. When calculating the optimum size of thermal mass, shoot for a daily rise and fall in temperature of no more than 8ºF from the solar gain of a full day's midwinter sun and the heat loss from a full night of cooling. In James Kachadorian's *The Passive Solar House*, he uses a 1,900-square-foot, Green Mountain Homes Saltbox design #38, located in Middlebury, Vermont, as an example for solar calculations. This home has R-21 walls, R-32 ceilings, and R-1.92 double-pane windows and patio doors. He has 44 square feet of east- and westfacing glass and 122 square feet of south-facing glass. For this example, Jack calculated an optimum solar slab of 16 feet by 38 feet by 13 inches thick, containing 548 cubic feet of concrete (15 percent of the volume lost to ducting) and weighing about 41 tons. He figures that the concrete used to make the solar slab is the same as would be used to make a typical basement (Kachadorian 1997, 85–89).
- **South-facing windows.** south-facing windows naturally have less gain from the summer sun, even without significant roof overhangs, due to the high angle of the sun in the summer sky. Sun at high angles penetrates only a short distance into the room and tends to reflect off the window due to the steep angle of incidence. South-facing solar "collectors" (windows) will turn mostly "off " in the summer months, and "on" in the winter months when the sun's angle is low in the sky so it penetrates further into the room. East- and westfacing windows will have solar gain for half the day. Unless shaded, east and west windows have significant summer solar gain because they catch the lower angled rays directly from morning or afternoon sun. Where summer air conditioning is a necessity, try to minimize areas of east- and west-facing windows to reduce your air-conditioning load, or install special "heat mirror" windows to keep most of the sun's energy from penetrating these windows.
- **Keeping cool when it's hot.** Where summer cooling needs are significant, place properly sized overhangs above south-, east-, and west-facing windows to provide shade from high summer sun, yet allow full solar gain from low winter sun. Solar design handbooks have sun angle charts to assist with sizing roof overhangs at different latitudes. Proper

calculations of window and wall overhang size can make a significant difference in your heating and cooling needs, especially with high-thermal-mass walls like adobe and rammed earth. For those in a dry climate, swamp coolers, which take advantage of the cooling properties of evaporating water, use a fraction of the energy of standard air conditioners. With good insulation and orientation, passive solar houses are often very comfortable using a modest swamp cooler when similarly sized neighboring houses require large, energy-guzzling air conditioners to stay cool. For example, during multiday 104°F+ heat storms in Davis, California, when neighbors found that their air-conditioned homes couldn't cope with the high heat, they sought refuge in a wellinsulated experimental PGE model tract home that had no air conditioning whatsoever (Hawken 1999, 103).

CAUTION: Swamp coolers can be dangerous mold factories. If you use a swamp cooler, make sure that you inspect and clean its tank and filters regularly, and chemically treat/cleanse to prevent the growth of toxic mold that could contaminate your entire home.

- **Trees.** Use trees for natural shading and windbreaks. Deciduous trees on the south side provide summer shade and winter sun. Evergreens on the north side serve as windbreaks and help slow radiant heat losses in the winter.
- **Ventilation.** In today's tightly built homes, significant ventilation is required both for comfort and to ensure against the buildup of toxic fumes. Ventilation systems that exchange two-thirds of the home's air every hour are recommended. Stale, toxic air was never a problem in old, "leaky," energy-wasting homes, but is a common problem in modern "tight" homes. One of the best energyefficient solutions for ventilation is the use of airto-air heat exchangers that vent warm house air to the outside while drawing cold air inside and simultaneously transferring most of the heat out of the warm exhaust air back into the fresh intake air.
- **Insulated windows.** Use insulated windows with thermal shades or shutters over significant areas of glazing. Single-pane glass is a terrible insulator, having an R-value of about 0.9, which means that 1 square foot of single-pane glass loses as much heat as 22 square feet of R-20 wall. Typical double-pane windows have an R-value of about 1.9, and standard multipane windows with low-e coatings have an R-value of 3 to 4.5. Superwindows with low-e glass, thermal breaks, and argon or krypton gas filling can have an insulating value of up to R-12. Superwindows are generally cost effective in cold climates only. Adding a honeycomb opaque shade, such as the Hunter Douglas Duette, raises a double-pane's R-value to between 4 and 5. When you add interior window shutters insulated with one inch of rigid foam, double-pane R-values jump to 11. I highly recommend the addition of insulating shutters to glass patio doors and large windows. The low-e coatings on quality insulating windows can be tailored to either reflect or allow incoming solar radiation. High "solar heat gain coefficient" windows will allow solar heat to pass both in and out of your windows. In hot climates, and on the north walls of homes in cold climates, you want windows with low solar gain coefficients, because they will both hold the heat out when it's hot and in when it's cold. In cold climates, you want windows with high solar gain coefficients on the south walls to let the solar heat pass in through your south windows on cold days.

- **Solar greenhouses.** "Sunspaces" with sloped areas of glass can be a wonderfully warm sunny spot on a cold winter's day and can be a great place to start your seedlings, but they are usually overglazed, tending to overheat during the day and get very cold at night. Additionally, unlike vertical glass, sloped areas of glass have high solar gain in the summer, potentially adding to the airconditioning burden. Make sure you provide solar greenhouse spaces with adequate ventilation and shade for reducing summer heat, thermal mass to prevent nighttime freezing, and doors to close off from the house at night or when the greenhouse is too hot. Data on heavily glazed sunrooms indicates that they tend to lose about as much heat at night as they gain during the day, unless they are equipped with solar shutters or insulated thermal shades (Kachadorian 1997, 138).
- **Air circulation.** Provide a mechanism for moving your home's air around. Hot air rises. Ceiling fans can drive hot air stuck in the upper reaches of your home back down to where you can feel it (or reverse fan direction for summer cooling). With multistory homes, a small duct fan can move warm air from the upper level back down to the lower level for a fraction of the energy cost of heating the air. In the summer, a vent damper can switch the flow from the same fan to vent hot air to the outside from the upper areas and insulated attic spaces, keeping the rest of the house cooler.

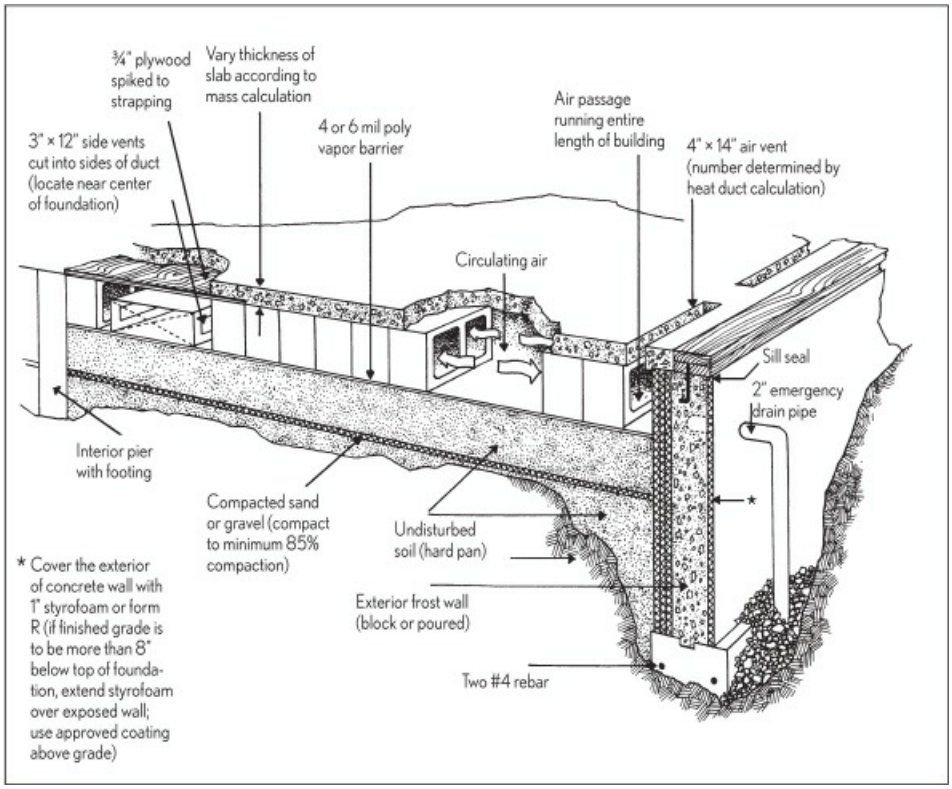

¾" plywood spiked to strapping
Vary thickness of slab according to mass calculation
3" × 12" side vents cut into sides of duct (locate near center of foundation)
4 or 6 mil poly vapor barrier
Air passage running entire length of building
4" × 14" air vent (number determined by heat duct calculation)
Circulating air
Sill seal
2" emergency drain pipe
Interior pier with footing
Compacted sand or gravel (compact to minimum 85% compaction)
Undisturbed soil (hard pan)
* Cover the exterior of concrete wall with 1" styrofoam or form R (if finished grade is to be more than 8" below top of foundation, extend styrofoam over exposed wall; use approved coating above grade)
Exterior frost wall (block or poured)
Two #4 rebar

Figure 7-27. James Kachadorian's solar slab heat exchanger detail. (Illustration courtesy of *The Passive Solar House: Using Solar Design to Heat and Cool Your Home*, by James Kachadorian, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1997)

James Kachadorian's Patented Solar Slab

In the 1970s, James Kachadorian came up with an idea for making a solar slab out of concrete block, with a layer of cast concrete on top. This slab acts as both a thermal mass to store the sun's heat and as an effective heat exchanger to help heat the house in the winter and cool it in the summer. The idea was unique enough that he was awarded a patent for his design. Now that the patent protection has expired, he is telling the world about his idea. Basically, the bottom layer of his solar slab is a layer of hollow concrete blocks turned on their sides and lined up, without staggering, to make a series of air channels running from the back of the first floor to the front. Vents are cut into the front and back of the slab to access the air channels. When the slab surface is heated by the sun, natural convection air currents cause cooler air at one end of the slab to fall into the vents, while warmer air on the other side of the slab rises, sucking air through the solar slab. The holes in the center of the concrete blocks embedded in the slab essentially triple the surface area of the slab. This increased surface area combined with the natural convection currents driving air through the channels in the slab are what make it into an effective heat exchanger for heating and cooling. Heating and air-conditioning units should draw intake air through the solar slab ducts to take advantage of preheated or precooled intake air.

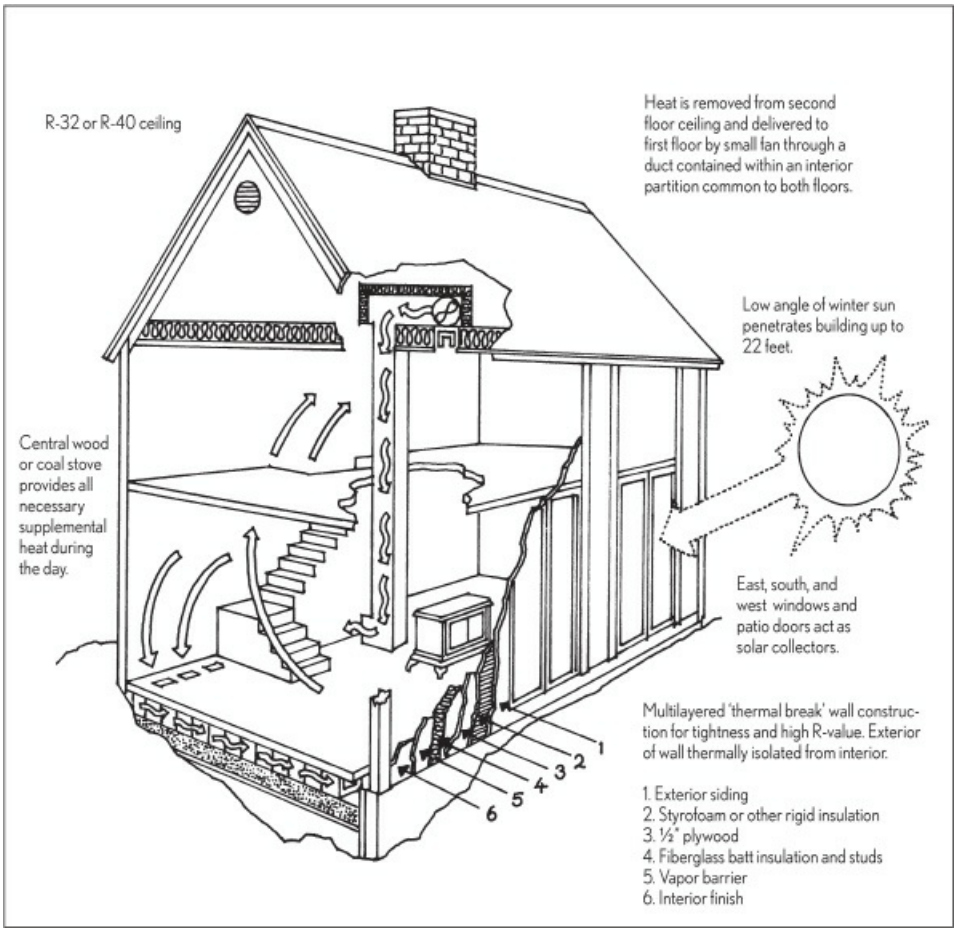

R-32 or R-40 ceiling
Heat is removed from second floor ceiling and delivered to first floor by small fan through a duct contained within an interior partition common to both floors.
Low angle of winter sun penetrates building up to 22 feet.
Central wood or coal stove provides all necessary supplemental heat during the day.
East, south, and west windows and patio doors act as solar collectors.
Multilayered 'thermal break' wall construction for tightness and high R-value. Exterior of wall thermally isolated from interior.
1. Exterior siding
2. Styrofoam or other rigid insulation
3. ½" plywood
4. Fiberglass batt insulation and studs
5. Vapor barrier
6. Interior finish

Figure 7-28. Heating a house with James Kachadorian's solar slab heat exchanger. (Illustration courtesy of *The Passive Solar House: Using Solar Design to Heat and Cool Your Home*, by James Kachadorian, Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1997)

PREVENTING AND/OR BATTLING MOLD

On a clear, blue, Sunday afternoon in February, Josie (my wife) and I had a nearly perfect afternoon snorkeling in the warm ocean waters of Maui and paddling our ocean kayak to within 50 yards of two large humpback whales. When we arrived home later that day, we found my wife's mother lying on the couch, deathly ill and barely able to move. After a few days of caring for her mother, my wife also fell ill with similar symptoms. As Josie's condition deteriorated, she developed severe headaches and an ugly rash and bruises that looked as if she had been severely beaten. We took her to see a doctor at the local Kaiser clinic. When we showed him her rash and bruises, we asked if he thought that toxic mold might be the culprit. He assured us that mold could not cause a rash like that. Desperate to find answers, we extended our search for clues to the Internet and found photos of identical rashes and spontaneous bruises on people suffering from black mold poisoning caused by the highly toxic *Stachybotrys* black mold. At this point, we cultured the air in our rental home with petri dishes, finding that *Aspergillus*, *Stachybotrys*, and *Fusarium*—three of the four most infamous toxic molds—were prevalent in our rented home. We quickly moved into a temporary apartment until we could find a longterm rental to move into. It turned out that the spontaneous bruising that Josie saw on her body was a sign of internal hemorrhaging and that she was just one small step away from brain and lung hemorrhaging, permanent brain damage, and potential death. Had we listened to our first doctor and continued to stay in the mold-contaminated home, Josie may well have died. Thus began a long saga of dealing with mold-generated health problems that eventually caused me to close down my building business, purge almost all of our personal possessions (due to mold contamination), and return to the mainland so my wife could recuperate in a climate less conducive to mold growth.

In some cases, like the flooded homes in New Orleans with black mold growing all over the place, mold is an obvious problem that commands attention, and its obviousness makes it clear that drastic measures, such as the use of respirators and Tyvek protective clothing (including Tyvek booties and hoods) are mandated. In other cases, like our rental home on Maui, the mold is a hidden demon, devastating the occupants' lives without leaving obvious clues to the cause of their misfortune.

Our first winter in this beautiful older island home, on the normally dry side of Maui, was fine. However, our second winter was a different story. It was the wettest winter in 100 years, flooding our downstairs guest room and my wife's office twice. In these areas, we noticed a smell like cat urine, but figured that the prior occupants must have had cats and that the moisture was just bringing out old smells. What we did not know was that this smell was not from prior pets, but was actually the smell of a highly toxic black mold known as *Stachybotrys*, which was given new life by the record-breaking rains and was thriving within the walls and around the foundation of our home.

Health Effects of Mold

Many molds, not just black mold, give off a highly toxic substance that can severely affect your health, particularly in the case of children, seniors, and anyone with allergies or a compromised immune system. In severe cases, black molds have been known to kill healthy soldiers and horses that were sleeping on straw bedding infected with *Stachybotrys*. Here is a partial list of symptoms:

- The most common effects are respiratory ailments, including shortness of breath, wheezing, chronic sinusitis, and exacerbated asthma.
- Burning or itchy eyes.
- Rashes and/or spontaneous bruises on the skin. Also itching, welts, or hives.
- Headaches and nervous-system disorders such as tremors and poor night vision.
- Dizziness and/or nausea. Foggy thinking and the inability to concentrate.
- Behavior changes, such as restlessness, hypersensitivity, and irritableness.
- Low-grade fever (can feel like a flu that seems to never go away).
- Compromised immune system (a normally healthy person suddenly starts "catching everything").
- Chronic fatigue and/or hair loss.
- Fungi and molds can cause related lung diseases and cancers.
- In severe cases, toxic mold poisoning can lead to lung and brain hemorrhaging, permanent brain damage, and death.

(Adapted from The Home Owner's Guide to Mold by Michael Pugliese, C.M.R., C.M.T., 2006, 9–10)

I am not a mold-remediation expert, but I am a licensed general contractor, and I have considerable first-hand experience gained from my own family's personal battle with toxic mold poisoning. My intention is to share some of what I have learned and point you toward sources for expert information and mold remediation, should you identify the need.

Identifying a Mold Problem

If you have visual evidence of mold growing in your home, then you have an obvious problem. About 90 percent of homes with a mold problem have a musty smell and/or obvious signs of water damage or leakage. A musty smell is a sure sign of mold. Basements and swamp coolers are notorious mold factories and should be kept scrupulously clean and well maintained. Carpeting in basements, except for washable throw rugs, should be eliminated. Check in all bathrooms, under sinks, where plumbing enters and exits walls, and behind washers, dryers, and water heaters for signs of mold. Any signs of water stains on walls, floors, or ceilings indicate potential problem areas and may warrant pulling off a section of the wall or ceiling covering to inspect the back sides and wall cavities for hidden mold.

> **CAUTION: Do not remove mold-contaminated materials without first sealing off the room with plastic and using a shop vacuum with an extended hose to vent dust and mold outside of the house (first choice) or a HEPA-**

rated vacuum cleaner to suck up contamination as you work. The last thing you want to do is spread mold toxins and spores throughout your home.

Dealing with Mold

> When it comes to professional mold remediation, fancy equipment is not enough. Sprayers, foggers, blasters, thermal cameras, and more—all of it is worthless unless the people operating the equipment are properly trained and experienced and have knowledgeable, experienced supervision. **—Michael Pugliese, C.M.R., C.M.T., *The Homeowner's Guide to Mold***

Any kind of flooding should be dealt with immediately, because mold will start to grow on wet or moist surfaces in 24 to 48 hours, especially in warm climates. Since mold loves to eat/grow on the paper that covers regular sheetrock, unless it has been specifically treated with chemicals designed to prevent mold growth, waterdamaged sheetrock must be removed and replaced. A small amount of mold growing on the front side of sheetrock in a bathroom or laundry area, or by a water heater or sink, could be a sign of a much more serious problem hidden behind the sheetrock. If you have any concerns, I suggest that you pull off a small section of sheetrock so you can look inside the wall and at the sheetrock's back side. If your carpets and furniture are wet from flooding, if you find signs of mold, or feel sick and suspect that mold may be the cause, I suggest that you immediately pick up one or two of the recommended references and start educating yourself further on this important topic. Time is of the essence. If your situation looks at all serious, you should immediately call a certified mold specialist. When I was living in Hawaii, if I knew then what I know now about mold, I could have saved us more than $100,000 in losses, much heartache, and suffering. When dealing with all but very small amounts of toxic black molds such as *Stachybotrys*, you should wear a respirator and protective clothing. When in doubt, it is best to err on the side of caution and bring in a certified mold remediation professional.

> **CAUTION: When it comes to toxic mold contamination, your health, home, and all of your possessions are at stake. Delays could cost you everything you own and even your life.**

Construction Tips for Preventing Mold

Mold loves moisture. Buildings should be well built to prevent the penetration of the building shell by moisture, and well ventilated to ensure that internal condensation has a way of getting out of the building. Foundations should be insulated, sealed, and installed over a vapor barrier. Unsealed concrete is a moisture sponge and will pump ground moisture inside a building. Foundation exteriors should be adequately drained, and carpeting should never be installed directly on concrete slabs. Concrete slabs should be sealed with tile or properly rated concrete paints or sealers. Dehumidifiers should be installed in living spaces and in moist foundation

crawl spaces.

Sheetrock is notorious for growing mold. In new construction, I suggest spending a few dollars more per sheet of sheetrock to buy the paperless mold-resistant versions. Paints should also be of a high-quality, moldresistant type. Outside of direct water damage, humidity is probably the number-one factor in mold growth. Mold will not usually grow in less than 47 percent relative humidity, so installing (and maintaining) a central dehumidifier may be a worthy investment if you live in a humid climate. Warm air holds far more moisture than cold air, so when warm air hits the cold condenser coil in an air-conditioning system, it will usually form a pool of condensation that must be drained properly or it will lead to mold problems. The placement of special, long, germicidal ultraviolet (UV) bulbs in the center of your air conditioner's coil will help prevent mold from growing directly on the coil and being spread throughout your home via the air-conditioning ducts. In cold climates, when warm internal air hits a cold external wall, it can cause condensation inside the wall cavity and insulation that leads to mold, which is why vapor barriers are so important for batt types of insulation.

Dusty heating and air-conditioning ducts are notorious for growing mold and should be professionally cleaned.

Proper ventilation and air changes can be critical to preventing mold growth. Today's energy-efficient homes are built much tighter than older homes, which is one reason why mold has become so much of a problem, even in brand-new homes. The use of air-to-air heat exchangers to increase the number of ventilated air changes per hour, without sacrificing a lot of wasted energy, can be critical to making a tight, energy-efficient home into a healthy home.

Mat's Mold Wisdom

After nearly dying from black mold poisoning in Hawaii, my wife became very sensitive to mold exposure. Even though we purged most of our personal belongings when we moved back to the mainland, we apparently contaminated our home in the High Sierras with mold spores that had been attached to the few personal goods we had tried to salvage from our home in Hawaii. Heavy-duty ozone treatments kept our Truckee home livable, but needed to be repeated weekly or my wife's symptoms would start to return. I had noticed a musty smell in the crawl space under our house. Even though there was no visible evidence of mold inside the foundation or under the structure or our house, I realized that musty smells are a symptom of mold. When I ran my ozone generator underneath the house, a strong smell of ozone penetrated into our living room, the site of my wife's worst mold reaction. I realized that if I could smell ozone, which is slightly heavier than regular air, this meant that the same "chimney effect" that was drawing ozone into our living room was also drawing much moldy air into our home each and every day, and that was why the ozone treatments had provided only temporary relief. I used a "fogger" to fog our home's crawl space with Moldzyme™, but I can't say that we noticed any positive effect from this

treatment. A couple weeks later, I fogged the crawl space with Heartland Microbes' mold-eating microbes. This time, the effect was dramatic. My wife's health improved almost instantly and for the first time in months she could sit in our living room and watch a movie without having a "mold attack." A week later, I fogged the crawl space with a 10 ppm colloidal silver solution from American Biotech Labs to leave a long-term mold-killing residue that has no toxic effects on humans or animals.

In my experience, a person who has been severely sickened by toxic mold exposure tends to develop a sensitivity to molds and must be much more careful about their environment than the average person. We have found a number of things that seem to improve the environment for the mold-sensitive person over the short term, but we have not found any "quick fix" type of mold remediation actions that works to permanently eliminate mold. Here are several tips that we learned from personal experience and from the late Dr. Vincent Marinkovich, M.D., a renowned mold specialist:

- You should eliminate (if possible) and/or encapsulate all active mold inside your home, including inside wall cavities and basements. Encapsulation should be with materials specifically designed to encapsulate mold long term, as mold will often grow through a coat of common paint in just a few months.
- Once mold has a hold on your house, all personal items will be contaminated with mold spores and could recontaminate your home after mold remediation has been completed and you move back into your home.
- All mold experts stress that moisture control is critical to controlling mold growth. If you don't eliminate the source of the moisture through patching leaks, proper drainage, proper ventilation, and the use of dehumidifiers when necessary, then the mold will come back.
- If you have been in a severely compromised physical condition, it is safest to replace your personal possessions, mattresses, sofas, and so on.
- It is important to evaluate the effectiveness of mold remediation with before-and-after mold count measurements in the major rooms in your house, including all rooms where any mold work was done. There's no point in moving back in if the house still has high mold counts.
- There are different schools of thought on killing and cleaning mold. Some say that liquid chlorine bleach (always use a respirator and eye/ skin protection when cleaning with strong bleach solutions and other toxic chemicals) and fastidious cleaning, including a thorough rinsing, is the best way to kill and clean mold without leaving a toxic residue behind that could further contribute to the health problems of an already sick person. On the other hand, Michael Pugliese says he has been called in to perform several mold remediations after his predecessors had relied on bleach and the mold came back. Pugliese says that bleach is not an adequate mold decontaminant, and will not kill certain highly dangerous black molds. Instead, you should use EPA-registered treatment from companies such as BBJ Environmental Solutions and Envirocare Corp. to ensure that surfaces are treated with low-toxic solutions to prevent the regrowth of mold at a later date.

- Clothing, bedding, and washable rugs may be salvaged by washing with a capful of Moldzyme, a mold-eating enzyme from Sorbent Technologies. If you experience any physical reaction such as itching, burning, or sneezing when you handle the cleansed materials, dispose of them immediately.
- You will never get all the mold out of upholstered furniture and wall-to-wall carpeting, and they should be junked.
- When you super-ozone a room or entire house, it will temporarily remove mold spores and toxins from the air, but I have never seen it fix the problem long term. If you can smell ozone, it is harmful to your lungs. If the ozone is not strong enough to harm your lungs, it will not harm the mold. Use an ozone generator, such as ones from Air-Zone, with a built-in timer to allow the ozone to shut off and dissipate for several hours before re-entering the room.
- Some people find that misting their home regularly with MoldZyme and/or Heartland Microbes Mold Away (see the chapter resources) keeps their mold reactions down to a manageable level.
- Refrigerator cooling coils, personal computers with air-cooled cabinets, and other electronic devices with dark, air-cooled chambers will harbor mold spores inside their dusty recesses that you will never be able to entirely eliminate.
- HEPA-type air filters, such as the ones made by Honeywell and Austin Air, placed in all rooms and running 24 hours a day will drastically reduce your airborne mold counts and mold reactions. Using good-quality filters (not the cheap, see-through type) on a central heating and/or air-conditioning system and running the fan continuously will circulate the air in your house efficiently and clean it at the same time.

  NOTE: You should religiously service the prefilters in HEPA-type air filters and your HVAC system filters on a regular basis.

- When in doubt, give it away or junk it. After closing down my Hawaii building business and disposing of most of our possessions, I tried to salvage my business computer to save the cost of having to replace that too. I took it apart, blew all the PC boards off with compressed air, and ran it overnight in an enclosed bathroom with a super ozone generator that made me cough if I opened the door for a second. After I brought this PC into our mainland home, it contaminated the house with mold spores from Hawaii and resulted in me replacing the computer, all the carpets in our house, our sofa, and painting all the walls and ceilings of our home. That was one expensive mistake!

See Chapter 9 for more information on the health effects of mold and how to improve your health after exposure to mold.

TRADITIONAL LOW-TECH STRUCTURES

Traditional low-tech structures range from lean-tos, tents, yurts, tipis (also called tepees), adobe,

stone, rammed earth, and sod houses, to log cabins and elegant timber-framed homes. Although lacking the comforts of indoor plumbing and central heating, many old-fashioned homes provided a comfortable, simpler standard of living.

In the 1970s, I visited Frank at his tepee in the Green Mountains of Vermont. For several winters, Frank worked at the Trapp Family Lodge in Stowe, Vermont. They let him pitch his tepee in a thicket of trees where it wouldn't draw too much attention. It was a large tepee, about 20 feet across. Frank spread some straw and carpet remnants on the packed snow floor and had a fire pit in the middle. After a day of work or cross-country skiing, a few friends would drop by. Gathered around the fire, temperatures quickly rose to the point where we stripped down to T-shirts. Someone brought out a guitar and jug of wine, and we settled in for a comfortable evening of wine, songs, and stories, while temperatures outside dropped to well below 0°F on a clear, cold, January night.

Log Cabins

If you want to build a traditional log home without the assistance of modern tools, I suggest that you pick up the first *Foxfire* book (see the Chapter 1 references section) by Eliot Wigginton. *Foxfire* contains a collection of interviews, wisdom, and old-fashioned know-how gleaned from the old-timers of Appalachia, who lived their lives with little or no access to modern machinery. It contains a lengthy section devoted to quite a variety of styles and skills for log cabin building, including many photographs and illustrations. Other handy books for building a quick-and-dirty log cabin are the classic *Shelters, Shacks, and Shanties and How to Build Them,* by D. C. Beard, and *How to Build This Log Cabin for $3,000,* by John McPherson.

If you want to build a beautiful, classic log home and have access to modern materials, I highly recommend that you pick up the *Log Building Construction Manual* by Robert Chambers. Chambers is a well-known master teacher and builder of log homes. This book will walk you through all of the numerous details that will help make your log building a success. There are many different suppliers of materials, tools, and books for log home building. I think you will find that Schroeder Log Home Supply (see the resources section) in Grand Rapids, Minnesota, is one of the best of the bunch. This supply source stocks an excellent selection of builder's books and tools. In the event that you wish to build a log cabin and cannot locate other references mentioned in this chapter, a few guidelines are provided here.

Foundation

If you want your log structure to last, it should be built on a rock or cement foundation at least 18 inches high, to keep the termites away. Peel the bark off your logs, or bugs and rot will infest your structure in short order.

Before the advent of cement for mortar, stone foundations were built from carefully selected flat

stones, sometimes chiseled or ground to fit. Clay mortar can help hold a foundation together and seal cracks, but you should ensure that your foundation will hold if the clay mortar should wash out in a heavy rain or flood. If you have modern materials, you definitely should take advantage of threaded steel rod and rebar to tie your logs to a reinforced concrete foundation.

Logs

Using larger logs will reduce the necessary labor and increase the insulating value of your walls, which is only about R-1.5 per inch of dry pine. A good log has an average diameter of more than 14 inches. Building with logs of less than a 10-inch tip diameter is not advised. Have your logs cut, peeled, measured, and marked with measurements before starting to build the walls. Careful thought and planning can avoid lots of headaches and "oops" events. Each log has a fat end (butt) and a thin end (tip). Don't lay crooked logs in the walls; save them for other uses. If your building is longer than your average log, try to use doors and jogs to take full advantage of log lengths without having to hassle with splices.

Sill Logs

The first layer of logs on top of the foundation consists of the "sill logs." Proper selection and shaping of sill logs can make or break your walls. When planning how thick your sill logs should be and how much to cut off their bottoms to make a flat for the wall to rest on, you need to take into consideration the other logs that you will use and features like windows, doors, and the level of floor joists. You will want a nice, fat portion of a log to cross the top of door and window openings. Header logs across door openings will be cut at 88 inches above the floor surface. Try to figure your logs and sills so that the 88-inch header cut will leave about a half to two-thirds of the header log intact. A sliver of a log across a header is not good. At the corners of the house, sill logs should line up butt to butt and tip to tip.

Walls

All logs are tapered and are laid with alternating tips and butts in the walls, making the top of most courses somewhat sloped. The top log, or plate log, supporting the roof should be level. Some modern log builders make the centers of each log row level. It is also preferable if the log rows at the tops of doors and windows and the support for floor joists are nearly level. Many old-fashioned log constructions left a significant gap between each row of logs, which was chinked with sphagnum moss, cement mortar, or clay mixed with chopped straw. Modern "scribe-fit" log construction trims a groove into the bottom center of each log to make it closely fit the top surface of the log below. If the log is somewhat curved or has significant irregularities such as large knots, try to position the log with the straightest sides up and down, and curves and knots to the inside or outside, to minimize fitting problems. If you have a chainsaw to cut grooves into the bottom of your logs to fit the log below (the modern method), expect to lose about an inch off each log's height when trimming to fit to the log beneath. The straighter the log, the less you will lose. In the scribefit method, close-matching log grooves are chinked with insulation. All green logs will shrink significantly in diameter as they age and dry, so it is a good idea to frame windows and doors with post-and-beam headers, leaving about a 2-inch gap on top to the header log to allow for wall shrinkage and settling. Trim over this gap with a wood fascia to weatherproof the gap and hide it.

There are numerous log end-notching schemes that work well. Whichever method you choose,

it is always safest to rough-cut notches and saddles first, leaving some extra wood, and then finish cut the excess to make the logs fit.

If you are notching the bottoms of logs to fit the row below, rough-notch the ends to make the gap between logs even at both ends (widest near the center) leaving a gap between the logs of about 3 inches. Using calipers, find the widest gap between the logs and set a log scriber so that the horizontal distance between scribed lines at this point is about 2½ inches. Holding the scriber plumb, use a scriber (caliper with sharp points) to mark the notch line on the bottom of the new log.

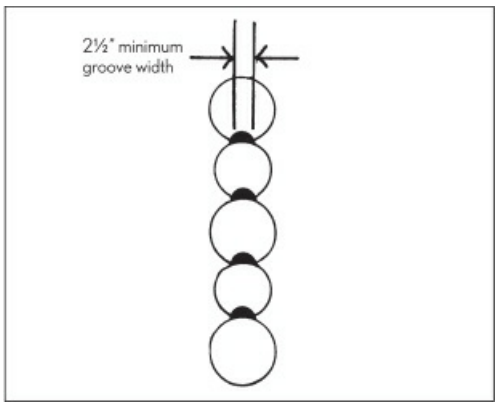


Figure 7-29. Custom-cut grooves to fit log rows to each other. (Illustration adapted from *Log Building Construction Manua*l, by Robert Chambers, 1999)

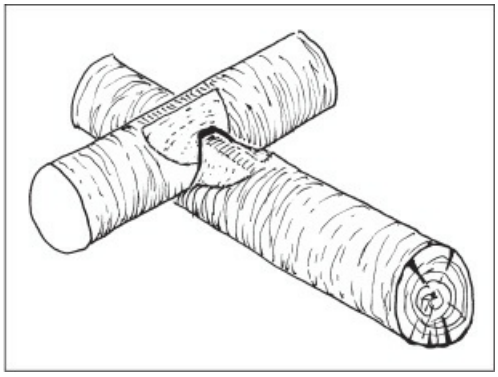


Figure 7-30. Common modern log notch and saddle. (Illustration adapted from *Log Building Construction Manual*, by Robert Chambers, 1999)

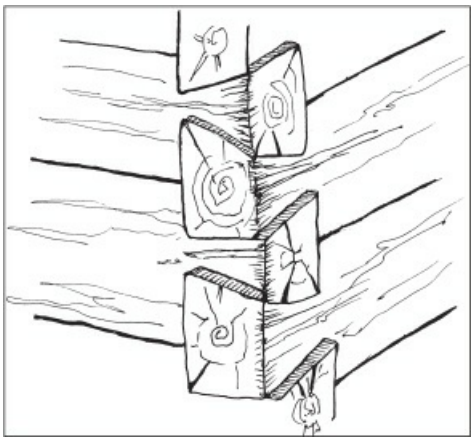


Figure 7-31. Dovetail-style log notch and saddle (this method is described in detail in the first *Foxfire* book).

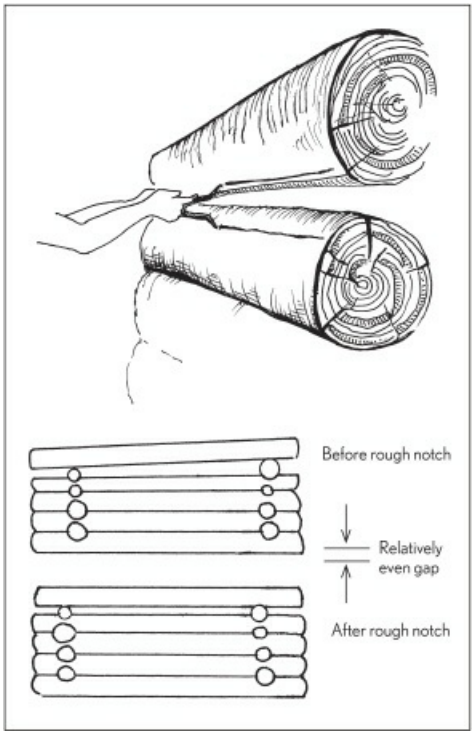


Figure 7-32. Rough notch, then scribe for "scribe-fit" log groove. (Illustrations adapted from *Log Building Construction Manual*, by Robert Chambers, 1999)

Roofs

Modern building materials will require less maintenance than traditional roofing. Traditional log structures were usually either thatched steep roofs, or low-angle sod roofs. For thatched roofs, space horizontal runners every foot or so (depending on the length of each bundle of thatch) across the roof trusses to tie thatching to. Each thatch bundle should overlap the next-lower row by at least 6 inches. Sod roofs are heavy (usually about 8 to 12 inches thick), so make sure they are adequately supported with strong timbers. For an excellent source of information on thatch and turf-type "living roofs," see *Building With Cob: A Step-by-Step Guide,* by Adam Weismann and Katy Bryce.

Timber-Frame Construction

Since the 1970s, there has been a revival in the use of old-fashioned timber-frame construction. Traditional timber frames join large timbers together with loadbearing mortise and tenon–type joints, similar to cabinetry and furniture joints that are pinned in place with hardwood pegs. Three-hundred-year-old timber-framed structures that were originally roofed with thatch are awesome testaments to the strength and durability of this type of construction. Modern timber-frame buildings use energy-efficient, foam-insulated wall panels, have a wonderful airy feel, and handsomely show off large structural timbers and their builders' craft. If you live in an area with a good source of local timber or if you own a heavily wooded lot, you might be able to skip the commercial lumber suppliers and use local loggers and a portable chainsaw lumber mill to rough cut the timbers for your structure.

Tipis, Yurts, Wickiups, and Wigwams

From the frigid steppes of Mongolia to the plains of North Dakota and the Grand Tetons of Wyoming, tipis (also called tepees), yurts, and wickiups (wigwams) have provided comfortable shelters to indigenous peoples. A great book for building your own tipi is the classic *The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use* by Reginald and Gladys Laubin. First published in 1957 and then revised in 1977, this is the definitive guide to tipis. The Laubins were a non-Indian couple who always "felt" Indian. They lived the traditional lifestyle of Native Americans, were adopted by an elderly Indian chief and his wife, and learned traditional crafts and skills from some of the few remaining Native American elders who grew up at a time when primitive skills were still a way of life. The Laubins state that the more portable hunting tipis tended to run about 12 feet in diameter, while the average family lodge was 18 to 20 feet in diameter, requiring poles about 22 to 28 feet long (Laubin and Laubin 1989, 19).

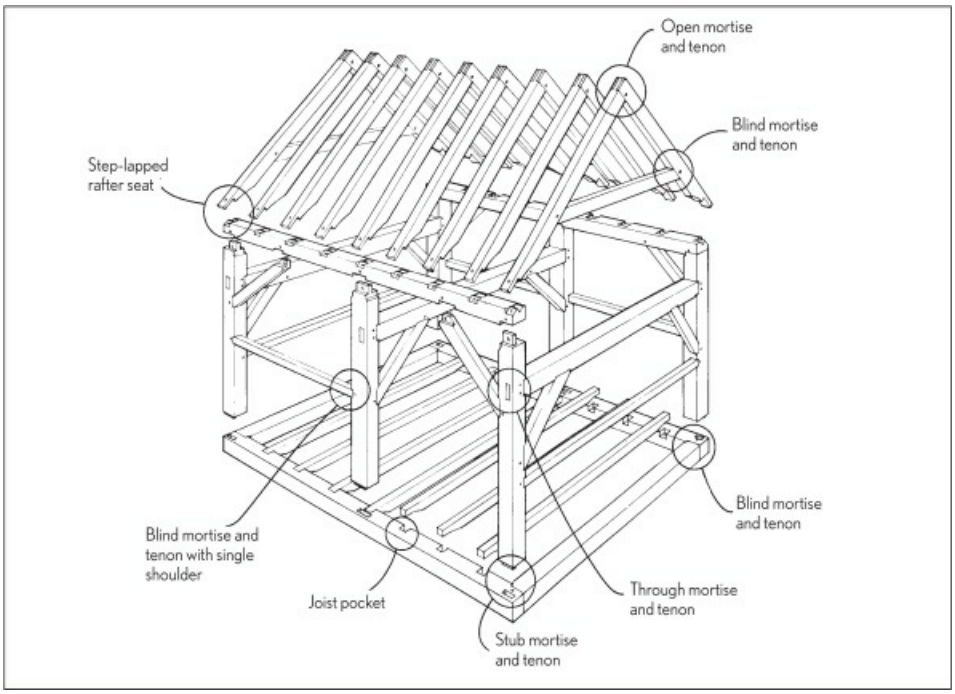

Open mortise and tenon
Blind mortise and tenon
Step-lapped rafter seat
Blind mortise and tenon
Blind mortise and tenon with single shoulder
Joist pocket
Through mortise and tenon
Stub mortise and tenon

Figure 7-33. Simple timber frame showing several types of joints. (Illustration courtesy of *Timber Frame Construction: All About Post-and-Beam Building*, by Jack Sobon and Roger Schroeder, Storey Books, 1984)

Beard's *Shelters, Shacks and Shanties* illustrates and describes the construction of several different styles of traditional Indian structures, such as hogans, longhouses, and wigwams. I have not been able to determine the difference between a wigwam and a wickiup, but perhaps they are loose terms that can apply to several different styles of construction. In Nevada, Rolling

Thunder describes wickiups made by digging the ends of about 20 slender willow poles into a circle. The poles were bent to cross in the center and then tied to make a dome shape. Slender branches were tied in parallel circles around the outside of the frame to provide strength and attachment points for thatching. In the old days, wickiups were thatched with strips of bark or bundles of long grasses tied in overlapping layers. Modern wickiups are usually weatherproofed with tarps. In the dry climate of Nevada, wickiups were often dug a few feet into the ground for natural earth cooling in the summer and heating in the winter.

A yurt is the traditional, round, tent-like Mongolian nomadic home. They are strong, light structures that can handle high winds and heavy snow loads. You can buy various yurt kits online, but if you want to build a yurt from scratch, I suggest you pick up a copy of Paul King's *The Complete Yurt Handbook* (see the references at the end of this chapter).

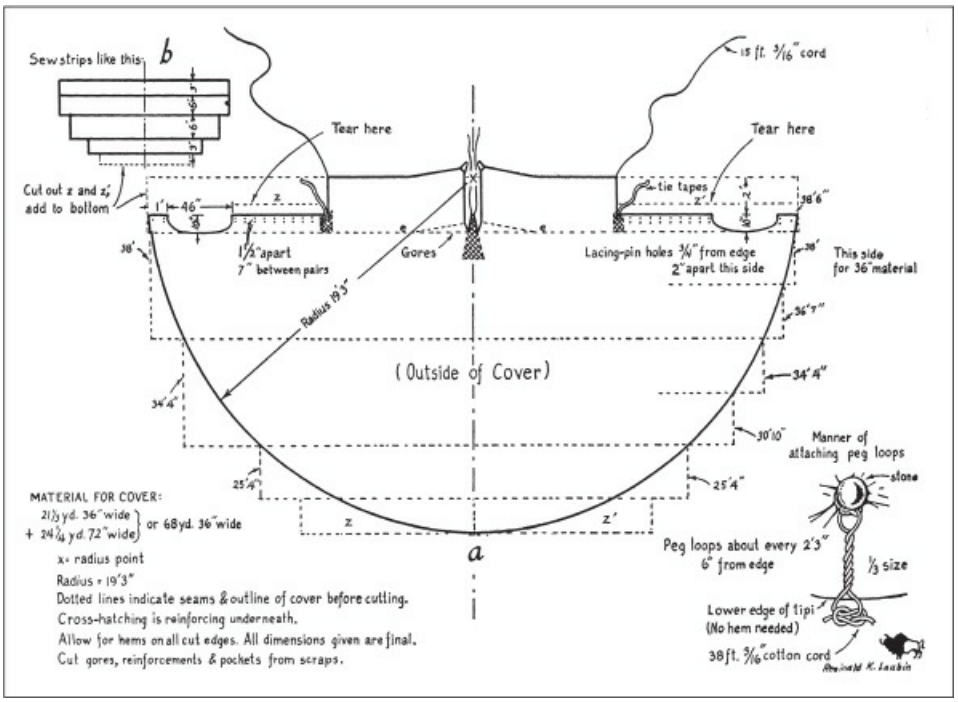

Sew strips like this:
b
Cut out z and z', add to bottom
Tear here
Tear here
15 ft. 3/16" cord
tie tapes
1½" apart
7" between pairs
Gores
Lacing-pin holes ¾" from edge
2" apart this side
This side for 36" material
Radius 19'3"
(Outside of Cover)
Manner of attaching peg loops
stone
Peg loops about every 2'3" 6" from edge
⅓ size
Lower edge of tipi (No hem needed)
38ft. 3/16" cotton cord
MATERIAL FOR COVER:
21⅓ yd. 36" wide + 24¾ yd. 72" wide } or 68 yd. 36" wide
x= radius point
Radius = 19'3"
Dotted lines indicate seams & outline of cover before cutting.
Cross-hatching is reinforcing underneath.
Allow for hems on all cut edges. All dimensions given are final.
Cut gores, reinforcements & pockets from scraps.
a

Figure 7-34. Basic 18-foot Sioux tipi pattern. (Illustration courtesy of *The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use,* by Reginald Laubin and Gladys Laubin, University of Oklahoma Press, 1989)

Figure 7-35. Wickiups at Meta Tantay, Nevada. (Illustration courtesy of *Rolling Thunder Speaks: A Message for Turtle Island,* by Rolling Thunder, edited by Carmen Sun Rising Pope, Clear Light Publishers, 1999)

Tipi Tips and Pitching Basics

- Poles should be perfectly straight, smooth, peeled, and sharpened to a point at the butts (thick end) so they don't slip on the ground. Poles should extend several feet above the crossing point.
- For portability, light and strong woods are best, such as lodgepole pine, white cedar, and red cedar. For the 20-foot tipi, poles should be about 2 inches in diameter where they cross and tie (narrower at the tips), no more than 4 to 5 inches at the butt, and about 25 to 28 feet long (no less than 22 feet).
- Cut poles from a thicket of young trees. Do not trim the tips until the poles are nearly finished, or you may cut them too short. You will need 15 strong poles for the 18- to 20-

foot tipi frame plus two lighter poles for the smoke flaps. Season your poles before using them; otherwise they will dry with a permanent bend and will not hold the canvas tight.

- Tipi poles are set in a skewed cone shape to make the cross a little behind center so that the smoke flap can be positioned directly above the central fire pit. Start with a tripod of the three strongest poles. Before tying the tripod together, lay the three poles and tipi material flat on the ground, and then mark the poles at the crossing point, allowing extra length if the poles are to be dug into the ground.

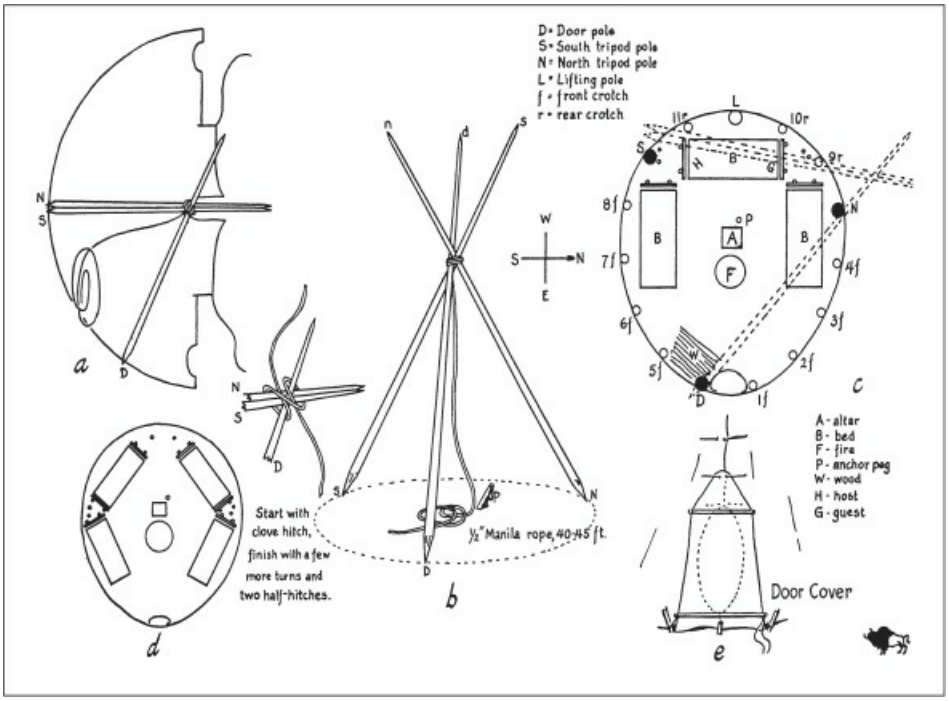


Figure 7-36. Erecting the Sioux tipi. (Illustration courtesy of *The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use*, by Reginald Laubin and Gladys Laubin, University of Oklahoma Press, 1989)

- Tie the initial three poles together with a clove hitch followed by several wraps of ½-inch, heavyduty, nonslippery cordage that is about 45 feet long. With the dangling free end of the rope and several pairs of hands, hoist the tripod into position. Position the legs with one leg next to where the door will be.
- Lay the other poles consecutively into the crotches of the tripod, placing about two-thirds of the poles into the front crotch where the smoke hole will go.
- After all the poles are laid into the frame, grab the dangling rope and walk around the tipi frame four times, whipping or snapping the rope upward as you go, to tightly wrap all the poles together at the narrow neck where they cross. When finished with the wraps, firmly stake the dangling rope end to keep your structure from tumbling if a wind should come up before the tipi is fully set.
- Bundle and tie the tipi canvas onto a lifting pole. Tilt the entire bundle into position on the tipi frame, and then unwrap the canvas from the lifting pole as you wrap it around the tipi frame.
- Traditionally, a crossbar was lashed to the door poles, allowing an adult to stand on it to

pin the tops of the canvas together with wooden lacing pins (a ladder will work if available).

- A tipi liner is important for keeping the heat in during cold weather, for catching drips in wet weather, and for helping the tipi to draft well (Laubin and Laubin 1989, 36–46).

Making and pitching a tipi is not easy. You might do yourself a favor by picking up the Laubin's book *The Indian Tipi* or getting some help from someone who has done this before.

EARTHQUAKE RESISTANCE

> We built wickiups that were strong and earthquake proof. . . . I told them that our tipis and wickiups would be standing when their buildings fall to the ground. — **Rolling Thunder,** ***Rolling Thunder Speaks: A Message for Turtle Island***

Ask anyone who has been through a major earthquake, such as the Loma Prieta or Northridge quakes, and they will tell you that a serious quake can be a terrifying event. Often the main differences between structures that pulled through in relatively good shape and those that got the "bulldozer remodel" (dig a hole with a bulldozer, push the house into it, start over) were whether the building was of older construction and the contractor was sloppy with shear nailing of the building's exterior plywood siding or there was insufficient use of "hurricane clips" and "Simpson Strong-Ties" to properly brace the frame.

Shelly and Phil Rodgers were in their home in California's Santa Cruz Mountains when the Loma Prieta quake struck. The epicenter was about 7 miles from their home. The house shook violently and all of their cupboards opened, throwing every dish, jar, can, bookcase, television, and appliance to the floor. Phil said that the house floors undulated like a snake, appearing to change elevation by more than a foot in different parts of the house as the quake shook through. They were not able to leave the house until the earth stopped moving. Because their car keys and shoes were still inside, Phil had to brave the aftershocks and wade through broken glass to retrieve keys and shoes so they could attempt the drive to town to pick up their kids. He brought a chainsaw with him, which was needed to cut large limbs that had fallen across the road.

On their way to town, they passed the spot where a neighbor's house should have been. It had been built on tall pylons overlooking the hillside. When the quake struck, it slid off the piers and down the canyon. The two occupants on the first floor managed to crawl out the door moments before it took off, but their son, who was sleeping on the second floor, went for the wildest ride of his life. He miraculously rode through it uninjured, as the first floor disintegrated and the roof split away and to the side. Another friend had a home that lacked proper shear wall nailing and adequate attachment to the foundation. This home slid off the foundation and was a total loss, receiving the "bulldozer remodeling job."

Shelly and Phil's home was of post-and-beam construction with massive timbers. Their contractor had paid careful attention to all the exterior plywood shear nailing and steel frame ties. Remarkably, not one window was broken and the house suffered no structural damage, even though many of their personal items were destroyed (they cleaned up their dishes and pottery with a shovel). Another friend was not so lucky. That house was of similar design and built by the same contractor who had built Shelly and Phil's, but the framing and plywood sheet nailing had been done by a subcontractor who was not as careful and had nailed at wider intervals than specified. This house suffered severe structural damage, requiring $170,000 to repair the windows, house frame, and resquare the walls, so that it cost more to fix than it originally cost to build.

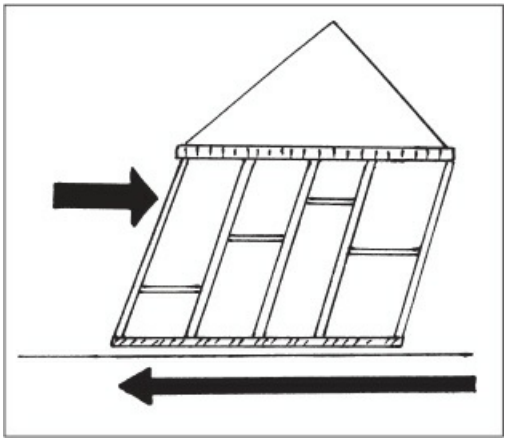


Figure 7-37. Shear forces during an earthquake.

When an earthquake strikes, the most damaging motion is usually not the vertical but the horizontal component of the earth movement. The mass of the building tends to want to stay in one place as the earth moves side to side. The resulting sideways forces on the walls, which tend to push the walls into a diamond shape rather than a rectangle, are referred to as "shear forces." As the mass and height of a building increase, the walls will be subject to greater shear forces in an earthquake.

Improving Earthquake Resistance

Recently, through the use of modern analytical tools and by studying what worked and did not work in actual earthquakes, seismic design has made a lot of progress. Although there is no way to "earthquake-proof" a structure, there are numerous ways to increase its earthquake resistance,

At some level of seismic severity, all structures will fail. However, good seismic design can dramatically increase the earthquake resistance of a structure. A few factors that affect the earthquake resistance of a building are described below.

- **Mass and height.** The heavier and more massive the walls and ceilings, and the taller the

structure, the higher the shear loads will be in an earthquake. Tent-like structures, such as yurts and tipis, have almost no mass. They will usually survive massive earthquakes without failure, but if they do collapse, they are so light that they will probably cause little damage.

- **Flexibility.** If a structure can flex and "give" without failure, it can absorb seismic energy and ride out quakes that might damage or destroy other structures. Fiberglass composites have high strength-to-weight ratios and exceptional flexibility, making them a prime candidate for earthquake-resistant structures that are lightweight, strong, and flexible.
- **Masonry, earth, and concrete.** These materials are fairly strong in compression, but notoriously weak in tension. The properly engineered use of reinforcing steel, bond beams, and structural roof diaphragms can drastically improve the earthquake resistance of these types of structures. Most of the stress in the walls is a downward compression from the weight of the building. In an earthquake, shear loads put sections of the walls in high tension, which is the kind of load that masonry and earth handle poorly. Consequently, older masonry and earthen buildings often collapse in help hold them together (instead of collapsing) moderately strong earthquakes.
- **Low-tech reinforcing.** One low-tech way to improve the earthquake resistance of traditional earthen structures is to incorporate load-bearing post-and-beam reinforcement into the walls and to thread strong rope through the wall centers to when a quake cracks the earthen walls. Another low-tech reinforcing material is bamboo. Some varieties of bamboo are extremely strong and resilient.
- **Length-to-width ratio.** Slender masonry or earthen walls are prone to fracture. Massive, thick walls will usually do better in an earthquake. Sometimes external buttresses are added to building corners to provide extra support.
- **Isolation design.** In the movies, you have probably seen someone attempting to pull a tablecloth out from under a table of dishes. If all goes well, the dishes stay in place as the tablecloth slides from under them. However, if the cloth does not slip smoothly under the dishes, they all fall over. Some modern skyscrapers employ huge bearings under the foundation to allow them to stay somewhat stationary while the earth moves underneath, similar to the action in the tablecloth trick. Massive rubber blocks or concave bearing supports act to bring the building back into alignment with the ground once the earthquake is over. These design features are called "isolators" because they try to isolate the earth movements from the building.
- **Chinese low-tech seismic isolation.** Because so many buildings in China are made of earth with little or no structural reinforcement and most of China is without access to high-tech building materials, low-tech solutions to seismic isolation for active earthquake zones have been developed. Chinese engineer Li Li noted that cracks in the eroded base of an old farmhouse's rammed earth walls allowed that particular farmhouse to slide on its earthen foundation and survive the 1960 quake that destroyed all other buildings in the village of Tuquiao in Jilin province. Based on Li Li's recommendations, numerous buildings that artificially simulate this "cracked wall" design have been erected at a variety of sites. Terrazzo plates are placed, smooth side up, on top of a prepared foundation trench. A thin layer of sand is spread on the plates, then another layer of terrazzo plates is placed smooth side down on top of the sand. A concrete foundation is

poured on top of the second layer of terrazzo plates, and then the building is constructed as usual. The sand layer acts as a "poor man's" seismic isolation bearing. Engineering shake table tests on large models and ground blasts next to test buildings have yielded excellent results, but the true test will come when the next large earthquake strikes China (Tibbets 1997, 34–35).

REFERENCES

Green Building

***e New Ecological Home: A Complete Guide to Green Building Options,* by Daniel D. Chiras.** 2004, 325 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498166. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing Company, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $35.00

This is an excellent practical guide to green building concepts, building system selection, layout, and design. There is no single "right way" to design and build a green building. This book lays out many of the options and considerations, including nuts-and-bolts kinds of practical information that helps the prospective home builder to make decisions about what kind of home to build, how it should be oriented, how to treat the site in an eco-sensitive manner, and what kinds of energy and water-conserving appliances and systems could be incorporated into the design to minimize the ecological impact of the home.

***een Remodeling: Changing the World One Room at a Time,* by David Johnston and Kim Master.** 2004, 379 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865714984. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $29.95

David Johnston has been building green for more than 30 years, was named Builder of the Year in Washington, D.C., and has been inducted into *Remodeling Magazine*'s Hall of Fame. This book is packed full of Johnston's wisdom and experience gleaned from being a handson innovator with over 30 years in the business. Even though his emphasis is on remodeling, his tips about what works and what doesn't are invaluable both for remodeling and for new construction.

***een Building: Your Edge in the Home Building Marketplace,* by David Johnston.** 2006 (DVD), ISBN 978-0977194414. Published by What's Working, Inc., 57 Acorn Lane, Boulder, CO 80304. Distributed by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $99.95

For a fraction of the cost of flying to Boulder and taking one of his popular green building seminars, you can have this encyclopedic four-DVD set. It provides practical information about building in ways that are energy conscious, healthy, and environmentally responsible. Topics covered are energy efficiency, resource conservation, indoor air quality, and mold and moisture management. Johnston explains almost everything that building professionals and homeowners need to know in order to build green.

***ilding with Awareness: The Construction of a Hybrid Home,* by Syncronos Design, Inc.** 2006

(DVD), ISBN 978-0977334315. Published by Syncronos Design, Inc., P.O. Box 1833, Corrales, NM 87048. Distributed by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $42.00

Building with Awareness is a detailed, comprehensive, award-winning video on the design and construction of a sustainable straw bale home. This DVD covers the construction of a solar-powered straw bale home from rubble trench foundation to finish, including wiring, adobe thermal mass walls, post-and-beam framing, cistern construction, roofing, plastering, and so on. It is packed with green design and construction techniques from professionals working at the cutting edge of sustainable home building. If you can't take a handson workshop, this is the next best thing.

***ur Green Home: A Guide to Planning a Healthy, Environmentally Friendly New Home,* by Alex Wilson.** 2006, 237 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715554. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $17.95

Alex Wilson has more than 30 years of experience with green building and is executive editor of *Environmental Building News*, the number-one source for up-to-date articles on green building design, processes, and materials. He created this book as an introduction to green building, including site location and orientation, building systems, green materials, and a host of other considerations that go into creating a healthy home that has minimal ecological impact and energy consumption. Not as nuts-and-bolts oriented as Chiras' *The New Ecological Home* or Johnston and Master's *Green Remodeling*, it is nonetheless an excellent guide for helping the prospective homeowner to work with a builder and/or designer to create a healthy, green home.

***een Building Products: The GreenSpec Guide to Residential Building Materials,* Alex Wilson and Mark Piepkorn (editors).** 2006, 338 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715707. Copublished by BuildingGreen, Inc., 122 Birge St., Suite 30, Brattleboro, VT 05301 and New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $34.95

The publishers of *Environmental Building News*, the number-one source for up-to-date articles on green building design, processes, and materials, bring you this terrific guide to environmentally friendly building materials. Few of us have the time, expertise, and training to properly evaluate building materials to determine which ones are truly "green" and which ones are not so green. These people do it for us. They don't receive a penny from the manufacturers of the recommended products, so you can be assured that you are getting the unbiased opinions of experts. For a wealth of up-to-date information and more product evaluations than are listed in the book, visit their Web site at www.buildinggreen.com.

***e Natural House: A Complete Guide to Healthy, Energy-Efficient, Environmental Homes,* by Daniel D. Chiras.** 2000, 468 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132576. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $35.00

If you are interested in building an environmentally friendly natural home that uses locally available materials—such as a straw bale, log, cob, rammed earth, adobe, or an Earthship—then this book will give you a great start. It provides a detailed summary of many different building systems, including pros and cons, plus interviews with builders who specialize in most of these systems. This book helps owners decide which building type suits them, then shows how to plan

and build their home, while also pointing them toward the best sources for materials and more in-depth practical information.

***ıe Hand-Sculpted House: A Practical and Philosophical Guide to Building a Cob Cottage,* by Ianto Evans, Michael G. Smith, and Linda Smiley.** 2002, 346 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132347. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $35.00

Written by master cob builders and often described as the cob builder's bible, this is the book to get if you are seriously considering building with cob (an earthen clay mix similar to adobe, only without the blocks). It is beautifully illustrated with inspiring photographs and copious hand-drawn details. A fine, coffee-table idea book as well as an excellent practical how-to manual.

***ıilding with Cob: A Step-By-Step Guide,* by Adam Weismann and Katy Bryce.** 2006, 252 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1903998724. Published by Green Books Ltd., Foxhole, Dartington, Totnes, Devon TQ9 6EB, England. List price $45.00

This beautiful book is an excellent how-to guide for building with cob. It is also a wonderful guide to complementary natural building techniques such as earthen and lime plasters, thatch and turf roofs, hardened polished earthen floors, rubble trench foundations, natural paints, and so on.

***ıe Art of Natural Building: Design, Construction, Resources,* by Joseph Kennedy, Michael G. Smith, and Catherine Wanek (editors).** 2002, 291 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865714335. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $26.95

If you are drawn to the aesthetics and ecological qualities of natural building, then you should pick up this fine book. It is composed of a collection of articles written by specialists in the field of each of the included building styles. An excellent collection of photos offers the reader a wide range of ideas, styles, and possibilities.

***ıilding Green: A Complete How-to Guide to Alternative Building Methods,* by Clarke Snell and Tim Callahan.** 2005, ISBN 978-1579905323. Published by Lark Books, a division of Sterling Publishing Co., 387 Park Ave. South, New York, NY 10016. List price $29.95

This is a hefty, practical, and copiously illustrated "how-to" manual for earthen plasters, straw bale, cordwood, cob, and living roofs. Some of the other books written by experts in their fields offer better "idea" photos and have more personal experience in their field of expertise, but this book probably offers the best pictures and illustrations for building details that would be very helpful to the owner-builder or a contractor who wishes to expand his or her repertoire of building techniques.

***ıtural Remodeling for the Not-So-Green House:Bringing Your Home into Harmony with Nature,* by Carol Venolia and Kelly Lerner.** 2006, 280 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1579906542. Published by Lark Books, a division of Sterling Publishing Co., 387 Park Ave. South, New York, NY 10016. List price $24.95

This is a beautifully illustrated, practical "idea book" for planning and executing a green remodel and renovation of an older home. In general, it is much "greener" to recycle an older home through renovation than to replace it with a brand new home. This is a more visually inspiring idea book than Johnston and Master's *Green Remodeling* but offers less practical how-

to information, so the two books would complement each other well.

***rious Straw Bale: A Home Construction Guide for All Climates,* by Paul Lacinski and Michael Bergeron.** 2000, 371 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132644. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $30.00

This book fills in the gaps left by previous straw bale books. Many of those earlier books were focused on building with bales in dry southwestern U.S. climates, but builders from the northeastern United States and eastern Canada wrote this book. It is a thorough handbook covering all aspects of building with straw bales, including a variety of design and materials options.

***ore Straw Bale Building: A Complete Guide to Designing and Building with Straw,* by Chris Magwood, Peter Mack, and Tina Therrien.** 2005, 277 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715189. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $32.95

This beautiful, comprehensive, and up-to-date book is an excellent overall guide to building with bales. If you are serious about straw bale building, pick up both this book and *Serious Straw Bale*, as no single builder knows everything about this relatively young and rapidly developing building technology. The authors are master straw bale builders with over 100 straw bale projects to their collective credit, and Chris Magwood has been the editor of *The Last Straw*, a quarterly journal that shares news and developments from around the world concerning straw bale construction and other natural building techniques.

***e Design of Straw Bale Buildings: The State of the Art,* by Bruce King.** 2006, 296 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0976491118. Published by Green Building Press, P.O. Box 6397, San Rafael, CA 94903. List price $40.00

This is a technically oriented book for architects, engineers, professional builders, and the serious homebuilder who wants to know as much as possible about the latest data concerning straw bale construction details, structural design, seismic considerations, moisture barriers, and so on. Great info, but definitely not your typical coffee-table book filled with inspiring photographs.

***e Beauty of Straw Bale Homes,* by Athena Swentzell Steen and Bill Steen.** 2000, 113 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132774. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $22.95

Unlike Bruce King's book, *The Beauty of Straw Bale Homes* is a coffee-table book filled with inspiring photographs and design ideas. Don't expect how-to information—you will need to look to the other references for that—but this is a great book for helping people to decide what style, look, finish, and layout they may want for their straw bale home.

***e Natural Plaster Book: Earth, Lime and Gypsum Plasters for Natural Homes,* by Cedar Rose Guelberth and Dan Chiras.** 2003, 251 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865714496. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $29.95

This is a good introduction to natural breathable plasters for your cob or straw bale home, and includes numerous clear illustrations. You may wish to complement this text with some of the detailed natural plaster and paint recipes from Weismann and Bryce's *Building with Cob*.

***e Rammed Earth House: Completely Revised Edition,* by David Easton.** 2007, 274 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1933392370. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $40.00

David Easton has been designing and building with rammed earth since the late 1970s, when he stumbled upon rammed earth construction methods while searching for a way to build a low-cost and energy/ materials-efficient home. Since then, his company, Rammed Earth Works, has become one of the major builders of rammed earth structures in North America. This beautiful book takes you through all the steps for building a rammed earth home, from design and planning, through soil evaluation, on to construction details and techniques synthesized from almost thirty years of building with rammed earth. Inspiring and instructive color photos fill this newly revised and updated edition.

***aking Better Concrete: Guidelines for Using Fly Ash for Higher Quality, Eco-Friendly Structures,* by Bruce King, P.E.** 2005, 53 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0976491101. Published by Green Building Press, P.O. Box 6397, San Rafael, CA 94903. List price $20.00

If you are building a home with concrete and want to make better, stronger concrete with half the greenhouse gas contribution of standard concrete, then you should get this book. If you are a builder, buy it for yourself. If you are hiring a contractor, buy it for your contractor.

***uildings of Earth and Straw: Structural Design for Rammed Earth and Straw-Bale Architecture,* by Bruce King, P.E.** 1996, 169 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0964471818. Published by Ecological Design Press, P.O. Box 6397, San Rafael, CA 94903. List price $25.00

A valuable book that provides previously hard-tofind information needed for safe structural design of buildings built with rammed earth or straw bales. It is written for the professional engineer, professional builder, or the layperson seeking to better understand the application of these alternative building techniques. Until now, an engineer had to search far and wide for information that would allow her or him to professionally evaluate, design, and approve the structural design for one of these buildings. Now you can simply provide your engineer with this book and he or she can do the rest. For straw bale construction, you will find updated structural information in King's more recent publication, *The Design of Straw Bale Buildings: The State of the Art.*

***lobe: Build It Yourself,* by Paul Graham McHenry, Jr.** 1998, 158 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0816509485. Published by The University of Arizona Press, 1230 N. Park Ave., #102, Tucson, AZ 85719-4140. List price $24.95

Last revised in 1985, this is still the best basic do-it yourself book on adobe construction. In his popular classes, Paul McHenry has taught thousands of people how to build their own adobe homes. This book originally started out as a textbook for his class, and has excellent illustrations for all aspects of building, including foundations, brick making, bricklaying, plumbing, roofing, and electrical systems. For the latest in tools, techniques, code changes, and construction technologies, see Joe Tibbets' Southwest Solar Adobe School, his *Earthbuilder's Encyclopedia* CD, and his *Adobe Builder* magazine (see the resources section in this chapter).

***e Earthbuilder's Encyclopedia,* by Joe Tibbets.** 2007, (CD-ROM). Published by Southwest Solar Adobe (SWSA), P.O. Box 153, Bosque, NM 87006. List price $43.00 (includes shipping)

If you are serious about building with adobe, rammed earth, stabilized compressed earthen

blocks, and such, then you should buy this CD. It contains hundreds of photos and illustrations of finished buildings as well as construction site in-process details that you won't find anywhere else.

***e Passive Solar House: The Complete Guide to Heating and Cooling Your Home,* by James Kachadorian.** 2006, 224 pp. (hardcover with CD-ROM), ISBN 978-1933392035. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $40.00

This is an excellent introduction to passive solar concepts and is a good book for helping you to plan and design a passive solar house. It is written by a civil engineer, who also ran a company designing and manufacturing passive solar kit homes for about 20 years. A big bonus to this book is that it comes with a CD for an open-source solar analysis and design software that also includes a photographic tour of passive solar homes. Use this CD to analyze your existing home design to consider remodeling and energy upgrade options or to plan your new design. Very helpful for rapidly comparing various "what-if " scenarios while fine-tuning the design for your solar dream home. Kachadorian's patented, innovative, solar slab heat storage system has formed the core of numerous comfortable, functional, and modestly priced solar homes. Now that his patent has run out, you can incorporate it into your home, taking advantage of more than 20 years of building experience with this unique solar slab design. The book's title is a bit misleading, since there is very little focus on passively cooling homes in hot climates. Newly revised and updated edition.

***e Solar House: Passive Heating and Cooling,* by Dan Chiras.** 2002, 274 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498128. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $29.95

Another excellent book on passive solar design for your home. Compared to the Kachedorian book, it offers a broader range of ideas and concepts and more information on indoor air quality and passive cooling for hot seasons, but it has fewer engineering details and calculations. It also includes some valuable tips concerning solar designs and ideas that did not prove to work well in the long run, so you can learn from the mistakes of the solar pioneers. If I was designing and building a passive solar home, I would pick up both books.

***ttle House on a Small Planet: Simple Homes, Cozy Retreats, and Energy Efficient Possibilities,* by Shay Solomon.** 2006, 265 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1592288687. Published by The Lyons Press, P.O. Box 480, Guilford, CT 06437. List price $19.95

If you have ever thought of downsizing, making your home into a cozy, low-impact shelter that nurtures the soul while going easy on the planet, then take a look at this book. Filled with pictures, case studies, and stories of people who have done it already, this is an excellent idea-and-philosophy kind of book that warms and inspires every time you pick it up and turn its pages.

***e Not So Big House: A Blueprint for the Way We Really Live,* by Sarah Susanka.** 2001, 208 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1561583768. Published by The Lyons Press, 63 S. Main Street, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. List price $22.95

This book is very popular with owner-builders, architects, professional builders, and designers. From a green perspective, smaller is better for the planet. By downsizing, you can afford to spend more on quality, craftsmanship, energy conservation, and detail. This is a good

idea book, but not a how-to book.

***escriptions for a Healthy House: A Practical Guide for Architects, Builders and Homeowners,* by Paula Baker-Laporte, Erica Elliott, and John Banta.** 2008, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865716049. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $28.95

The combination of glues, solvents, paints, and other chemicals used to manufacture various building materials, along with today's tight, energy-efficient home construction, has proven too much for many people's immune systems. Far too many have found that their shiny new home has taken their health away. Use this book to reduce the toxicity of an existing home, to remodel smartly with healthy-home principles, or to help you plan new construction using low-toxin materials, proper moisture control, and an energy-efficient fresh air ventilation system to ensure a healthy future for you and your family. Authored by a green architect, an environmental remediation consultant, and a doctor specializing in environmental medicine, their combined expertise make this is a valuable book to have on hand.

***eate an Oasis With Greywater: Choosing, Building and Using Greywater Systems—Includes Branched Drains,* by Art Ludwig.** 2006, 144 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0964343399. Published by Oasis Design, 5 San Marcos Trout Club, Santa Barbara, CA 93105-9726. List price $20.95

A thorough guide to designing and building greywater systems to effectively utilize your building's usable wastewater for landscape and garden. Covers simple to complex systems, maintenance, health considerations, components, greywater plumbing principles, and so on. This is their fifth revised edition, and it is significantly expanded from earlier editions. If you're planning on integrating a greywater system into new construction or remodeling, you will also want their *Builder's Greywater Guide* (which helps you to deal with building codes and inspectors) as a supplement to *Create an Oasis With Greywater*. For background information on greywater systems and use, check out the Oasis Design Web site at www.oasisdesign.net.

***e Humanure Handbook: A Guide to Composting Human Manure,* by Joseph Jenkins.** 2005, 256 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0964425835. Published by Joseph Jenkins, Inc., P.O. Box 607, Grove City, PA 16127. List price $25.00

For truly sustainable agriculture, we must recycle nutrient-rich human wastes back into the earth. This not only provides nutrients for wonderful gardens and landscaping, it also keeps these nutrients where they belong, rather than the usual septic system or sewage plant that allows them to slip into the local watershed and pollute much-needed aquifers. This book tells you everything you wanted to know, and probably lots you didn't want to know, about dealing with deep doo-doo properly, safely, hygienically, and ecologically.

***inwater Harvesting for Drylands: Volume 1, Guiding Principles to Welcome Rain into Your Life and Landscape,* by Brad Lancaster.** 2006, 183 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0977246403. Published by Rainsource Press, 813 N 9th Ave., Tucson, AZ 85705. List price $24.95

Applying the principles of this book should have widespread appeal, not just for folks who live in arid climates, but for those in all areas that may experience extended droughts in today's world of changing climates. Whether you live on a city lot or country acreage, this is an excellent primer for practically reducing your impact and improving your use of natural water to nurture

your landscape and/or garden. Volume one is an excellent, well-illustrated guide to the basics. Volume two is a detailed guide to earthworks, including mulch, vegetation, and greywater recycling. Volume three is a detailed guide to roof catchment and cistern systems.

***rth-Sheltered Houses: How to Build an Affordable Underground Home,* by Rob Roy.** 2006, 255 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715219. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $26.95

If you are interested in building a home with a living roof and/or earth-bermed walls, then this is a book you should have. The title is a bit misleading, because they are not really talking about underground homes as in bomb shelters, but homes that are built into the earth to take advantage of the natural heating and cooling offered by the earth. It was written by a man who has been building these kinds of structures, and teaching others how to build them, since the 1970s, and his experience and advice are priceless. His focus is on moderate-cost construction methods that are easily accessible to the owner-builder.

***rthbag Building: The Tools, Tricks and Techniques,* by Kaki Hunter and Donald Kiffmeyer.** 2004, 257 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715073. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $29.95

If you are looking for a way to build sculptural homes on a shoestring budget—homes that include features like curved walls, arches, and domed ceilings—then earthbag buildings might just be *your* bag. Earthbag buildings are green structures with minimal ecological impact, well suited for hot or mild climates. Copiously illustrated, this is an excellent how-to book that also has a good selection of idea photos.

***me Work: Handbuilt Shelter,* by Lloyd Kahn.** 2004, 245 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0936070339. Published by Shelter Publications, P.O. Box 279, Bolinas, CA 94924. List price $26.95

This book showcases a very entertaining eclectic collection of unique, hand-built homes from around the world. Some fine, some funky, all of them are interesting in their own way. A fine coffee-table and idea book, sure to spark numerous intriguing conversations.

Traditional Building Techniques and Structures

***dependent Builder: Designing and Building a House Your Own Way,* by Sam Clark.** 1996, 528 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0930031855. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $40.00

Written and recommended by professional builders, this is probably the best design/build book for the owner-builder seeking to build a mostly traditional home. It covers all aspects of building your own home, including site selection, finance, subcontractors, foundations, plumbing, heating, ventilation, insulation, framing, finish work, roofing, passive solar principles, heat calculations, and so on. The focus is on traditional stick-frame and post-and-beam construction. The writing is easy to understand, and the book is filled with clear illustrations.

***e Timber-Frame Home: Design, Construction, Finishing,* by Tedd Benson.** 1997, 240 pp.

(hardcover), ISBN 978-1561581290. Published by Taunton Press, 63 South Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06740-5506. List price $34.95

Tedd Benson effectively started the modern revival in timber framing with his excellent do-it-yourself book, *Building the Timber Frame House.* This book is a version updated to include modern developments and energy-efficient construction. It is a beautifully illustrated, coffee-table-quality, design-and-build guide to timber-frame homes that includes all facets of timberframe building construction. Benson's books are highly recommended by timber-framing teachers.

***mberframe: The Art and Craft of the Post-and Beam Home,* by Tedd Benson.** 1999, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1561586080. Published by Taunton Press, 63 South Main Street, Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06740-5506. List price $29.95

This is a beautiful coffee-table book about timberframe construction. It's not a how-to book, but it does have a wide variety of pictures, several sketches, and rough floor plans to help you design and plan the timber-framed home of your dreams.

***Timber Framer's Workshop: Joinery, Design and Construction of Traditional Timber Frames,* by Steve Chappell.** 1998, 252 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1889269009. Published by Fox Maple Press, Corn Hill Road, P.O. Box 249, Brownfield, ME 04010. List price $30.00

This is the handbook for the Fox Maple School's timber-framing workshop. There was a time when the only way you could get it was by attending a workshop. This workbook contains over 250 pages of in-depth technical information on the joinery, design, and construction of traditional timber frames. Illustrated with over 230 photos and CAD drawings, it includes frame plans, design and engineering formulas, rule of-thumb guidelines, shop setup, builder's math, joinery design criteria, practical timber-framing tips, and more. If you are a builder, architect, engineer, or an aspiring owner-builder, *A Timber Framer's Workshop* will provide the information you need. This book is highly recommended by timber-framing teachers.

***mber Framing for the Rest of Us: A Guide to Contemporary Post and Beam Construction,* by Rob Roy.** 2004, 178 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715080. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $22.95

Unlike the previously mentioned books, this is modern post-and-beam timber framing for dummies. This book is for the owner-builder who would like to do the framing right using modern hardware and methods, and has no illusions about being (or becoming) a master craftsman in the art of timber framing.

***g Building Construction Manual: The Ultimate Guide to Building Handcrafted Log Homes,* by Robert Chambers.** 2006, 260 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0971573604. Published by Deep Stream Press, N8203 1130th Street, River Falls, WI 54022. List price $37.95

Several professional builders have recommended this book as absolutely the best manual for building a log home. Robert Chambers is an experienced log homebuilder, teacher, and coauthor of *Log Building Standards: The Building Code for Handcrafted Log Homes*. It is filled with helpful photographs and illustrations that guide you through all the steps for making a tight, well-finished, professional-style log home, including timber selection, planning, log dressing, roof trusses, special tools, and log treatment. For the latest information on log home building

seminars and techniques, check out Robert's log-building Web site at www.logbuilding.org.

***C Field Guide to Residential Construction: A Manual of Best Practice, Volume 1,* by Clayton DeKorne(editor).** 2003, 384 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1928580249. The Journal of Light Construction, 186 Allen Brook Lane, Williston, VT 05495. List price $69.95

This is a detailed, well-illustrated book of best common practices written for contractors, tradesmen, and the owner-builder who wants to do things right. If you are generating your own set of home plans, its drafting details will be invaluable for helping you to make your plans thorough, correct, and complete. Volume 1 covers foundations, framing, roofing, and exteriors.

***C Field Guide to Residential Construction: A Manual of Best Practice, Volume 2,* by Clayton DeKorne (editor).** 2005, 321 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1928580287. The Journal of Light Construction, 186 Allen Brook Lane, Williston, VT 05495. List price $69.95

Volume 2 covers electrical, plumbing, HVAC/energy, and interiors.

***elters, Shacks and Shanties and How to Build Them,* by D. C. Beard.** 1999, 243 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1558219526. Published by The Lyons Press, 123 West 18th Street, New York, NY 10011. List price $12.95

This is a reprint of a classic book published in 1914 for making your own primitive shelters with no more tools than an axe and a knife. D. C. Beard was an artist, backwoodsman, and one of the two principal founders of the Boy Scouts movement. His book illustrates everything from Indian hogans, wigwams, and lean-tos to modest log cabins, hearths, and chimneys. This is a fun little book to have around, although I would rely on other references if I planned to build a home.

***e Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use,* by Reginald Laubin and Gladys Laubin.** 1989, 384 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0806122366. Published by the University of Oklahoma Press, 1005 Asp Ave., Norman, OK 73019-0445. List price $24.95

This is the definitive book about and for life in a tipi. It offers designs and layouts for a variety of tipi styles, plus pros and cons for different styles. It also has information on brain tanning, moccasins, Indian containers, tipi ceremonies, and so on. In the 1950s, the authors fully embraced the lifestyle and ways of traditional Native Americans, becoming "adopted" by Chief One Bull and his wife Scarlet Whirlwind. At a time when most Native Americans had lost the knowledge of their traditional crafts, the Laubins sought out Native American elders to learn their skills before they were lost forever.

***e Complete Yurt Handbook,* by Paul King.** 2001, 121 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1899233083. Published by Eco-Logic Books, Mulberry House, Maple Grove, Bath BA2 3AF, England. List price $23.95

If you want to know how to make your own yurt (portable Mongolian round house), then this is the book to get. It was written by a master yurt builder, who has also taught many courses on yurt building and traveled to Mongolia while researching this book. This beautiful little book is clear, well illustrated, and to the point.

Mold

ıe Homeowner's Guide to Mold, **by Michael Pugliese, C.M.R., C.M.T.** 2006, 144 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0876298213. Published by RS Means Company, Reed Construction Data, 63 Smiths Lane, Kingston, MA 02364. List price $21.95

This book will tell you what you need to know about mold prevention and mold cleanup. Pugliese advises the reader as to which kinds of projects can be safely tackled as a do-it-yourself project and when to call in a certified mold remediation contractor. The author has spent thousands of hours successfully cleaning up moldcontaminated buildings, often after another contractor was hired first who did not do the job correctly. His projects include both residential and large commercial accounts, such as Wachovia Bank, Old Navy, and ReMax Realty. The book includes a list of resources for mold remediation supplies and materials.

ıvironmentally Friendly Mold Remediation Techniques That Significantly Reduce Childhood Asthma, **by Gary Rosen, Ph.D.** 2007, 160 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0979495663. Published by Hope Academic Press, Tampa, FL. List price $14.95

By the time most people find that they have a mold problem and are considering how to deal with it (mold remediation), they usually are already suffering from mold-related health issues. Many mold remediators use toxic-mold-killing chemicals that leave a lasting toxic effect to keep on killing mold over an extended period of time. Unfortunately, most chemicals that kill mold will also have a toxic effect on humans, which is the last thing people suffering from a compromised immune system need. Use this book to design your own smallscale, do-it-yourself, environmentally friendly, healthyhome mold remediation program, or to ensure that for more serious jobs the quality mold remediator you hire does the job correctly.

Magazines

ıvironmental Building News. Subscription: $99.00 for 12 issues. BuildingGreen, Inc., 122 Birge St. Ste 30, Brattleboro, VT 05301. Call (802) 257-7300, ext. 105 or see their Web site at www.buildinggreen.com.

Environmental Building News (*EBN*) is a monthly newsletter featuring comprehensive, practical information on a wide range of topics related to sustainable building—from energy efficiency and recycled-content materials to land-use planning and indoor air quality. *EBN* keeps its readers on the cutting edge of green building with reliable, up-to-date information on the diverse and complex issues relating to the impact of buildings on the environment—and what to do about it.

ıtural Home. Subscription: $19.95 for 6 issues. Natural Home, Ogden Publications, 1503 SW 42nd St., Topeka, KS 66609. Call (800) 340-5846 or see their Web site at www.naturalhomemagazine.com.

Natural Home is a magazine focused on bringing earth-friendly, healthy, harmonious homes into mainstream America. Each issue delivers cutting-edge ideas on home building, design, remodeling, and decorating with additional tips for the kitchen, garden, yard, and personal health.

ıe Last Straw. Subscription: $32 for 4 issues plus their annual resource guide. The Last Straw,

P.O. Box 22706, Lincoln, NE 68542. Call (402) 483-5135 or see their Web site at www.thelaststraw.org.

The *Last Straw* is the grassroots journal of straw bale and natural building, providing up-to-date information on construction techniques, projects, research/testing/ code issues, resources, and other information written by and about those who design, build, research, and live in straw bale and natural buildings. The focus is on the owner-builder and straw bale contractor. Check out their large online resource guide.

RESOURCES

Green Building and Energy Efficiency

ɔcky Mountain Institute (RMI), 1739 Snowmass Creek Road, Snowmass, CO 81654-9199; phone: (970) 927-3851; fax: (970) 927-3420; Web site: www.rmi.org.

Since 1982, Rocky Mountain Institute has worked with corporations, communities, and citizens to help them gain competitive advantages, increase profits, and create a higher standard of living through resource efficiency. In 1991, RMI launched Green Development Services (GDS) to help architects, developers, and other real estate professionals to integrate energyefficient and environmentally responsible design into specific projects. GDS has demonstrated significant opportunities for improving the comfort, aesthetics, resource efficiency, and value of properties while reducing pollution and saving money.

ıstainable Buildings Industry Council (SBIC), 1112 16th Street, NW, Suite 1000, Suite 240, Washington, DC 20036; phone: (202) 628-7400; fax: (202) 393-5043; Web site: www.sbicouncil.org.

The Sustainable Buildings Industry Council (SBIC), previously known as the Passive Solar Industries Council, is an independent, nonprofit organization whose mission is to advance the design, affordability, energy performance, and environmental soundness of residential, institutional, and commercial buildings. Check out the Web site for a fine introduction to green building principles. They also produce SBIC's *Green Building Guidelines*.

ıilding Green, Inc., 122 Birge St. Ste 30, Brattleboro, VT 05301; phone: (802) 257-7300, ext.105; fax: (802) 257-7304; Web site: www.buildinggreen.com.

This organization publishes the leading newsletter on environmentally responsible (green) design and construction. Many green building professionals use the *Environmental Building News* articles, reviews, and stories as their primary source for the latest information on energy-efficient, resource-efficient, and healthy building practices. They publish the *GreenSpec Building Guide to Residential Building Materials*, a comprehensive and up-to-date guide that provides easy access to information on green building products and materials (see the references in this chapter). They also produce the BuildingGreenSuite of online tools. Check out their Web site for green building definitions, articles, information, online tools, and links.

ɨnter for Maximum Potential Building Systems, 8604 F.M. 969, Austin, TX 78724; phone:

(512) 928-4786; fax: (512) 926-4418; Web site: www.cmpbs.org.

This organization is well known for its development and promotion of green building technologies. The Center for Maximum Potential Building Systems ("Max's Pot") is a nonprofit education, demonstration, and research organization with many years of experience in the application of appropriate technologies and sustainable design practices to meet the needs of a broad range of users, from individual homebuilders to regional planning and natural resource agencies. The center has helped to develop several interesting green building technologies. Check the Web site for numerous downloadable publications on a wide variety of green building topics and links to other green sites.

ıergy Efficient Building Association (EEBA), 6520 Edenvale Blvd., Suite 112, Eden Prairie, MN 55346; phone: (952) 881-1098; fax: (952) 881-3048; Web site: www.eeba.org.

The Energy Efficient Building Association promotes the awareness, education, and development of energyefficient, environmentally responsible buildings and communities. The strength of the organization lies in the diversity and talent of its membership, which includes architects, builders, developers, manufacturers, engineers, utilities, code officials, researchers, educators, and environmentalists. The EEBA's *Builder's Guides* to cold, hot, dry, and humid climates provide up-to-date professional advice on optimum building techniques for a variety of climates and are highly praised by industry professionals. The EEBA has an excellent online builder's bookstore, which includes energy analysis software, videos, and a variety of builder's guides.

ıe Healthy House Institute, 13998 West Hartford Drive, Boise, ID 83713; phone: (208) 938-3137; fax: (208) 938-3138; Web site: www.healthyhouseinstitute.com.

This organization is dedicated to providing information that will help you to avoid indoor toxic air problems, identify indoor environmental health risks, and remedy these problems. For a wealth of information on these topics, check out the Institute's Web site and bookstore.

Earth-Based Buildings

ıuthwest Solar Adobe School, P.O. Box 153, Bosque, NM 87006; phone: (505) 861-1255; fax: (505) 861-1304; Web site: www.adobebuilder.com.

Founded by Joe Tibbets, a well-known adobe and rammed earth educator/publisher with over 30 years of earth-building experience, this school provides classes in a variety of modern earth-building skills to both owner-builders and contractors. They offer a free e-newsletter and still sell copies of their old issues of *Adobe Builder*, which has excellent articles on the state of the art in earth buildings.

ıst Earth, Harris Lowenhaupt, 4022 E. Larkspur, Phoenix, AZ 85032; phone: (602) 404-1044; fax: (602) 404-1134; Web site: www.castearth.com.

Cast earth uses gypsum and a proprietary retardant to stabilize earth mixtures and reduce shrinkage, allowing for the use of current concrete industry labor-saving machinery, forms, and techniques to make walls of cast earth. Check out their Web site for a comprehensive introduction to the cast earth process, including numerous photos of projects plus links to

contractors building with cast earth. This patented process is not owner-builder friendly.

Other Green Building Systems

Smart Structures, Inc., Jim Bolton, Reno, NV; phone: (775) 742-0360; Web site: www.3dsmartstructures.com.

An excellent source for SCIPs (structural concrete insulated panels, also known as 3D panels or Tridipanels) and related information/engineering. They can help you with all the details, engineering, materials, batch mix recipes, subcontractors, and so on needed to start building with SCIPs. The company also distributes Kalmatron (a revolutionary coldweather concrete admixture) and LifeTime Lumber (a high fly ash, fire-resistant, LEED-approved decking material).

mboo Technologies, P.O. Box 1238, Haiku, HI 96708; phone: (808) 572-1007; fax: (808) 573-4855; Web site: www.bambootechnologies.com and www.bambooliving.com.

If exotic homes built with sustainably forested bamboo and looking like a scene from a Balinese village strike your imagination, then you should check out the prefabricated building kits from Bamboo Technologies. No longer just for tropical climates, there are now insulated versions for colder zones. After nearly 10 years of research and testing, Bamboo Technologies was able to receive International Building Code (IBC) and Universal Building Code (UBC) approval for their structural bamboo poles. Their buildings are engineered to withstand severe hurricanes and earthquakes and have passed the test of nature at an eco-resort in Rarotonga, where they survived three hurricanes that destroyed many of the surrounding buildings. Fascinating Web site.

tter Building Systems, Inc., 563 Idaho-Maryland Road, Grass Valley, CA 95945; phone: (530) 477-8017; fax: (530) 477-1218; Web site: www.betterbuilding.com.

good source for SIPs (structural insulated panels) and the engineering, architectural design, hands-on workshops, and experienced advice to help you get started building with SIPs.

ructures NW, LLC, 15206 NW 29th Court, Vancouver, WA 98685; phone: (360) 576-6311; fax: (360) 397-7105; Web site: www.structuresnw.com.

Another good source for SIPs, building plans, engineering, and experienced assistance to get you started building with SIPs.

Traditional Timber Structures

mber Framers Guild of North America, Timber Framers Guild Office, P.O. Box 60, Becket, MA 01223; phone\fax: (888) 453-0879; Web site: www.tfguild.org.

Timber framing is the traditional art of making building structures with large timbers and a minimum of modern fasteners. Check out the Web site for information on finding local timber

framers, historical timber framing, timber-framing events, a bookstore with quite a variety of books on timber-frame construction, green building, and links to related sites.

hroeder Log Home Supply, P.O. Box 864, 1101 SE 7th Ave., Grand Rapids, MN 55744; phone: (800) 359-6614; fax: (800) 755-3249; Web site: www.loghelp.com.

This company has a great selection of books, tools, sealants, and so forth for timber framing and log home building. Their excellent selection of builder's books extends to all facets of home building, masonry, and furniture making.

:artwood, Johnson Hill Road, Washington, MA 01223; phone: (413) 623-6677; fax: (413) 623-0277; Web site: www.heartwoodschool.com.

Run by Will and Michelle Beemer, this is an excellent hands-on school for timber-frame construction, energy-efficient homebuilding and design, cabinetry, furniture building, and finish carpentry. Will is the executive director of the Timber Framers Guild and has taught timber-framing workshops worldwide since the late 1970s.

›cky Mountain Workshops, 505 N. Grant, Fort Collins, CO 80521; phone: (970) 482-1366; Web site: www.rockymountainworkshops.com.

Rocky Mountain Workshops offer great hands-on classes in a breathtaking mountain setting. Peter Haney teams up with renowned builders, architects, and designers (such as Robert Chambers, Will Beemer, and Catherine Cartrette) to create a series of log-building, timber-framing, and design workshops.

›x Maple School of Traditional Building, 65 Corn Hill Road, P.O. Box 249, Brownfield, ME 04010; phone: (207) 935-3720; fax: (207) 935-4575; Web site: www.foxmaple.com.

The Fox Maple School of Traditional Building provides hands-on workshops teaching traditional, natural, and sustainable building systems. Workshops begin with a joined timber frame, and then explore the use of natural enclosures such as straw/clay, woodchip/ clay, wattle and daub, cob, and straw bales finished with earth plasters. The school's mission is to explore ways to make traditional systems practical to create highquality dwellings that meet current building needs. Fox Maple publishes the excellent *Joiner's Quarterly*, which offers insightful, technical articles about how to use traditional timber framing, combined with natural building systems, for building planet-friendly housing that will last for many generations.

Ready-Made Structures

ıcific Yurts, Inc., 77456 Hwy 99 South, Cottage Grove, OR 97424; phone: (800) 944-0240; fax: (541) 942-9435; Web site: www.yurts.com.

"The best, most satisfying space I've ever lived in."

—Gillian C., Vermont

Pacific Yurts, the original designer and manufacturer of the modern lattice-wall yurt, makes high-quality, four-season yurts certified for up to 100 pounds per square foot snow loads and 100-mph winds. Their products are comfortable, strong, durable, and weather-tight. Easily

erected, yurts can be transported in the back of a pickup truck, are nondestructive to delicate ecosystems, and can be adapted to a variety of conventional and alternative energy and water/waste technologies. Yurts make a wonderful camp, low-cost home, studio, guest cottage, or backup shelter in case of earthquakes. Check out the Web site for pictures of these durable, round, timber-framed, tent-like structures based on the traditional nomadic Mongolian round home.

›madics Tipi Makers, 17671 Snow Creek Road, Bend OR 97701; phone/fax: (541) 389-3980; Web site:

vw.tipi.com.

This is the largest manufacturer in the world of tipis and tipi accessories. Their standard tipis and tipi liners are made from treated marine cotton duck canvas, but they can custom-make tipis from other materials. Designs are based on the Laubins' designs as illustrated in their book, *The Indian Tipi*. Nomadics made all the leather tipis for the movie *Dances With Wolves*, starring Kevin Costner.

ıelterLogic, 150 Callendar Road, Watertown, CT 06795; phone (800) 932-9344; fax: (860) 274-9302; Web site: www.cover-it-inc.com.

ShelterLogic manufactures a multitude of different sizes and shapes of instant greenhouses, carports, barns, sheds, airplane hangars, and so on.

Miscellaneous

'eparedness Now, P.O. Box 207, Collins, MO 64738; phone: (417) 275-4371; fax: (417) 275-4371; Web site:www.preparednessnow.com.

A good source for Heartland Microbe's mold-eating microbes for mold removal and remediation.

ıe National Information Service for Earthquake Engineering (NISEE), 1301 S. 46th St., Richmond, CA 94804-4698; phone: (510) 231-9403; fax: (510) 231-9461; Web site: www.eerc.berkeley.edu.

This Web site is a great place to start an investigation into earthquakes and their impact on buildings and design. This site contains many links to other related sites as well as numerous educational articles and papers.

artRemodeling.com, phone: (281) 493-1822; Web site: www.startremodeling.com.

A good source for Moldzyme mold and mildew remover, plus other mold-related products and information.

8

First Aid

When I approached the accident scene, I found a ring of bystanders encircling an unconscious mountain bicyclist. Even though she was wearing a helmet, she had suffered a severe head wound. The accident victim was bleeding from the mouth and, from the distorted look of her forehead, it seemed certain that she had fractured her skull. I announced that I knew first aid and asked if I could help. The victim was unconscious and was attended by an older gentleman and woman. They motioned for me to join them and said that someone had already been sent to call for an ambulance. The older gentleman knelt by her head while I took the victim's pulse every minute. From talking to my two "assistants," I found that one was a doctor and the other a nurse. When the victim started gurgling and choking on the blood filling her mouth, I had to ask the doctor to "open her airway." It seemed pretty absurd for me to be giving directions to someone who was obviously more medically qualified than I. Perhaps because he was a doctor and was aware of the potential for a spinal injury, he did not want to risk the liability of touching her neck. But if a victim stops breathing and dies, the risk of a neck injury is definitely the lesser concern. When the ambulance arrived, the doctor quickly and quietly slipped away. The victim was still breathing and had a moderately strong pulse. Had we not intervened, she probably would have suffocated.

I can't emphasize strongly enough the value of basic firstaid training. You never know when you might face an emergency situation where the knowledge of first aid could make a huge difference in someone's life. This chapter is not intended to replace a first-aid manual and first-aid training. I recommend that you pick up a copy of the *Red Cross First Aid and Safety Handbook* and that you take the Red Cross advanced first-aid course. I believe that every able-bodied adult should take CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) training, or a more advanced training, such as for emergency medical technician (EMT) certification.

A few basic first-aid principles and instructions are presented in this chapter in the event that you find yourself in an emergency and this book is the only text you have. I repeat: *This chapter is not a first-aid manual*.

INITIAL EVALUATION

Survey the Scene

The very first thing to evaluate in an emergency is your safety. As a rescuer, it does you and the victim little good if you are injured or killed during the rescue. Assess potential dangers, such as oncoming traffic, rockfall, live downed power lines, poisonous or flammable fumes, and so on, and take adequate precautions to ensure the safety of both rescuers and victim. The general rule is to move a victim only if you absolutely have to. Ask the bystanders or victim(s) what happened.

The ABCs of first aid are airway, breathing, and circulation. If any of these fail, death is certain. *Call for help immediately!* Feel free to ask bystanders for assistance, and don't hesitate to send one of them off to call 911 for emergency medical services (EMS) while you attend to the victim.

In the case of multiple victims, quickly evaluate the status of each victim to determine where to expend your efforts and resources first. Life-threatening injuries require immediate attention, whereas less critical injuries may be able to wait. If someone is obviously fatally injured, spend your time on another victim who might benefit from your efforts, but even when things look terrible, try not to give up. Hypothermic and cold water drowning victims have been revived after unbelievably long periods of time (hours, not just minutes), and many accident victims have been kept alive for hours using CPR.

Eddie Paul told me the following story about his "youth": On a viciously windy day, Eddie was dumped out of his hang glider by a sudden gust of wind. He free-fell 360 feet onto solid ground. (Even though this sounds unbelievable, it was all captured on film.) Two paramedics, who were watching the hang gliders during their lunch break, rushed to Eddie's side. Minutes later, when Eddie regained consciousness, he was surrounded by the paramedics and a group of concerned bystanders. He had broken many bones and suffered serious internal injuries, but still managed to crack a joke, saying, "I suppose you wonder why I gathered all of you here today." The paramedics loaded his swollen and bleeding body into their ambulance and rushed him off to the hospital. At the first hospital they reached, an emergency room doctor told them, "Get the hell out of here. He's going to die anyway. We're too busy to deal with him." Luckily, the medics did not give up, but rushed Eddie to another hospital. Eddie was kept alive with six pints of blood transfusions that replaced the blood he had lost due to internal bleeding. Amazingly, after a long recovery period, Eddie regained full use of his limbs and went on to become a Hollywood stuntman.

Consent and Liability

When approaching an accident victim, shout for help, and then identify yourself, quickly explaining that you know first aid and that you are there to help. It can happen that a person just looks like they need help, but may be drunk or simply resting in an unnatural-looking position. Sticking to these procedures can save you embarrassment, justifiable outrage, or a hard fist in the

face.

> **NOTE: If the victim is aware and mentally capable, you must receive his or her consent before you begin treatment. For minors (under 18), obtain the permission of the guardian. If a parent or guardian is not available, the law says that you have "implied consent," meaning that it is assumed the parents would have wanted you to help their child had they been present.**

If the victim is conscious and aware, talk to him or her about the extent of the injuries before proceeding. Use your judgment, but always try to do no further harm. For example, using CPR on an injured person whose heart is still beating could cause serious injury, but if the heart is not beating, CPR is probably the victim's only chance for survival. Nearly all states have Good Samaritan laws to protect lay citizens from liability, as long as they did not do something grossly negligent or deliberately harmful.

ABCS OF FIRST AID

Treatment of the trauma victim starts with the ABCs: *airway, breathing, and circulation*. If any of these fail, the victim is in a life-or-death situation and intervention is essential.

- *Airway*: The air passage must be clear of fluids and obstructions so the victim can breathe.
- *Breathing*: To survive, a person must breathe.
- *Circulation*: The blood must circulate for the victim to survive for more than a few minutes. There must be a pulse and severe bleeding must be stopped.

Treatment Priority

Assess the situation and move yourself and the victim(s) out of danger if necessary. Use the following priority list to determine what and whom to treat first.

1. Restore and maintain breathing and heartbeat. Without these, death is certain and quick.
2. Stop the bleeding.
3. Protect wounds and burns.
4. Immobilize fractures.
5. Treat shock.

Unconscious Victim

Follow this sequence to evaluate an unconscious victim's ABCs:

1. **Shake and shout.** Check for consciousness. Tap or gently shake the victim. Ask, "Are you OK?" If not OK, shout for help.

2. **Check for neck or back injury.** If you suspect a neck or back injury, try to evaluate the ABCs without moving the victim. Moving a person with a spinal injury always entails a risk of severing the spine.
3. **Position the victim.** If you do not suspect a spinal injury, carefully roll the victim onto his or her back. Grasp the shoulder and hip, supporting the neck and head as well as you can, while you try to roll the body as a unit.
4. **Open the airway.** Use the "head tilt/chin lift" technique. Place one hand on the victim's forehead and two fingers under the bony part of the chin. Lift the chin and push on the forehead to tilt the head back.

   CAUTION: If a spinal injury is suspected, open the airway with a chin lift only. Do not tilt the head, unless absolutely necessary.

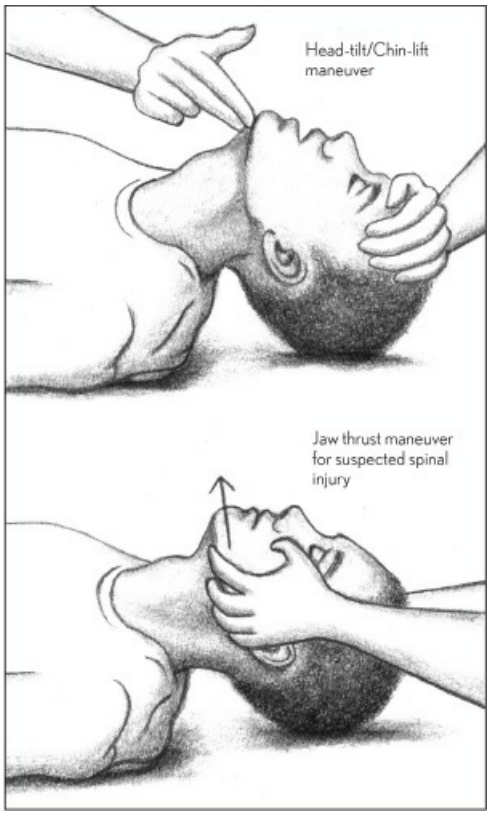


Figure 8-1. Head tilt/chin lift procedure for opening airway.

5. **Look, listen, and feel for breathing.** Watch the chest to see whether it is rising and falling. Place your ear beside the victim's mouth to listen for the sounds of breathing and feel for breath against your cheek. Chest movement alone does not mean there is breathing.
6. **If the victim is breathing.** Check for bleeding and continue your evaluation.
7. **If the victim is not breathing.** Give two rescue breaths (mouth-to-mouth resuscitation) by pinching the victim's nostrils, taking a deep breath, sealing your lips around the victim's mouth, and giving two full breaths. In the case of a small child, it may be easiest to cover both the nose and mouth with your lips. If the breaths do not raise the chest, tilt

the head back further and try two more rescue breaths. If the chest does not rise, sweep your finger through the victim's mouth, lift the chin, and tilt the head further back before trying two more rescue breaths. If the head tilt and finger sweep does not clear the airway, begin abdominal thrusts (Heimlich maneuver) to try and dislodge whatever is blocking the airway.

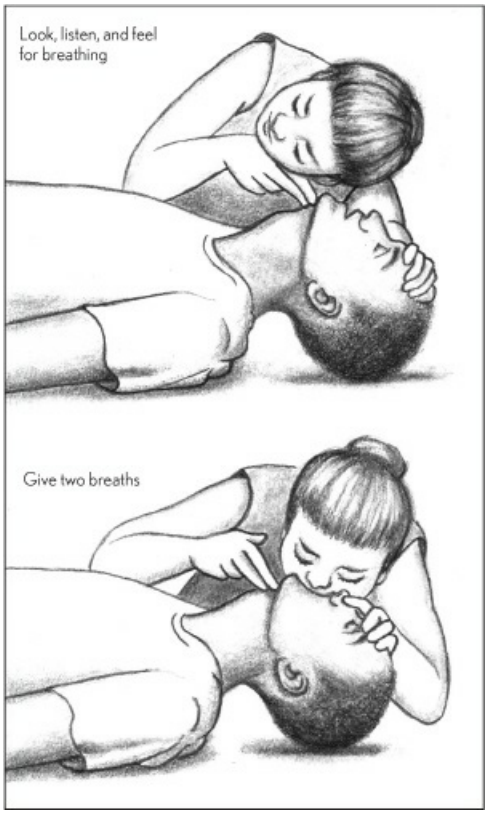


Figure 8-2. Rescue breathing.

8. **Check the circulation.** Put your index and middle fingers over the windpipe, and slide them down alongside the neck muscle; feel between the windpipe and the neck muscle for a pulse. Check for a pulse for 5 to 10 seconds. *If the victim has no pulse, begin CPR*. If there is severe bleeding, it must be controlled. If there is a pulse, but no breathing, continue rescue breathing.
9. **If the victim has a pulse and is breathing.** Continue monitoring ABCs and give first aid for other injuries or illness.
10. **If the victim has a pulse but is not breathing.** Continue with rescue breathing, giving one breath every 5 seconds and checking for a pulse once each minute (every 12 breaths). Continue until the patient recovers, you are relieved by EMS, or until too exhausted to continue.

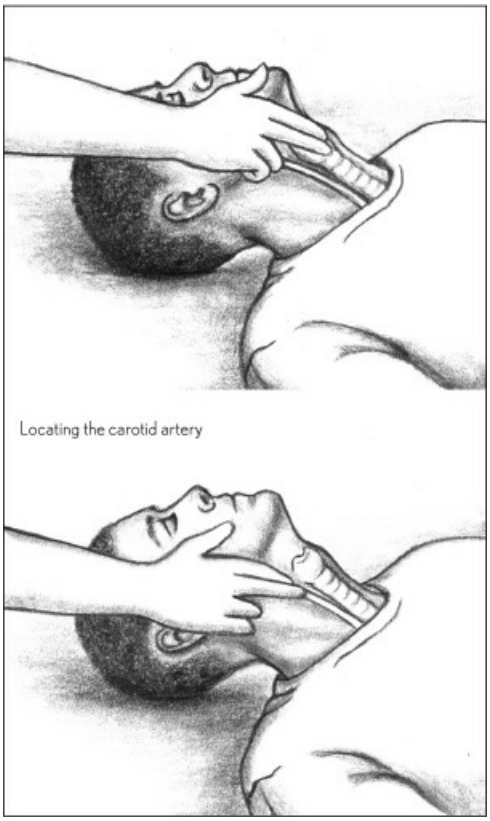


Figure 8-3. Checking for pulse at the carotid artery.

11. **The recovery position.** If an unconscious victim is breathing and has a pulse and no spinal injury, the safest position is the recovery position. Unconscious victims have little or no control over their muscles and can easily choke on their tongue, vomit, or other fluids. Roll the victim onto his or her side and toward the front, bending and propping one arm and one leg to prevent the person from lying face down. Keep the head tilted down and to the side, allowing fluids to drain, and open the jaw to inspect the mouth to be sure that the tongue is lying flat and not against the back of the throat. Loosen tight clothing.

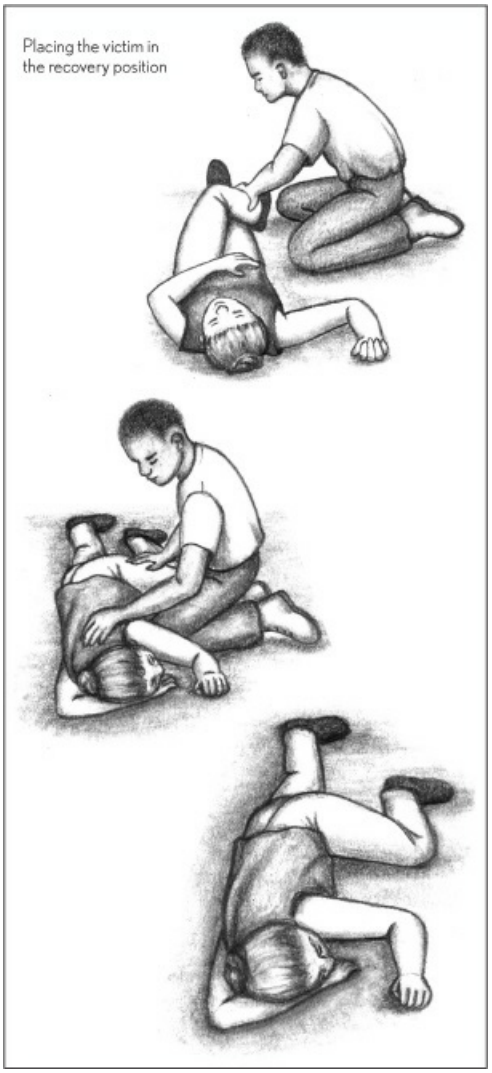


Figure 8-4. The recovery position.

Remember

- Never lay an unconscious victim flat on his or her back, except to begin CPR or rescue breathing.
- Never give fluids to an unconscious victim.
- Never tilt an unconscious victim's head forward with a pillow.

CPR

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) is one of those things you hope that you never have to use. When the heart stops, CPR may be the only thing that can prevent death. To properly learn CPR, you must take a course from a certified instructor using a CPR demonstration dummy. Too much force will break ribs or cause other serious internal injuries, while too little force will be insufficient to pump the blood through the victim's heart. The CPR dummy gives feedback to help you get a feel for the proper timing, head tilt, and the amount of force to apply for CPR

compressions. Do yourself and your loved ones a favor: get yourself certified in CPR by the American Heart Association or American Red Cross. A summary of the procedure for CPR is included for your reference.

> **CAUTION: Do not attempt CPR solely on the basis of these guidelines (without proper training) unless no CPR-trained person is present and the victim has no pulse—in other words, unless there is no alternative. For a more detailed description of the first five steps, see the previous procedures for "Unconscious Victim."**

1. **Shake gently and ask, "Are you OK?"**
2. **If there is no response, shout for help.**
3. **Position the victim.** Roll the victim onto his or her back on a firm, flat surface. Roll the body as a unit, supporting the head and neck. Try to keep the head at the same level as the heart.
4. **Position yourself.** Kneel next to the victim, halfway between the chest and head.
5. **Check the ABCs:**
   - Open the airway. Use the "head-tilt/chin-lift" technique.
   - Breathing. Kneel alongside the victim and check to see whether he or she is breathing. Look, listen, and feel for signs of breathing.
   - Circulation. Use one hand to keep the head tilted. With the fingers of the other hand (not the thumb), feel between the windpipe and the neck muscle for a pulse at the carotid artery. Check for 5 to 10 seconds. If the victim has no pulse, begin CPR. *Time is critical!*
6. **Call EMS.** If possible, send someone else to call EMS (emergency medical services). Alert EMS to the status of the ABCs.
7. **Position your hands.** Using your fingers, locate the notch at the bottom of the ribs where they join the sternum (breastbone), a few inches straight above the belly button. Place your index finger on the notch and your middle finger right above it. Using your middle finger and index fingers as a spacer, place the heel of your hand two fingers above the notch, at the center of the breastbone. Remove your two fingers from above the notch, and place the palm of this hand on top of the one on the breastbone.
8. **Chest compressions.** With arms straight and shoulders directly over your hands, lock your elbows and lean over the victim to use your body weight to compress the victim's breastbone 1½ to 2 inches. Keep your fingers raised to compress the breastbone and not the ribs. Compress the chest at a rate of 80 to 100 compressions per minute, stopping every 15 compressions to open the airway and give two rescue breaths. Count out loud with each compression so you do not lose track of the number. Release the pressure, but do not lift your hands between compressions or otherwise allow your hand position to shift. Don't let the heel of your hand slide down over the tip of the breastbone, and keep your fingers away from the chest.

> **CAUTION: Excessively forceful or misplaced compressions can cause fractures and injuries to internal organs.**

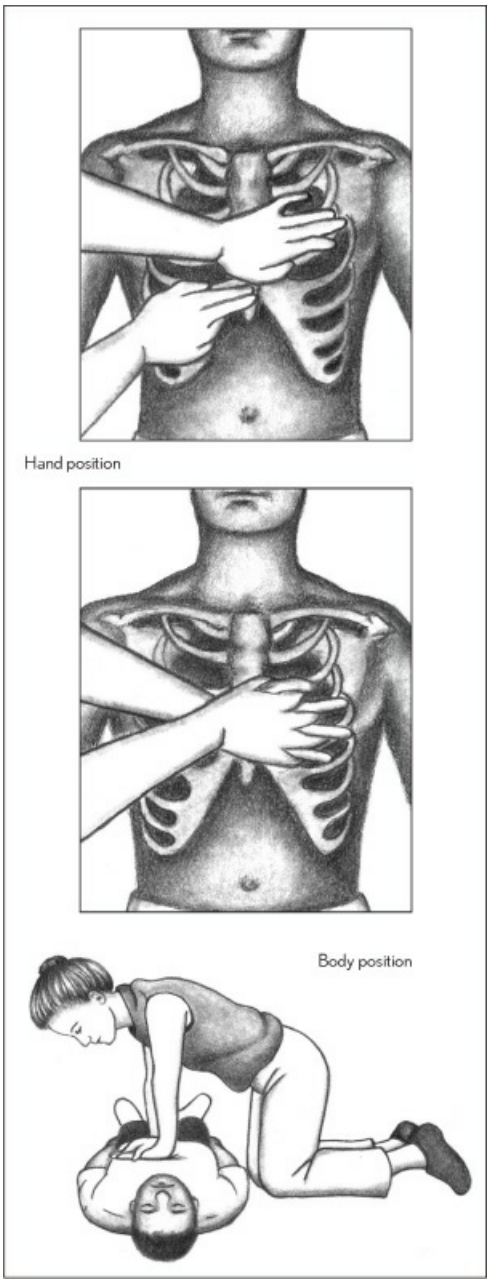


Figure 8-5. CPR position.

Special instructions for children and babies.

Babies require very little force. Use light pressure with two fingers at about 100 times per minute. Small children will usually only require medium pressure from the heel of one hand, not two as used for adults. Use cycles of one breath and five compressions for 10 cycles between pulse checks. Depress the child's breast 1 to 1½ inches per compression. Compress an infant's chest only ½ to 1 inch per compression.

9. **Two rescue breaths.** Use head tilt/chin lift to open the airway, then give two rescue breaths, watching to make sure that the chest rises with each breath.
10. **Four cycles, then check.** Use the two-finger technique to reposition your hands with each set

of compressions. Recheck the pulse after every four sets of 15 compressions and two rescue breaths.

11. **If the victim regains a pulse and is breathing.** Continue to monitor ABCs, while checking for and treating other injuries.
12. **If the victim regains a pulse but is not breathing.** Continue rescue breathing at the rate of one breath every 5 seconds. Listen for breathing and recheck pulse every 12 breaths (count out loud between breaths).
13. **If the victim has no pulse, continue CPR until:**
    - Breathing and pulse return.
    - The rescuers are exhausted.
    - The rescuers are in danger.
    - The victim fails to respond to prolonged resuscitation (how you define "prolonged" depends on the circumstances; prolonged CPR is most likely to be successful in hypothermia cases).
    - The rescuers are relieved by medical professionals.

CPR is not magic. There are situations in which it should *not* be attempted, including:

- A lethal injury (death is obvious).
- A dangerous setting in which rescuers' lives are in danger.
- Chest compressions are impossible, such as in cases where the chest is frozen or crushed.
- When there is any sign of life (breathing, heartbeat, pulse, movement).
- The victim has stated, in writing, that he or she does not want to be resuscitated.

SURVEY FOR INJURIES AND TO CONTROL BLEEDING

Do a quick head-to-toe survey for wounds and fractures. Try to control bleeding by applying direct pressure to wounds with any bulky, clean material—use your shirt if nothing else is handy. Use the cleanest material available to reduce the chance of infection, but stopping severe bleeding is far more important than worrying about infection. Elevate the wounded limb to reduce the blood pressure to the wound. Do not change dressings if blood soaked, but add new dressings on top of old ones. Tie dressings in place with strips of cloth or roll bandages to maintain pressure. Bright red blood spurting from a wound is arterial. Oozing, dark blood is probably from a vein. Arterial bleeding, especially from the scalp, neck, groin, or shoulder, can be difficult to control and can rapidly lead to life-threatening shock. If direct pressure and elevation are not enough to stop the bleeding, add pressure-point techniques to help control severe bleeding.

Pressure Points

Arm

For arm injuries, the pressure point (for the brachial artery) is located on the inside of the arm, halfway between the elbow and the shoulder, between the upper muscle (biceps) and the lower muscle (triceps). Cup your hand around the arm, applying firm pressure with all four fingers and squeezing the artery against the arm bone.

Leg

For severe bleeding from an open leg wound, apply pressure on the femoral artery, forcing it against the pelvic bone. This pressure point is on the front of the thigh just below the middle of the crease of the groin where the artery crosses over the pelvic bone on its way to the leg. To apply pressure on the femoral artery, quickly place the victim on his or her back and put the heel of your hand directly over the pressure point. Then lean forward over your straightened arm to apply pressure against the underlying bone. Apply pressure as needed to close the artery. Keep your arm straight to prevent arm tension and muscular strain. If bleeding is not controlled, it may be necessary to compress directly over the artery with the flat of the fingertips and to apply additional pressure over the fingertips with the heel of the other hand. Alternately, to control severe bleeding from a leg wound, push your fist into the abdomen at the level of the navel and press firmly. This compresses the aorta against the spinal column and will control the flow of blood into the legs while you apply a bulky bandage.

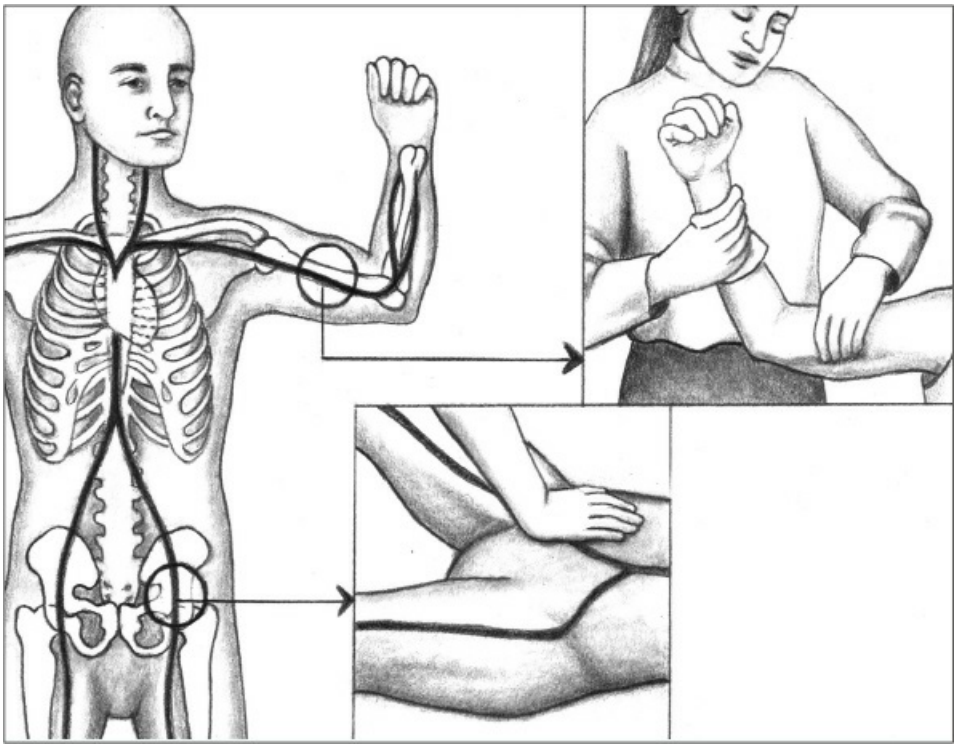


Figure 8-6. Arm and leg pressure points.

Tourniquets

If there is a detectable pulse, severe bleeding must be controlled, but *tourniquets are dangerous and should be used only as a last resort*. Don't use one unless you are willing to write off the limb to save the victim. The only acceptable positions for tourniquets are around the upper arm, just below the armpit, and around the upper thigh. Tourniquets should be made from material that is at least 2 inches wide. If string or wire is used, the tourniquet must be padded with a strip of heavy material. If a tourniquet has been applied, loosen the tourniquet every 20 minutes to allow some circulation to the limb (only if this won't cause too much blood loss). Tourniquets should always remain visible, never covered by dressings, blankets, and so on. If a tourniquet is applied, the fingers or toes on the appropriate limb should remain uncovered to allow for visual inspection for discoloration and swelling.

WOUNDS

The danger of infection is always present with any wound. Soap is antiseptic, and it will help to reduce the chance of infection if a wound is washed with soap and clean water. Fresh urine is almost always sterile, and can be used to cleanse a wound in the absence of clean water. Antiseptics are handy to reduce the chance of infection, but will cause further tissue damage if used inside deep wounds. Honey is mildly antibacterial and has been used for thousands of years to prevent infection and speed the healing of battlefield wounds. Silver is also antibacterial and will not harm human tissue.

Abrasions

The main danger from abrasions is the possibility of infection. Clean the wound with soap and antiseptic and cover with a clean dressing. Wash hands in sterile water, and boil nonsterile dressings to sterilize.

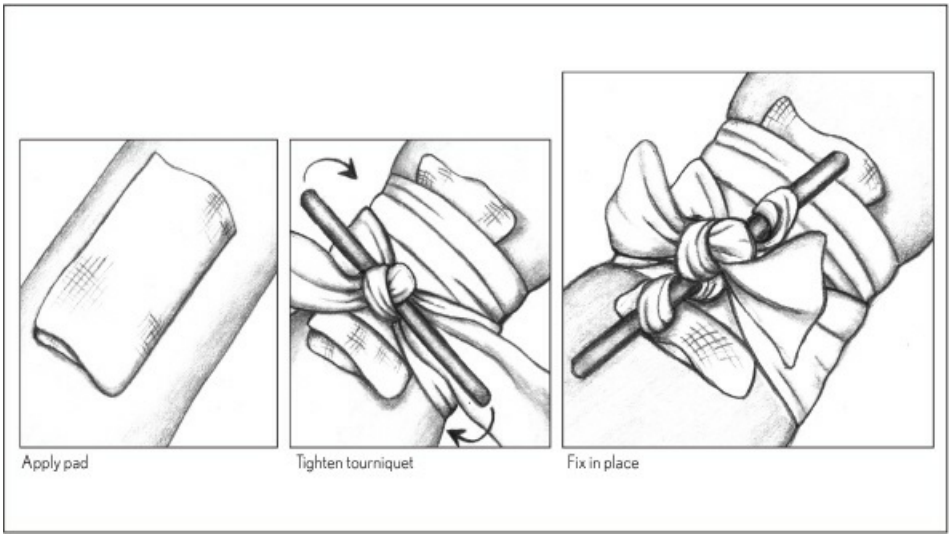


Figure 8-7. Tourniquet application.

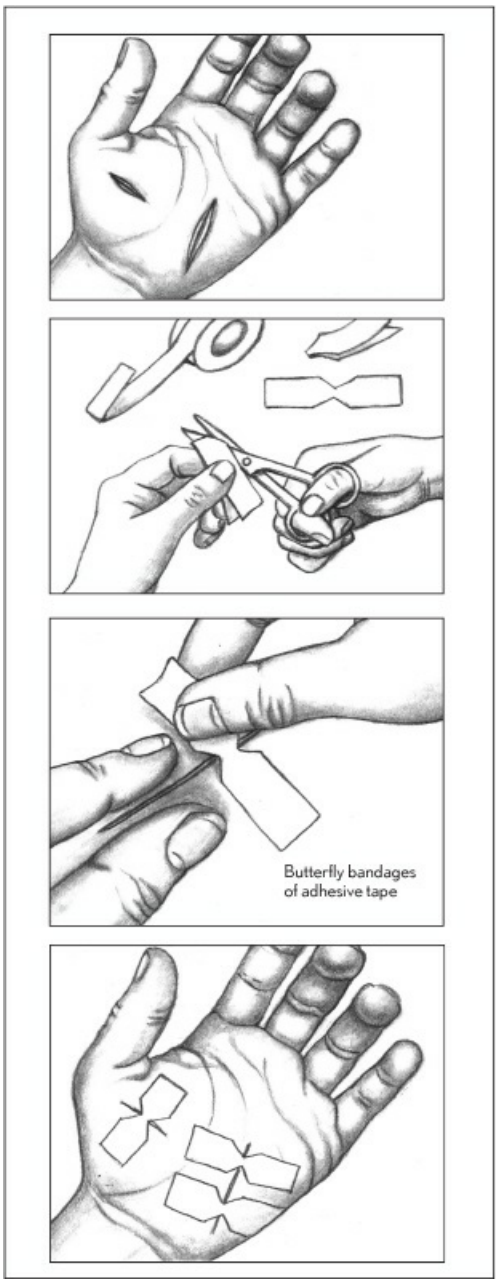


Figure 8-8. Closing wounds with butterfly bandages.

Incisions

Incisions, or cuts, generally bleed enough to clean the wound, and are not as prone to infection as abrasions. Minor wounds can be closed with butterfly bandages or stitches (sutures).

If a wound gets infected, it may be necessary to undo some of the stitches or lance the wound to allow it to drain. To stitch a wound, use only a sterilized needle and thread. Draw the edges of the wound together and begin stitching at the center of the wound. Tie off each stitch

individually, before moving on to the next stitch.

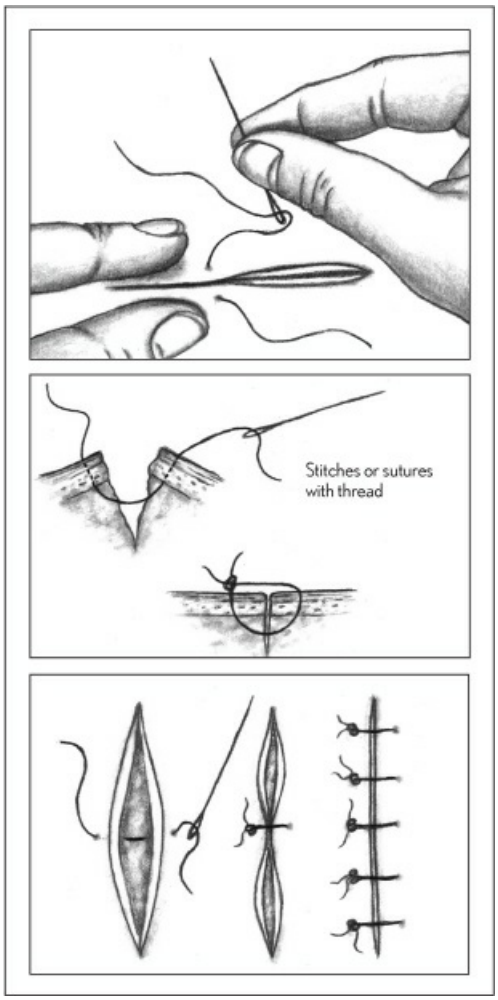


Figure 8-9. Suturing a wound.

When I was a teenager, I gashed my lip into my teeth while ski jumping. The doctor told me that the shot of anesthetic would probably hurt more than stitching up my lip without anesthesia. He assured me that he could give me anesthesia at any time if the procedure was too painful. To my amazement, he proceeded to stitch my lip without any anesthesia, and it truly didn't hurt much!

Puncture Wounds

Because puncture wounds generally do not bleed enough to flush out dirt and germs, they are prone to infection and should be watched carefully for signs of infection (tenderness, red puffy swelling, discharge with pus, fever). If available, emergency medical personnel should remove

foreign material and treat all deep puncture wounds.

Abdominal Wounds

Any deep abdominal wound should be considered serious due to the potential for significant injury to internal organs and internal bleeding. Give no food or water, unless it takes longer than two days to reach medical care. Allay thirst with a damp cloth in the mouth (use IV for fluids, if available). Do not try to stuff bowels back inside the abdominal cavity, but cover with cloths soaked in lightly salted, boiled water. Make sure that you keep cloth coverings moist. Seek immediate medical attention.

WARNING: Do not give an enema or purge, because this may cause death.

Head Wounds

> In the town I used to live in, a little girl hit her head while playing on a slide in a local park. She went home complaining of a severe headache and went to bed early. To her parents' horror, she never woke up.

Minor head wounds often bleed a lot and look more serious than they are, but all significant head wounds should be examined carefully due to the potential for injuries to the brain. Injuries to the brain can affect breathing and circulation. Any time a person is knocked unconscious, he or she must be observed carefully for at least 24 hours. Dilated pupils, severe and unrelenting headache, nausea, prolonged dizziness, or blood from the ears and nose are all potential signs of serious head injuries. Remove false teeth and carefully monitor the ABCs. Blood or straw-colored fluids seeping from the ear or nose may indicate a skull fracture. Do not block the drainage of these fluids, as this may cause brain damage from internal pressure buildup. If there are no signs of neck or back injury, place the victim in the recovery position, with the leaking side down to help fluids to drain.

Chest Wounds

Puncture wounds in the chest may result in a collapsed lung. If you hear a sucking noise or see bubbles coming from a chest wound, immediately cover the wound with the palm of your hand, then seal around the wound with a dressing made from plastic wrap or aluminum foil. Coat the dressing with petroleum jelly or antiseptic ointment to help it seal to the skin. If available, tape the dressing edges, except for one corner, to improve the seal, yet allow for excess air to vent

outward.

1. Monitor ABCs.
2. Do not give fluids.
3. Call EMS.
4. Do not move the victim unless absolutely necessary.

CHOKING

The symptoms of choking are easily recognized—clutching at the throat, staring eyes, face contorted. If the person is coughing or making significant breathing sounds, his or her own efforts to clear the blockage stand a better chance than your intervention, which might cause the blockage to lodge more deeply. Remember that a person who is choking can hear you even though she or he is unable to speak. Ask the person if he or she is choking. *If the person is unable to answer, and there are no breathing sounds or only a high-pitched squeaky noise, the blockage is life threatening. Begin abdominal thrusts (Heimlich maneuver) immediately.*

Heimlich Maneuver (Abdominal Thrusts)

1. Stand or kneel behind the victim and wrap your arms around the midsection.
2. Make a fist with one hand and grab the outside of the fist with the other hand. The thumb side of the fist should be touching the victim's belly, just above the belly button and well below the breastbone.
3. With elbows out, vigorously thrust your fist upward into the victim's belly, attempting to force air through the windpipe to blow the obstruction from the windpipe.
4. After four abdominal thrusts, try four sharp blows between the shoulders to dislodge the obstruction followed by more abdominal thrusts. Do not give up! Be prepared to give artificial respiration if the victim passes out.

> **NOTE: You can perform abdominal thrusts on yourself with your fists or against an object, such as a chair or stump.**

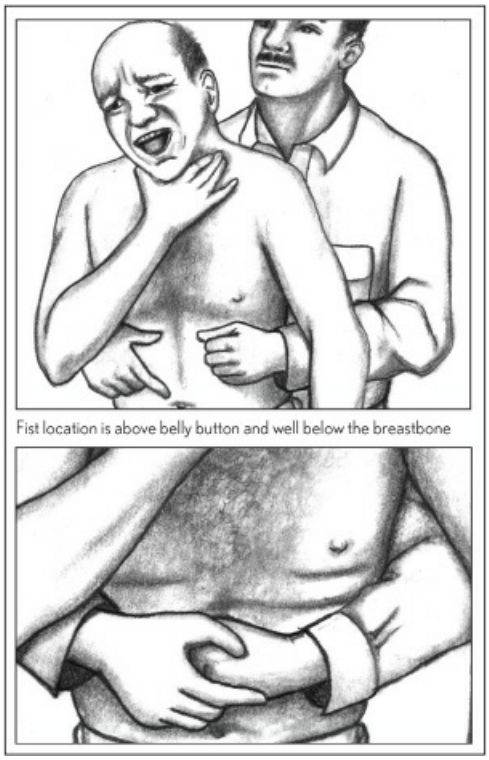


Figure 8-10. Heimlich maneuver.

BANDAGES AND DRESSINGS

Dressings are typically sterile, gauze-covered cotton pads placed directly on wounds to stop bleeding and to keep the wounds clean. They often have a shiny protective coating on one side to keep the dressing from sticking to the wound and to facilitate daily dressing changes. Do not touch the surface of sterile dressings before applying to wounds. Roll *bandages* are usually made from gauze, crepe, or stretch material (ace bandage). Bandages can be improvised from any clean cloth material, such as sheets or clothing. Large triangular bandages, with short legs of one yard or more, are versatile. Use large triangular bandages for arm slings, head wounds, binding splints, and so on. Bandages should be tied just tight enough to hold dressings in place and stop bleeding, but not so tight that they cut into the flesh or restrict circulation. Tie bandages with a square (reef) knot. Check fingertips and toes for numbness or bluish color, which indicates restricted circulation from bandages that are too tight.

SHOCK

Be on the lookout for shock in any accident victim. Virtually any serious injury or illness can lead to shock. When trauma or severe illness threatens the flow of oxygen and blood to the body's tissues, the body responds with a counterattack, known as shock. When in shock, the body constricts blood flow to nonessential organs in an effort to conserve blood and sustain life. Shock can be life threatening, even though the injuries that caused the shock would not normally

cause death.

Symptoms

- Skin pale or bluish, cold to the touch, and possibly moist or clammy.
- Weakness, dizziness. Victim may be apathetic and unresponsive due to lack of oxygen to the brain.
- Rapid pulse (usually greater than 100), often too weak to be felt at the wrist but perceptible at the carotid artery on the side of the neck where the windpipe joins the muscle, or at the femoral artery at the groin.
- Restlessness, anxiety, or confusion. Decreased alertness.
- Nausea, vomiting.
- Rapid, shallow breathing.
- Intense thirst.

Trauma specialists talk about the "golden hour" in treating shock victims. If shock is not reversed within one hour, the patient may die, no matter what actions are taken.

Treatment for Shock

1. Check the victim's ABCs. Perform CPR or control the bleeding, if necessary.
2. Lay the victim on his or her back in the "shock position": legs flexed at the hips, knees straight, feet elevated 12 inches, and head down. This promotes the return of venous blood to the heart and enhances the flow of arterial blood to the brain.

   WARNING: Do not lay the victim in the shock position if you suspect head, neck, or back injuries, or if the victim is having breathing problems.
3. Give treatment for the underlying illness or injury. 4. Keep the victim comfortable. Loosen tight clothing and conserve body heat by bundling in blankets or a sleeping bag. *Do not add heat from an external source,* as this will swell capillaries in the skin and draw blood from vital organs.
5. *Do not give fluids by mouth.*
6. Move the victim out of danger if you have to, but avoid rough handling. Check vital signs (ABCs) every few minutes, including pulse and breathing rate and pattern. Restlessness and agitation may be signs of worsening shock.
7. Make arrangements for rapid medical evacuation. *Time is of the essence!*

FRACTURES AND DISLOCATIONS

Dislocations occur when a joint is overstressed to the point where the bone pops out of location

(the joint is “dislocated”). Usually dislocations are accompanied by tearing and rupturing of the soft joint tissues. A fracture occurs when a bone is overstressed to the point where it breaks. It is often hard to tell whether a bone is fractured or dislocated, but the first-aid treatment for both is usually the same. Fractures are divided into two types. In the case of an open fracture (also known as a compound fracture), the broken bone ruptures the skin. The bone may be sticking out of the wound, or it may retract back inside the flesh. Open fractures are very serious injuries, because they are easily infected and can lead to bone infections and gangrene, which are difficult to treat and may result in amputation if treatment is unsuccessful. Injuries that appear to be dislocations may actually be fractures near a joint, and should be immobilized and treated as fractures.

In general, it is recommended that untrained personnel do not try to reposition dislocations or fractures. However, if you are in a remote location, or if you are sure that emergency medical services will not be available for several hours, you should try to pop a dislocated joint back into position, or tension and reposition a fractured limb. You must use your judgment on this one. The Red Cross manuals state that fractures and dislocations should be immobilized in the position they are found in, to minimize the risk of further damage while trying to reposition the joint or break. Wilderness medicine manuals will tell you that you should attempt to reduce (relocate or “pop” back into joint) a dislocated joint as soon as possible after the injury, or swelling and muscle spasms will make this task nearly impossible and will make rescue far more difficult. Similarly, setting a fracture (realigning the break prior to splinting) may cause more damage if done improperly, but if properly handled will reduce the risk of further injury by:

- Preventing a closed fracture from becoming an open (composite) fracture
- Reducing bleeding and pain at the fracture location
- Reducing the risk of shock complications
- Making it easier to apply an effective splint

If you do choose to align a fracture (“set” or “reduce” the fracture), you must apply tension to the fractured limb both while the splint is applied and while in the splint. Without tension, muscle contractions may cause the fractured bone sections to pull beside each other, resulting in further injury due to the cutting of internal tissues on sharp bone fragments.

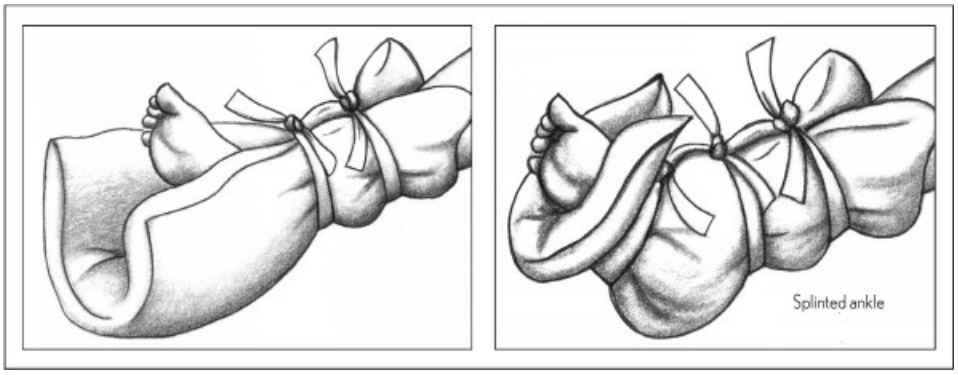


Figure 8-11. Ankle splint.

General Guidelines for Treating Dislocations and Fractures

1. Check the victim's ABCs.
2. Keep the victim still. Movement of fractured limbs could turn a closed fracture into a compound fracture or cause damage to internal tissues. *Do not move the limb or attempt to "set" the fracture.* Movement may cause severe tissue damage from razor-sharp edges of fractured bones.
3. If there is an open fracture, or you suspect there may be a fracture below an open wound, take extreme precautions against infection and contamination. Do not wash the wound, but cover the wound with sterile dressings and immobilize the limb. *Do not breathe on, or probe, the open wound.* Do not try to set the limb (unless you have no access to emergency medical services in the near future).
4. Splint or sling the affected area in the position you found it. Include at least the joint above and below the injury when immobilizing the injured area. Splint the break with some kind of firm material, such as boards, tree branches, ski poles, broomsticks, umbrellas, and so on. If rigid materials are unavailable, you can use rolled-up newspapers or rolled towels, or you can tape or tie a limb to the body or another limb (that is, strap the broken leg to the good leg). Pad the splint with some kind of soft cushioning material such as towels, moss, or rags between the victim's flesh and the hard splints. Tie the splint in at least two places above and two places below the injury, but not directly on top of the injury. *Always treat wounds before splinting*.

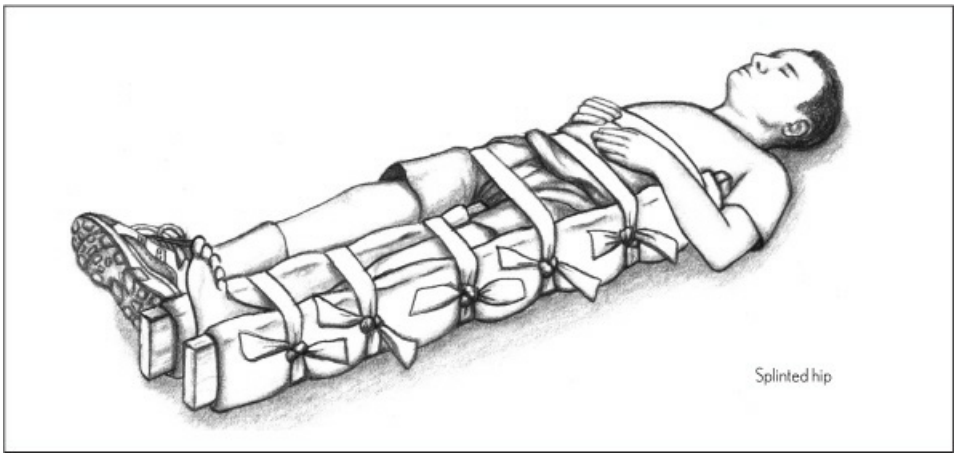


Figure 8-12. Hip splint.

5. Treat for shock. Lay the victim flat, elevating the feet and keeping the head down, *unless you suspect a head, back, or neck injury.*
6. Call EMS.

Special Precautions for Fractures

1. **Pelvis and thigh.** Fractures to the pelvis and thigh are serious injuries that can rapidly turn life threatening. If possible, do not move the victim, but get immediate medical

attention. If the victim must be moved, use the clothes-drag technique rather than lifting or carrying.

2. **Neck or back.** If a spinal injury is suspected, call EMS immediately and do not move the victim unless in danger. If you must move the victim, use the clothes-drag technique (see for a description). If the neck is injured, it is imperative that the neck be immobilized with a neck collar, sack of earth, or some other obstruction to movement. You may improvise a collar from a rolled towel or newspaper, among other items. If a neck fracture is suspected, *do not allow the victim to move her or his neck!* If the victim must be lifted or rolled over, get several people to assist so the victim may be rolled or lifted as a unit, with no twisting to the spine or neck.

Figure 8-13. Stabilizing the head and neck.

3. **Skull.** Blood or straw-colored fluids seeping from the ear or nose may indicate a skull fracture. Do not block the drainage of these fluids, as this may cause brain damage from internal pressure buildup. If there are no signs of neck or back injury, place the victim in the recovery position, with the leaking side down to drain. Cover wounds lightly with sterile dressings if a fracture is suspected. Dilated pupils, dizziness, difficulty breathing, nausea, unclear thinking, vision problems, unconsciousness, and severe, unrelenting headaches are signs of potential brain injury. Monitor the ABCs and call EMS. long, or else swelling and muscle spasms will make this task difficult or impossible. Gently probe the area to try to ensure that the dislocation is not actually a fracture.

Reducing Dislocations

When traveling in the wilderness or when emergency medical services are hours away, try to pop dislocated joints back into place (“reduction”). Do not wait too

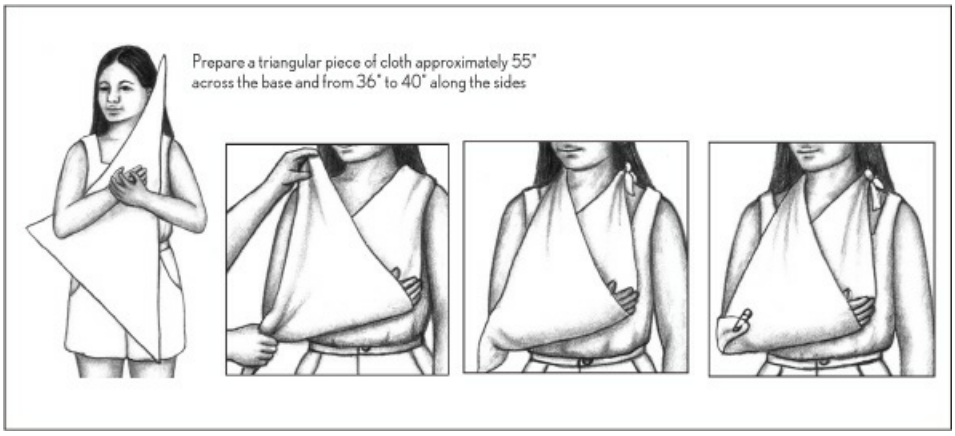


Figure 8-14. Arm sling.

- **Fingers** are easy to relocate. Simply grasp the fingertip and pull steadily outward until the joint pops back into place. After relocation, tape the injured finger to an adjacent finger for support.
- For **shoulders**, try to position the victim lying flat on her or his stomach with the arm hanging down over an edge. Either hang a weight of 10 to 15 pounds from the wrist for 10 minutes, or pull steadily downward on the victim's wrist until the shoulder pops back into place. Separated shoulders are often confused with shoulder dislocations. Separated shoulders are usually caused by falls directly onto the shoulder, which tears some of the tissue connecting the collarbone to the shoulder. If you detect a "spongy" feel while gently probing the collarbone, the injury is probably a separation and should be treated by immobilization with a sling. After reduction, support the arm with a sling.
- **Elbows** are more difficult to treat, and you may not be able to get the elbow to relocate while you are in the backcountry. Check pulse and circulation in the fingers. Have the victim lie on his or her belly, draping the injured elbow over a padded ledge or edge so the elbow bends 90 degrees and the forearm hangs straight down. Grasp the wrist and pull downward while another rescuer pulls upward on the upper arm just above the elbow. Rocking the forearm back and forth gently may assist the process. Recheck pulse and circulation in the fingers. After relocating the elbow, splint as if it were fractured.
- **Hips** are tough, but if successfully relocated, will prevent further damage to the hip joint and sciatic nerve. Lay the victim on his or her back and, keeping the knee bent at a right angle, lift the leg until the thigh is pointing straight up. Have an assistant hold the victim's hips down while you straddle the victim. Grasp just below the knee and pull firmly upward, slowly twisting the leg a little to the right and left until the hip pops back into place. It takes considerable force to counteract the strong thigh muscles. After reduction, splint the injured leg to the other leg.

Sprains and Strains

Sprains

Sprains are injuries to the joints, usually accompanied by soreness and swelling, which indicates that internal tissues have torn. Severe sprains can be more debilitating, more painful, and take longer to heal than simple fractures. Standard treatment is covered by the acronym RICE—rest, ice, compression, and elevation. Stay off the injured limb. Apply cold compresses for the first 24 to 48 hours. Do not apply ice directly to the skin, but insulate ice packs with a towel or folded cloth. After 2 days, massage and hot soaks (or alternating hot and cold soaks) will boost blood circulation and speed healing. Elevating the limb and compressing the area with a snug ace bandage wrap will help control swelling. Tincture of *Arnica montana* and Traumeel cream, a homeopathic remedy, will usually promote and accelerate the body's natural healing processes. These remedies are also good for bruises and most other traumatic injuries.

Immobilization is key to treating severe sprains and connective tissue tears. It used to be that doctors jumped in right after a serious tearing injury with invasive surgery to reconnect torn ligaments and tendons using pins, stitches, and staples. Years later, these artificial connections tend to cause problems with arthritis and joint degeneration. Researchers have found that the natural intelligence of the body's healing mechanisms usually does a better job of reconnecting these tissues, provided that the injury is immobilized for an appropriate period of time.

In the fall of 1999, in a solo rock-climbing accident, a 40-foot fall onto sharp rocks caused a compound fracture to my left heel and totally severed most of the connective tissue holding the front two-thirds of my foot to my ankle. The surgeon held together my heel bone fragments and my foot joint with three temporary, 6-inch-long surgical drill rods, allowing my body to reconnect and regenerate the severed connecting ligaments, tendons, and missing pieces of bone. The initial reconnection process took about 10 weeks of immobilization, followed by months of gradual recuperation and painful exercise, but my soft tissues grew back together while immobilized better than the surgeon could have done with pins, screws, and staples, and will hopefully have fewer long-term side effects. I was given a 5 percent chance that my ankle would ever function decently again. It's not perfect, and I will never run marathon distances again, but I can ski, climb, surf, run, and do more than most people my age, validating my surgeon's good judgment at not trying to stitch and staple all those soft tissues back together artificially.

Strains

Muscle strains ("pulled" muscles) can be very painful. Apply cold compresses at once, and elevate the limb to control swelling. If pain begins to recede, apply heat after 24 hours. If the muscle does not improve in 1 to 2 days, seek medical attention.

HEAT-RELATED TRAUMA

Heat Stroke

Heat stroke is a life-threatening condition that occurs when the body's heat-regulating mechanisms are overloaded and simply stop working. When the body stops sweating due to heat stroke, brain damage or death may rapidly occur, so it is absolutely critical that the victim's body temperature is rapidly reduced. Signs and symptoms are hot, red skin; very small pupils; and elevated body temperature. If the person was exercising, they may still be wet with sweat, but often there is a peculiar lack of sweat. Body temperature will be above normal, and if it exceeds 105°F, brain damage and death may occur.

Call EMS immediately, get the victim out of the sun and heat, soak the body in a cool bath if available, or keep the victim wet and fan to promote cooling. Care for shock, and give nothing by mouth until EMS arrives.

Heat Exhaustion

Heat exhaustion is much more common and less dangerous than heat stroke. Heat exhaustion typically occurs when people are working hard or exercising in hot humid conditions where the person's sweat is not sufficient to adequately cool the body. Fluid loss due to dehydration, usually from heavy sweating, causes a decrease in blood flow to vital organs, resulting in a form of shock.

The signs and symptoms of heat exhaustion are cool, pale, and moist skin; heavy sweating; dilated pupils; headache; nausea; dizziness; and vomiting. Body temperature should be near normal.

Get the victim out of the sun and heat, cool the person immediately, and treat for shock. Use cold packs (placing a towel between the skin and cold pack), a fan, a cool bath, wet towels and sheets, etc. Lie the victim on his or her back with elevated feet and give one half glass of water every 15 minutes (if the person is fully conscious and can handle it without vomiting). The person should feel much better within one half hour.

BITES AND STINGS

Animal Bites

The main concern with animal bites is infection. Thoroughly cleanse the wound and apply disinfectant or antibiotic ointment and dressings. Rabies is always a possibility with animal bites. Felines, canines, apes, raccoons, and other mammals may carry rabies. If bitten, the person should always be examined by the appropriate medical services, even if some time has passed and the wound has healed. Once rabies progresses to the point where there are symptoms of nervousness, light sensitivity, and aversion to water, it is usually fatal.

Snakebites

Except for the brightly colored coral snake (red, black, and yellow, or white rings with a black nose), all poisonous snakes leave two large holes from their fangs, along with smaller holes from their other teeth. Most snakes are not poisonous, but can generate a significant wound with their bite. Venomous snakebites require first aid and medical treatment.

- Call EMS. Identify the type of snake, if known, so the proper antivenin can be prepared in advance of treatment. Try to kill the snake and take it along for identification.
- Keep the victim calm, quiet, and inactive. Have the victim lie down and keep the bite below the heart.
- Wash the wound and apply antiseptic.
- *Do not* cut the wound and try to suck the venom out. If you have a snakebite kit, you can use the suction cups or suction syringe.
- *Do not* apply a tourniquet or cold compress to the wound.
- Monitor the ABCs and treat for shock, if necessary. Remove rings and bracelets that might cause problems if the limbs begin to swell.
- Seek medical treatment.

Spider Bites

Treat spider bites in the same way as snakebites. The most serious spider bites in the United States are from the brown recluse and black widow spiders. Unless the person bitten is elderly or a small child, the bites from these spiders are usually not fatal, but they can make you very sick and lead to flesh loss.

The black widow has a very shiny, black patent-leather look with a large abdomen and a bright red hourglassshaped marking on the underside of its belly. The bite may not even be noticed, or may feel like a small pinprick followed by tingling and numbing of the hands and feet. Symptoms may progress into severe back and stomach cramps, sweating, vomiting, headaches, and seizures. Ice at the wound site can ease the pain somewhat. Seek medical attention as soon as possible; there is an antidote for severe cases. Most people recover within 12 hours without treatment (Weiss 1997, 116).

The bite of the brown recluse spider can cause serious tissue damage if left untreated. The body of the brown recluse is about ½ inch long and has a dark, violin-shaped marking on the top of the upper section of its body. Initial mild stinging is followed by itching and burning, and then blistering and ulceration at the bite area. Fever, chills, nausea, and vomiting may follow within 1 to 2 days. Seek medical attention; there is an antivenin that can halt or prevent tissue damage (Weiss 1997, 117).

Tarantulas are scarier looking than they are dangerous. Their bites can be painful and should be treated for possible infection.

Tick Bites

> Lyme disease is now the most common tick-transmitted infection, with an estimated 5,000 to 15,000 new cases in the United States each year. The majority of people with Lyme disease do not recall the precipitating tick bite. **—Eric A. Weiss, M.D., *A Comprehensive Guide to Wilderness and Travel Medicine***

Ticks typically hang around on blades of grass and other vegetation until a host rubs against them. They crawl onto the host and wander around until they find a spot, then dig their head into the skin for a blood feast (usually when the host is at rest). If you tear a tick off the host, typically, at least part of its head is left buried in the skin. Tick bites often lead to infection and may require a quick surgical procedure if a cyst has formed around an imbedded tick head. The preferred removal method is to grasp the tick body with a pair of tweezers, getting as far under the head as possible without puncturing or rupturing the tick's body. Gently lift up and back until the tick releases its grasp and pulls free from the host (this may take a few minutes of steady pressure). Traditional methods, such as coating the tick with fingernail polish or petroleum jelly or burning the tick with a hot object, can force the tick to release from the host—but these methods increase infection risk from the tick regurgitating into the host's bloodstream. Tick bites can cause infection or introduce diseases such as Lyme disease or Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

The deer tick, which is responsible for the spread of Lyme disease, is so small that it is almost never seen or noticed. The bite is often followed by a flu-like fever and typically develops a "bull's eye" rash up to several inches in diameter centered around the bite, which usually disappears on its own within a month's time. About 20 percent of Lyme disease victims develop further long-term symptoms, such as severe arthritis, heart problems, and neurological difficulties sometimes resembling multiple sclerosis. Lyme disease is treatable with antibiotics and has been treated successfully with colloidal silver (see the *Micro Silver Bullet,* by Dr. Paul Farber).

> My friend Eric Perlman, an outstanding athlete, was suffering from painful arthritis in his mid-40s. A blood test uncovered evidence of Lyme disease. Treatment for Lyme disease was able to halt the degenerative destruction of Eric's joints and eliminated most of his arthritic symptoms.

Stings

Bees, wasps, hornets, and scorpions can cause severe reactions in some people. In the case of a scorpion, try to kill the scorpion (and bring it along) for identification, because some varieties can be extremely poisonous. The sting from the small straw-colored bark scorpion (1 to 2 inches in length, with slender pinchers) is potentially lethal. Look for neurological symptoms, such as twitching, drooling, numbness, blurred vision, and seizures. Seek immediate medical attention.

Benadryl can be helpful for reducing the symptoms of swelling and itching associated with many insect bites and stings. Try to remove bee stingers with a scraping action, as pinching a stinger with tweezers may drive more venom into the sting. Multiple stings or an allergy to stings

can cause a severe reaction, known as anaphylactic shock, a life-threatening conditioning in which the throat swells shut, blood pressure falls, and unconsciousness may ensue. In this case, call EMS and seek immediate medical attention. Check for a medic alert bracelet. A person with severe allergies usually carries a kit with emergency medicine for dealing with this kind of emergency.

EYES

The eye is very delicate, complicated, and easily damaged. When in doubt, always seek medical attention. If foreign material is irritating the eyes, try to wash it out with an eyecup, by holding the eye open in a bowl of water, or lying the victim on his or her side and dribbling water from a glass across the eye. While washing the eye, use your thumb and forefinger to hold the eyelid open, since the natural reaction is for the eye to clamp shut. Room-temperature sterile saline solution is the best flushing solution for the eyes, but clean fresh water will do if saline solution is not available. Use lukewarm or cold water—*never use hot water!* The standard procedure for chemical irritants in the eyes is to flush the eyes for 15 minutes with water, and then seek medical attention. You may be able to dislodge foreign debris by pulling the upper eyelid outward and scraping its inner surface over the short eyelashes of the lower lid. A soft, clean cloth may be gently dragged across the eyeball to snag particles of debris. Do not use cotton or tissue paper.

First Aid for a Foreign Object in the Eye

- If the object does not move freely, do not attempt to remove it.
- Call EMS.
- Prevent the victim from rubbing the eye and causing more damage.
- Cover both eyes, so the victim will not cause more damage by moving the eyes around.

MOVING INJURED PEOPLE

If the victim is in physical danger, or is in a remote location, it may be necessary to move him or her. Whenever there is a potential spinal injury, the victim must be immobilized and the utmost care must be given to minimize or prevent movement of the back or neck. Ideally, several qualified medical personnel will be available to lift the victim onto a backboard or Stokes litter, where the person will be strapped down to prevent movement. In reality, you may have to improvise and do your best with whatever materials are available. If a spinal injury is suspected, immobilize the head and neck at all times, and always roll or lift the body as a unit.

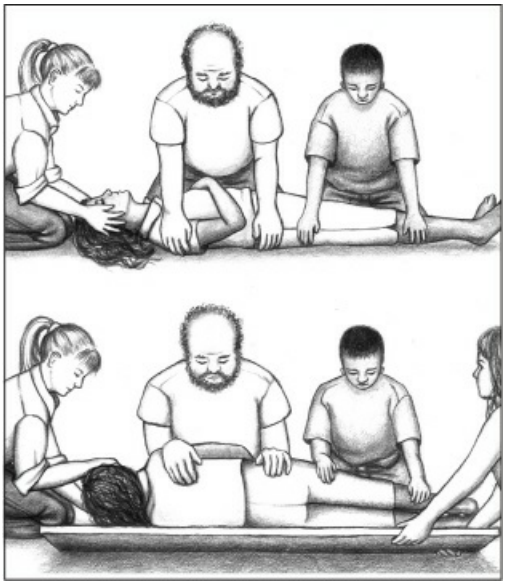


Figure 8-15. Rolling the victim onto a board.

Clothing Drag for Single Rescuer

If you must move a victim by yourself due to immediate danger, use the clothes drag to drag the person, face down or face up, out of danger. Crouch by the victim's head and grab the clothing by the shoulders, using your forearms to stabilize the head and neck. Keep your lower back straight, to minimize back strain. Walk backward to drag the victim out of danger. With a helper, you can position the victim on a blanket and use the blanket for a modified clothes drag.

Multi-Helper "Stretcher" Rescue

Whenever possible, recruit others to help move the injured. The more helpers, the easier it will be. Four people is a good number for moving victims short distances over easy ground. Over rough ground, three per side and one at each end makes the carry less tiring and helps minimize the chance of dropping the stretcher if one person trips. Rotate crews every 10 minutes over long stretcher hauls. In the event of a suspected spinal injury, the use of a rigid board (such as a door) is preferred over a flexible stretcher made from two poles and a blanket.

If the victim is lying flat, lift the victim as carefully as possible onto the board. Always position one person at the head to cradle the head and neck while lifting. Most of the weight will be in the shoulders and torso, so place most of your strength and attention on these areas.

If the victim is not lying flat, place the board against the person's back, parallel to the body. Roll the victim as a unit, never twisting the spine, onto the board and gently lower the board to the ground. Always have one person attending to the head, cradling the head and neck as the victim is rolled.

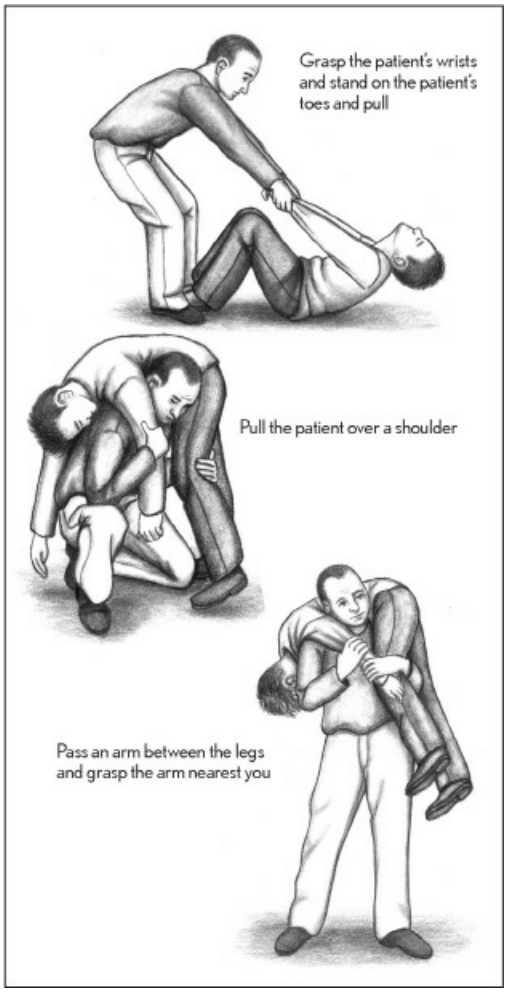

Grasp the patient's wrists and stand on the patient's toes and pull
Pull the patient over a shoulder
Pass an arm between the legs and grasp the arm nearest you

Figure 8-17. Fireman's lift.

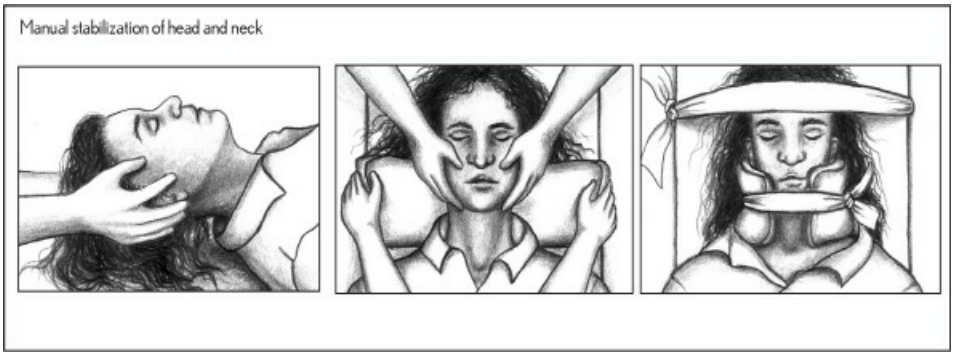


Figure 8-16. Stabilizing head and neck for board carry.

In the case of a potential spinal injury, immobilize the head and neck with rolled-up towels, blankets, bags of sand, and so on, and strap in place. If you have none of these materials, a helper must stabilize the head with forearms and hands.

One- and Two-Person Carries

Extra help is not always available when it is necessary to move an injured person out of danger or to transport them to emergency medical services. In these cases it may be necessary to perform a one- or two-person carry. Use extreme caution with all one- or two-person carries to prevent injuring your back. Try to keep your back relatively straight, and lift mostly with your legs. The classic *fireman's lift* is particularly effective where speed is critical, distances are short, and there is no apparent spinal injury.

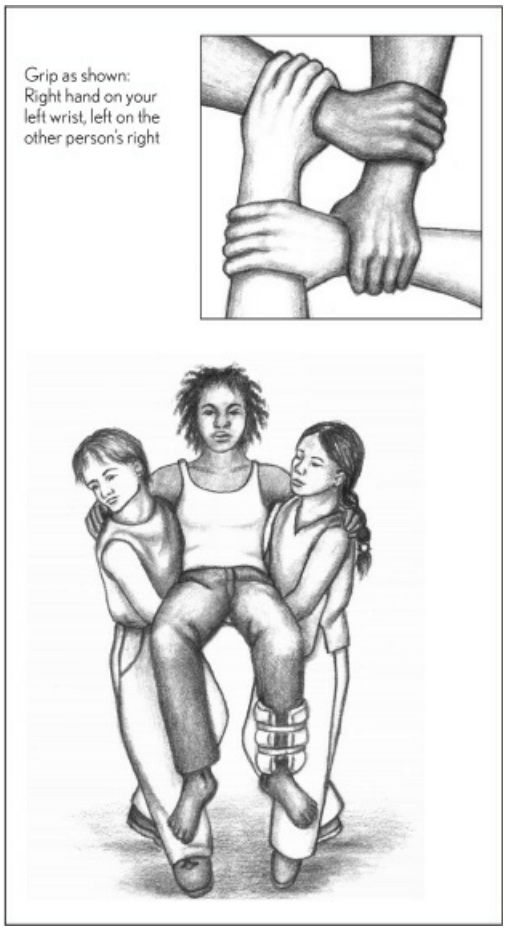


Figure 8-18. Two-person, wrist-catch seat carry.

The two-person, wrist-catch seat carry is a comfortable shorter-distance carry.

Over longer distances, the *backpack* or *sling carry* will be much less tiring and easier on both victim and rescuer than the *fireman's lift*.

Figure 8-19. Backpack carry.

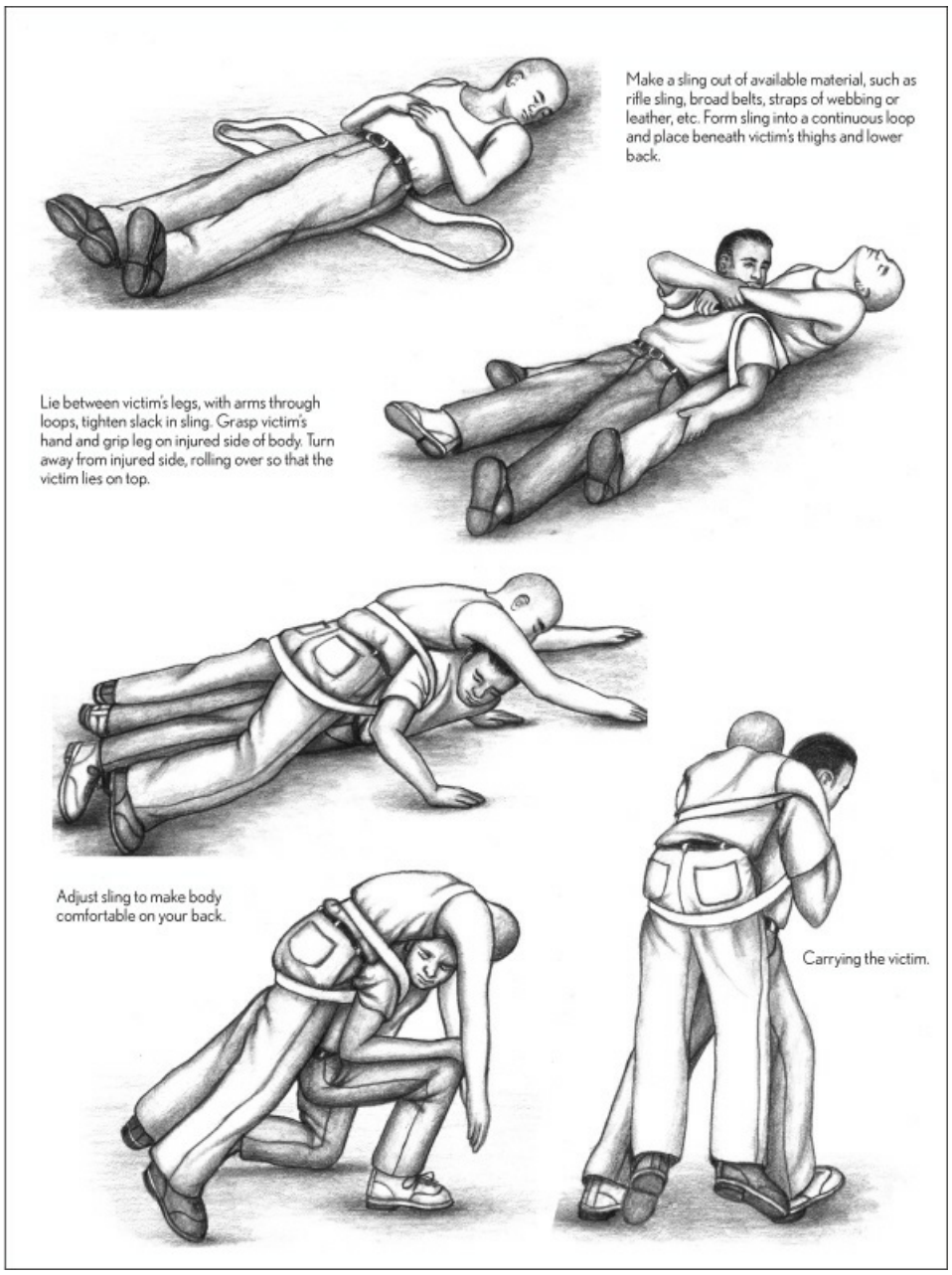

Make a sling out of available material, such as rifle sling, broad belts, straps of webbing or leather, etc. Form sling into a continuous loop and place beneath victim's thighs and lower back.
Lie between victim's legs, with arms through loops, tighten slack in sling. Grasp victim's hand and grip leg on injured side of body. Turn away from injured side, rolling over so that the victim lies on top.
Adjust sling to make body comfortable on your back.
Carrying the victim.

Figure 8-20. Sling carry.

EMERGENCY CHILDBIRTH

My wife Josie's first child was born in the hospital. She had a very long, difficult labor. Her early labor was slowed down with drugs, because the doctor was not ready. Later, they had trouble getting her labor going again. The whole experience was cold and unpleasant, leaving a bitter taste, so we opted for a home birth the second time around. We chose a registered nurse-midwife to assist at the delivery,

and went through natural childbirth classes to prepare us for the event.

Josie's labor started in the midwife's office during a visit for a prenatal exam. When I got there, the midwife exclaimed, "This baby's coming in a hurry! We don't have much time." We drove the midwife to our home, where we rushed to get the bed covered and unpack our "birthing supplies." Everything was ready about 15 minutes before my daughter was born. When our daughter passed through the birth canal into my hands, I experienced a powerful sensation—like strong electrical currents flowing through my hands and arms. Our daughter lay quietly on Josie's belly, not crying at all. Slowly she opened one eye and looked around. It was an awesome experience to take such an intimate part in the birthing process. A while later, after the placenta had been passed, the midwife became noticeably concerned. My wife was continuing to bleed heavily from her uterus, but the bleeding should have subsided shortly after passing the afterbirth. The midwife worked her small hands up inside my wife's uterus and removed clots that had not come free with the afterbirth. The bleeding stopped, and we all breathed a sigh of relief. In the old days, with an inexperienced doctor or midwife, those clots could have led to her death from severe hemorrhaging.

This section provides some of the most basic instructions for dealing with emergency childbirth. See Elizabeth Davis' excellent *Heart and Hands: A Midwife's Guide to Pregnancy and Birth* or *Where There Is No Doctor* by David Werner et al. for more detailed instruction and advice. When my wife was pregnant with our daughter, we read several books on the subject and found some very interesting statistics. The United States has the highest percentage of hospital births and cesarean sections in the entire world. We also have one of the highest infant mortality rates among the developed countries. Apparently, in most cases, low-risk births happen faster and with fewer complications at home under the care of a qualified doctor, nurse, or midwife, than in the harsh environment of a hospital. Many hospitals have taken this into consideration and now offer "birthing centers" with a more relaxed, homey atmosphere. Whenever possible, enlist the assistance of qualified medical personnel, and have the backup insurance of a medical facility available in case of complications.

SIGNS OF IMPENDING DELIVERY

- Regular contractions, at intervals of 2 minutes or less between the start of each contraction.
- Strong urge to have a bowel movement.
- Rupture of the amniotic sac ("breaking of the water") may happen while the mother is attempting to go to the bathroom. Usually the baby comes shortly after the sac ruptures, but sometimes may not come for a few days. In this case, it may be best to have the labor induced in a hospital to avoid infection.
- Strong urge to push. Often the mother yells that the baby is coming.

Stages of Labor

The first stage lasts from the beginning of strong contractions until the baby has dropped into the birth canal (launch position). The mother should drink a lot of fluids and try to keep the bowels evacuated. An enema may be helpful to evacuate the bowels. The mother should wash her buttocks and genital area with soap and water.

Birthing supplies should be readied if the birth will be at home. The first stage typically lasts from 10 to 20 hours (but it may last several days) for a woman's first birth and 5 to 10 hours for subsequent births.

> **CAUTION: Births can happen very quickly, like my daughter's, which took less than 2 hours from the start of labor.**

Make sure you have plenty of clean sheets or other bed coverings (newspaper will do in a pinch) and change them as soon as they get soiled. If the mother has a bowel movement, wipe from front to back. Have a sterile unopened razor blade or a pair of boiled scissors on hand for cutting the cord. The midwife should not massage the belly and the mother should not push during this stage. Deep, slow breathing can help to ease the pain. Walking helps to speed the delivery and labor.

The second stage starts when the baby has dropped into the birth canal and finishes when the baby is born. This stage is often easier than the first stage and is usually finished within a couple of hours. Cleanliness is of the utmost importance. Hands should be washed frequently in sterile water, and surgical gloves should be worn if available. For normal births, the midwife or attendant should never insert hands or fingers into the birth canal, as this is the major cause of severe infections in the mother. The mother should push hard with each contraction until the child's head shows about 3 inches across. At that point the mother should try not to push too hard and should breathe with short fast breaths. This helps to avoid tearing the vaginal opening.

The third stage lasts from the birth until the placenta (afterbirth) has been expelled and bleeding has stopped or reduced to a trickle. This usually happens between 5 minutes and 1 hour after the birth.

> **WARNING: If there is severe bleeding or the placenta does not come out, *seek medical attention immediately.***

Emergency Childbirth Supplies

- Flashlight in case of poor lighting or power outage.
- Plastic sheet, tarp, or large garbage bags to place under the mother on top of the bedding.
- Clean sheets, towels, newspapers, and so on to place under the mother and on top of the plastic sheet. Change as soon as soiled. Have at least three extra, clean, dry towels on hand.
- Sanitary napkins (several).

- A rubber suction bulb for suctioning the newborn's mouth. A turkey baster with a fine tip will do in a pinch.
- Sterile gauze dressings.
- Sterile gloves.
- Sterile razor or scissors for cutting the umbilical cord.
- Two pieces of sterile string, such as shoelace, for tying the umbilical cord. Boil in water for 10 minutes to sterilize. *Do not use thread because it will cut through the cord.*
- Receiving blankets and diapers for the newborn.
- A container for the placenta (afterbirth). A plastic bag will do.

Delivery

Keep everything as clean as possible before, during, and after the delivery. Use no antiseptics. Soap and clean water are best. Remove jewelry and watches and scrub hands, including under the fingernails. Wear sterile gloves, if available. Remind the mother to pant or take long deep breaths, because this helps the baby to emerge slowly, with less chance of tearing the vaginal opening.

1. *DO NOT* try to delay the birth in any way, such as by crossing the mother's legs or pushing the baby back inside.
2. *DO NOT* allow the mother to go to the toilet. The sensation of having to have a bowel movement means the baby is coming. Spontaneous bowel movements in the final stages are normal. Wipe the mother front to back (always away from the vagina) and immediately remove soiled cloths.
3. *DO NOT* pull the baby from the vagina.
4. The baby's head usually emerges first, but not always. If something else appears first—the buttocks (breech birth), a shoulder, or a hand, for example—the chances for birthing complications are significantly increased.
5. *To help reduce tearing*, when the crown of the head shows a few inches, have the mother stop pushing. Panting and deep breathing will help her to overcome the desire to push and gives her skin more time to stretch. The midwife can support the skin between the vagina and the anus with the palm of one hand, while gently pressing on the baby's head with the other hand, to keep the head from emerging too fast and tearing the mother's flesh.
6. Tear any membrane covering the baby's face.
7. If the umbilical cord is wrapped around the baby's neck, hook it with your finger and gently but quickly slip it over the baby's head. If it is too tight to flip over the baby's head, it must be tied and cut or the child will suffocate or bleed to death.
8. Support the baby's head in the palm of your hand. Once the head is free, the rest of the body delivers quickly. Be ready for the baby to be extremely slippery. Suction the mouth and nostrils with the bulb, or clean with a clean, dry cloth.

   CAUTION: Sometimes the baby will have had a bowel movement in the

womb. When the water breaks, this will appear as a dark green, almost black liquid. If the baby breathes this material (meconium) into his or her lungs, the baby may die. If there is evidence of meconium in the mother's amniotic fluid or on the baby's face and mouth, it must be completely suctioned out of the baby's nose and mouth before the baby begins to breathe. Once the baby's head is free, have the mother proceed very slowly to allow time for suctioning. Seek immediate medical attention, if available.

9. If an arm comes out first, the mother may need an operation to birth the baby.
10. If the buttocks come first (breech), the birth may be easier with the mother in a crouching position on all fours. If the head is stuck, try pushing down on the mother's lower abdomen to help push the head out from the inside. Have the mother push hard, *but never pull on the body of the baby.*

After Delivery

1. Hold the baby face down, with the feet higher than the head, to allow fluids to drain. If you have a suction bulb, gently suction the child's mouth and nose. The baby may be blue but should turn pink a few minutes after starting to breathe.
2. *If the baby is not breathing*, tap the bottom of the baby's feet a few times and massage the baby's back with a clean towel. If the baby is not breathing within 1 minute of birth, try a couple of quick rescue breaths, then gently begin mouth-to-mouth resuscitation.
3. When the baby cries or is breathing normally, lay the baby on the mother's breast and encourage the baby to nurse. This will help stimulate the mother's uterine contractions for expelling the placenta. Make sure there is no tension on the umbilical cord.
4. The umbilical cord should not be cut immediately. Immediately after birth, the cord is fat and blue. *Wait* until the cord has stopped pulsing and has become thin and whitish in color, then tie the cord firmly in two places using sterile cord (not thread). Tie one spot in the cord about 4 inches from the baby's end, and the other spot about 8 inches from the same end. Cut the cord in between the ties with a sterile razor blade or sterile scissors, and immediately cover the baby's end of the cord with clean cloth or sterile gauze. To protect the child from infections, the cord should be allowed to dry and
5. Keep the mother and baby warm. The mother will should be kept dry. continue to have contractions to expel the placenta, which should happen between 5 minutes and an hour after birth (but sometimes it takes several hours). If the placenta is slow in coming, feel the womb (uterus) through the mother's belly. If it is soft, firmly massage the womb until it contracts (gets hard) to expel the placenta. Inspect the placenta. If it appears to be missing large chunks, you may be faced with a serious medical emergency due to severe bleeding.
6. Wash the mother and give her plenty of warm fluids.

REFERENCES

***e American Red Cross First Aid and Safety Handbook,* by the American Red Cross and Kathleen A. Handal, M.D.** 1992, 384 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0316736466. Published by Little, Brown and Co., 1271 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $18.99

This is *the* standard reference manual for first aid and CPR. It is clear, well illustrated, and concise.

***here There Is No Doctor: A Village Health Care Handbook*, by David Werner, Carol Thuman, and Jane Maxwell.** 1992, 446 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0942364156. Published by the Hesperian Foundation, P.O. Box 11577, Berkeley, CA 94712. List price $22.00

This book should be in every home. It was especially designed for people in rural areas without access to a doctor, but the medical information is applicable anywhere. It gives clear and concise directions for many topics, including childbirth, trauma, and the treatment of numerous diseases and parasites. The authors present the information in a way that is easily understood by the layperson lacking medical training. It includes information on both symptoms and treatment, as well as possible drug side effects, and a good chapter on first aid. It is no substitute for a doctor's services but is indispensable for those situations where no doctor is available. From Peace Corps teams to Hurricane Mitch relief workers, this book has been a valuable resource around the world.

***edicine for Mountaineering and Other Wilderness Activities*, James A. Wilkerson, M.D. (editor).** 2001, 336 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0898867992. Published by The Mountaineers, 1001 SW Klickitat Way, Seattle, WA 98134. List price $24.95

Medicine for Mountaineering is the definitive guide to providing emergency medical care when a doctor is miles or days away. This book has a list of ten eminent contributors from the medical profession. It is not a substitute for a basic first-aid manual or training, but it is a good companion to David Werner's *Where There Is No Doctor*. It could save your life or the life of someone else when doctors are not available. Has more technical medical and anatomy information than David Werner's book.

***tch Medicine: Advanced Field Procedures for Emergencies,* by Hugh L. Coffee.** 1993, 224 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0873647175. Published by Paladin Press, Gunbarrel Tech Center, 7077 Winchester Circle, Boulder, CO 80301. List price $25.00

A quality text, this book is highly recommended for dealing with significant trauma-type medical emergencies when systems are down and there are no available doctors. For surgical procedures in the field, it goes miles beyond the Red Cross first-aid books and well beyond David Werner's *Where There Is No Doctor*. It teaches advanced field procedures for small wound repair, care of the infected wound, IV therapy, pain control, amputations, treatment of burns, airway clearing procedures, and more. I hope I will never need to use this book. Containing many graphic photos and illustrations, it is not for the faint of heart. The author was a U.S. army field medic, with thousands of hours of field experience patching people up during guerilla wars in Guatemala, Sudan, and Kenya. This text calls for medical supplies that most of us won't have on hand, so you may wish to use this text to help prepare for the unexpected ahead of time, by compiling some of Dr. Coffee's recommended medical supplies.

***ilderness 911: A Step-By-Step Guide for Medical Emergencies and Improvised Care in the Backcountry,* by Eric A. Weiss, M.D.** 1998, 237 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0898865974.

Published by Mountaineers Books, 1001 SW Klickitat Way, Suite 201, Seattle, WA 98134. List price $16.95

This is a true "pocket book." It is very precise, concise, and compact. A perfect little book to carry with you on your travels to the backcountry or the third world, or to put into your 72-hour grab-and-run kit (see Chapter 3). The author is not only the Associate Director of Trauma at Stanford University Medical Center, he is also a medical officer for the Himalayan Rescue Association. From National Geographic expeditions in the jungles of Belize to the peaks of the Himalayas, he has done it all. Weiss' tidbits of wisdom, called "Weiss Advice," are particularly helpful for improvising during emergency medical situations.

***ilderness Medicine: Beyond First Aid,* by William Forgey, M.D.** 1999, 246 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0762704903. Published by Globe Pequot Press, 246 Goose Lane, P.O. Box 480, Guilford, CT 06437. List price $14.95

This is an excellent guide from a man who spends a lot of time in the backwoods of northern Canada. Dr. Forgey is president of the Wilderness Medical Society and assistant clinical professor of family medicine at the Indiana University School of Medicine. His guide offers valuable information for field treatment of injuries, infection, and illnesses (both for the trained medical practitioner and the layman), offering materials and methods alternatives to suit your medicine bag and training. He offers his recommendations for lists of first-aid materials to bring along, custom tailored for various types of backcountry exposure, and includes both nonprescription-based kits as well as kits for people with access to prescription medicines.

***ilderness Medicine,* 5th edition, by Paul S. Auerbach.** 2007, 2316 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0323032285. Published by Mosby, an imprint of Elsevier, 11830 Westline Industrial Drive, St. Louis, MO 63146. List price $199.00

My backcountry medical associates say that this is the definitive medical guide for dealing with almost any kind of medical emergency that may be encountered in remote situations or when doctors are overloaded by some kind of catastrophic event. This voluminous resource equips rescuers and health care professionals to diagnose and treat the full range of emergencies and health problems encountered in the wilderness. This text is not a basic first-aid manual and is more oriented toward the professional.

***eart and Hands: A Midwife's Guide to Pregnancy and Birth*, by Elizabeth Davis.** 1997, 312 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1587612213. Published by Celestial Arts, P.O. Box 7123, Berkeley, CA 94707. List price $32.50

This is required reading at many midwife schools and a textbook for numerous midwife classes. Very comprehensive and beautifully illustrated. Whether you wish to know more about birthing procedures and midwifery, would like to prepare yourself for the possibility of emergency childbirth, or are simply considering the option of a home birth, I highly recommend this book.

***iritual Midwifery*, by Ina May Gaskin.** 2002, 480 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1570671043. Published by Book Publishing Company, P.O. Box 99, Summertown, TN 38483. List price $19.95

This is the fourth edition of *Spiritual Midwifery*, and it has been significantly revised and updated. Ina May Gaskin is the wife of Stephen Gaskin and one of the founders of The Farm (a

long-standing “commune” in Tennessee). She has presided over hundreds of births and two generations of midwifery. If you don’t mind a “hippie” orientation, then this book offers invaluable information, advice, and perspective from a woman who has a wealth of experience with midwifery and home birthing.

9

When High-Tech Medicine Fails

> ***Health**: 1. Physical and mental well-being; freedom from disease, pain or defect; normality of physical and mental functions; soundness.*
>
> ***—Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language, Second College Edition***

The purpose of this chapter is to provide introductions to a variety of so-called nontraditional medicines, treatments, and healing practices. What is nontraditional in the United States may actually be standard medical practice in other parts of the world. For instance, in most parts of the developed world, following antibiotic treatment with probiotics to replenish good bacteria in your intestines is established medicine. In the United States it is considered nontraditional and holistic. Due to the high probability that at some point in time you will be in a situation where your preferred choices are simply unavailable, it is a good idea to be informed about the alternatives. I suggest you read through the following introductions with an open mind. One never knows what the future will bring, and someday your life may depend on one of these alternatives.

Even when traditional medicine is readily available, this chapter may help you find your way to effective alternative materials or methods for healing modern chronic ailments that often respond poorly to Western-style allopathic medicine—such as heart disease, hepatitis C, diabetes, cancer, or AIDS. Some of these healing modalities could help you achieve a higher level of health and a better quality of life, even if you are not currently suffering from any serious health issues. I encourage you to explore the best of both worlds. In some cases, high-tech allopathic healing methods will work best, but in other cases alternative medicine may work better. Talk to your physician and/or alternative healing practitioner. Use wisdom and listen to the voice of your intuition. If your condition is chronic or life threatening, do some serious research into both traditional and alternative methods. When your life is at stake, there are too many successes within both orthodox and alternative medicine to blindly discount either.

Primitive societies throughout the world have their own healing methods. Most of the oldest societies on the planet are found in the so-called developing or thirdworld nations and do not have ready access to high-tech medicine. These "low-tech" societies rely on a wide variety of methods and materials that promote the body's natural healing processes. In some cases, these methods may be found to be at least as effective as modern medicine. Sometimes a synergistic combination of Western orthodox medicine and low-tech healing traditions could be just the right recipe for comprehensive healing.

It is often much easier to take an antibiotic or agree to an operation than to pursue an alternative healing method. However, you may not always have access to modern medical services, and there are numerous diseases that do not respond effectively to antibiotics or other allopathic medicines. In times of natural disasters and wars, hightech medical services and

supplies are usually among the first services to overload or totally disappear. Antibiotics can be extremely valuable in fighting severe infections, but they also tend to disrupt the body's balance and immune systems. In the long run, alternative methods often restore health and the body's overall balance more effectively than antibiotics. The overuse of antibiotics, both in humans and animal feed, has contributed to the rapid development of new strains of bacteria that are antibiotic resistant and have the potential for exploding into devastating worldwide plagues. For these drug-resistant strains of bacteria, and most viruses, alternative methods may offer the only truly effective treatments.

It is easy to be careless about health when we know an ambulance is just minutes away and we are "covered" by insurance. Bernie Siegel, M.D., in his wonderful book *Love, Medicine and Miracles*, states that the death rate has dropped many times during doctors' strikes—for example, in 1976 in Los Angeles and Bogota, and in 1973 in Jerusalem. "Several years ago," he wrote, "there was a strike of ambulance drivers in Cape Cod, where we have a summer house. Panic ensued—what to do in emergencies? Well, the number of emergencies dropped precipitously until the strike was over—another wonderful example of how much control we have."

THE HOLISTIC HEALTH MOVEMENT

Back in the early 1980s, I met Dr. Garten, an alternative healer who practiced what he preached. At that time, he was in his mid-eighties and was working fulltime helping people to overcome so-called "terminal" cancers and other serious diseases without drugs or surgery. He was vibrant, healthy, and strong—he easily turned patients over to manipulate their joints and spines. He used quite a variety of methods, lumped under the heading of "naturopathic medicine." He told me the following story about his youth.

When Dr. Garten was in his mid-thirties, he ate a typical American diet low in fiber, with lots of meat, fat, sugar, and starches. Being young and generally healthy, he had ignored a slight dull pain in his chest, which radiated down his left arm until it became excruciating. In a flash, he lost all strength and slumped to the floor. The diagnosis was shocking. He had suffered a severe heart attack and was dying of heart disease. The specialist's estimate was that he had only a few days left, or perhaps a week or two. Deciding to spend his last few days in relative comfort, he retired to the beach in Florida. Enviously, he watched a group of young people playing athletic games on the beach. One day, they invited Dr. Garten to join in their games. He explained that he was a very sick man with an incurable heart disease, and couldn't possibly participate in anything athletic. With messianic zeal, they practically carried him to their teacher and idol, Bernard MacFadden, a teacher and promoter of natural healing. What transpired totally negated the specialist's terminal diagnosis and resulted in a profound revolution in Dr. Garten's own medical beliefs, philosophy, and practice.

Garten told me, "I underwent a complete fast for 28 days. Most surprisingly, at

the end of this 'ordeal,' I felt stronger than at any other time. I could run and play with the younger set, which they considered 'routine' experience." Not only did he recover from his "terminal heart disease," he returned to the youthful vigor and strength of his early twenties. With remarkable vitality and energy, he continued to work full time well into his nineties, until a serious mugging fractured his skull and resulted in a loss of memory and body function.

The modern holistic health movement tries to combine the best of Western technology with traditional healing arts to treat the whole person and to promote the body's natural ability to heal itself of almost any ailment. There are thousands of scientifically documented cases of "spontaneous remissions" of serious or deadly ailments. "Spontaneous remission" is the Western term for a healing that occurs without any rational, scientific explanation of its cause. These cases include documented spontaneous remissions of AIDS, terminal cancers, blindness, multiple sclerosis, and other major diseases. For some difficult-to-heal diseases that the modern world has labeled "incurable," the success rate using traditional low-tech healing methods may be considerably better than that of Western medicine. This is not to say that traditional methods are always superior to high-tech solutions. Based on great knowledge of human anatomy and physiology, Western medicine has developed many life-saving procedures and medicines plus a battery of techniques for dealing with traumatic injuries.

There are far more low-tech healing systems and techniques than I could possibly cover in this text. I have tried to include enough information in this manual so that in an emergency it may provide some practical assistance. Look to the recommended resources for detailed information on each of the listed healing alternatives. If you are confronted with a serious illness, I urge you to seek professional help whenever possible.

THE LOW-TECH MEDICINE CABINET

Simple, Effective Remedies and Supplements to Have on Hand

Here are some of the more effective self-help remedies that I recommend you keep on hand. They are readily available in your local supermarket, drugstore, health food stores, and online (see resources). See *Prescription for Nutritional Healing,* by James F. Balch, M.D., and Phyllis A. Balch, or *Food Additives, Nutrients and Supplements A-To-Z: A Shopper's Guide,* by Eileen Renders, for more complete dose and application information on each remedy or supplement.

CAUTION: For serious problems, seek out a qualified herbalist, naturopath, or medical physician.

Acidophilus and other "probiotics." The use of oral antibiotics kills the colon's natural bacteria that are an essential part of healthy colon function. Without these bacteria, *Candida albicans* (yeast) tends to grow like wildfire, throwing off the balance of the entire body. This usually causes fatigue and a general sense of malady, while opening up the body to further bacterial or viral infection and another round of antibiotics. Take acidophilus in liquid or capsule

form or eat yogurt with active cultures twice a day after taking oral antibiotics. Today there are a number of supplements, referred to as "probiotics," which include a variety of gut-friendly bacteria in addition to acidophilus. For more information, see *The Complete Candida Yeast Guidebook* by Jeanne Marie Martin with Zoltan P. Rona, M.D.

Aloe vera gel. The juice from the aloe vera plant has been scientifically proven to improve the healing of burns. It is also good for healing cuts and scrapes (it is not antibiotic or antiseptic) and as a nutritional supplement. Use the live plant by cutting off a leaf and squeezing the gel from the leaf directly onto the wound. Alternatively, buy the gel or juice at a health food store.

Arnica montana. Arnica is an herbal remedy available in a tincture or extract or in homeopathic preparations. It is a useful remedy for boosting the body's healing response to traumatic injuries, such as sprains, fractures, and bruises.

Astragalus. One of the most highly regarded herbs used in Chinese medicine, astragalus is an efficient immune-system booster. The recommended dosage is 10 drops of the extract taken in water daily (Renders 1999, 203). Taking it during the flu season is recommended, if there is something "going around" or if you are suffering from cancer, AIDS, or other immune deficiency diseases. Do not take astragalus if you are already suffering from a fever. Many herbal immune system booster combinations, available at health food stores, are based around astragalus.

Calendula. Used as a cream, it is an effective salve for skin irritations and rashes, including eczema. This cream can promote the healing of stubborn skin splits and wounds that are not responding to normal treatment. Taken internally (25 to 75 drops, one to four times per day), it supports the immune system and has both antibacterial and antiviral properties.

Coffee. Not generally perceived as a healing herb, coffee does have healing applications. Use it in enemas (see the "Coffee Enema" section on Enema" for details) to promote healthy liver function. Use the grounds as a poultice to combat fungal infections such as athlete's foot.

Colloidal/ionic silver. The medicines that hospitals use to fight skin infections on severe burn patients are all based on the active component of silver. Colloidal/ionic silver is a broadband antibiotic solution that has been used against a myriad of harmful protozoa, bacteria, and viruses, though users indicate that it may require significant quantities (on the order of 2 cups to a quart a day) to successfully treat serious illnesses. It is available in health food stores (expensive!) or can be made for just pennies a day with a simple commercial or homemade colloidal/ ionic silver generator. See the "Colloidal and Ionic Silver" section for more details.

Colostrum. Colostrum has been called "nature's healing miracle." Medical research shows that colostrum is one of the few supplements that can help nearly everyone who is ill. It is a powerful immune-system booster, super nutrient, and anti-aging supplement. Colostrum is a thick, yellow pre-milk substance that is produced toward the end of a female's pregnancy by her mammary glands and during the first 48 hours after giving birth. Humans produce small amounts of colostrum, but a cow produces approximately nine gallons during the critical first 36 hours after giving birth. Each drop contains immunoglobulins, growth factors, antibodies, vitamins, minerals, enzymes, amino acids, and other special substances designed to give the body a head start in a lifetime of invasion by various microorganisms and environmental toxins. Numerous testimonials indicate that colostrum significantly improves general health, wound healing, allergies, diabetes, hepatitis C, immune deficiencies, bowel problems, chronic infections,

fibromyalgia, cancer, chronic fatigue syndrome, severe allergies, and a host of other maladies. They also indicate that the quality of colostrum varies significantly between suppliers and that it is important to use colostrum that has been processed correctly to retain its biological potency. Avoid colostrum from cows nurtured with antibiotics or hormones and on feed grown with pesticides. For information on dosages, choosing a brand of colostrum, and the efficacy of colostrum for specific problems, see *Immune System Control: Colostrum and Lactoferrin,* by Beth M. Ley, and *Colostrum, "Nature's Healing Miracle,"* by Donald R. Henderson, M.D., M.P.H., and Deborah Mitchell, or check out the Center for Nutritional Research (CNR) Web site at www.bovinecolostrum.com.

Echinacea. A traditional Native American medicinal herb, echinacea has become a part of mainstream selfhelp medicine. It is now available at most drugstores, since its antiviral and antibacterial properties have been scientifically documented. Take a dropperful of the extract twice daily for short-term use or use as directed in one of the many different commercial healing herb combinations (Renders 1999, 212). Echinacea is often combined with goldenseal for fighting flu. Do not use echinacea for over three weeks at a time, due to potential bladder irritation.

Enema bag. An enema is useful for far more than just relieving constipation. Coffee enemas are a powerful aid to healing because they stimulate and boost liver function. If you have been fasting, cleansing the toxins out of your colon will improve your energy and vitality, enabling you to function at a surprising level of activity (see the section on fasting).

Epsom salts. Epsom salts are useful for adding to water for hot-soak infection treatments, the liver cleanse (see the section on liver cleanse on The Economics of Climate Change) and for adding to enema water. A low-cost material, epsom salts are available at all drugstores and many supermarkets.

Garlic. A true "wonder herb," garlic has powerful antibiotic and antibacterial properties as well as tremendous nutritional antioxidant value. Whereas the number of active ingredients in penicillin is one, at least 35 active ingredients have been identified in garlic, making it much more difficult for bacteria to grow resistant to garlic than to penicillin. Crush the whole cloves and use directly on fungal infections and on wounds to prevent infection or gangrene. Taken internally, it has been found effective against various tumors, tuberculosis, cholera, typhus, and amoebic dysentery. It has been used effectively against many different viruses and antibiotic-resistant bacteria as well as intestinal parasites. Use raw, fresh cloves, as powdered garlic loses most of its potency.

> **CAUTION: Cooking destroys most of garlic's potency, but your friends may not stick around after a serious raw garlic treatment!**

Goldenseal. Goldenseal is one of the most popular herbs of all time. It has powerful antifungal and antibacterial properties against organisms such as *Candida* and *E. coli*. The powdered root has strong cauterizing properties and can be used directly on wounds to reduce or eliminate excessive bleeding.

Grapefruit seed extract (GSE). Like garlic, GSE is another true "wonder herb," exhibiting powerful antibiotic, antiviral, and antibacterial properties. It has been used successfully to battle numerous diseases and ailments, including Lyme disease, *Candida*, *Giardia*, amoebic dysentery, many kinds of parasites, athlete's foot, ringworm, gum disease, herpes, colds, flu, and some

forms of arthritis. The liquid form is bitter and may be diluted in juice to make it more palatable. The typical treatment is 10 to 15 drops of GSE liquid concentrate diluted in juice, taken three to four times daily (Sachs 1997, 78). Its high antibacterial action combined with low toxicity makes GSE a great alternative to regular antibiotics as a topical treatment for wounds. Mix a half-ounce of GSE with 8 ounces of distilled water and apply to wounds with a spray bottle. Drinking water may be disinfected using 10 drops of GSE concentrate per 6 ounces of water.

Allow water to stand for 15 minutes before drinking. For more information on specific treatments and the efficacy of GSE, see *The Authoritative Guide To Grapefruit Seed Extract* by Alan Sachs, D.C., C.C.N.

Homeopathic medicine. Homeopathy appears to stimulate the body's own immune system in ways that Western science still doesn't fully understand. For a reasonable price, you can buy homeopathy kits that contain 10 to 30 common remedies for treating a wide variety of ailments. Sometimes homeopathy works wonders when other medicines and remedies fail, like the time it helped my dog rebound from the edge of death when she was suffering from a serious antibiotic-resistant infection. During the Spanish flu epidemic of 1918, regular hospitals experienced fatality rates of around 30 percent, whereas homeopathic hospitals treated more than 26,000 people with a fatality rate of just over 1 percent.

Honey. A natural antiseptic, honey has been used on the battlefield for treating wounds since ancient times and as recently as WWI. Some physicians claim that wounds treated with honey heal faster than those treated with modern antiseptics.

Hyssop. Though little used in the West, hyssop is another powerful herb, exhibiting strong antiviral and antibacterial properties. One of the few herbs that has been proven effective against active tuberculosis, hyssop is often prescribed by Chinese herbalists for lung ailments. In today's world, where there is a constant threat that antibiotic-resistant tuberculosis might blossom into a global pandemic, I suggest keeping a supply of hyssop on hand.

Joint health. The efficacy of the combination of glucosamine sulfate and chondroitin sulfate for helping the body to regenerate joint tissue has been well documented (see the book *The Arthritis Cure,* by Jason Theodosakas, Brenda Adderly, and Barry Fox). You can pick up this combination in most drugstores and at Costco. About a third of all arthritis sufferers do not improve with glucosamine and chondroitin, but may improve with the addition of MSM (methyl sulfonyl methane), a naturally occurring, organic, nontoxic compound that supplies the body with readily assimilated sulfur for joint regeneration. In addition to daily supplements of glucosamine with chondroitin, you might try adding 10 to 20 grams per day (4 grams equals 1 teaspoon) of MSM spread throughout the day for the first couple weeks before tapering off to between 2 and 10 grams per day on a long-term basis (Ley 1998, 34). Since MSM is very bitter, mix powdered MSM with juice to make it more palatable, dilute ½ teaspoon in 12 ounces of water to make it nearly tasteless, or take in capsule or pill form. SAM-e is another scientifically documented joint care supplement. SAM-e users often report improvements in joint mobility and reductions in joint pain within the first two weeks of usage, whereas users of glucosamine with chondroitin usually do not experience significant improvement over the first two months of usage.

Neem oil. The National Research Council (NRC), Washington, D.C., considers neem to be "one of the most promising of all plants. . . . [It] may eventually benefit every person on this planet." Like garlic, neem appears to be another "wonder herb" with tremendous antiviral,

antifungal, and antibacterial properties. It is used in herbal cosmetics, medicines, shampoos, and for organic pesticides/fungicides. Check it out at www.neemon.com.

Oregano oil. Oil of oregano is another broad-band super-herb with powerful antioxidant, antiviral, antifungal, antiparasite, and antibacterial properties. It is traditionally used for treatment of wounds, headaches, sinusitis, lung infections, colds, intestinal worms, athlete's foot, and so on. More recently it has been found to be effective in fighting chronic *candida* (yeast) infections. It may be taken internally or applied topically.

Parasite herbs. Take black walnut tincture, clove capsules, and wormwood capsules to deparasite yourself and your pets. See the herbal section of this chapter for more details. There are a number of herbs commonly known as "wormwood," but studies show that *Artemisia annua* (one of the wormwoods) is also very effective in treating malaria, being 90 percent more effective than chloroquine (Naiman 2008).

Parasite zapper. Build a low-cost electronic "zapper," or buy one from the Dr. Clark Research Association (see references and resources) or one of several other sources available on the Internet. Searching the Internet for "zapper" combined with "Hulda Clark" will turn up several different suppliers, since Dr. Clark did not patent this technology, but gave it to humankind as a gift. See the herbal section of this chapter for more details.

> **CAUTION: If you plan to build your own zapper, check the Internet for a correction to the wiring connections described in Dr. Clark's earlier editions of *The Cure for All Diseases*. This mistake has been corrected in all of her more recent publications.**

St. John's wort. Sometimes called "nature's Prozac," St. John's wort is mostly known for its antidepressant and mood-enhancing properties. It is also an immunesystem booster with antiviral properties. A typical dose is 10 drops of the liquid extract once daily (Renders 1999, 242). Do not take it if pregnant, because it may cause increased photosensitivity and can cause adverse reactions with some prescription drugs (contact your physician before combining it with pharmaceutical antidepressants or other drugs).

Super-antibacterial/antifungal lotion. I found the following concoction works well against toenail fungus that no longer responds to over-the-counter pharmaceutical medications. It is very powerful, very effective, and very malodorous. First, mix equal parts of tea tree oil and neem oil. Next, crush an equal part of fresh garlic cloves and throw into the solution. The tea tree oil keeps the neem oil liquid and preserves the crushed garlic cloves, drawing active components out of the garlic cloves and into the oil.

Tea tree oil. This powerful antifungal and disinfectant is used topically (do not take internally) for skin infections, itchy scalp, and fungal infections such as athlete's foot. This oil is very penetrating and will penetrate through the skin to heal sealed-over infections, boils, and pimples. Tea tree oil is one of the few liquids that can seep through toenails.

Tiger Balm. This soothing balm eases the pain of sore muscles, stiff necks, bruises, and so on. Do not use it with homeopathic remedies, because the camphor in Tiger Balm may counteract ("antidote") many homeopathic medicines.

Traumeel cream. This homeopathic ointment is great for speeding the healing of bruises, muscle aches, and sprains. Rub the ointment into the affected area. Based on *Arnica montana* combined with about a dozen other homeopathic remedies, it also comes in liquid and tablet

form.

Usnea. Another powerful herb with antibiotic, antiviral, and antibacterial properties, usnea is used internally or externally against bacterial, fungal, or viral infections. Usnea is often combined with spilanthes or echinacea. Apply the tincture directly to external infections or take 30 to 40 drops of the tincture with water, twice a day.

Vitamin C. Vitamin C is a powerful antioxidant, immune-system booster, natural detoxifier, and necessary body nutrient for tissue health and wound healing. Nobel Prize–winner Linus Pauling suggests daily ingestion of 2 to 9 grams (spread into several doses throughout the day) for cancer prevention and optimum health. A more conservative daily dosage is 500 to 1,000 mg (Renders 1999, 197). Powdered Vitamin C is handy for sprinkling in foods and liquids to detoxify mold aflatoxins and many other toxic substances. Sprinkle powdered Vitamin C into purified water to remove the taste of iodine, chlorine, or other water treatment chemicals.

Vitamin E. Vitamin E is a powerful antioxidant useful for maintaining the health of the circulatory system and the skin. The benefits of Vitamin E could fill several pages. I like to break open capsules to spread on healing wounds to help speed the healing process and minimize scar tissue. A dose of 400 IU is good for combating the effects of toxins in everyday foods (Renders 1999, 114).

THE ESSENCE OF HEALING

> The natural healing force within each one of us is the greatest force in getting well.
> **— Hippocrates**

What is healing? What do we know about the body's different mechanisms for healing? *Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language, Second College Edition,* defines "heal" as "1. to make sound, well, or to make healthy again; restore to health 2. (a) to cure or get rid of (a disease); (b) to cause (a wound, sore, etc.) to become closed or scarred so as to restore a healthy condition."

We all know the feeling of a healthy body and a good state of health. In one sense, "dis-ease" or "poor health" helps us to define the "healthy" state. We do not usually notice a state of good health, but we immediately notice a state of disease by how lousy we feel. Over the past few decades, Western science has made tremendous progress in understanding the body's biochemical mechanisms for communication between the cells and some of the body's internal mechanisms for responding to health threats. A whole new field of research, called "psychoneuroimmunology" (PNI), has developed to research the complex interconnections of mood, attitude, and mind on the body's defense systems and biochemistry. However, modern science has a long way to go to fully understand the complex control systems that actually govern the healing process. The effectiveness of these control systems determines the final outcome of the healing process. Many doctors will agree that they do not really heal people. They do their best to facilitate healing, but the body—and the life energy within it—does the actual healing.

Genetics and Cellular Growth

Although the scientific understanding of genetics, DNA, and the body's biochemical message transmitters and receptors has grown tremendously over the past few decades, we still do not understand how the body governs the growth of new cells. We know that DNA contains the information that determines hair color, body size, and many other characteristics, but we do not understand how that information is transmitted to control the growth of cells. All the cells in one body contain the same DNA, the same genetic code. All humans start out from one fertilized egg cell, which receives half its genetic code from the mother and half from the father. As the fertilized egg grows, the cells multiply by splitting in two. One cell becomes 2, then 4, then 8, then 16, then 32, and so on. At some point in time, the cells start differentiating. Egg cells slowly change to become skin cells, bone cells, muscle cells, nerve cells, and so forth. Each type of cell has the same genetic information, yet the cells of each organ are significantly different in appearance and function. How does this happen? What controls this process? With all its magnificence and advances, Western science still does not understand this process. Why can a lizard grow a new tail, but a human cannot grow a new arm? Why does this control system go crazy sometimes and allow tumors and cancers to grow in an otherwise healthy body? In every epidemic, why do some people remain healthy while others succumb to disease? Among the low-tech healing traditions of the world, there are many different explanations for these processes, but there are a few recurring themes.

Body Energy

Numerous traditions from around the world refer to some kind of nonphysical energy system that governs the growth and health of the body. There appears to be a complex web of interconnections between the physical systems of the body and the nonphysical aspects of the being. Western science is just beginning to explore the effects upon physical healing of many different nonphysical influences. There is a growing body of scientific evidence showing a conclusive correlation between healing success and such intangibles as mood, thoughts, remote prayer, and therapeutic touch, among others. Some of these data derive from carefully controlled, scientific double-blind studies.

The Asian healing disciplines of acupuncture and shiatsu both deal with some kind of energy distribution system within the body. In the ancient Chinese system of health, it is the proper flow and distribution of chi or life energy that is responsible for maintaining physical health and vitality. The Indians speak of prana—or the breath of life or life energy. Hatha yoga from India uses various postures and stretches combined with mental imagery and controlled breath concentration to stimulate the proper circulation of prana throughout the body to help it maintain perfect health. In shamanistic cultures throughout the world, there is a common thread of belief in the soul or spirit that is responsible for distributing the healing life energy throughout the body. In these cultures, a shaman travels into nonordinary reality to retrieve parts of the sick person's soul and accumulates personal power that is then reintroduced back into the patient's

being to help restore physical health and spiritual harmony. Recently, scientists have documented many cases of shamans healing people suffering from serious disease and illness, even those deemed incurable by Western doctors.

Kirlian photography, a method of photography that captures energy fields, yields scientific evidence supporting the existence of some kind of bioenergy field around living things. The Armenian electrician, Semyon Davidovich Kirlian, discovered that he could make photographs of an apparent aura around objects (such as a hand or a leaf) by electrically charging an object and placing the charged object on top of a photographic plate. Because the color and shape of the apparent aura vary dramatically with the health of the subject, Kirlian photographs seem to show more than just an electric field. Researchers discovered another startling feature: if the tip of a leaf is cut off, the missing portion shows in a Kirlian photograph as a phantom outline. Likewise, a Kirlian photograph of a man's hand that is missing a finger will show the phantom outline of the missing digit. One explanation is that each organism projects a blueprint of itself into a bioelectric field. It is hypothesized that this field may provide the basic pattern that controls the growth of individual cells. If the projection of this field is weak or nonexistent, disease-causing organisms can easily multiply within the body, or the growth of individual organs may not be controlled properly, producing tumors and cancers.

The bioelectric fields hinted at by Kirlian photographs have not been scientifically measured; that does not mean they do not exist and won't be scientifically verified at some future date. Two hundred years ago, the existence of radio waves had not yet been discovered. If you were to describe today's phenomena of cellular phones and satellite television to George Washington or Thomas Jefferson, they would probably think you were crazy. There is a small segment of the population who do see "auras" around people and other living things. According to interviews with these people, the colors and intensities of these auras vary depending on such factors as mood and health.

Perhaps the consciousness of an individual is just as strong a factor in the health of an individual's field as are environmental factors like diet, exercise, and toxic pollutants. It is possible that the influence of our thoughts and beliefs on this field explains some of the scientifically documented influence of mood, attitude, and remote prayer on the probability for success and the rate of healing from serious illnesses and surgery. Perhaps many traditional healing modalities might be just as successful as—or even more successful than—the materialist medical system at stimulating this field and promoting good health. An antibiotic can be a great help for attacking an invading germ, but it does nothing to stimulate the body's natural defense mechanisms for maintaining longterm health. Some of the low-tech healing disciplines covered by this chapter deal with the mind, spirit, and subtle energies of the body. Through their application, you may be able to facilitate healing and promote longterm health and longevity.

COLLOIDAL AND IONIC SILVER

In the early 1990s, back in the days when I still worked for a corporation and had comprehensive medical and dental insurance, I underwent gum surgery to repair deep pockets that had developed in my gums next to several of my teeth (up to 11

mm). At that time, I was told that without surgery I would soon lose these teeth. A few years later, when I was a self-employed contractor in Hawaii, three of the pockets had returned to a depth of around 8 mm and once again gum surgery was recommended as the only way to save the neighboring teeth. Since I no longer had comprehensive dental insurance, and did not have several thousand extra dollars that I felt like throwing into the surgery, I decided to try using colloidal silver in daily Waterpik self-treatments to see if that would improve these pockets. Six months later, at my next dental checkup, first one hygienist poked my gums repeatedly, then she called a second one over. After poking around in my gums for a few more minutes, she called the dentist over. My 8-mm pockets had shrunk to 3 mm, and none of them could believe that some kind of home remedy could have accomplished this feat. Their final conclusion was that the hygienist must have made a mistake in her prognosis 6 months earlier, but I knew otherwise. You see, when the hygienist had given me the bad news about my deep gum pockets, I had her stick the measuring probe into my gums while I watched in the mirror, in order to see where the worst pockets were so I could focus my Waterpik self-treatments on those areas.

When I told this story to my friend Tom, a retired chiropractor, he related that with simple twice-daily mouth washing using homemade colloidal silver, he had cured himself of similar pockets in just two months time. Tom said he made a strong silver solution, then twice a day he would swish it around in his mouth for several minutes before swallowing it. Tom says that even though the pockets have long since disappeared, he continues this daily routine as a preventative measure.

Imagine a powerful antibiotic agent that attacks more than 600 harmful bacteria, protozoa, molds, yeasts, and viruses that you can make yourself any time and any place for just pennies a day. This is what proponents of colloidal and ionic silver claim it to be. They tout it as a solution to antibiotic-resistant bacteria and possibly devastating future plagues. Colloids are solutions of particles that are so tiny that they remain suspended in a liquid without settling to the bottom of their container, and colloidal silver is a solution of water with tiny suspended particles of silver. Ionic silver is a solution with extremely tiny electrically charged particles of silver that are on the order of the size of individual molecules. According to some proponents of ionic silver, it is the charged particles of silver that are primarily responsible for the healing and antibiotic properties in both of these related solutions. Since colloidal silver is the more common term, rather than saying colloidal/ionic silver, I will simply refer to these solutions as “colloidal silver.”

Silver has been used medically for more than 100 years, and the medical use of colloidal silver is approved by the FDA in a grandfather clause. Because it is not patentable and therefore has no economic value to pharmaceutical companies, there is little money available for thorough scientific research on the medical effectiveness of colloidal silver for fighting various diseases. My personal experience with colloidal silver is somewhat limited. In my experience, I found that it may not always work as quickly as antibiotics (in cases where the antibiotics are effective) and may require consumption of significant amounts of the liquid to be effective.

Many claim to have used colloidal silver to cure themselves of serious diseases like Lyme

disease, AIDS, a variety of cancers, hepatitis C, *Candida albicans*, and the flu. Because there are no good data on dosages, people suffering from serious diseases have been experimenting on themselves. Typically, these people have been finding positive results drinking about 8 to 32 ounces per day of 5 to 10 parts per million (ppm) colloidal silver. You can drink more at lower concentrations or less at higher concentrations to get the same effect. When you start drinking colloidal/ionic silver, you may find yourself feeling a little weak, with flu-like symptoms. This is explained as the result of your body dealing with toxic wastes from organism die-off. If this happens, drink lots of pure water to flush your system, and reduce the dosage for a few days before resuming a higher dose. Improvement is generally seen in a few days, but cures of serious diseases may take weeks to months. A couple of tablespoons of 5 ppm colloidal silver appears to be a reasonable daily dosage for immune-system boosting for healthy persons. You can make your own lowcost silver solution using a colloidal silver generator, or you can buy 2-ounce bottles of 10 ppm colloidal silver at health food stores for about $15 each. You would have to drink 16 of these bottles, at a cost of $240, to equal the dosage of a single quart of 10 ppm colloidal silver (made for pennies with your own colloidal silver generator).

The ppm of a colloidal or ionic solution only tells part of the story. It appears that the important active component in these solutions is the charged silver particles themselves. Since ionic solutions contain submicroscopic particles on the order of the size of individual molecules, a 5 ppm ionic silver solution could contain hundreds of thousands of times as many charged silver particles as a 40 ppm colloidal silver solution that contains four times the total mass of silver but has much larger particles. I know one man who claims to obtain excellent results making a 1-quart ionic silver solution in just 15 minutes using a device similar to the one in Figure 9-1, and diluting this solution to make a gallon of water for daily use.

There is a rare medical condition, known as argyria, which is caused by the ingestion of large amounts of silver, typically in the form of the silver salts and nitrates that were common in patent medicines of the 1800s and early 1900s. Argyria is a cosmetic condition that is physically harmless, but results in an undesirable bluish tint in some parts of the body. The recent news headlines about a “blue man” suffering from argyria makes it clear that it is possible to overdo it with colloidal silver. Apparently, this man had been suffering from a bad case of dermatitis, and had treated it for over a decade both by drinking large amounts of colloidal silver daily and also rubbing colloidal silver on his skin every day (Fox News 2007). Proponents of ionic silver state that the particles of silver in this type of solution are so small and the actual amount of silver in these solutions is so tiny that the chance of getting argyria from the consumption of ionic silver is practically nonexistent. In the period 1900–1950, when most cases of argyria were reported, silver-based medicines typically contained large concentrations of silver nitrates or silver chlorides and were not based on colloidal or ionic silvers, which are typically effective using far smaller net amounts of silver. At any rate, I suggest that you proceed cautiously when ingesting significant quantities of colloidal or ionic silver on a regular basis.

Making Your Own Colloidal Silver Generator

In the early 1900s, colloidal silver was very expensive, but in recent years a physicist (Bob Beck,

D.Sc.) came up with a simple method for making it. A modern colloidal silver generator is about as complex as a flashlight. Making colloidal silver simply involves placing a DC voltage across two chunks of pure silver (a cathode and an anode) immersed in pure water. Supposedly, 33 volts is the optimum voltage, but 27 volts from three 9-volt batteries works fine. If these are not available, you could get by with two 12-volt solar panels wired in series for a total output of 24 volts. This setup would generate colloidal silver at a slower rate.

See Figure 9-1 for a sketch of how to hook up your own colloidal silver generator. Connect three 9-volt transistor radio batteries in series (+ terminal to – terminal to + terminal, etc.) using readily available 9-volt battery clip-on terminals. Wire a 24-volt light bulb in series with the batteries, then connect it to a minijack for easy use. The light bulb performs two functions. First, it is your battery indicator, which should shine brightly when you touch the two alligator clips or silver wires to each other (if it does not light at all, or very dimly, when you touch the clips to each other, then you should replace your battery). Second, it provides a load to the battery, so you don't drain your batteries dead after a minute or two if the silver wires are accidentally touching while making the solution. Connect one wire from your battery pack and one from the light bulb to a minijack socket. Tape your battery pack together and mount your lamp, battery pack, and minijack socket into an appropriate box. Split the wires from the minijack plug and connect them to two alligator clips. Cut two 6-inch lengths of 99.99 percent pure silver wire (14 or 16 gauge works well) and bend the ends into ½-inch hooks for hanging over the edge of a glass. Purchase the electrical materials at Radio Shack, Wal-Mart, Intertan, and so on. Silver wire of 99.9 percent purity is available from jewelry supply stores and some craft stores, or you may purchase the pure silver wire, silver generator kits, and complete silver generators from Sota Instruments (see references and resources at the end of this chapter).

Using Your Colloidal Silver Generator

- Most people stress the use of distilled water, though some people say that reverse-osmosis-filtered water will do, provided that the source water is low on total dissolved solids. Pour distilled water into a glass (do not use plastic, as colloidal silver has a tendency to bind to some plastics).

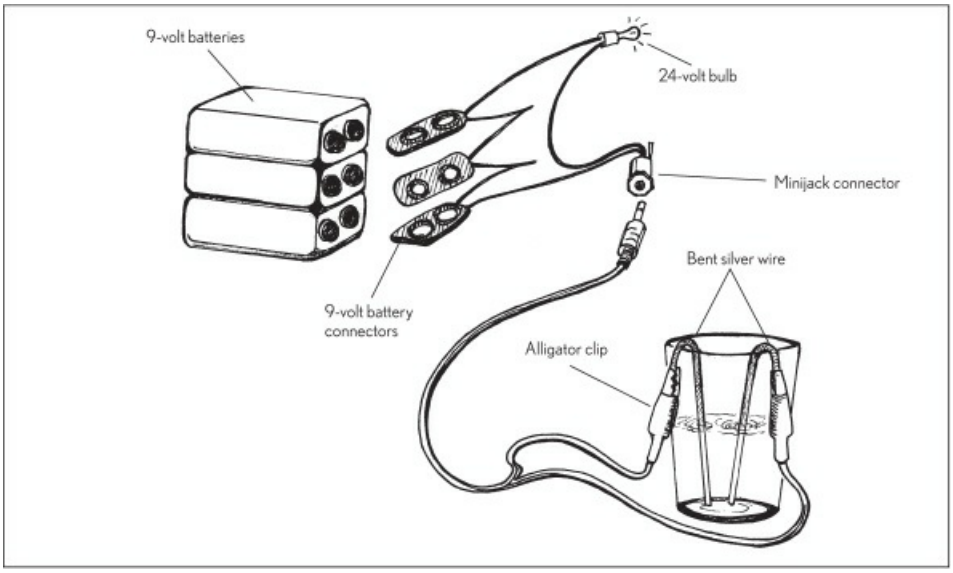


Figure 9-1. Colloidal silver generator.

- Regardless of what you may have heard previously, **DO NOT ADD SALT TO YOUR SOLUTION.** Salt will combine with some of the silver ions to make silver chloride, which is less effective against bacteria (purportedly hundreds of times less effective than ionic silver), is mildly toxic (silver chloride is 300 times less toxic than silver nitrate, which is a powerful antiseptic used in eye drops for infants), and puts added silver into your system that has inferior healing properties.
- Hang the two pure silver wires over the edge of your glass into the water, and clip the two alligator clips to the outside ends of the wires (see Figure 9-1). Plug the minijack connector into your box. The light bulb should be dark or glowing very faintly. If glowing brightly, either the wires are touching or the water contains significant impurities and should not be used. Separate the wires in the solution by 1 to 2 inches.
- If the generator is working properly, after about 10 to 20 minutes there should be tiny bubbles forming on one or both of the wires. If these are not visible, touch the wires together to check the battery and/or connection (the bulb should shine brightly). Ionic silver solutions should be clear or have a gold tint to them. The particles of ionic silver are too small to be seen except with an electron microscope. Colloidal silver is made from silver particles that are microscopic in size, looks like wisps of smoke emanating from one of the silver electrodes, and will usually have a gray or silver tint to the solution. Sota Instruments states that tests on solutions made using distilled water and their current-limiting "Silver Pulser" ionic silver generator (see "Resources") will make one cup of roughly 5 ppm ionic silver per hour of usage (i.e., 4 hours for 4 cups of 5 ppm ionic silver at room temperature, starting with distilled water). In his article, "Colloidal Silver: A Closer Look," Peter Lindemann says that the homemade colloidal silver generator of Figure 9-1 should make 8 ounces of a 3 to 5 ppm colloidal silver solution in about 20 to 25 minutes at room temperature (Lindemann 2006).
- Dosage is a matter of personal preference and experience. As a preventative, some people suggest drinking a tablespoon or two daily. For serious illnesses, some people suggest

drinking daily one to four 8-ounce glasses of 5 ppm solution. According to calculations based on an equation at silverfacts.com, the safe daily lifetime dosage for a 150-pound man is roughly ½ cup per day of 5 ppm colloidal silver (silverfacts.com, 2007). After each use, clean the silver wires with a harsh plastic pot scrubber.

- For external use, silver solution may be applied to Band-Aids and compresses or sprayed onto burns and affected skin areas. A handy silver salve kit for making a useful antiseptic/antifungal balm from colloidal silver is available at www.elixa.com/silver/ointment.
- Best-quality 9-volt batteries will last a very long time. It is preferable not to use rechargeable batteries as they only produce 7.6 volts. An alternative to using three or four 9-volt batteries is to purchase a 30-volt converter that can be plugged into a wall outlet.
- Storing colloidal silver solution: Silver colloidal solutions are light sensitive. Store them in brown glass bottles (beer, wine, root beer, or prune juice bottles) out of sun and fluorescent light, or in a dark cabinet. Do not store in the refrigerator or near microwave or magnetic fields. Do not store in plastic or metal containers. Wash and rinse bottles thoroughly, with a final rinse using colloidal silver solution. If capping a bottle with plastic or metal, be sure the cap does not touch the colloidal silver solution. If the solution is put into an eyedropper bottle, the dropper stem must be glass.

In an emergency situation, you could use silverware, old silver coins, or jewelry for your colloidal silver generator, although you would get other nonsilver materials in your solution because of impurities.

SOLUTIONS OF METALLIC SILVER NANO-PARTICLES

During the 1990s, when silver prices were extremely low and it cost more to extract silver from their mine than they could get from selling the silver, Utah-based Clifton Mining Company sought to develop a silver-based health care product that could help them generate a profit using the silver from their mine. While experimenting with different processes, they stumbled upon a new process for making silver solutions using nano-sized metallic silver particles and found that these solutions exhibited antibacterial, antiviral, and antifungal properties that far exceeded their wildest expectations. At this point, American Biotech Laboratories (ABL) was founded to use their patented processes to develop and manufacture pharmaceutical-quality silver-based medical products and nutritional supplements that have scientifically verified medicinal attributes. It took quite a bit of highlevel physics and laboratory testing to begin to figure out why these products performed so much better than their colloidal/ionic silver counterparts.

African health workers have experienced phenomenal success using ABL's nano-silver solutions to combat malaria without side effects, and other health-care workers have reported outstanding results using ABL products to cure numerous diseases including MRSA and drug-resistant tuberculosis. In laboratory tests, a 10 ppm silver gel from ABL was compared to the industry standard 300 ppm silver gel that is used in hospitals all over the world to combat infection in burn patients. The 10 ppm ABL gel was found to be 10 times more effective at killing bacteria than the standard 300 ppm gel! If I was suffering from a significant medical condition caused by bacterial, viral, or fungal infection, I would seriously consider the use of an

ABL product. Since it is effective at far smaller doses than homemade colloidal silver, the long-term daily ingestion of ABL silver solutions at their recommended dosages should present no risk for developing the rare cosmetic condition of argyria. For further information check out ABL's Web site at www.americanbiotechlabs.com.

HEALING WITH HERBS

To take medicine only when you are sick is like digging a well only when you are thirsty—is it not already too late? **—Ch'I Po, ca. 2500 B.C.**

Herbs have been used for maintaining and restoring health since the dawn of civilization. Herbal healing is very easy for most westerners to accept, since it is close to the style of medicine we are accustomed to for treatment of common ailments. In fact, the Western systems of oral and topical medicine developed and evolved from herbal medicines. About one-quarter of today's high-tech medicines either contain active ingredients produced from herbal extracts or are chemically synthesized versions of active chemicals first identified within traditional healing herbs. For example, salicin, identified as one of the active ingredients in willow bark, was synthesized and later modified to become aspirin. Other examples include the many different ephedrine pharmaceuticals for coughs, hay fever, and asthma that are derived from active ingredients in the traditional Chinese herb, *ma huang*.

> In some studies, herbal products clearly perform better [than their synthesized pharmaceutical counterparts]. Ginger, for example, has been clearly shown to be superior to pharmaceutical dimenhydrinate (Dramamine) as a preventative therapy for motion sickness. I'm not saying that pharmaceuticals are bad. I'm saying that we need more research that tests herbs against pharmaceutical drugs. . . . The Green Pharmacy with its herbal remedies may, in many cases, prove to be more economical, more effective and safer—all with fewer side effects—than the pharmaceuticals. **—James A. Duke, Ph.D.,*The Green Pharmacy***

Indigenous peoples across the planet continue to rely on herbs for much of their healing, just as they have for thousands of years. Traditional herbalists have found that certain combinations of herbs have synergistic effects: the beneficial effect of some combinations far exceeds the sum total effect if each herb is taken individually.

Herbs can be applied for specific diseases and symptoms; however, their benefits are often much broader and less specific than those of traditional pharmaceutical medicines. Many herbs are rich in antioxidants and other nutrients that boost the immune system and help the body to regenerate tissues. Some herbs, such as *Ginkgo biloba* and ginseng, have scientifically verified positive effects on overall health, vitality, brain functions, and so on, yet are not usually prescribed for specific illnesses or symptoms.

Most herbs contain numerous potentially beneficial substances. Dr. Alejandro Zaffaroni, pharmaceutical innovator and founder of Alza Corporation, a large and successful pharmaceutical company, once commented to me about the incredible complexity of these substances. "Our current understanding of their molecular chemistry is in its infancy," he said.

"With today's level of technology, we can only fully understand and synthesize a tiny portion of the potentially medicinal compounds found in herbs."

The form and potency of herbal remedies varies considerably. Most remedies use chopped or ground leaves, flowers, stems, bark, seeds, and/or roots blended into a tea, ointment, or powder or distilled into some liquid form. Some herbs, like ginkgo leaves, must be highly concentrated to be effective. It takes many pounds of ginkgo leaves to make a single dosage. On the other hand, medicinal factors in many herbs are so concentrated that they require small doses or must be significantly diluted. For example, a simple teaspoon of powdered echinacea or cascara sagrada is too large a dose for most needs.

As the U.S. public has become increasingly enamored with herbal remedies to the point where numerous herbal formulas are now available in major chain drugstores and supermarkets, the medical industry has been fighting back by promoting rather biased newspaper articles focusing on the "dangers of herbs." One such article, "Health Concerns Grow Over Herbal Aids," by Guy Gugliotta (2000) drew a scathing reply from renowned herbalist, James A. Duke, Ph.D. According to Dr. Duke, "Two of my good friends are so alarmed by such negative press on herbs that they are stopping. That means that they and their kids, if they must medicate, will take pharmaceuticals that are at least 1,000 times more likely to kill the patient. . . . The growing health concerns from Gugliotta's title are being planted and fertilized by trigger-happy journalists, pharmaceutical manufacturers and promoters, and physicians who know so little about herbs that they don't realize their pharmaceuticals are killing 140,000 Americans a year, while herbs (usually through abuse or exceeding recommended dosage) are killing fewer than 100" (Duke 2000).

A really good herbalist might know 1,000 to 2,000 herbs, which is far more than I can describe in this text. The following table lists proven herbal remedies for common problems. For herbal dosages, preparation, and application, see the recommended literature or consult a trained herbalist/naturopathic physician.

Types of Herbal Preparations

The following are general guidelines for the different methods of making herbal preparations. The amounts of herbs used, however, will vary for certain plants. For more specific information, as well as for dosage and applications, see the recommended references or consult a reputable herbalist/naturopathic doctor.

Herbal substitutes for common pharmaceuticals

Ailment	Pharmaceutical	Herbal options
Acne	Retin-A, Tetracycline	Tea tree oil (external), calendula
Allergies	Synthetic antihistamines	Garlic, stinging nettle, Ginkgo biloba
Anxiety	Ativan, Xanax, Klonopin	Hops, kava-kava, valerian

Arthritic pain	Tylenol and other NSAIDs*	Cayenne (external), celery seed, ginger, turmeric
Athlete's foot	Griseofulvin	Tea tree oil, garlic, coffee grounds (all external)
Boils	Erythromycin	Tea tree oil, slippery elm (both external)
Body odor	Commercial deodorants	Coriander, sage
BPH (benign prostatic hyperplasia)	Hytrin, Proscar	Saw palmetto, evening primrose, stinging nettle, *Pygeum africanum, Serona repens*
Bronchitis	Atropine	Echinacea, garlic
Bruises	Analgesics	Arnica, St. John's wort, yarrow, plantain (all external)
Burns	Silvadene cream	Aloe vera gel (external), calendula
Colds	Decongestants	Echinacea, ginger, lemon balm, garlic
Constipation	Laxatives	Flaxseed, psyllium, cascara sagrada
Cuts, scrapes, abscesses	Topical antibiotics	Tea tree oil, calendula, plantain, garlic (all external)
Depression (mild)	Prozac, Elavil, Trazodone, Zoloft	St. John's wort
Diarrhea	Imodium, Lomotil	Bilberry, raspberry
Dysmenorrhea (painful menstruation)	Naprosyn	Kava-kava, raspberry
Earache	Antibiotics	Echinacea, garlic, mullein
Eczema (itchy rash)	Corticosteroids	Chamomile
Atopic eczema (allergy-related rash)	Corticosteroids, sedatives, antihistamines	Evening primrose
Flu	Tylenol	Echinacea, elderberry
Gas	Mylanta, Gaviscon, Simethicone	Dill, fennel, peppermint
Gingivitis (gum inflammation)	Peridex	Chamomile, echinacea, sage
Halitosis (bad breath)	Listerine	Cardamom, parsley, peppermint
Hay fever	Antihistamines, decongestants	Stinging nettle
Headache	Aspirin, other NSAIDs*	Peppermint (external), feverfew, willow bark
Heartburn	Pepto-Bismol, Tums	Angelica, chamomile, peppermint
Hemorrhoids	Tucks	Plantain, witch hazel, calendula (all external)
Hepatitis	Interferon	Dandelion, milk thistle, turmeric
Herpes	Acyclovir	Lemon balm

High cholesterol	Mevacor	Garlic
Hives	Benadryl	Stinging nettle
Indigestion	Antacids, Reglan	Chamomile, ginger, peppermint
Insomnia	Halcion, Ativan	Chamomile, hops, lemon balm, valerian, evening primrose, kava-kava
Irregularity	Metamucil	Flaxseed, plantain, senna psyllium
Lower back pain	Aspirin, analgesics	Cayenne (external), thyme
Male pattern baldness	Rogaine	Saw palmetto
Migraine	Cafergot, Sumatriptan, Verapamil	Feverfew
Motion sickness	Dramamine	Ginger
Nail fungus	Ketoconazole	Tea tree oil, garlic (both external)
Night blindness	Vitamin A	Bilberry
PMS	NSAIDs*, diuretics, analgesics	Chaste tree, evening primrose
Rhinitis (nasal inflamation)	Cromolyn, Vancenase	Echinacea
Shingles	Acyclovir	Cayenne (external), lemon balm
Sprain	NSAIDs*	Arnica, calendula
Stress	Diazepam	Kava-kava, valerian
Tinnitus (ringing ears)	Steroids	Ginkgo
Toothache	NSAIDs*	Cloves, willow bark
Urinary tract infection	Sulfa drugs	Cranberry, stinging nettle
Vaginitis	Clindamycin, Flagyl	Garlic, goldenseal

*NSAIDs are nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

(Source: Adapted from "Nature's Medicine—The Green Pharmacy," by James A. Duke, Ph.D., *Mother Earth News* (December/January 2000), pp. 22–33)

Infusions. Infusions are made by steeping herbs in nearboiling water. Use this method with the delicate parts of herbs, like flowers and leaves, which contain volatile oils that may be lost if the herbal preparation is boiled. The usual proportion is 1 ounce of dried herb, or 2 ounces of fresh herb, to 1 pint of water. Steep the herbs in a glass or ceramic container (metal containers may react undesirably with the herbs) for 10 to 20 minutes. Strain, and drink ½ cup three times daily (Brill 1994, 9).

Decoctions. Twigs, bark, and roots are often prepared by decoction. This method uses roughly the same proportions and dosages as infusions and is used to extract the active components from these coarser materials. Heat the herbs in cold water, and simmer in a covered glass or ceramic pot for about an hour.

NOTE: Consulting an herbal reference is advised because the twigs, bark, and roots of some plants should not be boiled.

Tinctures. Tinctures are made by extracting vital components of the herbs using alcohol and water.

CAUTION: Never use industrial alcohol, methyl alcohol, or isopropyl alcohol

(rubbing alcohol), because all three are poisonous.

To make a tincture, combine 4 ounces of cut or powdered herb with 1 pint of distilled liquor. Vodka seems to be the purest liquor of choice, but rum can mask the unpleasant flavor of some herbs. Store in a tightly covered glass container and shake daily for a period of about 2 weeks. Strain through a fine cloth or filter, and store in a tightly covered glass container. Tinctures will keep for long periods of time, as long as the alcohol is prevented from evaporating to less than 30 percent concentration. Dosage is typically about 1 teaspoon taken three times a day, but varies from a few drops to 2 tablespoons depending on the herb (Brill 1994, 9).

Compress. A compress is simply a dressing soaked in a hot herbal extract such as an infusion or decoction. Compresses are typically applied to painful areas to ease discomfort and accelerate the healing of wounds, bruises, or muscle injuries.

Poultices. Poultices are herbal preparations consisting of warm, moist, ground or powdered herbs applied directly to the affected area and covered with a linen or other cloth wrapping. Poultices are typically applied to draw out infections or irritants. Moisten the herbs with hot water or tincture. You can mix with clay or cornmeal to improve absorption.

Ointments. Cook a handful of herbs in 1 quart of light oil, such as sunflower or safflower oil. Start by cooking roots and bark (if any) for about an hour. Keep the herbs at a simmer, just below bubbling. Add leaves and flowers, cooking for another 20 minutes. Add melted beeswax, at a ratio of about 1½ ounces per pint of oil, to thicken the mixture to the desired consistency. Add the contents of a capsule of vitamin E oil, or about a teaspoon of tincture of benzoin per quart of oil, to preserve the ointment. Strain the hot mixture into clean glass storage jars (Brill 1994, 9).

Gelatin capsules. For bitter herbs or herbs that must be taken in small doses, you can choose to pack them into gelatin capsules. Empty capsules may be purchased at health food stores. Fill a bowl with powdered herbs, and scoop the capsule halves through the herbs to fill. Tap the filled capsules to remove powders from the outside.

Powerful Herbal Combinations for Better Health

The following formulas have been shown to possess exceptional healing properties. The anticancer formulas can be great for restoring the body's overall level of health and vitality and should not be restricted to just fighting cancers and tumors. Many herbal combinations have synergistic effects, providing far greater benefits than the same herbs taken separately and at different times.

The parasite, liver, and kidney cleanses described below can be extremely beneficial for improving and maintaining health. The liver, kidneys, and colon are the body's main organs for purifying the blood, processing chemicals and drugs, and eliminating toxins. We are surrounded by toxins. Common chemicals such as antifreeze, rubbing alcohol, and paint thinner are easily absorbed through our skin, yet difficult to purge from the body. We produce an average of about 9,000 new chemicals each year. These new molecular combinations do not exist in nature, and a large percentage of them are carcinogenic. Herbal remedies can give your body a badly needed boost in its fight against chemical invaders.

Rene Caisse's "essiac*"* (also known as Caisse's tea), Jason Winters' herb tea, and Harry Hoxsey's herbal cancer treatments are well-known herbal formulas credited with many thousands of cases of recovery from cancer. These herbal remedies work primarily by cleansing the body of toxins and restoring its natural balance, so that the immune system can heal tumors and other illnesses. Current research indicates that they may also contain compounds that target cancerous cells and tumors. Thousands of personal testimonials make it clear that the regular use of these herbal formulas can be extremely beneficial for helping the body to maintain health or heal from serious illnesses like cancer. Because herbs cannot be patented, several companies package and sell similar herbal combinations that may, or may not, work equally well.

John Robbins' book*, Reclaiming Our Health: Exploding the Medical Myth and Embracing the Source of True Healing*, contains an excellent account of the systematic persecution (including multiple arrests and a public slander campaign) of both Rene Caisse and Harry Hoxsey for helping people to heal cancer using their herbal formulas. This persecution was primarily funded by major pharmaceutical corporations, which have billions of dollars invested in selling patented (both toxic and expensive) chemotherapy drugs.

> In 1953, Benedict F. Fitzgerald, Jr., special counsel to the U.S. Senate Commerce Committee, conducted an in-depth investigation to determine whether a conspiracy existed to suppress Hoxsey's and other innovative cancer treatments. The Fitzgerald report, released on August 3, 1953, declared that a conspiracy had indeed been undertaken by the AMA, the National Cancer Institute, and the FDA to suppress a fair investigation of Hoxsey's methods. **—John Robbins, *Reclaiming Our Health: Exploding the Medical Myth and Embracing the Source of True Healing***

Caisse's Tea (Essiac)

Dr. Charles Brusch, M.D., President John F. Kennedy's personal physician, wrote, "I endorse this therapy even today, for I have in fact cured my own cancer, the original site of which was the lower bowel, through ESSIAC alone."

In 1922, Canadian nurse Rene Caisse obtained an Ojibwa medicine man's herbal formula. It was given to her by an 80-year-old patient who claimed that it had healed her of advanced breast cancer 30 years earlier. The formula, which was subsequently named essiac (essiac is Caisse spelled backward) or Caisse's tea, was described as, "A holy drink that would purify the body and place it back in balance with the Great Spirit." Caisse did little with the formula until 1924, when her aunt developed stomach and liver cancer and was given 6 months to live. Caisse received permission from her aunt's physician to administer the herbal formula. Rene later said, "My aunt lived for 21 years after being given up by the medical profession. There was no recurrence of cancer."

Essiac is not just an herbal treatment for cancer—it has also been credited with restoring health for a variety of ailments. For example, Cynthia Olsen, author of *ESSIAC: A Native Herbal Cancer Remedy,* participated in a Native American program to administer essiac to Hopi Indians

suffering from a variety of ailments. Following are two testimonials from her book regarding the effects of essiac in treating other illnesses.

> Hopi Grandmother: She is in her late fifties and was recently diagnosed with diabetes. She is on the doctor's medicine. She started taking essiac several months ago. One of her daughters prepares a tea with essiac and distilled water in the morning and at bedtime. When the doctor tested her blood sugar recently, it had gone from over 300 to 130. Her energy is good. She enjoys taking the essiac because it makes her feel better. Her legs get swollen at times, so she elevates them during the day and when she goes to bed. She feels the essiac helps to keep the swelling down (Olsen 1998, 119).
>
> R.M.: "In August of 1993, I was diagnosed with chronic late stage hepatitis C. I was constantly fatigued and suffering chronic pain in the liver region. I lost thirty pounds and my eyes were dull and sunken back into my head. The doctors knew how to treat hepatitis 'A' and 'B', but knew very little about 'C'. They tried experimental drugs that were of little success. They told me my only alternative was a liver transplant. A friend of mine suggested I try essiac tea. I tried it and noticed an immediate reduction in pain. As I continued to take essiac, I began to regain my weight and feel less depressed. My pain did not disappear, but was reduced 90 percent, and my health improved overall with lab results to prove it. I still have the virus, but my immune system is stronger, which gives me a quality of life I would not have had if I hadn't tried essiac" (Olsen 1998, 28).

You can purchase essiac tablets, premixed essiac tea, or the bulk essiac herbs from many health food stores. Alternately, you may harvest your own herbs and prepare the tea following Rene Caisse's instructions as given below.

Essiac Recipe

Yield: 8 cups of dry mix

- Thoroughly mix 6.5 cups of burdock root (cut), 16 ounces (scale weight) of powdered sheep sorrel, 4.0 ounces (scale weight) of powdered slippery elm bark, and 1.0 ounce (scale weight) of turkey rhubarb root (powdered).
- Presterilize the storage containers. Boil the containers for 10 minutes in water with a little food-grade peroxide or Clorox bleach.
- Measure 1 gallon of pure, nonchlorinated drinking water for each 4 cups of dry mix to be prepared. Bring the water to a rolling boil in a clean stainless steel or glass pot.
- Stir the dry ingredients into the boiling water. Replace the lid and continue boiling for 10 minutes at reduced heat.
- Remove from heat. Scrape down any herbs stuck to the sides of the pot and stir thoroughly. Cover the pot and allow the mixture to cool at room temperature for 6 hours. Stir thoroughly and let sit for another 6 hours (for a total of 12 hours sitting).
- Bring the mixture to the boiling point, and then remove from heat.
- Strain the mixture through a sterile strainer into a sterile pot. Clean the first pot and

strainer. Strain the mixture a second time back into the first pot.

- Immediately pour the hot liquid into sterile containers. Allow the containers to cool, and then refrigerate.
- Discard the tea if mold starts to grow inside the container.

(Olsen 1998, 59)

Using Essiac to Treat Cancer or AIDS

- Take 2 ounces, twice daily, at least 2 hours before or after eating. The tea may be diluted with 2 ounces of pure water. Ideally, take the tea in the morning, at least 2 hours prior to eating, and take at bedtime on an empty stomach (at least 2 hours after eating). Do not microwave.
- Before pouring tea from the container, shake gently to mix any sediment that has settled in the container.

(Olsen 1998, 61)

Using Essiac as an Herbal Supplement and Preventative

- Take 2 ounces, once daily. The tea may be diluted with 2 ounces of pure water. Take at bedtime on an empty stomach (at least 2 hours after eating) or take in the morning at least 2 hours prior to eating. Do not microwave.
- Before pouring the tea from the container, shake it gently to mix any sediment that has settled in the container.

(Olsen 1998, 60)

Side Effects

Side effects are rare. Nausea and indigestion are generally caused by eating or drinking too soon after taking essiac. Sometimes severe intestinal or digestive discomfort is caused by the body's rapid elimination of toxins into the colon. If this occurs, stop taking the tea for several days, and then begin taking it again in ½-ounce doses every other day. Gradually decrease the interval and increase the dosage to the standard treatment levels (Olsen 1996, 61).

Jason Winters' Herbal Tea

An example of the synergistic effect of herbs is related in *Killing Cancer: The Jason Winters Story,* by Benjamin R.

Smythe.

> Jason Winters lived life on the edge. He was an adventurer, Hollywood stuntman, and womanizer. Jason loved to party, confessing to consuming a pint of whiskey on a typical day. In 1978, a large, cancerous growth appeared on the side of Jason's neck. Normal cancer treatments, including radiation and chemotherapy, were not successful in eliminating the cancerous growth, and Jason was given 90 days to live. When he was told that his only chance was radical surgery that

would remove his tongue and much of his jaw, Jason became despondent and desperate. Winters said he sat on the edge of his London hospital bed and sobbed. It was then that he received a most unexpected visitor, Prince Charles. Winters said, "He was there visiting a friend, and when he passed by my room, he found me crying. I was completely terrified of dying."

With the help of Prince Charles and the Archbishop of Canterbury, Winters identified healing herbs mentioned in the Bible and the Hindu Bhagavad Gita, which he hoped would heal his cancer. When these herbs failed to heal his cancer, he remembered that the American Indians he had met on the set of Hollywood Westerns had used sage for cleansing and healing. Unfortunately, the sage also failed to heal his cancer. In desperation, Jason mixed all of these herbs together in a tea. As his tumor began to shrink in size, Jason consumed "buckets" of his new formula. After the cancer left his body, he lived in perfect health for the next 30 years until he died at a ripe old age. Jason considered his daily consumption of this herbal tea formula a major factor in maintaining outstanding health, claiming not to have had as much as a cold for over 20 years.

Jason Winters credited his recovery from terminal cancer and his subsequent return to a state of exceptional health to the daily consumption of his herbal tea formula. Winters' tea consists of red clover flowers, gotu kola, Indian sage leaves, and an Asian herb he refers to as "herbalene." The original version of this tea also included chaparral, a bitter Native American herb with strong anticancer properties, but when the FDA took action on the 1992 allegations of potential liver toxicity associated with chaparral consumption, Jason Winters took it out of the American version of his tea. When I questioned Mr. Winters about this FDA action, he told me that it was his opinion that chaparral was such a powerfully effective anticancer herb that pharmaceutical companies coerced the FDA into this ban. The FDA has since lifted this ban. Due to its extremely bitter qualities, I suggest taking chaparral in capsule or pill form when available, rather than in a tea. Chaparral has also shown much promise against herpes, and is a natural chelator that helps to remove toxins from the liver and pancreas (Naiman 2008).

Even if cancer does not run in your family, I would recommend making essiac tea and/or Jason Winters' tea a part of your regular diet. Personally, I have started to use essiac tea for 2-week periods of self-cleansing and the milder, more pleasant tasting Jason Winters tea as a regular beverage. His tea is available, along with other healing herbs, from his Web site at www.sirjasonwinters.com.

Dr. Clark's Herbal Parasite Cleanse

In the early 1990s, our cat was dying. She was nothing but skin and bones. I had taken her to the vet, and she was diagnosed with a thyroid condition and probably worms. We bought some pills from the local vet to try deworming her, but the vet's worm pills contained a highly toxic substance, toluene. These toxic pills

were supposed to kill the worms before they killed the cat. My cat was too sick to take the pills, so we decided to try Hulda's herbal pet parasite program instead. It worked beautifully, returning my cat to more than double her weight in just two weeks. After the outstanding results with our cat, we decided to try the parasite program on ourselves. My wife had undergone extensive medical tests for colon problems. The diagnosis was not clear, but the symptoms indicated a potentially serious situation. Using Hulda's parasite program, her condition cleared up completely within a couple of weeks. My mother-in-law, who was born in the highlands of Indonesia, had been in and out of hospitals and medical clinics for two years, trying to diagnose severe heart palpitations combined with digestive problems. When she tried the parasite program, her condition also cleared up! In my own case, even though I felt perfectly healthy, when I used the parasite herbs, a tapeworm appeared in my stools.

I once believed that parasites are a health problem only in third-world countries. The research of Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., presents compelling evidence linking the presence of parasites with numerous Western diseases, including cancer, diabetes, and AIDS. Her tests indicate that roughly two-thirds of Americans, and nearly all people with pets, have parasites in their bodies. Dr. Clark has helped many patients improve or cure a wide variety of diseases ranging from AIDS and arthritis to cancer, by using various herbal remedies and eliminating toxins from the patient's diet and environment.

Dr. Clark studied biophysics and cellular physiology at McGill University and the University of Minnesota, receiving her doctorate degree in physiology in 1958. For specific details on her research, or if you are currently suffering from any serious illness not limited solely to cancers, I highly recommend that you pick up a copy of Dr. Clark's latest book, *The Cure and Prevention of all Cancers.* I do not believe that her program will cure all diseases in all cases (it neglects the mind-body factor), but I do believe that she has uncovered a number of extremely significant factors that could benefit the health of most people.

The following herbal parasite cleanse, kidney cleanse, and liver cleanse are from Dr. Clark's books. Dr. Clark does not claim credit for inventing these formulas, which were developed by herbalists. From her practical experience using hundreds of different herbal formulas, she has found that the following are particularly effective. The kidneys, colon, and liver are the body's primary organs for processing and removing toxic wastes from the blood. Keeping these organs healthy and clean is critical for maintaining optimum health. I cannot do justice to Dr. Clark's work in the few pages that follow, so I urge you to pick up one of her books to assist you in your pursuit of good health.

The listed herbs are readily available through the sources given at the end of this chapter, and Dr. Clark's book has a much more complete listing of sources for all the herbs and special materials that she recommends in her book. If you are unable to find the recommended parasite herbs, the use of an extended water fast or eating several crushed raw garlic cloves each day for 1 or 2 weeks will also help the body to purge parasites. By consuming parasite herbs on an empty stomach, the parasites are forced to feed on the herbs instead of food in your digestive system.

Dr. Clark's program consists of electrically and herbally deparasiting the body, the use of

several herbal protocols, and a thorough elimination of toxins from your environment and food, which restores balance in your body's immune system, helping it to fight more effectively against almost any disease. The parasite program consists of taking gradually increasing dosages of black walnut tincture, ground clove capsules, and wormwood capsules over a 2-week period, followed by regular doses of these herbs to keep from becoming reinfected with parasites. She also recommends the use of an electronic device, which she refers to as a "zapper," which electronically destroys parasites living in different parts of the body. Her book contains instructions for building a lowcost zapper and summarizes research that she has completed with herbs, the zapper, and other devices. You can purchase these materials from health food stores, herbal suppliers, or various Web sites that mention Dr. Clark's name—though to avoid legal hassles, Dr. Clark herself has cut back to simply selling books through her publishing company, New Century Press, and is no longer directly affiliated with any of the Web sites that bear her name. Zappers are available from a variety of sources found on the Internet.

Parasite program quick reference chart

Day	Black walnut hull tincture	Wormwood capsule (dose, 200–300 mg)	Clove capsule (dose, size 0 or 00)
	Drops	Capsules	Capsules
	time per day on empty stomach (before a meal)	1 time per day, on empty stomach (before a meal)	3 times per day (at mealtimes)
1	1	1	1,1,1
2	2	1	2,2,2
3	3	2	3,3,3
4	4	2	3,3,3
5	5	3	3,3,3
6	2 tsp.	3	3,3,3
7	(Now once a week)	4	3,3,3
8		4	3,3,3
9		5	3,3,3
10		5	3,3,3
11		6	3,3,3
12		6	(Now once a week)
13	2 tsp.	7	
14		7	
15		7	
16		7	
17		(Now once a week)	
18			3,3,3

You may wish to take ornithine (available at most health food stores) at bedtime for insomnia. Even if you do not suffer from insomnia now, you may when you kill parasites. If you have pets, I recommend that you refer to Dr. Clark's book for the pet parasite program (the doses are significantly different). You will be continually reinfected with parasites from your pets unless you get yourself and your pets on the parasite maintenance program.

Black Walnut Hull Tincture Recipe

- Use your largest enamel or ceramic (not stainless steel or aluminum) cooking pot, preferably at least 10 quarts
- Black walnuts in the hull, each still at least 50 percent green, enough to fill the pot to the top
- Grain alcohol (or vodka), about 50 percent strength, enough to cover the walnuts *(never use rubbing alcohol—it's toxic!)*
- ½ teaspoon powdered vitamin C
- Plastic wrap or cellophane
- Glass jars or bottles

The black walnut tree produces large green balls in the fall. The walnut is inside, but you will use the whole ball, uncracked, since the active ingredient is in the green outer hull. Rinse the walnuts carefully, put them in the pot, and cover them with the alcohol. Sprinkle with half the vitamin C. Seal with plastic wrap and cover. Let sit for 3 days. Pour into glass jars, discarding walnuts, and divide the remaining vitamin C among the jars. If the glass jar has a metal lid, first put plastic wrap over the top before screwing on the lid. The potency of the tincture remains strong for several years if it is unopened, even if it darkens. The alcohol is a preservative, preventing bacterial growth. (Adapted from *The Cure for All Diseases,* by Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., N.D. 1995, 338–344, 543.)

Kidney Cleanse

Dr. Clark recommends that you clean your kidneys at least twice a year. The following recipe dissolves crystals and stones inside the kidneys and boosts kidney function. The kidney cleanse should be started after the initial 2-week period of the parasite program, to ensure that parasites are eliminated from the kidneys before starting the cleanse.

Kidney Herbs

- ½ cup dried hydrangea root
- ½ cup gravel root
- ½ cup marshmallow root
- 4 bunches of fresh parsley
- Goldenrod tincture (leave this out of the recipe if you are allergic to it)
- Ginger capsules
- Uva ursi capsules
- Vegetable glycerin
- 8 ounces black cherry concentrate
- 250 mg of vitamin B6
- 300 mg of magnesium oxide tablets

Procedure

Measure ¼ cup of each root and set them to soak together in 10 cups of cold tap water, using a nonmetal container and a nonmetal lid (a dinner plate will do). After 4 hours (or overnight) add 8 ounces of black cherry concentrate, heat to boiling, and simmer for 20 minutes. Drink ¼ cup as soon as it is cool enough. Pour the rest through a bamboo strainer into a sterile pint jar (glass) and several freezable containers. Refrigerate the glass jar.

Rinse the fresh parsley, and boil in 1 quart of water for 3 minutes. Drink ¼ cup when cool enough. Refrigerate one pint and freeze one pint. Throw away the parsley.

Save the roots after the first boiling, storing them in the freezer. After 13 days when your supply runs low, boil the same roots a second time, but add only 6 cups water and simmer only 10 minutes. This will last another 8 days, for a total of 3 weeks. You can cook the roots a third time if you wish, but the recipe gets less potent. If your problem is severe, cook the roots only twice.

Dose

Each morning, pour together ¾ cup of the root mixture and ½ cup parsley water, filling a large mug. Add 20 drops of goldenrod tincture and 1 tablespoon glycerin. Drink this mixture in proportionate doses throughout the day. Keep it cold. *Do not drink it all at once*: you will get a stomachache and feel pressure in your bladder. If your stomach is very sensitive, start with half this dose.

Also take:

- Ginger capsules: one with each meal (three per day)
- Uva ursi capsules: one with breakfast and two with supper
- Vitamin B6 (250 mg): one a day
- Magnesium oxide (300 mg): one a day

Take these supplements just before a meal to avoid burping. *After three weeks,* repeat with fresh herbs. You need to do the kidney cleanse for 6 weeks to get good results, and longer for severe problems.

This herbal tea, as well as the parsley, can easily spoil. Heat it to boiling every fourth day if it is being stored in the refrigerator, because boiling resterilizes it. If you sterilize it in the morning (in a glass container), you can take it to work without refrigerating it. When you order herbs, be careful—herb companies are not all the same. These roots should have a strong fragrance. If the ones you buy are barely fragrant, they have lost their active ingredients and you should switch to a different supplier. Fresh roots can be used. Do not use powder. (Adapted from *The Cure for All Diseases,* by Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., N.D. 1995, 549–551.)

Liver Cleanse

Many naturopaths believe that using this program to cleanse the liver bile ducts is one of the most powerful methods that you can use to boost your health. Dr. Clark stresses that the first two weeks of the parasite program should be completed before starting the liver cleanse. For best results, you should also complete the kidney cleanse and any needed dental work before starting

the liver cleanse. Cleanse your liver twice a year for health maintenance.

The liver is full of bilary tubes that channel bile to a large tube, called the common bile duct. Bile is essential for proper digestion and assimilation of food. Over time, these tubes get choked up with various deposits and chunks of debris, much like a garden hose filled with gravel. Eventually, these deposits may calcify into "stones." Naturally, the liver can't perform its function properly when it is all choked up with debris. This program flushes out the debris from the liver ducts. It accomplishes this feat through three separate phases. First, eat no fat on day one of the program, to force the liver to store up a considerable amount of bile. Second, drink the Epsom salt solutions, to make the liver bile ducts swell to a larger size and release their stranglehold on the debris stuck inside. Third, drink an olive oil and grapefruit juice mixture; the high fat content in the olive oil causes the liver to dump the stored bile, flushing the stones and other debris from the bile ducts.

Procedure

Day 1: Choose a day such as Saturday for the cleanse, because you should rest the next day. Take no medicines, vitamins, or pills that you can do without: they could prevent success. Stop the parasite program and kidney herbs, too, the day before. Eat a no-fat breakfast and lunch such as cooked cereal with fruit, fruit juice, bread and preserves or honey (no butter or milk), baked potato or other vegetables with salt only. This allows the bile to build up and develop pressure in the liver. Higher pressure pushes out more stones.

2:00 P.M.: Do not eat or drink after 2 P.M. If you break this rule, you could feel quite ill later. Get your Epsom salts ready. Dissolve 4 tablespoons in 3 cups water and pour the mixture into a jar. This makes four servings, ¾ cup each. Set the jar in the refrigerator to get ice cold (this is for convenience and taste only).

6:00 P.M.: Drink one serving (¾ cup) of the ice-cold Epsom salts. If you did not prepare this ahead of time, mix 1 tablespoon in ¾ cup water now. You can add ⅛ teaspoon vitamin C powder to improve the taste. You can also drink a few mouthfuls of water afterward or rinse your mouth. Get the olive oil and grapefruit out to warm up.

8:00 P.M.: Drink another ¾ cup of Epsom salts. You haven't eaten since 2:00 P.M., but you won't feel hungry.

Get your bedtime chores done. The timing is critical for success; don't be more than 10 minutes early or late.

9:45 p.m.: Pour ½ cup (measured) olive oil into the pint jar. Squeeze the juice of one fresh grapefruit into the measuring cup. Remove the pulp with a fork. You should have at least ¾ cup) is best. You can top it up with lemonade. Add this to the olive oil. Close the jar tightly with the lid and shake hard until watery (only fresh grapefruit juice does this). The purpose of the grapefruit juice is to help the olive oil go down. It does a surprisingly good job of making the olive oil palatable. Now visit the bathroom one or more times, even if it makes you late for your 10:00 drink. Don't be more than 15 minutes late.

10:00 p.m.: Drink the olive oil and grapefruit juice mixture. Take 4 ornithine capsules with the first sips to make sure you will sleep through the night. Take 8 capsules if you already suffer from insomnia. Drinking through a large plastic straw helps it go down easier. You may use ketchup, cinnamon, or brown sugar to chase it down between sips. Take it to your bedside if you

want, but drink it standing up. Get it down within 5 minutes (15 minutes for very elderly or weak persons). *Lie down immediately.* You might fail to get stones out if you don't. The sooner you lie down, the more stones you will get out. Be ready for bed ahead of time. Don't clean up the kitchen, for instance, before you go to bed. As soon as you've finished drinking, walk to your bed and lie down flat on your back with your head up high on the pillow.

Try to think about what is happening in the liver. Try to keep perfectly still for at least 20 minutes. You may feel a train of stones traveling along the bile ducts like marbles.

There is no pain, because the bile duct valves are wide open (thank you, Epsom salts!). *Go to sleep*; you may fail to get stones out if you don't.

Next morning: Upon awakening, take your third dose of Epsom salts. If you have indigestion or nausea wait until it is gone before drinking the Epsom salts. You can go back to bed if you wish. Don't take this potion before 6:00 A.M.

Two hours later: Take your fourth (the last) dose of Epsom salts. Drink ¾ cup of the mixture. You can go back to bed.

After two more hours: You can eat now. Start with fruit juice. Half an hour later, eat fruit. One hour later, you can eat regular food, but keep it light. By suppertime you should feel recovered.

Expect diarrhea in the morning of day two, so do not stray too far from a toilet. You may find gallstones in the toilet with the bowel movement. Look for the green kind, since this is proof that they are genuine gallstones, not food residue. Only bile from the liver is pea green. The first cleanse may rid you of allergies or bursitis or upper back pains for a few days, but as the stones from the rear travel forward, the same symptoms might return. You can repeat cleanses at two-week intervals. Never cleanse when you are ill. Sometimes the bile ducts are full of cholesterol crystals that did not form into round stones.

They appear as "chaff " floating on top of the toilet bowl water. It may be tan-colored, harboring millions of tiny white crystals. Cleansing this chaff is just as important as purging stones.

How safe is the liver cleanse? In Dr. Clark's opinion, it is very safe. Her opinion is based on over 500 cases, including many persons in their seventies and eighties. None went to the hospital; none even reported pain. The cleanse made some people feel quite ill for one or two days afterward, but in every one of these cases the maintenance parasite program had been neglected. This is why the instructions direct you to complete the parasite and kidney rinse programs first. (Adapted from *The Cure for All Diseases,* by Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., N.D. 1995, 553–558.)

DETOXIFICATION

Naturopathic Healing

When I met Jackie, she was often bedridden for days at a time. She suffered from

severe allergies and asthma. She had spent many days at the local hospital and relied on a high-tech machine, called a "nebulizer," to treat the air in her bedroom. She spent huge amounts of time in her bedroom, afraid to leave the proximity of her nebulizer. A friend told her about a naturopathic doctor, named M. O. Garten, who had worked wonders with many patients suffering from severe medical problems that were not responding to standard medical treatments. Dr. Garten started Jackie on a regimen of cleansing fasts, chiropractic manipulation, and massages. Within a few weeks, Jackie felt like a new person. The debilitating asthma attacks and severe allergies had totally disappeared.

Many different healing philosophies point to a buildup of toxic compounds within our bodies as one of the primary factors contributing to a compromised immune system and the inability to fight off invading diseases. The modern world is filled with thousands of carcinogenic chemicals and pollutants that did not even exist a century ago. Cancer rates now grow nearly exponentially. Why do some people succumb to these carcinogens while others do not? It appears to be a combination of many different factors, such as diet, genetics, environment, and mental disposition. According to naturopathic doctors, many "inherited" conditions may be due to an inherited environment and its associated toxins and parasites, rather than inherited genetics, and these conditions may be improved or eliminated through diet, exercise, specific herbs and supplements, body manipulation, and fasting.

Naturopathic medicine includes a wide variety of techniques and therapies designed to cleanse the body of toxins and help restore the body's natural immune and healing mechanisms. Among these therapies are fasting and organ cleanses for detoxification, herbal remedies, massage, osteopathic and chiropractic manipulation, diet and nutrition, and stretching and exercise. This section focuses on the use of fasts for internal cleansing and rebalancing of the body.

Fasting

The theory behind fasting was explained to me as follows: When a body is digesting food, it does a poor job of cleaning toxic wastes and deposits out of its different systems. A fast gives the autonomic nervous system, which controls digestion and other automatic processes, the chance to focus on internal cleansing. A fast gives the body a chance to "spring clean" and helps it to return the immune system to peak performance. In addition, the fasting body scavenges raw materials from places such as cholesterol deposits, tumors, and calcified deposits in the joints for use in other parts of the body. Normally the body's natural cleansing cycle dumps toxins into the colon in the morning. In the afternoon, if you are fasting, the body will be hungry and will try to absorb what it can from the colon. Unless the colon is cleansed, the body will reabsorb toxins, which may produce headaches and nausea. Because you are not eating anything to push the toxins out of the colon, you should do an enema or drink some bulk nonnutritive fiber, like psyllium, to cleanse the colon.

Medical practitioners from Hippocrates to modern "Medical Deities" (M.D.s) have advocated the health benefits of the fast. In Western medicine, a systematic fasting cure was first developed

by the Austrian farmer Johann Schroth (1798–1856). Schroth developed an enlarged and crippled knee as a result of being kicked by a horse (Garten 1967, 60). The farmer had observed injured animals refusing all food until cured. Using fasting and the application of hot packs, Schroth rapidly restored his crippled leg to its former healthy condition. The Schroth fasting cure became famous, and the country of Austria currently maintains a statesupported Schroth Institute. Fasts tend to dissolve fatty cholesterol deposits from artery walls, help to remove arthritis-causing uric acid and calcium deposits from joints, and boost the immune system by lowering the levels of toxins in the body.

In August 1954, ten members of the Swedish Vegetarian Society marched 325 miles from Goeteburg to Stockholm to publicize the health benefits of the fast and to demonstrate its relative safety. After marching an average of 32.5 miles per day for 10 days straight, eating no food and drinking nothing but spring water, the fasters arrived in Stockholm in excellent health and remarkable physical condition (Garten 1967, 83). If you are ever stuck without food for a prolonged period of time, remember these results. Cleanse your colon, and you may be able to perform remarkably well for prolonged periods without food.

Fasting Guidelines

Water fasts, with nothing taken in except for water or herb teas, seem to have the best and quickest long-term health effects. For the first fast, or if you must go to work each day while fasting, it may be easier to complete a juice fast than a water fast. Up to 3 quarts a day of fruit or vegetable juices may be taken to help maintain energy levels. Dr Garten advises against extending juice fasts beyond a few days for two reasons. First, because juices are partial foods, the stomach continues to manufacture secretions such as hydrochloric acid. In the absence of solid foods, the acid might begin to digest the stomach wall itself, resulting in ulcers. Second, because digestive secretions (even partial) are present, hunger sensations are apt to be prolonged. Drinking juices will actually contribute to the continuance of hunger pangs.

Underweight people should not fast for more than 3 days at a time, with intervals of constructive diets between fasts. Underweight people often find that a fast restores balance to the body and actually enables them to gain weight after the fast is over. A typical shorter fast is 5 or 6 days. Prolonged fasts, on the order of 14 to 30 days, are most effective for treating serious disorders. Successive shorter fasts can be used to obtain similar results, if necessary. The European Fasting Institute tries to limit fasts to periods of no more than 21 days. I like to do one or two 5-day juice fasts each year to maintain my health, but have found the most significant improvements when I did a 14-day fast.

If the fast is of short duration, up to 6 days, don’t be too concerned over the details of breaking the fast, but try to avoid heavy foods like meat or dairy products. The breaking of longer fasts, especially water fasts, is more important since the body has fully shut down the digestive processes. As a general rule, each 5 days of complete food abstinence requires 1 day of fruit or vegetable juice consumption before taking solid foods. Start your first day on solid food with some fruit for breakfast. Include generous portions of raw vegetables with your noon and evening meals, and try to avoid heavy foods such as meat and dairy products. There are no hard and fast rules, but following these guidelines should help make your fasting experience a positive one.

Enemas

This is not everybody's favorite topic (at least not mine). If you find enemas distasteful, you may substitute the use of a bulk intestinal cleanser, such as psyllium seed, to purge your colon during a fast (see a natural healing book or the cleanser's package for instructions). During a fast, if you are not using an herbal colon cleanse, an enema should be taken once or twice a day at the beginning. Gradually it may be reduced to once every two days, then twice a week until no longer needed. A standard 2-quart enema bag, available at any drugstore, is fine. If your tap water is chlorinated, you should use bottled spring water, distilled water, or pass your tap water through an appropriate carbon-based water filter. Dissolve 2 tablespoons of molasses, honey, or Epsom salts in 2 quarts of warm (body temperature) water, then fill your enema bag with this mixture. Some naturopaths recommend adding ½ cup of pineapple juice or the juice of three lemons to this mixture.

Hang the bag about 2½ feet above where you will be positioned. Lubricate the tip with some vitamin E oil, aloe vera juice, or vegetable oil, then gently insert the tip into the rectum and lie on your back on the floor, on your side, or kneel with your head down. Most enema bags have a clamp to control the rate of fluid entrance into your colon. If not, you can fold the tube or pinch it with your fingers. Breathe deeply as you allow the fluid to enter your colon slowly. If the pressure is uncomfortable, temporarily shut off the fluid flow and continue to breathe deeply. Resume the fluid introduction when you feel the pressure subside. There are many pockets and convolutions in the colon. To help the fluid work around the kinks in your intestine, try firmly massaging your stomach while both legs are raised against an object or simply in the air. At the start, a 2-quart enema may be too much to handle, but should be no problem once most of the fecal matter has been evacuated.

Coffee Enema

A variation on the standard enema is the coffee enema. During WWI, a nurse discovered that patients who received coffee grounds in their enemas recovered from serious wounds at a much faster rate than those who received regular enemas. Scientific research has found that the coffee enema stimulates the liver and the gallbladder to dump their toxins into the colon, where they are flushed away. A healthy, fully functioning liver is important for proper digestion, assimilation of food, and detoxifying the body. Coffee enemas have been employed to help heal cancer patients and victims of many other degenerative diseases.

To make the coffee enema, boil 6 heaping tablespoons of ground coffee (do not use instant) in 2 quarts of water (spring, filtered, or distilled) for 15 minutes. Cool to a comfortable temperature and strain. Use only 1 pint at a time, and refrigerate the rest for later use. The best position to assume when receiving the enema is "head down and tail up." After the liquid has been received, roll onto your right side and hold the solution in your body for 15 minutes before allowing the liquid to be expelled. Do not be concerned if the liquid is not expelled after 15 minutes. Simply stand up and move around as usual until you feel the urge to expel the fluid.

CAUTION: Do not use coffee enemas for more than 6 weeks at a time.

SUPLEMENTS AND FOOD

One positive feature of the heavily centralized modern business of food production and

distribution is that we now have access to fresh fruits and vegetables year-round, not just when they are in season in our particular local area. However, when you ask any older person whether the fruits and vegetables we buy in the supermarket taste as good as the fresh produce they used to buy direct from farmers, you will usually get a definitive "No!" The giant agribusinesses responsible for producing most of the food found in our supermarkets are concerned primarily with productivity and profit margins, not optimum nutrition. There are many different trace minerals and other nutrients that contribute to the composition of healthy, nutritive, natural soil. Profit-centered agribusiness usually concerns itself with replacing nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the soil to keep up maximum vegetable production, but does not concern itself with replenishing dozens of other micronutrients. These nutrients are essential for maintaining healthy bodies, and are often lacking in fresh fruits and vegetables due to soil depletion. When crops are grown with modern chemical intensive methods, the natural microbial action in the soil is either destroyed or severely hampered. In natural systems, these microbes (numbering as many as 6 billion in a single teaspoon of healthy humus) release organic acids that dissolve the minerals and other micronutrients in the soils into a form that is readily assimilated by growing plants. Without a healthy microbial presence in the soil, plants will be lacking in micronutrients, even when provided with chemical fertilizers. For these reasons, I highly recommend the use of dietary supplements and/or a wide variety of organic produce to ensure that you get proper nutrients in your diet.

For the better part of this century, scientists have studied geographical groups of people who exhibit norms for excellent health in their seventies to nineties and include productive elders in the 100- to 120-year-old range. These people tend to live in dry climates, at high altitude, and downstream from glaciated peaks. Their fields are irrigated with water called "glacial milk" because of its milky color due to ground-up rocks (minerals) from the grinding action of the glaciers. This glacial milk constantly replenishes the minerals in the soil. Due to modern hydroelectric and flood control dams, huge tracts of fertile farmland that used to receive mineral replenishment from yearly floods no longer flood. The food we buy as "fresh" not only lacks these minerals, it is also stored for months in cold warehouses, heavily sprayed with pesticides and fungicides, and genetically selected for durability over taste and nutrition. It is no wonder that the nutritive value of today's average supermarket produce is not up to par.

Not all supplements are created equal. In order for our bodies to take advantage of the nutritive value of a supplement, it must be in a form that they can assimilate. Our bodies are designed to receive sustenance from food, not rocks. Human beings cannot survive eating ground-up rocks; most vitamins, minerals, and other nutrients must be absorbed from food or food-based supplements. Many multivitamin and mineral formulations contain synthetic vitamins and ground-up minerals, which pass through the body without doing much good. The best supplements use food-based nutrients—that is, the supplements were made from plant or animal sources grown on highly enriched soils and feeds, to create vitamins and minerals in easily assimilated forms. Talk to your local health food expert, nutritionist (choose one who is familiar with alternative healing), or naturopathic doctor for recommendations on specific brands and supplements for particular uses.

HOMEOPATHY

> Since croup is thought to be viral in origin, there is no conventional pharmaceutical treatment for this illness. However, there are several homeopathic remedies that can alleviate the symptoms of croup, often within 1 to 5 minutes. Indeed, one of the most skeptical parents I have known, a pediatrician, became an instant convert to homeopathy after seeing his child respond immediately to Aconite for croup. **—Wayne B. Jonas, M.D., and Jennifer Jacobs, M.D., M.P.H., *Healing with Homeopathy: The Doctor's Guide***

Homeopathy is a system of healing based on the principle of stimulating the body's natural healing processes. Unlike most allopathic medicines, which chemically target specific diseases or symptoms, homeopathy appears to enhance healing responses from within the body's own immune system. Homeopathic remedies are useful for treating a wide variety of illnesses and symptoms. After waning in popularity during the earlier part of the twentieth century, homeopathy has seen a resurgence of popularity, especially in Europe, Latin America, and parts of Asia. For example, in France, Germany, and Great Britain, most pharmacies stock homeopathic medicines, roughly one-third of the populace uses them, and about one-third of physicians refer patients for homeopathic treatment. The low cost of homeopathic medicines and the ease of self-medication have contributed to the high growth rate of homeopathy in many developing countries where access to high-tech, Western-style medicine is limited.

The Origins of Homeopathy

The original system of homeopathy was developed by Samuel Christian Hahnemann between 1790 and his death in 1843. It was the most scientifically developed healing system of its day, relying on systematic observation and experimentation to develop the series of homeopathic remedies. Samuel had stumbled on one of the foundations of homeopathy while attempting to disprove a British herbalist's claims that quinine was an effective antimalaria drug because it was "bitter and astringent." He reasoned that he knew of several other drugs that were far more bitter and astringent than quinine, yet were of no value against malaria. He devised an experiment in which he medicated himself with quinine to study its effects, even though he had never been exposed to malaria. What he found was that the quinine produced symptoms similar to malaria when taken by people who did not have malaria.

Based on his initial experiments, Hahnemann hypothesized that a drug is therapeutic if it produces symptoms in a person without the disease that are similar to those in a person suffering from the disease. Using the best available scientific methods of his day, Hahnemann experimentally "proved" numerous remedies by observing their effects on patients. In an effort to reduce the toxic effects of some of the remedies, he began diluting remedies and discovered, much to his surprise, that the heavily diluted remedies often worked better and the effects lasted longer than the full-strength remedies. In keeping with alchemists' traditions of the day, Hahnemann began to shake or "success" the dilutions as they were made. When prepared in this fashion, which Hahnemann called "potentizing," the effects of the remedies were further enhanced.

Homeopathic "Potencies"

In the late 1800s and early 1900s, the idea of potencies and the use of high dilutions brought homeopathy into disrepute with many scientists and medical practitioners. Based on the physicist Avagadro's discoveries, it was calculated that after 12 serial dilutions at ratios of 1:100, there are probably no remaining molecules of the original remedy. Since homeopathic practitioners have reported remarkable results at these or higher dilutions, most scientists could not comprehend how such diluted remedies could still be effective.

Over the past 20 years, there have been numerous randomized clinical trials of homeopathic medicines. A summary of these trials, published by some very skeptical researchers, found that over 80 percent of the studies showed positive effects from homeopathic treatment. Wishing to avoid the "publication bias" of positive studies, these authors went out of their way to find all reports of homeopathy research, including unpublished reports and negative reports. The authors of this study stated that, based on this research, they might be willing to accept homeopathy as legitimate therapy if the way it worked could be explained. I find it amusing that doctors could use aspirin and penicillin for many decades without knowing how they work, but most doctors refuse to accept homeopathy because they do not understand how it works. Perhaps the scientific discovery of exactly what happens when a homeopathic remedy is made, and how this remedy affects the body's immune system, will revolutionize our understanding of cellular physiology, biochemistry, and immunology. Recent advances in the fields of solution dynamics, bioelectromagnetics, and chaos theory show promise of shedding some light on the mystery behind the healing mechanisms of homeopathy.

Effectiveness of Homeopathy

When our beloved Malamute, Maya, came down with a serious kidney infection, she was treated with antibiotics by a local vet. When we asked the vet for a backup supply of antibiotics to take with us on a camping trip to Santa Cruz, he assured us our dog was fine and had no further need for antibiotics. Well, it turned out she was not fine and had a relapse that cost us over a thousand dollars in vet bills and caused permanent damage to Maya's kidneys. Eventually the bug was cultured and found to be *Enterococcus D*, a tough hardy bacteria that was not responding well to any of the available antibiotics. Our dog's condition improved while she was on a course of antibiotics, but went downhill rapidly whenever she went off the drugs. Her body was having a tough time dealing with the toxicity of the antibiotics, and it looked like she was not going to live much longer (blood tests indicated impending kidney failure). When Dr. Edwards, our homeopathic physician, heard that the culprit was *Enterococcus D*, he formulated a homeopathic remedy specifically for *Enteroccus D*, and we gave it to our dog. After months of a downward spiral, Maya's condition improved immediately. The

dog that we thought had only perhaps a single month to live surprised everybody with three more years of an active, high-quality life.

Many people turn to homeopathic medicine for chronic illnesses that have failed to respond to more traditional medicines. Because homeopathic medicines are nontoxic and highly diluted, they can be used in conjunction with allopathic medicines to help boost the healing response without fear of chemical complications due to mixing medicines. Scientific studies indicate that homeopathic medicine may be particularly effective for treating upper respiratory problems with flu-like symptoms, physical traumas like sprains and bruises, digestive tract problems, and migraine headaches. The remedy *Arnica montana* is helpful for accelerating the healing of trauma injuries like bruises and sprains and is a valuable addition to any firstaid kit.

For the healing of chronic illnesses that are not responding to allopathic medicine, I would seriously consider the use of homeopathy, but recommend consulting an experienced and trained homeopathic practitioner. The medical practitioner that we use for our family doctor is a homeopathic M.D. who had been head of cardiology at a major hospital. After many years of practicing orthodox Western medicine, he became disillusioned when he realized that modern technology and his best efforts, although usually effective in the short run, often failed to generate long-term health and vitality. He has found that by combining traditional healing herbs and homeopathy with orthodox medicine, he is able to promote long-term healing and a state of good health in many patients who had failed to thrive when limited to allopathic medicine.

Before the introduction of modern antibiotics, homeopathic treatments proved far safer and more effective than the prevailing orthodox medicines. Death rates during epidemics of serious infectious diseases, including scarlet fever, cholera, yellow fever, and diphtheria, were reported to be significantly lower in homeopathic hospitals than in their allopathic counterparts. For example, statistics compiled during cholera epidemics of the 1800s claimed that 3 to 30 percent of patients cared for with homeopathic treatment died, compared to a death rate of 50 to 60 percent under regular care (Jonas 1996, 35). With the outbreaks of some new diseases and antibiotic-resistant strains of common illnesses, homeopathic medicines may once again provide more effective healing rates than those of orthodox medicine. For an excellent discussion of when homeopathy is appropriate and what homeopathy might truly heal, see *Healing with Homeopathy: The Doctor's Guide,* by Wayne B. Jonas, M.D., and Jennifer Jacobs, M.D., M.P.H. Homeopathic self-care kits are available from many health food stores and on the Internet.

Homeopathy Practice

Three fundamental ideas separate homeopathy from other health care systems. The first premise is that the choice of remedy is based on matching a specific set of symptoms to a single "similar remedy" to bring about improvement or cure. The second premise is that the minimum dose is needed to stimulate the natural self-healing process. Much like allergy shots, which rely on minute amounts of allergens to stimulate the body's immune response, homeopathic medicines rely on minute amounts of ingredients that would normally stimulate similar symptoms to bring about improvement or cure. The third premise is that the process of cure should occur in a global

way with more serious and central problems improving first.

A skilled homeopathic practitioner will typically spend far more time with a patient during the initial interview than a conventional doctor. The homeopathic system assumes that all symptoms are related, regardless of diagnosis. When selecting the remedy, it is the exact relationship of symptoms, signs, and life experiences that are used to help select the best medicine. A wide variety of information may come into play, such as how well the patient sleeps, whether he or she perspires, state of mind at different times of the day, and so on. Once the remedy is selected, it is given in the appropriate dosage and interval. It may be given several times a day to once every few months. Most of the time, symptoms will not worsen but will gradually improve. However, with homeopathic medicine, it is not unusual to experience a "healing crisis" or temporary aggravation when the symptoms actually degrade before improving significantly. This is seen as part of the body's self-healing mechanism and is usually followed by considerable relief. Once the healing response has begun, no further doses are required. After a few hours, if a remedy does not appear to have any positive effect, a different remedy should be tried.

Certain materials are considered "antidotes" for specific homeopathic remedies, as they appear to interfere with the homeopathic properties of those remedies. Coffee, camphor, menthol, and eucalyptus are considered antidotes for numerous homeopathic remedies and should be avoided while using remedies.

SINUS HEALTH AND MOLDS

> Mayo Clinic researchers say they have found the cause of most chronic sinus infections—an immune system response to fungus. They say this discovery opens the door to the first effective treatment for this problem, the most common chronic disease in the United States. **—Science Daily, "Mayo Clinic Study Implicates Fungus as Cause of Chronic Sinusitis"**

Both molds and yeasts are members of the fungi kingdom. Molds are fungi that grow in multicellular strings and yeasts are single-cell fungi. Traditionally, doctors have treated chronic sinus problems with courses of antibiotics, but the data from the above-mentioned Mayo Clinic study indicates that the use of antibiotics has probably contributed to chronic sinus problems rather than healed them. Antibiotics kill the naturally beneficial bacteria in the sinuses just as surely as they kill the beneficial "probiotic" bacteria in the gut. When these naturally occurring "probiotic" bacteria are removed from either the sinus or the gut, an imbalance occurs, allowing molds and yeasts to grow rampant, unhampered by the organisms that usually consume these fungi and keep their numbers in check. Many people unwittingly enter a vicious cycle of antibiotics followed by yeast- and mold-related sinus infections, followed by more antibiotics, and so on.

Health Effects of Molds and Other Fungi

Many molds, not just black mold, give off a highly toxic substance that can severely affect your

health, particularly in the case of children, seniors, and anyone with allergies or a compromised immune system. In severe cases, black molds have been known to kill healthy soldiers and horses that were sleeping on straw bedding infected with *Stachybotrys*. Here is a partial list of symptoms:

- The most common effects are respiratory ailments, including shortness of breath, wheezing, chronic sinusitis, and exacerbated asthma. Side effects of sinus issues include acid reflux and postnasal drip.
- Signs of mold toxin overload often include poor low-contrast visual distinction (which makes night driving difficult), panic attacks, feelings of claustrophobia, headaches, tremors, seizures, confusion, and the inability to concentrate.
- Burning or itchy eyes, dizziness and/or nausea.
- Rashes and/or spontaneous bruises on the skin
- Itching, welts, or hives.
- Behavior changes, such as restlessness, hypersensitivity, and irritableness.
- Low-grade fever (can feel like a flu that seems to never go away).
- Compromised immune system (a normally healthy person suddenly starts "catching everything").
- Chronic fatigue and/or hair loss.
- Fungi and molds can cause related lung diseases and cancers.
- In severe cases, toxic mold poisoning can lead to lung and brain hemorrhaging, permanent brain damage, and death.

—Adapted from *The Home Owner's Guide to Mold*, by Michael Pugliese, C.M.R., C.M.T., and *Your Guide to Mold Toxins*, by Gary Rosen, Ph.D., and James Schaller, M.D.)

Treatment for Molds and Other Fungi

Very few doctors know anything about mold. When I was a contractor in Hawaii and my wife showed all the classic signs of *Stachybotrys* poisoning, we asked our doctor whether he thought that her symptoms could be caused by mold. He told us flat out that "mold does not cause symptoms like hers." When we found her symptoms on the Internet directly linked to toxic black mold, both described verbally and shown graphically in pictures, we sought out a mold expert on the Island of Oahu. Without the help of our mold specialist, and if we had not moved from the mold-infested home, she probably would have died. The Internet has a number of mold help sites (see resources) that can direct you to a health practitioner experienced with mold-related treatment. I will provide a few tips that have been gleaned from experience, but urge you to seek professional help if your symptoms are serious.

The first step is to reduce your exposure to molds and mold toxins. You must remove, kill, and/or encapsulate molds in your home. Molds leave toxic residues that will continue to plague your health unless these toxins are removed (best) or at least encapsulated. Encapsulation means that the mold is covered in a material that contains a fungicide so that the encapsulant both

contains the mold and prevents it from growing through the encapsulant. Simple paints do not perform this function, since mold will typically grow through regular paint within a few weeks or months. If the moisture source that promoted the mold growth in the first place is not eliminated, then the mold will return at a later date.

> **CAUTION: Removal of leaks of all kinds, and dehumidification of home air, are absolutely critical to preventing mold growth.**

Most mold remediators stress the use of toxic EPA fungicides that leave a residue and continue to kill mold after the chemical treatment. Gary Rosen, Ph.D., a certified mold remediator, prefers the use of highly concentrated bleach, since it not only kills mold, but it also dissolves the mold and mold toxins, effectively removing them, provided that the cleaning job is thorough and the moisture source has been eliminated. Rosen says that many of his clients are in such precarious health that they cannot handle the toxic residues left by the fungicides that most mold remediators rely on. He stresses that proper skin, eye, and breathing protection must be used when handling concentrated bleach. Rosen also suggests using the Lysol that is found in spray cans and is alcohol based. He says that Lysol is EPAapproved for household use, including food preparation surfaces and porous materials. Most people who are sick from mold also have toxic mold contamination inside the air ducts in their home's heating and air-conditioning systems. If this is not removed, no amount of mold remediation will restore their health. When air ducts are lined with fiberglass, the ducts cannot be cleaned, but must be replaced by an HVAC contractor and not a duct cleaner.

> **CAUTION: Many duct cleaning services will not really clean your ducts, but rely mostly on chemical sprays that can make sensitive people even sicker than does the mold. For an excellent source for information on duct cleaning, see the EPA Web site: www.epa.gov/iedweb00/pubs/airduct.html. Details on Rosen's lowtoxic mold remediation techniques may be found in his book, *Environmentally Friendly Mold Remediation Techniques That Significantly Reduce Childhood Asthma*.**

American Biotech Labs is reported to have received EPA certification for their fungicidal silver-based products. A nontoxic remediation plan that also provides long-term mold-killing properties might include Rosen's bleach-based cleaning process, combined with an overspray of American Biotech Labs' silver fungicide to provide added long-term mold protection without the toxic side effects of traditional EPA-approved fungicides.

See Chapter 7 for more information on mold remediation and how to prevent mold growth in a home.

The second step is to keep your personal items, furniture, and the air in your home as free of molds and mold toxins as possible. Rugs (except for washable throw rugs) are notorious for harboring molds and should be purged from a home that has had a serious mold problem. You can try to have upholstered furniture steam-cleaned and treated with fungicides, but will probably never get the mold out and may be throwing away an expensive mold remediation job if you reinfect your home with mold residues that remain on salvaged furniture and personal items. Hard, nonporous surfaces may be cleaned with concentrated bleach (use adequate

ventilation and protective clothing) and/or Lysol. HEPA filters, like the ones from Austin Air, can help to continuously clean the air in individual rooms. Rosen suggests installing a quality air filter on your central heating/air-conditioning system and changing it often. Since central systems are designed to circulate the air effectively throughout your home, Rosen believes that the use of a pleated duct filter, rated for mold and pollen removal (not the see-through filament kind), on your central system will do a better job of sweeping molds, spores, and mold toxins out of your home's air than HEPA filters placed in individual rooms. Molds live in dust, so you should mop your floors and/or vacuum the entire home twice a week with a quality HEPA-rated vacuum, such as the Miele brand. If you don't use a high-quality HEPA vacuum cleaner, then you will simply blow molds and mold spores back into your home's air. Some people have had good results misting their home regularly with Moldzyme, a moldeating enzyme, or Heartland Microbes Mold Away (a live culture of microbes that supposedly feast on mold), though I have not seen any scientific studies to prove their efficacy. I will say that washing our clothing, linens, and bedding with a capful of Moldzyme in each load has made a noticeable improvement in my wife's reaction to these items.

The third step is to obtain medical treatment for your condition. Fungal pharmaceuticals, such as Nystatin, Nisoral, and Diflucan, have helped many to deal with molds. These drugs must be prescribed by a physician and may have toxic side effects. Effective self-treatment typically includes herbs, supplements, and diets that are commonly recommended for yeast infections such as *Candida*. Rosen has personally achieved outstanding results using caprylic acid supplements, which are often prescribed for *Candida albicans* (yeast) infections. You may also consider using traditional fungus-fighting herbal supplements and remedies, such as goldenseal, usnea, and colloidal silver. If you are having sinus issues, I highly recommend the daily use of a Neti Pot or a Grossan Hydro Pulse nasal/sinus irrigator, as related in the following story:

In the summer of 2005 I was introduced to Rick Kannisto, a fireman who had been fighting fires since the mid-1970s. For the first 11 years of his career, he fought indoor fires without any special airway protection, since the kinds of sophisticated protective breathing apparatuses that are now standard equipment were simply not available back then. He figures that he had sucked toxic fumes into his lungs and sinuses on hundreds of separate occasions. For over a decade, Rick was debilitated with severe sinus headaches and chronic fatigue syndrome. Everyday, by three in the afternoon, this previously healthy athletic man was exhausted and had to take a 1-hour nap just to make it through his day. In spite of having excellent medical insurance, numerous doctor's treatments and pharmaceuticals had brought him no relief. He felt as if he was 80 years old and that his health and youth had been stolen from him.

Finally, one of his doctors suggested that he try a "Neti pot," an ancient tool for irrigating the sinuses that looks somewhat like Aladdin's lamp. After weeks of aggressively using the Neti pot, flushing one quart of warm saline solution four times a day, Rick's condition started to improve, and his need for daily naps gradually disappeared. When a buddy of Rick's suggested that he try using colloidal silver in the Neti pot, his healing took another leap forward. After a few

more months of including a half cup of homemade colloidal silver in his daily Neti pot treatments, Rick felt like he had his life back! To keep his condition from returning, Rick continues to use his Neti pot to flush his sinuses with a warm saline and colloidal silver solution at least once a day.

The fourth step is to detoxify your body from mold neurotoxins. By a stroke of luck, during a Maryland Lakes disaster when fish were dying and many people were getting sick, Dr. Ritchie Shoemaker stumbled upon an effective pharmaceutical for eliminating many biotoxins from the body. When dozens of people who were sickened by the biotoxins in the local lakes filled Dr. Shoemaker's Maryland office, he gave cholestyramine (trade name Questran) to an older woman to treat her diarrhea. Not only did her diarrhea disappear, but also most of her neurotoxin symptoms simply evaporated. Since then, Dr. Shoemaker has treated thousands of patients with cholestyramine and has found it to be very good at binding and eliminating neurotoxins (Rosen and Schaller 2006, 73). Rosen told me that he noticed radical improvements in his own symptoms after just one treatment with cholestyramine. He said that it was as if someone turned the lights on "bright" and the contrast control way up on his personal video screen. Suddenly colors were brighter, he could easily distinguish shades of gray that had previously blended together, and he could comfortably drive at night, whereas previously he had difficulty seeing in low-light situations. Rosen also says that even though he is now 55, since treating himself for molds and mold toxins, he feels better than he has since his twenties. You might also try detoxifying your body with cleansing fasts, as discussed earlier in this chapter.

ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS

Quite simply, modern society is in the throes of a massive global experiment with a new energetic form of air pollution, called electrosmog or electropollution. It's biophysics plain and simple—the area where all our wireless gizmos created by the physics and engineering disciplines meet with the biological systems in their paths. Electrosmog has now been found capable of affecting the DNA of every living thing and it may even be having an adverse impact on the earth's atmosphere. Electrosmog will likely prove to be the greatest environmental challenge of this century. We appear to be on a direct collision course with the basic building blocks of life.

Many people today think that concerns over power line electromagnetic fields in the extremely low frequency (EMF/ELF) range have been settled and given a clean bill of health, but nothing could be further from the truth. Three U.S. state and federal agencies now recognize that such exposures are directly linked with childhood leukemia. So do several European governments and the European Union. New studies indicate that living near power lines during childhood significantly increases the lifetime risk of developing adult leukemia as well. . . . Plus, there are new concerns by health physicists over something called "dirty electricity," a term used to describe the increasing multi-frequency exposures created when RF from electronic devices couples with power lines and plumbing

> fixtures, following their pathways into our homes and businesses. Dirty electricity has been found to cause increases in diabetes, headaches, concentration problems, and hyperactivity in school children, among other problems. . . .
>
> The German government in 2007 warned its citizens against Wi-Fi technologies and wireless routers, especially in schools. They advise that people keep computers and phones wired. Even cordless domestic phones are not recommended. . . . Evidence shows that RF from cellular, TV, and radio towers lowers milk production in cows, causes deformities in amphibians, lowers reproduction in animals and birds, and causes confusion, navigational disruption and death in migratory birds. Bees' navigational abilities are known to be sensitive to low-level EMFs.
>
> The handwriting is on the wall. We need only open our eyes to make safer purchasing decisions for ourselves, our families, our planet. The adage "If it seems too good to be true, then it probably is. . ." may come to haunt us. We may want to rethink many of these "magic" technologies. If it's wireless, we may well need to worry. **—B. Blake Levitt, *Electromagnetic Fields: A Consumer's Guide to the Issues and How to Protect Ourselves***

In 1993, Motorola scientist and engineer Robert Kane, Ph.D., made headlines when he sued Motorola, claiming that while developing Motorola's early cellular telephones, he burned the skin on his head and his brain with strong electromagnetic fields (EMF) in the radio frequency (RF) range and that this damage caused a brain seizure in 1992 that was subsequently diagnosed as caused by a brain tumor. Kane said that while performing the cell phone antenna tests in 1984, he noticed a hot, burning feeling above his right ear immediately adjacent to the cell phone. Afterward, his skin developed a "wetness" and a dermatitis type of itchy skin condition that lasted for months. During this period of time, Kane's ear also oozed excessive wax and fluids. During the trial, Dr. Samuel Milham and Dr. Jan Leestma testified that these conditions were typical of burns and that, in their expert medical opinion, it was these burns that caused the tumor to grow in Kane's brain. Even though the earlier skin and ear conditions were medically documented, and the tumor was of an unusual type and was located at precisely the location directly beneath the location of the skin condition, Kane and his wife lost their court battle. We all know who had the deep pockets in this case—Motorola (State of Illinois, Circuit Court of Cook County, 2002).

Kane went on to write a book exposing the cellular industry's suppression of scientific evidence linking the EMF/RF of cell phones, cell towers, and various other wireless devices to a wide variety of health dangers, including the increased likelihood of developing leukemia, tumors, and other cancers. His book, *Cellular Telephone Russian Roulette*, was published in 2001 and is reported to be an excellent source of information on this subject. Unfortunately, after numerous operations, Kane succumbed to his cancer in 2005, and his book has gone out of print.

Fearing public backlash due to concerns over cellular telephone radiation, the industry organization called the Cellular Telecommunications and Internet Association (CTIA) organized its own research effort, headed by George Carlo, Ph.D., an expert in risk assessment and epidemiology. It was a $25 million program. The CTIA expected Dr. Carlo to vindicate the

cellular industry and confirm prior research showing that these types of devices were in fact safe. Dr. Carlo was a longtime industry favorite "gun for hire" who had previously performed pro-tobacco work as a "medical expert" for the Philip Morris Company and similar "damage control" publicity on dioxin for the Chlorine Institute. For the first few years of their study, Dr. Carlo was the darling of the industry, as their preliminary results were indicating that prior concerns had been blown out of proportion. But their relationship ended, and industry funding was pulled, when even Dr. Carlo's program began confirming what other scientific studies had found: that there were significant health concerns surrounding cell phone EMF and that elevated incidences of cancers, tumors, and other serious health problems were cropping up at far lower EMF exposures than what government standards have specified as "safe levels."

Though the results of Dr. Carlo's program were extremely limited in their published results, the following is a partial list of potential health problems that other scientific studies have linked with elevated levels of EMF:

- **Recurring headaches and migraines.**
- **Memory loss and mental confusion:** The feeling of operating in a mental "fog."
- **Sleep disorders:** A recent study carried out by Wayne State University in Michigan and Karolinska Institute and Uppsala University in Sweden says that there is now more than sufficient evidence to show that cell-phone radiation affects deep sleep. A massive Belgian study that followed 1,656 teenagers for a year found that teenagers who used their cell phones before going to bed just once a week were three times more likely to be "very tired" than those without evening cellphone usage, and the results were far worse for heavy night-time cell phone users.
- **Nerve and psychiatric disorders:** An Egyptian study found that people living near cell-phone towers (these towers are often disguised to prevent local protest) performed poorly on tests for attention, short-term memory, and problem solving, plus they are at high risk for more serious neurological disorders.
- **DNA damage:** Drs. Henry Lai and Narendra Singh, biomedical researchers at the University of Washington, found that RF/microwave radiation from cell phones and cell tower transmitters quickly causes DNA strand breaks at levels well below current federal "safe" exposure levels. They are also shown to cause blood cells to leak hemoglobin, limiting their ability to perform their job of oxygen storage and transfer.
- **Cancer risk:** Numerous studies show a significant increase in the risk of developing cancers and tumors, including eye cancer, breast cancer, leukemia, neck cancer, salivary gland tumors, and brain cancer.
- **Muscle pains, joint pains, and chronic fatigue.**
- **Increased permeability of the blood-brain barrier.**
- **Cell-phone RF/microwave radiation has been shown to promote the growth of cataracts.**

For an excellent source for further information on this subject, including technical articles, films and resources, see the Web site for the Council on Wireless Technology Impacts at www.energyfields.org.

In the late 1990s, when I was an engineer sitting in front of my computer for 50 hours a week, I struggled with a plague of migraine headaches. Prior to this period of time, migraines had struck only twice in my life, both times as a result of multiple consecutive days of exposure to bright sunlight without the protection of sunglasses. When I moved to Hawaii to build green homes and spent most of my workday in the field instead of in front of my computer, the migraines went away.

After returning to the mainland and resuming my engineering business, the migraines came back with a vengeance. When I mentioned to Joshua, my 33-year-old son, that I was either suffering with a migraine or on the verge of a migraine almost every day, he asked me where my wireless Internet router was located and if I could move it farther from where I sat at my computer each day. He explained that today's wireless devices—including routers, cordless phones, and cell phones—give off strong electromagnetic fields (EMF), and that there are numerous European studies and several widely suppressed American studies that indicate serious health issues around strong EMF fields.

My wireless Internet router was located just 2 feet from where I sat all day. I moved it across the room to about 20 feet away, and my migraines instantly disappeared. Since electromagnetic fields diminish with the square of the distance from their source, by moving it ten times further away, I reduced the field intensity by a factor of 100. To further reduce the EMF pollution in our home, I have since replaced my cordless phones with hardwired speaker phones and my wireless router with a hard-wired router. In addition, I bought special networking adapters that hard-wire my router to a standard 110-volt wall outlet, sending the Internet signals across my home's regular 110-volt house wiring to receiving stations that can be plugged into any wall outlet for network connections to computers located in any room of our house. I measured these connections with an EMF meter and verified that they gave off low levels of EMF that were a tiny fraction of what my wireless router had been bombarding me with.

In much the same way that humankind's injection of massive amounts of greenhouse gases into the Earth's atmosphere is a giant experiment with unknown consequences, our recent flooding of the "civilized" world with a sea of electromagnetic fields is also an experiment with potentially disastrous results.

THE BECK PROTOCOL

When you read the hundreds of testimonials attributed to the "Beck Protocol," it becomes hard to imagine that there are many health issues that won't be resolved, or dramatically improved, by practicing this simple, lowcost set of procedures for a few weeks or months. From AIDS/HIV to hepatitis C, to fibromyalgia, to stage 5 cancers, people who had been seriously ill (many on the verge of death) offer glowing testimonials to the effectiveness of this relatively simple protocol for reversing a multitude of chronic and deadly diseases.

So what is the Beck Protocol? It is a program consisting of the following four self-administered treatments:

1. **Blood electrification:** Groundbreaking research at the Albert Einstein College of Medicine (disclosed in patent 5188738) showed that pulsed microcurrents of electricity would affect bloodborne viruses and bacteria in ways that prevented these organisms from being able to multiply and grow. The original patent was for a complicated, surgically implanted device. While suffering from his own serious health issues, physicist and inventor Bob Beck used the information presented by this patent to develop an innovative, low-cost device that accomplished the same process quite simply and easily without the need for any kind of surgery or other medically invasive procedure. He did this by generating tiny electrical impulses in a small box powered by a 9-volt battery and passing these microelectric currents through the blood inside the user's wrist veins where they pass close to the skin's surface, via electrodes that are wetted with a salt solution as they are held snugly in place by an elastic wristband. In *A First Aid Kit of the Future: The Beck Protocol* (see references in this chapter), Beck recommends starting out with a minimum of 2 hours of blood electrification per day, for 4 to 12 weeks.
2. **Ionic colloidal silver:** Beck recommends drinking 3 to 5 ppm of ionic colloidal silver every day. The groundbreaking research of orthopedic surgeon and medical researcher Dr. Robert Becker (totally different guy, easily confused with Bob Beck due to similar names), as related in his groundbreaking book, *The Body Electric: Electromagnetism and the Foundation of Life*, showed that in addition to killing bacteria, molds, and viruses, charged silver particles also positively affect the body's bioelectric healing mechanisms. In fact, Dr. Becker saved several patients from amputation using charged silver particles to heal infections that had become gangrenous and bones that were not mending in spite of medical treatment with massive doses of antibiotics and other allopathic medicines. It was the physicist, Bob Beck, who built on Dr. Becker's research and invented the simple modern colloidal silver generator that makes ionic colloidal silver using 9-volt batteries, distilled water, and pure silver wire.
3. **Magnetic pulsing:** After working with his blood electrification invention, Bob Beck realized that there were organs of the body that did not receive a high flow of blood, and that these organs could benefit if they were directly stimulated with microelectric currents. He invented an electromagnetic pulse-generating device that stimulates microelectric currents directly inside organs and glands located within the body via the mechanism of electromagnetic induction. Conventional permanent magnets cannot generate these currents, since it takes a strong rapidly fluctuating magnetic field to generate this effect. Beck suggests that you apply your pulser for a minimum of 20 minutes daily by positioning the pulsing coil directly over your body's lymph nodes and internal organs.
4. **Ozonated water:** The final step of the Beck Protocol is to drink as much freshly ozonated water as you can each day. Ozone is made by adding an extra atom of oxygen to the normal two atoms in a standard molecule of oxygen to make O_3 from a molecule of O_2. This extra oxygen atom easily breaks off from an ozone molecule to react with other substances, making ozone a highly reactive and unstable molecule with a half-life of only a few minutes under normal conditions at room temperature. Since all known pathogens and cancers are anaerobic, the ingestion of the highly reactive freshly ozonated water will rapidly raise blood oxygen levels and assist your body with eliminating pathogens and flushing toxins.

Beck gave his inventions to the world for the benefit of all humanity. Since they are not protected by recent patents and no pharmaceutical company is about to spend $5 to $20 million dollars to go through the extensive approval process without the benefit of an 18-year monopoly guaranteed by owning the rights to a new patent, the Beck protocol will probably never see official approval by the medical establishment. This means that if you wish to use this protocol, you do so under your own risk, and as a private "medical researcher" testing this protocol on your own body. You may purchase all of the experimental Beck Protocol instruments and supplies at Sota Instruments (see resources) and you will find an excellent instructional pamphlet and DVD on the Beck Protocol at Sharing Health From the Heart, Inc. (www.sharinghealth.com). Both the DVD and the pamphlet offer many inspiring testimonials from fellow "medical researchers" who used this protocol to turn around a multitude of debilitating and life-threatening diseases. A number of naturopathic doctors (N.D.) have related that their clients have achieved excellent results by combining the Beck Protocol with Dr. Clark's herbs, organ cleanses, and supplements.

HEALING WITH ENERGY

When I met Karen, she was a gymnastics coach at a well-known training center in Palo Alto, California. A few years earlier, Karen had been a top-notch gymnast, competing at the junior national level, until she broke her back in competition. She recovered from the broken back and resumed a healthy, active lifestyle. One day, Karen leapt off a couch and "landed funny." She twisted in agony. Unable to move her legs, she feared she must have rebroken her back. She was brought to the hospital, where X-rays confirmed that she had fractured one of her vertebrae. Her legs were paralyzed, and it was not known whether or not she would regain the use of her legs. A few months earlier, Karen had been introduced to Madhusudandasji, a powerful 108-year-old Indian yogi. The yogi visited Karen in the hospital and gave her energy healing treatments. Holding his hands on various parts of her body using special techniques, the yogi transmitted healing energy into Karen's body. There was a strong feeling of electricity, as if thousands of volts were traveling through her veins. She felt tremendous heat, as if the temperature in the room had suddenly jumped to 120°F. One day later, Karen had regained feeling and movement in her legs. Within an astounding 2-week period, Karen was fully recovered from a fractured spine and paraplegic paralysis! Several other students of this yogi have told me similar stories about miraculous healings and spontaneous remissions of serious diseases, such as terminal cancers and tumors.

The practice of "laying on of hands" and other forms of therapeutic energy healing are as old as recorded history. The Christian Bible, Hindu Bhagavad Gita, and other holy writings from around the world contain numerous references to this kind of healing. It is easy to be skeptical, as there are no visible measurable ways to judge the effectiveness (or integrity) of a healer other

than the healer's reputation and personal testimonials. Many charlatans have preyed upon innocent and desperate people willing to give anything to be healed. As a scientifically trained and educated person, I used to get quite annoyed by the way the term "energy" was commonly used. I thought it extremely overused and misused. Once I personally experienced the transmission of some kind of extremely powerful spiritual healing energy (I felt like I was on fire and ready to explode), I realized that simply because scientists had failed to measure or detect spiritual healing energies didn't mean that they do not exist. After all, the stars had transmitted X-rays and radio waves for billions of years before humanity's discovery of their existence.

There are many different healing traditions that incorporate some type of nonphysical healing energy. I cannot do any of them justice in the short space of this section, but you may find the following guidelines useful if you have an interest in the subject. If you are very sensitive, you may feel the energy as soon as you begin to work. As with most healing arts, however, the best way to learn is directly from someone who is already proficient and to practice what you learn on a regular basis. In the case of the Reiki healing tradition, an "attunement" by a Reiki master opens the student as a channel for greatly magnified manifestations of some kind of universal healing energies, which are independent of religious beliefs.

The first and foremost requirement is your intention to heal. It is your intention that will help to bring the healing energies through. I find that a good way to start is with a simple silent prayer asking for help and stating your intention to bring in the light (holy spirit, Christ, divine mother, higher power, etc.). Many practitioners start at the head and work toward the feet, although there are no hard-and-fast rules. Some simply hold their hands above or touch various parts of the body and ask the light to heal the patient, consciously doing nothing but allowing the light to do as it may. Other traditions use visualization or the breath to help guide, direct, and focus the healing energies. If the healing session leaves the healer feeling tired, drained, or sick, the healer should try to see the healing energies as passing through the healer from a higher power and not as coming from the healer's own energy. Some find it helpful to feel or visualize the energy coming in from above with the healer's inhalation and flowing out through the hands to the patient with the exhalation.

In a number of Hindu and Buddhist traditions, the body's main bioenergy centers are called chakras (see Figure 9-2). When performing your energy healing session, it may help to visualize a color of light flowing to each of the body's main energy centers. There is no single "right way" to do this, just as there is no single universally accepted chart of chakra energy centers and their associated colors, but a commonly accepted system is as follows: the "crown chakra" is located at the top center of the head and is commonly associated with the color white; the "third eye" chakra is located at the center of the forehead, behind and slightly above the eyes, and is commonly associated with the color purple; the "throat chakra" is located along the front of the spine in the throat area, just above the collarbone, and is commonly associated with the color blue; the "heart chakra" is located in the center of the breast and is commonly associated with the color green; the "diaphragm chakra" is located just above the stomach and below the ribcage and is commonly associated with the color yellow; the "spleen chakra" is located behind and slightly below the belly button and is commonly associated with the color orange; the "root chakra" is associated with the sexual organs, is located at the base of the spine, and is commonly associated with the color red.

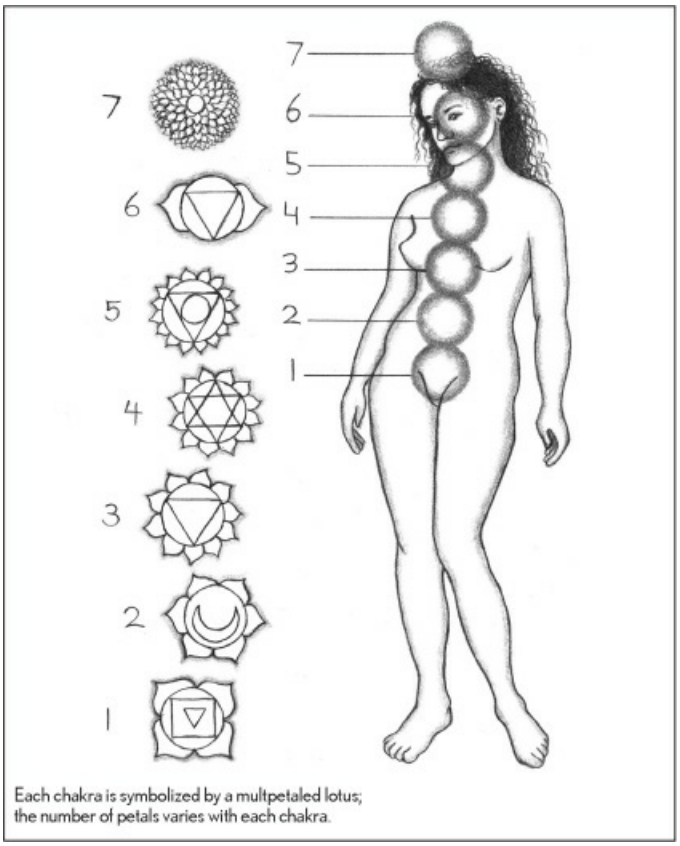


Figure 9-2. Circuit of the ki (or chi) in the body (chakra diagram).

A Few Useful Guidelines (No Fixed Rules)

Let your experiences and intuition guide you in your work. There is no single "right" way to do this kind of healing work, so these are simply guidelines that you may find useful. Take off watches and rings. Wash your hands before and after treatment. Loosen tight belts, clothing, and neckties on patient and healer. The patient should remove shoes and lie or sit in a relaxed position with uncrossed legs.

Begin by making the connection between your spirit and the universal life force, using your intention to bring in the light (Holy Spirit, Christ, divine mother, etc.). You may wish to offer a silent prayer.

At the start, stroke the aura several times with your hands, to balance it a bit. Stroke from head to the feet, lifting your hands from the patient's body while returning from feet to head. On the down stroke, hold the hands a few inches from the patient's body, letting your intuition determine the actual distance. You may use your intention and breath to help direct the waves of healing energies through your hands.

Hold your hands on or above the body for several minutes at each location, until the feelings of energy become calm and even. Start at the head and work toward the feet, paying particular attention to "hot spots" and trouble areas. Follow your intuitive guidance. "See" the energy as

flowing from a universal source into the patient, and not as your own energy.

Before ending the session, ask the receiver (and the universal energy) if there is a place that still wants to be treated. End with a few more smoothing aura strokes, perhaps a "grounding" exercise (touch the soles of the feet and "see" the energy connecting to the Earth's center) and a prayer of thanks to the healing energies for their blessings. (Adapted from *A Complete Book of Reiki Healing,* by Brigitte Muller and Horst Gunther.)

Once a practitioner has become proficient in one of the various forms of energy healing arts, the healer and/or the patient will probably begin to feel manifestations of the healing energies. These may be experienced as elevated body heat, tingling, trembling, vibration, sound, lights, or other unusual sensations. Occasionally, the patient may feel cold or pain. I have found that my own healing work has been most effective when my mind has been totally quiet, and it didn't really feel like "I" was doing anything at all. In these instances, the "small me" seems to have gone away and something greater has worked through me. I did not consciously "do anything" but simply had the intention to assist with a healing.

THE POWER OF PRAYER

> Prayer is not an old woman's idle amusement. Properly understood and applied, it is the most potent instrument of action. **—Mahatma Gandhi**

> I met a man who had been deaf for 20 years. He had been in and out of hospitals for years and had several operations, none of which was successful at restoring his hearing. One day, a friend suggested he try a healer he knew, who practiced Christian Science and was known to have facilitated many miraculous healings. He was skeptical, but willing to give it a try. He met with the Christian lady, who agreed to do her prayer-based healing work. That night, he was mildly hopeful and optimistic when he went to sleep. The next morning, he awoke to the sounds of passing traffic. Not only could he hear traffic for the first time in 20 years, but he could also hear the sound of a pin drop!
>
> Years later, he was approached by a Native American man walking with the aid of crutches. The Indian explained that he had fallen and broken his leg. Since he had no money, he had not seen a doctor to have his leg set properly. The broken bone became infected and gangrene had set in. The Indian asked, "Could you get that Christian lady to pray for me? I'm going into the hospital tomorrow. They are going to cut my leg off and I'm real scared." They contacted the Christian Science lady, who then did her prayer-based healing work for the Indian. The next day, the Indian walked into the hospital and amazed the doctors. On the day scheduled for his amputation, his leg was fully healed with no signs of either the broken bone or the infection.

Numerous scientific studies now confirm that prayer does, indeed, have a positive effect on

healing (Dossey 1995, 233–271). Similar to the case of homeopathic medicine, scientific analysis of data gathered in carefully controlled, double-blind studies indicates that there are positive healing effects from prayer, but science can offer no clear explanation. Experiments indicate that the healing powers of prayer are not limited by time, space, or any type of material barrier. Prayer is not a particularly easy healing tradition to study in the laboratory. Applying the same technique may result in a miraculous healing effect on one subject while producing no noticeable positive effect on another. Additionally, even though it is often referred to as "faith" healing, the faith of the patient does not always bring the expected result.

There are many people with such strong religious faith that they refuse all healing from any source other than prayer and "God" and are willing to die before seeking medical attention. In spite of their great faith, some of these people are not healed of their afflictions. On the other hand, I have personally witnessed people with so little faith that they turned to prayer only after all orthodox medical procedures had failed to heal, yet these "of little faith" received a miraculous healing when they finally did resort to prayer. In my experience, it is the faith of the healer doing the prayer work that matters much more than the faith of the patient, but even great spiritual healers are not always successful. Perhaps there are other factors, such as personal growth, subconscious choice, life path, karma, and divine grace that all bear on the outcome of spiritual healing. There appear to be no hard-and-fast rules, but experience indicates that if the patient totally disbelieves in the power of prayer, he or she greatly reduces the probability of receiving a healing through prayer. I do not believe that healing by prayer is limited to any particular religion or denomination, but can work for Hindus, Christians, Muslims, and those of other faiths.

In the fall of 1979, while rock climbing in Yosemite Valley, several cuts and gouges on the back of my hands became infected. Having heard stories from two of my close friends about the healing talents of Christian Science practitioners and having read Mary Baker Eddy's book, *Science and Health*, I decided to give their methods a try. I called a practitioner on the phone, she spoke with me for a few minutes, and gave me a few simple instructions. That night, the oozing sores on my hands significantly improved to the point where they were nearly healed the following morning. However, they were not fully healed, and I did not call the practitioner for any more treatments. My continued efforts at visualization and prayer-based healing were unsuccessful. Over the next week, my infection returned to its prior vigor.

After about 2 weeks of trying to heal the infection by myself through mental and spiritual methods, I finally gave up and visited an M.D., who diagnosed the sores as a combined strep and staph infection. After two weeks of strong antibiotics, the infection was finally healed and did not return. My climbing partner, who had also picked up the same infection, was not so lucky. He had returned to the East Coast and his doctor had initially prescribed penicillin, which was only partially effective against this particular infection. It took him about 6 weeks of treatment, and three courses of different antibiotics, before his doctor got it right and his infection was healed.

A year later, I picked up a thorn in the sole of my foot. I dug out most of the thorn, except for the tip, which had broken off deep under my skin. This remainder resulted in another infection. Over a period of a week or two, the infection worsened. When my foot swelled to the point where I could no longer get into my climbing shoes, I finally decided that I had to take action. There was a 2-inch-widered track, which looked like sunburn, running from my foot to my groin. The lymph nodes in my groin, under my arms, and under my chin were swollen and painful, and I was beginning to have difficulty walking on my swollen ankle. At this point, the infection was becoming potentially life threatening, and I believe that any M.D. would have rushed me to a hospital bed and stuck a needle into me, pumping me full of intravenous antibiotics.

Feeling kind of sheepish about giving spiritual healing such a half-hearted try the year before, this time I decided I would make a serious go of it. I made the decision that I would call the same Christian Science practitioner, only this time I would work with her until I was either fully healed or hospitalized. Within 3 days time, I was fully healed with absolutely no signs of infection!

For more than a century, Christian Scientists have relied on prayer for their physical healing. In 1875, Christian Science founder Mary Baker Eddy published *Science and Health.* One of the preeminent works on spiritual healing, it remains in print today. Eddy claims that human beings are made in the likeness of God, so our true nature is spirit and perfection. By truly "seeing" this as fact, health is restored. Her "Scientific Statement of Being" summarizes the basic postulates upon which the Christian Science method of spiritual healing is based:

> There is no life, truth, intelligence, nor substance in matter. All is infinite Mind and its infinite manifestation, for God is All-inall. Spirit is immortal Truth; matter is mortal error. Spirit is the real and eternal; matter is the unreal and temporal. Spirit is God, and man is His image and likeness. Therefore, man is not material; he is spiritual. **—Mary Baker Eddy, *Science and Health***

A common belief (I must admit that I used to buy into this one) is that Christian Scientists are religious fanatics who would rather die than go to a medical doctor. In reality, they rely on a system of prayer-based healing that has proven, on thousands of occasions, to work. When a Christian Scientist's personal prayers for healing are not garnering the desired result, they call on "Christian Science practitioners," specially trained spiritual healers who can perform their prayer-based healing work at any distance from the patient. Some Christian Science practitioners will work with non–Christian Scientists. Anyone may look up local practitioners in the phone directory listings under "Christian Science practitioners."

HYPNOSIS FOR PAIN CONTROL AND HEALING

When my wife took her professional hypno-therapist training, one of the other

students in her class related this remarkable story: Patty and her husband, Joe, were cutting firewood in a remote location. Joe's chainsaw slipped and cut deeply into his thigh, severing a major artery. Blood was spurting everywhere, and they were many miles from any medical services. Maintaining a cool head, Patty decided to try a hypnosis technique that she had heard about. Speaking in a soft monotone, she quickly induced a light trance in Joe, then gave him the hypnotic suggestion that the severed arteries in his leg were squeezing shut and that the blood flow was turned off, like the flow of water from a faucet. Amazingly, the leg stopped bleeding! They were able to walk to their truck and drive for half an hour until they reached the hospital. When they arrived at the hospital, the surgeon expressed concern that the wound had not bled enough to cleanse the chainsaw gash and therefore left a significant chance for severe infection. At his recommendation, Patti removed the hypnotic suggestion to allow the wound to bleed. Immediately, the wound began spurting startling amounts of blood. The surgeon said that he had never seen anything like that in all his years of medicine. Normally, without a tourniquet, this kind of severe bleeding would have cost the life of her husband before they could have reached the hospital. The other amazing thing about this story is that Patty had no prior training in hypnotic techniques at the time of the accident.

Hypnosis has been employed for healing since "temple sleep" was used in the healing temples of Greece and ancient Egypt. Hypnosis is not a sleep state, but an altered state of mind in which the subject is in a heightened state of awareness, with exceptional concentration, similar to a state of focused daydreaming. Contrary to popular opinion, the subject will usually remember what happened during the hypnotic trance and cannot be forced to say or do anything that goes against his or her will or personal moral ethics. Typically, the subject will snap out of the trance state if asked to see or do something he is not ready or willing to see or do. Hypnosis is a natural state of mind that most people slip in and out of several times a day. The mind will accept positive images and suggestions far more easily under hypnosis than in the normal waking state of consciousness.

Hypnosis can be a valuable tool for pain control and relief from allergies, stomach problems, skin problems, migraines, and other conditions. In the 1860s, the British surgeon James Esdaile reported that he had performed hundreds of successful, pain-free surgeries using hypnosis for anesthesia. The journalist F. W. Sims once watched Esdaile amputate the leg of a woman using no anesthesia. Amazed by how little the wound bled and how still the conscious woman lay, Sims wrote, "During the whole operation, not the least movement or change in her limbs, body, or countenance took place: she continued in the same apparently easy repose as at first, and I have no reason to believe she was not perfectly at ease." Currently, hypnosis is occasionally used for operations when the use of anesthesia might cause severe complications. Experiments with the medical use of hypnosis for burn patients indicate that the use of positive mental imagery in the hypnotic trance can stimulate the self-healing response and accelerate healing. The use of creative healing visualizations combined with relaxation exercises is essentially the same as self-hypnosis. As an adjunct to standard cancer therapies, Carl and Stephanie Simonton and James Creighgton, authors of *Getting Well Again*, recommend a program of relaxation, attitude change,

and mental imaging. Many of their patients have successfully used imagery, such as Pac-Men gobbling up tumors, to help their bodies eliminate cancers and tumors.

My wife had a client who was suffering from severe debilitating arthritis in both of her knees. Every morning, upon awakening, she had to massage her knees for ten minutes before she was able to walk across the room to relieve herself. While in the hypnotic trance, she was directed to view the source of this physical issue. What she "saw" was totally unexpected. A scene unfolded when my wife's client viewed herself as a Native American male warrior on a battlefield. This warrior had been entrusted with the protection of his younger brother during a battle with a neighboring tribe. As the battle progressed, this warrior was engaged in a life-and-death struggle with two of the opposing tribe's warriors, and was unable to break free to assist the younger brother in a similar struggle. In that former life, the client was able to subdue his assailants, but alas, the younger brother was not so lucky and lay dead on this ancient field. Agonizing over the death of his sibling, the warrior raised his battle axe and brought the chiseled stone head crashing down upon first one kneecap, then the other. For the rest of his life, each step became a painful reminder of his failure to save his younger brother's life. After viewing this incident from the detached perspective of the soul, the client was able to release this ancient guilt and her chronic illness radically improved. In both the Hindu and Buddhist traditions, soul imprints from other lives are often referred to as "sanskaras." When these imprints are from particularly traumatic experiences, they may leave such a scar on a being that they result in a chronic illness at a later date, and hypnosis may be successful at accessing and releasing these imprints such that the client recovers from an illness that was previously not responding to medical treatment. Of course, to the client it makes little difference whether they truly saw a past life or if the subconscious mind simply fabricated an appropriate healing metaphor. All they care about is an end to their suffering and ill health.

Because hypnosis gives conscious access to the normally subconscious mind, it can also provide valuable insights into the subconscious roots of disease or blocks to healing. Hypnosis may be used to access memories, even those from infancy and early childhood. Additionally, when in the trance state, some patients appear to have the ability to access some kind of higher source of wisdom or knowledge, providing self-diagnostic or therapeutic information for themselves that they normally could not access.

The best hypnotic subjects tend to be people who can easily focus their minds and are able to visualize well. Children over the age of eight tend to make excellent subjects. About 95 percent of the public can achieve at least a light trance, and roughly 70 percent are capable of a medium-level trance, where much of the most powerful hypnotic work is done. In one sense, all hypnosis is selfhypnosis, because it takes the trust, consent, and relaxation of the self to allow the mind to enter the hypnotic trance.

The typical hypnosis session is divided into three parts. The first part, the "induction," is the

process for initiating the hypnotic trance. There are many different types and styles of inductions. The second part of the session is where the work is done. If it is a self-hypnosis session, positive suggestions are repeated in several different ways. This is referred to as "auto-suggestion." In a session with a hypnotherapist, the patient will be given positive suggestions during this part of the session or possibly "regressed" to a time when the problem originated, so that it may be examined from a detached perspective and then remedied. Painful memories may be made easier to review by the suggestion that they will be viewed on a screen and the patient will not feel any pain or trauma. The third part of the session is the "waking up" or "coming back," when suggestions are given to return the patient to a normal state of mind. Suggestions such as "At the count of five, you will be wide awake, alert, and feeling fine" help the patient to emerge fully and clearly from the hypnotic trance.

The induction should be read slowly and in a medium monotone. Gradually slow down more and more, pausing often between sentences. You should feel as if you are talking too slowly. The pace and tone should pick up somewhat for the suggestion or regression part of the session and should pick up significantly for the awakening part. Even though the last part of the session is referred to as "awakening," remember that the patient is not asleep during the hypnotic trance. For self-hypnosis, the easiest method is to make a tape recording of yourself to be played back on a regular basis; it should include the induction, auto-suggestions, and the awakening suggestions. If a tape recorder is not available, you can write the script for a partner to read to you. Due to common misconceptions fostered by movies and stage acts, many hypnosis subjects will find it hard to believe that they were actually hypnotized. Time distortion, rapid eye movement, and very deep rhythmic breathing are frequently noted signs of a hypnotic trance.

Fractional Relaxation Induction

(Tape or use this entire induction, except for the words in parentheses. This is an excellent induction for beginners.) Lie down on your back, arms parallel to your body, fingers loosely outstretched, and palms downward. Separate your feet by 8 or 10 inches so that your thighs are not touching. Use a pillow if you wish, and make yourself as comfortable as possible. Remove or loosen clothing that binds you in any way, and remove your shoes if they are tight. The idea is to get comfortable and relaxed.

Fix your eyes on a spot on the ceiling and take three long, deep breaths. Inhale, hold the air in your lungs for 3 seconds, and as you exhale slowly, you will relax all over. Now let's take the first breath. Inhale. (Pause) Exhale. — Sleep now. (Pause) Now another deep breath, even deeper than before. Inhale. (Pause) Exhale. — Sleep now. (Pause) Now a third deep breath. Inhale. (Pause) Exhale. — Sleep now. (Pause) Now as your whole body begins to relax, and as every muscle and nerve begins to feel loose and limp, your eyelids also become heavy and tired. They grow heavier and heavier and will close now. The lids have become so tired and so heavy, it would be difficult to open them. But you have no desire to try because you want them to remain closed until I tell you to open them.

(Pause) Now I want you to concentrate all of your attention on your right foot. Relax the toes of your right foot. Imagine they are like loose rubber bands dangling from your foot. (Pause) Let this loose feeling spread back through the ball of the foot and then all the way back to the heel. (Pause) (Drag out the word "all" and speak very slowly from this point on, pausing between all sentences.)

Now let this relaxed feeling go up into the calf of the leg. Let the calf muscles go loose — and limp — and LA-A-A-ZY. (Long pause) And now, while your muscles and nerves are relaxing, let your mind relax also. Let it drift away, to pleasant scenes in your imagination. Let your mind wander where it will, as you go deeper — deeper — in drowsy relaxation. You are breathing easily like a sleeper breathes. All of your cares and tensions are fading away, as you go deeper — de-e-e-e-per into drowsy slumber. Every breath that you take — every noise that you hear — makes you go deeper, deeper, in pleasant, comfortable relaxation.

Now let the wonderful wave of relaxation move from your right calf up into the large thigh muscles. Let them go loose and limp. The right leg is now completely relaxed and comfortable. (Pause) Now the left foot. The toes relax, the whole foot relaxes just as the right one did — limp and lazy. Let the feeling of pleasant relaxation go up into the left calf. Let the calf muscles go. Your legs are feeling heavy like pieces of wood. As you relax the left thigh muscles, they feel heavier and heavier, and you become more and more drowsy. Now as the wave of relaxation moves upward through your hips and abdomen, you let go more and more. Think of your abdomen as an inflated ball. You are letting the air out of the ball and it spreads out and relaxes completely. Stomach and solar plexus relax. Let them go — as you go further into deep — deep slumber. (Pause)

(Slowly) The fingers in your right hand are now relaxing, and so is your wrist. Now your forearm relaxes. On up to your right shoulder — your whole right arm is relaxed and numb. You probably feel your fingers or your toes tingling. This is a good sign, so continue to go deeper. And now, just go on over, into a deep, deep hypnotic sleep. (Pause)

The fingers on your left hand are completely relaxed. Your hand and forearm are letting go. Up, through your elbow, to your upper arm, relax. Now the left shoulder, let that go, too. Loose, limp, and lazy. Now relax all the large back muscles, from your shoulders all the way down to your waist — let them all go limp and loose. (Remember to take plenty of pauses. Continue to speak softly and very slowly.)

Relax the muscles in your neck. Let your jaws separate, and let the chin and cheek muscles go loose and rubbery. (Pause) Now let your eyes go. Let them go completely — relax and feel comfortable and good. Relax the eyebrows, too, and the forehead. Let the muscles rest. Back across the scalp — let the entire scalp relax — from the forehead all the way back to the back of the neck — all relaxed — all resting — all loose. You are now completely relaxed. You are going deeper

and deeper into restful hypnosis. Your mind is experiencing a wonderful feeling of tranquillity. Your subconscious is now receptive to the helpful suggestions I am now going to give it. (At this point the suggestion is given to the subconscious mind.) **—From *Self-Hypnosis and Other Mind-Expanding Techniques*, by Charles Tebbetts**

There are many different forms of inductions and hypnotherapy scripts. Milton Erikson, a psychiatrist and master hypnotherapist/counselor, developed a radically different approach that uses metaphors and a wide variety of inductions, some designed to trigger trance by confusing the conscious mind. Eriksonian hypnotherapy can be especially effective with people who do not easily go into trance. *My Voice Will Go With You: The Teaching Tales of Milton H. Erikson*, edited and commentary by Sidney Rosen, provides an excellent introduction, for either the layman or the professional, to the brilliant therapies of Milton Erikson. *Hypnotherapy Scripts: A Neo-Ericksonian Approach to Persuasive Healing*, by Ronald A. Havens and Catherine R. Walters, offers an excellent variety of Eriksonian hypnotherapy scripts. For the serious hypnosis student, a rather expensive, thorough, and clinical text is the *Handbook of Hypnotic Suggestions and Metaphors,* edited by D. Corydon Hammond. If you are interested in the techniques of regression therapy for deep emotional healing and to explore forgotten or submerged memories and past lives, I highly recommend *Regression Therapy: A Handbook for Professionals: Volume 1* and *Volume 2,* by Winafred B. Lucas.

Hypnotic Suggestion

By its very nature, the subconscious mind seeks to obey suggestions as if they were orders. By properly structuring your hypnotic suggestions, you can put your subconscious mind to work, carrying out your orders without conscious effort and willpower. The following guidelines will help you design positive, powerful suggestions for your own use.

Make sure motivation is strong. There should be good reason for wishing to carry out the suggestion. Hypnosis can help you to change or heal if you really want to, but it can't make you do something you really don't want to do. You can start with your motivating suggestion, such as "Because I am a child of God and a healthy individual, my broken leg is healing rapidly and perfectly."

Frame the suggestion positively. If you say, "I will not be angry," you are reinforcing to the subconscious mind that you have a problem with anger. Never mention the negative idea you are trying to eliminate. Instead, repeat and emphasize the positive idea you are trying to manifest. For the anger example, think of 20 or 30 different ways of saying how you wish to be. You might start with, "I am a relaxed and calm person. No matter how anyone behaves toward me, I stay calm and centered, acting with compassion and wisdom." Expand on this.

Use the present tense. It may sound strange, but instead of saying "next week I will be totally healed," try saying "next week I am totally healed." The subconscious mind is the feeling, emotional mind and responds to the present.

Say and visualize your suggestion. The more vividly you can "see" your suggestion, the

more real it is to the subconscious mind.

Set a time limit. In one sense, you must see your goal as being accomplished, but your subconscious mind may rebel if given a time limit it believes is unachievable. Even though there are cases of broken bones mending overnight, probably this will be too much for your subconscious to accept. Try starting with half the normal healing time. Your subconscious mind is a goal-oriented mechanism. Set a reasonable time limit, see your goal clearly, and you will be amazed at how fast you can achieve it.

Be specific and use repetition. Don't suggest too many things at once. Focus on one area in each session, though you should think of as many different ways of saying and picturing what this one area is. The more often you are exposed to an idea, the stronger it will influence you.

Keep it simple. Speak as if you are talking to your 10year-old child.

Emotionalize. *Your* subconscious mind is the seat of your emotions. Say and think descriptive, vibrant words with strong feeling and emotion (adapted from *self-hypnosis and Other Mind-Expanding Techniques*, by Charles Tebbetts 1992).

The suggestions should be repeated in a crisp, businesslike tone. To design a suggestion for pain control, you might find it useful to use the metaphor of switches and knobs controlling the level of pain transmitted by the nerves. By turning these switches "off " or the knobs "down," the patient can control his or her own pain level from within the hypnotic trance. Similarly, to control bleeding, the image of faucets or valves attached to the blood vessels will cause the blood vessels to constrict and stop or reduce the blood flow when given the positive suggestion. Use whatever image you wish to vividly convey what you want to accomplish. I definitely recommend that you practice these techniques before trying them out in an emergency situation.

Awakening Technique

Record the following, or have your partner say it to you to bring you out of the hypnotic trance. Even without the awakening procedure, you would eventually awaken yourself from the trance state. The awakening should be spoken louder, with enthusiasm and a forceful tone.

> Now it is time for you to return to normal consciousness. You feel wonderfully rested. I will count to five, and as I do, you feel vitality and energy surging through your body. You are wide awake at the count of five. *One.* You are waking up now. When you awaken, you feel full of pep and energy. *Two.* More and more awake! More and more awake! You feel refreshed and perfect from head to foot, normal in every way. *Three.* You feel as though your eyes have been bathed in cool spring water. You feel physically perfect and emotionally serene. *Four.* You feel wonderful in every way! Refreshed and full of vigor, but perfectly relaxed and calm. You feel good all over! *Five.* Eyes wide open! Wide awake now. Take a deep breath, stretch and feel good! **—From *Self-Hypnosis and Other Mind-Expanding Techniques*, by Charles Tebbetts**

VISUALIZATION AND MIND-BODY HEALING

Even though the distinction among self-hypnosis, guided visualizations, and waking dream therapy is at best a blurry line, it is results that matter, and the results with these similar techniques can be mind-boggling. Dr. Gerald Epstein relates the case of a friend who used waking dream therapy techniques to fully mend a fracture within a 3week period after it had been diagnosed by two doctors as requiring 3 months to heal (Epstein 1989, 13). Science does not yet understand the exact mechanism that the mind uses to translate mental images into physical body changes. With the combination of intention, focus, and the consistent daily application of your mental visualization exercises, each lasting for about 5 minutes, you may find profound results. I suggest that you seek regular medical attention for all serious conditions, but supplement and speed your healing with these techniques. The following guidelines and exercises are adapted from Epstein's excellent book, *Healing Visualizations: Creating Health Through Imagery.*

General Guidelines

- Sit comfortably in a chair, spine straight, legs and arms uncrossed, arms resting on arm rests with palms either up or down.
- State your intention to yourself for doing the exercise.
- Close your eyes and breathe several deep breaths to relax, calm, and focus your attention. Place your attention on long, slow, deep out-breaths followed by regular relaxed in-breaths.
- Do your specific imagery exercises for 3 to 5 minutes.
- Consistently repeat your exercises several times a day, perhaps every 3 to 4 hours while awake. Suggested times are on waking, at dusk, and before retiring at night.

Visualization for Mending a Broken Bone

Close your eyes and focus your attention on your deep out-breaths. Make a mental picture of the broken bone. Visualize the ends of the bone breaks cleanly touching each other. See the white marrow flowing from one bone end to the other, carried along by a blue channel of pulsating light. See and feel the ends of the bone meshing together until the break can no longer be seen. Know that the bone is healed into one solid unit, and then open your eyes (Epstein 1989, 12–13).

Egyptian Healing Visualization

Use this technique to mentally probe, diagnose, and heal a variety of physical conditions. Close

your eyes and focus on several long out-breaths, while imagining that you are standing peacefully in a field of tall, green grass. See yourself stretching your hands, palms outward, up toward the sun on a bright, clear blue day. See the sun entering the palms of your hands and circulating throughout your palms and fingers, and then extend a ray out of each fingertip. If you are right-handed, see a small hand sprout from the ray extending from each fingertip of the right hand, so that there are five small hands extending beyond each of your fingers on this hand. If you are left-handed, start with the left hand. On the opposite hand, visualize one eye sprouting from each of the rays extending from each finger, so that there are five eyes attached to the fingertips of this hand. Turn these hands and eyes toward your body and enter the body using the eyes to guide and direct the miniature hands to the area in need of healing. With the eyes you may see into the organs to diagnose problems. Use small scalpels and lasers in the miniature hands to cut and scrape as required. Stitch and mend with golden thread where necessary, and apply blue or blue-golden ointments for healing. Exit the body by the same route that you entered, and throw any wastes behind yourself. Stretch your hands toward the sun, and retract the miniature eyes and hands back into your fingers for future use. (Adapted from *Healing Visualizations: Creating Health Through Imagery,* by Gerald Epstein, M.D. 1989, 45.)

SOME NOTES ON DEATH AND DYING

All of us are destined to die someday. Sometimes our healing work may eliminate a so-called terminal disease, but if it does not avert death, it should not be seen as failure. If all sincere prayers to prolong the lives of our loved ones were answered, the world would rapidly overpopulate with decrepit bodies of tortured beings, held earthbound long past their time. I have heard many stories of healing work improving the quality and duration of life during a terminal illness, helping the patient to achieve a graceful death with dignity.

After my father in-law was diagnosed with terminal cancer, the use of herbs and other alternatives, combined with endoscopic clearing of a tumor blocking his bile duct, helped him to live the last two years of his life in surprisingly good health, with joy, mobility, and little pain. In the end, he died at home, with dignity and love, surrounded by his family. The last week of Joseph's life was difficult, but I would not have missed it for the world. We gave him round-the-clock personal care, as his body's systems started to shut down. It was magical, horrible, painful, and wonderful, all at the same time. In our society, we are so terrified of death that we usually thrust this responsibility onto the "experts," estranging our loved ones during their final hours and missing a great opportunity for experiencing the miracle of life's full circle. Ask yourself, "Would I rather die in my own home, surrounded by and cared for by the ones I love, or in a hospital room dressed in one of those degrading gowns with my buttocks bared for all to see, and with lights shining in my eyes as I am checked for vital signs at all hours of the day and night?"

REFERENCES AND RESOURCES

Holistic Healing and Natural Health—General

***ep Healing: The Essence of Mind/Body Medicine,* by Emmet E. Miller, M.D.** 1997, 401 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1561703364. Published by Hay House, Inc., P.O. Box 5100, Carlsbad, CA 92018-5100. List price $12.95

Deep Healing awakens even the most skeptical among us to the miraculous, inborn, self-healing capacities of one's own mind-body. Dr. Miller presents eye-opening research, fascinating healing stories, advanced new skills in affirmative mental imagery, the transformation of disease-oriented perceptions, the writing of positive life scripts, and much more. This is a practical book with an effective mixture of science, information, skills, and exercises that can help establish the mindbody connection and put the magic of healing back into your own hands.

***ght Weeks to Optimum Health: A Proven Program for Taking Full Advantage of Your Body's Natural Healing Power,* by Andrew Weil, M.D.** 2006, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0307264923. Published by Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., Division of Random House, 201 E. 50th St., New York, NY 10022. List price $22.00

This revised and updated book, written by one of the gurus of alternative medicine, is an excellent general reference. Dr. Weil outlines an easy, 8-week course for gradually introducing changes for improving one's health through proper diet, herbs, supplements, exercise, and mental imagery. Recipes are provided to make it easy and delicious to follow Weil's recommendations.

***e Encyclopedia of Natural Medicine, Revised 2nd Edition,* by Michael T. Murray, N.D., and Joseph E. Pizzorno, N.D.** 1997, 960 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0761511571. Published by Three Rivers Press, Random House (11-3), 280 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10017. List price $29.95

Written by naturopathic doctors, this voluminous book is an exhaustive and detailed reference. Drawing on the best of centuries-old wisdom and modern knowledge, it explains the principles of natural medicine and outlines their application through the safe and effective use of herbs, vitamins, diet, lifestyle, and nutrition.

***od Additives, Nutrients and Supplements A-To-Z: A Shopper's Guide,* by Eileen Renders, N.D.** 1999, 265 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1574160086. Published by Clear Light Publishers, 823 Don Diego, Santa Fe, NM 87501. List price $14.95

This easy-to-use reference by a naturopathic doctor takes the mystery out of a bewildering array of food additives, herbs, and supplements. The book is a valuable guide to help readers make healthy choices in eating and dietary supplementation.

***ve, Medicine and Miracles: Lessons Learned about Self-Healing from a Surgeon's Experience with Exceptional Patients,* by Bernie Siegel, M.D.** 1986, 243 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0060914066. Published by Harper Collins Publishers, Inc., 10 East 53rd St., New York, NY 10022. List price $14.00

"One of the most wonderful books I have ever read."—Karl Menninger, M.D. This book really is terrific. Bernie Siegel practiced general and pediatric surgery in New Haven, Connecticut, until he retired in 1989. He founded Exceptional Cancer Patients, based on "carefrontation," a loving, safe, therapeutic confrontation that facilitates personal change, empowerment, and healing. *Love, Medicine and Miracles* is filled with wisdom, love, and many case examples of the mind-body connection to healing. It is not about abandoning Western medicine, but empowering the mind and body to make the most of healing, whether it is from

within the structure of traditional Western medicine or alternative healing practices. *Love, Medicine and Miracles* is such a classic book that there should be hundreds of used copies available if it goes out of print.

***escription for Nutritional Healing: A Practical A-Z Reference to Drug-Free Remedies Using Vitamins, Minerals, Herbs and Food Supplements, Revised 4th Edition,* by James F. Balch, M.D., and Phyllis A. Balch, C.N.C.** 2006, 896 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1583332368. Published by Avery Publishing Group, 120 Old Broadway, Garden City Park, NY 11040. List price $24.95

A very thorough reference volume on drug-free remedies using vitamins, minerals, herbs, and food supplements, this book is arranged alphabetically to provide easy access to cures for a wide variety of ailments. My family uses this reference on a regular basis.

***ıcient Healing for Modern Women: Traditional Chinese Medicine for all Phases of a Woman's Life,* by Xiaolan Zhao, C.M.D.** 2006, 326 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0802715678. Published by Walker Company, 104 5th Ave., New York, NY 10011. List price $15.95

Written by one of Canada's most successful and beloved practitioners of traditional Chinese medicine, who also worked for a number of years as a surgeon in China's Western-style medical hospitals, Dr. Zhao offers an invaluable East-West perspective on Chinese medicine. Traditional Chinese medical practitioners focused on keeping clients well, and were not paid when their clients got sick. Use this book to help restore or maintain wellness and well-being.

***hy People Don't Heal and How They Can,* by Caroline Myss, Ph.D.** 1997, 288 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0609802243. Published by Three Rivers Press, Random House (11-3), 280 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10017. List price $14.95

Caroline Myss is a medical intuitive and an immensely popular author of books on the mental, spiritual, and psychological aspects of healing. In the late 1980s, she started running into a lot of people who were doing "all the right things," yet still not healing. Her book offers deep insights into the nature of healing, numerous case history examples, and mental/spiritual exercises for removing the inner roots of disease. If you like this book, you will probably also like her bestseller, *Anatomy of the Spirit*.

***omen's Bodies, Women's Wisdom: Creating Physical and Emotional Health and Healing,* by Christiane Northrup, M.D.** 2006, 944 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0553384109. Published by Bantam Books, 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $20.00

This voluminous book offers the most up-to-date information on the entire range of women's health problems from a holistic viewpoint. Dr. Christiane Northrup provides sound advice for helping women to heal faster, more completely, and with far fewer medical interventions. She combines mind-body wellness with nutrition and sound medical advice.

Magazines

ıtural Solutions. Subscription: $19.95 per year for 10 issues. InnoVision Health Media, Inc., 2995 Wilderness Place, Suite 205, Boulder, CO 80301. Call (800) 546-6707 or see their Web site

at www.natural-solutionsmag.com.

This magazine is dedicated to providing educational and informative articles on alternative medicine that are neither too technical nor just a bunch of "fluff " without any real substance. Check out their Web site for valuable information on the health benefits of specific alternative medicines and their effectiveness for healing certain ailments.

erbs for Health. Subscription: $19.95 per year for 6 issues. Herbs for Health, 1503 SW 42nd St., Topeka, KS 66609. Call (800) 456-6018 or see their Web site at www.herbsforhealth.com.

An excellent magazine devoted to promoting health through the use of medicinal herbs, with the help of a very impressive list of expert advisors and contributing authors.

ga Journal. Subscription: $15.95 per year for 6 issues. Yoga Journal, 2054 University Avenue, Berkeley, CA 94704. Call (800) 600-9642 or see their Web site at www.yogajournal.com.

For thousands of years, Far Eastern peoples have practiced hatha yoga to promote physical and spiritual well-being. *Yoga Journal* is not just about yoga, but also includes interesting and well-written articles on natural healing and diet.

Beck Protocol and Colloidal/Ionic Silver

First Aid Kit of the Future: The Beck Protocol, **by Robert C. Beck, D.Sc.** 2002, 22 pp. (paperback), no ISBN. Published by Sharing Health From the Heart, Inc. Sold by The Reality Zone, P.O. Box 4646, Thousand Oaks, CA 91359. List price $18.25

This booklet contains instruction for Bob Beck's groundbreaking "Beck protocol," including reprints of Beck's articles and technical specifications for how to make and use his devices.

e Beck Protocol: A Health Protocol for Use at Home, **by Sharing Health From the Heart, Inc.** DVDs sold by The Reality Zone, P.O. Box 4646, Thousand Oaks, CA 91359. List price $18.00

This is a two-disc DVD set. The first disc is a fascinating introduction to the Beck protocol, including interviews with Bob Beck as well as numerous testimonials by alternative health care professionals and survivors of debilitating diseases who have used the Beck protocol with outstanding success. The second disc is more focused on the practical aspects of how to best use the Beck protocol to improve or regain your health.

e New Silver Solution, **by Kenneth S. Friedman, Ph.D.** 2006, 32 pp. (paperback), no ISBN. Published by American Biotech Labs, 80 West Canyon Crest Rd., Alpine, UT 84004. List price $5.00

If you want to know about the facts concerning the use of silver as an antiviral, antibacterial, and antifungal agent, then I suggest you pick up this booklet. It cites numerous university studies that prove the efficacy of specific silver solutions and provides recommended dosages for a variety of ailments. *Resources for the Beck Protocol and Colloidal/Ionic Silver*

ta Instruments, P.O. Box 20019, Penticton, British Columbia V2A 8K3, Canada; phone: (800) 224-0242; fax: (250) 770-1999; Web site:www.sotainstruments.com.

This company worked directly with Bob Beck to refine the instrument designs used in the Beck protocol and to manufacture all of these instruments. A good source for reliable ionic silver generators, blood electrification units, electromagnetic pulsers, drinking water ozonators, and more.

aring Health From the Heart and **Reality Zone**, P.O. Box 4646, Thousand Oaks, CA 91359; phone: (800) 595-6596; fax: (805) 498-4868; Web site: www.sharinghealth.com and www.realityzone.com.

Sharing Health From the Heart brings to the world the work of the late Bob Beck and instructive information on his Beck protocol. Their powerful DVD set and Beck protocol booklet offer practical instruction and inspiring testimonials from both professional health care workers and enthusiastic "medical researchers" who have used the Beck protocol to regain their own health or to help others heal from debilitating and often life-threatening diseases. Reality Zone ships the products for Sharing Health From the Heart.

mmittee for the Responsible Use of Silver in Health. Web site: www.silverfacts.com.

This is a voluntary organization composed of serious health professionals who wish to see the healing properties of silver utilized in a responsible and scientific manner. Good information on this site.

ixa, Ltd., 1805 Kriss NE, Albuquerque, NM 87112; phone: (800) 766-4544; fax: (505) 293-7569; Web site: www.elixa.com.

This company sells colloidal silver generators, water filters, and a variety of other health-related materials. They offer a useful kit for making antiseptic gels from your own homemade colloidal silver that work well on wounds, burns, fungal infections, and so on.

nerican Biotech Labs, 80 West Canyon Crest Road, Alpine, UT 84004; phone: (800) 605-1541; fax: (801) 756-5454; Web site: www.americanbiotechlabs.com.

This company sells colloidal silver products for personal health care as well as an EPA-approved fungicide. Their products are made by a patented process that is reported to yield superior bioactive properties as compared to other silver solutions. They employ a rather high-powered staff with impressive medical and scientific credentials and have sponsored studies to prove the efficacy of their products.

Death and Dying

***n Death and Dying: What the Dying Have to Teach Doctors, Nurses, Clergy and Their Own Families,* by Elisabeth Kübler-Ross.** 1997, 286 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0684839387. Published by Simon and Schuster, 1230 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $14.95

A brilliant book by a woman who has dedicated her life to researching and serving the needs of terminally ill patients and their families. Elisabeth Kübler-Ross pretty much founded the conscious dying movement, which has brought a great deal of compassion and understanding into a modern world, where the dying are often thrust into cold, compassionless institutions.

Written in 1969, this classic book still holds tremendous value after all these years.

***anscending Loss: Understanding the Lifelong Impact of Grief and How to Make It Meaningful,* by Ashley Davis Prend, A.C.S.W.** 1997, 304 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0425157756. Published by The Berkley Publishing Group, 200 Madison Ave., New York, NY 10016. List price $13.95

One of the best books out there for dealing with grief, *Transcending Loss* is a compassionate, poignant, and practical guide that covers not only the short-term crisis of dealing with the loss of a loved one, but also the long-term process of living with and transcending grief. We found this book very helpful for dealing with the loss of a beloved family member.

***ho Dies? An Investigation of Conscious Living and Conscious Dying,* by Stephen Levine and Ondrea Levine.** 1989, 317 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0385262217. Published by Anchor Books/ Doubleday, 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $14.95

Stephen Levine has worked with the pain and suffering of terminally ill and dying people for more than 25 years. This is a wonderful book, which compassionately shares some of the wisdom and experiences that Stephen has garnered through his work. Highly recommended both for personal growth and for preparing yourself to assist others with pain, suffering, or dying. Stephen describes several excellent mental techniques for dealing with chronic pain.

Electromagnetic Fields (EMF)

***oss Currents: The Perils of Electropollution, the Promise of Electromedicine,* by Dr. Robert O. Becker.** 1990, 352 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0874776096. Published by Tarcher/Penguin, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $16.95

I am fascinated by everything that this groundbreaking medical researcher writes! Dr. Becker is a true scientist in every sense of the word. His work takes a fresh look at issues with a creative critical eye that often sees beyond the limits of the current status quo, bypassing the usual bias that most modern medical research receives from its profit-motivated corporate sponsors. This book will vastly improve your understanding of the body's bioelectric healing mechanisms, the positive potential of a new generation of bioelectric healing machines, and the negative effects of the modern world's sea of electromagnetic radiation that invisibly impinges upon us within our homes, workplaces, and cities. I also highly recommend his earlier work, *The Body Electric*, which delves into specific research pertaining to the body's bioelectric healing mechanisms.

***ectromagnetic Fields: A Consumer's Guide to the Issues and How to Protect Ourselves,* by B. Blake Levitt.** 2007, 432 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0595476077. Published by iUniverse, Inc., 2021 Pine Lake Road, Suite 100, Lincoln, NE 68512 (Backinprint.com). List price $28.95

Just like the title says, this is really the no-nonsense guide to evaluating the true hazards of EMF and controlling your local environment and personal habits to reduce your exposure to potentially dangerous levels of EMF. Written by an award-winning, nationally acclaimed science journalist, you can trust that the information in this book has been well researched and documented. If you are one of those unfortunate people who have developed Electromagnetic Hypersensitivity Syndrome (EHS), meaning that you feel ill around computers, wireless routers,

and other high-EMF electronics, then the actions that you will need to take in order to feel healthy again will be greater than average person, and this book will help you to start on the road to recovery.

***ll Towers: Wireless Convenience or Environmental Hazard? Proceedings of the "Cell Towers Forum" State of the Science/State of the Law,* B. Blake Levitt (editor).** 2001, 348 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1884820625. Published by Safe Goods/New Century Publishing, 561 Shunpike Rd., Sheffield, MA 01257. List price $19.95

If you live in a metropolitan area, chances are that a cell tower somewhere nearby is bombarding you with unhealthy concentrations of microwaves, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Use this book to help determine the extent of your local EMF hazards and what you can do about it. This book contains a collection of useful information that is hard to find elsewhere and is from Ph.D.s, M.D.s, and other experts in this field that assembled for a technical conference sponsored by a concerned citizen's group.

EMF Resources

ɔuncil on Wireless Technology Impacts, 936-B Seventh St., Suite 206, Novato, CA 94945; Web site: www.energyfields.org.

This organization's Web site offers an abundance of up-to-date information and resources about the dangers of EMF exposure and what you can do about it. I highly recommend that you visit their site to educate yourself about the potential health dangers that have been essentially silenced in the U.S. media due to the billions of dollars that are at stake.

Energy Healing

***ıergy Medicine,* by Donna Eden.** 1999, 378 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1585420216. Published by Tarcher/Penguin, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $16.95

Learn energy healing from a master healer with this well-written, well-illustrated, and informative book. Includes step-by-step exercises for developing the hidden healer within all of us while improving your own health and the health of others.

***ıential Reiki: A Complete Guide to an Ancient Healing Art,* by Diane Stein.** 1995; 156 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0895947369. Published by The Crossing Press, Inc., 97 Hanger Way, Watsonville, CA 95019. List price $18.95

In this book, Diane Stein provides a good introduction to Reiki energy healing. *Essential Reiki* is not strictly about Reiki, but combines several other aspects of Asian bioenergy healing traditions with traditional Reiki. Excellent illustrations make this a true "how-to" book. In order to truly practice Reiki, however, one must receive "attunements" and instruction from a certified reiki master. If Diane's feminist language or nontraditional approach bothers you, try another Reiki reference instead.

***ınds of Light: A Guide to Healing Through the Human Energy Field,* by Barbara Ann Brennan.** 1988, 320 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0553345391. Published by Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, 666 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10103. List price $27.00

This is a well-written and beautifully illustrated book about the human aura and healing with bioenergy. Barbara Brennan is an atmospheric physicist and former NASA scientist turned author, healer, and teacher. She also operates the renowned Barbara Brennan School of Healing (www.barbarabrennan.com). I highly recommend this book if you have any interest in this type of healing.

***y's Way: A Map for the Transformational Journey: An Introduction to the Potentials for Healing with Body Energies,* by W. Brugh Joy, M.D.** 1979, 290 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0874770858. Published by J. P. Tarcher, Inc., 200 Madison Ave., New York, NY 10016. List price $14.95

In 1974, when W. Brugh Joy, M.D., was diagnosed with a terminal illness, he was a distinguished and respected member of the Los Angeles medical community. Later that year, he experienced an illuminating meditation, which caused him to give up his medical practice. Six weeks after leaving his practice, he discovered that his illness was completely cured. These experiences compelled him to further his exploration of the healing process in connection with body energies, meditation, and higher levels of consciousness. This book is a fascinating exploration into the nature of healing and offers practical exercises and techniques for working with the body energy fields.

Fasting

***ice Fasting and Detoxification: Use the Healing Power of Fresh Juice to Feel Young and Look Great,* by Steve Meyerowitz.** 2002, 154 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1878736659. Published by Book Publishing Company, P.O. Box 99, Summertown, TN 38483. List price $10.95

For most people, a juice fast is much easier to stick to than a water fast, especially if they must maintain a work schedule while fasting. This book is a fine guide to fasting using natural fresh juices and will help to ensure that your fasting experience is a positive one.

***ıe Miracle of Fasting: Proven Throughout History for Physical, Mental and Spiritual Rejuvenation, 51st Edition,* by Paul C. Bragg, N.D., Ph.D., and Patricia Bragg, N.D., Ph.D.** 2004, 280 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0877900399. Published by Health Science, Box 7, Santa Barbara, CA 93102 . List price $9.95

Now in its 51st edition, this book was originally published many decades ago. The incredible, ageless U.S. fitness guru, Jack LaLanne, credits Paul Bragg with saving his life, when he went from sickness to superlative health after attending a Bragg Health Crusade at age 15. In September 2007, LaLanne celebrated his 93rd birthday and still worked out 2 hours a day, which is quite a testimonial! The book is a bit cheesy and old fashioned in its writing and layout, but still offers good information and inspiration on water fasting, juice fasting, and a variety of other fitness and diet choices that have withstood the test of time.

Fungus (Mold, Yeast, etc.)

***hen Traditional Medicine Fails: Your Guide to Mold Toxins,* by Gary Rosen, Ph.D., and James Schaller, M.D.** 2006, 142 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0977397167. Published by Hope Academic Press, Tampa, FL. List price $25.75

This guide is good for understanding mold health issues and what you can do about them from a primarily mainstream medical point of view, but also includes useful information on supplements and a few effective alternative therapies. Good, sound advice for removing mold-related biotoxins from your body and getting your life back again.

***e Complete Candida Yeast Guidebook: Everything You Need to Know About Prevention, Treatment, and Diet, Revised 2nd Edition,* by Jeanne Marie Martin with Zoltan P. Rona, M.D.** 2000, 528 pp.

aperback), ISBN 978-0761527404. Published by Three Rivers Press, Crown Publishing Group, Random House, 280 Park Avenue (11-3), New York, NY 10017.

st price $21.95

This thorough guide is good for dealing with yeast and other fungus-related health issues. It covers recent medical and pharmaceutical approaches as well as the use of natural supplements and diet. Includes a valuable section with recipes, menus, and other food guidelines to help you take control of your diet in a practical way to discourage yeast growth.

***ronic Candidiasis: Your Natural Guide to Healing with Diet, Vitamins, Minerals, Herbs, Exercise, and Other Natural Methods,* by Michael T. Murray, N.D.** 1997, 176 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0761508212. Published by Three Rivers Press, Crown Publishing Group, Random House, 280 Park Avenue (11-3), New York, NY 10017. List price $13.95

This is an excellent guide for dealing with yeast and other fungus-related health issues using natural supplements and diet. In addition to diet and supplement recommendations, it provides detailed dosage information for natural yeast-killing remedies, including referenced comparisons with specific prescription drugs that, in many cases, are less effective and have more negative side effects that their herbal alternatives. Dr. Murray is a leading researcher and lecturer in the field of natural medicine, has a thriving private practice, and is the author of more than 20 books.

Fungus Resources

ertified Mold Free, Corp., 2881 W. Lake Vista Circle, Davie, FL 33328; phone: (954) 614-7100; fax: (954) 452-3543; Web site: www.mold-free.org.

This is Gary Rosen's organization. A good source for information and books on mold and mold remediation, they also offer mold remediation courses for individuals seeking certification.

old-Help.org. Web site: www.mold-help.org.

This is a nonprofit organization dedicated to helping people solve their mold health and mold

remediation problems. Their Web site offers a wealth of information on mold, plus a library of numerous mold-related articles from the media. Also good for help in locating certified mold remediation specialists and medical assistance.

oldinspector.com. Web site: www.moldinspector.com.

This is a huge mold self-help Web site. In addition to offering copious amounts of online information, they also sell e-books on mold remediation, legal advice on mold, mold remedies, and a mold health guide.

ıe Modern Herbalist, phone: (831) 624-2773; Web site: www.modernherbalist.com.

This site was created by David Schlesinger, L.Ac., a California-licensed medicinal herbalist and acupuncturist. David specializes in helping people to detoxify from heavy metals and to use herbs and supplements to overcome health issues related to *Candida* (yeasts) and molds.

Herbal Remedies and Naturopathy

***olistic Herbal: A Safe and Practical Guide to Making and Using Herbal Remedies,* by David Hoffman.** 2003, 288 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0007145416. Published by Thorsons, an imprint of Harper Collins Publishers, 77-85 Fulham Palace Rd., Hammersmith, London W6 8JB, England. List price $29.95

Hoffmann's highly acclaimed book provides extensive information about the uses, actions, dosages, and cautions for each herb, as well as instructions for gathering and preparing herbal remedies. Good information on herbal preparations. The folks at Ecology Action refer to this as their favorite herbal reference. Unfortunately, it appears that the color-photo-illustrated version of Hoffman's book is now out of print, but this version with black-and-white line drawings is still a valuable text.

***edical Herbalism: The Science and Practice of Herbal Medicine,* by David Hoffman, F.N.I.M.H., A.H.G.** 2003, 672 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0892817498. Published by Healing Arts Press, One Park St., Rochester, VT 05767. List price $60.00

This book certainly must be Mr. Hoffmann's opus! An excellent resource guide for the serious herbalist, naturopath, or M.D. who wishes to use herbs effectively and to avoid potential contraindications caused by reactions between herbal medicines (phytomedicines) and prescription drugs. Not a beginner's manual, this book would make a fine addition to any serious herbalist's library.

***ıe Herbal Medicine Maker's Handbook: A Home Manual,* by James Green.** 2000, 384 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0895949905. Published by Crossing Press, an imprint of Ten Speed Press, P.O. Box 7123, Berkeley, CA 94707. List price $22.95

For those of us who don't have the luxury of studying under an experienced herbalist, this book provides detailed and well-illustrated directions for preparing herbal balms, infusions, flower essences, tinctures, poultices, salves, decoctions, concoctions, and so on.

Also provides a guide to James' top 30 favorite medicinal herbs.

***ıe Cure and Prevention of All Cancers* by Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., N.D.** 2007, 668 pp.

(hardcover), ISBN 978-1890035587. Published by New Century Press, 1055 Bay Boulevard, Suite C, Chula Vista, CA 91911. List price $22.95

This is Dr. Clark's latest book. It contains new information from her ongoing research and successful treatment of thousands of cases of advanced cancers (so-called "terminal" stage four and five cancers) using her methods and healing formulas. Don't let the title of Dr. Clark's new book fool you. Even though the focus is on cancer, her information, techniques, and prescriptions for healing have the same widespread potential for improving health in general, and eliminating most diseases, as her earlier book, *The Cure for All Diseases*. If I were diagnosed with cancer, cancer "ran in my family," or I had a fear of developing cancer, I would get a copy of this book ASAP. Contains fascinating information and many valuable self-help procedures. *The Cure for All Advanced Cancers* can help you to improve your health in general, even if you have no cancer, and if you wish to avoid cancer throughout your lifetime, it will tell you how.

***ıe Cure for All Diseases,* by Hulda Regehr Clark, Ph.D., N.D.** 1995, 604 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1887314022. Published by New Century Press, 1055 Bay Boulevard, Suite C, Chula Vista, CA 91911. List price $21.95

This excellent book contains many case histories and a wide variety of techniques/recipes for improving one's health. Dr. Clark stresses parasite elimination and toxic cleansing that allow the body's natural healing systems to respond to chronic and short-term diseases. She describes some of her research and the development of electronic devices for self-healing and diagnosis. This classic book may still be found at Dr. Clark's publishing company, New Century Press (see the resources for herbs and supplements and www.newcenturypress.com) and many health food stores. For more updated information, check out Dr. Clark's most recent book, *The Cure and Prevention of All Cancers*.

***ıncer Salves: A Botanical Approach to Treatment,* by Ingrid Naiman.** 1999, 235 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1882834150. Published by Seventh Ray Press, P.O. Box 442, Poulsbo, WA 98730. List price $42.50

This valuable book preserves a collection of cancer salve recipes for all humankind. Rather than relying on word of mouth and anecdotal information, you can now find reliable comprehensive information compiled in a single book. Includes detailed information about the individual healing herbs that compose the various cancer salves, as well as dose and application information on using the salves to eliminate tumors and cancers. Also includes numerous case histories plus several juicy color photographs that document the process and efficacy of using cancer salves.

***ɐw Encyclopedia of Herbs and Their Uses: The Definitive Guide to Identification, Cultivation, and Uses of Herbs,* by Deni Brown**. 2001, 448 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0789480316. Published by DK Publishing, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $40.00

Whether you plan on collecting wild medicinal herbs or cultivating your own herb garden, this gorgeous book will be a valuable addition to your herbal library. Provides information on medicinal properties, uses, cultivation, and preparation of a huge number of herbs, but lacks any treatment or dosage information of practical value.

***ıcyclopedia of Herbal Medicine: The Definitive Reference to 550 Herbs and Remedies for Common Ailments,* by Andrew Chevallier, F.N.I.M.H**. 2000, 336 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-

0789467836. Published by DK Publishing, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $40.00

This thorough and beautifully illustrated herbal encyclopedia is a guide to the uses of 550 different herbs and includes information on preparation and dosages for dealing with common ailments. Written by an experienced herbalist and senior lecturer in herbal medicine at Middlesex University, it combines both the science and tradition of herbs.

***ESSIAC: A Native Herbal Cancer Remedy,* by Cynthia Olsen**. 1998, 144 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890941000. Published by Lotus Press, P.O. Box 325, Twin Lakes, WI 53181. List price $12.50

This book provides information on the preparation and use of essiac, many personal testimonials, and several lists of herbal sources and alternative medical treatment centers. It also tells the story of Rene Caisse's work and struggles with the government and the medical industry to offer to the public this powerful cancerfighting formula of Native American healing herbs.

***Field Guide to Medicinal Plants: Eastern and Central North America (Peterson Field Guide Series*), by Steven Foster and James A. Duke.** 1999, 432 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0395988145. Published by Houghton Mifflin Co., 215 Park Ave., New York, NY 10003. List price $19.00

One of the better field guides for identifying over 500 medicinal plants. This updated version has been considerably improved, and is now filled with outstanding, clear color photos to assist the reader in identifying the proper medicinal plants and herbs. Includes where the plants are found and detailed descriptions of their uses, both folk remedies and scientifically proven uses. Duke spent his life researching the medicinal properties of plants and is one of the world's foremost experts on this topic.

***lible and Medicinal Plants of the West,* by Gregory L. Tilford.** 1997, 239 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0878423590. Published by Mountain Press Publishing Company, P.O. Box 2399, Missoula, MT 59806. List price $21.00

This is the best guide that I have found for identifying plants of the western United States. Includes color photographs plus notes on habitat and range, edibility, medicinal uses, and look-alike plants.

***ıe Green Pharmacy: New Discoveries in Herbal Remedies for Common Diseases and Conditions from the World's Foremost Authority on Healing Herbs*, by James A. Duke, Ph.D.** 1999, 528 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1579541248. Published by Rodale Press, Emmaus, PA. List price $19.95

James A. Duke, Ph.D., author of *The Green Pharmacy*, is recognized as the world's foremost authority on healing herbs. This book is a useful, entertaining, wellwritten, A-to-Z guide for using herbs to heal common ailments. James spent more than 30 years interviewing thousands of folk healers and scientists while compiling a unique database of the medicinal compounds found in common and exotic plants. This book is organized alphabetically by ailment. Dr. Duke offers multiple herbal remedies for each ailment, with useful notes concerning both scientific and folklore support for each remedy's effectiveness. Even though the book is short on instructions for the preparation of herbal remedies, I recommend it for its wealth of information on the use of specific herbs for specific ailments.

***erbal Antibiotics: Natural Alternatives for Treating Drug-Resistant Bacteria,* by Stephen Harrod Buhner.** 1999, 144 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580171489. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $12.95

This book explains how and why bacteria are becoming increasingly resistant to modern antibiotics and how herbal remedies offer hope for combating new supergerms and viruses, while maintaining effectiveness and not developing bacteria resistant to these herbs. *Herbal Antibiotics* is an excellent little book that presents current information about antibiotic-resistant microbes and the herbs that are most effective in fighting them.

***erb Contraindications and Drug Interactions,* by Francis Brinker, N.D.** 1998, 263 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1888483062. Published by Eclectic Medical Publications, 14385 S.E. Lusted Road, Sandy, OR 97055. List price $19.95

This is an excellent reference for the serious herbalist or physician seeking to integrate herbs and modern medicine, or for anyone seeking significant self-treatment with herbs. It exhaustively covers potentially harmful herbal interactions with other herbs, medical conditions, and modern pharmaceutical drugs. If you are currently taking pharmaceutical prescriptions and wish to improve your health with herbs, I highly recommend you pick up this book to help you avoid potentially harmful drug-herb interactions.

***entifying and Harvesting Edible and Medicinal Plants in Wild (and Not So Wild) Places,* by Steve Brill and Evelyn Dean.** 1994, 317 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0688114251. Published by Hearst Books, William Morrow Co., 1350 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10019. List price $21.95

This is a great book for the inexperienced forager. It covers a few hundred of the most common and useful edible and medicinal plants in North America. It is not exhaustive, but very usable and practical. Folk wisdom, first-hand practical experience, and scientific fact are blended with humorous and interesting anecdotes that help make this a very readable guide. Its main drawback is the lack of color photos for plant identification (it relies on beautiful black-and-white drawings), so you may wish to combine it with one or two of the other recommended guides.

***dian Herbalogy of North America,* by Alma R. Hutchins.** 1991, 382 pp. (paperback), ISBN 979-0877736393. Published by Shambala Publications, 300 Massachusetts Ave., Boston, MA 02115. List price $19.00

Considered the bible of Native American healing herbs, this is a great guide to finding, preparing, and using traditional American Indian herbal remedies. Covers all of North America. Highly recommended! Exhaustively researched, with black-and-white drawings for each herb, plus notes on domestic use, preparation, dosage, traditional application, homeopathic applications, and foreign uses.

***e Way of Herbs,* by Michael Tierra, L.Ac., O.M.D.** 1998, 416 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0671023270. Published by Pocket Books, a division of Simon and Schuster, Inc., 1230 Avenue of Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $18.00

This was recommended to me by an herbalist as her favorite all-around guide to herbal medicine. If you were to buy only one book on herbal medicine, this would be an excellent choice. The author, Michael Tierra, has studied and practiced herbal medicine for over 30 years.

He has studied with traditional healers of Native America, India, and China. Tierra incorporates his broad knowledge into this book, offering healing philosophies and formulas that can make herbal healing far more effective than simply applying individual herbs to treat specific symptoms and diseases. The book includes information on herbal preparations and dosages but provides no visuals for identifying herbs in the wild.

***e Way of Chinese Herbs,* by Michael Tierra, L.Ac., O.M.D.** 1998, 496 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0671898694. Published by Pocket Books, a division of Simon and Schuster, Inc., 1230 Avenue of Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $15.00

For more than 3,000 years, Chinese people have relied on a wide variety of herbal concoctions for their health and longevity. In 1982 Michael Tierra, one of the nation's most respected herbalists, was chosen to be a part of the first group of Americans to travel to China specifically to study herbal medicine. Tierra's extensive knowledge of Chinese medicine is now available through this book to help readers access the healing power of Chinese herbs.

***rbal Harvest: Commercial Organic Production of Quality Dried Herbs,* by Greg Whitten.** 2004, 556 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1876473471. Published by Bloomings Books Pty Ltd, Melbourne, Australia (distributed in USA by Chelsea Green). List price $60.00

This book is targeted for the serious commercial grower, but its vast amount of information is equally valuable to the serious herbal backyard gardener.

***e Authoritative Guide to Grapefruit Seed Extract:A Breakthrough in Alternative Treatment for Colds, Infections, Candida, Allergies, Herpes, and Many Other Ailments,* by Allan Sachs.** 1997, 125 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0940795174. Published by LifeRythm, P.O. Box 806, Mendocino, CA 95460. List price $10.95

The author of this book is a certified clinical nutritionist and chiropractor. He is recognized as a leading authority on the use of grapefruit seed extract and has successfully employed this powerful herbal-based remedy to heal a wide variety of ailments.

sources for Herbs and Supplements

ontier Natural Products Co-op, P.O. Box 299, 3021 78th St., Norway, IA 52318; phone: (800) 669-3275; Web site: www.frontiercoop.com.

This is great source for low-cost bulk wellness herbs, spices, teas, aromatherapy, and other natural personal care products.

erbsPro.com, Universal Herbs, Inc., 33453 Western Ave., Union City, CA 94587; phone: (510) 324-2900; fax: (510) 324-5300; Web site: www.herbspro.com.

This is a terrific source for a wide variety of medicinal herbs and supplements. When I can't find something I want at other sites, these people almost always stock it.

erbal.com, 1520 Ranier Ave., Napa, CA 94558; phone: (877) 818-4115; fax (888) 649-3931; Web site: www.herbalcom.com.

This site offers high-quality herbal supplements, salves, and common items such as glucosamine and MSM at rock-bottom prices.

tacost.com, 4780 North Lamb Rd., North Las Vegas, NV 89115; phone: (800) 793-2601; Web site: www.vitacost.com.

This is a great low-cost source for a wide variety of vitamins and supplements.

otherNature.com, 1 Concord Farms, 490 Virginia Road, Concord, MA 01742; phone: (800) 517-9020; fax: (877) 355-1144; Web site: www.mothernature.com.

This is a great source for herbs, supplements, and other natural products for healthy living. Good online articles and information. Wide variety of products.

·. Clark Research Association, 8135 Engineer Rd., San Diego, CA 92111; phone: (800) 220-3741; fax: (866) 662-0086; Web site: www.drclark.com.

This independent organization has no direct ties to Dr. Clark, but does sell the herbs, amino acids, supplements, and other materials described in Dr. Clark's books, including the kidney cleanse, parasite program, liver cleanse, and her parasite "zapper" and "Syncrometer" products. It also offers nontoxic household products, such as deodorant without propylene glycol and baking powder without aluminum.

r Jason Winters International, P.O. Box 94075, Las Vegas, NV 94075; phone: (702) 739-8277; fax: (702) 739-0461; Web site: www.sirjasonwinters.com.

Jason Winters' herbal teas, books, and other medicinal herbs are available from the Web site, catalog, or by phone.

ew Century Press, 1055 Bay Boulevard, Suite C, Chula Vista, CA 91911; phone: (800) 519-2465; Web site: www.newcenturypress.com

This is Dr. Clark's own publishing company. In addition to offering all of Dr. Clark's books and videos (a number of these in different languages), the company also publishes alternative healing books from other authors.

Homeopathy

***erybody's Guide to Homeopathic Medicines: Safe and Effective Remedies for You and Your Family,* by Stephen Cummings, M.D., and Dana Ullman, M.P.H.** 2004, 400 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0874778434. Published by J. P. Tarcher, 200 Madison Ave., New York, NY 10016. List price $17.95

This is an excellent guide to homeopathy, including advice on strengthening the immune system, individualizing homeopathic treatment, and accessing homeopathic resources. The primary author is a physician and one of the leading homeopathic educators in the United States. More directed as a source of information for the layperson wishing to self-treat than for the professional homeopath. Revised and updated edition.

***ealing with Homeopathy: The Doctor's Guide* by Wayne B. Jonas, M.D., and Jennifer Jacobs, M.D.,M.P.H.** 1998, 368 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0446673426. Published by Warner Books, Inc., 1271 Avenue of Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $19.99

This is an excellent introduction to homeopathy written by two physicians. In addition to being a practical guide for self-medication with homeopathy, it includes very interesting information on the history, foundations, scientific studies, and case histories of homeopathic healing.

***e Homeopathic Treatment of Influenza: Surviving Influenza, Epidemics and Pandemics Past, Present, and Future with Homeopathy—Special Bird Flu Edition,* by Sandra J. Perko, Ph.D., C.C.N.** 2005, 456 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0965318723. Published by Benchmark Homeopathic Publications, 14947 Forward Pass, San Antonio, TX 78248. List price $39.95

Meticulously researched, this book provides the best information that I have found anywhere on the Spanish flu epidemic of 1918, bird flu, and the use of homeopathic medicines for fighting influenza of all kinds. A valuable book to have on hand in any flu season, this book might save your life should the future repeat the past and some new flu virus mutates into a virulent form that spreads across the world in a global pandemic.

Hypnosis

***e Art of Hypnosis: Mastering Basic Techniques,* by C. Roy Hunter.** 2000, 238 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0757511011. Published by Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., 4050 Westmark Drive, Dubuque, IA 52004-1840. List price $26.95

This book provides numerous techniques for beginners to professionals. It comes highly praised by both hypnotherapists and psychologists. If the narrower focus of self-hypnosis is what interests you, try Roy Hunter's *Master the Power of Self-Hypnosis*. For information on the broader topic of hypnotherapy, try *The Art of Hypnotherapy* by the same author.

***pnosis for Change,* by Josie Hadley and Carol Staudacher.** 1996, 294 pp. (paperback), ISBN 1-57224-057-1. Published by New Harbinger Publications, a division of Random House, 1540 Broadway, 11th Floor, New York, NY 10036. List price $16.95

This practical and inspiring handbook will show you how to begin today to use hypnosis to change your life, including habit control and physical and emotional healing. Step-by-step explanations and case histories will teach you about the different trance states, the effective use of treatment scripts, and the best use of these and other techniques to bring you success. My wife uses several of Josie Hadley's hypnosis scripts in her hypnotherapy practice.

***lyssey of the Soul, A Trilogy: Book I, Apocatastasis* by Pamela Chilton, C.H.T., and Hugh Harmon, Ph.D.** 1997, 271 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0965989107. Web site: www.odysseyofthesould.org. Published by Quick Book Publishing, 10 Venus Drive, Rancho Mirage, CA 92270. List price $15.00

The authors are both certified hypnotherapists who work in private practice and their own hypnotherapy school. This book blends personal stories with practical details and case examples of the application of hypnotherapy for a wide variety of applications. Includes neuromuscular response (NMR) techniques for bypassing the conscious mind to gain insightful information on health problems, toxic sensitivity to certain materials, optimal paths, and so on. Also contains information on spirit possession, past-life regressions, and "channeled" information. Not as traditional as the other references, but very interesting and informative.

***y Voice Will Go With You: The Teaching Tales of Milton H. Erikson*, Sidney Rosen (editor).** 1991, 256 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393301359. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10110. List price $16.95

This fine book gives an excellent introduction to the brilliant, highly successful, and uncommon approach to counseling and hypnotherapy practiced by Milton Erikson. Whether you are a professional therapist or simply struggling with the problems of raising children or dealing with difficult people, this book is sure to provide valuable insight.

***irit Releasement Therapy: A Technique Manual,* by William J. Baldwin, D.D.S., Ph.D.** 1995, 456 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0929915166. Published by Headline Books, P.O. Box 52, Terra Alta, WV 26764. List price $44.95

A practical and fascinating modern therapist's manual for using hypnosis to deal with many different psychological problems, including multiple personalities and spirit possession. These therapies are powerful tools for spiritual and emotional healing. They even have the capacity to return apparently "crazy" people from insanity to full, "normal" function.

sources for Hypnosis

ternational Association for Regression Research and Therapies (IARRT), P.O. Box 20151, Riverside, CA 92516; phone: (951) 784-1570; fax: (951) 784-8440; Web site: www.iarrt.org.

IARRT is a nonprofit organization dedicated to increasing the acceptance and use of professional and responsible past-life regression through education, association, and research. Past Life Regression Therapy is considered one of the most powerful tools available for transformation in the fields of integrative medicine, psychology, and self-awareness. IARRT offers a listing of professional members around the world, sponsors research, and holds workshops and seminars.

ıe Foundation for Research Exploration of Mind Motivation (FREOMM), 77635 Malone Circle, Palm Desert, CA 92211; phone: (800) 403-4325; Fax: (760) 772-0169; Web site: www.odysseyofthesoul.org.

Founded by Hugh Harmon, Ph.D., and Pamela Chilton, C.H.T., FREOMM offers a wide variety of hypnotherapy classes and seminars. They also produce a series of mini–phone seminars based on their healing modalities and spiritually channeled information. See their Web site for a wealth of interesting information.

ner Journeys, Truckee, CA; phone: (530) 448-6880; Web site: www.inner-journeys.com.

This is Josie Stein's organization. She offers hypnotherapy instruction, classes on using light trance work to improve the effectiveness of coaching techniques, and private sessions.

Prayer and Healing

***ealing Words: The Power of Prayer and the Practice of Medicine,* by Larry Dossey, M.D.** 1997, 432 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0061043833. Published by Harper San Francisco, 1160 Battery St., 3rd Floor, San Francisco, CA 94111-1213. List price $6.99

Capturing the attention of the American Medical Association (AMA) and the presidential task force on health care, Dr. Dossey's provocative book shares recent evidence linking prayer, healing, and medicine. Calling for a bold new integration of science and spirituality, Dossey shares case studies and anecdotes that illustrate those methods of prayer offering the greatest

potential for healing. In addition to summarizing a convincing array of scientific tests and studies that support the power of prayer to positively affect healing, Dossey blasts the idea that illness is the patient's fault and that physical health always reflects spiritual health. He points out that many saints and holy men have suffered from terrible physical maladies, including some of the same illnesses that they reportedly healed in others.

***ience and Health: With Keys to the Scriptures,* by Mary Baker Eddy.** 1991, 700 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1878641007. Published by Aequus Publications or The First Church of Christ Scientist, Boston, MA. List price $9.95

Originally published in 1875, this is one of the preeminent books on spiritual healing. When her own prayers and the prayers of her congregation had failed to heal Mary Baker Eddy of a chronic illness, she turned repeatedly to the Bible. Seeking solace and understanding, she feels that she received divine inspiration for a deeper spiritual interpretation of Jesus' words and the process that he used to heal without material medicines or manipulations. Many thousands claim to have been physically healed simply by reading her book and applying its spiritual healing principles. Her book supports her beliefs with selections from the Bible, offers a deeper explanation of her spiritual healing methods, and gives numerous testimonials to the effectiveness of these methods of healing.

Visualization

***ealing Visualizations: Creating Health Through Imagery,* by Gerald Epstein, M.D.** 1989, 227 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0553346237. Published by Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, 666 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10103. List price $16.00

Dr. Gerald Epstein has written an inspiring and practical guide to utilizing the powers of your own mind for promoting rapid and effective healing. A psychiatrist and pioneer in waking dream therapy, Epstein shows the reader how the mind can help to heal the body through the power of "imaginal medicine." Containing numerous case examples and more than 75 specific exercises, this guide covers suggested imagery therapies for ailments ranging from the rapid healing of fractures to arthritis, AIDS, and cancer.

The Western Medical Model

***e Pill Book: The Illustrated Guide to the Most Prescribed Drugs in the United States,* Harold M.Silverman, Phar.M.D. (editor).** 2008, 1248 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0553588934. Published by Bantam Books, 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $7.50

This is a great reference for anyone who relies on traditional Western medicines for healing. Compiled by a team of eminent pharmacologists, *The Pill Book* provides excellent information on specific medicines, including side effects, interactions, effectiveness on specific ailments, and cross references to other generic or more effective medicines. Most doctors only know what the drug companies tell them and do not read the multiple pages of fine print that come with each of

the thousands of different medicines. If you use pharmaceutical drugs, buy this book and educate yourself about what you are putting into your body!

***ealthwise Handbook: A Self-Care Guide for You,* by Donald W. Kemper.** 2006, 354 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1932921229. Published by Healthwise Publications, P.O. Box 1989, Boise, ID 83701. List price $9.95

The award-winning *Healthwise Handbook* is the best-selling self-care manual ever printed. This book contains family guidelines on prevention, home treatment, and when to call in a health professional. Visit the publisher's Web site at www.ivillage.healthwise.com to search the *Healthwise Knowledgebase* medical information database about virtually every health topic. Purchase of this book gives you free access to the medical information database.

***here There Is No Doctor: A Village Health Care Handbook*, by David Werner, Carol Thuman, and Jane Maxwell.**

See the description in the references section of Chapter 8.

***tch Medicine: Advanced Field Procedures for Emergencies*, by High L. Coffee.**

See the description in the references section in Chapter 8.

***here There Is No Dentist,* by Murray Dickson**. 1983, 198 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0942364057. Published by The Hesperian Foundation, P.O. Box 11577, Berkeley, CA 94712-2577. List price $14.00

Designed for village health care workers in thirdworld settings, *Where There Is No Dentist* provides basic dental health educational guidelines for promoting good dental hygiene, even where there is no access to simple tools like the modern toothbrush. Covers temporary fillings, extractions, and cleaning, in addition to diagnosis and treatment recommendations for quite a variety of medical and dental problems in and around the mouth. I would rather go to the dentist, but if one was not available, this book could be a big help.

10

Clothing and Textiles

> No one knows when spinning began—10,000 BC? 15,000 BC? The oldest fabric we know of so far shows that its maker already had remarkable skill. It was found in Turkey and is believed to have been made around 6300 BC. Far newer fabrics, almost 4,500 years old, were made with such precision and skill that they have yet to be duplicated by hand or machine. These are the Egyptian "transparent" linens (there is some dispute over the actual fiber used) with more than five hundred threads to the inch. These and countless other striking textiles all began with yarns spun on a handspindle. Spinning wheels wouldn't be seen for another 3,500 years.
>
> **—Lee Raven, *Hands On Spinning***

In many primitive cultures, spinning, weaving, dyeing, knitting, sewing, and otherwise fabricating textiles and clothing occupies a large chunk of time, often second only to farming. Luckily for modern people, these traditional crafts can now be enjoyed as a relaxing artful pastime rather than a never-ending chore. Hopefully things will remain this way, and you can use this chapter to acquaint yourself with the way things used to be done or to help you find your way to sources for learning these fine traditional crafts.

Preindustrial peoples probably first clothed themselves with skins and furs from animals or woven coverings from local grasses and plants. Native Americans created beautifully woven cloth long before the Europeans brought spinning wheels and shuttle looms to America. Remarkably effective Eskimo clothing was skillfully crafted from elk, deer, and seal skins that protect the wearer from the most extreme arctic conditions, exceeding ultramodern hightech expedition clothing in some aspects of durability and function.

FIBER ARTS

Since before recorded history, indigenous peoples have spun threads, yarn, and cordage from thousands of native plants at locations spread across the globe. Wool remains a favorite of many spinners and weavers. Wool has the benefit of natural water repellency that helps it retain insulating value even when wet. Cotton, on the other hand, although comfortable against the skin, is a poor insulator when wet. Linen was once one of the most important fibers in the world for cloth production. Due to the lengthy processes involved in extracting linen fibers from flax stalks, it now occupies a minor position far below cotton. Hemp was once the premier plant fiber of choice in America for making paper and cloth, but due to political forces and the development of the cotton gin, it was preempted by cotton and wood pulp. Hemp is making a comeback, although the United States remains one of the few nations to suppress the farming of hemp for

fiber. Thousands of other perfectly usable plant and animal fibers have faded into obscurity because, for one reason or another, they have not been economically adapted to modern machinery-intensive textile processes.

Preparing Fibers

Most plant and animal fibers must be cleaned, untangled, and oriented prior to spinning into thread and yarns. When working with wool, spinners usually prefer to work with washed (or "scoured") wool. A "fleece" is the shorn coat of a furry animal. Wool fleeces usually contain a quantity of animal grease, insecticide from "dips" to kill pests, dirt, and debris. Washed wool may weigh 20 to 50 percent of what the raw fleece weighs, so take this into consideration when buying a fleece.

Animal fibers are typically further cleaned and oriented by "teasing," "carding," and sometimes "combing." The simplest method, which requires no tools, is simply to "tease" the fibers. While holding a lock of wool in one hand, pinch some of the fibers with the fingers of the other hand and gradually draw the fibers into elongated parallel strands. This works best with the long fibers from the prime parts of the fleece.

Figure 10-1. Teasing fibers.

If wool is spun unwashed, which some spinners like to do (in Australia and New Zealand it is the preferred method), it must be skeined (wound into a large, loose bundle, rather like a coil of rope) and washed after spinning. Tie the skein, hand wash it in soapy water, and then rinse, towel, and hang it with a small weight that roughly matches the weight of the skein.

Carding

Carding fibers is the traditional method that the pioneers used to open, clean, and align fibers before spinning. The carding process uses two paddles, about 4 inches by 9 inches, with hundreds of fine wire teeth mounted on the face of the card, like a wire brush for combing a dog's fur. Wool is first loaded onto one carder and then gently brushed with the other carder via a rocking stroke action. The wool is transferred a few times between carders, the fibers becoming more oriented and combed with each transfer. Most books on spinning provide a detailed, well-illustrated explanation of this process. If you are too vigorous in your carding actions, you will

create lots of small tangles called “neps,” which will make lumps when spun into yarn or thread. For best results, card gently with no more wool than it takes to just cover all the teeth of your carder. Hand-carding is a time-consuming process. It has been reported that it takes 17 people hand-carding wool to keep up with one weaver (Brown 1983, 223). Many spinners who only wish to spin for themselves and their families or friends find a 4-inch-wide, hand-operated drum carder a worthwhile investment.

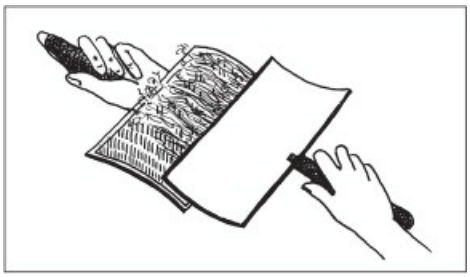


Figure 10-2. Carding wool.

Combing

Combing is a far older process than carding, probably because it employs a simple and logical tool consisting of one to eight rows of long, slender pointed teeth. Drawing the wool through the comb removes all the short fibers and tangles from the wool. Spinning with combed wool yields a “worsted” yarn, which is stronger, smoother, and more lustrous than the softer and more “wooly” yarn produced from carded wool. Combing wool can result in the loss of as much as half of the fleece, depending on the breed of animal and quality of the fleece.

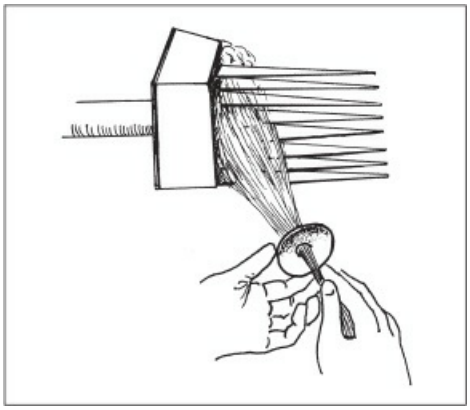


Figure 10-3. Combing wool.

Plant Fibers

Plant fibers are usually in the form of *bast* fibers, leaf fibers, or a hairy clump of fibers that surround the seeds or fruit of the plant. Bast fibers are long, tough fibers that form a sheath in the plant stalk surrounding a woody core, such as in flax, hemp, and jute. Leaf fibers are tough fibers extending the length of the leaf, such as in sisal, yucca, and agave. Some examples of plant fibers surrounding seeds and fruit are cotton, kapok, and milkweed pod. With all plant fibers, some form of processing is required to remove the fibers from the rest of the plant material.

Bast fibers typically go through a process called “retting,” which involves partially rotting the plant stalks to loosen the bond between the fibers and the bark and central core without destroying the fiber’s strength. Too much rotting, and the fibers lose their strength or fall apart. Modern manufacturers use harsh chemical baths for quickly retting plant fibers, but traditional methods relied on water, time, and bacterial action for retting plant stalks. Stalks were retted in running water, stagnant water, or dew. For running-water retting, the fibers are bundled into crates weighted with stones and then placed in a river or creek for 10 to 20 days (the time period depends on plant type and water temperature). When plant stalks are retted in stagnant water, fermentation and bacterial action are greatly accelerated, which quickens the process, but care must be taken not to weaken or destroy the fibers by overretting. The simplest and longest process is “dew retting.” In this process, the plants are laid out on a grassy field and turned every week or so for a period of 6 to 8 weeks (Leadbeater 1983, 60– 61). Regardless of the method used, the retting process is complete when the bast fibers separate easily from the woody core.

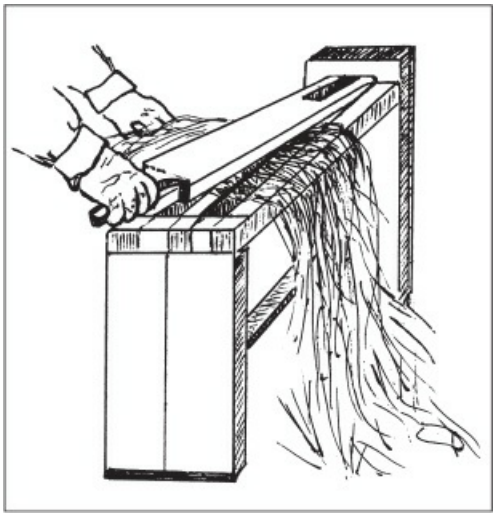


Figure 10-4. Flax break.

After retting, bast-type stalks are dried in preparation for the next step, called “breaking,” where the woody cores and unretted hulls are broken out of the stems while leaving the long bast fibers intact. The crude method is to simply beat the stalks with a wooden mallet. A more effective low-tech breaking method is the use of a wooden flax break.

The next step, called “scutching,” consists of beating the fibers against a board with a wooden knife driven at an angle to the fibers, to remove all the broken crud (“boon”) from the bundle of fibers. The last step is to comb the fibers through a circular pattern comb, called a “hackle,” to remove tangles and shorter fibers and smaller bits of debris. The shorter fibers may be twisted into coarse yarn, rope, or twine, while the longer fibers are spun into thread or yarn. See *A Weaver’s Garden: Growing Plants for Natural Dyes and Fibers* by Rita Buchanan or *Handspinning* by Eliza Leadbeater for more complete information on low-tech methods for preparing plant fibers.

Sustainable Fibers

Half of all textile fibers come from cotton, whose cultivation uses one-fourth of all agrochemicals and of all insecticides. **—Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, and L. Hunter Lovins, *Natural Capitalism***

The production of fibers for human use takes its toll on the environment. Consuming about 25 percent of the world's agricultural use of petrochemicals, fertilizer, pesticides, and herbicides, cotton clearly holds the dubious honor of having the highest global impact of any processed fiber. A small but growing percentage of the world's cotton is now grown organically. Overgrazing of goats and sheep has also contributed significantly to the desertification of millions of acres of rangeland around the world.

On the one hand, the petrochemical industry is a known polluter and uses nonrenewable resources to supply the world with synthetic fibers for clothing, cordage, and composites. On the other hand, the use of synthetic fibers has probably saved millions of acres of trees from being cut down for their fibers and for acreage to grow additional cotton. One part of the sustainable fiber solution is to recycle rags back into cloth, and plastic waste into synthetic fibers.

Patagonia, a $165-million-dollar-a-year clothing company, has used only organically grown cotton in its products since 1996 and is dedicated to reducing its impact on the planet by using planet-friendly fibers, processes, and products whenever possible. This company has converted most of its entire Synchilla line of fleece clothing to PCR (post-consumer recycled) fleece, fibers spun from recycled soda bottles (Patagonia 2000). Hopefully, other major manufacturers will follow their example by changing their product lines over to the use of recycled fibers and organically grown natural fibers.

Another part of the solution is to replace cotton with less environmentally taxing fibers. Hemp is one plant fiber that has a fraction of the environmental impact of cotton and has the added benefit of producing highly nutritional foods and valuable industrial products from hemp seed and hemp oil. Hemp is one of the strongest plant fibers, and can be used to make cloth that lasts two to three times longer than cotton or paper that lasts several times as long as wood-pulp paper. George Washington and Thomas Jefferson both grew hemp. They wore clothes woven from hemp fiber and wrote the Declaration of Independence on paper made from hemp. Hemp is a naturally pest-resistant plant that acts as a weed killer. When farming hemp, one can practically eliminate the need for herbicides and pesticides. Hemp can yield 3 to 8 dry tons of fiber per acre, roughly four times the average fiber yield from 20-year-old forests grown for pulp (NAIHC 2000).

Unfortunately, due to political maneuvering by wood pulp and synthetic fiber industrial giants, combined with unwarranted fears about marijuana and hemp, hemp farming was banned from U.S. soil in the 1950s. Hemp strains grown for fiber have almost none of the psychoactive components (THC) of marijuana. Additionally, hemp-farming practices for optimum fiber growth require close-packed plantings to maximize tall stalks and minimize leaves and flowers, which is the exact opposite of agricultural practice for farming marijuana, making it impractical to hide marijuana cultivation within hemp farms. Hemp requires far less water than cotton and can be grown in much colder climates. In 1997, Canada repealed its ban on hemp farming and is actively supporting the return of its hemp-farming industry. The United States is one of the few remaining industrialized nations in which it is still illegal to grow hemp for fiber.

Spinning

Called “spinning,” the act of twisting a stream of fibers from a loose bundle interlocks the individual strands to make strong continuous threads and yarns that resist pulling apart. The fibers should be teased, combed, or carded so that they are mainly free from each other and only loosely interlocked. The crudest method for spinning fibers is to hand-roll the fibers on your leg with one hand while loosely grasping a bundle of teased fibers with the other hand.

Drafting

By controlling the tension on the bundle of fibers with your fingers, you can allow a controlled amount of fiber to gently and slowly slide through your fingers, feeding the growing thread or yarn that you are twisting with the other hand. This controlled feed of fibers is called “drafting.” Too much tension on the fingers of the drafting hand, and your yarn will not pull enough fibers from the clump. Too little finger tension, and your yarn will be thick and lumpy. Test your yarn’s strength by pulling on it. If there is too little twist, the yarn will be weak and will pull apart easily. Practice goes a long way toward improving your comfort and ability with this skill. Be patient with yourself.

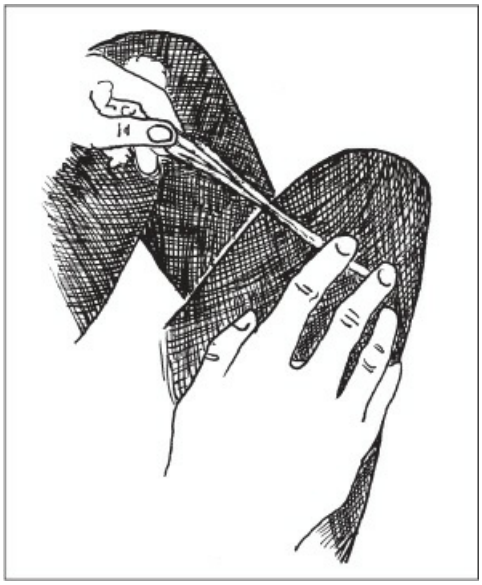


Figure 10-5. Drafting and hand-rolling fibers.

Spinning with a Hooked Stick

A simple tool for primitive spinning is the “hooked stick.” A 12-inch length of coat hanger will do. Run the hook through some of the fibers from your bundle, and then draw out a few inches of fibers and start spinning your hooked stick along your thigh. As a section of your yarn gets wound adequately, pinch the yarn next to the drafting zone to keep it from unwinding, and then wind the yarn around the center of your hooked stick, finishing with a loop through the hook, before drafting and spinning another section of yarn.

Figure 10-6. Spinning with a hooked stick.

Joins

When you run out of fibers in the bundle in your drafting hand, you need to "join" or splice in a new bundle of fibers. A proper join is an invisible overlapping of fibers that is as strong as the rest of your yarn. To make a join, untwist and fluff up a few inches of fiber from the end of your yarn. Tease a fluffy section from the end of your next bundle of fibers and overlap this with the fluffed up end of your yarn. Hold this overlapped section of fibers in your hand, and draft together while you continue spinning your yarn. This technique applies to all hand-spinning methods.

Spinning with a Hand Spindle

The next step up the evolutionary ladder of spinning is the hand spindle, which is still used throughout the world for spinning yarn. There are many different variations on this theme, but all basically have a long, dowel-like stick with a weight, called a whorl, that gives some mass to the spindle and helps it to keep spinning for awhile after it's given a quick hand spin. The process is much the same as for the hooked stick, but the process is sped up significantly because the spindle keeps spinning on its own for a short time after each flick of the hand. Start by hand-rolling a yard of two-ply yarn on your leg and tying it to the spindle next to the whorl. This is called the "leader." Two-ply yarn holds the twist, whereas one-ply yarn tends to untwist and break. To make two-ply yarn, pinch a section of yarn in its middle, and twist the two half-sections of yarn together in the opposite direction of the twist from the direction in which they were spun. See the two-ply cordage illustration in Chapter 4 for more details.

Suspend the spindle and give it a quick spin with one hand as you draft the fibers with the other hand. Alternately, some designs of spindles may be rolled against your thigh or spun like a top in a shallow dish. As with the hooked stick, when the yarn stretches out uncomfortably long, pinch the yarn below the drafting zone and wind the yarn around the spindle shaft. If the spindle shaft has a hook or T-slot, spiral the yarn up the shaft and run it through the hook or slot before starting to spin on the next length of yarn. If the end of the spindle shaft does not have a hook or T-slot, secure the yarn with a half-hitch around the tip of the spindle. Even when there is a notch near the top of the spindle, you might find the use of a half-hitch helpful.

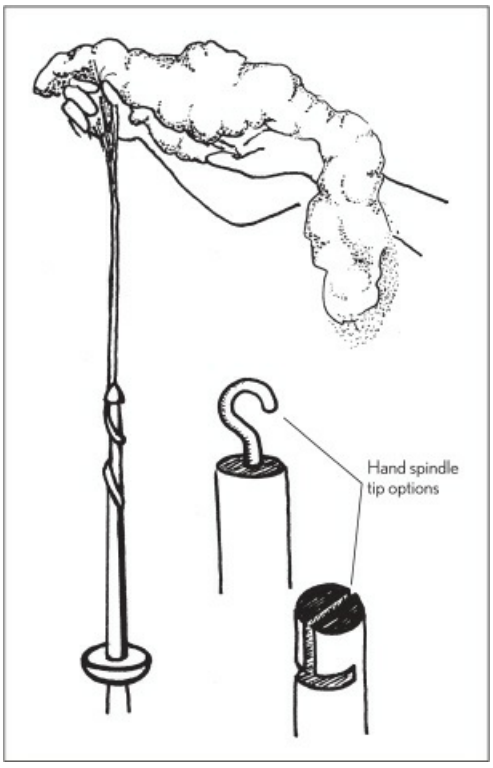


Figure 10-7. Spinning with a hand spindle.

Spinning with a Spinning Wheel

India is credited with developing the first spinning wheel known as the *charkha* around 500 B.C. In 1530, the German woodcarver Johann Jurgen is credited with adapting a scheme from Leonardo da Vinci's sketchbook to make the first modern spinning wheel that incorporated spinning and winding into one operation with a U-shaped arm (called a "flyer") spinning around a bobbin. Leonardo's ingenious concept became the foundation for all modern spinning and sewing machines. The center of the flyer has a hole in it to allow the yarn to feed into one end of the spinning flyer, getting twisted as it goes, and then feeds out the side of the flyer through a series of hooks where it is wound onto the bobbin. The spinner pauses now and then to position the yarn through a different hook for winding on a different section of the bobbin. There are many different styles of spinning wheels, but most involve similar hand techniques where one hand holds and drafts the fiber supply while the fingers of the other hand gently pinch the yarn to control the tension of the twist.

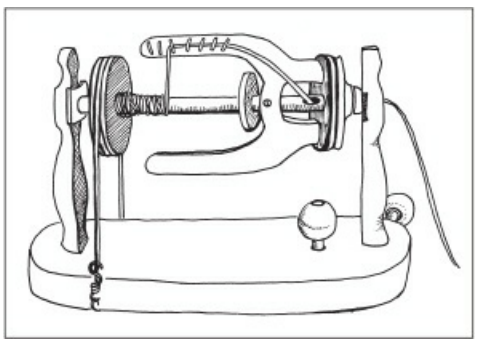


Figure 10-8. Spinning wheel flyer and bobbin.

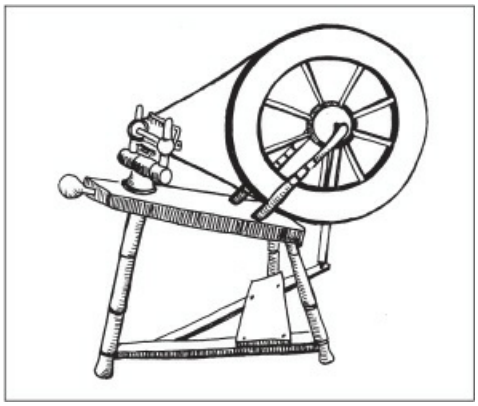


Figure 10-9. Spinning wheel.

Weaving

For thousands of years, people have woven beautiful carpets and cloth on simple handmade looms. Numerous loom designs are used across the planet, but they all work on variations of the same principles. In woven fabrics, two sets of yarns cross perpendicular to each other. One longitudinal set of yarns, called the “warp,” is first strung across some kind of loom. Then a second set of yarns, called a “weft” or “woof,” is woven repeatedly back and forth through the warp.

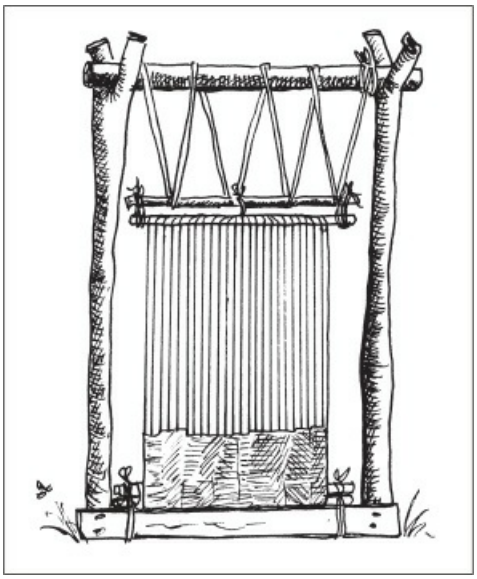


Figure 10-10. Navajo loom.

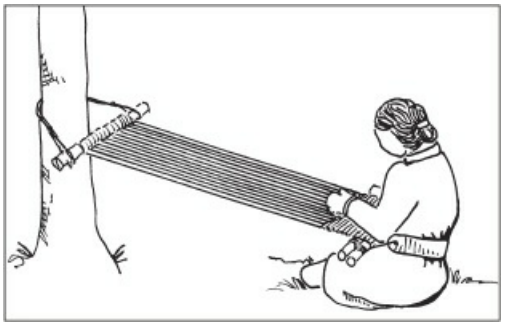


Figure 10-11. Backstrap loom.

To manually weave the cross threads (weft) over and under each individual thread of the warp would be a timeconsuming and tedious job for all but simple narrow belts with only a few threads in the warp. Ages ago, people figured out that there was a better way to weave than this tedious manual method. They found ways to grab and lift, or lower, whole sets of alternating threads utilizing loops or slender shafts called “heddles,” making a wide tunnel (called a “shed”) that a wooden yarn carrier (called a “shuttle”) could be easily tossed through. When loading the warp onto the loom, the warp threads are fed through the heddles, which are attached to a shaft to allow an entire set of alternating threads to be raised or lowered with a single motion. With flexible-string heddles strung from a heddle stick, a spacer called a “shed stick” is required to bias the shed open in one direction.

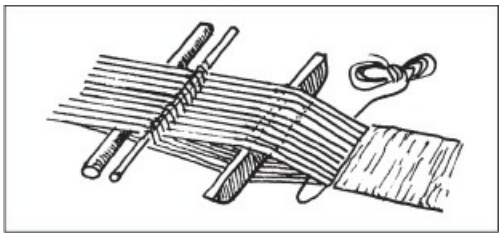


Figure 10-12. Primitive stick loom shed, heddles “down.”

To switch the warp threads for the next shuttle pass, the heddle stick is raised or lowered after each pass of the shuttle. Raising or lowering the heddles causes the warp threads to cross over the weft thread before the shuttle is passed through the shed again. In this way, the weft thread is woven alternating above and below the warp threads without having to tediously thread it manually. Rigid heddles work similarly to string heddles, except that they eliminate the need for the shed stick because they can push a set of warp threads down, as well as pull a set up, to form sheds in either direction. Rigid heddles are often called “reeds,” since they were originally made from slender reeds.

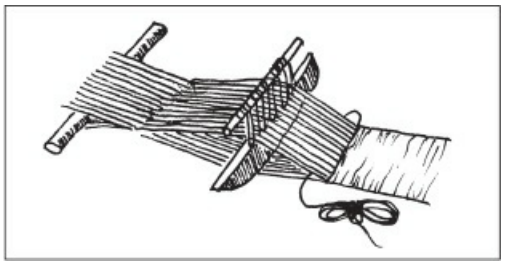


Figure 10-13. Primitive stick loom shed, heddles "up."

Shuttles typically are carved to allow a significant amount of yarn to be wound onto the shuttle so that a long weft thread can be handled without tangling.

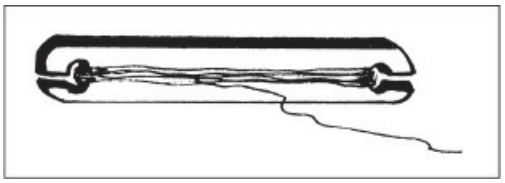


Figure 10-14. Stick shuttle.

Modern looms basically do the same thing as these primitive looms, but they have multiple heddle bars and other features to deal more efficiently with larger weavings and complex patterns. For an excellent introduction to a wide variety of simple traditional looms, see *The Weaving, Spinning and Dyeing Book* by Rachel Brown. For outstanding instructions on learning how to weave using a modern loom, see *Learning to Weave* by Deborah Chandler.

Knitting and Crocheting

Knitting and crocheting use needles and a continuous, long strand of yarn to produce garments through a series of repetitive interlocking loops of yarn. Crocheting uses a single needle with a hook in the end, but knitting uses two or more smooth-tipped needles. My mother spent countless hours knitting hats, mittens, sweaters, shawls, and socks, often from yarn that she had spun herself. These garments contained quite a variety of stitches and patterns of colored yarn. Every year she usually won several prizes at the county fair, but I'm afraid that few of her award-winning skills rubbed off on me.

Knitting and crocheting are a bit complex for me to provide you with any kind of a practical introduction in this short chapter, but I can steer you in the right direction for several wonderful books that can take you from beginning steps through advanced techniques. The number-one overall knitting book for beginners through experts is *Vogue Knitting*. It is a clear, well-illustrated, encyclopedic volume. *Knitting in Plain English,* by Maggie Righetti, is a nice companion to *Vogue Knitting*, being more verbal in its descriptions and not as copiously illustrated. Master knitter Elizabeth Zimmerman is credited with coming up with simple mathematical formulas that opened up a new world of sweater design and flexibility. Her book, *Knitting Without Tears*, is not a stand-alone knitting handbook, but provides valuable advice and

instructions for knitting items of clothing that fit well. For basic crocheting instructions, you might try *Crocheting in Plain English,* by Maggie Righetti.

FURS AND SKINS

> The real home of the Ihalmio (an inland Eskimo tribe) is much like that of the turtle, for it is what he carries about on his back. In truth it is the only house that can enable men to survive on the merciless plains of the Barrens. It has central heating from the fat furnace of the body, its walls are insulated to a degree of perfection that we white men have not been able to surpass, or even emulate. It is complete, light in weight, easy to make and easy to keep in repair. It costs nothing, for it is a gift of the land, through the deer. . . . Most white men trying to live in the winter arctic load their bodies with at least twenty-five pounds of clothing, while the complete deerskin home of the Innuit (inland Eskimos) weighs about seven pounds. . . . If he must sleep out, without shelter, and it is fifty below, he has but to draw his arms into his parka, and he sleeps nearly as well as he would in a double-weight eiderdown bag. **—Farley Mowat, *People of the Deer***

For countless centuries, American Indians have made beautiful, soft, durable clothing from brain-tanned hides, called "buckskin." Unlike leather, which is stiffer, fairly waterproof, and holds up poorly under repeated washings, buckskin is soft, breathable, and very washable. Leather was traditionally processed by soaking in bark-derived, acidic tanning solutions, but this has been almost entirely replaced by modern chromic acid solutions, which act much more quickly but are highly toxic and harmful to the environment if not contained and 100 percent recycled. Some examples of bark-tanned leather are traditional saddles, holsters, belts, and boots. Making buckskin relies on lots of hand manipulation and is not a process that has adapted well to modern mechanization. Commercial so-called buckskins are often soft, chrome-tanned leathers lacking the breathable and washable qualities of real buckskin. Transforming a raw animal hide into a soft, chamois-like buckskin is a time-consuming but rewarding affair. Buckskin clothing is truly a delight to wear.

The following is a quick summary of the steps involved in the process of wet-scraped brain tanning of a hide that Matt Richards describes in far greater detail in his book, *Deerskins into Buckskins*. If some of the steps are not properly completed, the result of your hours of hard work might be a tough leathery hide with unusable rockhard sections that must be reworked and rebrained. To improve your chances for success, I encourage you to pick up one of the recommended references for a far more complete description than I can give you here. Making your own buckskin is not a difficult process, but it does require patience, attention to detail, practice, sweat, and perseverance.

Brain-Tanning Overview

Because deer hide is similar to the hides of most other hoofed animals (goat, sheep, cattle,

buffalo, etc.), is a good practical size to work with, and is readily available from roadkills or as free giveaways during hunting season, we are going to discuss it here. The same techniques can be used with other hides, varying things a bit to take into account thicker or thinner skins. Making buckskin from small fur-bearing animals isn't very practical. Their hides are best utilized with the fur left intact.

A deerskin is made up of several layers. On the outer furry side, the first layer is the epidermis, a thin protective layer of mostly dead skin cells. Under the epidermis is the grain, where most of the active skin cells lie. Under the grain is a fibrous layer, which is what buckskin is made from. On the inside of the fiber layer is a membrane (hypodermis) that separates the flesh and fat from the hide.

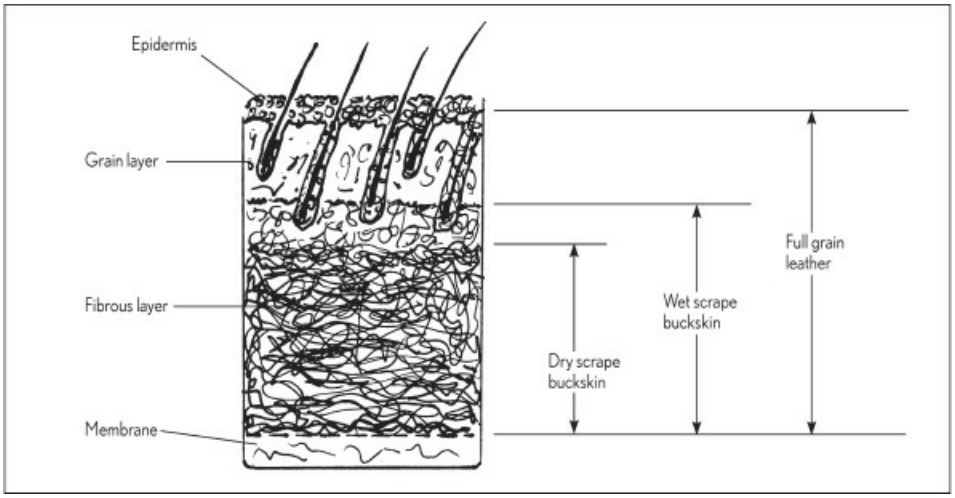


Figure 10-15. Hide structure.

The fibers in the fibrous layer will make glue if boiled down. The trick to making a buckskin out of an animal hide is to coat these fibers with an oil and work the fibers as the hide dries so that they do not "glue" themselves together into a hard lump of rawhide rather than a soft, supple buckskin. Because oil and water don't normally mix, in order for the oil to adequately penetrate and coat the moist fibers of a wet hide, it must be "emulsified." Traditionally, brains were squished and mixed with water to provide an oily water emulsion that would penetrate the hide and coat the fibers. There is an old saying that each animal comes with enough brains to tan its own hide. Either use the brains from your animal's carcass, or purchase them from your local butcher.

Because both the inner membrane and the outer grain are barriers to the penetration of the brain mixture (oilwater emulsion), both must both be removed prior to "braining," leaving just the bare fibrous layer. Traditionally, these layers were removed by either a "wet-scrape" or a "dry-scrape" process. In the dry-scrape process, a raw hide is strung to a frame and stretched while it dries. A sharp scraper is used to scrape the membrane off the flesh side of the hide, and the grain and fur from the outside. In his book, *Primitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills,* John and Geri McPherson provides clear, well-illustrated directions for the dry-scrape process.

In the wet-scrape process, the wet hide is laid on the smooth, curved surface of a scraping beam, and is then scraped with a slightly dull scraper to remove the grain, hair, and membrane.

Presoaking the hide in a caustic wood ash or lime solution, known as "bucking" the hide, makes the wet-scraping process easier. *Deerskins into Buckskins,* by Matt Richards, is a good book on the wetscraping process for buckskins. For an excellent introduction to a variety of buckskin processes and options, see Matt Richards' Web site at www.braintan.com. Choosing wet scraping or dry scraping is a matter of personal preference. Having done both processes and made a living by tanning hides, Matt Richards prefers the wet-scrape process, saying that it requires considerably less effort and yields a superior product. John McPherson prefers dry scraping, saying, "With the dry-scrape process, you can skin your deer in the morning and have a finished buckskin that same evening. You can't do that wet scraping." Traditionally, dry scrape was used on thicker hides such as buffalo, which needed thinning. Wet scrape was used on thinner hides, such as deer, which did not require thinning.

Simply applying the braining mixture is not enough to make a soft buckskin. The hide also must be stretched and worked repeatedly as it dries, to prevent the fibers from interlocking and hardening the hide. The last step in the process is smoking the hide, which chemically changes the proteins in the fibers and permanently binds the emulsion, making the hide washable. Without the smoking step, a good soaking could return your buckskin to a hardened "rawhide" state. Buckskin "breathes," allowing sweat to pass through, but it will also soak up water like a sponge.

The Wet-Scrape Brain-Tanning Process

1. **Skinning.** Hides should be skinned with minimum use of the knife, to prevent cutting and nicking the inside of the hide. Cuts and nicks will often turn into holes in the hide when the hide is worked and stretched after braining. Hides are skinned most easily when the animal is freshly killed. Free or cheap hides are often available from butchers and hunters during hunting season, but most hunters and butchers will seriously damage the hides while skinning. You might try talking to them first to see whether you can persuade them to pull the hides off, rather than cut them off, when skinning animals for your use. Matt Richards says that once you get the technique down, it is actually much faster to pull hides off rather than to cut them off. Cut the hide around the elbows, knees and neck, and split it up the belly and inside of the front and back legs. After this step, put your knife down and try to peel the hide from the animal with your hands, using the knife minimally or not at all.

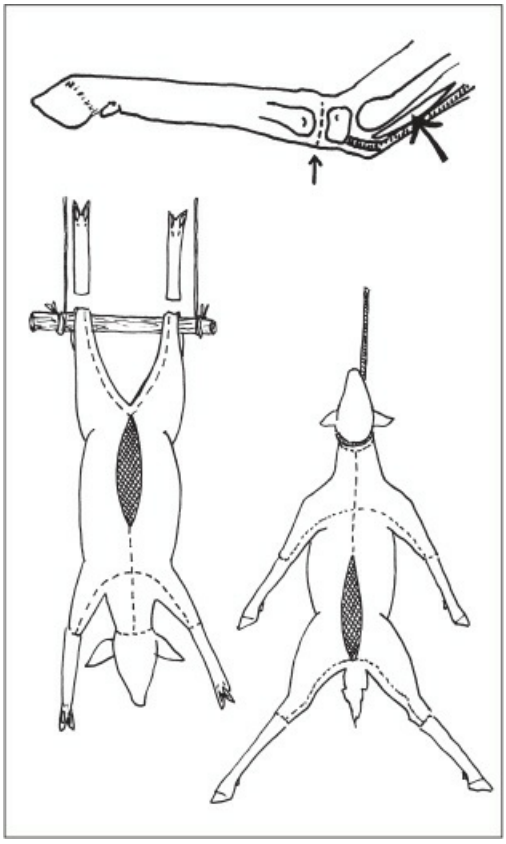


Figure 10-16. Knife cuts for skinning.

2. **Fleshing.** The purpose of this step is to remove the hunks of meat and fat from the inside of the hide. Don't worry about getting all the membrane, as it will come off in a later step. For the wet-scrape method, you will need a broad, double-handled scraper with a semi-dull blade that will tend to peel layers off the hide without cutting the hide surface. The scraper edge should be either beveled or square, with no chips or peaks and valleys. The edge should be slightly dull. If it is sharp enough to shave your thumbnail, it is too sharp and you might cut your hide while scraping. Traditional scrapers were made from hardwoods, stone, or sharpened pieces of large bones. Most modern tanners prefer hardened steel because it requires sharpening far less often.

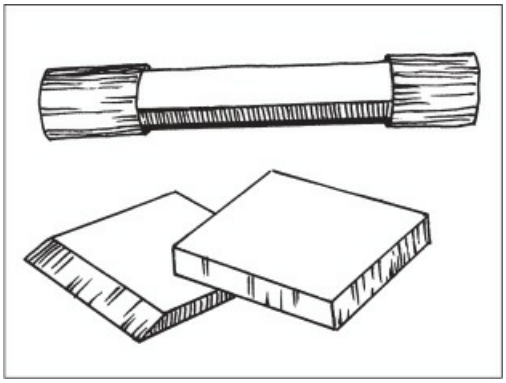


Figure 10-17. Scraper for wet scraping.

Lay the hide flesh-side up on a curved smooth surface, such as a 6- to 8-inch-diameter log about 6 feet long, or a section of 6-inch PVC pipe. This process is messy, so you should wear old clothes and cover yourself with something like an apron or garbage bag. Depending on how you brace your scraping beam, either pin the hide between the beam and your hips, or pin it between the beam and what it leans against. Hides are tough, so you can really lay your weight into it, except for around holes, cuts, and edges.

Figure 10-18. Fleshing and scraping.

3. **Bucking.** This step soaks your hide in an alkaline bath to clean the protective mucus out of the hide and swell the hide, making the grain easier to see and remove. You make the solution with wood ash or hydrated lime. For hydrated lime, mix 1 pound of lime with 2 gallons of water to soak one hide. If you use wood ash for bucking, make your solution differently depending on whether you use the ash from hardwood or softwood, because the ash from softwoods has a lot less caustic material than most hardwood ashes. With softwood ash, mix about 3 gallons of ash with enough water to make a solution at the consistency of a milkshake.

   When using hardwood ash, the pioneers used the floating egg trick to determine whether the ash solution was of the right strength. Mix a couple gallons of white hardwood ash with at least a gallon of water, and then allow it to settle for at least 15 minutes. Drop a raw egg into the solution. If it sinks or barely floats, the solution is too weak. Add more ash, stir, allow to settle, and then test as before. If the egg floats high and turns on its side, the solution is too strong. Add some water, stir, allow to settle, and then retest. The egg should float, showing an area at the tip roughly the size of a quarter to a half-dollar.

   Pick out pieces of floating charcoal from your solution. Soak the hide in this solution for 3 to 4 days, until the hide is no longer blue-white in color but is swollen and tawny-colored (Richards 1998, 45–49).

CAUTION: The caustic solution is irritating to the skin. Use rubber gloves or wash hands thoroughly after contact. Rinse hides thoroughly when you are finished.

4. **Graining.** Lay your hide on your beam, like you did for "fleshing," except hair-side up. Firmly push or pull your tool down and forward into your hide in one continuous stroke to dig through the grain and skate along the hide's fibrous layer. Removing the grain is work and requires patience and careful attention. Before moving on to another area, work one area at a time with overlapping strokes until all the hair, epidermis, and grain are removed. The grain will look darker than the fibrous layer. Unless your scraper is too sharp, you will not hurt the fibrous layer by bearing down extra hard. Periodically, grain as hard as you can to make sure that you got all the grain. If you dig up sheets of stuff, you missed some of the grain, but if you just get little bits of hide, you got all the grain. Be careful around the edges, holes, cuts, and armpits. Graining is the hardest step to learn from a book. If you failed to remove all of the grain, as you work the hide while it dries, it will stiffen in those areas that still have some grain. To soften further, you must remove the remaining grain and rebrain. If your hide is drying out while graining, wet it to keep it moist.

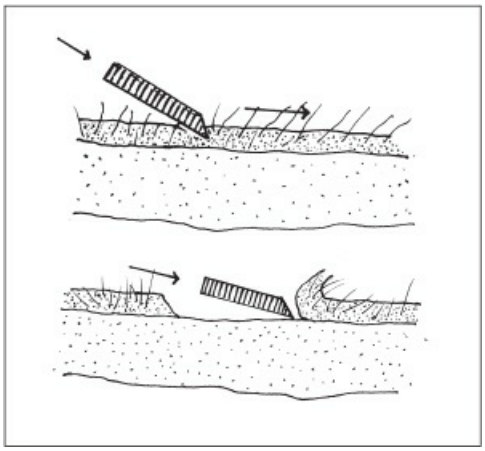


Figure 10-19. Scraping to remove the grain.

5. **Membraning.** Turn your hide over, and systematically scrape the membrane side to break up and remove the membrane. Keep the hide moist and supple through this step. It can be hard to see the membrane, but it is not as critical that all of it is removed as it was with the grain.
6. **Rinsing.** You must rinse all the alkaline bucking solution out of the hide. Do this in a river, pond, or a tub of water with a hose in it. The best method is to weight or tie the hide in a creek overnight.Rinsing takes at least 12 hours in moving water and up to 48 hours in still water. When it is fully rinsed, the entire hide will have lost its swollen, tawny look and will have returned to the earlier supple, bluishwhite appearance. Check the neck and rump to make sure that they feel limp and supple again, like they did before bucking.
7. **Wringing.** You must remove all excess water before proceeding to the next step. Spots of the hide that are too wet will not soak up the dressing (braining) and will result in a stiff

or hard section on the hide. John McPherson likes to use the wringer from an old washing machine for this step, but the traditional method uses a stout stick (an axe handle works great) and a tree branch. First, lay your hide over a smooth section of branch or a sturdy bar, and twist it up with your hands to wring much of the excess water from it. Untwist it and lay it out flat, and then loop it over the branch so that one end overlaps the other end by several inches. Roll your hide from each side in toward the middle to make a thick loop of hide, still wrapped around the branch. Insert your stout stick into this loop and twist it firmly, wringing as much water as you can from the hide. Unroll the hide and spread it out flat. Inspect it for spots that are too wet. The color should be white to tawny. Bluish areas, or areas that show surface water when scraped from below with your thumbnail, are too wet. Use your scraping beam and scraper to squeegee excess water out of wet areas.

8. **Dressing (braining).** In this step, the hide is soaked in an oil-water emulsion to coat all the individual fibers in the fibrous layer. The traditional dressing is made from mashed animal brains and water, but you can also make your dressing from beaten eggs, or soap mixed with oil. Make a brain dressing by mashing ½ to 1 pound of fresh or thawed raw brains with a cup of hot water. Some folks like to liquefy this mixture in a blender. Some people use brain dressings raw, while others suggest that you add the water from the next step and cook it for about 10 minutes. It works fine either way, but the cooked brains seem a little more sanitary and probably reduce the chance of infection. Make an egg dressing by beating a dozen raw eggs. For soap-and-oil dressing, mix ¼ bar of grated soap with ¼ cup of neat's foot oil (many other oils will do) (Richards 1998, 66).

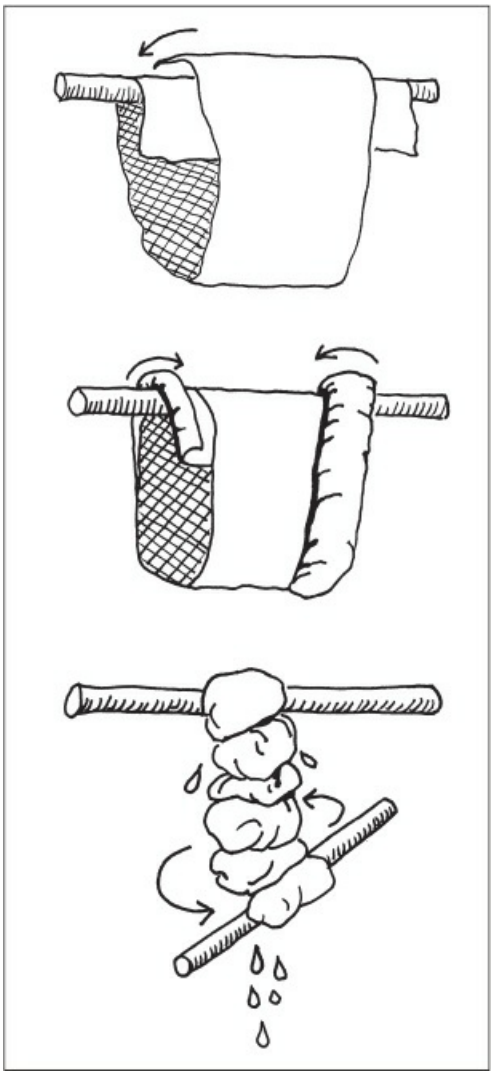


Figure 10-20. Wringing the hide.

Dump the dressing into a 2- to 5-gallon bucket and mix with ½ gallon of hot water, no more than 120°F (over 120°F will cook your hide, ruining it). The water is right when it is about as hot as you can stand to hold your hand in it for a couple minutes. Cold water will work, but hot water is faster and easier. Place your hide in the bucket and work the dressing into all areas of the hide, paying particular attention to holes, edges, and thick sections. Cover tightly, and leave to soak in the dressing from 20 minutes to overnight. You can't get too much dressing into the hide, but too little will result in a stiff hide in the drying stage and you will have to dress the hide all over again.

Unfold your hide and lay it over a branch with the neck hanging down. Stretch it in all directions and inspect it for stiff and puckered areas. Except for scarred areas, the hide should stretch evenly and lay smooth and flat. If you find stiff or rippled areas, wring and then repeat the dressing application. Both Matt Richards and John McPherson suggest wringing and dressing hides at least two times to

ensure complete dressing. Thoroughly wring out the hide. Stretch it out on your beam and squeegee any wet spots with your scraper to remove excess moisture.

9. **Sew holes.** It is a good idea to stitch up any holes in your hide before continuing on to the stretching and softening step, or else small holes may turn into major tears. Pinch the edges of holes together from the back (the former flesh side of the hide) and whipstitch with small needles, tight stitches, and strong thread or sinew. Holes stitched at this stage will lay flat and effectively disappear from the skin side during the next step.

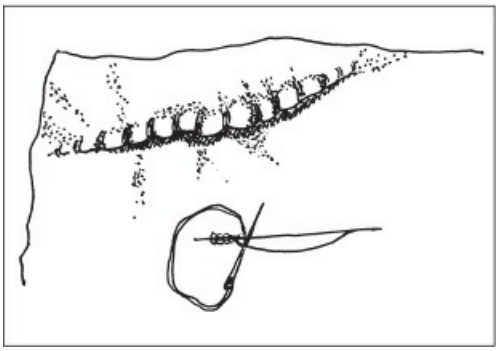


Figure 10-21. Stitching holes.

10. **Softening and stretching.** This is the most physically demanding but rewarding step in the process. It turns your squishy wet mass of a hide into a supple, beautiful buckskin. You can choose to handstretch your hide or frame-stretch it as you work it throughout the drying process. If hand-stretched, the hide can be wrapped in a plastic bag and stuck in the refrigerator midstream to take a break. If frame-stretched, the process must be carried out to completion in one session. Whichever method you choose, the idea is to keep the fibers stretched and moving in all directions until the hide is dry, so that the individual fibers do not glue themselves together to make hard spots in your hide.

    For hand-stretching, most tanners stretch and abrade the hide by pulling it back and forth around a steel cable or a stout rope attached to a tree or pole, performed in conjunction with stretching and working the hide over your knee and thigh or stretching it between people. Initially, when the hide is still pretty wet, you can take breaks and only work the hide about half the time. As the hide starts to dry in the thinner sections, work it nearly continuously. If some areas start to stiffen up, abrade them vigorously several times. If they don’t soften, go back to the dressing stage before the hide dries further.

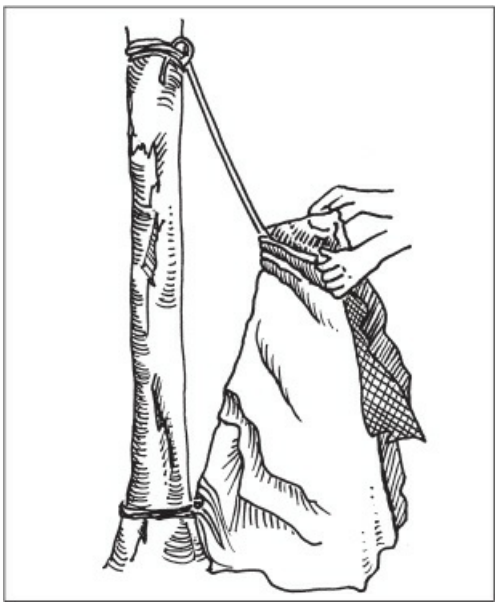


Figure 10-22. Hand-stretching over a cable or rope.

Frame-stretched buckskins will be thinner and cover more area, but will also be more prone to shrinkage from washing. Build a strong frame from notched branches or 2-by-4s. Using a sharp knife, cut slots around the perimeter of your hide every 3 to 4 inches and ¼ inch from the edge. Cut the slots parallel to the edge so they won't tear out too easily. String the hide loosely to the frame, starting at the neck area, followed by the rump, and then the sides. Tighten it evenly, all the way around. Using a beveled, pointed stick (dull any sharp edges and points) roughly the size of an axe handle, deeply stroke the hide to work and stretch the entire surface. Periodically pull and stretch the hide's edges with your fingers. Use care around holes and cuts. Focus on the thinner, drier sections first, and then shift your focus to the thicker sections when the thinner ones are completely dry.

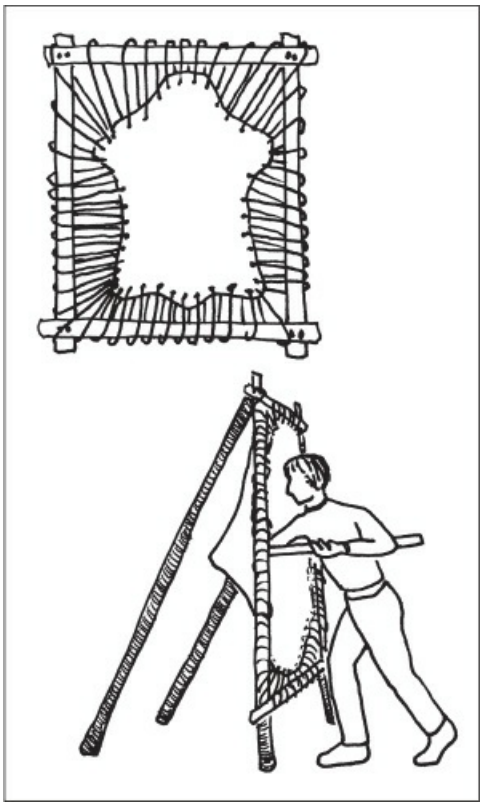


Figure 10-23. Frame-stretching.

11. Smoking. By now your buckskin looks and feels like a real buckskin. As long as it's kept dry and away from critters and insects, you can store it for a long time. The last step is to permanently seal the fibers with wood smoke, making your buckskin washable and rot resistant.

The quick way to smoke one or two skins is to stitch them together, or bond with wood or hide glue, to form a hide sack, leaving the neck area open as a mouth for smoke to enter. It is safest to stitch a denim or canvas skirt around the opening to prevent scorching and possibly ruining your hide. The sack is either hung over a smoky fire to catch heavy smoke inside the sack or smoke is piped from a wood stove into the sack. Smoke this side for about 20 minutes (longer if you want a darker hide). Pull the sack and skirt inside out and smoke the other side.

To make a smoky fire that smokes for a long time without flaring up requires punky rotten wood, not wet wood. Collect a few armfuls of this kind of wood, and then break it into small chunks and keep it next to your fire. Build a decent-sized fire with dry wood and burn it until there is a bed of coals several inches deep. Cover the bed of coals with a layer of punky wood and you will generate a lot of smoke.

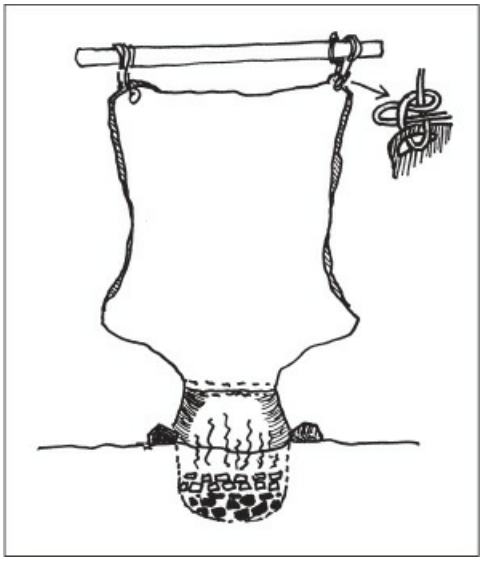


Figure 10-24. Smoking a hide over a pit.

CAUTION: Pay attention and check your fire every few minutes. A minute of inattention could send your hide up in flames if the fire flares up. If the skirt catches on fire, tear it off the hide immediately to save your hide.

If you have many hides to smoke, some people prefer to hang them in a tipi or smokehouse and smoke them all at once, although they will need to stay in the smoke much longer, typically all day.

Dealing with Furs

You too can make a beautiful fur out of a roadkill or hunting trophy, using mostly the same methods as those used for making a buckskin. The main difference is that you don't remove any of the grain and fur, so your braining solution must soak through the entire hide thickness from just the flesh side.

Skinning and Fleshing

After skinning the animal, as described in step one of the previous section, stake the pelt out flat or throw it over a curved scraping beam. Give your pelt a thorough fleshing and scraping to remove all the membrane and flesh from the inside of the hide. Stitch up any holes in the hide. Buff the surface with a pumice, sandpaper, or a rough stone.

Braining

At this point, many people prefer to brain their skins stretched dry in a frame. Soak the inside surface with your brain solution and work it in with your fingers. Apply the brain solution several times, scraping and buffing the hide surface between each application. Drench the skin in brains and wrap it up in a hot, moist towel for several hours, until the pelt is wet and flexible.

Softening

As the pelt dries, stretch it and work it over a cable, rope, or edge, such as the back of a chair. If some areas start to dry too stiffly (except for the edges, which you may want to trim off anyway), reapply the brain solution and continue to stretch and work the pelt until dry. Don't wait until the hide is totally dry before reapplying brains, because a totally dry hide will not soak up the brains as well. Continue rebraining and resoftening until the hide is acceptably soft.

Bark Tanning Leather

> No leather is better than good bark tanned and no other processes require as many months to produce it. **—A. B. Farnham, *Home Tanning and Leather Making Guide***

This is one of the oldest methods for making leather and involves considerable time and effort, but it does yield an exceptional product if done properly. The active process ingredient is tannic acid from tree bark. Some acceptable tree barks are the hemlock, Spanish chestnut, Jack red, and most oaks. The *Home Tanning and Leather Making Guide,* by A. B. Farnham, offers good instructions for both bark-tanning and more chemically oriented tanning processes. There are many different variations on the process, but in the event that you have no other books or tanning chemicals, the following should work in a pinch.

1. Bark for the tanning solution is usually gathered when the sap is running. It is peeled from the tree, stacked to dry, and then stored until ready for use. The bark solution should be started about 20 days prior to use. Place 30 to 40 pounds of finely ground bark in a barrel and pour 20 gallons of boiling water over the bark (use soft water or rain water). Cover, stirring every day or two, until ready for use.
2. Skin and flesh the hide as in the wet-scrape process.
3. Buck as in the wet-scrape process, but leave the skin in the solution for 6 to 10 days until the hair pulls easily from the hide. Keep the barrel covered except for when you stir the solution and plunge the hides to the bottom (3 to 4 times each day).
4. Remove the hair, grain, and flesh as in the wetscrape process (they should come off easily if soaked for several days).
5. Rinse the hide 12 to 48 hours as in the wet-scrape process.
6. Neutralize the caustic bucking solution remaining in the hide, so that it won't neutralize your tanning acids. At one time this was done by fermenting with animal bacteria, but it is accomplished more quickly with an acid solution. To make your neutralizing solution, add a half gallon of vinegar or 3 ounces of USP-grade lactic acid per barrel of clean water. Soak the hide in this solution for 24 hours.
7. As in the wet-scrape process, wring and then squeegee the excess solution out of the hide using your scraper and beam.
8. Strain the tanning solution through a coarse cloth into the tanning barrel. To extract more of the tannin from the ground bark, add another 10 gallons to the moist bark and stir. Strain these 10 gallons through a cloth into the tanning barrel.

9. Add 2 quarts of vinegar to the tanning barrel. Plunge the hide into the tanning solution and work the hide to thoroughly soak in the tanning solution. Hang the hide over a stick inside the tanning barrel to give the solution clear access to all parts of the hide (hides will stay in the tanning solution for a total of 4 to 7 months).
10. As soon as the hide has been placed into the tanning solution, prepare a second barrel of fresh tanning solution just like the first. Ten to 15 days after starting the hide in the first solution, take 5 gallons of used solution from the tanning barrel and replace it with 5 gallons of fresh solution plus 2 quarts of vinegar. Stir the tanning barrel solution.
11. Every 5 days, replace another 5 gallons from the tanning barrel with 5 gallons of fresh solution (add no vinegar) until the fresh barrel of solution is used up.
12. About 35 days after starting the hide in the tanning barrel, weigh out 40 more pounds of ground bark. Place in a tub or barrel and moisten with just enough hot water to saturate the bark.
13. Pull the hide out of the tanning barrel and cut a small piece off to inspect for tanning progress. The cut edge should show a brown streak or line extending in from the surface toward the center.
14. Dump the moistened bark into the tanning barrel, retaining as much as you can of the old tanning solution. Replace the hide in the tanning solution, burying the hide in the bark mixture.
15. Leave the hide in this mixture for 6 more weeks, stirring occasionally.
16. Remove the hide a second time. Remove about half of the tanning solution. Return the hide to the barrel, and fill the remaining space with freshly ground bark.
17. Leave the hide in the tanning barrel for about 2 more months. Stir occasionally, and add more water and bark as necessary to keep the hide covered with solution.
18. When a slice through a thick section of hide shows that the tanning solution has penetrated the full hide thickness, you can remove the hide from the solution. Scrub and rinse thoroughly to remove the acid from the tanning solution and to prevent longterm weakening of the fibers. Thick sole hide may take as long as 7 months soaking in the tanning solution.
19. Slowly dry the leather, and then oil or grease to waterproof. If you wish to soften the leather somewhat, work it as it dries. Softening begins when the hide is partly dry, and continued until completely dry and sufficiently soft.

(Adapted from the *Home Tanning and Leather Making Guide*, by A. B. Farnham 1959.)

PATTERNS AND CUSTOM -TAILORED CLOTHING

You can purchase ready-made patterns from a variety of sources (see the resources section at the end of the chapter) or tailor your own clothing. The easiest way to make your own pattern is to split the seams of an existing article of clothing and use that for your pattern. If you stretched your buckskin on a frame, you should wash and dry it to preshrink the material before cutting your pattern into the hide. At this point, you have invested a lot of time into the process, and your buckskin clothing should last for many years, so go slow and pay attention to detail.

I have designed and made a variety of articles of clothing and gear. It is a better idea to design your own pattern by starting out with a sacrificial material that you don't mind throwing away, rather than to cut and hack at your precious buckskin as you figure out the proper dimensions. Start by cutting your material pieces oversize, and then drape them over your body and pin or tack-stitch together. Mark, trim and retack the pieces back together until you're happy with the way the garment fits. It's much easier to cut off excess material than to piece in patches when you cut too much off. When your tacked-together article of clothing feels, looks, and hangs right, undo the pins or tack stitching, lay it out flat on the buckskin, and mark the outline. After cutting out the buckskin pieces, stitch the pieces together with leather thongs, sinews, or strong thread. Glover's needles are sharp needles with a triangular-shaped tip that are specifically designed for sewing leather. They will pierce through buckskin rather easily, though the use of a thimble or a tough leather finger ring will help push the needle through the buckskin without the head of the needle piercing your skin. Artificial sinew (heavy-duty waxed nylon thread) and a speedy stitching awl (available at leather-work outlets and many backcountry suppliers) work well for stitching together shoes, gear, and rugged clothing.

Sinews

Larger animals, such as deer and elk, contain a supply of sinews, which are large flat tendons that can be split into tough threads for sewing articles of clothing and shoes. Usable sinews are loin sinews located in the back, and leg sinews. Loin sinews are much longer and easier to work with than leg sinews. Loin sinews are a thin, silvery band running from the shoulder to the hip along both sides of the backbone.

After skinning, make a cut about ¼ inch deep along the length of the backbone. Peel the outer layer of fat back to expose the shiny sinew lying along the top of the meat. Using a rounded knife, such as a butter knife, work it under the sinew, and then work it back and forth to separate and lift the sinew from the meat. While still attached to the ends, run the knife back and forth on both sides of the sinew to clean off all the pieces of meat and fat. Cut the ends to remove the sinew from the animal, and then clean it again by scraping before laying flat to dry. Once dry, roll the sinew band lengthwise and twirl it tightly between the fingers and hands for a couple of minutes until it splits into individual threads. When sinew dries, it shrinks, so it is often a good idea to wet the sinew thread before sewing, so that the stitching will tighten as it dries (McPherson 1993, 52).

FOOTWEAR

In pioneering days, a good-fitting pair of shoes was a truly valuable possession. Often, when shoemakers passed through a village, they would make several pairs of shoes for each person who could afford them, as it might be years before they had the opportunity to purchase another pair of good-fitting shoes. Making your own traditional boots is not easy, but sandals and moccasins are easy and rewarding leathercraft projects for the beginner.

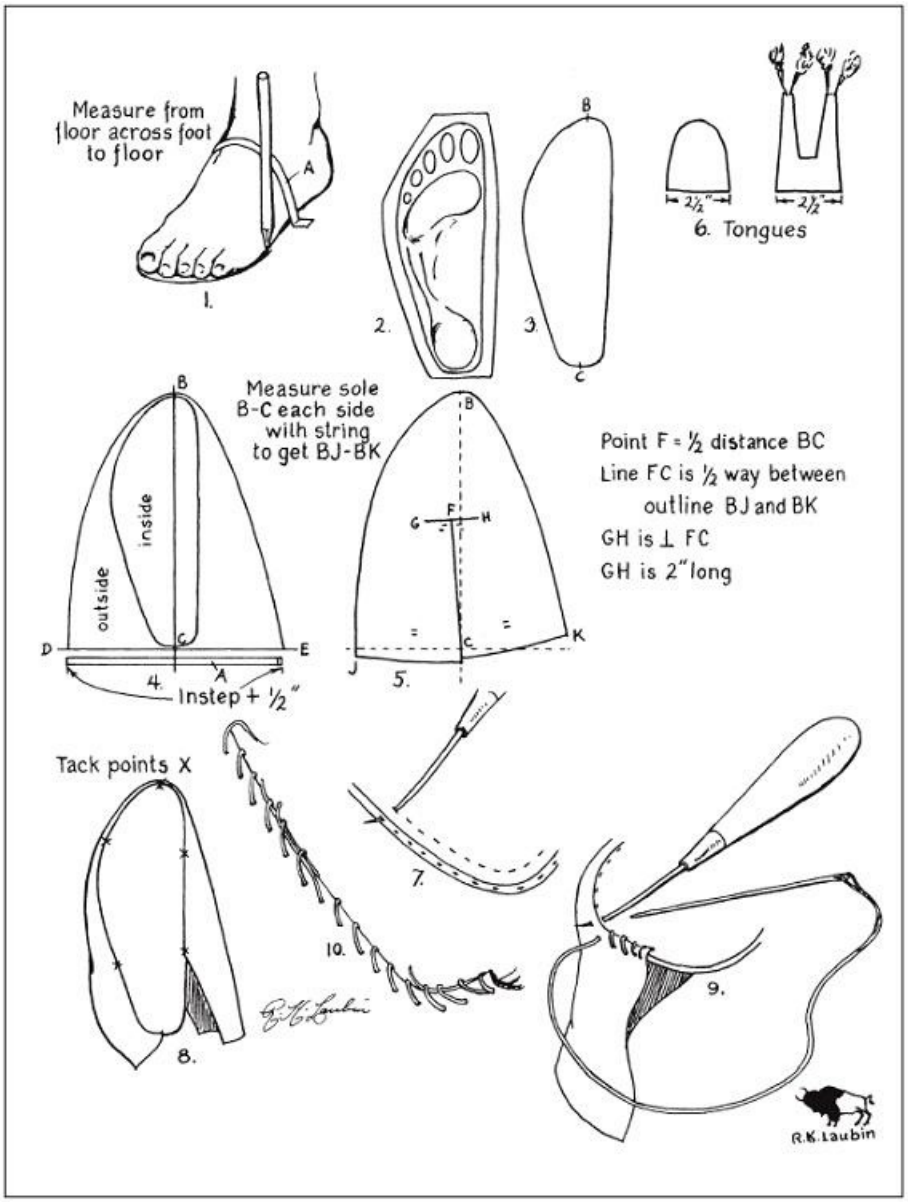


Figure 10-25. Making moccasins. (Illustration courtesy of *The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use*, by Reginald Laubin and Gladys Laubin, University of Oklahoma Press, 1989)

Soles can be attached with stitching, primitive hide glues, more modern glues such as Barge Cement, or nailed in place (cobbling). McNett Corporation makes an excellent urethane shoe-repair cement, called Freesole, which can be used to repair holes in shoes and worn soles or glue new soles in place. Freesole is available through backcountry suppliers and shoe-repair shops. It is reportedly much stronger than Barge Cement and withstands much higher temperatures, but I have not tried it yet for gluing soles in place. See Chapter 14 for instructions on how to make your own glues.

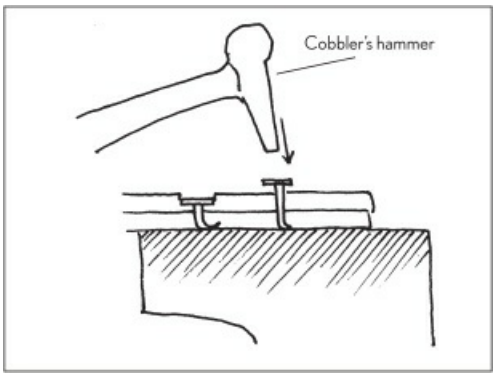


Figure 10-26. Cobbling to attach soles and straps.

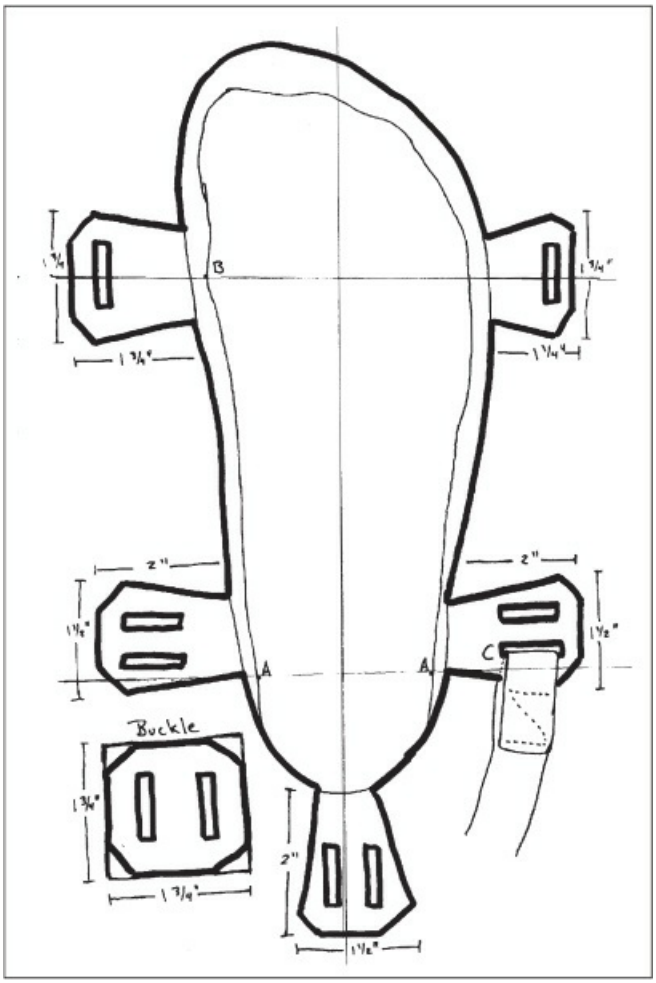


Figure 10-27. Tire sandal pattern. (Illustration from *Participating in Nature*, 1999, by Thomas J. Elpel)

Sinews, heavy waxed nylon thread, or multistrand wire are all good, strong materials for stitching together footwear. If you scavenge wire for thread, make sure that the strands are fine or else constant flexing will cause the metal to fatigue and the wire to break. Shoe soles and straps can be nailed together by a process called “cobbling.” Shoe soles that were attached by simply nailing short nails through the soles into the midsole would soon work loose and fall off.

Traditional cobblers use nails with slender, tapering tips that are nailed through the straps and soles against a metal anvil, bending the nail tips backward so that they form a hook shape. By bending the nail tips, the sole or strap is captured in such a way that the nails can't easily work their way back out.

Cast-off rubber tires make great sandals and soles. Thomas J. Elpel, author of *Participating in Nature*, believes that the best all-around homemade footgear is a tire sandal worn over a moccasin. You can wear holes in a pair of moccasins in less than a day of rough travel, and tire sandals can wear a hole in your feet (blisters) in a few hours. When you wear the two together, you get the comfort of moccasins combined with the durability of tire sandals. Around camp you can wear just the moccasins. When fording rivers, wear just the sandals. Using a band saw, sharp knife, chisel, hacksaw, or coping saw, cut tire sandals and buckles from older-style tires that don't have steel belts.

Use the pattern shown in Figure 10-27 as a rough guide. Start by tracing the outline of your foot on a piece of paper. Add about 3/8 inch to the front and sides, but not the heel area. Make two marks at the centers of your anklebones (A) and a mark at the side of the ball of your foot, directly behind your big toe (B). Draw lines through these points, as shown in the pattern, to help you locate the strap loops. The strap loops are designed for ¾-inch-wide webbing. If you use a different size of strap material, adjust and customize your pattern as necessary to fit your foot. Cut out your pattern as you would a paper doll, and lay it on the tire to mark the outline for cutting the rubber (Elpel 1999, 134).

¾

REFERENCES

Fiber Arts

***ınds On Spinning,* by Lee Raven.** 1987, 120 pp.(paperback), ISBN 978-0934026277. Published by Interweave Press, Inc., 201 East Fourth Street, Loveland, CO 80537. List price $21.95

This is an excellent introduction to spinning. It covers everything from simple hand-spinning with crude handmade instruments (or no instruments) to spinning with traditional spinning wheels. It is well written and illustrated with clear simple drawings and includes instructions for several projects. Active spinners' guild teachers, on opposite sides of the country, have recommended this book as the single best introduction to spinning. The author helped found the Bay Area Spinner's Textile Study Group and is a former editor of *Spin-Off* magazine.

***arning to Weave,* by Deborah Chandler.** 1995, 232 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1883010034. Published by Interweave Press, Inc., 201 East Fourth Street, Loveland, CO 80537. List price $27.95

This is an excellent introduction to the art and craft of weaving on a treadle or tabletop loom. Several weaving guild teachers have recommended it as the single best reference for learning how to weave. It is well illustrated and guides the beginner through a variety of exercises

designed to teach weaving, as if the reader were taking part in a comprehensive class.

***e Weaving, Spinning and Dyeing Book,* by Rachel Brown.** 1983, 430 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0394715957. Published by Alfred A. Knopf, Division of Random House, 201 E. 50th St., New York, NY 10022. List price $45.00

This excellent book illustrates quite a variety of weaving methods and equipment, including simple Navajo and Hopi looms. If you wanted a single comprehensive backup book in case you needed to spin a skein of yarn, weave yourself a bolt of cloth, or perhaps fashion your own simple equipment, this would be an excellent reference. The other recommended books provide clearer learning instructions for their covered topic, but this is a good all-around guide. This book is well illustrated, lists many different sources for materials (though it hasn't been revised since 1983 so it's somewhat out of date), and provides reasonably clear instructions.

***xfire 2: Ghost Stories, Spring Wild Plant Foods, Spinning and Weaving, Midwifing, Burial Customs, Corn Shuckin's, and Wagon Making,* Eliot Wigginton (editor).** 1973, 410 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0385022675. Published by Doubleday division of Bantam Doubleday Publishing Group, Inc., 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $17.95

This is the second in Eliot Wigginton's excellent series of books chronicling the old-timer's ways of doing things in southern Appalachia. It has a decent section on spinning and weaving, including details for how to make your own simple spinning wheel and loom. The title lists some of the other things that are also covered by this book. The section on wagon making provides details and instructions that I have not seen anywhere else, related by an old-timer who actually made wagons for a living when he was a young man.

***Weaver's Garden: Growing Plants for Natural Dyes and Fibers,* by Rita Buchanan.** 1999, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0486407128. Published by Dover Publications, 31 E. 2nd St., Mineola, NY 11501. List price $10.95

This is really a fascinating little book about many useful plants and plant applications. In addition to plants for natural fibers and dyes, it covers plants for soaps, scents, insecticides, and useful textile tools. Buchanan is also the author of *A Dyer's Garden: From Plant to Pot, Growing Dyes for Natural Fibers*.

***nds On Dyeing,* by Betsy Blumenthal.** 1988, 111 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0934026369. Published by Interweave Press, Inc., 201 East Fourth Street, Loveland, CO 80537. List price $19.95

An excellent book for the fiber artist using chemical dyes. Covers batik, dip dyeing, overdyeing, color gradations, fabric painting, and more.

gue Knitting: The Ultimate Knitting Book,* by the editors of *Vogue Knitting Magazine. 2002, 280 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1931543163. Published by SixthSpring Books, SoHo Publishing, 233 Spring Street, New York, NY 10013. List price $38.95

This is the updated version of their classic encyclopedic guide to knitting. It contains over 1,600 full-color illustrations and covers all basic techniques, a stitch dictionary, correction of errors, following patterns, knitting supplies, and so on. To many it is the knitter's bible. Beginners can teach themselves how to knit, while experienced knitters use it as a reference for unfamiliar stitches and techniques.

***itting in Plain English,* by Maggie Righetti.** 2007, 304 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0312353537. Published by St. Martin's Press, 175 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10010. List price $16.95

This is an excellent companion to *Vogue Knitting*. It is more verbal, but with fewer illustrations, though the illustrations have been improved with this new edition. Combining the text and line drawings of this book with the pictures from *Vogue Knitting* can help clarify confusing techniques.

***omespun Handknit: Caps, Socks, Mittens and Gloves,* Linda Ligon (editor).** 1988, 160 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0934026260. Published by Interweave Press, Inc., 201 East Fourth Street, Loveland, CO 80537. List price $21.95

This is a collection of projects from 50 expert knitters and spinners, ranging from simple beginner projects to advanced designs. Filled with instructions, tips, helpful hints, and techniques. If you wish to try your hand at knitting practical items with homespun, get this book.

***itting Without Tears,* by Elizabeth Zimmerman.** 1973, 128 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0684135052. Published by Fireside Books, Simon and Schuster, Rockefeller Center, 1230 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $16.95

Master knitter Elizabeth Zimmerman is credited with developing simple mathematical formulas that opened up a new world of sweater design and flexibility. Her book, *Knitting Without Tears*, is not a standalone beginner's knitting handbook (I would be totally lost if I only had this knitting book), but it is a valuable addition to a knitter's reference library. It contains techniques and directions for knitting garments to fit all sizes. Once you have learned the basics of how to knit from other sources, use this book to help you to knit customized garments that fit well.

***w Complete Guide to Sewing: Step-By-Step Techniques for Making Clothes and Home Accessories,* by Reader's Digest.** 2002, 384 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0762104208. Published by The Reader's Digest Association, Pleasantville, NY 10570-7000. List price $35.00

This encyclopedic volume is a true sewing bible. Copiously illustrated, it covers everything from beginning techniques and learning how to sew to advanced seamstress tips, tricks, and techniques. From bachelors to dress designers and county fair prizewinners, this is a great reference to have on hand.

***ocheting in Plain English: Easy to Follow Lessons in Patterns, Sensible Solutions to Nagging Problems, the Only Book Any Crocheter Will Ever Need,* by Maggie Righetti.** 1988, 244 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0312014124. Published by St. Martin's Press, 175 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10010. List price $16.95

Crocheting resembles knitting, only you use a single needle with a hooked tip rather than two or more smooth-tipped knitting needles. This book offers clear instructions for beginning to advanced crocheting. Very readable and accessible, even if you have never crocheted before.

Magazines

in-Off. Subscription: $24 per year for 4 issues. Interweave Press, Inc., 201 E. Fourth St., Loveland, CO 80537; phone: (800) 767-9638; fax: (970) 667-8317; Web site: www.interweave.com.

A favorite among spinners and knitters, each issue is devoted to the history, techniques, equipment, supplies, and meaning of the spinner's craft.

uttle Spindle and Dyepot. Subscription: This quarterly magazine is included in the $40-per-year annual dues to the Handweavers Guild of America, Two Executive Concourse, Suite 201, 3327 Duluth Highway, Duluth, GA 30096; phone: (770) 495-7702; fax: (770) 495-7703; Web site: www.weavespindye.org.

An award-winning magazine with articles on design, history, wearable art, shows, books, techniques, product and equipment reviews, and reports from museums, guilds, and members all over the world.

e Leather Crafters and Saddlers Journal. Subscription: $32.00 per year for 6 issues. The Leather Crafters and Saddlers Journal, 222 Blackburn St., Rhinelander, WI 54501-2902; phone: (715) 362-5393; Web site: www.leathercraftersjournal.com.

This is the journal to get for serious leatherworking. Each issue is a comprehensive guide to sources for tools, leather, machinery, and patterns. Journal articles include step-by-step instructions and full-size patterns for leather projects.

Skins, Furs, and Leather

***erskins into Buckskins: How to Tan with Natural Materials,* by Matt Richards.** 2004, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0965867245. Published by Backcountry Publishing, 3303 Dick George Rd., Cave Junction, OR 97523. List price $19.95

If you want to make the softest, most beautiful buckskin in the easiest and most reliable way, then you should get this book. This is an excellent guide to the wet-scrape process for making buckskin. It contains step-by-step instructions for brain, soap, or egg tanning, and over 130 photos and illustrations. Includes a resource guide and a nifty section on making your own buckskin clothing. The author has made his living by tanning buckskins and teaching others how to tan, so he definitely knows what he's talking about. Excellent tips and hints for the beginner to expert tanner.

***imitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills,* by John and Geri McPherson.** 1993, 408 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0967877778. Published by Prairie Wolf, P.O. Box 96, Randolph, KS 66554. List price $24.95

When John McPherson started brain tanning buckskins in the late 1970s, he found that none of the available books gave accurate and complete information. Through trial and error, and by making many mistakes, he discovered what was missing from these books, and then wrote his own guide to help others brain tan without having to learn the hard way. McPherson's original booklet, *Brain-Tan Buckskin*, has probably taught more people the art of dry-scrape brain tanning than any other book, and is now Chapter 1 in *Primitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills*. It provides clear, practical, well-illustrated instructions for dry-scrape brain tanning of hides. See Chapter 4 references for a more complete description of this book.

***ome Tanning and Leather Making Guide,* by A.B. Farnham.** 1959, 176 pp. (paperback), ISBN

978-0936622118. Published by Fur-Fish-Game, 2878 E. Main, Columbus, OH 43209-9947 (www.furfishgame.com). List price $4.95

Leather is more abrasion resistant and waterproof than buckskin but not as washable and breathable. This guide is a good start for home-tanning leathers either with chemicals (faster and more toxic) or by traditional bark tanning.

***ather: Preparation and Tanning by Traditional Methods,* by Lotta Rahme.** 1996, 112 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1887719001. Published by Caber Press, 7549 North Fenwick, Portland, OR 97217. Lists for $24.95.

The author of this book is a well-versed tanner who has studied traditional tanning methods with Native Americans in northern Canada and the Sami (Laplanders) in northern Sweden. Lotta has combined her extensive tanning experience with research into the history and science of these methods. She includes many details, recipes, tools, and methods for traditional tanning, most of which she has used, or at least tried, herself. Not the best how-to book for a beginner, but combined with a book such as *Deerskins into Buckskins,* you will probably do fine. There is more information in this book on a diverse selection of primitive tanning methods than in any other book I know.

***e Leatherworking Handbook: A Practical Illustrated Sourcebook of Techniques and Projects,* by Valerie Michael.** 1995, 128 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1844034741. Published by Cassell PLC, Wellington House, 125 Strand, Loon WC2 0BB, England. List price $19.95

This is a clear, informative, well-illustrated book on basic leatherworking techniques. An excellent practical guide, with tips on tools, techniques, and setting up a simple home workshop for leatherworking, it includes several interesting and beautiful starter projects.

***ddlemaking: Construction and Repair Techniques,* by Dusty Johnson.** 2005, 136 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0963916426. Published by Saddleman Press, P.O. Box 909, Loveland, CO 80539. List price $19.95

If you think you may want (or need) to make or repair a saddle someday, this book is for you. If you really want to go all out, you can also purchase the three-volume *Stohlman Encyclopedia of Saddle Making* for $59.95 per volume.

***ıcyclopedia of Rawhide and Leather Braiding,* by Bruce Grant.** 1972, 556 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0870331619. Published by Cornell Maritime Press, P.O. Box 456, Centreville, MD 21617-0456. List price $29.95

A voluminous work dedicated to illustrating and documenting the many types of fancy horse tack and leatherwork that few remaining craftsman remember how to make.

***ow to Make Cowboy Horse Gear,* by Bruce Grant.** 1956, 193 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0870330346. Published by Cornell Maritime Press, P.O. Box 456, Centreville, MD 21617-0456. List price $8.95

Instructions for crafting saddles, bridles, reins, and quirts. Includes a section on how to make a western saddle by Lee M. Rice. Much of the material in this book is covered by Grant's larger *Encyclopedia of Rawhide and Leather Braiding.*

RESOURCES

Fiber Arts

ındweavers Guild of America, Inc., Two Executive Concourse, Suite 201, 3327 Duluth Highway, Duluth, GA 30096; phone: (770) 495-7702; fax: (770) 495-7703; Web site: www.weavespindye.org.

If the fiber arts are what turns your spindle, you might want to join the Handweavers Guild of America (HGA). HGA is a nonprofit, international membership organization of weavers, spinners, dyers, basket makers, bead weavers, felters, and fiber artists in the related crafts. Membership in HGA includes a subscription to their award-winning quarterly magazine, *Shuttle Spindle and Dyepot*, featuring a broad spectrum of articles about the fiber arts, including design, history, shows, education, products, books, textile news, and updates about HGA programs.

terweave Press, Inc., 201 E. Fourth St., Loveland, CO 80537; phone: (800) 272-2139; fax: (970) 667-8317; Web site: www.interweave.com.

Interweave Press publishes seven magazines and over a hundred high-quality books about things created, grown, or nourished by hand, including fiber, thread, crafts, beads, herbs, natural health, gardening, and cooking. One of their magazines, *Spin-Off*, is a favorite among spinners and knitters. Their Web site is an online source for fiber craft information.

ırn Barn, 930 Massachusetts, Lawrence, KS 66044; phone: (800) 468-0035; fax: (785) 842-0794; Web site: www.yarnbarn-ks.com.

The Yarn Barn offers a wide selection of supplies for knitting, weaving, spinning, and other textile crafts, including looms, spinning wheels, and books. Their employees are knitters, weavers, or spinners, so they can answer your questions and provide good advice.

oodland Woolworks, 100 E Washington St., P.O. Box 850, Carlton, OR 97111; phone: (800) 547 3725; fax: (503) 852 6685; Web site: www.woolworks.com.

An excellent source for fibers at reasonable prices, in addition to spinning wheels, books, and supplies.

Skins and Furs

'aintan.com, 3303 Dick George Rd., Cave Junction, OR 97523; phone: (541) 592-3778; fax: (541) 592-3793; Web site: www.braintan.com.

A great source for books, supplies, buckskins, and general information on making your own buckskin, furs, and leather. This company stocks hard-to-find tools and books. Check out their Web site for an extensive selection of interesting how-to articles and book reviews written by backwoods mountain residents who know their subjects well.

ındy Leather Factory, 3847 East Loop 820 South, Ft. Worth, TX 76119; phone: (800) 433-3201; fax: (817) 496-9806; Web site: www.tandyleathrefactory.com.

This is an excellent source for all your leather-working needs. Tandy carries a wide selection

of leathers, hand tools, books, hardware, dyes, and so on. This company offers the full line of Stohlman's encyclopedic books on the art of leather craft, all at 20 percent off the listed retail prices.

ınson's Leather, 6900 Andressen Road, Sheridan, CA 95681; phone: (530) 633-0844; fax: (530) 633-0193; Web site: www.hansons.net.

When it comes to leather and old-fashioned western clothing, Hanson's does it all. This shop sells a wide variety of leather-working tools, patterns, and supplies. Hanson's carries an excellent selection of books on leather working, traditional crafts, and the old west. They make a line of traditional clothing and have supplied old-west clothing and Native American dress for Hollywood movies.

ıgle's View Publishing and Eagle Feather Trading Post, 168 West 12th St., Ogden, UT 84404; phone: (801) 393-3991; fax: (801) 745-0903; Web site: www.eaglefeathertrading.com.

Eagle's View publishes authentic patterns for pre1800 clothing that are great for homemade buckskins. They also sell books on Native American arts and crafts, beads, and a variety of Native American jewelry, clothing, crafts, and so on.

ıckaroo Bobbins, P.O. Box 1168, Chino Valley, AZ 86323-1168; phone: (928) 636-1885; fax: (520) 636-8134; Web site: www.buckaroobobbins.com.

Buckaroo sells authentic vintage western clothing patterns, related books, and sewing accessories such as beads and buckles.

11

Energy, Heat, and Power

> Humankind, at the end of "The Century of Oil," teeters on the brink of the third millennium. On one side of our perch stretches bountiful opportunity, and an abundant, fulfilling future based upon the principles of sustainable living. If we look closely here, we see that the stage is set for a rapid conversion from a fossil fuel-based economy to a lifestyle based on renewable energy. On the other side, looms the destruction of *Homo sapiens'* natural habitat, obstructionist government policies, and big business threatening to engulf us in a deathly haze of greenhouse gases. Our generation is the first in the history of our species to be offered the opportunity for a conscious choice: exploitation or stewardship; devastation or sustainability. Will we have the foresight to take heed of our natural limits, or continue down the slippery slope of unfettered consumption until it is too late to correct our course? Our fate is in our own hands.
>
> **—John Schaeffer, founder and CEO of Real Goods, from the introduction to the 10th edition of *Solar Living Sourcebook***

Essentially, except for geothermal and nuclear power, all other sources of power and energy on planet Earth come from the sun. It is the sun that grows the plants we burn for fuel and eat for food. It is commonly believed that decayed vegetation from giant prehistoric forests formed the subterranean beds of coal, gas, and oil that have fueled the unprecedented growth of the Industrial Revolution and modern society. When we burn these fuels, we are burning the stored energy of millions of years of ancient sunlight. When these fuels are gone, it will take millions more years for sunlight and plant growth to recreate them. On the other hand, renewable energy (RE) sources are renewed on a daily basis by the powers of the sun or the heat stored within the Earth. The great wind and ocean currents swirling around our planet are driven by thermal differences powered by the sun. Every day, the sun evaporates water from the oceans and continents, forming clouds and bringing the lifeblood of rain to the soil and water to the rivers and lakes. For centuries, wind and waterpower have been harnessed by humankind as clean, natural sources of power. Our ancestors used water wheels to power their lumber and grain mills. Hundreds of years ago, the Dutch people were known for their use of windmills to pump water.

Wood has been a valuable source of heat and energy for countless millennia, although declining forests and expanding populations clearly indicate that most of the world can no longer consume wood at anywhere near the current rates without devastating what remains of the last half of the world's forests. Coal has been used for hundreds of years, but it was not until the nineteenth century that efficient machinery was developed to extract significant amounts from the earth. Experts estimate that the world has somewhere around 250 years of coal reserves left in the ground, but there are major environmental drawbacks to mining and burning coal, and the easiest-to-mine, cleanest-burning coal deposits are already gone from many parts of the world. In many cities in China, where coal is the primary fuel both for industry and for generating

electricity, the air is thick with smoke that burns the eyes and chokes the lungs, making the sky a muddy gray color on days that should be a clear blue.

As detailed in Chapter 2, humankind has now consumed roughly half of the world's oil reserves, including projections for new discoveries. Even though we have been using petroleum since 1850, half of the oil consumed thus far has been since 1970, just a few decades ago. After peaking in the mid-1960s, discoveries of new oil fields have dropped to the point where we are now consuming oil six times as fast as we are discovering new reserves (Campbell 1996, 8). As we begin to draw on the second half of the world's oil reserves, we will see increasing amounts of energy required to extract oil from deposits that are deeper in the ground or harder to refine. At a given depth, it takes as much energy to extract oil as one gets from burning the oil. As an oil-hungry world competes for dwindling reserves, there will be increasing financial costs and environmental tolls. Now that we are seeing both a decline in world oil reserves and the beginning of dramatic climactic changes resulting from the burning of fossil fuels, it is becoming clear that we must shift our global energy economy away from burning hydrocarbons.

SHIFTING TO RENEWABLE ENERGY (RE)

> Stabilizing earth's climate now depends on reducing carbon emissions by shifting from fossil fuels to a solar/hydrogen economy. Solar is here defined broadly, including not only direct sunlight but also indirect forms of solar energy—wind power, hydropower, and biological sources such as wood. Fortunately, the technologies for tapping this enormous source of energy already exist. We can now see electricity generated from wind being used to electrolyze water and to produce hydrogen. Hydrogen then becomes the basic fuel for the new economy, relying initially on the distribution and storage facilities of the natural gas industry. Put simply, the principles of ecological sustainability now require a shift from a carbon-based to a hydrogen-based energy economy. **—Lester R. Brown, *State of the World 2000***

Making the shift from burning nonrenewable fossil fuels, and our last remaining forests, to harnessing renewable sources can be an exciting and prosperous venture for humankind. The windpower industry is growing by leaps and bounds. For the past decade, worldwide wind-energy capacity has increased rapidly at growth rates ranging from 20 to 30 percent per year and increased by a whopping 32 percent in 2006 (Worldwatch Institute *Vital Signs 2007–2008*, 36). Sales of solar cells grew at an average annual rate of 16 percent during most of the 1990s, but jumped to 41 percent in 2006. Since the year 2000, annual global production of PV cells has increased sixfold (Worldwatch Institute *Vital Signs 2007–2008*, 38). Increasing awareness of global warming from burning fossil fuels coupled with decreasing RE costs have contributed to the strong growth in the use of renewable energy. It will take a more explosive growth rate, similar to the recent worldwide explosion in Internet use, to radically reduce our dependence on fossil fuels and shift toward true sustainability. In spite of years of record growth, wind and solar power only accounted for less than 1 percent of the world's total energy consumption in 1999.

No one needs to suffer by changing to RE. My sister and her husband have lived comfortably off the grid for many years. She has written the following description of their RE lifestyle.

I live in a cabin in the Ponderosa Pine forest in the Blue Mountains. Our alpine valley holds the record for being the coldest place in Oregon. When my husband started building our house in 1979, the nearest power line ended 2 miles down the road. After a year of living with kerosene lamps, he bought one solar panel and a 12-volt light, and hooked them up to an old auto battery. He never had to fill a lamp by flashlight again.

Our house was one of the first solar-powered homes built in Oregon. Now we have 32 solar electric panels on our roof, which produce all the electricity we use. We still haven't bothered with a backup generator, mostly because we don't like the noisy smelly things. The power produced by the panels, which is stored in batteries at 24 volts, is converted to 110 volts AC by an inverter. The system runs our deepwell pump, which irrigates a large garden where we grow all our vegetables. It also runs a refrigerator and a small chest freezer where we store perishable produce from the garden. We have a clothes washer, computer, stereo, TV, VCR, and power tools just like most American families.

We don't have to do without anything we really want. We enjoy the benefits of the electronic age. What we do differently is to look at power usage ratings when we buy any new item that uses electricity. We used to depend on the information plate on the back of appliances, but now we have a new meter that makes power measurement a snap. We just plug it in, plug the appliance into it, and read the usage off the display. When you live with a limited supply of something like electricity, knowledge is power.

As I look at my daily calendar, I also plan my day's power usage. If I look at the sky and see the sun, I observe the battery meter to check how close we are to fully charged, and I plan to do laundry or vacuum the house. I do my writing on a laptop computer because it takes such small sips of power that its usage is never an issue. When winter weather is howling outside, I like to cozy up to the computer with a cup of tea and write. It doesn't matter how dark the weather is when I am using only 18 watts.

I don't worry about my computer crashing from a power glitch, because my whole house is running on an uninterruptible power supply! When the wind blows and the power flickers and goes out in our valley, my husband Lance and I don't even notice. Essentially, we own our own power company, which means we are responsible for solving any problems with the system. It's up to us to make sure everything works the way we need it to.

After a long day's work, we turn out our compact fluorescent lights and slip outside for a starlit soak in our wood-fired hot tub. As we listen to the sandhill cranes chirping along the river meadows, and their voices come clearly through the silence, I have a hard time believing that we are suffering! **—Jennifer Barker, Eastern Oregon Renewable Energies Association**

Why Renewable Energy?

- **Economics.** If you live more than a third of a mile from your nearest power line, it may be cheaper to buy your own RE system than to hook into the grid. In addition, you will have no electricity bills. When you buy a piece of land that does not have an easy grid connection, you may save a huge chunk of money on a beautiful piece of property that will cover the extra cost of adding an RE system.
- **Independence.** Having your own renewable energy system makes you independent from large corporate power generation and distribution systems. You are your own uninterruptible power supply. Acts of god, nature, and terrorists will probably not affect your source of power while disrupting the lives of those who are hooked to the grid. Some people who are hooked up to the grid add an RE system to supply part of their home's energy needs. They feel good about reducing their environmental impact and enjoy the security of having a backup power system in their home in the event of grid power outages.
- **Inflation hedge.** Installing an RE system now can provide you with insurance against escalating energy costs. You may be more comfortable paying for planned RE system costs than being stuck with potential energy crisis cost escalations as global energy sources become less stable.
- **The environment.** We live in a country that uses far more than its share of the world's resources. With less than 5 percent of the world's population, the United States accounts for 28 percent of the world's oil consumption. As the world seeks to "catch up with the Joneses" (the United States), it has become increasingly clear that the planet cannot possibly support U.S. lifestyles everywhere. A personal switch to renewable energy is one way of saying that we care about the environment and our children's future. When we consider the astronomical health and environmental costs from acid rain and global warming caused by burning fossil fuels, it is clear that we are not paying for the full cost of energy with our utility bill. If we were to factor in the hidden costs, I believe that RE would be immediately cost effective in most situations.

Energy Conservation, "Negawatts," and RE

> It is far less expensive and environmentally more responsible to generate negawatts than megawatts. **—Amory Lovins, Rocky Mountain Institute**

Amory Lovins, a well-known ecologist and cofounder of the Rocky Mountain Institute (RMI), first coined the term "negawatts" to describe one effect of energy conservation. He calculated that it actually costs less to fund energy conserving technologies and practices than to build new power plants to generate more power for increasing populations and industrial needs. This same philosophy applies equally well to small-scale RE systems as to large-scale power producers.

Photovoltaics (solar cells) are the backbone of most small-scale RE systems, but they are not cheap. A single 200-watt solar panel, costing about $1,100 in the year 2008, provides only enough power from five equivalent hours of sun (average available standardized hours of sunshine for a typical winter day in Phoenix, Arizona) to run two 75-watt bulbs for about 6½ hours. Yet, if you replace four 75-watt incandescent bulbs with compact fluorescent lamps (CFL) that produce equivalent lighting and last more than 10 times as long, you will save over 200 watts of power, and will have spent only about $8 up front—only a tiny fraction of the cost for the solar panel. Each 100-watt incandescent bulb that is replaced by a CFL will save you $76 in electric power costs, plus 980 pounds of CO_2 over the life of the lamp, and it will save the expense and hassle of replacing 13 incandescent bulbs (Stoyke 2007, 57). *The Carbon Buster's Home Energy Handbook* by Godo Stoyke is an excellent book about energy conservation within the home, outlining numerous cost-effective energy solutions. I highly recommend that you pick up a copy to help you plan your new home or improve the energy consumption of your existing home (see references).

> By replacing a single 75-watt incandescent light bulb with an 18-watt compact fluorescent bulb, you will save yourself about $37.06 in combined utility and bulb costs, over the lifetime of one fluorescent bulb. These energy efficient bulbs produce the same quantity and quality of light as a regular 75-watt bulb and last about 13 times as long. Over the life of one compact fluorescent, you will save yourself the hassle of buying and replacing 13 incandescent bulbs. The energy savings from a single bulb will accomplish one of the following:
>
> Spare the earth more than 1,500 pounds of carbon dioxide and about 20 pounds of sulfur dioxide spewing from the stack of a coal-fired power plant.
>
> Avoid the production in a nuclear plant of half a curie of high-level radioactive waste (which is a lot) and two-fifths of a ton of TNTequivalent of plutonium.
>
> Keep an oil-fired power plant from burning 1.25 barrels of oil—enough to run a family car for a thousand miles or to run Honda's new hybrid car from Los Angeles to New York and on to Miami before it needed more gas. **—Adapted from *Homemade Money* by Richard Heede and the staff of Rocky Mountain Institute**

RE SYSTEMS

Easy-to-use and highly efficient "power centers" are finally bringing RE into mainstream America. These power centers are the heart of modern RE systems. They are smart systems that connect and seamlessly integrate the various components of modern renewable energy systems to create your own independent home power supply that keeps you powered with a little attention, maintenance, and energy usage planning.

The modern RE system typically consists of a source of direct current (DC) energy, such as a solar panel and/or wind turbine, a battery system for storing DC energy, an optional backup generator, and a device known as an "inverter" for converting battery power into standard

household alternating current for powering common appliances. Cars and RVs typically operate on 12 volts DC, but most common household appliances run on 110 to 120 VAC (volts alternating current). High-power-consuming electric household appliances, such as electric dryers, stoves, and baseboard heaters, usually require 220 to 240 VAC and are best replaced with nonelectric appliances if you are not hooked to the grid. If you are confused by the use of these electrical terms, skip ahead to the "Energy, Power, and Electricity Primer" at the end of this chapter.

Electrically speaking, it is a simple thing to convert alternating current to direct current (wall chargers for modern phones do this all the time), but it is a far more complicated process to convert direct current to alternating current. Twenty-five years ago, most RE-powered, off-grid households ran strictly on 12 volts DC (direct current), drawing from a limited selection of rather expensive 12 volts DC RV-type appliances. Trace Engineering really helped to revolutionize the industry when they developed the first efficient and highly reliable solid-state inverters to convert DC electrical power from batteries, solar panels, wind turbines, and so on, into 110 and 220 VAC. Using inverters, RE-powered homes can be built with standard wiring that supports regular power tools and appliances such as TVs, washing machines, refrigerators, dishwashers, and stereos.

Modern large inverters usually combine several functions into a single box, turning the inverter into a true power center. Multifunction inverters may include the following facilities:

- Multistage battery charging for extended battery life.
- Automatic control of a backup generator to cover Short-term high power demands or kick in when batteries are low.
- Low-battery cutout to prevent costly damage to your battery storage system caused by discharging your batteries too low.
- Automatic integration of various RE sources such as wind turbines, photovoltaics (solar panels), and micro-hydro turbines.
- Utility Interactive Mode, which allows grid-tied systems to run your utility meter backwards (where allowed by law) when your system is producing more energy than the batteries can store, or allows your system to use the grid as its battery backup—pumping excess power into the grid when generating capacity is higher than loads, while drawing power from the grid when demand is higher than generating capacity. Batteries are the weak link in RE systems because they have high initial cost, significant maintenance, and shorter life spans than the rest of RE system components, so grid-tied RE systems can reduce or eliminate the need for batteries. (Some batteries or a generator are needed if you wish to maintain backup power protection.)

  WARNING: Inverters are usually specified as "square wave," "modified sine wave," or "full sine wave" inverters. These terms describe the shape of the "wave" of alternating current that the inverter makes out of the input direct current. Most motors and appliances are designed to run on standard household current, which is full sine wave alternating current.Square wave inverters are lowest in cost, but will only run certain types of electronic equipment. Light bulbs, simple heating elements, and some small appliance motors run well using square wave inverters. Modified sine wave inverters

are significantly more expensive and will run most appliances, but even modified sine wave inverters can harm larger motors, such as those on washing machines, and some electronic equipment, such as computers and quality stereos. Richard Perez, editor of *Home Power Magazine*, used to post a rather lengthy list of items that had been reported as ruined by modified sine wave inverters. For household usage, I suggest you play it safe by spending more and getting yourself a full sine wave inverter.

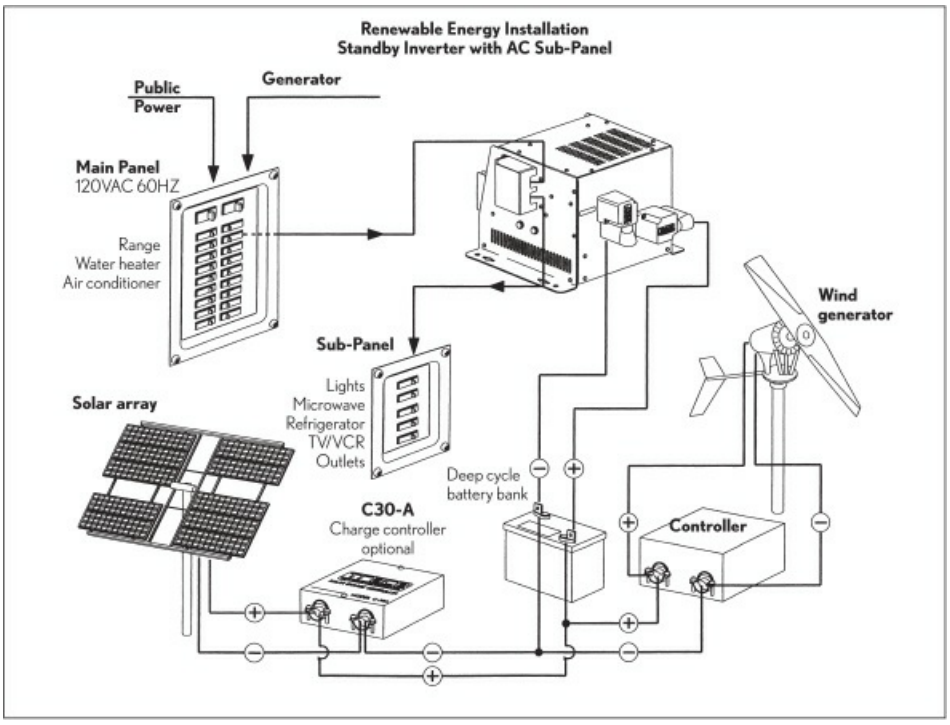


Figure 11-1. Typical renewable energy system with a multifunction inverter. (Illustration courtesy of Trace Engineering)

Net Metering

"Net metering" essentially means that you can use the grid as a battery source for grid-connected systems by running your meter backwards when your system is producing more energy than you need, offsetting your meter bill for those times when you draw power from the grid. Since 1978, a federal law known as PURPA (Public Utilities Regulatory Policies Act) has required all publicly owned electric utilities to buy power produced by their customers. However, PURPA requires the utilities to pay only the "wholesale avoided cost," or in plain terms the rate that they pay to other utilities when they buy power. Not surprisingly, this rate is far lower than the retail rate that normal customers (you and I) are asked to pay. In some cases, the utilities pay only about 25 percent of what they charge their customers.

Recently, many states have enacted "net metering laws." This means that the utility is required to offset the customer's bill at the full retail rate for power fed back to the utility. While all state

programs accept solar power, many also accept wind power and other renewable energies. As of December 2007, 42 states plus the District of Columbia allow some form of net metering. In general, you must use approved inverters that produce AC power synchronized with your grid hookup, your system must include appropriate electrical disconnects, and a local building inspector must approve the system. Conditions vary from state to state, so you should check with your local RE dealer to see what regulations apply in your area.

Utility rebates and tax credits are also available in several states. You could save a hefty chunk of money from the cost of your new RE system through a variety of rebates. Often there are substantial differences between the tax credit limit for commercial installations versus residential systems, so if you have a business that qualifies your system for the commercial rebates, your savings could be quite substantial. Check with your local RE dealer to determine the conditions that apply in your area.

AC Versus DC

Small simple systems, such as most dedicated water-pumping stations and small cabin installations, are usually best left as DC-only systems that skip the extra cost and efficiency losses of an inverter. Even with inverter systems, some circuits may be best left as DC. For example, high-efficiency electrical refrigerators that run on AC consume about twice as much power as their DC versions, and DC solar-powered submersible pumps consume less than half as much power as standard AC submersible pumps.

Alternatives for High-Energy-Consuming Appliances

Unless you have a steeply falling creek to drive a minihydro system or steady high winds to run a good-sized wind turbine, your RE system will get extremely expensive if you try to run high-load electrical appliances for more than short periods of time strictly with RE. The highest energy loads in the typical U.S. household are for heating and cooling. Unless you have a mini-hydro system with a high-powered output, try to use natural gas, wood, propane, or direct solar heating to supply your major power requirements. Items like water heaters, clothes dryers, stoves, and refrigerators consume large amounts of power and can run very efficiently on natural gas or propane, provided you have access to these items at your location. The simplest and cheapest solar appliance that money can buy is a clothesline.

If you have a fair amount of sunshine, solar hot water and space heating can be immediately cost effective. Solar panels can directly heat either water or air at far greater efficiencies and for far less initial cost than trying to convert sunlight into electricity and then convert that electricity into heat. For more information on solar hot water and space heating, see later sections in this chapter.

Two things count most when considering the loads from different appliances. The first is the power that an appliance needs to run. Power is energy per time unit and is usually measured in

watts (see the "Energy, Power, and Electricity Primer" at the end of this chapter for more information) for electrical appliances and BTUs (British thermal units) for gas appliances. The total number of watts consumed at a given moment gives you an idea of your maximum peak load, which helps you decide how big your wires should be and the size of the inverter or backup generator you need. Electrical appliances usually have a label that tells you how much power (watts) they draw, but you may wish to purchase a small plug-in meter that connects between an appliance and an outlet to give you a more accurate power consumption reading.

The second item of major importance is how much time an appliance is used every day. The total energy consumed on a daily basis by all of your appliances combined helps you to decide how many solar panels, wind generators, storage batteries, and so on you will need. Total daily energy consumption for each appliance is the power (watts) multiplied by the time that the appliance is expected to be on (number of hours). A toaster, for example, consumes a lot of power (around 1,500 watts), but for only a few minutes a day. Thus, a toaster requires a fair-sized inverter, but only a fraction of a solar panel because the total energy for 6 minutes of run time is only 150 watt-hours (1/10 hour times 1,500 watts). Unless you have a very large (and expensive) RE system, you may need to schedule your power usage so that several major appliances are not operating at the same time, and you may need to minimize usage when the batteries are low or during cloudy periods. The use of a generator backup can provide an extra boost during cloudy weather or when guests arrive, to help keep your RE system at a reasonable size and cost rather than sizing it to provide 100 percent of your power in all situations.

After space and water heating (and sometimes air conditioning), the refrigerator is usually the largest consumer of household energy. In 1993, federal appliance efficiency standards mandated greatly improved refrigerator efficiencies, so it makes the best energy sense to junk your older refrigerator rather than leave it running in the garage. Typical 1970s to mid 1980s household 120-VAC refrigerators consume from 2,500 to 6,000 watt-hours per day, while refrigerators that meet the 1993 standards average about 1,900 watt hours per day and ones meeting the proposed 2001 standard are about 35 percent better. Ultra-efficient refrigerators, such as the Sun Frost 16-cubic-foot model, consume only about 540 watthours per day, but they are expensive and rather small. Recently, mainstream manufacturers have come out with super-efficient refrigerators that use a bit more power than the Sunfrost models, but offer much more internal volume and cost about half the price of the Sunfrost unit.

The *Carbon Buster's Home Energy Handbook* has a good comparison of many models of energy-efficient appliances, including refrigerators.

Solar cells are now available for about $5 per watt, but figure that the cost for the solar panels is only part of the cost for a complete photovoltaic RE system. With three standard hours of sun (typical average January sun in middle America, equal to three noontime hours of unobstructed sun at the equator), the year 2000 cost for a midrange, grid-intertied, photovoltaic-based RE system (no storage batteries, but including panels, inverter, etc.) is roughly $9 per watt. At this rate, it would cost a whopping $10,500 for the system to run just one older 3,500-watt-hour refrigerator, but only $1,620 to run a 540-watt-hour, ultra-efficient refrigerator. Such calculations sure drive home the importance of energy conservation when building an RE system to power your home. Propane-operated refrigerators, 12-volt DC appliances, super-efficient appliances, and design assistance are available from most RE dealers.

Large compressor-style air conditioners consume too much power to run off of anything but

extremely large RE systems, a good-sized backup generator, or a grid hookup. If your climate is typically below 70 percent relative humidity during hot weather, evaporative coolers can be a good match for an RE system. Given low humidity, they can effectively utilize the cooling power of evaporating water to air condition your house for a fraction of the power consumed by compressor-based systems.

> **CAUTION: Swamp coolers can be dangerous mold factories. If you use a swamp cooler, make sure that you inspect and clean its tank and filters regularly, and chemically treat/cleanse to prevent the growth of toxic mold that could contaminate your entire home.**

Proper home design and insulation can work together to passively cool homes in hot and humid climates so they do not need any air conditioning. RMI's *Green Developments* CD-ROM illustrates examples of successful passive cooling design in a large Taiwan home that needs no air conditioning in spite of high humidity and air temperatures, plus an air conditionerfree home in Davis, California, that neighbors escaped to when their own air conditioners failed to keep up with a 104ºF+ heat wave.

Photovoltaics Versus Wind Versus Micro-Hydro

No single RE source works best all the time in all situations. Hybrid systems often yield the best year-round performance. Wind and micro-hydro usually perform well during stormy periods, while photovoltaics work best in dry summer conditions with long sunny days. Photovoltaics have the benefit of no moving parts, no maintenance, high reliability, and a long life averaging about 25 years or more for solar panels. The current (year 2008) solar panel cost of about $5 per watt (remember that batteries and inverters will add significantly to this cost) has been steadily dropping as sales of solar cells have doubled every few years. The recent invention of solar roofing panels and the introduction of major PV incentives in several countries are expected to continue to boost sales and significantly reduce prices over the next decade.

Worldwide wind-energy sales have increased at a faster rate than any other source of power, and for good reason. If your area is subject to consistently windy conditions, you can generate electricity with much less initial investment than for photovoltaics. At roughly $1.50 per watt, a small wind generator can produce far more power for far less money than the equivalent wattage of solar panels, when you consider that a wind generator operates day and night. The downside to wind generators is their need for maintenance (they do have moving parts), mounting expenses (they are usually mounted on towers to catch the best wind), some give off annoying noise in high winds, and they have little or no output in low winds. Don't be seduced by a wind turbine's high wattage rating if you really don't have enough local wind to make it worthwhile. In general, if your area does not have enough wind to be annoyingly windy fairly often, it is probably not worthwhile to install a wind system for your home. See the "Wind Power" section later in this chapter for more details.

Micro-hydropower is the way to go if you have the right conditions for it. Hydropower requires two things: first, you must have a good source of running water, and second, that water should drop from a significant vertical height. Micro-hydro has the advantage of running 24

hours a day, 7 days a week, as long as your water supply holds out. Given a water source with adequate flow and head, micro-hydro will generate far more power than a photovoltaic system of equal cost. The downside is regular maintenance to clear debris from intake screens, service for generator brushes and bearings, and the need for a water source with adequate flow and head. See the "Micro-Hydropower" section later in this chapter for more details.

Batteries

Nearly all RE systems rely on a sizable bank of heavyduty batteries to store energy both for when the system is not producing much energy and to cover short-term high capacity loads that draw more power than the system can instantly generate. A battery bank is often the weak link in an RE system, requiring regular maintenance. Improper charging and repeated deep discharging will rapidly destroy a hefty investment in batteries. Recent global price increases in the cost of lead have resulted in huge price escalations for industrial quality lead-acid storage batteries. Nanotechnologies are showing great promise for bringing the cost of energy storage way down, but products are not yet commercially viable in this market.

Battery Pointers

- **Battery type.** Use heavy-duty, "deep cycle," lead antimony batteries. Six-volt electric vehicle-type batteries, such as those made by Trojan, U.S. Battery, and Surrette, are good for small- to midsize RE systems. They have thick lead plates that hold up well to repeated charging. For medium- to large-sized PV systems, super-heavyduty 2-volt industrial batteries, such as those made by IBE, are recommended.

  CAUTION: Do not use regular automotive batteries unless you are hooked into the grid and draw on the batteries only for occasional backup during power outages. Automotive batteries are not meant to regularly discharge to below 80 percent of their capacity and will quickly wear out under typical RE system cycling.
- **Venting.** Place the battery bank in a well-vented, preferably heated area. Charging batteries can release hydrogen gas. A spark from a light switch or motor could cause an explosion if the battery area is not properly vented.
- **Temperature.** Cold batteries have significantly reduced capacity (roughly 50 percent at 0°F) and hot batteries have significantly reduced life. Optimum battery storage temperatures range from 55°F to 80°F. If your batteries are stored in an unheated area, take reduced capacity into consideration when sizing your battery bank.
- **Battery bank.** Batteries should be on shelves with easy access for cleaning and maintenance. On most batteries, the charging cycle will cause some battery acid to collect on the top of the battery, where it will lead to corrosion of the contacts. Keep battery terminals and jumpers clean and greased or coated with special terminal coatings to prevent corrosion. Bad connections can ruin your batteries in a short period of time.
- **Discharge cycle.** Even deep-cycle batteries will not last long if repeatedly discharged below 50 percent capacity. Try to keep normal daily cycling above 80 percent charge and

multiday cloudy cycles above 50 percent charge, with only occasional discharge to 20 percent of capacity. Multifunction inverters will often have a battery cutoff safety feature that prevents discharging batteries below 20 percent of capacity.

- **Charging.** Use a multistage battery charger that "floats" fully charged batteries at a lower voltage than the primary charging voltage to prevent excessive gasing and shortened battery life. Temperature compensation is a valuable charger feature that must be included with your charge controller if batteries are to be stored in an unheated area. Battery capacity and optimum charging currents are affected by temperature. Sophisticated charge controllers offer both temperature compensation and multistage battery charging.
- **Protecting your investment.** A considerable chunk of your RE system cost is for batteries. Proper charging, maintaining to ensure proper fluid levels, mostly shallow cycle discharging, and never fully discharging your batteries will help to ensure long battery life.
- **Backup generator.** For midrange and large RE systems, a backup generator probably costs significantly less than your battery bank and will help prevent excessively deep battery discharges during periods of cloudy weather or low wind.
- **Metering.** For less than $200, you can buy a nifty amp-hour battery meter that will accurately tell you how much capacity you have left in your batteries as well as provide you with instantaneous load information for evaluating and diagnosing your system. This meter acts like a car fuel gauge, but actually provides you with more information that makes good battery care much simpler for the average user. Recommended models include the TriMetric units by Bogart Engineering and E-Meters from Cruising Equipment. A meter of this kind is cheap insurance to help protect your battery investment. Check out "A TriMetric User's Manual" online at www.bogartengineering.com for an excellent introduction to battery basics and care.
- **Discharge rate.** Battery storage capacity is expressed in amp-hours at a rate that the battery was designed to deliver its maximum capacity. If the battery is discharged faster than this rate, it has reduced capacity. For example, the Trojan L-16, deep-cycle, 6-volt battery is rated at 360 amp-hours with a 20-hour discharge rate. Divide 360 amp-hours by 20 hours to get a recommended maximum discharge rate of 18 amps.
- **Charge rate.** Most batteries can be safely charged at a fifth of their amp-hour rating, but a charge rate of a tenth of their amp-hour rating will give you longer life and the batteries will require maintenance less often. For example, the Trojan L-16, deep-cycle, 6-volt battery is rated at 360 amp-hours and can be charged at a maximum rate of 72 amps, but a better charging rate would be 36 amps maximum. Industrial batteries can handle higher charge rates (see the manufacturers' recommendations).
- **Battery-bank wiring.** You should use batteries of the same voltage, capacity, and model within each battery bank. When batteries are hooked in series, the output voltage is the sum of all the battery voltages, but the maximum amperage is only that of the single lowest-capacity battery in the series. When batteries are hooked in parallel, the output amperage is the sum of all the battery amperages, but the output voltage is only that of the single lowest battery voltage. Never mix voltages in parallel-wired batteries, or the

higher voltage batteries will overcharge and ruin the lower-voltage batteries.

Backup Generators

Generators are noisy, smelly, inefficient, and require regular maintenance, including full rebuilds after surprisingly low numbers of hours of use. In spite of these drawbacks, most RE systems designed for homes will include a backup generator. The generator provides power for short-term periods when high loads exceed the capacity of your RE system, such as when running large electric motors, or when batteries run low due to cloudy weather or excessive drain. When friends or relatives visit, they might not be used to living with reduced energy consumption, so they will tend to drain your storage batteries. The extra PV and battery expenses to size a system to cover all possible loads and extra-long cloudy periods will usually cost far more than a backup generator.

Generators typically run on gasoline, propane/natural gas, or diesel. If available, propane/natural gas is usually the fuel of choice for RE home systems, since it burns cleanly and quietly and stores easily. Gasoline must be stored somewhere safe and needs special treatment to prevent it from going "stale" after a period of a few months. Some of the new generators are multifuel units that are easily converted among propane, natural gas, or gasoline. For heavy-duty continuous operation, diesel fuel generators are the most economical and longestlasting choice, but for occasional battery charging and backup use, they are not usually worth the hassle, smell, and expense. Additionally, diesel fuel does not do well in extremely cold temperatures. Fuel cell power packs are commercially available for remote power backup applications (typically telecom relay stations), and may soon provide a cleaner, quieter, more reliable alternative to generators, but they are still too expensive for consumer applications like these.

Generators should be sized to exceed by about 10 to 25 percent the maximum power draw of the battery system charger plus any AC loads that may be running at the same time. Typical household backup generators are sized in the 4 to 10 kW range. It usually takes about half as much fuel to run small loads, such as a single 100watt light bulb, from a generator as it takes to run at full load. Low-load operation can actually cause more wear and tear on some generator systems than operating under full load. Both from a fuel economy and generator life perspective, it makes much more sense to run a generator intermittently to charge battery banks and cover short-term peak loads than to run it continuously.

System Sizing

Most RE systems are sized at a compromise between what you want and what you can afford. Luckily, as long as you allow for extra-heavy-gauge wiring and extra space for future components (such as more batteries and a second inverter), it is usually fairly simple to expand your system size in a modular pay-as-you-go fashion. As mentioned earlier, the total energy consumed on a daily basis by all of your appliances put together is the major factor in

determining how many solar panels, wind generators, storage batteries, and so on you will need. Average daily energy consumption for each appliance is the power (watts) multiplied by the time that the appliance is expected to be on (number of hours). For items that are used very intermittently, estimate how many hours they will be used each week and divide by seven for average daily usage.

> **CAUTION: You must estimate your average daily energy load very accurately. Undersized estimations will result in a frustratingly undersized system, whereas an oversized installation will be excessively expensive. Use the following table as a preliminary guideline, and then follow up with actual numbers taken from your own appliance tags or use amp meter readings (most accurate) taken while operating the appliances.**

Load Calculation

1. List all AC appliances and multiply their number of watts by average daily usage (in hours) to get the average daily load for each appliance in watthours. Add all loads together for the average daily AC energy load.
2. Multiply the average daily AC energy load (from step 1) by 1.15 to account for energy losses from the inverter. This is your adjusted average daily load from all AC appliances.
3. List all DC appliances, and multiply the number of watts by average daily usage (in hours) for each appliance to get the average daily load for each appliance in watthours. Add all of these loads together for the average daily DC load from DC appliances.

Typical appliance power consumption

Appliance	**Watts/hour**
Coffee pot	200
Coffee maker	800
Toaster	800–1,500
Popcorn popper	250
Blender	300
Microwave	600–1,500
Waffle iron	1,200
Hot plate	1,200
Frying pan	1,200
Dishwasher	1,200–1,500
Sink waste disposal	450
Washing machine	
automatic	500
manual	300
Vacuum cleaner	
upright	200–700
hand	100

Sewing machine	100
Iron	1,000
Clothes dryer	
electric NA	4,000
gas heated	300–400
Heater	
engine block NA	150–1,000
portable NA	1,500
waterbed NA	400
stock tank NA	100
Furnace blower	300–1,000
Air conditioner NA	
room	1,000
central	2,000–5,000
Garage door opener	350
Ceiling fan	10–50
Table fan	20–25
Electric blanket	200
Blow dryer	1,000
Shaver	15
Waterpik	100
Computer	
laptop	20–50
pc	80–150
printer	100
Typewriter	80–200
TV 25” color	150
19” color	70
12” bw	20
VCR	40
CD player	35
Stereo	10–30
Clock radio	1
AM/FM car tape	8
Satellite dish	30
CB radio	5
Electric clock	3
Radiotelephone	
receive	5
transmit	40–150

Lights	
100 W incandescent	100
25 W compact fluor.	28
50 W DC incandescent	50
40 W DC halogen	40
20 W DC compact fluor.	22
Compact fluorescent incandescent equivalents	
40 W equiv.	11
60 W equiv.	16
75 W equiv.	20
100 W equiv.	30
Electric mower NA	1,500
Hedge trimmer	450
Weed eater	500
½” drill	250
½” drill	750
1” drill	1,000
9” disc sander	1,200
3” belt sander	1,000
12” chain saw	1,100
14” band saw	1,100
7½” circ. saw	900
8½” circ. saw	1,400
Refrig/freezer, conventional	
20 cf (15 hrs.)	540
16 cf (13)	475
Sunfrost	
16 cf DC (7)	112
12 cf DC (7)	70
Vestfrost refrig/freezer	
10.5 cf	60
Freezer, conventional	
14 cf (15)	440
14 cf (14)	350
Sunfrost freezer	
19 cf (10)	112
Vestfrost refrig/freezer	
7.5 cf (8)	50

Note: NA denotes appliances that would normally be powered by nonelectric sources in an RE-powered home.

(Source: *Solar Electric Design Guide,* Golden Genesis Corporation 1999)

4. Add the average daily DC load due to DC appliances plus the adjusted average daily load from the AC appliances (add steps 2 and 3). This is your total average daily load (in watt-hours).
5. Divide the total average daily load (step 4) by 0.7 to account for system losses and inefficiencies (roughly 30 percent loss). This is your adjusted total average daily system load, in watt-hours. You will use this number to help you calculate how big your solar panels, wind generators, inverter, wiring, and battery banks should be.
6. Look over your appliance list and estimate what your maximum total wattage might be for all AC appliances that you will run at the same time. This figure will determine the minimum size for your inverter (number of watts).

After running the above calculation for the first time and pricing out an RE system, most people go back and sharpen their pencils to see how they might conserve energy in order to reduce the size of their system.

Sizing Your Battery Bank

The size of your battery bank is dictated by how much storage capacity is desired, the temperature at which the batteries will be stored, the maximum battery charge rate, and the maximum battery discharge rate. Your battery bank should be the largest size dictated by any one of these factors. Battery capacity is specified in terms of amp-hours. The total energy stored in a battery is the number of amp-hours multiplied by the battery voltage, which will give you the watt-hours stored in a battery. Since batteries waste some power when they are charged and have reduced storage capacities at lower temperatures, these factors must be taken into account.

1. Determine total adjusted average daily load (step 5 in the load calculation) in watt-hours.
2. Determine the maximum number of cloudy days in a row (or low-wind days if you have a wind turbine) that you wish to store energy in your batteries to provide for (typically 3 to 10 days). If you have a good generator backup and don't mind using it a lot, you can shoot for the lower number. It will be easiest on your pocketbook to start low, adding more panels and batteries as you go.
3. Multiply step 2 by step 1.
4. For reasonable life, deep-cycle batteries should not be discharged more than 80 percent. For optimum life, it is better to keep them charged to at least 50 percent of capacity. Depending on your choice, divide step 3 by either 0.8 or 0.5 to maintain at least 20 percent or 50 percent charge in the batteries, respectively.
5. If your batteries will be stored below 80°F, adjust for reduced battery storage capacity by multiplying step 4 by the following temperature/capacity factors (use lowest expected battery storage temperature): 1.04 for 70°F, 1.11 for 60°F, 1.19 for 50°F, 1.3 for 40°F, 1.4 for 30°F, 1.59 for 20°F, 2.0 for 0°F. The result is your temperature-adjusted battery storage load.
6. Calculate the watt-hour storage capacity for your selected battery. This is the battery spec sheet amphour capacity times its voltage, for a single battery.

7. Divide step 5 by step 6 and round up to the nearest whole number. The result is the minimum number of storage batteries you should have in your battery bank.
8. The battery bank amp-hour rating should be at least 5 and preferably 10 times the maximum amperage of the largest appliance draw, the PV array output, or the generator-driven battery charger output, whichever is larger. Adjust your number of batteries upward if the load rating is too low.

PHOTOVOLTAICS

Banks of solar modules are the backbone of most residential RE systems. They are reliable and have no moving parts to wear out or require maintenance. Output from solar panels is dependent on the amount of available sunlight (insolation), orientation toward the sun, and shading of the modules. Properly sizing your PV (photovoltaics) system requires attention to each of these factors as well as to system loads.

Insolation

Insolation is a measure of average sunlight intensity and is specified in equivalent hours of full sunlight. The standard of one equivalent hour is based on one hour of sunlight at the equator when the sun is directly overhead. Insolation figures account for cloudy days and the angle of the sun to come up with an average figure for a specific location and time of the year.

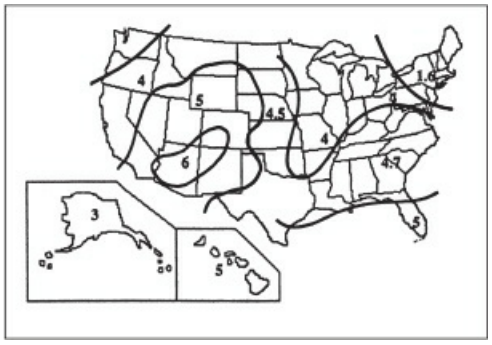


Figure 11-2. Yearly average equivalent sun hours per day. (Illustration courtesy of Sierra Solar Systems)

The appendix at the back of the *Photovoltaics Design and Installation Manual* contains a detailed list of insolation figures for solar panels tilted to three different angles for many North American cities at different times of the year. Use the above figures for a rough estimate of your insolation, but contact your RE dealer or check out the *Photovoltaics Design and Installation Manual* for more accurate figures.

Solar Array Sizing

In northern and cloudy locations, available winter sunshine can be radically less than what is available in the summer. Rather than size a PV system based on minimum winter insolation, many people prefer to size their systems based on average annual insolation and use a generator and/or a small wind turbine to make up the difference during the winter months.

1. Locate your site (or one near you) in Figure 11-2 and list the figure for the average equivalent daily hours of sunlight.
2. Take the adjusted total average daily system load (in watt-hours) from step 5 of your load calculation process (system losses are already included).
3. Divide the figure in step 2 by the figure from step 1. The result is the total number of watts your system should produce in an hour of direct sunlight.

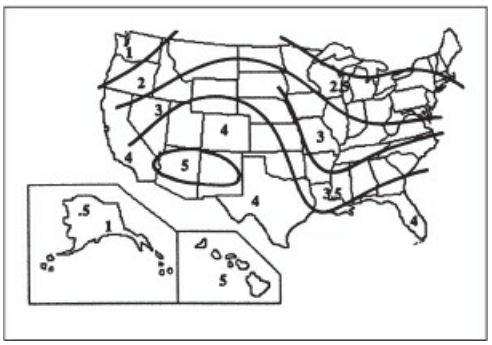


Figure 11-3. December/January average equivalent sun hours per day. (Illustration courtesy of Sierra Solar Systems)

4. Calculate the actual number of available watts for your selected solar module. Solar modules produce constant amperage in full sun at a voltage somewhat higher than your battery-charging voltage, depending on panel temperature (colder panels produce higher voltage). For example, a 100-watt Siemens module has a 17-volt output at 5.9 amps. With a battery-charging voltage of 13 volts (4 volts not used), available power to charge the batteries is only 76.7 watts (13 volts times 5.9 amps), unless you use something called maximum power point tracking (MPPT, see for more details).
5. Divide step 3 by step 4, and then round up to the nearest whole number. This is the minimum number of solar modules that you will need. Remember that 24-volt systems require pairs of modules, and 48-volt systems require modules in sets of 4.

Panel Orientation

Panels can be mounted in fixed orientations or on frames that allow for orientation adjustment. The optimum panel orientation is to face directly into the sun at all times. You may choose to purchase automatic tracking frames, which keep a cluster of modules pointed toward the sun. These trackers can increase the efficiency of your system by up to 40 percent, but the efficiency gain is mostly during the summer and is highest at tropical latitudes. If your peak loads are in the summer, a tracker will cost less than the modules it saves through increased efficiency. If you live in a northern climate and you have plenty of summer power, then your money may be better

spent on more modules than on trackers. Chris Worcester of Solar Wind Works says that pole-mounted trackers are the way to go in our area, which is deep snow country in the Sierra Mountains of northern California. Check with your local RE dealer to see what is working best in your climate and latitude.

Orientation Rules of Thumb

- **Fixed orientation.** Orient panels due south (not magnetic south) and tilt to latitude plus 15° for winter optimization. This is not the best angle for summer sun, but the extra sun in the summer will make up for the less-than-optimum angle.
- **Adjustable orientation.** Orient panels due south (not magnetic south) and tilt to latitude plus 15° for winter optimization. Adjust the tilt angle to latitude minus 15° for summer optimization. It is generally not worth the effort to manually shift panel orientation more than twice a year (once in the spring and once in the fall).
- **Tracker orientation.** Two-axis and one-axis trackers are available. Two-axis trackers will automatically track the sun east to west and adjust the vertical tilt angle to optimize efficiency. Single-axis trackers track the sun east to west, but the vertical tilt angle should be manually set to the same seasonal angles as regular adjustable frames (see tracker manufacturers' instructions).

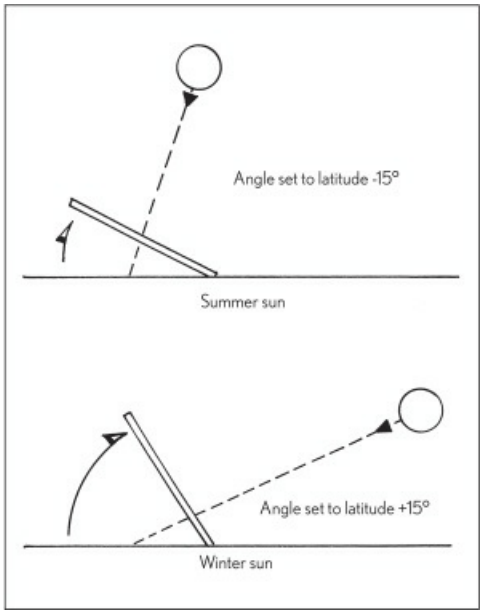


Figure 11-4. Panel seasonal orientation.

- **Shading.** Even partial shading can make a huge difference in the output from your solar modules. Shaded cells become loads instead of power sources and rapidly reduce module output. Modern, high-quality panels incorporate bypass diodes internal to each panel to isolate shaded sections within a single module, preventing them from drawing current and killing the output from that entire module when partially shaded. Make sure that your modules have the critical six middle hours of the day clear of all shading, both for summer sun and winter sun. If partial shading is an issue at your site, make sure that your panels have internal cutoff diodes. See your RE dealer or a good solar design handbook,

such as *Photovoltaics Design and Installation Manual*, for seasonal sun angles in your area to help you determine potential shading during different seasons at possible panel locations.

Maximum Power Point Tracking

The name for this ingenious and worthwhile electronic device is somewhat misleading. It is not a physical tracking device that points your panels toward the sun, but an electronic "black box" that optimizes the power output from your solar modules. As mentioned in step 4 of the solar array sizing guidelines, your solar panels usually put out a constant current (amperage) at a higher voltage than is required by your battery charger, which wastes a significant portion of available power. Maximum power point tracking (MPPT) devices are electronic controllers that track the output voltage from your solar modules and convert the DC module voltage to a lower voltage at a higher current to match the input battery-charging voltage for optimized power output. Although advertised as increasing system efficiencies up to 40 percent, I would expect an average improvement of around 20–25 percent. In all but very small systems, a 20-percent improvement will probably save you considerably more money than the cost of the appropriately sized MPPT by reducing the number of required solar modules.

> **NOTE: MPPT devices work best in colder climates, since solar panel efficiencies are highest at colder temperatures, where they usually yield output voltages well above batterycharging voltages. In tropical climates, it may not be worth installing MPPT.**

WIND POWER

> There are currently over 150,000 small-scale RE systems in America, and this number grows by 30 percent annually. The smallscale use of wind power is growing at twice that rate—over 60 percent per year. What Americans and folks all over the world are finding out is that wind power is an excellent and cost-effective alternative to utility line extensions, utility bills, and fossil fuel generators. . . . According to our research at *Home Power*, 82 percent of the small wind turbines work in systems that also contain photovoltaics. This is a marriage made in heaven: in most locations, when the sun doesn't shine the wind most certainly blows. **—Richard Perez, publisher of *Home Power* magazine, from the introduction to *Wind Energy Basics,* by Paul Gipe**

If you live in a high wind area, a wind turbine could provide you with far more energy at far less investment cost than a bank of solar modules. Current prices (spring 2008) on small wind turbine prices start at about $1.50 per watt, compared with solar panel prices of around $5.00 per watt. Wind turbines operate day and night, so a wind turbine generating its rated power over 24 hours will produce eight times as much power as a bank of solar panels with equal wattage receiving

only three equivalent hours of winter sun (typical for the midwestern United States). Of course, these great prices per watt do not mean a thing without adequate wind. Unless you live in an area with winds on a regular basis that are high enough to be annoying, a large wind generator is probably not worth your while. If your area tends to experience winds during cloudy weather, then it may be a good idea to build yourself a hybrid wind and PV system, so that for most of the days either the wind turbine or the solar modules (or both) produce significant amounts of energy.

Wind-Energy Tips

- Check out your local average wind speeds to help you size your wind system. An RE dealer, the *Home Power* Web site, local weather stations, or the National Climactic Data Center in Asheville, North Carolina (see resources in this chapter), should be able to give you a good idea of local wind velocities, but the best way to evaluate your site is with an anemometer-based wind speed totalizer. This gadget is sold and sometimes rented by RE dealers.
- Available wind power increases with the cube of the wind speed. This means that if you double the wind speed, it has the potential for eight times the wind power.
- In areas with inconsistent wind, a low-cost microwind turbine to supplement your PV system is a lot easier to justify than a larger, more expensive model.
- Check manufacturer specifications and power curves carefully. Some models maintain power output in high wind, while others drop off radically. Low turbine power output in high winds is fine for most areas, because they are subject to high winds (above 35 mph) only for short periods of time, but will not work well in areas with consistently high winds. Unless you live in an area characterized by god-awful consistently unpleasant high winds, the low-speed section of the turbine power curve will be the most important, and the "peak power" figures provided by the turbine manufacturer will be rather meaningless for your application.
- Most turbines are rated at around 28 mph wind speed, which is a very windy condition. At 15 mph, which is moderately windy, available wind power is only about 15 percent of what is available at 28 mph. Under 6 to 8 mph (light winds), most wind turbines have little or no output. For realistic expectations, you should know your available wind speed or rely on the experience of others in your area that already use wind energy.
- Wind generators should be installed at least 20 feet higher than any obstructions closer than 500 feet, and mounts should be well grounded. Prefabricated towers and roof mounting kits are available from RE dealers and wind turbine manufacturers. Some towers have tilt features that allow you to lower the turbine to the ground in the event of approaching severe weather, such as tornadoes and hurricanes. (Protect your investment!)
- If you are seriously interested in wind power, I highly recommend that you find "How to Buy a Wind-Electric System," an article by Ian Woofenden and Mick Sagrillo, published in *Home Power* 122, December 2007/January 2008. This article provides a good summary of the steps for evaluating your energy requirements and wind opportunities

and for purchasing a wind-energy system. Most important, the authors offer a comparison of specifications for 24 wind turbines that are, in their opinions, reliable at the time of publication. If the turbine you are considering has been on the market since 2007 or before and it does not make this list, it may have reliability issues. Since you will probably spend considerably more on the rest of your system than you spend on the turbine, it does not make sense to buy a cheaper turbine that burns up in 6 months or a year. You can find this article at www.homepower.com/view/?file=HP122_pg28_Woofenden.

MICRO-HYDROPOWER

If your property contains a creek with a significant drop to it, MicroHydropower could provide you with a terrific source of electricity for an investment far less than an equivalent-sized PV system. The vertical distance that your water supply drops from the source to the turbine is known as the pressure "head." Available water power is a function of the volume flow rate (how much water is flowing) multiplied by head feet (head relates directly to available water pressure). Micro-hydro turbines can operate with as little as 2 feet of head if you have a high flow rate, but are usually operated with heads of 25 feet or more. High water flow rate can compensate for low head, but head tends to be the more important factor.

Micro-hydro, like most PV systems, usually generates electricity at modest rates that are far below most residential peak demands, but because it generates electricity day and night, it adds up to quite a bit of energy every day. This energy is accumulated in batteries, where it is available to drive high loads when required.

Micro-Hydro Considerations

- **Head.** What is the vertical drop (head) from your water source to your micro-hydro generator? This is the most important factor in determining whether micro-hydro is feasible and how much power you will be able to extract. If you have a fast-flowing creek with less than 2 feet of head, you will not be able to use a micro-hydro turbine, but you may get a worthwhile amount of energy from your creek using a propeller-type turbine from Jack Rabbit Energy Systems.
- **Flow rate.** How many gallons per minute can you provide to your micro-hydro turbine? This factor combined with head determines your potential available power. For small flows, time the flow of your supply into a 5-gallon bucket to estimate flow rate. For larger flows, consult civil and mechanical engineering books or *Microhydro: Clean Power from Water*, which will show you how to build a simple "weir" to accurately estimate stream flow rates.
- **Available power.** A good rule of thumb for determining available power (in watts) is to multiply the flow rate (in gpm, gallons per minute) times the head (in feet), and then divide by 10. The maximum theoretical power is actually divided by only 5.3, but a factor

of 10 accounts for efficiency losses in the turbine, the alternator, and some in the piping. For example, a head of 25 feet with a flow rate of 100 gpm would provide you with somewhere around 250 watts of continuous power (100 × 25/10). In general, a value of 1,000 or more for the flow rate (gpm) multiplied by the head (feet) is the point where micro-hydro turbines become worthwhile.

- **Pipe head loss.** The flow rate, length, size, and type of pipe will determine how much pressure (and power) are lost due to the friction of water flowing through your pipe. Friction through a pipe decreases with a cube of the diameter, so a pipe that is twice as big has one-eighth the friction loss. Fire hoses are big fat hoses because you can't squirt a lot of water through a small hose. The same is true for your micro-hydro supply piping. Water pipe sizing charts will help you to size your piping by estimating how many feet of pressure head are lost flowing through the length of pipe. Losses are typically given in feet of head per 100 feet of pipe length, so you must factor in the length of your pipeline. For high flow/low head systems, a friction loss of more than 1 or 2 feet of head may be unacceptable.

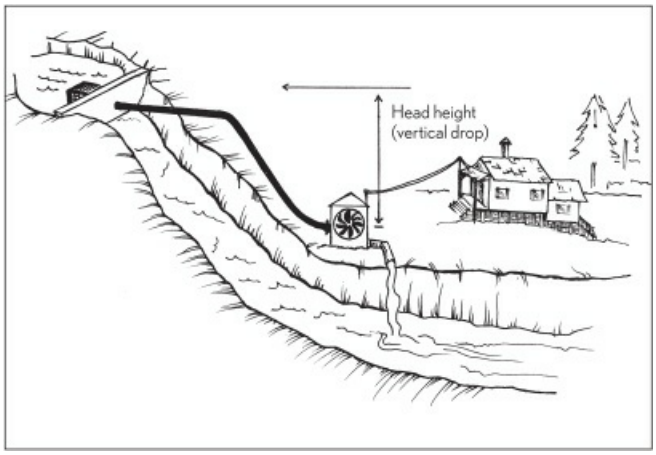


Figure 11-5. Typical MicroHydro installation.

- **Distance to batteries.** Squeezing electrical current through wires is a lot like squeezing water through pipes. Long distances between a power source and your battery bank can result in excessive power losses. Thicker wires and/or higher micro-hydro output voltages (24, 48, or more volts) can help reduce power transmission losses between generator and batteries. To keep wire thickness and wiring costs reasonable, most battery systems are currently designed to supply power to inverters at 48 volts, rather than the old standard of 12 volts. (See the "Energy, Power, and Electricity Primer" section at the end of this chapter for more information.)
- **Custom systems.** Micro-hydro alternators and water jets are custom matched for each application. See your RE dealer for assistance in evaluating your site and choosing among different micro-hydro options.

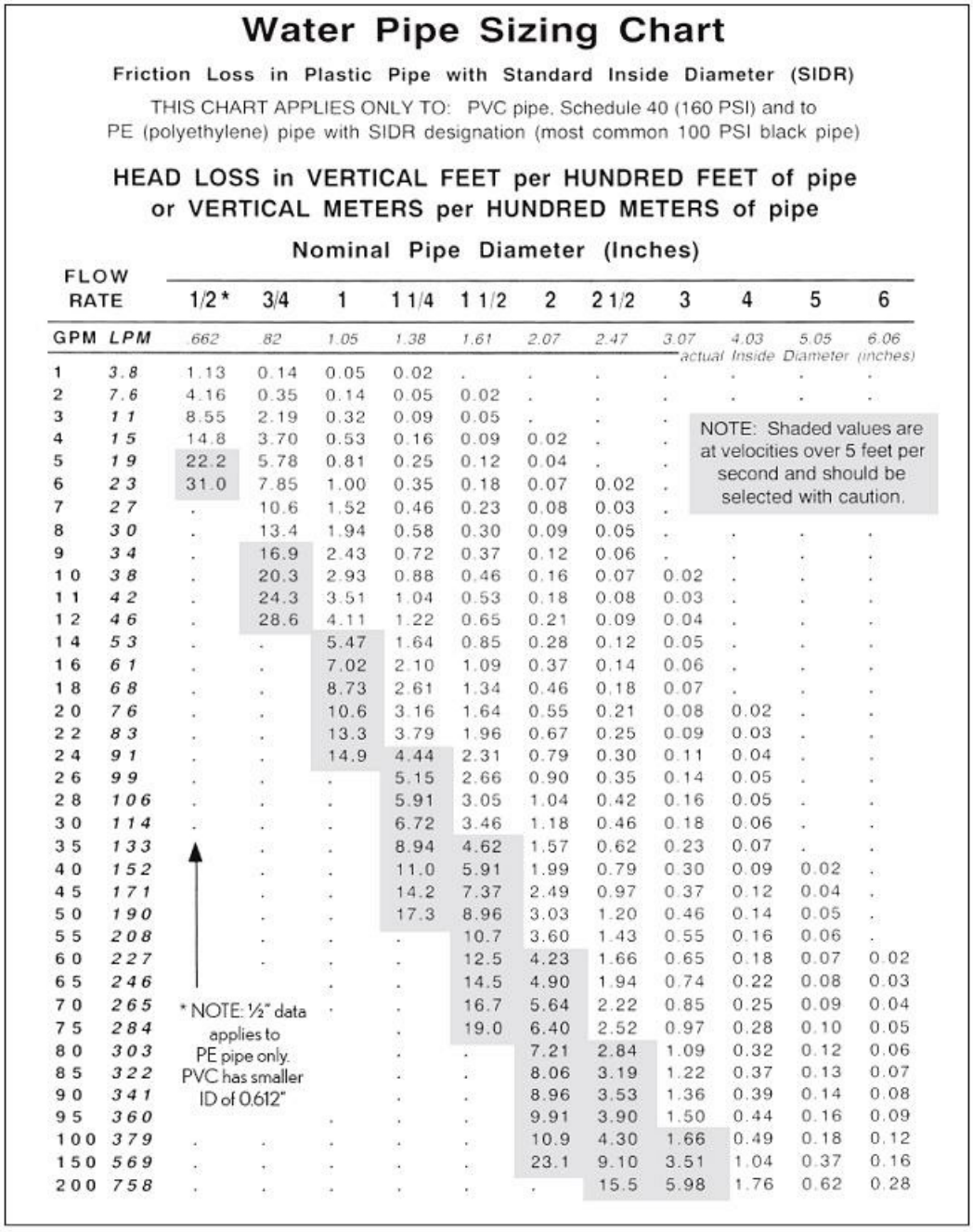
SOLAR HOT WATER

In addition to reducing global warming and the use of fossil fuels, solar hot water heating for your home probably makes good economic sense, provided you have good sun exposure and live in a climate that is sunny for at least a third of all days throughout the year (most of North America). The basic concept of solar hot water heating is pretty simple. A solar hot water heater acts like a car with black upholstery sitting in the hot sun. Sunlight enters through clear glass and hits a blackened plate, dumping heat into the black plate, which is in contact with water, so the water gets hot, while the glass and insulation on the back side of the solar panel keeps the box from losing much of its heat. Simple! Well, it's very simple in warm climates, but a bit more complex in climates where the solar panels are subject to freezing temperatures. Solar collectors should face within 30° of true south (true south is the optimum orientation) and be tilted at an angle of latitude plus 15° (optimized for winter sun). For more complete information than provided here, see AAA Solar's excellent online catalog and design guide to solar heating and PV systems at www.aaasolar.com or one of the recommended books in this chapter's reference section.

Passive Solar "Batch" Heating

In places like Hawaii, where fuel costs are high and it's warm year-round, solar batch water heaters on the roofs of homes are a common sight, though most installers have gone away from the batch systems in favor of direct pump systems (see following section). Batch water heaters, also known as integral tank and collector heaters, are the simplest of all solar water heaters. They usually contain 30- to 80-gallon tanks. The tank is placed in a weatherproof, insulated enclosure with one side having a transparent or translucent glazing (usually doubleglazed). The tank side facing the sun is painted black to directly absorb the sun's energy.

In colder climates, batch solar water heaters don't work as well as they do in the tropics. When nights are cold, they lose significant amounts of heat through the glazing and can be damaged by freezing in extremely cold temperatures. Batch water heaters are inexpensive, simple, reliable, and easy to install. They can provide 50 to 90 percent of hot water needs depending on usage and climate. The piping to and from the heater is the weak link in the chain. It should be well insulated, and heat tape should be installed in harsher climates.



Water Pipe Sizing Chart

Friction Loss in Plastic Pipe with Standard Inside Diameter (SIDR)

THIS CHART APPLIES ONLY TO: PVC pipe, Schedule 40 (160 PSI) and to PE (polyethylene) pipe with SIDR designation (most common 100 PSI black pipe)

HEAD LOSS in VERTICAL FEET per HUNDRED FEET of pipe or VERTICAL METERS per HUNDRED METERS of pipe

Nominal Pipe Diameter (Inches)

FLOW RATE		1/2*	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2	2 1/2	3	4	5	6
GPM	*LPM*	*.662*	*.82*	*1.05*	*1.38*	*1.61*	*2.07*	*2.47*	*3.07*	*4.03*	*5.05*	*6.06*
									actual	*inside*	*Diameter*	*(inches)*
1	*3.8*	1.13	0.14	0.05	0.02	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
2	*7.6*	4.16	0.35	0.14	0.05	0.02	.	.	.	.	.	.
3	*11*	8.55	2.19	0.32	0.09	0.05	.	.	.			
4	*15*	14.8	3.70	0.53	0.16	0.09	0.02	.	.			
5	*19*	22.2	5.78	0.81	0.25	0.12	0.04	.	.			
6	*23*	31.0	7.85	1.00	0.35	0.18	0.07	0.02	.			
7	*27*	.	10.6	1.52	0.46	0.23	0.08	0.03	.			
8	*30*	.	13.4	1.94	0.58	0.30	0.09	0.05	.	.	.	.
9	*34*	.	16.9	2.43	0.72	0.37	0.12	0.06	.	.	.	.
10	*38*	.	20.3	2.93	0.88	0.46	0.16	0.07	0.02	.	.	.
11	*42*	.	24.3	3.51	1.04	0.53	0.18	0.08	0.03	.	.	.
12	*46*	.	28.6	4.11	1.22	0.65	0.21	0.09	0.04	.	.	.
14	*53*	.	.	5.47	1.64	0.85	0.28	0.12	0.05	.	.	.
16	*61*	.	.	7.02	2.10	1.09	0.37	0.14	0.06	.	.	.
18	*68*	.	.	8.73	2.61	1.34	0.46	0.18	0.07	.	.	.
20	*76*	.	.	10.6	3.16	1.64	0.55	0.21	0.08	0.02	.	.
22	*83*	.	.	13.3	3.79	1.96	0.67	0.25	0.09	0.03	.	.
24	*91*	.	.	14.9	4.44	2.31	0.79	0.30	0.11	0.04	.	.
26	*99*	.	.	.	5.15	2.66	0.90	0.35	0.14	0.05	.	.
28	*106*	.	.	.	5.91	3.05	1.04	0.42	0.16	0.05	.	.
30	*114*	.	.	.	6.72	3.46	1.18	0.46	0.18	0.06	.	.
35	*133*	▲	.	.	8.94	4.62	1.57	0.62	0.23	0.07	.	.
40	*152*		.	.	11.0	5.91	1.99	0.79	0.30	0.09	0.02	.
45	*171*		.	.	14.2	7.37	2.49	0.97	0.37	0.12	0.04	.
50	*190*		.	.	17.3	8.96	3.03	1.20	0.46	0.14	0.05	.
55	*208*		.	.	.	10.7	3.60	1.43	0.55	0.16	0.06	.
60	*227*		.	.	.	12.5	4.23	1.66	0.65	0.18	0.07	0.02
65	*246*			.	.	14.5	4.90	1.94	0.74	0.22	0.08	0.03
70	*265*	* NOTE: ½" data		.	.	16.7	5.64	2.22	0.85	0.25	0.09	0.04
75	*284*	applies to			.	19.0	6.40	2.52	0.97	0.28	0.10	0.05
80	*303*	PE pipe only.			.	.	7.21	2.84	1.09	0.32	0.12	0.06
85	*322*	PVC has smaller			.	.	8.06	3.19	1.22	0.37	0.13	0.07
90	*341*	ID of 0.612"			.	.	8.96	3.53	1.36	0.39	0.14	0.08
95	*360*			.	.	.	9.91	3.90	1.50	0.44	0.16	0.09
100	*379*	.	.	.	.	.	10.9	4.30	1.66	0.49	0.18	0.12
150	*569*	.	.	.	.	.	23.1	9.10	3.51	1.04	0.37	0.16
200	*758*	.	.	.	.	.	.	15.5	5.98	1.76	0.62	0.28

NOTE: Shaded values are at velocities over 5 feet per second and should be selected with caution.

Figure 11-6. Water pipe sizing chart. (Illustration courtesy of Dankoff Solar)

CAUTION: DO NOT use batch-type solar water heaters in areas subject to hard freezes lasting several days.

Direct Pump Solar Hot-Water Heating

Simple direct pump systems were first developed in the late nineteenth century and were in wide

use during the 1920s in southern California and Florida. These efficient and reliable systems use a low power pump to circulate tap water through a loop containing the solar collector(s) and a storage tank. This type of system tends to be more efficient than the batch system, because only a tiny volume of water is exposed to cooler nighttime temperatures, the bulk of the water being stored in a heavily insulated solar hot water storage tank. Also, much more hot water can be stored in large storage tanks on the ground floor than in batch tanks located on your rooftop. Each home that I built in Hawaii included one of these types of solar hot-water systems, and the owners were very happy with them.

In AC systems, a differential controller monitors the tank temperature and the collector temperature, turning the pump on only when the collector is hotter than the tank. In PV-powered DC systems, when there is enough sunlight for the PV module to run the pump, the collector is usually hot enough to heat the tank water, so a controller is not needed. The panels in this type of system must not be exposed to freezing temperatures, since they contain potable water at all times. For areas like Florida that get exposed to freezing temperatures only on rare occasions, a safety switch can be installed to run the circulation pump continuously when the temperature switch in the solar panel indicates that it is approaching the freezing point. This will actually pump heat out of the hot-water storage tank, but it will keep the panel from being damaged by freezing temperatures.

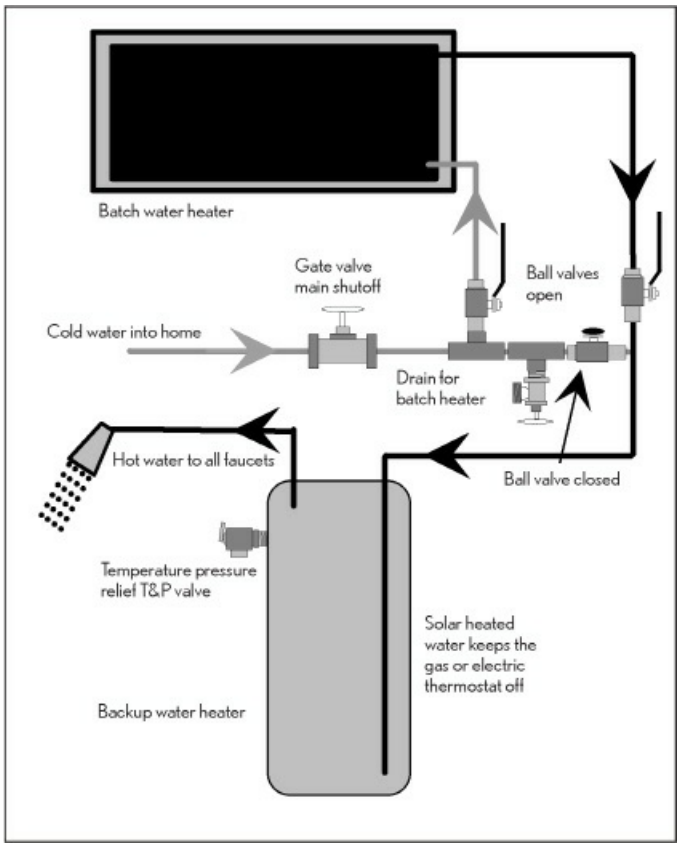


Figure 11-7. Solar batch hotwater heater. (Illustration courtesy of AAA Solar)

CAUTION: These systems are appropriate for use only in warm climates that are not subject to freezing temperatures except on occasion.

Active Solar Hot Water

Most people in North America live in climates where wintertime freezing temperatures are at least a significant possibility. Different types of solar systems have been designed to prevent solar collectors from being damaged by water freezing within the panels. Two of the more common systems for these locales use heat transfer fluids or a drain-back mechanism.

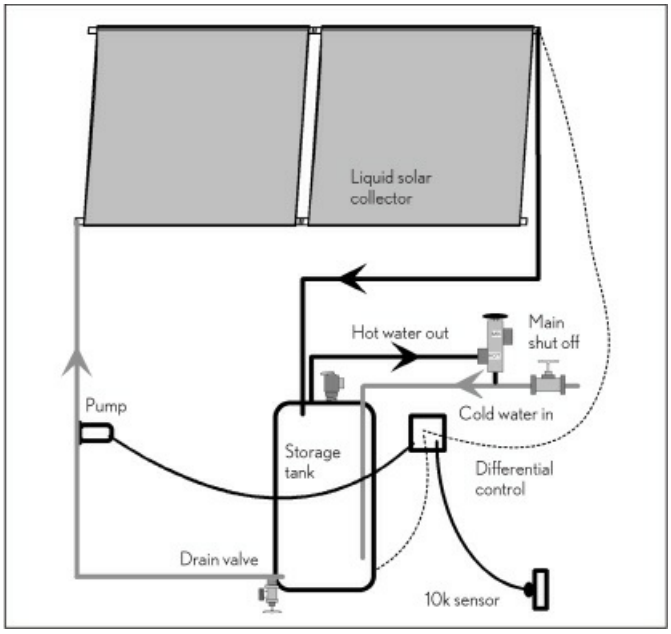


Figure 11-8. Direct pump–type solar hot water heater. (Illustration courtesy of AAA Solar)

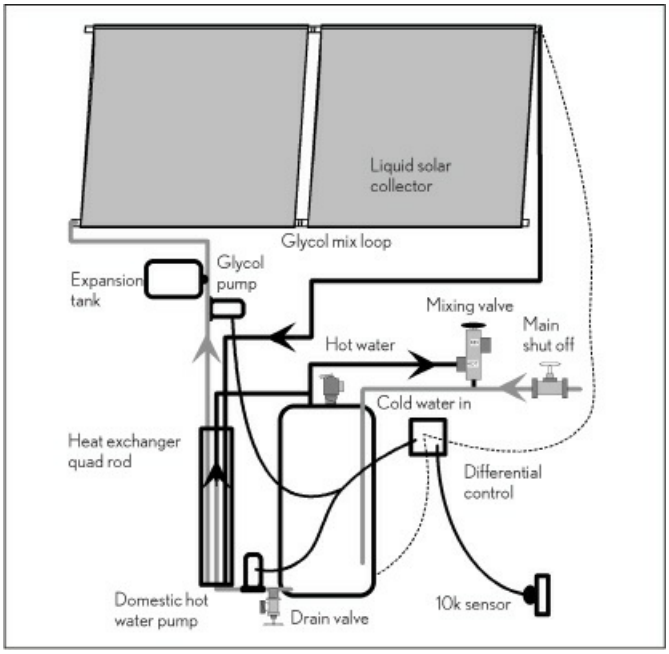


Figure 11-9. Glycol (antifreeze) solar hot water heater for freezing climates. (Illustration courtesy of AAA Solar)

- **Heat transfer fluids.** Panels can be filled with a nonfreezing fluid (not plain water) that is circulated to a heat exchanger, which transfers heat from the nonfreezing panel fluid to your potable stored hot water. Ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, silicone fluid, and a variety of oils have been used as heat transfer fluids, but most installers prefer a nontoxic solution of equal parts of propylene glycol and water. If your system uses a toxic heat exchange fluid, it must employ a doublewalled heat exchanger to prevent the possibility of contamination of your potable water supply with the heat transfer fluid.
- **Drain back.** A drain-back system uses water as the heat transfer fluid. In this case, when panel temperatures are hotter than the storage tank, water is pumped at low pressures through the panel and a water- to-water heat exchanger. When panel temperature cools below the storage tank temperature, the pump is switched off, and the panel water drains back into the indoor heat exchanger reservoir, leaving no water in the panel to freeze.

SOLAR SPACE HEATING

Solar panels can heat your home, using either fluids or air as the heat exchange medium. In the case of fluids, either water or a nonfreezing heat exchange liquid are circulated through solar panels, then run through a heat exchanger to heat a large insulated tank of hot water. This is essentially the same as for a regular solar hot water heating system, except it is separated from your household potable water piping. On demand, hot water is circulated through hydronic radiators or piping embedded in the house flooring to provide radiant heat to the house. Hydronic heating water fluid is typically treated with chemicals to prevent corrosion and scaling inside piping. *This water is not potable*, and must be kept in a closed loop isolated from your regular house water system. Solar collectors should face within 30° of true south (true south is the optimum orientation) and tilted at an angle of latitude plus 15° (optimized for winter sun).

When air is the heat transfer medium, fan-circulated air is blown through hot-air solar panels and then circulated throughout the house. The principal niche for air collectors in the solar industry is supplying 25 to 50 percent of required energy for space heating. The thermal mass of a typical, modern, well-insulated house will hold heat for a few hours after the sun stops heating the panels before requiring backup heat. More massive thermal storage, such as from adobe, brick, or concrete walls and/or flooring, provides improved heat storage to help prevent the house from overheating during the day and getting very cold at night. Supplementary water and rock thermal storage systems are generally not economically competitive with solid thermal masses. For the most part, basic passive solar building principles apply, even when active solar panels provide supplemental heating. Active solar heating panels can help make up for a house orientation where it is not practical to place a lot of south-facing windows, such as when the view is to the north, or to lower heating bills when retrofitted into older houses. For more information on energy-saving principles in home construction, see Chapter 7, with special attention to the “Passive Solar Design” section.

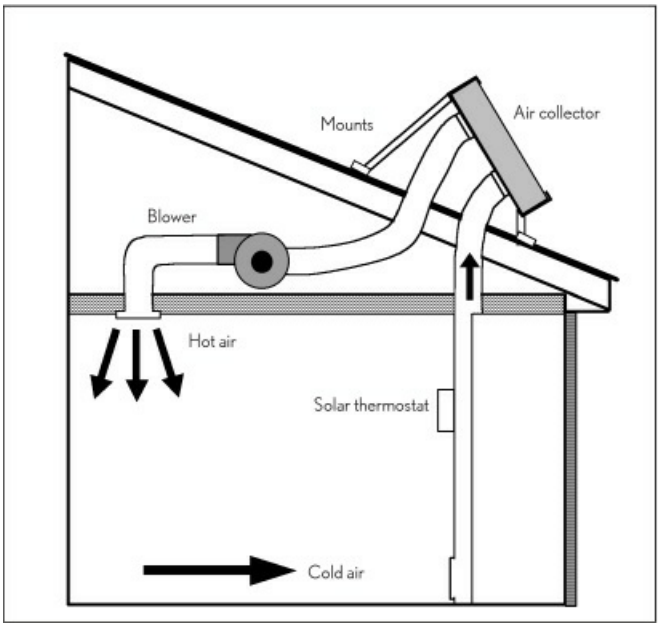


Figure 11-10. Active solar space heating with hot-air solar collectors. (Illustration courtesy of AAA Solar)

SOLAR WATER PUMPING

One of the best applications for solar energy is solar water pumping at locations without easy grid access. Solar pumps offer a clean and simple alternative to fuel-burning engines, generators, and windmills. They require no fuel deliveries and very little maintenance. A solar pump produces the most water when it is needed the most—when the weather is sunny and dry. Solar pumps are often used for livestock watering, for irrigation of crops and orchards, and for providing a residential water supply to off-grid homes and cabins.

Solar water pumps are specially designed to utilize DC electric power from photovoltaic panels. They must work during low-light conditions at reduced power without stalling or overheating. A pump controller (current booster) is an electronic device used with most solar pumps. It acts like an automatic transmission, helping the pump to start and avoid stalling in weak sunlight. Most submersible AC well pumps draw a lot of power and are designed to pump a high volume of water in a short period of time and then shut off. Solar pumps are designed to pump slowly, efficiently, and steadily, drawing a modest amount of power while the sun is shining. They can pump from well depths of 600 feet and tend to be most competitive in small installations where combustion engines are least economical. The smallest solar pumps require less than 150 watts, and can lift water from depths exceeding 200 feet (65 meters) at 1.5

Figure 11-11. A herd of American bison roam the great plains in Nebraska, with the help of a SunRise submersible pump (installed by Northwest Rural Public Power). (Illustration courtesy of Dankoff Solar)

gallons (5.7 liters) per minute. You may be surprised by the performance of such a small system. In a 10-hour sunny day it can lift 900 gallons (3,400 liters). That's enough to supply several families, 30 head of cattle, or 40 fruit trees! Larger solar pumps can pump much larger volumes (Dankoff 2000, 2).

In some RE system applications, a traditional AC submersible pump is better suited than a DC solar pump. If your system already has a large inverter (most AC submersible pumps draw considerable current and require a large inverter) and you have modest water demands, it is probably not worth the extra cost to purchase a solar pump. According to Windy Dankoff, founder of Dankoff Solar Products (a major solar-pump manufacturer, now owned by Conergy), with modern appliances and attention to water conservation, the average home will consume only around 25 gallons of water per person per day. However, if you have substantially higher water demands, such as watering a large garden or fruit trees, the extra cost for a high-efficiency solar pump is probably justified, since it will save you far more than the pump cost simply by reducing the number of required solar panels. Solar pumps save about 60 percent of the energy required for running an AC submersible pump. If you are seriously considering the application of a DC solar pump, contact your RE dealer to help size and specify the pump. Pump voltage and capacity must be matched both to water requirements and electrical system voltage and wattage. For several free online articles about using PV and wind to pump water, see Conergy's Solar Water Pumps Web page at www.conergy.com.

BIOFUELS

> This book shows how a permaculturally designed ethanol system provides us with surpluses of local food, energy, community, and power—all while deepening our topsoil, eliminating the use of toxic agrichemicals, and reversing global warming. It's about doing things on a human scale and as you will see, the human scale has virtually all the advantages in this struggle. Our energy/food production system can either affirm our living environment or treat the earth as one big strip mine to exploit. **—David Blume, *Alcohol Can Be a Gas***

Biofuels are receiving both good and bad reviews in the media. Some tout biofuels as the perfect

answer to heal both our addiction to Middle Eastern oil and climate change. However, recent headlines report that the rush to growing biofuel crops is actually increasing greenhouse gas emissions rather than reducing them. Which are we to believe? It turns out that there is an element of truth in both arguments, and that biofuels in and of themselves are neither good nor bad—it is how they are grown, harvested, processed, and used as fuels that determines whether they are part of the problem or part of the solution.

The theory behind biofuels is that they are "carbon neutral" fuels. This means that when the biofuel is grown it sequesters carbon from the atmosphere, and when it is burned it releases that same carbon back into the atmosphere. When you look at the process more carefully, other factors come into play, and the subject becomes considerably more complicated. If the biofuels are grown with fertilizers based on natural gas, a fossil fuel, then the greenhouse gas contribution of the fertilizer must be taken into consideration. Additionally, there is the fuel to drive the tractors, the fuel consumed to process the biofuels, which may be either a fossil fuel or a biofuel, and the fuels consumed to make the machinery to process the biofuels. Since the world is having a tough time feeding today's population with existing agricultural lands, as more land is devoted to biofuel production, this often means deforesting tropical rainforests to plant palm oil plantations for biodiesel or clearing other forests and grasslands to increase food production acreage to compensate for agricultural land that has been converted to biofuel production. Studies have clearly shown that deforestation to create agricultural lands for biofuels, or to replace lands that were converted to biofuels, results in far more greenhouse gases than are saved by the biofuels.

So, what is the answer? There is no one right answer, but by comparing processes and biofuel feedstocks, it becomes quite clear that there are vast differences in the ecological returns for various biofuels. The U.S. Department of Energy's Argonne National Laboratory has developed an extensive software tool for analyzing a multitude of factors to come up with a realistic comparison of the impacts of various fuels and energy systems. This tool is called the "GREET" model. GREET stands for "Greenhouse gases, Regulated Emissions, and Energy use in Transportation," and it takes into account many factors, including the embodied energy in processing machinery, fertilizers, transport fuels, processing energy inputs, feedstocks, efficiency of end use transport equipment, and so on.

Results from the GREET model vary quite a bit for different biofuel feedstocks and processes. For instance, they show us that if ethanol is processed with current methods using corn as a feedstock and coal as a process energy source, this biofuel actually contributes 3 percent more greenhouse gases than regular gasoline. However, the same corn ethanol processed by a biomass powered plant will save 52 percent of the greenhouse gases that would be generated by the use of an equivalent amount of gasoline. Furthermore, if this ethanol were generated via the cellulosic process using switchgrass as a feedstock instead of corn, it would save 85 percent of the greenhouse gases released by an equivalent amount of gasoline (Wang 2007).

Another way of looking at fuel comparisons is called Energy Return On Energy Invested (EROEI, or more simply just EROI). In various studies, the EROI for corn-based ethanol varies between 0.8 (meaning it takes 20 percent more energy to produce the ethanol than you get out of it) to about 1.6 (you get 60 percent more energy than you put in). The EROI for biodiesel made from soy, sunflower, and canola oils, as reported from a variety of sources, tends to run from about 2.4 to 4.5, which is a lot better than the figures for U.S-made, cornbased ethanol (Hall

2008). However, according to Isaias Macedo's detailed study of Brazilian ethanol production with sugarcane as a feedstock, and using their highly refined, large-scale, biomass-powered processes, the EROI for Brazilian ethanol production is around 9, which means that they get nine times as much energy out of the ethanol as it takes to make the ethanol. This thorough study includes inputs for embodied energy in the manufacturing and processing machinery, process energy, fertilizer, and so on (Blume 2007, 522). Recently, a promising new process has been demonstrated in a pilot production plant for making biodiesel from algae grown in ponds fertilized with carbon sequestered from coalburning power plant stack gases. This process appears to be cheaper than the current state-of-the-art coal-burning power plant stack gas scrubbers, so it has the potential to yield large amounts of biodiesel that are almost "free" in countries that enforce strict pollution standards requiring stack gas scrubbers.

What is my take on all this prior discussion? I believe that making ethanol from corn is a poor use of our resources if it takes food out of the mouths of hungry people. However, when you consider the fact that most U.S. corn is used as feed for livestock, and that the byproduct from the distillation process is a more nutritive material than the original raw grain feedstock, then you essentially get the same feed value back from the grain after processing it for ethanol, so corn-based ethanol makes sense provided that extra cropland is not planted solely to grow feedstocks for ethanol. According to David Blume, if we were to grow a variety of feedstocks using permaculture principles, we could process ethanol from a combination of cellulosic, starch, and sugar feedstocks to obtain EROIs similar to Brazil's value of 9 for their biomass-powered process, while improving the quality of our soils and reducing toxic agricultural chemical inputs.

Since growing oil seed crops for biodiesel generally takes up valuable agricultural land, and since the higher EROIs available by using tropical oil biodiesel feedstocks typically result in chopping down rainforests to plant palm oil plantations, I believe that the future of plant-based biodiesels (except for algae feedstocks) will be somewhat limited. Of course, when it comes down to a serious petro-oil crunch, I also believe that Americans will do whatever they can to put some kind of fuel in their automobiles, and we will generate far lower greenhouse gas emissions from biofuels than from liquefying coal for use as a non-petroleum automotive fuel (coal gasification) to replace gasoline. At this time, the biofuels with the least impact and best EROIs appear to be cellulosic or algae-based ethanol and algae-based biodiesel. I also agree with Amory Lovins et al.'s premise in their important book *Winning the Oil Endgame* that it will take a combination of drastic improvements in efficiencies, combined with increased supplies of biofuels, to enable us to create a sustainable post–Peak Oil future that avoids societal collapse. If you are concerned about maintaining a personal, or communal, supply of fuel in the event of a major petroleum supply crisis, I suggest you invest in David Blume's *Alcohol Can Be a Gas* and William Kemp's *Biodiesel, Basics and Beyond.*

The Citizen Powered Energy Handbook: Community Solutions to a Global Crisis by Greg Pahl is an inspirational book for building community-based energy systems that could continue to provide a local energy source even when the grid and/or petroleum distribution systems go down.

STEAM ENERGY

Outside of animal power (real horsepower) and water power, steam energy was the major source of power that ran this country's factories, heavy machinery, and trains throughout much of the nineteenth century and the first part of the twentieth century. Many farms and factories used a single steam engine as a "prime mover," which ran a variety of equipment through belts and pulleys (balers, lumber mills, stamp mills, etc.).

The primary advantages of steam power are that it is not dependent on high-tech refined fuels, such as diesel fuel or gasoline, and can run off locally available materials, such as wood or coal. Whenever the old-fashioned steam locomotives of the 1800s "ran out of steam," they simply needed to fill a car with wood and a tank with water, and then they would be off and running again.

Modern steam power is very economical for large industrial applications where both the mechanical energy of the steam and the waste heat of the steam are harnessed. Quite a number of hobbyists and a few small manufacturers are building steam engines for prime movers and to generate electricity for residential or factory use. If you are concerned about the long-term availability of gasoline or the stability of governments, you might want to look into steam power. For people who wish to build their own steam engines, Lindsay Books sells quite a variety of reprinted engineering manuals and other texts on steam engine design.

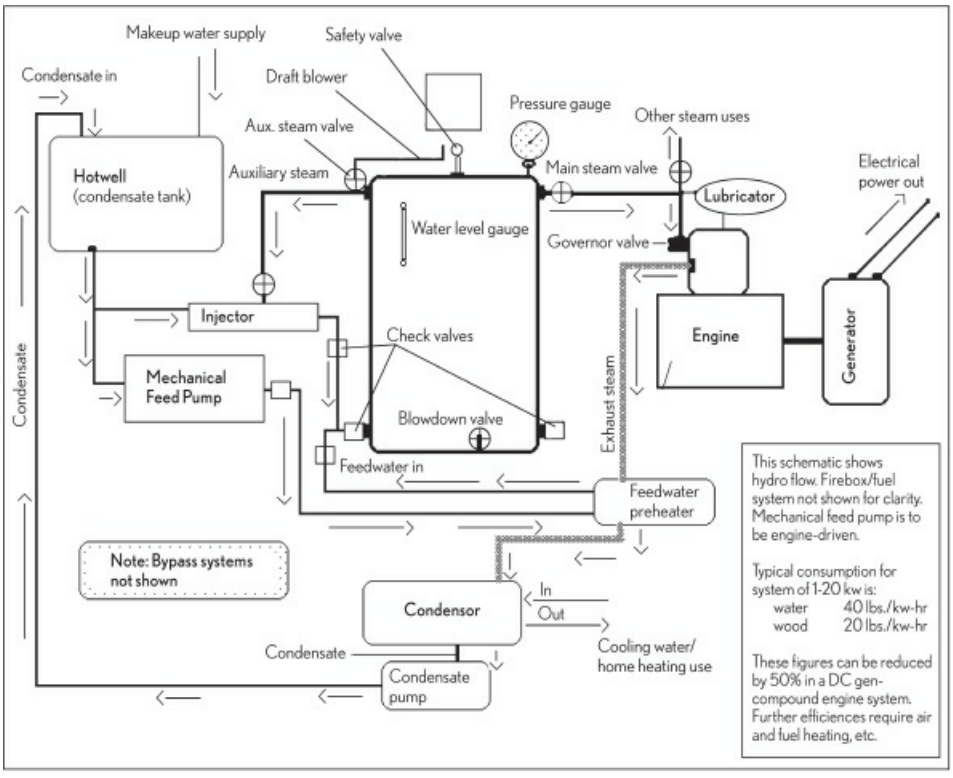


Figure 11-12. Steam-powered electricity generation. (Illustration courtesy of Sensible Steam Consultants)

FUEL CELLS

The fuel cell has recently been termed the "micro chip of the energy industry." . . .

> The fuel cell may well go down in history as one of the most important technological developments of the coming century, just as the airplane, automobile and computer were for the last one. **—Glenn D. Rambach, Director of Engineering and Applied Science, QuantumSphere, Inc.**

Fuel cells are receiving considerable press these days, being heralded as a major part of the solution to global warming and fossil fuel depletion. A fuel cell is an electrochemical device that is two to three times more efficient than an internal combustion engine at converting fuel into power. Fuel cells produce electricity, water, and heat by combining hydrogen with oxygen from the air. A fuel cell only produces electricity while fuel is supplied to it. The reaction occurs at relatively low temperatures, and no combustion takes place in the fuel cell.

Even though the first fuel cell was demonstrated by British amateur physicist William Grove in 1839, it took the space program to focus attention and development money on the creation of efficient fuel cells to provide safe, clean electrical power for moon shots. After the patents ran out, General Electric (the developer of the space program fuel cells) mostly lost interest in fuel cell technology. Geoffrey Ballard, an idealistic former geologist, persisted through years of financial hardship to spearhead research into economically feasible fuel cells that could power cars, homes, and industry. Starting in a makeshift lab in Arizona, Ballard Power Systems has brought fuel cell technology to the point where fuel cell-driven vehicles and fuel cell-powered skyscrapers are now a reality. For a fascinating look at the technical and human story behind the Ballard fuel cell, see *Powering the Future* by Tom Koppel.

How Fuel Cells Work

Like a battery, fuel cells convert chemical energy into electricity. In the case of a battery, when the battery has discharged its available power and the electrochemical reaction is all used up, the battery is thrown away if it is not reusable. If it is reusable, it is "recharged," which reverses the electrochemical reaction to separate the chemicals back into a state where they are ready to create more electricity. Unlike batteries, fuel cells use external fuel to convert chemical energy into electricity, so they don't need recharging, but they do need a steady supply of fuel. Fuel cells generally work by separating an oxygen source from a hydrogen source using a nonconducting permeable barrier, called an "electrolyte." Oxygen or hydrogen ions flow through the electrolyte to the other side of this barrier, where they are encouraged by a catalyst to combine chemically to form water. To restore electrical balance, the resulting excess electrons left on one side (electrons can't pass through the nonconducting electrolyte) are transported around the electrolyte through wires and a load, such as an electric motor.

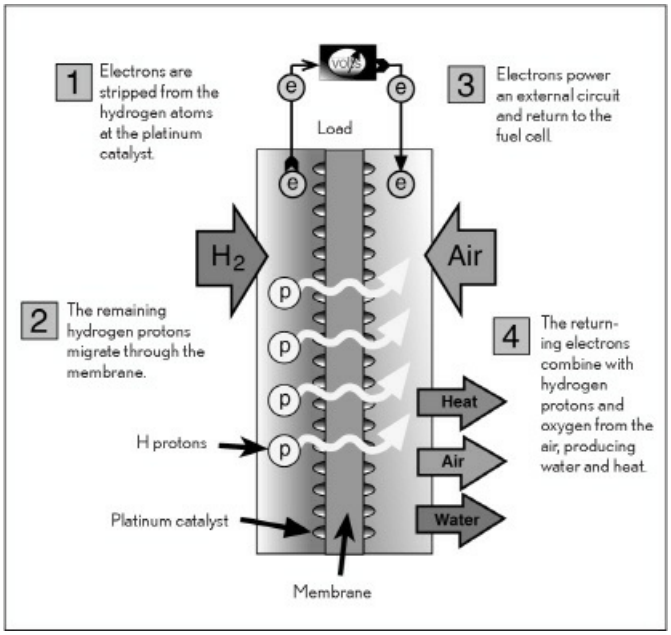


Figure 11-13. How a fuel cell works. (Illustration courtesy of *Home Power Magazine*)

There are five primary types of fuel cells, each distinguished by the type of electrolyte used to carry charge between the fuel and the oxygen. Sharon Thomas and Marcia Zalbowitz of the Los Alamos National Laboratory have written *Fuel Cells: Green Power,* an excellent comprehensive introduction to fuel cells. *Fuel Cells* covers fuel cell history, basics, chemistry, applications, and the potential impact on global warming and pollution. You can download it for free from www.lanl.gov/orgs/mpa/mpa11/Green%20Power.pdf.

Efficiency and Environmental Considerations

> Today, only about one-third of the energy consumed reaches the actual user because of the low energy conversion efficiencies of power plants. In fact, fossil and nuclear plants in the U.S. vent 21 quads of heat into the atmosphere—more heat than all the homes and commercial buildings in the country use in one year! Using fuel cells for utility applications can improve energy efficiency by as much as 60 percent while reducing environmental emissions. **—Sharon Thomas and Marcia Zalbowitz, *Fuel Cells: Green Power***

Fuel cells are considerably more efficient than internal combustion engines. Gasoline engines in automobiles are approximately 13 to 25 percent efficient. That means that 75 to 87 percent of the gasoline you put in your tank is wasted as unburned fuel or excess heat. Fuel cells convert fuel directly into electricity through a chemical reaction and already have efficiencies of 45 to 58 percent. Fuel cells attached to an electric motor can have system efficiencies of more than 40 percent, including motor losses (DRI 2000, 1). If the excess heat generated by the fuel cells is captured and used for hot water or space heating, overall system efficiency can rise to over 80

percent (Plug Power 2000).

Fuel cell–powered vehicles are no longer just a dream of the future. Most major automobile manufacturers have active fuel cell–powered vehicle programs. Today, you can take a ride in fuel cell–powered taxis in London or ride fuel cell–powered city buses in Vancouver or Chicago. Because a fuel cell produces electricity directly from hydrogen fuel, its application can be for anything that requires power in the form of electricity, rotary power, or heat. Currently, worldwide over 200 midscale 200-kW fuel cell power plants are supplying quiet, clean, efficient electrical power to office buildings and industrial plants.

Fuel cells require hydrogen for fuel. At the present time, most fuel cell–driven automobiles have some kind of system to break down liquid hydrocarbon fuels into hydrogen-rich fuels to drive the fuel cell. A fuel cell that operates on pure hydrogen and air has absolutely no harmful emissions (the byproduct is simply water vapor), but a fuel cell system that uses hydrocarbon fuels (gasoline, methanol, natural gas, etc.) does have some emissions, although they are significantly less than emissions from internal combustion engines. For example, General Motor's Opel Zafira, an experimental fuel cell car that runs on methanol, has nearly zero sulfur dioxide and nitrogen oxide emissions and only about 50 percent of the carbon dioxide (a greenhouse gas) emissions of a comparable internal combustion engine.

Currently, hydrogen to power fuel cells is most economically created by breaking down hydrocarbon-based fuels, such as natural gas or methanol. In the future, if renewable energy sources are sufficiently developed to generate most of the world's electricity, it may become economical to use electricity to crack water molecules into hydrogen and oxygen, producing hydrogen gas to power zero-emission fuel cell cars. Currently, due to electrical generation inefficiencies in fossil fuel power plants, using grid-generated electricity to produce hydrogen for fuel cell cars causes more harmful emissions and greenhouse gases than simply burning gasoline in an internal combustion engine.

Fuel Cells in the Home

Fuel cells produce quiet, clean electricity on demand at about twice the efficiency of burning fossil fuels and give off clean, usable, low-grade heat as a byproduct. They are a natural match for home cogeneration systems that provide both electricity and heat. Currently, several companies are working on residential fuel cell–powered cogeneration systems. Demonstration units have been built, but commercially available residential systems appear to have run into significant snags, so I do not know whether or not these types of systems will become commercially viable in the near future. Home systems rely on a fuel processor to transform hydrocarbon fuels (typically natural gas or propane) into hydrogen for the fuel cells. Although the main emphasis of governmentfinanced research has been on automotive applications, the technical problems for producing fuel processors for stationary systems are actually much simpler.

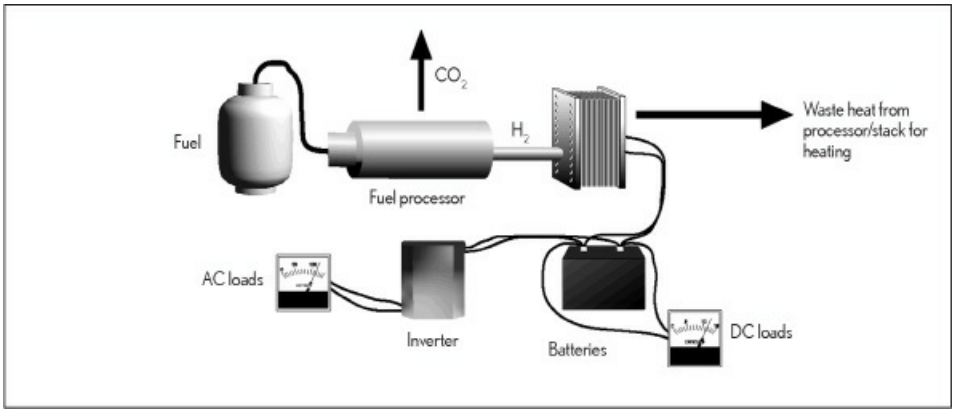


Figure 11-14. Simplified residential fuel cell system. (Illustration courtesy of *Home Power Magazine*)

HEATING WITH WOOD

Humanity has kept itself warm with wood heat for unknown millennia. When Benjamin Franklin invented the first enclosed wood stove, he felt it was too important an invention to patent, so he gave the design for his "Franklin Box" to the world. Prior to this time, people kept themselves warm by standing in front of open fireplaces that send most of their heat up the chimney and only radiate a small portion of the heat back into the room. An open fireplace constantly sucks large volumes of cold outside air into the house to replace the hot air that flows out the chimney. Heating a home with 30 cords of wood each winter was not uncommon for fireplace-heated homes. A single cord of wood measures 4 feet wide by 4 feet tall by 8 feet long, so you can imagine what a huge pile 30 cords of wood makes. What a waste of good forests!

The original Franklin Box probably cut wood consumption by three-quarters and made for betterheated homes with fewer drafts. Modern EPA-rated wood stoves have considerably improved burning efficiencies beyond that of the simple Franklin Box. Rather than dumping a significant portion of your energy up the chimney in the form of thick wood smoke, new stoves encourage secondary burning processes in different areas of the combustion chamber. In each of these combustion zones, some of the heat that would have escaped up the chimney of conventional wood stoves is instead captured and transferred to your home. In this way, the maximum heating value is extracted from your fuel with minimal environmental impact. EPA-rated, highly efficient wood stoves burn roughly one-half the fuel of noncertified wood stoves.

> We live in the mountain town of Truckee, situated near Lake Tahoe at 6,000 feet above sea level. We have had a Quadra-Fire wood stove for over 20 years. It is rated by the EPA as one of the cleanest burning, noncatalytic wood stoves on the market. Once it heats up, it burns so clean that you can't see any visible smoke coming from the chimney. When most of the wood stoves in town were still older models that did not have modern, cleanburning features, on clear, cold, windless winter nights, a thick blanket of wood smoke would settle into our town's neighborhoods. Even though our town has more than doubled in size over the past 15 years, the air quality due to wood smoke has been steadily improving since the town banned the use of non-EPA-rated wood stoves and adopted a policy of

offering cash rebates for turning in an older wood stove to be replaced by a new EPA-rated stove.

Do yourself and your neighbors a favor and replace your old wood stove with a modern, clean-burning, EPA-rated model. The bottom line is that efficient wood stoves keep your air cleaner, minimize chimney maintenance, and require fewer trips to the woodpile!

Efficient Stove Features

- **Baffle plate.** At the top of the combustion chamber, a horizontal metal plate, called a "baffle plate," performs two functions. First, it retards the flow of hot, smoky combustion chamber air as it rises toward the chimney. Second, an insulating layer (usually rock wool) on top of the plate helps to keep this plate extremely hot so that it can ignite unburned gases for secondary burning before they flow up the chimney as smoke.
- **Secondary air jets.** A set of secondary air jets provides a regulated flow of air to the area under the baffle plate to encourage complete secondary burning of the smoke in the upper zone of the combustion chamber. This smoke mixes with the fresh air from the secondary jets and ignites as it hits the hot baffle plate. If done right, all the visible smoke is burned within the wood stove.
- **Ducted outside air intake.** A significant amount of air is required to burn wood. This air has to come from someplace. The most efficient wood stoves allow for ducting the air intake to draw air directly from outside your home. If your stove draws air from inside your home, cold outside air will filter through the windows, doors, and cracks to replace the heated house air that flows up your chimney.

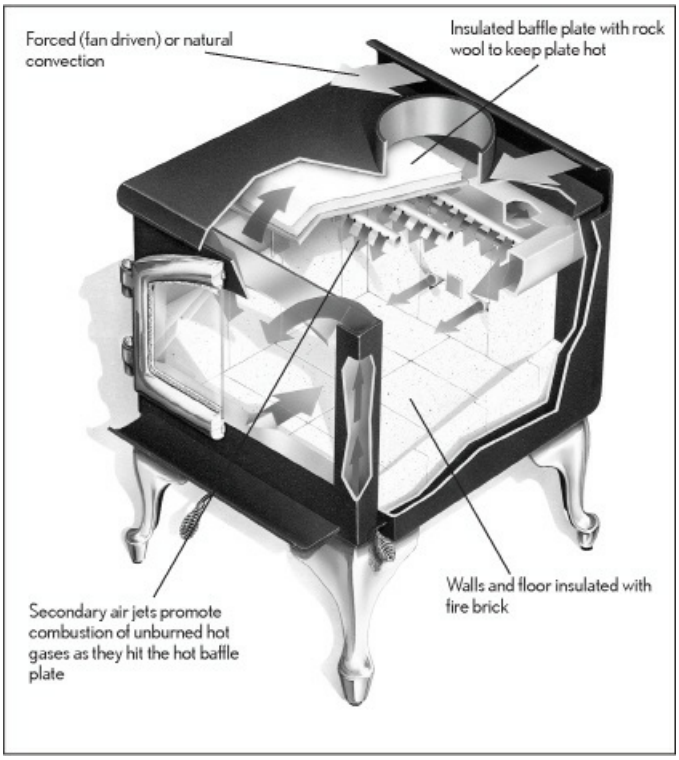

Forced (fan driven) or natural convection
Insulated baffle plate with rock wool to keep plate hot
Walls and floor insulated with fire brick
Secondary air jets promote combustion of unburned hot gases as they hit the hot baffle plate

Figure 11-15. cleanburning wood stove features. (Illustration courtesy of Aladdin Hearth Products, manufacturers of Quadra-Fire wood stoves)

- **Catalytic secondary combustion.** Some stoves rely on a catalytic element in the top of the stove to accomplish secondary burning. Although catalytic stoves can burn with excellent efficiencies, most folks prefer high-efficiency noncatalytic models because they tend to require less maintenance and are not prone to smoky back-draws when starting a fire, which can be a problem with some catalytic models.
- **Convection fan.** The efficiency of most stoves is improved by adding a blower system to transfer more heat from the stove to your home. Long turbine-type fans quietly move more air than the noisier and less expensive propeller-type fans. A nifty recent invention, which is particularly handy in homes with a limited supply of power, is a fan attached to the wood stove and powered by a thermoelectric generator that uses the heat from the wood stove to generate electricity to drive the fan.

ENERGY, POWER, AND ELECTRICITY PRIMER

Energy

Energy is often defined as the capacity for doing work. There are many different forms of energy, and many different machines and processes that transform one form of energy into another. In fact, most machines transform energy in some way, shape, or form. Chemical reactions can release energy in the form of heat, radiation (light), electricity (batteries), or

mechanical energy (expansion, such as in an engine cylinder). A moving object has *kinetic energy* due to its mass and velocity (momentum). When a vehicle crashes into a wall, the rapid transformation of its kinetic energy is devastating. Electric motors transform electrical energy into mechanical energy. When you lift a mass within a gravitational field, you increase its *potential energy*. When you lower the mass, you can extract the work that it took to raise it. An example of potential energy is using a water wheel to extract energy as water is lowered a certain distance. Another example of potential energy is a spring. When a spring is compressed, energy is stored in the spring that can be extracted when the spring relaxes back to its free state. Last, but not least, is *nuclear energy*. Physicists discovered that tremendous amounts of energy can be released by nuclear reactions that transform relatively tiny chunks of matter directly into energy.

Energy units include calories, foot-pounds, watt-hours, and BTUs (British thermal units). Some of these units are metric and others are English. A BTU is the amount of energy that it takes to raise one pound of water by 1°F in temperature. A calorie is the metric unit similar to a BTU. It is the amount of energy that it takes to raise one gram of water by 1°C in temperature. A footpound is the amount of energy (work) it takes when a force of one pound is applied through a distance of one foot (or ½ pound through 2 feet, etc.). A watt-hour is the amount of energy used when one watt of electrical power is expended for one hour. These are all different terms for describing energy, and there are multiplication factors that allow you to convert from one unit to the other.

Energy is energy, no matter which unit is used to describe it. For example, 1 BTU equals 778.3 foot-pounds equals 252 calories equals 0.29 watt-hours. Home electrical energy consumption is generally measured in kilowatthours (1 kilowatt = 1,000 watts).

Power

Power is the *rate* at which energy is used, transmitted, transformed, and so on. The *horsepower* was one of the first units of measurement for power. Prior to defining a horsepower as 550 foot-pounds per second, it was just some vague notion equal to the power available from one average horse to pull a load for a while. A watt is a unit of electrical power. It is equal to the number of volts (electromotive force) multiplied by the number of amps (electrical current). All power units can be converted. For example, one horsepower equals 550 foot-pounds per second equals 745.7 watts equals 10,680 calories per minute equals 42.44 BTUs per minute. The amount of work, or energy, is the power multiplied by the time that the power is consumed. In electrical terms, the number of watts (power) multiplied by the time (number of hours) that the watts are used gives you the watt-hours, or the amount of energy consumed.

Electricity

Because electricity is one of those things that you can’t see, touch, or hold in your hand, it can be difficult to understand. The easiest way to grasp electricity is usually to draw an analogy between

electrical characteristics and something physical that's familiar to most of us, such as water. Electricity is measured in terms of watts (power), volts (electrical potential, also known as electromotive force), amps (electrical current), and watt-hours (total energy).

Volts

The concept of *volts*, also known as *electrical potential*, is similar to the pressure that pushes electricity through a wire or some kind of load. Imagine a tall tank of water that is open to the air at the top. At the surface of the water, there is no water pressure. If you poked a hole in the side at a level equal to the surface of the water, at most the water would only dribble out through the hole. If you moved down a few feet and poked a hole in the tank, water would start to run out at a much faster rate. If you went to the bottom of the tank, where the water pressure is really high, and poked a hole in the tank, the water would spurt out at a very fast rate. The number of volts is the electrical equivalent to the water pressure in the tank. It is the driving force behind the electricity that does work in our electrical machines. One of the confusing things about voltage is that voltage is always measured between two points as a voltage differential. There is no universal voltage reference point, but the earth is often referred to as the zero voltage reference point. For instance, if you placed two identical tanks of water side by side and hooked a pipe between the bottoms of both tanks, there would be no flow of water between the tanks because there is no pressure differential to drive a flow. With respect to each other, there is no pressure differential (voltage drop), but with respect to the outside air there is significant pressure (voltage with respect to the earth). However, if you lower the level in one tank, water will begin to flow from the tank with a higher level into the tank with a lower level, because there is now a differential (voltage drop) between the two tanks.

Amps

Amperage, also known as *electrical current*, is measured in the unit known as an *amp*. It is a measure of the amount of electricity that is flowing or discharging at a given moment in a given device. Returning to the analogy of the water tank, the physical analogy to electrical current is how much water is flowing out of a hole in the tank at a given time.

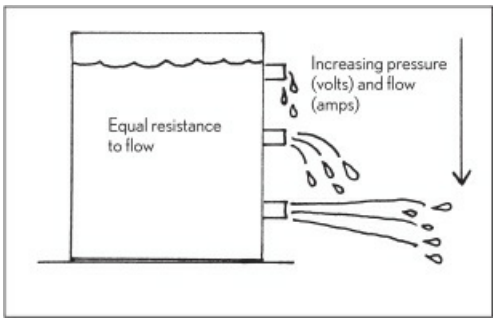


Figure 11-16. Water tank analogy to volts and amps.

Resistance

The resistance to electrical current flow is measured in terms of *ohms*. Let's return to the water tank analogy. If you welded a short, wide pipe onto the bottom of the water tank and opened it to the air, water would gush out through that opening. Because the water has a lot of pressure

behind it (volts), and the big hole has little resistance to it (ohms), there is a strong current flow (amps). If you welded a long, skinny pipe onto the tank instead of the short, fat one, the flow would be drastically reduced because the long, skinny pipe has a lot of resistance to flow. This electrical relationship is described by Ohm's Law as voltage equals current times resistance. In symbolic terms, it is $V = I \times R$ or $I = V/R$. Both equations mean the same thing. Don't ask me why they always call current "I" instead of "A." I didn't invent the standard, so it's not my fault.

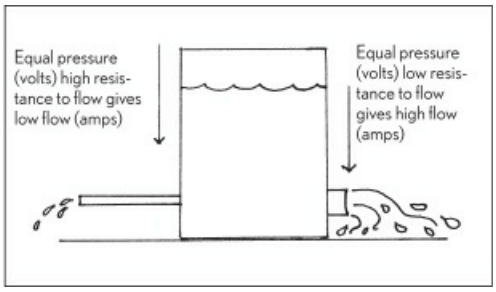

Equal pressure (volts) high resistance to flow gives low flow (amps)
Equal pressure (volts) low resistance to flow gives high flow (amps)

Figure 11-17. Resistance versus flow.

Electrical Power

Electrical power is defined as the number of volts multiplied times the number of amps, and is measured in terms of watts. If you generate a huge number of volts, such as the 20,000 volts typical of a static charge from rubbing your feet on the carpet on a dry winter's day, but there is just a tiny amount of current, then you end up with very little power and simply experience a mild shock. If you were unfortunate enough to pick up a downed high-voltage power line, it would probably kill you with a combination of high voltage and high amperage (high power) flowing through your body to the ground. On the other hand, a car battery can store a lot of energy at a low voltage (12 volts). A typical car battery voltage is so low that it is not usually dangerous to human beings. The low voltage does not have enough push to drive a significant current through human skin to cause bodily harm (because of the high resistance of our skin). However, if something with low resistance, such as a metal wrench, is shorted across the two terminals of the battery, enough current will flow to melt the ends of the wrench onto the battery terminals (low voltage times very high current equals high power). Even though batteries have low voltage, you should approach them with caution. Mechanics have been known to fry the nerves in their arm when they made a particularly good connection between a battery and a ground, dumping high current through their body.

Because Ohm's Law defines the relationship between volts, amps, and resistance (ohms), it also defines power in the same terms. According to Ohm's Law, $P = V^2/R$ or $P = I^2 \times R$. In the case of power losses when power is transmitted over wires, the power loss is not the voltage with respect to ground but the voltage *drop* from one end of the wire to the next. For example, if your wall socket provides 110 VAC, but by the time it runs through a 100-foot extension cord to a table saw it has dropped to 100 volts, the voltage drop of 10 volts multiplied by the current draw determines the power loss through the extension cord.

AC Versus DC

Batteries always generate electricity pushing the current in one direction. The electrical push from a battery, known as its voltage, stays fairly constant, dropping somewhat whenever a high

current is drawn or the battery begins to discharge a significant percentage of its capacity. This type of current is known as *direct current*. Cars, boats, RVs, batteries, and photovoltaic (PV) solar panels operate on direct current (DC).

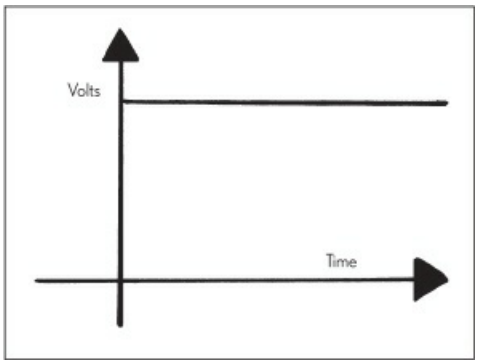


Figure 11-18. Direct current (DC).

The other type of current that is commonly talked about is *alternating current* (AC). The voltage for alternating current flips back and forth, first pulling electrons in one direction and then pulling them in the other direction. Common household current is AC. Standard electrical AC is produced by rotating electrical power-generating equipment, such as a power plant's steam- or water-driven turbines, and has a smooth sinusoidal wave form (see Figure 11-19). When you measure AC voltage using a voltmeter, you do not measure the peak voltage but the root-mean-square (RMS) voltage, which is the average voltage under each alternating current "wave."

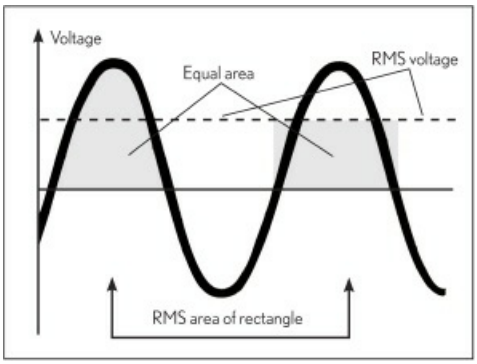


Figure 11-19. Sinusoidal alternating current (AC).

You might wonder why the world would standardize on AC power when it seems so much more complicated than DC power, but there is an excellent reason for this. About 100 years ago, a great debate raged between Thomas Edison and Nikolai Tesla over the merits of AC versus DC. Edison believed that DC was the way to go, but Tesla argued that AC was better for long-distance power transmission. Tesla was right and won the battle. According to Ohm's law, the power lost to resistance while transmitting power long distances through wire is $I^2 \times R$. Thus, in order to minimize power losses, the lower the current, the better.

Because power is the amount of current multiplied times the amount of voltage ($P = V \times I$), to transmit high power at low current requires very high voltages. Standard car batteries have a DC

voltage of only about 12 volts. To transmit significant household quantities of power at only 12 volts requires thick, expensive, hard-to-handle wires (like a fat pipe to carry a lot of water). Household voltage is 110 to 120 VAC, which works fine for most appliances, but heavy-duty appliances, such as electric clothes dryers and electric stoves, use so much power that they usually run off of 220 to 240 VAC to keep their wire sizes reasonable. Power transmission lines, such as the ones that you see strung from huge towers, transmit tremendous amounts of power over long distances. To keep power losses to a minimum, power is transmitted over these lines at extremely high voltages, on the order of 100,000 volts (to keep the current reasonably low).

Now we come to the real reason why AC became the grid standard instead of DC. Until recently, there was no efficient way to transform DC from a low voltage to a high voltage and back again. An electrical device, called a transformer, can simply and efficiently transform AC from low voltage to high voltage or vice versa, but transformers do not work on DC. When you turn a low-voltage signal into high voltage, you don't get something for nothing—the power remains the nearly the same. When low voltage AC is transformed to a higher voltage, the current is proportionately lowered. The new high-voltage AC has slightly less power because some power is lost in the form of excess heat in the transformer. The transformer power losses are miniscule compared to what the losses would be if you tried to transmit lots of power long distances at low voltages. Modern "inverters," which efficiently change DC into AC, have finally made it practical to store DC power in large battery banks and then convert it into AC for use in powering standard AC appliances or for transmitting significant power across the grid.

Proper Wire Sizing

From the previous discussion, you can begin to see that wires must be properly sized to match the voltage and power requirements of your system. Wire size is typically a function of the amount of current that is trying to squeeze through the wire and not the voltage that is driving the current. Wire resistance is inversely proportional to the square of its diameter, so fatter wires will cause less voltage and power loss than skinnier wires (just like pushing water through a bigger pipe), but fatter wires are more expensive due to increased copper content. Because typical household wiring is designed to run on 110/120 VAC, if you try to drive significant loads through the same wire at 12 VDC (common battery voltage), you will be running 10 times the current and will overload your wiring. In severe cases, your wires could get so hot that they could start a fire. The National Electrical Code (NEC) has standard guidelines to cover wire sizing and other facets of wiring to ensure that buildings are wired properly and safely (if wired according to code). Certified electricians are required by law to wire according to the NEC. The following chart, developed by Dankoff Solar, is a simplification of NEC wiring size specifications appropriate to residential RE applications.

Battery Voltage: 12 Volts, 24 Volts, or 48 Volts?

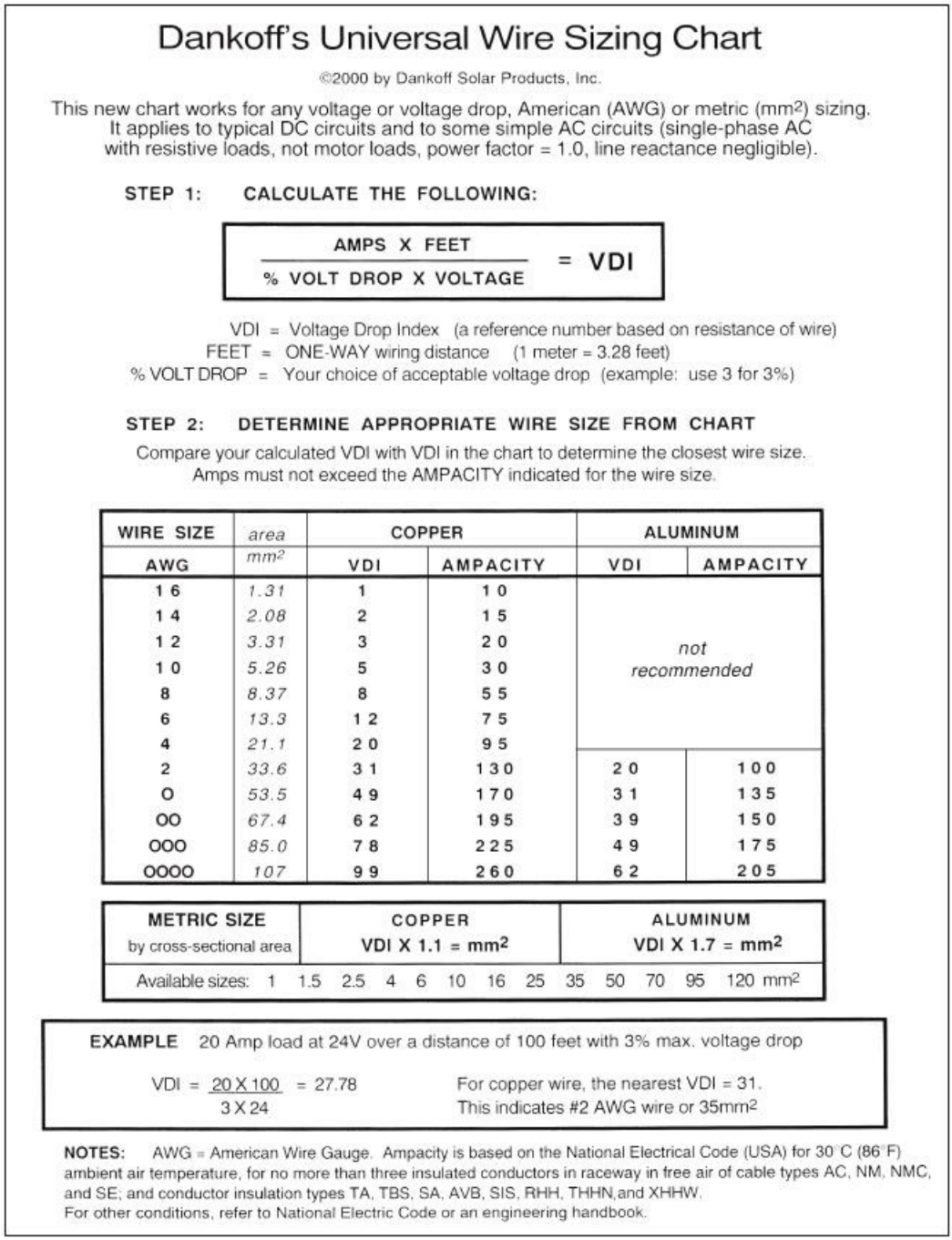
Now that you understand a little about power, current, and wire sizing, I'll talk briefly about

choosing the DC voltage for your battery banks and inverter. By choosing a DC voltage that's higher than 12 volts, you can run thinner wire for longer distances between your solar panels, wind turbines, water turbines, battery bank, and/ or inverter. Especially in large RE systems, or in cases where for one reason or another significant distances separate major system components, the high currents involved in transmitting power at 12 VDC can mandate thick, unwieldy, expensive wiring. Each time you double the system voltage, you cut the current in half and cut the power losses through a given wire size by a factor of four. Remember that 12-volt batteries and solar panels must be hooked in series in sets of two for 24 VDC and sets of four for 48 VDC. Most inverters are field switchable to different DC voltages.

> **CAUTION: Your system components must match system voltages and must be hooked up with wire rated to handle both current loads and voltage. If you attempt to run a component at a voltage other than what it is designed for, system components will probably be ruined.If your wiring is undersized for your system, you may create a fire hazard or ruin expensive equipment due to excessive voltage losses.**

Capacitance

Capacitance is an electrical quality that describes an electrical component's capacity to store a charge. Do not confuse electrical capacitance with battery capacity, because they are different. (Batteries produce energy by electrochemical reactions, not capacitance.) The unit of measure for capacitance is a *farad.* A single farad is a very large capacitance. Electrical components, called capacitors, are usually sized in "microfarads" or smaller. A microfarad is a millionth of a farad. Capacitors store small amounts of electrical energy similar to the way a spring stores mechanical energy. A voltage drives a certain amount of charge into a capacitor. If the voltage lowers, some of this charge is released from the capacitor. Another physical analogy is a pressure tank on a home water system. If the pump pressure increases, more water can be pumped into the storage tank that then becomes available for later use. Under a constant voltage, once the capacitor is charged, current ceases to flow through a capacitor (kind of like how a pressure tank stops filling once it reaches the same pressure as the pump cutout setting). This explanation does not indicate how a capacitor is used, but at least it gives you some idea about what it does.



Dankoff's Universal Wire Sizing Chart

©2000 by Dankoff Solar Products, Inc.

This new chart works for any voltage or voltage drop, American (AWG) or metric (mm^2) sizing. It applies to typical DC circuits and to some simple AC circuits (single-phase AC with resistive loads, not motor loads, power factor = 1.0, line reactance negligible).

STEP 1: CALCULATE THE FOLLOWING:

$$\frac{\text{AMPS X FEET}}{\text{\% VOLT DROP X VOLTAGE}} = \text{VDI}$$

VDI = Voltage Drop Index (a reference number based on resistance of wire)
FEET = ONE-WAY wiring distance (1 meter = 3.28 feet)
% VOLT DROP = Your choice of acceptable voltage drop (example: use 3 for 3%)

STEP 2: DETERMINE APPROPRIATE WIRE SIZE FROM CHART

Compare your calculated VDI with VDI in the chart to determine the closest wire size. Amps must not exceed the AMPACITY indicated for the wire size.

WIRE SIZE	area	COPPER		ALUMINUM	
AWG	mm^2	VDI	AMPACITY	VDI	AMPACITY
16	1.31	1	10	*not recommended*	
14	2.08	2	15		
12	3.31	3	20		
10	5.26	5	30		
8	8.37	8	55		
6	13.3	12	75		
4	21.1	20	95		
2	33.6	31	130	20	100
0	53.5	49	170	31	135
00	67.4	62	195	39	150
000	85.0	78	225	49	175
0000	107	99	260	62	205

METRIC SIZE by cross-sectional area	COPPER VDI X 1.1 = mm^2	ALUMINUM VDI X 1.7 = mm^2
Available sizes:	1 1.5 2.5 4 6 10 16 25 35 50 70 95 120 mm^2	

EXAMPLE 20 Amp load at 24V over a distance of 100 feet with 3% max. voltage drop

$$\text{VDI} = \frac{20 \times 100}{3 \times 24} = 27.78$$

For copper wire, the nearest VDI = 31.
This indicates #2 AWG wire or 35mm^2

NOTES: AWG = American Wire Gauge. Ampacity is based on the National Electrical Code (USA) for 30°C (86°F) ambient air temperature, for no more than three insulated conductors in raceway in free air of cable types AC, NM, NMC, and SE; and conductor insulation types TA, TBS, SA, AVB, SIS, RHH, THHN, and XHHW.
For other conditions, refer to National Electric Code or an engineering handbook.

Figure 11-20. Dankoff's universal wire sizing chart. (Illustration courtesy of Dankoff Solar)

Inductance

Inductance is an electrical quality that describes an electrical component's capacity to store electrical energy in the form of a magnetic field. Transformers use the magic of inductance to "induce" a voltage and current in one set of transformer windings (the "secondary" coil) by the

action of the magnetic field created by current flowing through a different set of windings (the "primary" coil). Inductance works on changing current (AC) and has little or no effect on constant current (DC). "Inductive loads" are loads that usually have a high starting current, such as in starting most large electric motors, and then settle down to a considerably lower power draw once they get going. The "surge capacity" on your inverter tells you how large a Short-term inductive load your inverter can handle.

REFERENCES

Photovoltaic RE Systems in General

ıe Renewable Energy Handbook: A Guide to Rural Energy Independence, Off-Grid and Sustainable Living, **by William H. Kemp.** 2005, 567 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0973323320. Published by Aztext Press, 2622 Mountain Road, Tamworth, Ontario K0K 3G0, Canada. List price $29.95

This is probably the best all-around "howto" guide to renewable energy systems. It will educate you about all the major system components and help you perform your system planning and installation. Covers everything from composting toilets, to PV systems, smallscale wind, MicroHydro, and backup fossil fuel systems. Includes some basics on biofuels, such as how to process your own biodiesel from used cooking oil or lard. Some of the other references cover their individual topics in greater detail and depth, but if you want to buy just one book, this is the one to buy!

ıotovoltaics: Design and Installation Manual, **by Solar Energy International.** 2004, 315 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715202. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $59.95

This is a practical guide to designing and installing photovoltaic systems. This book is for the building and RE professional or for the owner-builder who wants to design and install his or her own system. This book will show you how to do it right and according to the proper building codes. Includes several valuable appendices on topics such as solar data, sun charts, and work sheets for system sizing and design. This is not a basic electrical wiring textbook, so if you have little practical experience with standard house wiring, then you will also need to purchase a basic house wiring manual to accompany this text. Additionally, I suggest that you spend a fair amount of time picking your RE supplier's brain to help you select your components, as this book does not recommend specific brands and hardware.

ıwer with Nature: Alternative Energy Solutions for Homeowners, **by Rex A. Ewing.** 2006, 287 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0965809894. Published by PixyJack Press, P.O. Box 149, Masonville, CO 80541. List price $25.00

Shorter and simpler than Kemp's book, *Power with Nature* provides a nice clear summary of RE options that will help you to size your system and figure out what will work best in your particular application. Ewing provides numerous pearls of wisdom gleaned from building and living off-grid.

***e Citizen-Powered Energy Handbook: Community Solutions to a Global Crisis,* by Greg Pahl.** 2007, 347 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1933392127. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $21.95

This is a very inspiring book! I agree with Greg Pahl that the future of America lies in action at a community level to promote and live sustainable principles. There is strength in communities that pool talents and resources that the lone-wolf survivalist will never come close to attaining. This book looks at energy production on a community level and shows clear examples of how it is done, from the wood chip power plant of Burlington, Vermont; to the sustainable community commitment of Willits, California; to the wind and biomass energy co-ops of Denmark, Holland, and Germany. Pahl shows us many options for making Community Supported Energy (CSE) a reality in our own communities. At some not-too-distant future time, CSE could be the cornerstone that helps us to maintain some level of a modern technological society as the global economy slides into history.

***rth: The Sequel: The Race to Reinvent Energy and Stop Global Warming,* by Fred Krupp and Miriam Horn.** 2008, 279 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0393066906. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $24.95

Co-authored by the president of the Environmental Defense Fund, this fine book provides an inspiring survey of the gamut of near-term energy technologies and the companies turning them into reality. These are the technologies that stand a chance of solving global warming, providing badly need jobs, and salvaging our technological society in a world that has passed the peak in oil production. A pleasure to read some good news for a change!

***al Goods Solar Living Sourcebook: Your Complete Guide to Renewable Energy Technologies and Sustainable Living,* by John Schaeffer.** 2007, 634 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0916571061. Published by Gaim Real Goods, distributed by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $35.00

This is a combination of a catalog and design manual. Use this book to help you plan your new home or improve the environmental impact of an existing one. Covers everything from composting toilets and energyefficient appliances to solar panels and wind turbines.

***e Homeowner's Guide to Renewable Energy:Achieving Energy Independence through Solar, Wind, Biomass and Hydropower,* by Dan Chiras.** 2006, 335 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715363. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $27.95

This is more of a survey type of book than a "howto" kind of book. It will introduce you to a number of options and help you make decisions about what you can do to lower the energy bills on your existing home or to plan a new home with a minimal carbon footprint. Covers space and hot water heating as well as power generation.

Space and Water Heating

***lar Hot Water Heating: Lessons Learned, 1977 to Today,* by Tom Lane.** 2008, 197 pp. (paperback), no ISBN. Published by ECS Solar Energy Systems, Inc., 6120 SW 13th St.,

Gainesville, FL 32608. List price $30.00 for the black and white edition, $58.00 for the color edition

Written by a solar installer and distributor with over 30 years of experience, this book gives you all the nitty-gritty details you need to build your solar system right the first time, without having to make any of the mistakes that Tom made while learning the trade from the ground up when nobody knew much about solar hot-water systems. Self-published and printed in small quantities, this ring-bound manual is updated several times a year. Includes numerous system layouts (with pros and cons), electronic controls, system troubleshooting, performance estimating, protection and mounting for severe storms and hurricanes, maintenance, solar pool heating, and so on. For the serious owner-builder or commercial contractor, this handbook is well worth the money. Find it via their Web site at www.ecs-solar.com.

***lar Water Heating: A Comprehensive Guide to Solar Water and Space Heating Systems,* by Bob Ramlow and Benjamin Nusz.** 2006, 239 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715615. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $24.95

This is another comprehensive, "how-to," nuts-and bolts kind of guide to solar space heating and hotwater heating. Like Tom Lane's book, this one is also written by a solar installer and distributor with over 30 years of experience. Compared to *Solar Hot Water Heating: Lessons Learned, 1977 to Today,* this book is oriented more toward the homeowner and less toward the building professional. Very helpful for understanding and applying the special plumbing and electrical components common to solar hot-water systems, including radiant floor heating systems.

***tural Home Heating: The Complete Guide to Renewable Options,* by Greg Pahl.** 2003, 281 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498227. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $30.00

This is a "survey of the options" type of guide to heating your home using renewable energy. In addition to passive and active solar heating, this book also includes information on biofuel boilers, wood boilers, wood heat, and both ground source and ambient air heat pumps. Useful for determining what the best combination might be for your home, both as a retrofit to an existing home or when planning and building a new home.

Wind Power

***ind Power: Renewable Energy for Home, Farm and Business,* by Paul Gipe.** 2004, 504 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498142. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $50.00

This is still the bible for small to midsize windpower applications, and it has been completely revised and updated. Very detailed and comprehensive, it has excellent engineering and educational information on all aspects of wind energy, plus numerous case examples of wind systems in all sizes. Includes information on site evaluation, economics of wind-power generation, towers, turbine design, hybrid system design, grid interconnection, pumping water

with wind, maintenance, purchasing used systems, and so on.

***ind Energy Basics: A Guide to Small and Micro Wind Systems,* by Paul Gipe.** 1999, 122 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1890132071. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $25.00

This is a scaled-down version of Gipe's *Wind Power* book, tailored for the home RE system. Coupled with some of the latest manufacturers' spec sheets from your local RE dealer, this book should provide you with what you need to know for purchasing and installing a small wind system, but if you are serious about wind power, you should spring for Gipe's comprehensive *Wind Power: Renewable Energy for Home, Farm and Business*.

Biofuels

***cohol Can Be a Gas: Fueling an Ethanol Revolution for the 21st Century,* by David Blume.** 2007, 592 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0979043772. Published by The International Institute for Ecological Agriculture, 309 Cedar St. #127, Santa Cruz, CA 95060. List price $47.00

David Blume's opus, *Alcohol Can Be a Gas*, is the definitive guide to weaning America from the oil habit via biofuels. In great detail, it thoroughly debunks the myth that ethanol production takes nearly as much energy to run the process as it produces, and shows how America can thrive by sustainably growing both an abundant food supply and biofuels at the same time (they can actually feed each other synergistically). Blume shows us a pathway to personal and national energy independence. David Blume has been an alcohol pioneer since Buckminster Fuller, one of America's foremost visionary geniuses, coached and coaxed Blume in the 1970s to continue to pursue their united dream of energy independence through biofuels. Blume is a hands-on kind of guy, having been an organic farmer, inventor, permaculture teacher, and alcohol pioneer over the past 30 years. This book is encyclopedic in scope, and is for everyone from policymakers to consumers to the backyard tinker who wishes to make ethanol and convert an existing gasoline-powered car to run on ethanol fuel.

***odiesel, Basics and Beyond: A Comprehensive Guide to Production and Use for the Home and Farm,* by William H. Kemp.** 2006, 587 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0973323337. Published by Aztext Press, 2622 Mountain Road, Tamworth, Ontario K0K 3G0, Canada. List price $29.95

If you want to process and produce your own biodiesel, this is the book for you. *Biodiesel Basics and Beyond* aims to separate fact from fiction and to educate potential home, farm, and cooperative manufacturers on the economic production of quality biodiesel from both waste and virgin oil feedstock. The book includes detailed processes and lists of equipment required to produce biodiesel that meets North American standards, a description of how farmers can use excess oilseed as a feedstock for biodiesel production, the use of the co-byproduct glycerin in making soap, a guide to numerous reference materials, and a list of supplier data.

***odiesel: Growing a New Energy Economy,* second edition, by Greg Pahl.** 2008, 296 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1933392967. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $18.00

This book is about the politics, power, and science surrounding the use of biodiesel to replace

a substantial portion of our petroleum-based diesel and home-heating fuel oils. Even though it is not a "how to" book, if your passion is biofuels, you should read this one.

> **NOTE: See Chapter 14 for more information and resources related to alcohol production.**

Micro-Hydropower

You can get decent micro-hydro installation and system design guidelines both from Alternative Power Machine at www.apmhydro.com or from Energy Systems Design at www.microhydropower.com (see resources). If you want more information than either of these sources offer, the following book is currently the best source of information.

***icrohydro: Clean Power from Water,* by Scott Davis.** 2004, 157 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865714847. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $22.95

Finally, there is a good comprehensive micro-hydro manual for the homeowner with access to a creek or river. Written by a man who got his hands dirty and his feet wet on numerous occasions, this book tells you what you need to know to evaluate your micro-hydro site, design a system, then install and maintain that system to provide yourself with electric power 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. This is a practical handbook for folks with some property and a creek that has either rapid flow (like 10 mph or more) or at least 2 feet (preferably more than 25 feet) of elevation drop from the water source to the generating area.

Energy Efficiency

***e Carbon Busters Home Energy Handbook: Slowing Climate Change and Saving Money,* by Godo Stoyke.** 2007, 171 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715691. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $12.95

This excellent guide is written by the president of Carbon Busters (www.carbonbusters.com), a company that has helped their clients to save over 121 million pounds of CO_2 and $16 million in reduced utility bills. If you want to make a difference in both your carbon footprint and your bottom dollar, this is the book for you. Covers personal transportation, electric power, green heating and cooling for your home, and environmental goods and services. Includes excellent charts for comparing specific brands and models of appliances, cars, and so on.

***nsumer Guide to Home Energy Savings: All New Listings of the Most Efficient Products You Can Buy,* 9th edition,** by Jennifer Thorne Amann, Alex Wilson, and Katie Ackerly. 2007, 241 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865716025. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $17.95

This is another excellent guide to saving energy in the home. Written by top-notch experts in

the field of energy efficiency and products with minimal environmental impact, you know you can trust their information and product recommendations to guide you to the best products, systems, and techniques for saving energy in your home and reducing your contribution to global climate change and environmental degradation.

Fuel Cells

***e Hydrogen Age: Empowering a Clean-Energy Future,* by Geoffrey B. Holland and James J. Provenzano.** 2007, 270 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1586857868. Published by Gibbs Smith, P.O. Box 667, Layton, UT 84041. List price $24.95

This is an excellent book for introducing the layperson to the broad application of hydrogen as an energy storage and fuel medium, including fuels cells; hydrogen generation and storage; automotive, rail, boat, and flight applications, and so on. Each chapter is well documented with footnotes and references so you can dive deeper into each subject if you wish. This is the best introduction to fuel cells and hydrogen technology that I know of. As fossil fuels decline, hydrogen generated by renewable energy shows the most promise for providing an easily usable and storable high-density fuel to replace oil and natural gas, and the technology is currently on the verge of economic feasibility.

***lar Hydrogen Chronicles,* edited by Walter Pyle.** 1998, 272 pp. (E-book), ISBN 0-9663703-0-9. Published by Wheelock Mountain Publications, an imprint of Good Idea Creative Services, 324 Minister Hill Rd., Wheelock, VT 05851. List price $12.95

This is a compilation of interesting and practical articles about the production, purification, storage, and use of hydrogen produced by energy from RE systems. If you are a hands-on kind of person, you can start using hydrogen today with help from this book, using currently available technology. Walter Pyle, editor of the *Solar Hydrogen Chronicles,* is a regular contributor of articles to *Home Power Magazine*. His company, H-Ion Solar, sells products for making, storing, and using hydrogen (see resources). This e-book may be purchased and downloaded at www.goodideacreative.com/shc.html.

Miscellaneous

***s Engines and Producer-Gas Plants,* by R. E.Mathot.** 1905, 314 pp. (paperback), ISBN 1-55918-245-8. Published by Lindsay Publications, P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915-0538. List price $14.95

This reprinted classic book shows you how to make special gas generators to convert coal, charcoal, and wood into combustible gases for use in internal combustion engines. Scaled-down versions of these digesters were used all over the world during WWII and the following years to compensate for petroleum shortages. They could be useful again at some point in our future, but implementation of this process will require significant fabrication capability (access to a machine shop).

***ɔuse Wiring with the National Electrical Code:Based on the 1999 National Electrical Code,* by Ray C. Mullin.** 1999, 416 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0827383500. Published by Delmar Publishers, P.O. Box 15015, Albany, NY 12212. List price $54.95

If you plan on wiring your own house or RE system, pick up a copy of the NEC for about $130, or this cheaper, clearer, simpler, more instructive manual on house wiring per the code.

ndsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915; phone: (815) 935-5353; fax: (815) 935-5477; Web site: www.lindsaybks.com.

Lindsay Publications reprints and distributes a huge variety of older manuals on how to make and build almost anything, including many books on old-fashioned steam engines. Skip Goebel, owner of Sensible Steam Consultants, highly recommends *Steam Engine Design*, ISBN 0-917914-10-4, available from Lindsay Publications. Classic books come and go at Lindsay Publications, so when you see a book that catches your interest, don't wait too long or it may be gone.

Magazines

ɔme Power Magazine. Subscription: $24.95 per year for 6 issues. Home Power, P.O. Box 520, Ashland, OR 97520. Call (800) 707-6585 or see their Web site at www.homepower.com.

Home Power is the premier magazine for people interested in residential-size renewable energy systems. *Home Power* publishes numerous informative do-it-yourself articles on all aspects of small- to midscale RE. Check out their incredibly useful Web site for solar insolation and seasonal wind-energy maps or to search the *Home Power* database for RE manufacturers, suppliers, and dealers, either by name or location. They also post practical and informative articles, a system-sizing workbook, and many green links to other related sites. They sell a set of CDs that cover all past issues of *Home Power* plus audio interviews and useful RE sizing and applications programs.

lar Today. Subscription: $29.00 per year for 6 issues. Solar Today Magazine, 2400 Central Avenue, Suite A, Boulder, CO 80301. Call (303) 443-3130 or see their Web site at www.solartoday.org.

Solar Today is the award-winning magazine of the American Solar Energy Society (www.ases.org). It covers all solar technologies, from photovoltaics to climate-responsive buildings to wind power. Regular topics include building case studies, energy policy, and community-scale projects.

Resources

NOTE: See also the resource section of Chapter 7 for energy-efficient building resources, and the Resources section of Chapter 2 for major organizations devoted to sustainable technologies, including renewable energy.

Renewable Energy Dealers

NOTE: This is by no means a complete list, but will provide you with several large dealers that can help you figure out what you need/ want and can be of significant assistance when designing your RE system. Most of the following dealers offer design guides and design consultation, but don't forget to check out your local dealer, who may be able to offer you better service.

AA Solar Service and Supply, Inc., 2021 Zearing NW, Albuquerque, NM 87104; phone: (800) 245-0311; fax: (505) 243-4900; Web site: www.aaasolar.com.

Most RE dealers are very knowledgeable about electrical energy systems, but not great on solar hot water, which is often delegated to the plumbing contractors. This dealer does an excellent job with solar hot water and space heating, as well as solar electric applications. AAA's Web site has a good online design guide and educational introduction to a variety of RE topics.

ıe Alternative Energy Store, 43 Broad St., Suite A408, Hudson, MA 01749; phone: (877) 878-4060; fax: (978) 562-5854; Web site: www.altenergystore.com.

This dealer advertises itself as a discount online RE dealer. In addition to free basic introductory online educational guides on various RE subjects, the store's Web site has a section called "Alt-E University," which contains a series of renewable energy workshops for varying fees.

ıckwoods Solar Electric Systems, 1589 Rapid Lightning Creek Rd., Sandpoint, ID 83864; phone: (208) 263-4290; fax: (208) 265-4788; Web site: www.backwoodssolar.com.

Backwoods Solar Electric Systems is a favored supplier among many off-the-grid backwoods types. The company specializes in solar-generated home electricity, dedicated to serving homes located beyond the reach of utility lines. The company's own home and business location is 2 miles from the closest utility lines, and has been powered entirely by equipment in their catalog for the past 20 years. Backwoods has an extensive catalog that includes a modest section devoted to design guidelines.

ısis Montana, Inc., 436 Red Fox Lane, Stevensville, MT 59870; phone: (877) 627-4768; fax: (406) 777-0830; Web site: www.oasismontana.com.

Another excellent supplier of RE goods and services. They design and ship systems all over the world. See their Web site for an abundance of technical articles and information. For $10.00 they will send you their design guide and product catalog on CD-ROM.

ːal Goods. 13771 South Hwy 101, Hopland, CA 95449; phone: (707) 744-2100; fax (707) 462-4807; Web site: www.realgoods.com.

Real Goods sells far more than just RE products. They have an RE catalog, a gift catalog with nifty ecofriendly gifts, an eco and RE consulting business, a nonprofit Solar Living Institute, and a bookstore.

ːrra Solar Systems, 563 C Idaho Maryland Rd., Grass Valley, CA 95945; phone: (888) 667-6527; fax: (530) 273-1760; Web site: www.sierrasolar.com.

Sierra Solar Systems is a full-service RE supplier. For 30 years, they have been designing and supplying solar, wind, and micro-hydro electric systems all over the world. The owner, Jon Hill, has a BSME degree from NYU, and has been working and living with RE since he first lived off-grid in the late 1970s. Sierra Solar offers an extensive catalog, which includes an excellent design guide to help you plan your system. Check out Sierra's comprehensive "Design Center" on its Web site for RE information, design assistance, and guidelines.

The online system-sizing guide is particularly helpful. In addition to the catalog, this Web site also contains interesting and practical RE articles plus links to other RE/green sites.

lar Wind Works, P.O. Box 2511, Truckee, CA 96160; phone: (530) 582-4503; fax: (530) 582-4603; Web site: www.solarwindworks.com.

Solar Wind Works is a full-service RE supplier and installer. The owner, Chris Worcester, has lived off-grid in the deep snows of the High Sierra Mountains since the mid-1970s. This company has installed wind and solar PV systems across the western states, and is the U.S. distributor for the rugged and reliable Proven brand of wind turbines. The company lives what it sells and installs.

nelco, 2086 UD Hwy 93 North, Victor, MT 59875; phone: (888) 786-3526; fax: (406) 642-9768; Web site: www.sunelco.com.

Sunelco, another full-service RE supplier, has an excellent combination catalog and design guide to help you plan your system. You can shop online, order their design guide, or access the System Planning Center via the Web site.

nweaver, 1049 1st NH Turnpike, Northwood, NH 03261; phone: (603) 942-5863; fax: (603) 942-7730; Web site: www.sunweavers.com.

Since its founding in 1987, Sunweaver has earned national recognition for its pioneering work in incorporating innovative technologies for water, power, and heat, especially its mechanical system designs for independent, off-grid buildings. This company offers a wide range of products plus expert design and engineering services.

Wind Turbines

If you are seriously interested in wind power, I highly recommend that you obtain *How to Buy a Wind-Electric System*, an article by Ian Woofenden and Mick Sagrillo, published in *Home Power* 122 (see Magazines p. 366), December 2007/January 2008. This article provides a good summary of the steps to evaluating your energy requirements and wind opportunities and to purchasing a wind-energy system. Most important, the authors offer a comparison of specifications for 24 wind turbines that are, in their opinion, reliable at the time of publication. This article may be found at *Home Power*'s Web site, www.homepower.com.

Wind energy is a fast-growing field, and the technology is constantly changing. I am listing a few of the well-known manufacturers. Just because a manufacturer is not listed does not mean that it does not provide quality products and service. See a reputable RE dealer for the latest technology, reliability statistics, costs, system design assistance, and information on other players in the field of wind energy.

RE (Abundant Renewable Energy), 22700 NE Mountain Top Rd., Newberg, OR 97132; phone: (503) 538-8298; fax: (971) 404-3059; Web site: www.abundantre.com.

ARE founder Robert Preus has been involved with wind power for about 20 years. The company makes fine 2.5-kW and 10-kW wind turbines and comes highly recommended by Mick Sagrillo, a well known installer and instructor in the field of wind energy.

rgey Wind Power, 2200 Industrial Blvd., Norman, OK 73069; phone: (405) 364-4212; fax: (405) 364-2078; Web site: www.bergey.com.

Bergey Wind Power has been manufacturing wind turbines since 1980 and is considered by many to make the "cadillac" of small wind turbines. Bergey's Web site is an excellent source for information on wind energy, containing a large selection of technical articles, "howto" information, wind maps, news articles, and other information on wind energy and wind systems.

ariah Power, 650 South Rock Blvd. #10, Reno, NV 89502; phone: (775) 831-9463; fax: (775) 201-0467; Web site: www.mariahpower.com.

Unlike the other wind-power companies in this listing, Mariah Power does not have a proven track record. I am including a listing for Mariah Power because it is a newcomer to the small wind turbine market that appears to have great potential as a reliable, cost-effective, simple-to-install, fully integrated package that should work smoothly in both off-grid and grid-tied applications. Time will tell whether or not Mariah Power wind turbines prove reliable.

oven Energy Ltd., Stewarton, Kilmarnock, Ayrshire KA3 5LH, Scotland (U.S. distributor: Solar Wind Works, see above); phone: 01560 485570; Web site: www.provenenergy.co.uk.

Proven's wind turbines have proven themselves in harsh conditions ranging from Antarctica to the stormy coasts of Scotland and are globally renowned for robust, reliable turbine performance.

Micro-Hydropower

ternative Power and Machine, 4040 Highland Ave., Grants Pass, OR 97526; phone: (541) 476-8916; Web site: www.apmhydro.com.

Alternative Power and Machine provides micro-hydro systems that work with water that has heads of 10 to 600 feet and flows from 2 to 250 GPM. Call for catalog and applications manual. These reliable turbines are repairable and easy to work on. With hundreds of models to choose from, they can supply a model that is optimally suited for many different applications. Alternative Power and Machine makes their own efficient, low-maintenance brushless DC alternator.

ıergy Systems and Design, P.O. Box 4557, Sussex, New Brunswick E4E 5L7, Canada; phone: (506) 433-3151; fax: (506) 433-6151; Web site: www.microhydropower.com.

Energy Systems and Design has been making micro-hydro systems since 1980 and offers a wide variety of products. Their Stream Engine can operate at heads as low as 6 feet and up to 300 feet. They also offer a low-head turbine that can generate significant amounts of power with heads of only 2–10 feet, and another special product that generates power with flow rates as low as 3 gpm but with a head of 100 feet or greater. Their Web site has a good introduction to micro-

hydro, and applications and installation information. Energy Systems makes their own efficient, low-maintenance brushless DC alternator.

ck Rabbit Energy Systems, 425 Fairfield Ave., Stamford, CT 06902; phone: (203) 961-8133; fax: (203) 961-0382; Web site: www.jackrabbitmarine.com.

Jackrabbit makes a propeller-type, submersible micro-hydro generator that was developed for sailboats but will work in any fast-moving creek or river. To see whether this will work in your creek, use the Ping-Pong ball test. Toss a Ping-Pong ball into your creek and run along beside it. The flow will produce a barely usable supply of electricity at a very fast walk, but if you have trouble keeping up with the ball, the flow could provide you with a worthwhile source of power. If you have more than 10 feet of head, it's probably best to go with a system from one of the other micro-hydro suppliers instead. At 2–10 feet of head, if you have high flow, Energy Systems and Design makes a special low-head turbine that will produce far more energy than a Jackrabbit generator. Jackrabbit also sells quite a variety of RE products focused on the marine business, including wind turbines.

Power Engineering, P.O. Box 1567, Redway, CA 95560; phone: (707) 986-7771.

Lo Power Engineering, previously known as Harris Hydroelectric Systems, is another reputable supplier of micro-hydro systems. Like the other two micro-hydro turbine manufacturers, Lo Power Engineering makes their own efficient, low-maintenance brushless DC alternator. Call them for a catalog, design guide, and price quotation.

Fuel Cells and Hydrogen Systems

llard Power Systems, 9000 Glenlyon Parkway, Burnaby, British Columbia V5J 5J9, Canada; phone: (604) 454-0900; fax: (604) 412-4700; Web site: www.ballard.com.

These are the people who brought fuel cells down to earth. They transformed rocket science into a product that is currently showing up in commercial buildings and vehicles and will soon be seen powering consumer automobiles. Check out their Web site for a look at this emerging technology.

·Ion Solar, Inc., 6095 Monterey Avenue, Richmond, CA 94805; phone: (510) 237-7877; fax: (510) 232-5251; Web site: www.hionsolar.com. H-Ion's primary focus is renewable and sustainable energy production, hydrogen and oxygen technology for small-scale systems, and environmental improvement. They actually produce commercial products for generating, handling, and using hydrogen in small RE systems. The founder, Walter Pyle, is a regular contributor of articles to *Home Power* Magazine and editor of the *Solar Hydrogen Chronicles*.

atech LLC, 63065 NE 18th St., Bend, OR 97701; phone: (541) 383-3390; fax: (541) 383-3439; Web site: www.idatech.com.

Idatech is developing a promising new fuel-processing technology to provide very clean hydrogen for fuel cells. They currently manufacture an interesting fuel cell product to provide clean reliable DC power from methanol and water for remote battery charging and backup power applications (mostly used at remote telecom relay stations). As time goes on, technology and

process improvements could lower costs to the point where fuel cell power packs become cleaner, quieter, more efficient, and less troublesome replacements for traditional fossil fuel–powered generators.

ug Power, 968 Albany-Shaker Road, Latham, NY 12110; phone: (518) 782-7700; fax: (518) 782-9060; Web site: www.plugpower.com.

At this time, Plug Power may still be the leader in the race to provide simple, economical fuel cell residential power systems, though it has taken them much longer to come to market than originally anticipated. They currently offer off-grid and backup fuel cell power packs, though the long-awaited residential cogeneration power systems have yet to materialize.

Organizations

nerican Wind Energy Association, 1101 14th Street NW, 12th Floor, Washington, DC 20005; phone: (202) 383-2500; fax: (202) 383-2505; Web site: www.awea.org.

AWEA is a national trade association that represents wind-power plant developers, wind turbine manufacturers, utilities, consultants, insurers, financiers, researchers, and others involved in the wind industry. Check out the Web site for publications and some good wind information, including the *Global Wind Energy Market Report* and wind expert Mick Sagrillo's articles on a variety of wind-energy topics.

ınish Wind Turbine Manufacturers Association, Vester Voldgade 106, DK-1552 Copenhagen V, Denmark; phone: +45 3373 0330; fax: +45 3373 0333; Web site: www.windpower.org.

The Danish wind turbine industry is huge. With strong public and government support of privately owned, grid-tied wind power, Denmark now generates over 10 percent of its electricity with wind, and they export over 75 percent of their wind turbine manufactures. The Web site is excellent, providing an in-depth introduction to many facets of wind energy. Click on the little Union Jack flag for English.

ıergy Efficiency and Renewable Energy Network, Web site: www.eere.energy.gov.

This Web site is a comprehensive source for the Department of Energy's energy efficiency and renewable energy information, in addition to access to more than 600 links and 80,000 documents on energy-related topics. Includes information on their programs focused on hydrogen and fuel cell technology, solar, wind, biomass, building technologies, geothermal, and so on.

ıtional Climatic Data Center (NCDC), Federal Building, 151 Patton Avenue, Asheville, NC 28801-5001; phone: (828) 271-4800; fax: (828) 271-4876; Web site: www.ncdc.noaa.gov.

The NCDC keeps meteorological data, including wind speed data for numerous locations, which may be helpful for sizing a wind turbine and determining its effectiveness and feasibility. For a modest fee, they can provide you with thorough wind data for your area or for one close by.

ıtional Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL), 1617 Cole Blvd., Golden, CO 80401-3393; phone: (303) 275-3000; Web site: www.nrel.gov.

As the nation's leading center for renewable energy research, NREL is developing new energy technologies to benefit both the environment and the economy. See the Web site for information on current research and renewable energy basics, as well as access to related data and documents.

ɛnewable Resource Data Center (RReDC), Web site: www.nrel.gov/rredc.

The RReDC provides information on several types of renewable energy resources in the United States (wind, solar, geothermal, biomass, etc.) in the form of publications, data, and maps. The Web site includes an extensive dictionary of renewable energy-related terms. The "News" section announces new products on the RReDC. For very detailed solar radiation data for locations across the country, customized for month and orientation, see the Center's Web site at www.rredc.nrel.gov/solar/old_data/nsrdb.

ıe Energy Guy, Web site: www.theenergyguy.com.

Ray Darby, "The Energy Guy," maintains this terrific Web site. Ray is a mechanical engineer who has been active in renewable energy since the late 1970s, when he started designing solar systems and analyzing buildings for energy efficiency. For more than two decades, he has been involved with the state of California as an energy specialist and is currently energy specialist and mechanical engineer with the Non-Residential Efficiency Services Group within the Energy Efficiency Division of the California Energy Commission. Check out his Web site for information on a wide variety of energy-related topics and links to many related Web sites.

12

Metalworking

> My grandfather, like many blacksmiths of yesteryear, brings to mind an image of robust and independent craftsmen who were a main force in the early history of our country. They were central figures in the life of the villages, because they provided most of the tools and implements that were needed for the life of the community. The scale of work was small, personal and communal. These men were also forceful in the development of new industrial processes and the invention of tools and products. They widened the range of goods and products that this newly created force brought about. They were part of the industrial revolution and helped spur it on.
>
> **—Jack Andrews, *New Edge of the Anvil***

Today's giant steel mills and fabrication plants are a far cry from the village blacksmith shops of our forefathers. The modern blacksmith creates individually crafted, one-of-a-kind objects that can provide a wonderfully personal touch to a striking entryway, hand tool, fireplace door, or sculpture. In the days of my grandfather, a "mass produced" item may have been made in a local foundry in quantities of ten to a hundred—a miniscule fraction of today's common production quantities ranging from a few thousand to many millions.

Crafting your own piece of art or a useful item from a simple lump of metal can be a very rewarding experience. In this chapter I provide a brief introduction to some of the metalworking processes that are applicable to backyard operations. Should you wish to expand your knowledge of the metal crafts, the recommended references will give you an excellent start. With luck, the course of our future will maintain these time-honored crafts in their current position as hobbies and artful occupations, rather than returning them to their prior position of communal necessity.

> **CAUTION: The tools and temperatures required for working metal can be very dangerous. The best way to learn these skills is under the tutelage of an experienced craftsman. Use caution and proceed carefully. Most older instruction manuals do not stress safety. Safety glasses, high-temperature gloves, leggings, forearm protectors, and a heavy face shield are cheap insurance when compared with the loss of an eye, arm, finger, or even a single visit to the emergency room.**

Metal is commercially available in a bewildering variety of different alloys, finishes, hardnesses, and forms. Phone directories in most cities contain listings for suppliers of metal stock, or you can ask your local machine shop where they purchase their supplies. A metal scrap heap can also provide a bountiful supply of raw materials for the home forge or foundry. Nearly all of the easy-to-reach sources for high-grade ores have been mined long ago. If you are ever in a situation where central services are down for a considerable period of time and you wish to fabricate useful items from metal, junkyards and garbage dumps will provide you with a source

for raw materials far superior to the best ore that you could find. I have heard that certain Japanese companies have begun to mine old landfill sites, but I do not believe that this practice has spread to Western Europe, the United States, or Canada.

A BRIEF INTRODUCTION TO METALS

There are many metal fabrication techniques, but most of these fall into four broad categories: casting, forging, machining, and sheet metal. Forging is probably the oldest metal fabrication method. In the forging process, a piece of metal is beaten and worked to "push" the metal into a desired shape. Usually the metal is heated in a furnace until it softens somewhat before it is worked. This process is repeated until the desired shape is obtained. The village blacksmith is the most well-known example of common low-tech metal forging. Sometimes the metal is "cold forged" without any heat. Pure silver, gold, and copper deposits were probably first cold-worked into useful and decorative shapes.

The next metalworking skill to develop was probably the casting of metal. In the casting process, metal is heated in a furnace until it liquefies and then is poured into a mold to produce the desired shape. Silver, gold, and copper were mined, forged, and cast thousands of years ago. These metals were found naturally in fairly pure states, and they are processed at considerably lower temperatures than iron or steel. Copper artifacts first showed up around 6500 B.C. Bronze, originally an alloy of copper and tin, was used in Greece and China before 3000 B.C., but did not show up in Britain until around 1900 B.C. Bronze melts at around the same temperature as silver and gold (1760°F to 1945°F) but has superior strength for use in tools and hardware.

Iron began to replace bronze as the metal of choice for many tools and weapons around 1200 B.C. in the Middle East and southeastern Europe, but not until 600 years later in China. Iron is far stronger than bronze, but requires considerably higher temperatures (2800°F) to melt fully and also requires more sophisticated methods for refinement and fabrication. The crude predecessors to the blast furnace could only reach temperatures of about 2100°F, so instead of producing liquid iron for casting, they produced a solid chunk of low-carbon iron called a "bloom," which was then heated and hammered into various wrought-iron objects. Around the fifteenth century, blast furnaces appeared, and iron making split into a twostage process. The first stage created a string of brittle, high-carbon cast iron billets called "pigs" because they resembled a cluster of suckling piglets. The second stage consisted of running a plentiful supply of air through the iron to oxidize some of the carbon, resulting in a lowercarbon cast iron, called malleable iron, which is much less brittle and far more manufacturing-friendly than pig iron. England's magnificent forests were decimated to make sailing ships and for the charcoal that fueled the blast furnaces of the Iron Age. The use of charcoal to fuel furnaces continued well into the nineteenth century, long after the establishment of coal and coke as foundry fuels. It was during the second half of the seventeenth century that Englishman Dud Dudley first demonstrated the use of coal for melting metal. Not long afterward, foundries extended the charcoal-making process (turning hardwoods into charcoal) to charring coal to make "coke," a hotter and cleaner-burning material than regular coal (Marshall 1996, 7–14).

Steel is made either by forging and reheating low-carbon blooms to introduce more carbon, making wrought iron stronger and harder, or by refining high-carbon cast iron to reduce its

carbon content to less than 2 percent. Egyptian artifacts indicate that Egyptian metallurgists had knowledge of heat treatment and forging techniques to make steel products as early as 900 B.C. It takes around twenty cycles through the carburizing, hammering, and reheat process to make a good sword from low-carbon "bloom." In 1751, Englishman Benjamin Huntsman established a steelworks that developed the crucible process for making large quantities of steel from cast iron melted in crucibles. This significantly lowered the cost of steel production and improved the ability to alloy the steel and control the process.

The machining process takes raw metal stock, typically in round or rectangular shapes, and cuts away excess metal until you end up with the shape you want. Machining metal is kind of like carving wood, only it's done on rugged industrial machines, like mills and lathes, utilizing hardened steel cutters. The development of machine tools in England during the late 1700s led to the Industrial Revolution of the 1800s.

Sheet metal is made on machines with heavy-duty rollers that transform thick, cast metal stock into large sheets of metal ranging from only a few thousandths of an inch thick to around 3⁄16 of an inch thick (thicker plates of steel can be cast and hot rolled to virtually any thickness). Car bodies and tin cans are made out of sheet metal. Sheet metal is either "hot-rolled" or "cold-rolled." To make common sheet metal, thick plates are first hotrolled to significantly thin the plates. Often, hot-rolled sheet is thinned further by the cold-rolling process. Hot rolling leaves a "scale" on the surface that requires extra finishing steps. Cold rolling improves the workability of the steel and leaves a fairly clean surface finish. The coldrolling process tends to work-harden steel. Cold-rolled steel is often thinned until it hardens significantly and then "annealed" (baked in an oven) to remove hardening residue from the rolling process and make it ready for another stage of rolling to thin it further. In ancient times, a metalworker might make thin metal plates by repeatedly heating, hammering, and peening a chunk of bloom until it spread out into a thin sheet.

Casting and forging are processes that lend themselves to do-it-yourself, low-tech processes, provided you have some ingenuity and a few tools. For an investment of less than $100, you can build a small backyard forge or foundry that can turn old pistons, aluminum cans, or brass plumbing fixtures into useful tools or objects of art. Scrap sheet metal can be transformed into useful containers and pots and pans, but you won't be able to turn a chunk of iron into a piece of sheet metal without an industrial rolling mill.

CASTING METAL

I don't remember the artist's name, or what his college major was, but I can't forget his work. He had a sort of mad-scientist crazed look in his eye as he focused 100 percent of his attention on the project at hand. He carved 3-foot-long graceful flower petals from giant chunks of Styrofoam. Large casting frames were custom-built from scrap lumber to contain the black sand that was carefully pounded around each foam petal. Once a petal was fully encased in casting sand, a funnel-shaped cut was carved into the sand to channel the flow of metal to one corner of the petal. When the time came for pouring the molten aluminum, the

casting lab buzzed with excitement so thick you could taste it. Ed, a maintenance man, barked orders as the filled crucible was hoisted from the furnace. Ed was a true "foundryman," having worked for several years in a pre-automation production foundry, and was the undisputed king of this dirty little room tucked away in the maze of basements below MIT's main building complex. Ed was in his glory as the shimmering silvery liquid poured into the black sand funnel, burning its way through the Styrofoam. Days later, after all of the petals had been cast, removed from the black sand, cleaned up, and assembled, the finished product was awesome indeed. It was a stunning 3-foot-tall by 5-foot-wide aluminum orchid. News spread quickly of this casting lab beauty, drawing the attention and admiration of the chancellor's office. At the chancellor's request, the giant orchid was proudly displayed in his office for all to see. When asked where the idea came from and what he was going to sculpt next, the artist only shrugged and answered, "I don't know the answer to either."

The basic idea behind casting metal is pretty simple—you melt some metal and you pour it into a mold that is generally made from a pattern and some sticky sand. When I was a boy, you could usually find at least one small-time foundry within a couple hours drive of most towns in America. With increasing safety concerns, the advent of large computerized foundries, and globalization resulting in American businesses sourcing almost all of their foundry needs to offshore suppliers, most of America's once-great foundries have disappeared. Much of what remains from hundreds of years of hands-on metal casting experience now lies in the hands of hobbyists, retired or displaced American foundry workers, and foundrymen who continue to work in offshore foundries.

Sand Casting

The use of damp sand to make molds for casting metals has been utilized for thousands of years. In essence, dampened sand is rammed into two or more interlocking frames (called "flasks") encircling a pattern for the part that is to be cast from metal. When the frames are parted, a depression is left in the rammed sand that is a mirror image of the part to be cast (a "female" impression). A channel is formed to funnel molten metal into the cavity within the rammed sand. After the metal has been poured and cooled, the sand is broken away from the metal casting and the rough casting is cleaned up. Sometimes a little sanding, filing, and brushing is all that's necessary to clean the raw casting, but usually secondary machining is necessary to add threads or make precision surfaces for mating the casting to other parts. The following illustrations and descriptions are provided to help you understand the basic processes involved with casting metal. For detailed instructions that can provide you with a practical knowledge of sand casting, I suggest you pick up some of the recommended references.

Pattern

To make a sand casting, you must start with a pattern for the part you wish to cast. If it weren't

for three factors called “shrinkage,” “undercuts,” and “draft,” it would be a simple matter to take almost any existing part and copy it by using the part as a pattern in a sand casting. Most patterns are made from wood, but they can be modeled in clay or wax or carved/machined from almost any hard material. Useful materials for pattern making include moldable auto-body putties that can be sanded or carved after curing. Varnish protects wood patterns from moisture in the casting sands and helps to facilitate a clean release from the sand.

Lost wax castings use patterns made from wax. The wax is either melted or burned out of the mold, leaving its shape in a cavity for the liquid metal to flow into. A variation on lost wax is to carve the pattern out of plastic foam. When the metal is poured into the mold, it burns its way through the foam, leaving metal in the shape of the foam pattern.

Shrinkage

When molten metal cools, it shrinks a significant amount. The amount of shrink varies with the type of metal. Even metals of the same type will shrink a little differently depending on wall thickness and overall size of the part. Mold shrinkage is usually specified as inches per inch or as inches per foot. For parts under 24 inches long, mold shrinkage per foot of length is figured at 1/8 inch for cast iron, ¼ inch for steel, 5/32 inch for aluminum, and 3/16 inch for brass. For example, if you wish to make a 12-inch-long brass candlestick, the pattern for this part would be shaped just like the candlestick, but would be 1.6 percent larger to account for shrinkage and would measure 3/16 inches in overall length (U.S. Navy 1989, 27).

Draft

A pattern must be tapered slightly on the sides to allow for the rammed sand to release from the pattern when the pattern is withdrawn from the rammed sand. If the pattern has totally square sides, the casting sand will stick to the pattern and will not leave a clean impression in the sand. Rounded corners and edges also help the pattern to release cleanly from the sand. Typically, outside surfaces need less draft than inner surfaces, and thin delicate cores, such as those that make holes in the castings, need the most draft. The more tapered a pattern is, the easier it will release from the rammed sand. A good general draft allowance is 1/8 inch per foot of length, which works out to be about 1 degree of taper. Holes might require 2 to 3 degrees. You may be able to get away with as little as ¼ to ½ degree draft for long, flat surfaces. When I design plastic injection-molded parts, the standard unspecified draft angle is 2 degrees, but 3 degrees is probably better for rough sand castings.

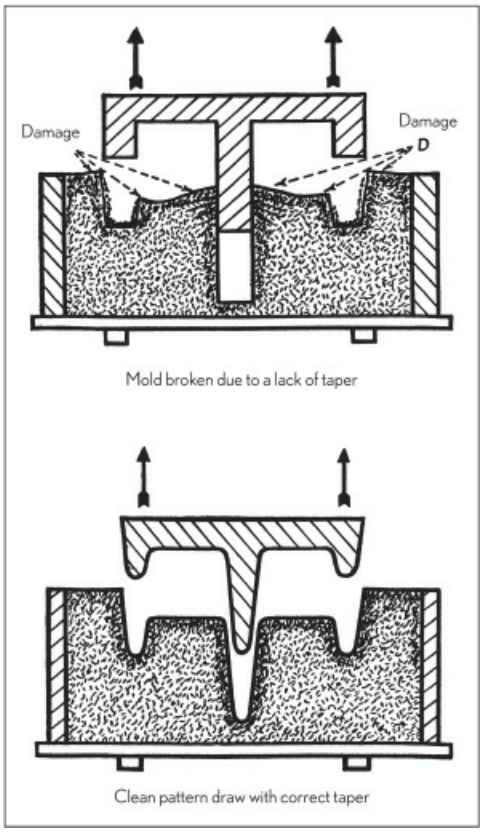


Figure 12-1. Pattern draft (taper) for releasing from the sand. (Illustration courtesy of *U.S. Navy Foundry Manual*, Lindsay Publications, 1989)

Undercuts and Cores

An undercut is an area of the part that the two mold halves would not pull straight away from without damaging the mold impression. For example, the mold cannot simultaneously release from both the outside and the center of the hollow ornamental column of Figure 12-2. The inside area of this column is called an "undercut" because it cuts underneath the outer sides. To sand cast this hollow column requires making a pattern for the inside shape of the column and using this pattern to cast a "core" using a sand mixture formulated of special binders. Before it can be placed into the sand mold that contains the impression of the column's outer surface, this core must be baked to harden the binders. After the core has been placed in the mold and the part is cast in metal, the mold's moist sand is removed from outside the metal casting, but the hardened sand core is still trapped within the casting. The sand core is then crumbled and removed from the inside of the metal column. The end result is a hollow column that uses far less metal than if it were solid.

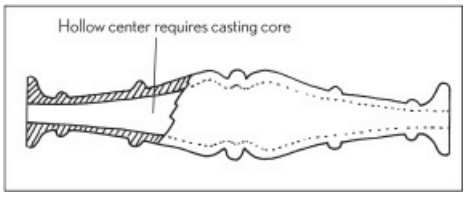


Figure 12-2. Hollow column requiring a prehardened core to form the undercut center.

Casting Flasks

The forms for containing the rammed casting sand are called "flasks," which are usually rectangular forms that have open tops and bottoms. The top flask is called a "cope" and the bottom flask is called a "drag." The cope and drag are keyed with tapered offset pins or interlocking pegs for precise alignment after the pattern has been removed from the rammed sand. The taper provides accurate alignment when the mold halves are fully closed, yet makes it easy to split the mold halves apart. The "leader pins" or other aligning features are offset from the center to insure against assembling the cope and drag backward. Commercial flasks are usually metal, but you can make your own flasks from wooden frames. If you make your own, make sure that they are square, the corners are strong, and the tops and bottoms are flat.

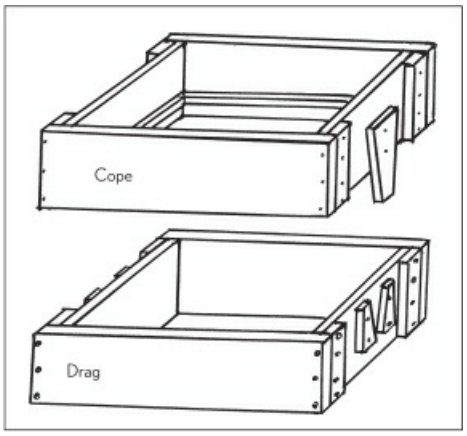


Figure 12-3. The casting flasks. (Illustration courtesy of *The Charcoal Foundry*, by David J. Gingery, 1983)

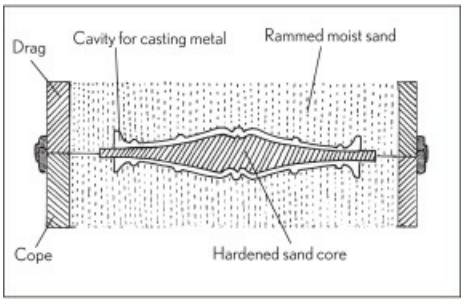


Figure 12-4. A sand mold with a baked sand core to cast a hollow column. (Adapted from an illustration courtesy from *Metal Working: A Book of Tools, Materials and Processes for the Handyman*, by Paul N. Hasluck, Lindsay Publications, 1907)

For simple forms with a flat bottom, the drag is rammed full of sand flush with its top edge. The pattern is placed on a flat, smooth surface. A round, smooth pin (called a "sprue bushing") is placed next to the pattern to provide an opening for metal to enter the mold, and then sand is rammed around the pattern and sprue bushing.

When the pattern will extend both into the cope and the drag, the simplest way to accomplish this is by first ramming the drag full of sand and scraping it off flush with the top edge of the drag. Next, the pattern is laid on top of the drag and tapped until it sinks into the drag. The mold must split at the widest point of the part, so the sand in the drag is carefully carved at a smooth taper until this point is reached (called the "parting line"). Next, dust the top of the rammed moist

sand with fine, dry “parting sand” that will prevent the sand in the cope from sticking to the sand in the drag. Position the drag on top of the cope and place a sprue bushing next to the pattern (for metal to flow into the mold). Now ram moist sand into the cope until it is flush with the top edge of the cope.

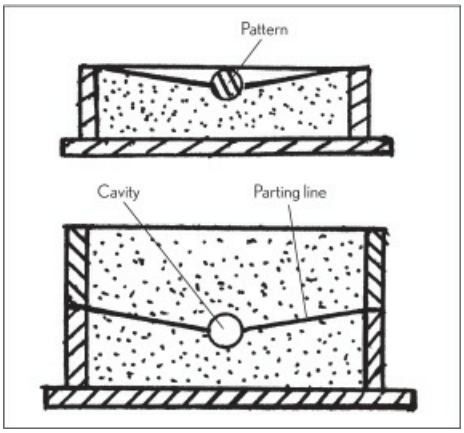


Figure 12-5. “Coping down” to match the parting line. (Illustration courtesy of *The Charcoal Foundry*, by David J. Gingery, 1983)

Once the cope is rammed full of sand, lift the cope from the drag and carefully remove the pattern from whichever half it remained stuck to. Using a spoon or small trowel, carefully patch minor imperfections in the cavity surfaces with casting sand. The *sprue* is the large hole that the metal is poured into. As a rule of thumb, the sprue must be larger in diameter than the thickness of the part that it feeds. The size of the sprue depends on the size of the part. A *runner* is a horizontal channel that is carved along the parting line of the mold to carry metal from the sprue to the part. In the case of multiple parts being cast in a single mold at the same time, the runner connects the sprue to several different parts, rather like branches on a tree connecting to a central trunk. The “gate” is where the runner narrows before entering the part to minimize the area that must be trimmed and finished where the hot metal enters the part. “Risers” are tubular holes that are carved into the cope to feed extra metal to thick sections of the casting as it cools. Risers help prevent wrinkles or voided areas from forming as the metal inside the cavity shrinks while cooling.

A pattern is often split into two halves, with each half attached to a plate, to facilitate repeated use of the pattern for production casting. To prevent undesirable mismatches at the parting line, *match plates* are keyed to ensure that the cavity rammed into the cope mates precisely with the cavity rammed into the drag when the cope is placed on top of the drag.

Casting Sand

Green sand castings are not made with green-colored sand but with sand that has not been cured into a hardened state. Casting sand is typically made from silica sand mixed with bentonite or fire clay and a small amount of flour. The flour and clay, combined with a small amount of water, are “binders” that help the casting sand mixture to stick together. The mixture should be moist but not wet. Properly moistened casting sand is referred to as “tempered” sand. If there is too much clay in the mixture or too much water, the casting sand will not allow escaping steam to pass through the sand, and this will cause major problems. A stiff wire or rod is poked

repeatedly into the cope's sand, forming vent channels for steam to flow into after it has filtered through the first layer of sand. The vent channels must not pierce into the mold cavity or they will fill with metal. Too little moisture or binding material and the sand will crumble and not retain the pattern's shape. David Gingery suggests a mixture of 85-mesh sand with 8 percent bentonite and 1 percent wheat flour (Gingery 1983, 13). To make baked cores, a binder must be added to the sand that will hold the core together after baking, yet will not harden so hard that the core cannot be easily crumbled and removed from the part after casting. The *U.S. Navy Foundry Manual* (1989) provides a good discussion of the merits of various core-binding materials and offers several recipes for both core sands and regular casting sands.

Furnace

The heart of a backyard foundry is its furnace. The small foundry is faced with two choices of basic furnace styles—crucible or cupola. Crucibles are containers of heat-resistant material (refractory materials such as graphite, silicon carbide, or fire clay) that chunks of the casting material are placed into for melting in the furnace. Crucible furnaces melt metal in a batch within the crucible. When casting metals with lower melting temperatures, such as tin, lead, and aluminum, you can use steel or cast iron containers for a crucible. If you are going to cast only one or two items in a firing, a crucible furnace is the way to go.

In a cupola furnace, the furnace itself becomes the chamber for both the combustion of the fuel and the melting of the metal. Metal is melted continuously in cupola furnaces, as long as they are stoked with fuel and metal, resulting in a much higher potential throughput and fuel efficiency than a small crucible furnace, but with less control over pour temperatures and alloy composition. If you wish to cast a number of items and significant quantities of metal, a cupola furnace is probably your best option. For a collection of articles on making a variety of low-cost backyard furnaces and other forging/ casting topics, see "Emile's Blacksmithing Links" at www.anvilfire.com/links/hotlinks.

Small Cupola Furnaces

Figure 12-6 shows the typical layout for a small cupola furnace. The cupola has a small cylindrical chimney-like bore that is lined with a refractory material. The casting metal is placed directly on a bed of fuel. When it melts, it flows through the glowing coals, superheating as it goes, until it collects at the sloping sand bottom of the cupola (A). On demand, a moldable refractory plug (called "botting") is dug out from the taphole at the spout (B), and liquid metal is drawn off into a waiting ladle or directly into a mold placed below the spout. The inlet for the air blast (C) is called a "tuyere" (pronounced "tweer"),

the same as a blast inlet in a blacksmith forge. Slag floats to the top of the molten metal and is drawn off through the small spout (D). A relatively modern improvement is the drop door (E), which is opened at the end of the heat to clean out the slag and remaining fuel.

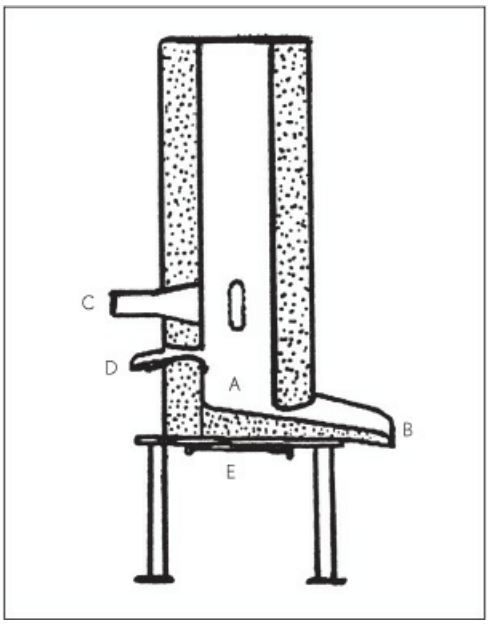


Figure 12-6. Basic construction of a small cupola. (Illustration courtesy of *Building Small Cupola Furnaces*, by Stewart Marshall, 1996)

The beauty of cupolas is that they are amazingly inexpensive to build and provide an almost continuous supply of molten metal for as long as you keep recharging it with fuel and iron. The initial layer of fuel and iron is followed by more layers of fuel and iron for as long as you wish to keep melting iron. You get ladles of iron every 5 to 10 minutes instead of waiting for 45 minutes to an hour for a crucible of iron to melt in a crucible furnace.

Construction of a Small Cupola

In *Building Small Cupola Furnaces,* Stewart Marshall provides detailed instructions for building and using several different sizes of small cupola furnaces. He starts with a 7-inch inside diameter "baby cupolette" furnace made from welding two 5-gallon steel buckets together, one on top of the other, and then lining them with a refractory material. From there, Stewart moves on to a 10-inch inside diameter cupola furnace made from two 30-gallon steel drums, and follows with several variations for Great Depression–style cupolas made from two or three 55-gallon steel drums. The information that I provide here is very minimal and may be enough to help you build a cupola in a pinch, but do yourself a favor and get Stewart's book if you have a genuine interest in this subject. Cupolas are simple enough that it could be possible to make a small cupola on a deserted island with scraps of steel and local clay and then fire it with charcoal.

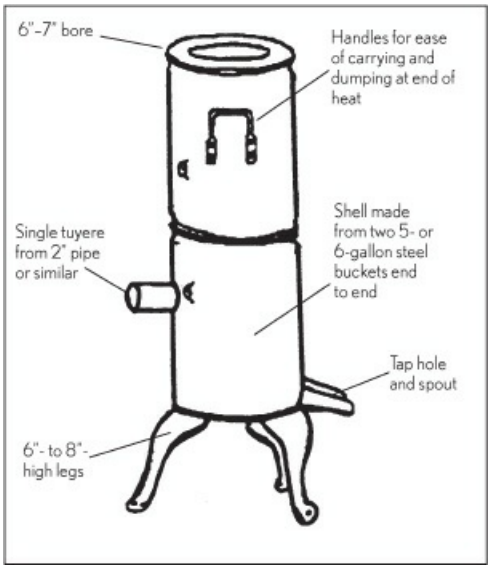

6"–7" bore
Handles for ease of carrying and dumping at end of heat
Shell made from two 5- or 6-gallon steel buckets end to end
Single tuyere from 2" pipe or similar
Tap hole and spout
6"- to 8"- high legs

Figure 12-7. Small portable cupolette furnace for iron castings up to 10 lb or bronze to 20 lb. (Illustration courtesy of *Building Small Cupola Furnaces*, by Stewart Marshall, 1996)

After the tuyere and the two drums are welded in place, the cupola is lined with a suitable refractory material. The tuyere must extend through the refractory layer. Make a form for the 7-inch inside diameter of the cupola out of sheet metal wrapped around discs of wood, cardboard filled with sand, or any other suitable material that may be burned out or disassembled once the refractory material is rammed in place. There are numerous recipes for refractory material, but most involve a mixture of clean, coarse silica sand (typical construction grade) and fire clay (usually available from ceramics suppliers). The finished lining must withstand 3000°F of sustained heat, so a quality fire clay is essential.

Start with a small test batch consisting of about onethird fire clay and two-thirds coarse sand. Mix a little water into the sand before adding to the fire clay. Add just enough water to make a stiff mixture, about the consistency of modeling clay. Wrap your refractory mixture in a plastic bag and let it set overnight to fully absorb the moisture into the clay platelets. Ram a large handful of this test mixture into a small can or tray and bake at around 400°F for an hour until dry. If the baked mixture shrinks significantly from the edges, try a mixture with more sand. If it is crumbly, try more clay or more water. Strength is more important than shrinkage, as cracks can be repaired with clay slurry but a lining that falls apart is no good at all. Potters use a material called “grog” to reduce firing shrinkage. Grog is made from ground, prefired clay. It is available at ceramics supply houses and can help reduce shrinkage in refractory materials.

When you are satisfied with your test mixture, mix about a half wheelbarrow full of stiff mixture (mixtures with too much water shrink excessively). Put into buckets or cover with plastic and let sit overnight or longer to fully absorb the water. Ram this mixture into your cupola stack, encircling the core form. Lay a couple of inches at a time, using an axe handle or similarly sized stick to firmly tamp each layer. Be extra careful to ram firmly round the tuyere. Once the mixture is fully dry, fire the stack to cure the refractory material. Put a couple inches of sand in the bottom of the stack (you will be rebuilding the bottom with sand every time you fire the cupola) and start with a small wood fire. Build the fire slowly until it is burning very hot, and then add some charcoal or furnace coke. Over a period of several hours, slowly fill the furnace

with fuel until it is filled to the top with glowing coals. After it has burned very hot for a few hours under natural draft, hook up the blast blower to the tuyere and run it extremely hot for about 5 to 10 minutes. Shut down the blast, plug the tuyere, and cover the stack with a plate or fire bricks. Slowly cool the cupola overnight.

In the old days, the blast was often provided by a large bellows driven by a horse, water wheel, or helpers. A large vacuum cleaner or a small shop-vac will work fine for the blast. In a pinch, a 12-volt DC ducted fan salvaged from an automobile would probably do.

Cut a hole in the center of the bottom steel drum of your cupola to match the inside stack diameter, and weld on a hinged plate for a bottom trap door. Cut a 1½-inch opening for the tap hole, about ½ inch above the bottom. Line this hole with some furnace daubing or refractory mud, leaving about a ½ inch opening for the tap hole. The outside of the tap hole is tapered so that a relatively short neck presents itself to the molten metal to minimize the chance that metal will freeze in the neck and block the flow through the tap hole (see Figure 12-7). After each firing, you will probably need to rebuild this opening. A coating of "plumbago" wash to blacken the surface of the ladles and the tap hole helps to keep molten metal from sticking to the lining. Make plumbago wash by mixing one part powdered graphite with two parts alcohol or "molasses water." Molasses water is one part heavy black molasses mixed with eight parts water. Ladles for pouring liquid metal can be homemade from steel cans lined with refractory material. Punch holes in the cans, and squeeze a bit of the moist refractory mixture through the punched holes to improve lining adhesion to the cans. Bake the ladles to cure the lining (Marshall 1996, 20–28).

Operating the Small Cupola

The coke consumption in an ordinary cupola of just about any size is about one pound per hour for every square inch of bore area. **—Stewart Marshall, *Building Small Cupola Furnaces***

Every time you fire up a melt, you must close the cupola's bottom trap door, pack in a new, sloped sand bottom to funnel the molten iron to the spout, and reshape the spout and tap hole with some fresh refractory mixture of furnace daubing. After the furnace is fired up to heat and then charged with a load of fuel and iron, the tap hole is temporarily closed up with a material called "botting." There are many different recipes for botting. The botting mixture must be friable and easily dug out for fast tapping. For the small cupolas, a botting mixture of fire clay with some sand and about one-third sawdust should work well (Marshall 1996, 41).

Fire the furnace, starting with a wood fire lit off a match or torch held to the tap hole. Once it is burning very hot, start adding charges of coke or coal. Once this is glowing, add coke to well past the tuyere. When all has caught fire and is glowing red, add the rest of the fuel bed. The minimum bed height for cupolas to properly heat the drops of molten iron as they fall through the coke is 15 to 18 inches. Throughout this period, the tap hole has been left open to fully dry and preheat the entire area. The tap hole is not plugged until the furnace has been charged with iron and a steady trickle of melted iron has run out of the spout, further preheating the area. Have a couple of bott irons readied with golf ball–sized wads of botting material on hand. Jam one into the tap hole, hold it for a couple seconds, and then with a twist remove the bott iron, leaving a plugged hole. Your first charge of iron will probably be too cold to be of much use, so drain it into a pig mold to make an ingot for reuse, and then bott the tap hole again and repeat the process to get suitably hot iron for quality castings. Once the metal starts flowing, you will tap a new charge of molten iron every 5 to 6 minutes, so there will be very little time between pours. Make

sure that plenty of botting and all the tools you will need for tapping and pouring are already prepared and easily accessible before you tap the first charge of molten iron.

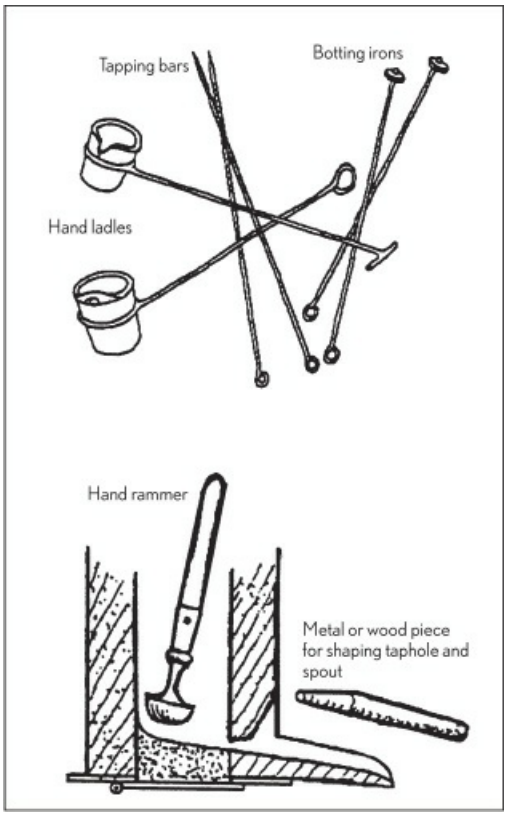


Figure 12-8. Tools for making up the bottom and operating the cupola. (Illustration courtesy of *Building Small Cupola Furnaces*, by Stewart Marshall, 1996)

> **CAUTION: These instructions are just enough to give you a basic understanding of the procedure. Before trying this yourself, I suggest you consult a manual for building and using small cupola furnaces.**

Charcoal Furnace for Crucibles

David Gingery has written a valuable book for the backyard foundry worker called *The Charcoal Foundry*. He shows you how to build and operate your own small, low-cost, crucible-type blast furnace that is fueled with regular charcoal and air charged by a vacuum cleaner blower. Dave suggests using a 5-gallon pail for the outer wall of the charcoal furnace. Much like in the construction of a small cupola, a collapsible form is made about 7 inches in diameter to pack refractory material around, leaving a hollow central core. Pack a moist (not wet) refractory sand/clay mix around the outside of this form as described in the section on making the small cupola furnace. You can make the refractory mix yourself or buy a ready-made castable refractory mix from a ceramics or foundry supply house. Remove the core form and roughen the bottom couple of inches up to the level of the bottom edge of the tuyere hole. Ram the refractory mix into the bottom until it meets the level of the bottom edge of the tuyere hole. Check the lining for voids, and patch them with refractory mix (Gingery 1983, 38–46).

Figure 12-9. David Gingery's charcoal-fueled mini–blast furnace. (Illustration courtesy of *The Charcoal Foundry*, by David J. Gingery, 1983)

Make a lid for your furnace by ramming the same refractory mix into a 2-inch-high sheet metal form that is riveted or screwed at the ends to make a hoop slightly larger than the outside circumference of your 5-gallon furnace bucket. Poke about 12 evenly spaced ⅛-inch holes into the sides of this form. Place a glass or can in the center to form the vent hole in your furnace cover, and then string bailing wire in a crisscross fashion around the vent hole and through the ⅛-inch holes in the form. Cut a round hole in a piece of stout cardboard to support the outside shape of the form while you are ramming it full of refractory material. Ram it full of refractory mix, making sure that the sand is rammed firmly beneath and around the wires.

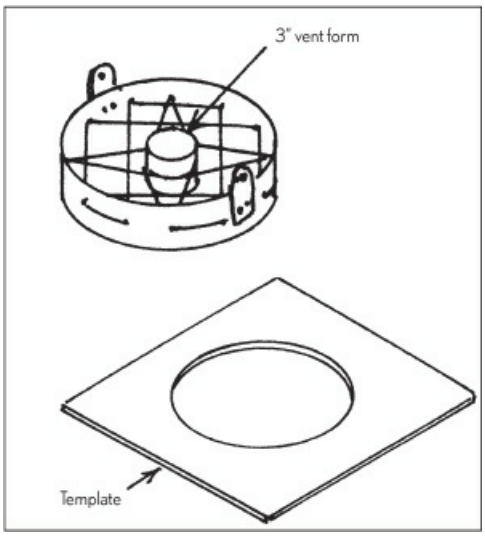


Figure 12-10. Lid form for the charcoal furnace. (Illustration courtesy of The Charcoal Foundry, by David J. Gingery, 1983)

Partially cure the lid in a conventional oven before curing the main lining of your charcoal furnace. Bake the lid at 250°F until the steam has been driven off, and then continue to bake for another couple of hours at about 500°F. Cure the main furnace refractory in pretty much the same manner as for the small cupola furnace. Fill the bottom of the furnace with a double layer of charcoal, saturate it with lighter fluid, and start the charcoal burning. Fill the furnace with charcoal and place your cover on top. Let all of the charcoal catch fire before turning on the air

blast. Continue firing until the inside of the walls and lid are glowing brightly and the charcoal is mostly burned up. Cover the vent and the tuyere with bricks and allow your furnace to cool slowly. After cooling, cracks in the lid and furnace walls can be patched with some of the moist refractory mixture.

Gingery suggests getting used to using your furnace by starting with aluminum, which pours at around 1,400°F before trying brass, which pours at over 2,000°F. A heavy steel pot is fine for melting aluminum, but a silicon carbide crucible is best for melting brass, bronze, or iron. See *The Charcoal Foundry* by Dave Gingery for casting basics plus numerous tips, tools, and other details pertaining to the construction and use of the charcoal foundry.

Precautions for Foundry Safety

- It is extremely dangerous to spill hot metal on a damp surface, such as concrete (hot metal may sputter, which sends small globs flying). Spread a 2-inch-thick layer of sand several feet around your foundry. Do all your pouring and handling of molten metal over this layer of sand.
- Wear glasses when you look into the vent hole. When adding metal to the crucible or pouring into a mold, it's a good idea to protect your entire face with a welder's face shield.
- Use dark welder's goggles or face shield when working with metal over 2,300°F to protect your eyes from excessive infrared radiation.
- Protect yourself with flameproof chaps and gloves.
- Work in a well-ventilated area. Carbon monoxide from charcoal is toxic, but odorless and invisible. If you overheat zinc (a common die-cast material), it burns and makes poisonous smoke.
- Wear stout leather or fireproof shoes to protect your feet. Make sure that you can strip them off quickly (no laces) if molten metal should drop onto your feet.
- Keep a large bucket of water handy for dousing burning clothing or skin.

The Backyard Foundry and Environmental Considerations

We are living in an era of greenhouse gases, toxic waste dumps, limited resources, and a record rate of species extinction. Please try to work to be as energy efficient and environmentally conscious as possible by adhering to the following recommendations:

- Use as much exhaust heat as possible (e.g., preheating metal molds).
- Combine as many batches of metal melting as possible. Reheating a cold furnace takes much more energy than filling a still-hot crucible with cold metal and putting it in a hot furnace.
- Take all fluxes, slag, and dross skimmed off the metal bath to a local hazardous waste collection point, and do not dump them into the trashcan or the sewer. Metal oxides are hazardous waste and should be recycled to reclaim the metals.
- Avoid use of cadmium, lead, or mercury in your alloys. These metals are very toxic and may be hazardous to your health. For making hard solder for silver or gold, zinc is a less toxic additive than cadmium for lowering silver or gold solder's melting point.
- Pickle (a solution of about 10 percent sulfuric acid in water used for cleaning silver and

gold items, especially after soldering) can be used for a long time. When it turns blue, you should dump it (not in the sink but at a chemical waste collection point). When only light blue, it can still be used for cleaning. Extend its life by filtering solid particles through an old coffee filter (Ditzhuyzen 2000, 3).

FORGING

Village blacksmiths have provided wrought tools and architectural and ornamental iron to their communities for hundreds of years. When iron is heated red hot, it becomes comparatively easy to cut, bend, weld, thin, thicken, twist, punch holes through, or otherwise manipulate its shape and form. Accomplished blacksmiths can make their own tools such as files, hammers, tin snips, punches, chisels, anvils, and shears. Making custom hinges, horseshoes, or plows is no problem for the blacksmith.

The center of the blacksmith's shop is the forge and the anvil. The forge is where the metal stock is heated hot enough to work or temper. The anvil is the heavy chunk of steel that supports the heated work piece as it's beaten and manipulated into shape. Modern shops will often have several different types of forges and special forging presses. These presses accept forging dies to forge specific patterns and shapes in hot iron. An excellent introduction to blacksmithing basics is *The Complete Modern Blacksmith* by Alexander G. Weygers. This book is based on the popular beginning blacksmithing toolmaking classes that Weygers taught for many years. It is copiously illustrated with beautiful pencil drawings for each step.

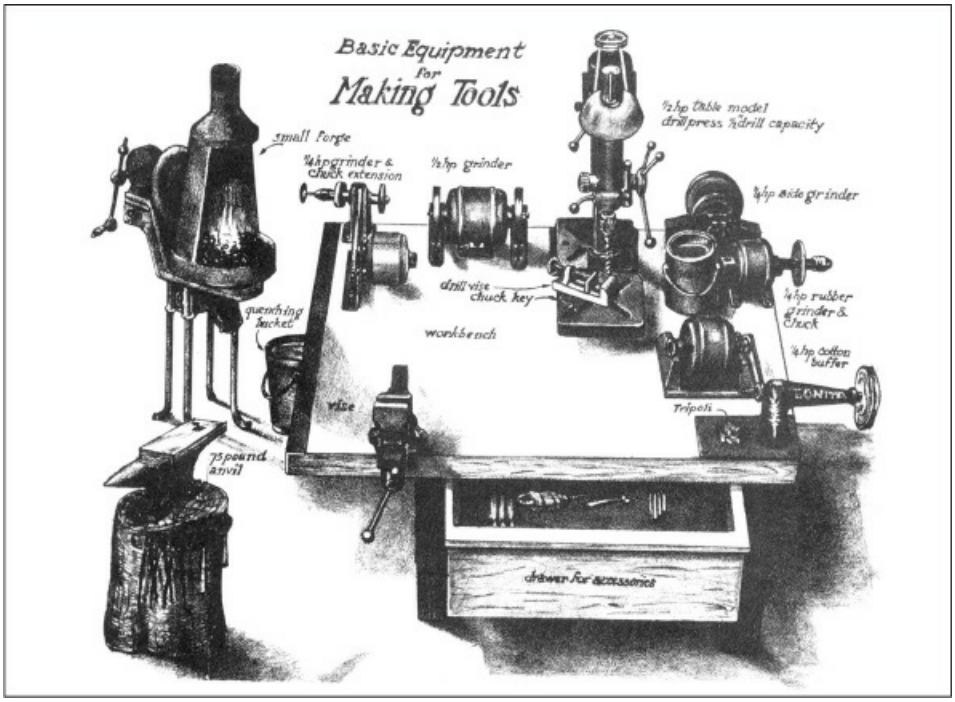


Figure 12-11. Basic equipment for making tools. (Illustration courtesy of *The Complete Modern Blacksmith*, by Alexander G. Weygers, Ten Speed Press, 1997)

Low-Tech Heat Treating

Carbon Content

Steels come in many alloys and grades, but the carbon content in nonstainless steels is the most important factor in determining its hardening characteristics. The science of metallurgy fills many volumes, so I can only provide a rudimentary introduction that barely scratches the surface. For a much better introduction that is clear and understandable, see the *New Edge of the Anvil: A Resource Book for the Blacksmith* by Jack Andrews.

When hot steel (cherry red and hotter) cools, the steel hardens into small crystals referred to in metallurgy as "grains." Both the grain size and the type of crystal lattice affect the hardness and toughness of the finished product. Carbon in the steel acts as "nucleating" sites for crystals to grow from, so steel with more carbon has the potential for smaller grains and a harder finished condition. Harder isn't always better. A harder material holds a sharp edge longer, but tends to be more brittle and may be prone to chipping and fracture. Mild steels are the most easily welded and fabricated for general use, but they hold an edge poorly. A spring must be fairly hard to avoid taking a set, but tough enough so that it doesn't crack easily. A cold chisel must be tough to handle impact, not so hard that it chips easily, but not so soft that it quickly loses its edge. A razor must have maximum hardness to hold an edge as long as possible.

Carbon content in steels is referred to by the number of points. Each ten points is one-tenth of a percent of carbon. A steel with 40 points would have 0.4 percent carbon content. The amount of carbon affects the hardenability of the steel. Low-carbon steels are typically in the 6–30 point range and are not very hardenable by heat treating except for a process called "case hardening" or "carburizing." Case hardening introduces high carbon content into the surface layer, resulting in good toughness due to internal ductility combined with high surface hardness from the thin, carbon-rich outer layer. Medium carbon steels are typically in the 30–52 range and are somewhat hardenable. "High carbon" steels are in the 55–95 range, and tool steels may range as high as 170 points.

Steel Hardenability Test

When a steel is heated to a light cherry-red condition and then quenched in cold water, the grain structure is frozen in a highly stressed, maximum-hard condition. To test for the hardenability of an unknown steel, heat the steel in a clean fire (smokeless and essentially invisible flame) to a light cherry-red condition and then quench in cold water. The steel should be a pearl-gray color. If the steel is a high-carbon steel suitable for tools, the tip of a file should skate off the piece like a needle on glass.

Tempering

A piece of high-carbon steel that has been rapidly quenched is in a highly stressed condition and is easily cracked or shattered. "Tempering" describes various processes that reheat the steel to moderate temperatures to allow the steel to partially soften so the crystal lattice can shift to relieve some of the internal stress. When the steel has reached the temperature required for a specific hardness, it is quenched to lock in the proper amount of hardness. By controlling the

temperature of reheat and the rate of quench, the desired toughness and hardness are maintained. In general, thicker parts hold heat longer, so they must be quenched faster. Thinner parts lose heat faster, so they must be quenched more slowly. The boiling point of a quenching solution determines the temperature that the steel sees at its surface. Plain water boils at 212°F at sea level, so it quenches the fastest and is best for thick parts. A heavy brine solution boils at about 226°F, so it quenches a little more slowly than plain water. Oil or rendered fat boils around 290°F, so it quenches the slowest and is better for very fine blades.

Because the temperatures required for tempering are much lower than forging temperatures, the tempered part does not glow. Tempering temperatures can be estimated by the color of an oxide layer forming on a polished area of steel, located in the area to be tempered, when the part is reheated in the forge. Colors are somewhat subjective, but the following table provides a general idea of the oxide layer's colors and corresponding temperatures for achieving a variety of useful tempers.

CAUTION: Do not heat high-carbon steels to a light yellow or white-hot range, as this extreme heat will burn off the carbon and the steel will lose its hardenability (except for case hardening).

Metal tempering temperatures and their estimation based on oxidation layer color

Temper color	°F	Tool
Steel gray	650+	
Greenish blue	630	Light springs
Light blue	Z610	Screw drivers, wood saws,punches
Dark blue	590	Springs
Blue	570	Picks, light-duty cold chisels,knives
Dark purple	550	Cold chisels for steel
Purple	540	Axes, center punches
Light purple	530	Hammers
Dark brown	510	Twist drills
Bronze	500	Rock drills, hot chisels
Dark straw	490	Wood chisels
Golden straw	480	Drift punches, leather dies
Straw	470	Pen knives
Straw yellow	460	Threading dies
Yellow	450	Planer tools
Light yellow	430	Paper cutters and lathe tools
Pale yellow	410	Razors and scrapers

(Source: Adapted from the *New Edge of the Anvil: A Resource Book for the Blacksmith,* by Jack Andrews, SkipJack Press, 1994)

Annealing

When steel is heated to a light cherry-red condition and then allowed to cool slowly, internal stresses are relieved, and the material cools to a relatively soft condition that is called "annealed."

Case Hardening

The old-fashioned, low-tech case hardening started by covering the steel tool with a layer of shaved animal horn, which provided a source of carbon that would readily absorb into the hot steel. Next, it was wrapped in a cloth and then covered with a 3-inch-thick layer of refractory mud or plaster reinforced with chicken fat. This refractory covering prevents heated air from burning off the carbon layer. Once the package was dried, it was left in glowing coals overnight, and then the casing was knocked off and the glowing steel part was quenched in water. The end result was a toughened steel with a hard, brittle skin and a ductile center (Weygers 1997, 25).

Estimation of Temperatures

Most backyard foundry workers and blacksmiths will not bother with a pyrometer for accurately measuring temperatures. With a little practice, you can estimate higher temperatures by the color of light coming off the furnace or a chunk of metal (the values are the same for all materials, including steel, brick, bronze, etc.). If you desire a more accurate temperature measurement than you get from judging hot steel's color, a thermocouple is a good measuring tool that is much less expensive than a pyrometer. The best one for the backyard foundry is a platinum/platinum-rhodium (Pt + 10 percent Rh) couple, which allows measuring temperatures to 2,912°F (1,600°C).

CAUTION: Contact between liquid metal and thermocouple wires will dissolve the wire.

Estimation of Temperatures Based on Glow Color:

- 900°F: Barely red in the dark (about the threshold temperature that an object emits visible light)
- 1,075°F: Blood red
- 1,175°F: Dark cherry
- 1,275°F: Medium cherry
- 1,375°F: Cherry
- 1,450°F: Bright cherry
- 1,740°F: Orange (barely visible in bright sunlight)
- 2,000°F: Orange yellow (light yellow in the dark, fairly visible in bright sunlight)
- 2,370°F: Light yellow, nearly blinding

  CAUTION: At 2,370°F and above, dark (welding) goggles are required.
- 2,730°F: Nearly white, blinding (Ditzhuyzen 2000, 4; Weygers 1997, 26)

REFERENCES

Casting

***ıilding Small Cupola Furnaces,* by Stewart Marshall.** 1996, 214 pp. (paperback), no ISBN.

Published by Marshall Machine and Engineering Works, P.O. Box 279, Lopez Island, WA 98261. List price $19.95

This is a great book for building your own small, low-cost cupola furnaces to melt iron for multiple castings. Use this book for practical diagrams, tips, procedures, and recipes from someone who has recreated these old-time technologies for use with his own business and hobbies. Available from Lindsay Publications (www.lindsaybks.com) or from Stewart's Web site at www.rockisland.com/~marshall.

***ıe Charcoal Foundry,* by David J. Gingery.** 1983, 80 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1878087003. Published by David J. Gingery Publishing, P.O. Box 318, Rogersville, MO 65742. List price $7.95

In this book, Dave Gingery shows you how to build a small, low-cost, charcoal-fueled crucible furnace for melting common metals such as aluminum and brass for castings. He also provides a basic introduction to sand casting, including pattern making and recipes for casting sand and refractory materials. Dave tells you all the other little things you need to know so you can set up your own small backyard foundry and start melting and casting metal. This is the first in Dave's series of seven "Build Your Own Metal Working Shop from Scrap" books that shows you how to build a minifoundry, lathe, shaper, mill, drill press, accessories, and sheet metal brake.

S. Navy Foundry Manual. 1989, 291 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1559180078. Published by Lindsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915. List price $23.95

This is a very thorough handbook for sand casting foundry techniques from the 1950s, before the days of high-tech automated foundries. It is an excellent reference that will teach you probably more than you wish to know about casting, including good casting design, pattern making, molding sands and cores, casting metallurgy, troubleshooting, heat treatment, and process control.

***crets of Green-Sand Casting* by International Correspondence Schools.** 1983, 174 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0917914089. Published by Lindsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915. List price $9.95

This reprint of a 1906 International Correspondence School's vocational manual is a good companion text to the *U.S. Navy Foundry Manual.* Numerous illustrations provide an excellent introduction to the sand casting and mold preparation processes. It is less technical than the Navy manual, but better at providing instructions for the inexperienced foundry worker.

Forging/Blacksmithing

***ıe Complete Modern Blacksmith,* by Alexander G. Weygers.** 1997, 304 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0898158960. Published by Ten Speed Press, P.O. Box 7123, Berkeley, CA 94707. List price $19.95

The focus of this book is on making your own forged hand tools. Copiously illustrated with beautiful pencil drawings, this manual teaches you the fine points of blacksmithing techniques through the same series of tool-making projects that the author used to teach in his popular classes. If I ever had the need or desire to forge my own tools, I would definitely want this book

on my shelf.

***ew Edge of the Anvil: A Resource Book for the Blacksmith,* by Jack Andrews.** 1994, 256 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1879535091. Published by SkipJack Press, Inc., #6 Laport Ct., Berlin, MD 21811. List price $25.00

The *New Edge of the Anvil* offers good illustrations and descriptions of basic blacksmithing methods and has a section on blacksmithing metallurgy and lowtech heat treatment of steels that is more thorough than *The Complete Modern Blacksmith*. This book is less tool oriented and more focused on the use of blacksmithing techniques for sculpture, decorative iron, and general usage. Contains a pictorial portfolio of modern metalwork that is great for artistic inspiration. *New Edge of the Anvil* is reportedly the best-selling blacksmith book of all time. More of a beginner's book, this is not a handbook for the experienced blacksmith.

***oxfire 5: Ironmaking, Blacksmithing, Flintlock Rifles, Bear Hunting,* Eliot Wigginton (editor).** 1979, 512 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0385143080. Published by Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, Inc., 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. List price $16.95

If you ever had to reconstruct metalworking technology from scratch, this text would be very helpful. From large-scale charcoal making to boring and rifling a forged gun barrel or forging a wagon wheel rim, *Foxfire 5* shows you how to do it yourself. In the Foxfire tradition, you get a fascinating glimpse into a selection of old-timers' lives as well as a look at how they used to make the things that most of us have always bought from the store. Many of these folks never received a paycheck from a "straight" job. For an entire lifetime they traded, bartered, and sold what they made with their own two hands. It even shows you how to make a flintlock rifle from scratch or process saltpeter from nitrate-rich cave soil for making your own gunpowder.

Machining

***achinery's Handbook,* 27th edition, by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, and Henry H. Ryffel.** 2004, 2,693 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0831127008. Published by Industrial Press, Inc., 200 Madison Ave., New York, NY 10016. List price $89.95

I have yet to see a highly skilled professional machinist who did not have a copy of this book on his workbench. This is not an instruction manual on how to machine metal, but it contains crucial information on millions of details that are important to draftsmen, engineers, designers, and machinists. Want to cut a spur gear, calculate the strength of a steel I-beam, figure out the size and thread system for a broken screw on some piece of obscure machinery (or machine a new one)? This book will provide the details, dimensions, and other specifications that you need to make proper hardware and components. As an engineer and designer of products and machinery, I would be lost without my copy of *Machinery's Handbook.*

***achining Fundamentals,* by John R. Walker.** 2004, 640 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1590702499. Published by Goodheart-Willcox Publisher, 18604 West Creek Dr., Tinley Park, IL 60477-6243. List price $70.00

This comprehensive text provides instruction on all facets of machining work, including setup, cutting speeds, safety, mills, lathes, and drilling machines. A great guide for the beginning

machinist and a fine reference for those with prior machining experience. This book is often used as a classroom textbook for machinist courses in trade schools.

ıe Shop Wisdom of Frank McLean **Frank Allen McLean (editor).** 1992, 240 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 0-941653-06-4. Published by Village Press, 2779 Aero Park Drive, Traverse City, MI 49686. List price $36.00

Let master machinist Frank McLean teach you 47 valuable machining techniques and how to make 41 shop tools and mill/lathe accessories in your own home shop. This book may be difficult to find except through the Village Press Web site at www.villagepress.com.

ıe Shop Wisdom of Rudy Kouhoupt, **Rudy Kouhoupt (editor).** 1989, 240 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 0-941653-06-4. Published by Village Press, 2779 Aero Park Drive, Traverse City, MI 49686. List price $36.00

Tips and tricks from Rudy Kouhoupt contained in 15 micromachining articles plus precise plans for six scale engines. This book may be difficult to find except through the Village Press Web site at www.villagepress.com.

General

ɛtal Working: A Book of Tools, Materials and Processes for the Handyman, **by Paul N. Hasluck.** 1907, 760 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 1-55918-126-5. Published by Lindsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915. List price $29.95

This is a reprint of a remarkable how-to book that covers most facets of early 1900s metalworking, including casting, machining, blacksmithing, spinning, sheet metal, metal finishing, and heat treating. Contains plans for numerous projects to teach yourself these skills, including how to build a lathe and a working steam engine. This is a great reference that provides the information you would need to build both metalworking skills and tools from scratch.

ɛlder's Handbook: A Guide to Plasma Cutting, Oxyacetylene, ARC, MIG and TIG Welding, **by Richard Finch.** 2007, 160 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1557885135. Published by HP Books, Penguin Group, 375 Hudson St., New York, NY 10014. List price $19.95

This is an excellent welding guide and instruction manual for the home shop welder. It is just right for someone like myself, who wants to do it right but only welds on an occasional basis. *Welder's Handbook* is far simpler and easier to understand than the serious welding manuals aimed at certified welders.

ɛ re Metallica, **by Georgius Agricola, Herbert Clark Hoover and Lou Henry Hoover (trans).** 1950, 638 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0486600062. Published by Dover Publications, Inc., 31 E. Second St., Mineola, NY 11501. List price $32.95

Former president Herbert Hoover and his wife translated the original Latin text into English. This treatise on medieval mining, metallurgy, and metalworking is commonly acknowledged as one of the most highly respected scientific classics of all time. It tells you things such as how to make nitric acid and refine silver using crude technologies. Lavish woodcuts offer a glimpse into another time and place.

***e Pirotechnia of Vannoccio Biringuccio: The Classic Sixteenth-Century Treatise on Metals and Metallurgy,* by Vannoccio Biringuccio.** 2006, 512 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0486446431. Published by Dover Publications, Inc., 31 E. Second St., Mineola, NY 11501. List price $80.00

The Pirotechnia of Vannoccio Biringuccio was the first clear, comprehensive work on metallurgy. It predates *De re Metallica* by many years and is a bit more difficult to understand, having a heavier alchemy influence with less premodern chemistry. If you are a history of technology buff, don't miss this one.

***Diderot Pictorial Encyclopedia of Trades and Industry: Manufacturing and the Technical Arts in Plates Selected from "L'Encyclopedie, ou Dictionnaire Raisonne des Sciences, des Arts et des Metiers,"Volume One,* by Denis Diderot.** 1993, 239 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0486274287. Published by Dover Publications, Inc., 31 E. Second St., Mineola, NY 11501. List price $29.95

First printed in 1751, the plates contained in this historical encyclopedia offer a unique look at manufacturing techniques just prior to the Industrial Revolution. Volume one covers agriculture, articles of war, iron foundry and forge, mining, and metalworking. Another fine book for technohistory buffs. Want to cast a larger-than-life bronze statue of Napoleon riding his favorite horse? How about a 20-foot canon? The *Encyclopedia* will show you how.

***n Divers Art: The Foremost Medieval Treatise on Painting, Glassmaking and Metalwork,* by Theophilus, John G. Hawthorne and Cyril Stanley Smith (trans)**. 1979, 216 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0486237848. Published by Dover Publications, Inc., 31 E. Second St., Mineola, NY 11501. List price $14.95

Another one for the history of technology buffs. *On Divers Arts* is acknowledged as the foremost medieval treatise on painting, glassmaking, and metalworking. It was the first technical manuscript on painting, glass, and metalwork that came from an actual artisan who practiced and observed firsthand what he wrote about, rather than a scholarly treatise written by persons with no real experience.

Magazines

achinist's Workshop. Subscription: $26.95 per year for 6 issues. Village Press, 2779 Aero Park Drive, Traverse City, MI 49686. Call (800) 327-7377 or see their Web site at www.machinistsworkshop.com.

This is an excellent magazine for the novice to intermediate home shop machinist. From lathe work to milling and drilling, grinding, and casting, *Machinist's Workshop* pursues every technique it takes to transform raw stock into machining success.

e Home Shop Machinist. Subscription: $29.95 per year for 6 issues. Village Press, 2779 Aero Park Drive, Traverse City, MI 49686. Call (800) 327-7377 or see their Web site at www.homeshopmachinist.net.

More technical than *Machinist's Workshop* and with more difficult projects, this magazine is devoted to the serious home shop machinist. Many professional machinists contribute articles to this magazine and like to tinker around with its projects in their spare time.

ıvil Magazine. Subscription: $29.50 per year for 12 issues. Anvil Magazine, P.O. Box 1810, 2770 Sourdough Flat, Georgetown, CA 95634-1810. See their Web site at www.anvilmag.com.

This is a blacksmithing magazine with a heavy leaning toward farriers (horseshoeing). It is billed as "The voice of the American Farrier and Blacksmith." Great online resource guide for the blacksmithing and farrier industries. Their magazine has reduced its subscription prices by going to online publication only.

ıe Anvil's Ring. This is the premier U.S. magazine for the modern artist-blacksmith. Get this quarterly magazine by joining ABANA (see below).

Resources

ɜANA (Artist-Blacksmiths' Association of North America), P.O. Box 816, Farmington, GA 30638-0816; phone: (706) 310-1030; fax: (706) 769-7147; Web site: www.abana.org.

For creative inspiration and to keep up with the latest tips, tricks, and news in the rapidly expanding field of modern blacksmithing, join the ABANA. Membership includes a subscription to their quarterly magazine, *The Anvil's Ring*, and their monthly newsletter, *Hammer's Blow*. My friends in the blacksmithing business say this is a must.

ıvilfire.com, Dempsey's Forge, 1684 Mitchell Mill Road, Gladys, VA 24554; phone: (336) 367-3499; Web site: www.anvilfire.com.

Anvilfire.com is a unique resource for blacksmiths and related metalworkers. It is a fine online source for metalworking information. They offer a broad selection of books and videos, plus links to a wide range of suppliers for blacksmithing and farriers. Check out www.anvilfire.com for great links into the blacksmithing world.

ɛntaur Forge, 117 N. Spring Street, Burlington, WI 53105; phone: (262) 763-9175; fax: (262) 763-8350; Web site: www.centaurforge.com.

This is a fantastic source! Centaur Forge carries a large inventory of blacksmithing tools, forges, supplies, videos, and books. Centaur offers an unparalleled selection of books and videos on blacksmithing, casting, machining, horseshoeing, carriages, saddlery, gunsmithing, knives, and miscellaneous other crafts and trades.

ndsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915; phone: (815) 935-5353; fax: (815) 935-5477; Web site: www.lindsaybks.com.

Lindsay offers an amusing, interesting, and eclectic collection of do-it-yourself kinds of books that range from hard-to-find current books to reprints of longgone classic texts. Covers everything from biodiesel, to steam engines, to metal casting, to wind turbines, to Nikola Tesla.

IFCO (McEnglevan Industrial Furnace Company), 700 Griggs St., P.O. Box 31, Danville, IL 61834; phone: (217) 446-0941; fax: (217) 446-0943; Web site: www.mifco.com.

This company makes and sells furnaces for foundry work, in addition to all kinds of foundry accessories. Their Web site also has links to a subsidiary company, Danville Industrial Machinery, which distributes a variety of metal fabricating machinery such as shears, brakes, and sheet metal rollers.

llage Press, 2779 Aero Park Drive, Traverse City, MI 49686; phone: (800) 327-7377; fax: (231) 946-3289; Web site: www.villagepress.com.

The Village Press publishes several magazines in addition to numerous books on machining, metalworking, and steam engines.

. W. Grainger, Inc., 100 Grainger Parkway, Lake Forest, IL 60045-5201; phone: (847) 535-1000; fax: (847) 535-9221; Web site: www.grainger.com.

Grainger offers a huge selection of industrial hardware, supplies, and tools. The company has a couple hundred branches, so I suggest you call or use their Web site to locate the nearest branch. I use Grainger to supply many of the off-the-shelf components for the custom machinery that I design. Their catalog is encyclopedia-sized. They are great for things like motors, compressors, blowers, tanks, wheels, fittings, regulators, and so on.

13

Utensils and Storage

> Good pots elude their critics and analysts—even the potters who formed them—by being more than the sum of their quantifiable parts. Nowhere are these indefinable elements more evident than in pots taken from the cold ashes of a wood fire. Whether they challenge or reinforce the beholder's values, these pots have a strong presence born of their many days' trial in the fire.
>
> **—Jack Troy, *Wood-Fired Stoneware and Porcelain***

For thousands of years, humankind has fabricated useful utensils and storage items such as jars, baskets, pots, and pans. Archeological artifacts of common everyday items left behind by ancient tribes and civilizations exhibit levels of art and craft that range from downright ugly to exquisite. In this chapter I present several low-tech methods for making useful household utensils and storage items. Many of the books on primitive living skills listed in the "Basic Skill References" section of Chapter 4 offer further instructions for constructing rudimentary utensils and containers. If you wish to travel beyond the basics to a higher level of proficiency, artistry, or mastery, the recommended references at the end of this chapter could provide very helpful instruction and inspiration.

MAKING A SIMPLE WOODEN CUP OR BOWL

You can make a simple cup or bowl by burning out the center of a chunk of wood using hot coals. Thomas Elpel, author of *Participating in Nature*, suggests cutting thick roots from downed trees to use as raw materials for wooden containers. Regular wood from logs usually burns slowly and tends to split easily, but Elpel finds that using rootstock avoids these problems. Roots are naturally porous, so they burn easily, and their flexibility makes them resistant to splitting from the heat and dryness of the burning process, the moisture from contained fluids, or the combined heat and moisture from use as a primitive stewing pot.

Begin by cutting your chosen chunk of wood to the desired length. Next, either burn the ends of some sticks in a fire until they become glowing coals or simply scoop coals directly from the fire. Apply the burning stick ends or loose coals to the face of your chunk of wood and gently blow on the coal to start the face smoldering. Continue the process of burning to hollow out the inside of your chunk of wood. As the charring progresses, stop every now and then to dig out the larger chunks of charred wood, and then resume burning. Dribble water onto thin wall sections to prevent burning through. When you have hollowed out your container to nearly the finished inside dimensions, use a knife to scrape away most of the remaining charred wood. Polish the container by rubbing it with a stick or stone and some loose sand. You can waterproof your container with pitch or rendered fat.

Figure 13-1. Burning out a wooden container.

To cook in your wood container, heat several stones in a fire, then drop them one at a time into your container. The liquid should boil surprisingly fast.

> **CAUTION: Never place stones from a creek bed into a fire. The stones may explode due to steam from trapped internal moisture.**

BASKET BASICS

Indigenous peoples everywhere on the planet make beautiful and functional baskets in a variety of shapes, styles, and materials that are truly astounding. The basic concepts and techniques for basket weaving are very simple, yet many examples of native baskets are marvels of intricate weaving and exquisite graphic design. Here are a few directions to help you create rather mundane but useful baskets.

Materials

The most common basket-making materials are flat, round, and flat-oval reeds found growing in marshy areas. Baskets can also be woven from sticks, grasses, pine needles, cordage, roots, or long slender pieces of split wood—essentially any material that is somewhat flexible. A common North American combination of materials is to use slender willow sucker branches for basket "spokes" and to weave cattail reeds around these spokes. The original *Foxfire* book has a decent section on splitting freshly cut white oak and making strong, heavyduty baskets from "splits." To make splits, the old-timers recommend starting with a 4- to 6-inch-diameter white oak sapling, with at least a 7-foot section of unmarred straight trunk having no branches. They typically felled

and split this sapling on the same day, or weighted it in a creek to stay wet until it could be worked. The bark was peeled from the straight section of trunk, and then it was split with wedges into quarters, followed by eighths. After this, each eighth was split further with a hand knife until reaching the desired thickness. When I was a child, my father often carried a picnic lunch and extra clothing for our family of seven in a Native American–style pack-basket made from woven splits.

When weaving reeds, dry reeds are typically soaked in hot water to make them more flexible and easier to work. Green summer reeds may be directly woven into baskets, but they will shrink considerably and cause the basket to loosen up. Bend each reed over your finger to feel for the "wrong" side of the reed. Rough fibers and splinters will extend from the "wrong" side, while the "right" side will stay smooth. Weave basket bodies with the "right" side to the outside.

Making a Basket

The basket "spokes" are the elements that cross in the center of a circular basket pattern and extend outward like the spokes on a wheel.

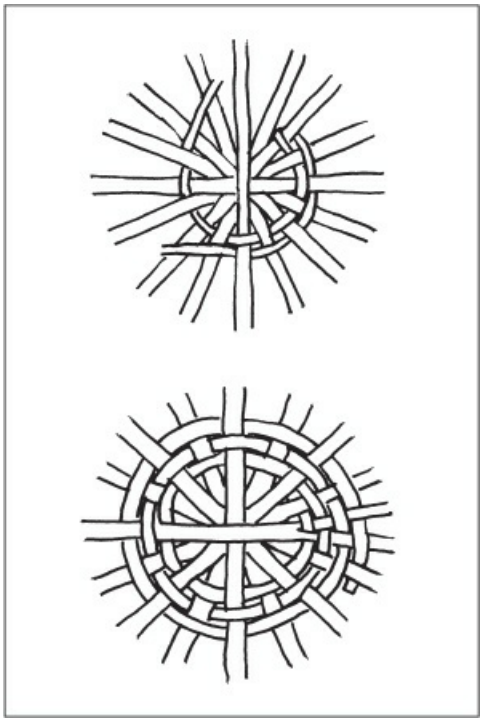


Figure 13-2. Starting a circular basket with "spokes."

Twining

In the case of interweaving cattails around long, slender willow branch spokes, you may prefer to "twine" the cattails. "Twining" refers to a weave where two strands are woven around the spokes and given a 180° twist after each weave between each spoke. Twining helps hold the weave tight

and give body to a basket, but requires either a round or very flexible flat weaving material.

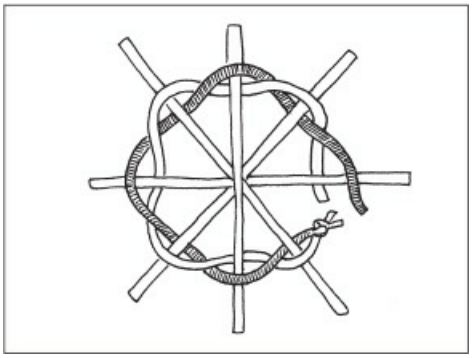


Figure 13-3. "Twining" weave around the spokes.

Adding Spokes

As the basket gets larger, additional spokes may be added. Thread new spokes alongside existing spokes, inside at least two weaves, and then spread the spokes apart and start separating them with additional rows of weave. When the base of the basket has reached the desired diameter, bend the spokes upward to start forming the basket's sides.

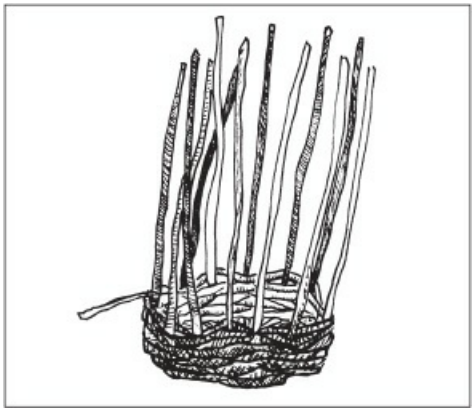


Figure 13-4. Bend the spokes and weave the sides.

When the spokes are not flat but are round reeds or sticks, finish the last row by cutting the spoke tips to about 2 to 3 inches above the last weave. Next, bend each spoke into a "U" shape, and then tuck it down into the weaves beside the nearest spoke, trapping the last weave beneath the bent spoke end.

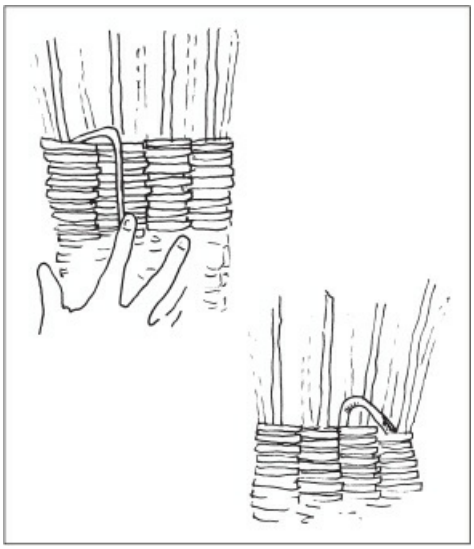


Figure 13-5. Finishing off the last weave ("rim row").

Alternately, a rectangular pattern is woven out of "stakes" that are then bent upward to provide a structure, similar to the spokes, that the basket rows are woven around.

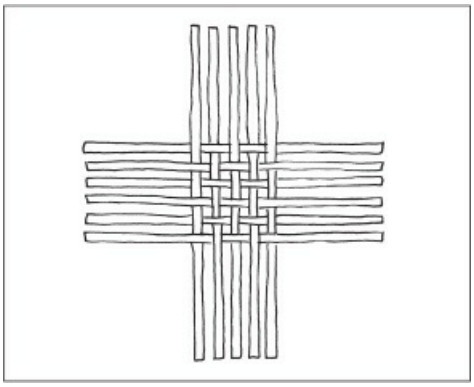


Figure 13-6. Woven base of "stakes" for a rectangular basket.

Weave Basics

Baskets are typically woven as a "continuous weave" or "start-stop weave." In a continuous weave, the weaves are continuously spiraled around the basket until the top of the basket wall (the rim) is reached. In the continuous weave, when one length of reed or other weaving material is reached, a new length of weave is overlapped by a few inches with the tail of the last weave, and then the weave is continued on its spiral path. You can taper or shave reeds and other materials at the overlap to avoid undesired bulges.

NOTE: For a continuous weave, you must have an odd number of staves or spokes for the weave to work out properly.

For the start-stop weave with reeds or splits, stagger the start of each row from the start of the last one. Finish the row by overlapping the same weave to the third stave after the start. Overlap the finish of each weave on the outside of the start.

NOTE: For a start-stop weave, you must have an even number of staves or

spokes for the weave to work out properly.

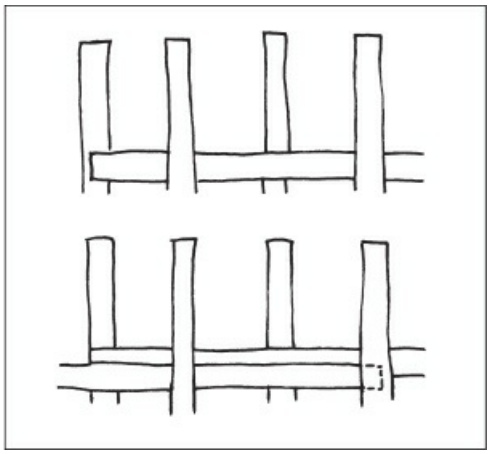


Figure 13-7. Start and finish of the "start-stop" weave.

Basket Rim

Many baskets are finished with a thickened rim both for aesthetics and to make them more durable. Before you make the basket rim, you must finish off the top edge of the wall. Round reeds and sticks are commonly folded and tucked into the slot beside the next spoke over, as shown in Figure 13-5. Flat reeds and splits are typically "trimmed and tucked" by folding over the last weave and tucking them beside themselves through several weaves to hold the ends in place. This prevents the last weave from unraveling and provides a secure weave to lash the rim to.

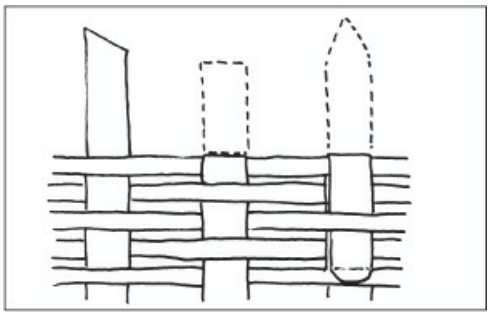


Figure 13-8. "Trim and tuck" to secure the staves and the last weave.

A common rim is made by encircling the last wall weave with two loops of reed or splits, one on the inside and one on outside, and then lashing the rim in place with a thinner weaving material.

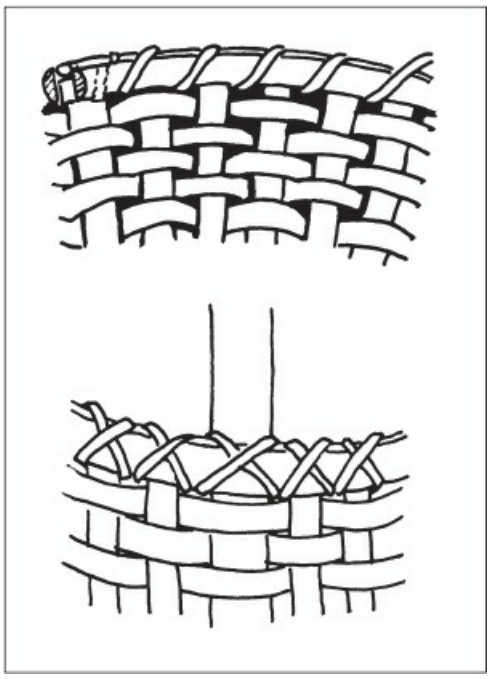


Figure 13-9. Lashing the rim.

Basket Handles

There are many different styles of handles. Probably the most common handles are full hoops that replace one of the staves or spokes and extend all the way through the base. Partial hoops are also very common. These types of handles extend through the center of the rim and thread down through several weaves until they are trimmed and tucked around one of the lower weaves to secure the ends. Another alternative is to carve notches and ridges into thicker handle material, or loops for a drop handle, and then lock this thicker notched material between the upper weaves and/or rim.

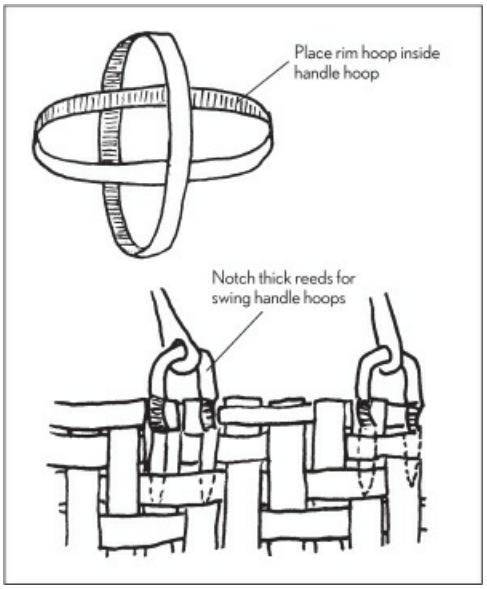


Figure 13-10. A couple of handle options.

GOURDS

> The gourd plant has been described as one of nature's greatest gifts to mankind. Of all the known plants, the gourd is the only one experts believe spanned the entire globe in prehistoric times. It appears as one of the first cultivated plants in regions throughout the world and was used by every known culture in the Temperate and Tropical Zones. **—Ginger Summit and Jim Widess, *The Complete Book of Gourd Craft***

The botanical definition of gourds is somewhat vague and can include all of the squash-melon-cucumber family and tropical calabash tree, but most people think of gourds as hard-shelled, squash-like fruits that grow on vines. Once cured and cleaned, gourds can be fashioned into water containers, kitchen utensils, musical instruments, dry food containers, and ornamental objects.

Growing Gourds

Most gourds will grow like weeds when provided with decent soil, twice-weekly watering (once established), and a hot 2 months of growing season or at least 4 months without frost. You may prefer to grow them on a trellis, because many gourds grown on the ground have a tendency to rot. Plant on mounds like melons, and thin to two to three plants per mound once the vines are established. Pinch the end bud of each vine's central stalk to force more growth into the fruit-producing lateral branches (Summit 1996, 19).

Curing Gourds

Pick brightly colored ornamental gourds when the stem next to the gourd is brown and the adjacent tendrils are dry. Ornamental gourds will eventually lose their beautiful colors and will fade more quickly in the sunlight. Leave at least 1 inch of stem on the gourd. Hard-shelled gourds should be left on the vine until autumn, when they are fully mature and the vine has turned brown and dry. At this point the gourd is about 90 percent water.

It will take from 6 weeks to more than a year to fully dry a gourd, depending on the gourd and local conditions. As the gourd's juices evaporate through its skin, the outer layer (epidermis) will probably mold and it may start to rot. Mold will not destroy the gourd's usefulness, but rot will. The curing process can be accelerated by carefully scraping off the epidermis with a dull knife or scraper. Occasionally scrubbing the gourd with a cloth soaked in a mild bleach or disinfectant solution will discourage mold from forming on the gourd. Shortly after harvesting, when the epidermis has begun to change color and to soften (test with a fingernail scratch to the stem), it is

ready to scrape. Experience is the best way to tell when the gourd is fully dried. The seeds of some gourds rattle when fully cured, but others don't. Some gourds are extremely light when cured, but thick-walled gourds may retain significant weight even when completely dry.

Cleaning Gourds

Mold on the epidermis may provide interesting patterns and colors that you wish to preserve. If this is the case, several coats of clear varnish will seal in the color and prevent the outer epidermis from flaking off with use. If you wish to clean the outer surface, you can loosen the mold by soaking in water with a little bleach until the mold is loosened enough to remove with a stiff scrub brush or pot scrubber. Alternately, wrap in a wet towel or place inside a dark plastic bag along with some water, then set in the sun for several hours, turning occasionally.

Cut the gourd with a knife or saw to provide access for cleaning the inside surface. Scrape the pulp and seeds from the inside. You can improvise your own scraping tools or use knives, spoons, ice cream scoops, potter's trimming tools, and so on. Save the seeds if you wish to plant more of the same gourds. After scraping, you may wish to sand or wire brush the inner surface for a smoother finish. As an alternate method, which is particularly useful for long, narrow-necked gourds, fill the dry gourd with water until the pulp has become mushy and is easy to scrape out (this may take as long as a month). After the pulp and seeds have been removed, fill with gravel and water, and then shake to scour the inside surface.

Sealing Gourds

For thousands of years, gourds have been used as eating utensils and for cooking or storing liquids and foods. To prevent a gourd from imparting a bitter taste to foods, soak the cleaned gourd for several days. Change the water daily until the soaking water has lost all bitterness. Some cultures prefer soaking in salt water or in boiling hot water. A tablespoon of baking soda in the soak water can help to remove bad tastes (Summit 1996, 38). Gourds can be sealed or decorated with a variety of paints, oils, and varnishes, but many of these are not compatible with foods. Repeated curing with warm kitchen oils, such as safflower or soybean oil, will seal the gourds with a nontoxic varnish-like surface—hot beeswax or paraffin are common nontoxic sealants. Pine pitch is a natural sealant that lends a sweet taste to water. Mixing some powdered charcoal into the pitch can give it more body and help to create a more stable bond to the substrate. If you wish to store water in a gourd, you can seal the gourd or leave it unsealed. Evaporative cooling from water slowly seeping through the walls will keep an unsealed gourd water container cooler than a sealed one.

NOTE: A pine pitch coating can also seal baskets or boats, making them watertight.

STORING FLUIDS IN SKINS AND OTHER ANIMAL PARTS

You can make water containers from rawhide and animal bladders. Probably the most important thing to remember is that these containers will rot if water is left in them continuously. If a wineskin is stitched with a long, skinny neck, rolling the neck tightly, like a roll of dollar bills, will seal it watertight. The alcohol in the wine likely helps prevent wineskins from rotting.

A piece of rawhide will do for a stewing pot if nothing else is available. Simply dig a shallow hole in the ground and line it with a piece of rawhide. Fill the rawhide pot with your liquids and other ingredients. Heat rocks in a fire and drop them into your rawhide cooking pot to boil and cook the ingredients. Dry your rawhide pot between uses to prevent rot.

PRIMITIVE POTTERY

Pottery making, one of the earliest commercial technologies, is a skill that could make your life considerably easier if you were deprived of access to modern goods for a considerable period of time. Fired clay pots provide vermin-proof storage containers, watertight containers for liquids, and fireproof utensils for cooking. The use of clay to make useful objects is older than recorded history. Archeologists have dated the earliest known pottery shards at more than 12,000 years old and speculate that some Ice Age clay figurines may be as much as 37,000 years old (Speight 1999, 3).

Clay

Clay is composed of tiny, fine-grained, flat "platelets," mostly consisting of silica and alumina oxides from naturally occurring, finely ground rocks. Moisture in the clay lubricates these tiny platelets, but also has a binding reaction similar to the way a few water drops cause two plates of glass to stick together. This binding action gives moist clay its plastic characteristics and sticky feel. Potters refer to the particular types of clays that they use as "clay bodies." To be useful for making pottery, clay bodies must contain a certain amount of material, referred to as "flux," that lowers the melting point of the clay's silica and alumina oxides to the point where the clay will fuse into a rock-like material when heated in a fire or kiln. Additionally, a clay body must contain suitable refractory material to hold up to the high heat of firing. The modern-day potter has a wealth of commercially available clay bodies to choose from, each having well-documented and consistent characteristics.

Primitive potters had to rely on clay bodies that were locally available. Clays are typically found in riverbeds, road cuts, and ponds where the surface soil has been stripped away. Not all clays are suitable for making pottery.

Some clays are not plastic enough to hold together when modeled. Other clays will crack or fracture when fired. A good preliminary test for a potential clay is to first moisten and mash a lump of clay with your fingers to work it to an even consistency, then roll it between your hands into a pencil-thick piece. Twist this clay "rope" around your finger. If it cracks or breaks easily,

it is probably not suitable for making pottery. The next step is to pinch some of your clay into a small pot, let it dry completely, and then bake it in the coals of a hot fire for several hours (this process is called "firing"). If your local clay survives the firing without cracking and hardens into a rock-hard material that does not soften when soaked in water, it is probably suitable for making pottery.

Clay bodies with very fine particles are not very porous, making them prone to cracking or fracturing during the drying or firing processes. Primitive potters often found that they had to add "tempering" materials to reduce shrinkage, slumping, or cracking in their pottery. Some common tempering materials are sand, chopped straw, mica, volcanic ash (pumice), or crushed shards of fired pottery (grog). See *Low Fire: Other Ways to Work in Clay,* by Leon I. Nigrosh, for a description of more extensive tests and procedures for using local clays.

Preparing Clay

If you're lucky, your clay bed will provide moist clay suitable for making pottery with minimal processing. If your clay is moist and fairly consistent, simply remove the surface layer to minimize the amount of debris contamination, and then proceed to "wedging" the clay. Most beds yield clays that require more processing before use. If your clay bed is dry or contains lumps of hard material such as small gravel, it is best to fully dry your clay chunks and then pound them into finely grained clay powder. If you have screens available, sift the dry powdered clay through the screens. If not, use the following process to remove lumps and debris.

Mix your clay powder with water to make a wet slurry. Mix this well and then let it sit for a couple of minutes to allow the stones to settle to the bottom. Pour the thin, soupy clay slurry into a second container, leaving the debris on the bottom of the first container. You may need to do this a few times. Once you have removed the debris and impurities, let the container sit for a few days, decanting or siphoning the clear water that rises to the surface. You can recycle your clay scraps from making pottery by dumping them back into your slurry buckets. Next, spread this clay out on some rocks, wooden boards, or plaster slabs to partially dry. Plaster works great for this purpose. Being porous, plaster rapidly draws moisture from the clay, releasing this moisture to the air once the clay is removed. Clay for pots must not be too wet or too dry. Clay that is too wet is excessively sticky and too soft to hold a shape without slumping. Clay that is too dry is not very workable. The next step is to "wedge" the clay.

Wedging Clay

Wedging clay is a process that removes trapped air bubbles and thoroughly mixes the clay to the point where it has an even consistency throughout the clay body. Clay is wedged with motions that are similar to kneading bread. To avoid tiring quickly, while wedging your clay on a table-high flat surface, stand so that you can lean your whole body into the motion. Wedge quantities of clay that are easily manageable (i.e., 2 to 15 lb). Draw your clay into a loaf or ball shape, and then lean into it and push a portion of it forward, giving the clay about a quarter twist as it distorts. As you keep repeating this process, your lump of clay will form into a spiral shape, thoroughly mixing each layer and releasing air bubbles through tiny cracks in the spiral. You can check the consistency by cutting the clay on a taught wire and examining the cut surface for any evidence of layers, indicating that it needs more wedging. You can choose to add tempering materials either while you wedge or when the clay is still a slurry. My high school pottery teacher encouraged us to dry overly wet clays by adding powdered clay while wedging, but this

is poor practice, because it takes several days for dry clay to completely assimilate moisture and become fully plastic. A much better practice is to spread overly wet clay out onto large plaster batts to dry. The plaster will quickly draw excess moisture from the clay, leaving you with workable clay that has retained its natural plasticity.

Figure 13-11. Wedging clay.

Pinch Pots

The simplest form of pottery is the “pinch pot.” Simply take a lump of clay and use your fingers to pinch it into the shape that you desire. Do not leave walls thicker than about ½ inch, as these will trap moisture that may cause your pot to crack or explode when fired. Unfired clay pottery is referred to as “greenware.” Dry your greenware slowly to prevent cracking. If you have some pieces of old garbage bags, drape them over your greenware while drying to slow the process. Otherwise, simply dry your pottery in a cool spot in the shade. Sprinkling the surfaces with water or spraying with a fine mist can help slow the drying process. Lips and handles tend to dry faster than the main body of the pot. Draping a moistened cloth or paper towel over a lip or handle will retard the drying process in these areas.

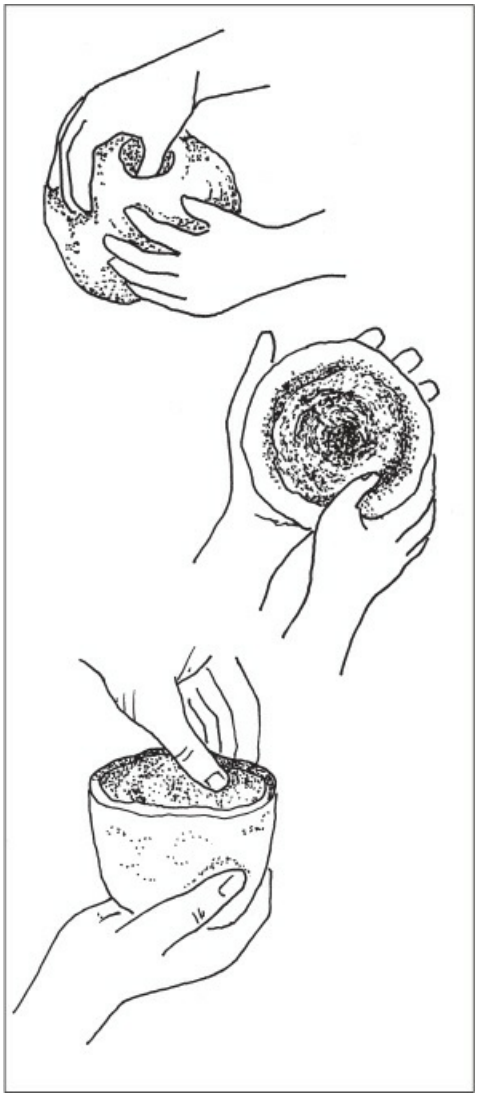


Figure 13-12. Making a pinch pot.

A variation on the pinch pot is to press your clay into a form such as an existing bowl.

Coil Pottery

A very common method for making pottery is to build pots from coils of clay. Most classic Greek pottery was first built from coils. The pots were then attached to a turntable and turned against a trimming template to give the pottery its classic outer profile and a smooth surface texture. Start by rolling out a flat slab of clay and cutting it to the size of the base of your pot. Roll ropes of clay either between each of your hands or between your hands and a smooth flat surface.

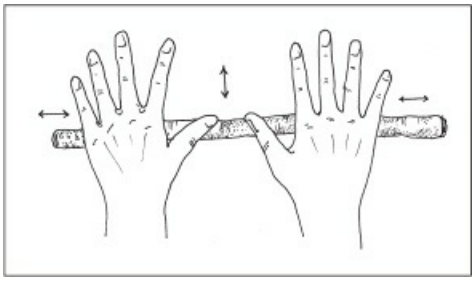


Figure 13-13. Rolling clay ropes for coil pots.

Build your coil pot by spiraling rolled clay ropes into the desired shape of your pot. Using your fingers or a smooth wooden tool, push one coil ridge into the coil below to smooth the surface and to join each coil together. It is important to distort enough clay from one coil into the next to prevent coils from separating or cracking during drying or firing.

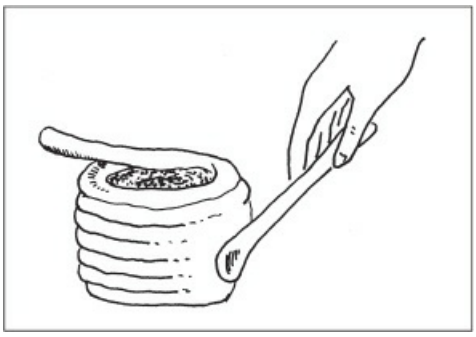


Figure 13-14. Making a coil pot.

You can use a smooth wooden tool (called a “rib” tool) to smooth the outer profile. Support the inside of the pot with one hand while you smooth the outside with a scraping action using the rib. Many fine southwestern Pueblo-style pots are further finished by burnishing with a smooth stone. Repetitive rubbing with the stone burnishes a polished finish that is both beautiful and less porous than unburnished earthenware.

Figure 13-15. A burnished pit-fired coil pot by Renee Roybal, San Ildefonso Pueblo. (Photo courtesy of Marcia Keegan)

Slab Pottery

Slab pots are made from joining semi-hardened slabs of clay that are first cut to the desired shape and then joined together. Start by rolling out slabs of clay using a rolling pin or a similar round object. The use of thin spacing strips, such as yardsticks, can facilitate rolling slabs of consistent thickness.

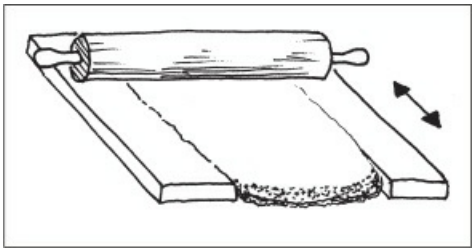


Figure 13-16. Rolling slabs.

You can either drape slabs into or over a form to give them a smoothly curved shape or allow them to dry until they reach a semi-hardened state referred to as “leather hard.” leather-hard slabs are the stiffness of full-grained leather. Cut leather-hard slabs to size using a knife or sharp stick. To join leather-hard slabs to each other, first score the edges with a sharp tool, and then coat the scored edges with a thick layer of clay slip. Press the scored and slip-covered edges together with a slight sliding or twisting motion to ensure that no air bubbles are trapped. After cleaning excess slip from the joints, you can reinforce the inside of each joint with a tiny rope of clay worked into the sides with a wooden tool or your fingertips.

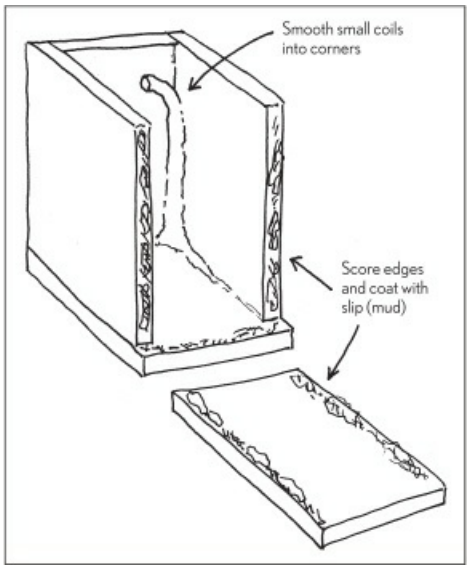


Figure 13-17. Joining slabs to make a pot.

Throwing on the Wheel

The invention of the potter's wheel made it possible for potters to turn out large quantities of consistent pots in a short period of time. "Thrown pottery" refers to pottery that has been made on a potter's wheel. You can make your own homemade kick wheel from a couple of bearings, a shaft, a round wheel head, and a flywheel made of cast concrete or a wooden form filled with bricks, sand, or rock. oldfashioned potter's wheels were foot powered, but modern electric wheels have powerful variable-speed motors controlled by a foot pedal. Many different pottery books present well-illustrated instructions on the basics of wheel throwing.

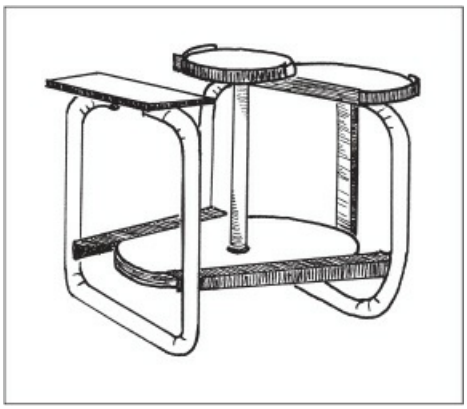


Figure 13-18. lowtech kick wheel.

The following sections will give you some idea of the basic techniques for making pottery on the wheel. These instructions are the bare minimum necessary for learning this craft on your own. For more complete instructions and a beautiful guide to the ceramic arts in general, I highly recommend *Hands in Clay,* by Charlotte F. Speight and John Toki (see references section). I must admit that I am very partial to hand-thrown pottery. At one time, I seriously considered becoming a professional potter. There is something deeply satisfying in the act of transforming a shapeless lump of clay into the basis for an artful utensil in just a few minutes.

Centering the Clay

After an appropriate-sized chunk of clay has been wedged, pat the clay into a smooth ball, or rounded cone shape, with a flattened bottom. Lightly moisten the wheel head and slap your chunk of clay onto the center of the wheel head. Pat it firmly in place. The idea is to get the ball of clay firmly stuck to the center of the potter's wheel. The next step takes some practice and developing a feel to get it right. Have a bucket of water at your side so you can regularly dip your hand into it to lubricate the interface between your hand and the clay. A small sponge is useful for adding water to lubricate the clay or for soaking up excess water.

The object of centering is to use your hands to push against a spinning lump of clay until it is molded into a smooth mound of perfectly centered clay with almost no trace of wobble. The wheel should be spinning rapidly while centering clay. When learning to center, start with fairly soft clay. You will need to anchor and steady your arms as you center the clay. Pinching your elbows tight against your body or your upper legs can help brace them. Focus your attention not so much on pushing against the clay but on holding your arms steady and "seeing" the clay as perfectly centered. Your body will make the necessary movements and compensations to center the clay. Bracing one hand against the side, bear forward and downward with the palm of your

other hand, trying to smooth this lump into a hemispherical mound of clay perfectly centered on the wheel. If this action does not perfectly center your clay, place each hand on one side of the mound and pinch the spinning clay to draw the mound up into a more elongated, somewhat conical shape. Repeat the process of pushing down and drawing up until the mound is perfectly centered.

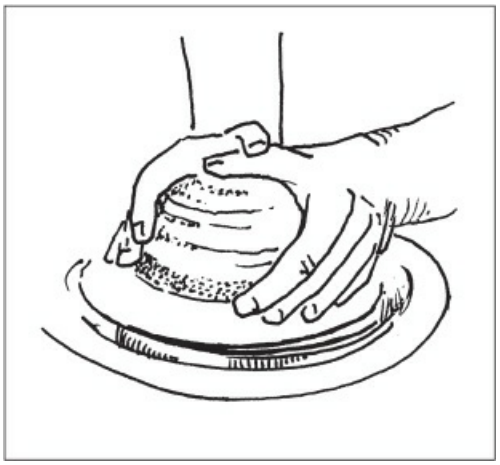


Figure 13-19. Centering the clay.

Opening

Once the clay has been centered, the next step is "opening" the clay mass. Begin by flattening and pushing a dimple into the top of the spinning, centered mound of clay. Brace your arms to keep the next motions steady and stable. Push your thumb or finger into this depression and continue driving downward until it is about a half-inch above the wheel head, leaving enough thickness for the bottom wall of the pot plus a raised rim (foot) for the pot to stand on. You should now have a ring-shaped mound. Place your fingers in the center hole, and cup the top of the ring with the palm of your hand(s) as you draw the ring downward and outward until it reaches an outer diameter that is slightly wider than the eventual base of your pot.

Figure 13-20. Opening the clay.

Drawing Up the Walls of a Cylinder

During this stage, you will draw the thickened ring of clay into a tall, straight-walled cylinder. Do not try to neck or widen your pot toward its final form until it has been drawn into a uniform cylinder with a fairly thin wall. In the drawing process, one hand will be on the inside of the pot while the other hand is on the outside. Start at the bottom of your doughnut of centered clay. Exert an even squeezing pressure between the fingers of both hands. The clay will neck inward between your fingers, creating a thickened ridge directly above your fingers. With the wheel spinning at moderate speed, continue exerting a steady squeezing pressure between the fingers of both hands as you draw this thickened ridge upward until your hands pass the top of the cylinder of clay. Repeat this process until you have transformed your low doughnut ring of clay into a uniform cylinder with the desired wall thickness. When the lip of your cylinder becomes uneven, insert a needle tool through the spinning wall to cut off the uneven lip. Thin wires and needle tools act like knives to cut clay, but do not adhere to the sticky clay as a knife would.

Figure 13-21. Drawing up the walls of a cylinder.

Giving the Cylinder Form

In this stage, you will either bow the wall of the spinning cylinder outward, neck it inward, or use a combination of both. Sometimes a wooden or metal rib helps to smooth the surface or provide support to the walls as you stretch the walls toward their final shape. A thin metal rib can be bent to match the desired outer curvature. Lubricate the walls as necessary with water, but avoid using too much water or taking too long since the walls may become overly softened and collapse. When you neck a wall inward, the wall will thicken and may need further drawing upward to thin the wall back to the desired thickness. When the lip of your pot becomes uneven, insert a needle tool through the spinning wall to cut off the uneven lip.

Figure 13-22. Giving your cylinder form (collaring the neck).

Once the outer shape has its final form and the lip has been trimmed even, you may choose to thicken the lip, give it a decorative shape, or add a ridge to help trap a lid. Pour spouts for pitchers can be joined to the lip or formed from the existing lip. Handles and knobs are usually added after your pot has dried to the leather-hard stage using the same techniques as for joining

leatherhard slabs.

Removing the Pot from the Wheel

Using a wooden tool, trim excess clay from the perimeter of the base of your pot.

Figure 13-23. Trimming excess clay from the base.

Using your sponge, dribble water on the wheel platter. With a taut wire or fishing line, cut the pot from the wheel head, drawing water under the pot as you slide the wire between the wheel head and the pot several times. With the side of your hand, slide the pot along the wheel head and onto a waiting tray to dry.

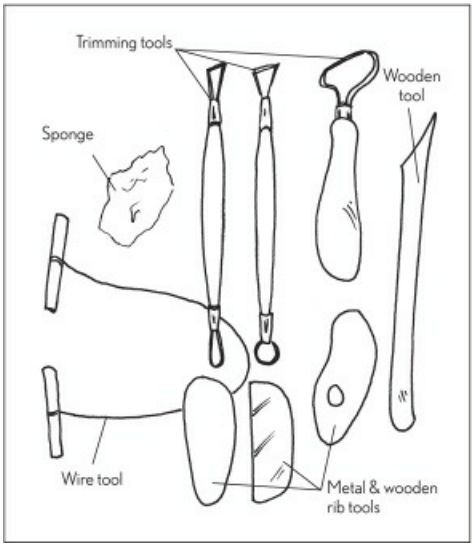


Figure 13-24. Basic pottery tools for throwing.

Lids and Plates

Shallow lids and plates are thrown by opening up the mound of centered clay into a low, thick-walled ring of clay. Push your palm against this clay, driving it to the inside shape of the shallow cover or plate. With your forearm or fist, flatten the clay, and then use your fingers to give the lip a finished look. Once the plate has been drawn to near its final form, extra compression of the flat center with a rib tool helps to prevent cracking during firing or drying. Use a simple caliper to measure the lips of your pot and lid to ensure that they will fit well. The back of the plate or lid is trimmed into the pot after it has dried leather hard.

Figure 13-25. Measuring with simple calipers for proper fit.

Pulling a Handle

Pulled handles are popular due to their typically fluid graceful curves. Start with a thick-rolled slug of moderately stiff, fine-grained clay (low on grog or other coarse tempering materials). Wet your hands and repeatedly draw the handle into a lengthened shape that is of the desired width and thickness. Stick the thick end of the pulled handle onto a shelf until it has dried enough to bend it into its final form without slumping. Attach the handle to the pot. If the pot and handle have dried to the leather-hard stage, first score the attachment areas and then cover the score marks with slip before attaching the handle. Smooth the joint with a wooden tool and small coils of clay for filler.

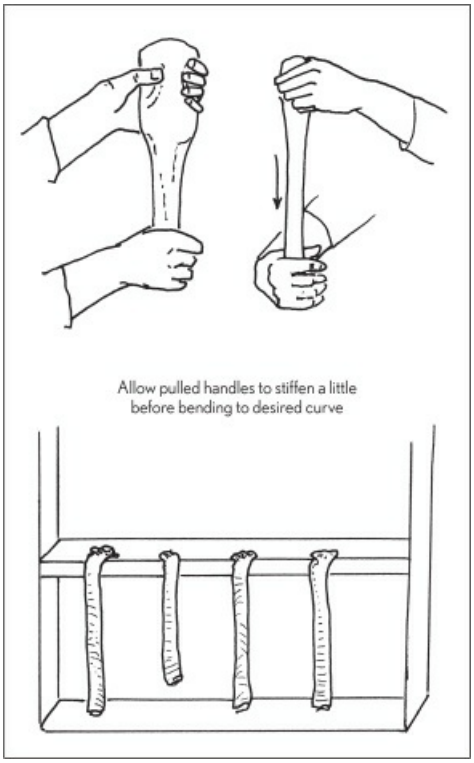


Figure 13-26. Pulling a handle.

Trimming

After your pot has dried leather hard, flip it over onto its lip on top of the wheel head. Spin the wheel slowly and tap the pot to center it on the wheel. Once centered, attach it to the wheel with three or more pieces of soft clay. Using sharpened loops of flat steel wire attached to handles (trimming tools), gradually trim away excess clay from the base of the pot, and trim a raised lip ("foot") for the pot to rest upon. Do not leave thick walls at the base, or the pot will feel excessively heavy and may crack or explode when fired.

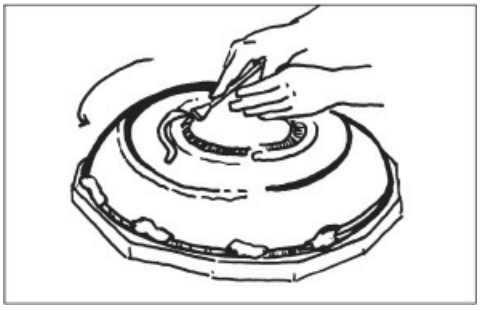


Figure 13-27. Trimming the base.

Firing Pottery

Until your greenware has been transformed into rock-hard pottery by extreme heat (called "firing"), it is very fragile and fairly useless. Pottery handbooks usually describe firing temperatures in terms of "cone" numbers corresponding to carefully formulated pyrometric cones that soften and slump over when the kiln reaches specific temperatures. They are a mechanical sort of thermometer that indicates when a kiln firing has reached a specific temperature.

Pottery is often divided into three main categories: earthenware, stoneware, and porcelain. Earthenware is pottery that has been fired at a low temperature (below 2,100°F or cone 1). It is usually porous, relatively soft, and red or brown in color. Stoneware is a type of clay body fired to temperatures at which it becomes vitrified (glassy), dense, and nonporous, but not translucent. Stonewares are typically fired between 2,192°F and 2,419°F (cone 4 to 12) and are usually brown, but may be white. Porcelain is a translucent white clay body traditionally fired in the 2,370°F to 2,640°F range (cone 9 to 13) (Speight 1999, 492–495).

Here we will concentrate on firing earthenware. Earthenware requires lower firing temperatures than either stoneware or porcelain. These lower temperatures are more easily achieved with crude technologies. Greenware must be thoroughly dried before firing.

Aboveground Firing

The simplest method of primitive firing, but also the one liable to lose the most pots to fracturing, is firing in an open bonfire. Place your greenware around the perimeter of a large pile of fuel and ignite the fuel. Once the fuel has burned to a bed of coals, place your preheated greenware upside down on top of the coals, then carefully stack more fuel around and above the pots. At between 30 minutes and 4 hours, the pottery should blacken and appear to have sintered (hardened), at which point the firing is done. Either cover the pots with more fuel to generate reduction coloration effects or simply allow the fire to burn out. Aboveground firing temperatures reach around 1,085°F (cone 022) (Nigrosh 1980, 10).

Pit Firing

Pit firing is a definite improvement over aboveground firing. The walls of the pit contain the fire and help to hold the heat in, making a rudimentary kiln. Start by digging a pit roughly 1½ to 3 feet deep by 2 to 5 feet in length and width. The extra dirt can be used to berm a raised rim around the pit. Line the bottom and sides of the pit with a layer of fuel such as kindling, corncobs, or dried dung. Place the greenware on top of this layer, and fill the spaces between the pots with more fuel. Finish with a layer of fuel on top of the pots, and then light the fuel on top. The fuel will slowly ignite downward, ensuring that the pots are heated slowly. Once the fire is burning well, add more fuel until the pit is filled to the top with glowing coals. When the pots are glowing red, either allow the fire to burn out for oxidation colors or cover and smolder with wet leaves, straw, ashes, or dung for reduction effects. Open-pit firing temperatures can reach 1,285°F to 1,679°F (cone 018 to 09).

You can increase the temperature of a pit firing by covering it. Build the downward or windward end of the pit wider to make a "fire mouth." Line the pit with fuel and then place your greenware on top of the fuel, starting a couple feet back from the fire mouth. Cover the pit with a nonflammable covering, such as corrugated sheet metal, leaving a small opening at the opposite end to act as a flue. Insulate this covering with dirt. Ignite the fuel in the pit, and continue to

stoke the fire from the fire mouth as the pit fuel burns to coals. Covered pit firing temperatures can exceed 1,888°F (cone 05) in just a few hours (Nigrosh 1980, 11–14).

Primitive Kilns

To generate the higher temperatures required for stoneware or porcelain or to protect the surface of glazed pots, a kiln must be constructed for firing the pottery. In the Southwest, Native Americans often fire pots in a sheet metal box supported on bricks in a fire pit. A variation on this theme is the double-drum kiln of Figure 13-28.

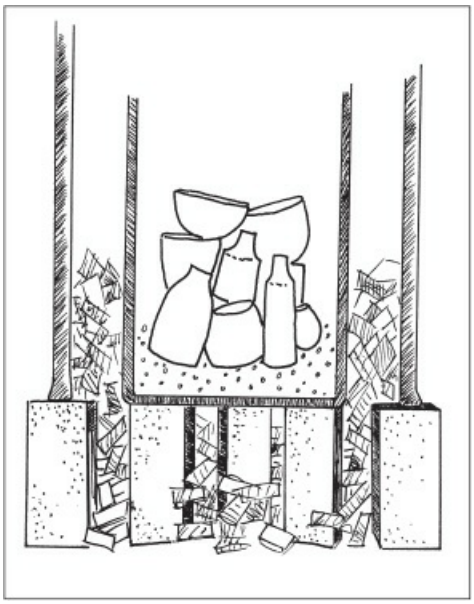


Figure 13-28. Double-drum kiln.

Large multichamber kilns have been traditionally built into hillsides to take advantage of the natural upward draft of hot air. The predecessors of these multichamber kilns were early Chinese and Japanese kilns dug into hillsides to channel hot air from a fire pit past the pottery.

Hands in Clay contains numerous illustrations and descriptions for different kiln designs, but for the definitive book on kilns ranging from ancient to modern, see *The Kiln Book: Materials, Specifications and Construction,* by Frederick L. Olsen.

Waterproofing Earthenware

Earthenware is naturally porous. Water will tend to seep through the walls of an earthenware jar, keeping the water cool by evaporative cooling, but eventually emptying the jar. Traditional unglazed jars were made waterproof by holding milk in them for several days (the milk plugs the pores as it is absorbed), seasoning with vegetable oils, or coating with resinous materials such as pine pitch or bitumen. Probably from observing the natural glazing action occurring from wood ashes falling on pots during wood firings, it was discovered that a glassy material could be formed on the surface of pots. A typical ash glaze is formulated from about 40 percent ash, 40 percent feldspar, and 20 percent clay. The ash fluxes the clay and feldspar, allowing them to melt into a glassy layer. Prepare ashes for glazes by soaking them in water to leach out the lye. Use rubber gloves and glasses to protect yourself from the caustic lye. Drain the water off, and sieve

the ashes before mixing with the other ingredients.

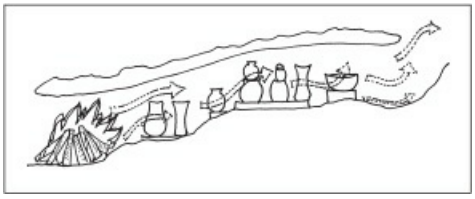


Figure 13-29. Japanese snake kiln.

Most glazed pottery is fired twice. The first firing, referred to as a "bisque firing," fires unglazed greenware to a relatively low temperature (1,661°F to 1,915°F, cone 010–05) to partially sinter the clay and to remove latent moisture and chemically combined water from the greenware. Liquid glazes adhere well to the porous surface of bisque-fired pottery. Glazes are typically applied by dipping, pouring, brushing, or spraying. After the glaze has dried completely, glazed bisque pottery is fired a second time, usually at a higher temperature, to fuse the glaze into a glassy surface.

REFERENCES

The books on primitive living skills listed in the "Basic Skills References" section of Chapter 4 offer some instructions for constructing rudimentary utensils and containers without the use of modern tools. The following references provide more detailed instructions to help you achieve a higher level of proficiency. The photographs in these references, drawn from the best of both modern and ancient artisans, are a great source of inspiration for their craft.

Baskets

Basketmaker's Odyssey: Over, Under, Around and Through—24 Great Basket Patterns from Easy Beginner to More Challenging Advanced, **by Lyn Siler.** 2007, 112 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0977194117. Published by Word Weaver's Ink, P.O. Box 173, Matthews, NC 28106. List price $23.95

Do you have a desire to make truly outstanding baskets? If you have patience and can pay attention to detail, the illustrations and instructions in this book will get you weaving baskets that are more than simply functional—they are truly works of art. This book covers quite a variety of basket designs, ranging from simple to complex, and is suitable for beginners to advanced students. Contains many fine photos and illustrations that will show you how to build a wide variety of baskets, as well as making this an inspiring book equally suited for the workshop or the coffee table. It is spiral bound to make it easy to lay it flat for reference while working on your basket project.

Gourds

***e Complete Book of Gourd Craft: 22 Projects, 55 Decorative Techniques, 300 Inspirational Designs,* by Ginger Summit and Jim Widess.** 1998, 144 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1887374552. Published by Sterling Publishing Company, 387 Park Ave. South, New York, NY 10016. List price $18.95

I never knew that gourds could be crafted into such an incredible array of beautiful, functional items. This book is a visual treat. In addition to providing excellent instructions for crafting gourds into useful and artful products, it displays hundreds of color photos of inspirational designs.

Ceramics

***nds in Clay,* by Charlotte F. Speight and John Toki.** 2003, 518 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0072950700. Published by McGraw Hill Companies, P.O. Box 182604, Columbus, OH 43272. List price $76.56

My college ceramics instructor, now head of the department at Cabrillo College, has adopted *Hands in Clay* as the main classroom text. This is a terrific comprehensive guide to ceramics. It covers the history of ceramics, excellent instructions for basic through advanced techniques, materials, tools, and recipes. *Hands in Clay* is graced with hundreds of photographs for instruction and artistic inspiration.

***ood-Fired Ceramics: Contemporary Practices,* by Coll Minogue and Robert Sanderson.** 2000, 160 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0812235142. Published by University of Pennsylvania Press, 4200 Pine St., Philadelphia, PA 19104. List price $49.95

If you have a desire to produce high-quality, woodfired stoneware or porcelain, this is the book for you. Contains a nice mixture of photos of inspirational works, plus the artists and their actual wood-fired kilns, from around the world. Great for artistic inspiration, this is not really a how-to kind of book.

***ternative Kilns and Firing Techniques: Raku, Saggar, Pit, Barrel,* by James C. Watkins and Paul Andrew Wandless.** 2001, 128 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1579909529. Published by Lark Books, a division of Sterling Publishing, 378 Park Ave. South, New York, NY 10016. List price $14.95

This terrific book provides both practical howto information and outstanding artistic inspiration. Makes me want to go right out and make a raku kiln and pit fire some clay!

***e Kiln Book: Materials, Specifications and Construction,* by Frederick L. Olsen.** 2000, 288 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0873419109. Published by Krause Publications, 700 E. State Street, Iola, WI 54945. List price $44.95

In its third edition, this is still the definitive book on kiln construction. *The Kiln Book* covers everything from classic, wood-fired kilns to modern gas and electric kilns. Shows you how to build and operate kilns from scratch.

14

Better Living Through Not-So-Modern Chemistry

> Only a few decades ago most people used their own formulas to perform useful and essential tasks, inside the house and out. Every home was a workshop, a chemical laboratory, a factory, and a pharmacy. Today that rich culture of largely pure, organic remedies has been replaced by the huge pre-packaged store-bought formula business. But the convenience of buying premixed, premade potions has a high cost: preservatives, some of them harmful, are added to keep products fresh throughout shelf life; packaging creates litter and raises the product price; and perhaps most important, knowledge is lost.
>
> **—Paula Dreifus Bakule, editor of *Rodale's Book of Practical Formulas***

This chapter provides a basic introduction to a few old-fashioned recipes, procedures, and apparatuses for making useful household products. These are the little things that we take for granted in our society—items like soap, ointments, glue, and cooking oils. They are simple items that make our lives a lot more pleasant than they would be without them, yet most of us don't have the foggiest idea how to make any of these products on our own.

For thousands of years, humankind has sought to extract, refine, or otherwise modify the chemical nature of natural materials. Who knows when humans first discovered that natural fermentation of vegetable and fruit sugars would produce alcohol? Certainly the practice of turning grape juice into wine was well established by early biblical times. The ancient practice of making soap from goat tallow and lye is described on 4,500-year-old Sumerian clay tablets. More than 5,000 years ago, ancient Greek and Chinese metallurgists were smelting, purifying, and alloying different metals to make bronze. In some cases, humankind has taken advantage of nature's own chemical processors, such as the silkworm that eats the leaves of mulberry trees and then spins a cocoon of remarkably strong, yet luxuriously soft, organic polymer.

SOAP

> There is something inherently satisfying about making soap. Maybe it relates to the 4,500+ year history of human soap making; maybe it simply reflects a desire to keep the jungle at bay and put our stamp on our personal environment. For pioneer women, soap making was an annual event, often lasting for days while lye was leached from wood ashes saved from the winter fires and then cooked with fat as the spring thaw began. **—Dr. Robert S. McDaniel, *Essentially Soap***

Soaps and detergents are both known as *surfactants*. Surfactants reduce the surface tension of

water, causing the water to fully wet both the object to be cleaned and the debris, encouraging the debris to wash away. According to Susan Miller Cavitch, author of *The Soapmaker's Companion*, soap molecules also have a distinct head and tail, one end with an attraction to water and the other end with an attraction to dirt. This property helps soap molecules to connect the dirt to the water, further enabling the water to wash away the dirt.

Soapy Plants

There are a number of plants that can be used as a substitute for soap without any chemical processing. These plants contain naturally occurring soap-like substances, called saponins. Bouncing bet (also called soapwort), clematis, and yucca are three common North American plants with significant saponin content. It has been said that Native Americans bathed regularly and were often appalled by the smell of white pioneer men. To use any of these plants for soap, chop up the appropriate part of the plant and rub it between your hands with some water or dry it for future use. Before trying a full dose on your body, test for allergic reactions by rubbing a bit onto the inside of your wrist and waiting one day to make sure there is no adverse reaction. Because saponins are somewhat poisonous and Native Americans have used them to paralyze fish, you do not want to eat these plants, except perhaps for the edible fruits and flowers of the yucca family (Brill 1994, 134).

Bouncing Bet

Do not use bouncing bet on your face, because it is very irritating to the eyes. Collect bouncing bet in the late summer to fall. Found nationwide, it is easiest to identify by its pretty white or pink flowers with five petals. You can use the entire plant (Blankenship 1996, 142).

Figure 14-1. Bouncing bet. (Illustration courtesy of *Earth Knack:Stone Age Skills for the 21st Century*, by Bart Blankenship and Robin Blankenship, Gibbs Smith, 1996)

Clematis

Clematis is a common climbing vine with flowers that are mostly white or purple, and is often found dominating the tops of trees. Collect the leaves and flowers for use as soap (Blankenship 1996, 142).

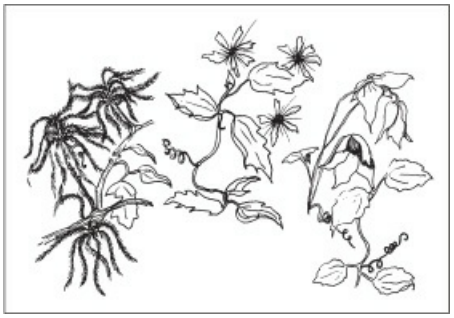


Figure 14-2. Clematis. (Illustration courtesy of *Earth Knack: Stone Age Skills for the 21st Century*, by Bart Blankenship and Robin Blankenship, Gibbs Smith, 1996)

Yucca, Agave, Spanish Bayonet, Sotol, and Joshua Tree

These traditional desert-dwelling plants also contain saponins. The root contains the most saponins, but use of the root kills the plant, so please don't use this plant frivolously. If you are pounding and soaking the leaves for fiber to make cordage, the soaking water will contain sufficient saponins for bathing (Blankenship 1996, 143).

Figure 14-3. Yucca. (Illustration courtesy of *Earth Knack: Stone Age Skills for the 21st Century*, by Bart Blankenship and Robin Blankenship, Gibbs Smith, 1996)

Lye Soap

Most of the specialty soaps that you find in trendy gift shops and bath stores are made from a mixture of lye and vegetable oils combined with scenting ingredients and perhaps a few additives, such as ground oatmeal or clay. Soap making is a chemical process, called saponification, that combines a caustic watery liquid (lye) with warm fats and considerable agitation to encourage their chemical reaction. Making lye soap with modern processed ingredients from your local supermarket or craft store is an easy, satisfying, present-day pastime, but due to the dangers of lye burns it's not a proper craft for kids. If you wish to explore the wonderful world of cottage industry soap making, the recommended references will give you

plenty of recipes to keep you busy for a few years.

For our pioneering ancestors, the process of extracting lye from hardwood ash and rendering tallow from animal fat was considerably more difficult and involved than the modern-day equivalent. The spring soap making process was usually a multiday affair.

CAUTION: Lye is poisonous and very caustic. See the following section for guidelines to deal with lye.

Lye, also known by the chemical name *sodium hydroxide*, was originally derived from hardwood ashes but is now made by a chemical process starting with plain salt. When soap is made properly, all of the lye is chemically combined with animal or vegetable fats, leaving no trace of lye in the finished process. A quick test for homemade soap is to cut the soap and taste the cut with your tongue. If the soap has a "bite" to it (makes the tongue tingle), it contains some pockets of lye and may be suitable for use on clothes and floors but will probably burn your skin and eyes. You can "rebatch" soap with excess lye by melting it in a double boiler and adding more fat as necessary to react with all remaining traces of lye.

Lye Precautions:

- Lye is a caustic substance that is highly poisonous and burns the skin and eyes on contact.
- Keep lye out of reach of children and animals. Clearly label containers as POISON.
- Never mix lye with hot water or hot oil; splattering may occur.
- Keep the poison control phone number handy when working with lye. If ingested, lye will burn the throat and may be fatal. Do not induce vomiting. Drink milk or eat ice cream to help neutralize the lye's action. Do not take vinegar or orange juice, as the reaction with the lye will generate heat and may further burn the stomach. Seek medical attention immediately.
- If splashed with lye, flush eyes immediately with copious quantities of water for 15 minutes. Seek immediate medical attention.
- Always add lye to water, not the other way around.
- Only mix lye with water in well-ventilated areas. Do not breath the fumes!
- Wear rubber gloves and goggles when working with lye. Use of a face shield is a good idea.
- When working with lye, keep a cup of vinegar handy to neutralize any splashes on skin, and then flush with water. Keep newspapers on hand to sop up spills.
- Dispose of lye properly. Small amounts (less than ½ cup) can be poured down the drain with copious amounts of water. Lye can be neutralized with vinegar.

  CAUTION: This reaction may release considerable heat.
- Use lye in glass (preferably Pyrex to take the heat), ceramic, stainless steel, or enameled iron containers. Never mix lye in aluminum, copper, or tin containers.

If you use purchased lye, it should be pure sodium hydroxide without aluminum or other drain-cleaning additives. Squeeze and shake the container to make sure that the lye granules have

not solidified into an unusable solid chunk. If you don't use the entire container, cover it tightly or the lye will absorb moisture from the air and become useless. Some lye containers include a recipe for soap on the label.

Cold-Process Soap

Most modern soap-making books focus on the "cold process" for soap making. This name is a bit misleading, because you start by preheating the fats, but it distinguishes this process from traditional soap making with homemade lye, which requires cooking the soap solution for a considerable period of time to thicken the solution and encourage saponification. The cold process used in most modern soap-making recipes requires store-bought lye and eliminates the need for the long cooking stage. Accurate measurements are one of the keys to success. If the ratio of lye to fat is too high, not all of the lye will react and you will get a soap that burns the skin and eyes. If there is more than enough fat to react with all of the lye, the condition is known as "superfat." Too much superfat and your soap will be greasy, will not clean well, and the excess fats may turn rancid over time. Susan Miller Cavitch likes to calculate lye content in her soap recipes at 10 percent below the theoretical amount required to fully react with the fat content. This guarantees enough fat to fully react with all of the lye and leaves a modest superfat safety margin. To prevent the excess fat from turning rancid, Susan recommends using grapefruit seed extract (available at health food stores and from craft suppliers) to preserve the soap. Other soapmakers have said that if your recipe is accurate, there is no reason to add extra fat, since the extra fat increases the chances for your soap to go rancid and reduces its cleaning properties.

Equipment

> **CAUTION: *Do not* use aluminum, copper, or tin pots. Stirrers and dippers can be made of wood, heat-resistant plastic, or stainless steel.**

Lye is caustic and will react with (corrode) most metals. The lye solution should be mixed in a clear glass Pyrextype container, with plenty of extra room for mixing. Plastic will do only if it is microwave safe, because the lye solution will get very hot. Wood containers are suitable, but will absorb lye and should not be used for anything else once contaminated with lye. Stainless steel is the preferred material for the soap pot, but enameled iron, Pyrex, or ceramic pots will do. In the old days, soap was usually made in cast iron pots, which corroded slightly and contributed rust, giving the bars of soap a reddishbrown color. An accurate scale and measuring cup are important for getting the best results. Rubber spatulas are helpful for getting the last bit of soap out of the pot. A floating stainless steel dairy thermometer is recommended for accurate temperature measurements. Goggles, safety glasses, and/or a face shield are important to protect your eyes from lye splashes. Keep a cup of vinegar on hand as a safety precaution for instantly neutralizing any lye splashes. Use rubber gloves and an apron to protect your hands and clothing.

Molds

Prepare your mold(s) and workspace ahead of time. A cardboard box lined with wax paper makes a good mold for a batch of soap. When the soap is semihard, it can be easily cut into individual bars. Milk cartons, PVC pipe, Tupperware, or small candle molds can also work well. When you pour your soap it will be hot, but the saponification process may require continued warmth to complete the curing of the soap. If you choose to pour your soap into small molds,

you may want to insulate the molds or otherwise keep them warm for a day or two to assist with the curing process.

Fats

Weigh or measure fats and oils per your recipe, and then add them to the pot and heat to the desired soap-making temperature. Each soap-making book gives a different recommended temperature, so it probably is not very critical. Robert McDaniel recommends heating the fats to around 140°F. Susan Miller Cavitch recommends 80°F to 100°F for most of her recipes (she says she has tried numerous temperatures and they all worked). Carla Emery recommends vegetable oils at 110°F to 115°F; bear and goose fats at 115°F; pork at 120°F; and beef, deer, and sheep at 130°F. Take your pick!

A Note on Water

The water used should be soft. Your tap water may be fine, but excessive dissolved minerals will hamper the soap-making process by combining with the lye. The use of rainwater, distilled water, or deionized water (run through a reverse-osmosis filter) will avoid potential problems due to hard water.

Lye Solution

Measure the water (room temperature, never hot) and add to the glass container for dissolving lye. In a wellventilated area, carefully weigh the lye granules and slowly add to the water.

> **CAUTION: Always add lye to water, not the other way around, and always use eye protection. An eye blinded by lye is an ugly sight, reminiscent of a cheap horror movie.**

Use a range hood and/or plenty of ventilation to avoid breathing the fumes. Stir until the solution is completely dissolved and clear. The solution will get very hot as the lye dissolves in the water, which is why you never start with hot water (it could boil over).

Add Lye to Oils

Some like to cool the lye solution to 80°F to 100°F before adding to the warm fats, but McCauley simply adds it once it is fully dissolved and clear. Wearing goggles and gloves, pour your lye solution into the fat, taking care to not splash any of the solution. Stir the mixture. You can add borax and most colorants at this point, but you probably should wait to add scents and essence oils. Continue stirring the solution until it becomes soap. This usually happens within 30 minutes, but could take 5 minutes to several hours, depending on temperatures and ingredients. The solution will thicken and become opaque as the soap crystals form. When it reaches the stage where the oil and lye are fully emulsified (no longer separated into oil and lye) and it "traces," it is ready to pour. "Trace" is described as the stage at which some of the soap mixture drizzled off a spoon back into the soap pot leaves a "trace" of an image for a second or two before blending back into the pot.

Pouring

Add fragrance, herbs, colorants, and so on. Stir well and pour into molds.

Initial Cure

Cover the molds and keep warm for a day or two to assist with further saponification.

Unmolding and Forming Bars

If you molded a large block in a carton, once it is partially hardened, you can cut it into bars with a taut wire or knife. Molds can be dipped in hot water to help you get the soap out of the mold. Rest the soap on waxed paper until it is firm and somewhat dry.

Final Cure

Rest the soap on paper bags, wicker, and so on in a warm, well-ventilated place for 2 to 4 weeks, turning once, until the soap is fully cured. Wrap the completely cured soap as you wish.

> **CAUTION: If a white, powdery film appears, you may have some unreacted lye in your soap.**

Laundry Soap

The addition of borax to soap will enhance its cleansing properties, especially in areas with hard water. In a primitive situation, unless you happen to be near Death Valley or another salt flat, I guess you will be out of luck on this one.

Use the cold process to make your soap with 11 cups of water, 9 cups of rendered fat, and 1 can (18 oz.) of pure lye. In the curing stage, cure the soap in a vat, stirring occasionally for a few days, breaking chunks of soap with a potato masher or mallet. After 2 or 3 days, the soap should be a dry, crumbly mass. When completely dry, grate or mash the soap and mix it with 2 cups of borax (Bakule 1991, 272).

Simple Soap

Use 6 pounds of melted tallow (rendered fat), 5 cups of water, and 1 can (18 oz.) of lye. Prepare according to the cold process (Emery 1998, 600).

Soft Soap with Homemade Lye

In a soap kettle, mix 8 pounds of melted fat with 18 quarts of lye solution (strong enough to float an egg). Bring this mixture to a boil, and then pour into a barrel. Store the barrel in a warm area. The soap should be ready in a few weeks. Alternately, keep boiling the solution until completely saponified. Put a drop on a cool plate to test for clarity and saponification. If clear when cooled, the soap is done. If there is too much grease, the drop of soap will be weak and gray. If there is too much lye, a gray skin will spread over the soap drop. Taste test for "bite" (a drop tingles on the tongue), which indicates too much lye. Correct the batch with additional lye or fat, as indicated by the tests (Hobson 1974, 14).

Dr. Bob's Basic Three-Oil Soap

This is a simple soap made with readily available oils found in grocery stores. The coconut oil gives this soap a rich, foamy lather. Use 26½ ounces of coconut oil (usually hard at room temperature), 26½ ounces olive oil, 31¾ ounces of shortening, and 12 ounces of lye. Prepare

according to the cold process (McDaniel 2000, 85).

Making Lye from Ashes

You can make your own lye solution the way the pioneers did. For your leaching container, use a plastic bucket with a bottom turn-spout or an old-fashioned wooden barrel. Lye will corrode metals. Over time, it will even corrode most stainless steels, though to a lesser degree. If you have a barrel, drill a hole in the bottom of a size that you can plug with a cork or tapered wooden plug, and cover the hole with a few rocks. Line the bottom of the bucket or barrel with a few inches of straw or sand to strain the ashes out of the lye solution. Fill the bucket with ashes from hardwoods, and then cover with rainwater or soft water. Unless you have no other choice, don't bother with softwood ashes such as those from pines and firs, because they make a much weaker lye solution. Once the water begins to flow from the tap, plug the leaching barrel and let it soak for a few days. Drain the lye into a wooden, glass, enameled iron, or ceramic container.

Test the lye for strength by floating a raw egg or potato in the solution (a crude specific gravity test). If the egg sinks, the solution is too weak and must be either run through ashes again or boiled down to increase its concentration. The egg should float with roughly a quarter-sized area showing above the lye. If a large amount of the egg floats above the lye, dilute the solution with water until the egg floats properly.

Making Soap with Homemade Lye

It takes experience to determine how much homemade lye to use with rendered fat (usually tallow or lard) to make soap. Traditionally, the fat and lye were boiled together in a pot until the mixture formed a thick, frothy mass that didn't "bite" when a small amount was placed on the tongue. Homemade lye is primarily a potassium-based alkali that tends to make a softer soap than those made with sodium-based lye, which is made by the LeBlanc chemical process discovered in the nineteenth century. Soft lye soaps were stored in vats and barrels until needed. To make hard soap from soft lye soap, the soft soap was boiled longer and a considerable amount of salt was added to the pot. This removed more moisture from the soap mixture and turned some of the potassium-based soft soap into a layer of sodium-based soap that hardened into a cake on top of the soap pot. Most settlers left their soap soft, because salt was hard to get and was needed more for curing food and feeding to livestock than for hardening soap. When you have the proper lye-to-fat ratio, hard soaps will cut into a smooth curl of soap when shaved with a knife. Excess lye in the soap makes a coarse soap that bites the tongue and crumbles when cut into a shaving.

Rendering Fat for Soap and Candles

The rendering process removes impurities and traces of meat from fats, making them suitable for use in soap and candle making. Rendered beef fat is known as tallow, and rendered pig fat is called lard. When made with storebought lye, tallow makes a hard soap without much lather. Sheep and goat fat make the hardest soaps. Lard makes a soft, creamy bar of soap. You can mix different fats together to custom-tailor the qualities of your soap (see the references). For example, the addition of coconut oil makes for a rich, foamy lather. Grease collected from cooking can also be rendered, though it may retain undesirable odors.

Rendering is an odorous process best done outdoors or under a well-vented hood. Melt the fat in a large pot with somewhere between a quart of water for every 10 pounds of fat ranging to

equal amounts of fat and water. Adding 3 tablespoons of salt for every pound of fat seems to help the process. Boil the fat for about half an hour, and then cool to room temperature. Either skim the fat off the top and strain it into another container or refrigerate to harden the fat layer. Scrape the crud off the bottom of the hardened fat layer. Your soap and candles won't smell much better than your fat, so you might want to repeat this process two or three times. When repeating the process, replace the salt with 2 to 3 tablespoons of baking soda per pound of fat to improve the smell (McDaniel 2000, 82). Rancid fat is no longer any good for food but can be used for soap or candles. Boil rancid fat in a mixture of five parts water to one part vinegar. Use 1 quart of liquid for each gallon of fat, and repeat the process until you are satisfied with the fat purity (Emery 1998, 597).

CANDLES

Lamps and candles have lit the night for humankind throughout the ages. Eskimos extended the extremely short (or nonexistent) arctic winter's day with soapstone lamps that burned oil and fat rendered from the animals they hunted. Beeswax makes wonderful natural candles that smell great and burn slowly, but the scarcity of beeswax makes for costly candles. In the past, most common folk settled for candles made from tallow, which burns quicker and doesn't smell as nice. Of the common farm animal fats, mutton (sheep) is best for candles, followed by beef tallow. Pork lard is rather smelly and burns with a thick smoke.

Before the advent of braided wicking, old-fashioned candle snuffers were used to keep wicks trimmed to about a ½-inch length to prevent wicks from smoking excessively as the candle burned down. A candle snuffer looks like a pair of scissors with a small cup attached to catch the burning pieces of trimmed wicks. Sometime in the 1800s, someone figured out that a braided wick would tend to curl to the side, burning the excess wick length as the candle burned lower, eliminating the need for a candle snuffer.

Wicking

A fast-burning, easy-to-make candle substitute is a "rush light." To make a rush light, first strip the skin from mature rushes (cattails), and then dip the pulpy core in melted tallow. Cool and dip again to thicken the tallow layer. Carla Emery says that you can also roll dried mullein leaves and dip these in melted fat to make primitive candles. You can make your own wicks from pieces of cotton string or hand-spin and braid wicks out of hemp, dogbane, milkweed, cotton, and so on (see the Chapter 4 section on cordage). Wicks that are too thick will smoke excessively. Wicks that are too thin will burn a crater-like depression in the candle and drown themselves in melted wax.

Soaking wicks in a "mordant" solution before making them into candles promotes proper burning. There are numerous mordant formulas. Betty Oppenheimer, author of *The Candlemaker's Companion*, has used a mordant formula consisting of 1 part common table salt, 2 parts borax, and 10 parts water. Carla Emery suggests soaking wicks in limewater, vinegar, saltpeter, or a mixture of limewater and saltpeter. Phyllis Hobson recommends the following

mordants: turpentine; 2 ounces of borax, 1 ounce of lime chloride, 1 ounce of ammonia chloride, and 1 ounce of saltpeter dissolved in 3 quarts of water; or ½ pound of lime and 2 ounces of saltpeter dissolved in 1 gallon of water. Allow wicks to dry before dipping in wax or tallow. Machine-made commercial wicks generally yield far more consistent and superior results than most homemade ones.

Making Candles

Homemade candles are usually hand-dipped, rolled, or molded. Hand-dipped candles are made by dipping a wick repeatedly into a pot of melted candle wax (keep it just above the melting point) building the candle layer by layer. If you wish to make many candles, it is best to attach a number of wicks to a rod or rack for simultaneous dipping. The use of molds considerably speeds the process of making tallow candles, but sticky beeswax candles can be hard to get out of molds. Rolled candles are made by pouring melted wax onto a wick on a flat surface. The melted wax spreads out to a thin layer, and then it's hand rolled into a candle while the wax is still warm and pliable.

In the 1800s, a process was developed to refine tallow with alkali and sulfuric acid to produce stearin. Stearin is a hard, nongreasy substance, an ester of stearic acid, that is mixed with molten tallow at about a 1:9 ratio to make a tallow candle that is harder, burns longer, and does not give off the usual smoke and unpleasant odors of ordinary tallow. To make your own stearin, melt tallow in a glass or enameled iron pot and stir in 3 ounces of slaked lime for each 1¼ pounds of tallow. Boil over low heat until a thick substance forms (lime soap). Add 4 ounces of concentrated sulfuric acid for each 1¼ pounds of tallow and stir until the fat separates. When cool, remove the solid cake of stearin and melt over low heat, stirring constantly until all the remaining moisture is evaporated out of the stearin (Hobson 1974, 39).

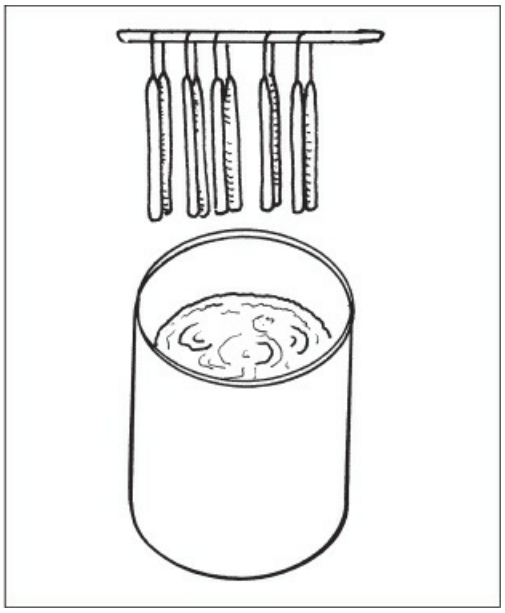


Figure 14-4. Dipping candles.

CAUTION: Sulfuric acid is very dangerous and can cause severe burns. Dispose of it properly.

Stearic acid is a dry, flaked, or powdered material that is mixed into melted tallow or paraffin to harden the wax and make a better-burning candle. Stearic acid is available from suppliers of candle-making materials. Paraffin is a wax made from refined petroleum. It is much cheaper than beeswax and makes good candles when mixed with stearic acid. Betty Oppenheimer likes to use about 15 percent stearic acid in her paraffin candles. *Wagner's Chemical Technology* (see the references section at the end of this chapter) has a detailed section on stearin, candles, and other forms of artificial lighting, but most of the chemistry and processes are beyond the scope of this book.

In a primitive situation, unless you happen to be a chemical engineer, you will probably have to settle for tallow candles with perhaps a little beeswax mixed in. Even small amounts of beeswax will improve a tallow candle, although a half-and-half mixture of tallow and beeswax makes a superior all-natural candle. If you happen to live in an area with bayberry plants, you can extract candle wax from the sage green–colored bayberries by boiling in water and skimming the wax from the pot. One pioneerera recipe for candles was to boil 5 pounds of alum in 10 gallons of water until dissolved, and then add 20 pounds of tallow and boil for another hour. The wax was skimmed off the top and strained through muslin into candle molds or pots for dipping candles (Emery 1998, 38). I'm not quite sure how you would make alum in primitive conditions, but *Wagner's Chemical Technology* might give you a good start.

ALCOHOL

> Alcohol production can be a vehicle to repair land, while simultaneously providing relief to our overstressed, yet still productive soils. . . . So, there are frontiers left to explore in the quest for the dedicated alcohol engine. What's certain is that gasoline is less efficient than alcohol, and that dedicated alcohol engines will get better mileage than gasoline or diesel, with emissions so low that they may not even register on the current smog testers. . . . Orrie Swayze pointed out that if all of our fuel injected cars—and that's almost all of them since the late 1980's—ran on just 40 percent alcohol, we probably wouldn't actually need any foreign oil. **—David Blume, *Alcohol Can Be a Gas: Fueling an Ethanol Revolution for the 21st Century***

Alcohol is more than just a mind- and mood-altering substance, it is also a valuable clean-burning biofuel, a preservative, an antiseptic, and a powerful agent for extracting essential oils and other valuable compounds from medicinal and pungent plants (the see herbal section of Chapter 9). Alcohol possesses the properties of dissolving a large number of materials that are not water soluble, making it an important solvent for many different chemical reactions and extractions. According to alcohol pioneer David Blume, it turns out that almost all modern automotive electronic fuel injection (EFI) systems incorporate an adaptive learning phase that will automatically adapt your car to efficiently burn 85 percent ethanol fuels (E-85), even if the

car is not an official “flexi-fuel” vehicle, without a single owner modification. And if you have an older carbureted model, with minor carburetor modifications you can run any carbureted gasoline engine on alcohol. See Blume’s highly recommended book, *Alcohol Can Be a Gas*, to learn everything you might ever need to know about alcohol, including how to make your own alcohol and how to modify practically any internal combustion engine to run on alcohol.

The fumes from evaporated alcohol are not as toxic as evaporated kerosene; alcohol also burns cleaner, making alcohol lamps a relatively clean source of artificial light. Ships’ galley crews prefer to use alcohol in their stoves and ovens, as it is the safest, cleanest burning fuel for these applications. In the third world, the use of alcohol for cooking drastically reduces both indoor air pollution and the deforestation of local areas caused by cutting forests for firewood. Used in a homemade blowpipe, alcohol provides a concentrated heat source for soldering metals or blowing small pieces of glass tubing into useful shapes.

Even with all the chemical wizardry of modern science, the easiest way to make alcohol is to promote the actions of naturally occurring, microscopic, single-celled fungi, called yeast, which digest simple sugars and turn them into alcohol and carbon dioxide through a process called fermentation. When you drink an alcoholic beverage, you are consuming the excrement of yeast —how does that grab you?

The maximum concentration of alcohol in a fermented solution is about 12 percent (24 proof). At this concentration, the alcohol kills the yeast and stops the alcohol-making process. To obtain higher concentrations of alcohol, fermented alcohol-bearing solutions are “distilled.” An alcohol still takes advantage of the fact that alcohol boils at a lower temperature than water. In the still “kettle,” an alcohol-bearing fermented liquid is heated to the boiling point. At this elevated temperature, alcohol and some water is evaporated from the liquid, and then these vapors are piped to a cooled coil where they are condensed back into a liquid containing a much higher concentration of alcohol. At the start of the process, the vapors contain mostly alcohol, but as most of the alcohol gets boiled out of the kettle, the concentration of water in the vapors increases.

Due primarily to its commercial value and secondarily to its social influences, governments have a long and somewhat messy history of attempting to control alcohol production and distillation via taxes and regulatory laws. If you wish to distill ethyl alcohol (grain alcohol) for fuel, I encourage you to apply to the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms (ATF) for a free permit. It is a serious legal offense to distill alcohol without a permit, but since the energy crisis of the 1970s, it has become very easy to obtain a permit to distill alcohol for personal use as a fuel. In the following sections, I outline the alcohol-making process, from malting through fermentation to distillation. If you wish to pursue the distillation of alcohol, I suggest that you look to the recommended references, especially Blume’s *Alcohol Can Be a Gas*, for more details that will improve your chances for a safe and successful venture.

Malt

Yeast requires simple sugars to create alcohol. The juices of sweet fruits, such as grapes and apricots, can be directly fermented with no further processing. Before fermentation, starchy roots

(potatoes, etc.) and grains must be processed to convert starches into sugars. Malting is the process of sprouting grain, which converts grain starches into sugars. Enzymes in the malted grain will also act on the starches in unmalted grains and roots (called the "adjunct"), converting their starches into sugars. Barley is the most common grain for malting, providing superior malt with good flavor, but any other whole grain can be malted through the same process. You can purchase barley malt or make your own.

The first step in malting is to soak the grain in water. Fill the basin to a level about 6 inches above the grain, and soak for at least 24 hours until the grains are soft to the core and easily crushed. Change the water whenever it starts to smell foul. At this point you want to avoid fermentation. When the grain is fully softened, drain the water from the grain. The grain requires dampness and warmth to sprout. You can sprout the grain in screened sprouting trays or in piles on a clean floor. If using sprouting trays, pile soaked grain in each tray about 1½ inch deep. Stack the trays, and twice daily sprinkle water onto the top tray to trickle down and rinse all the trays. Once a day, rotate the bottom tray to the top (Gingery 1994, 18). If you are sprouting your grain on the floor, spread it into a layer a few inches thick, partially dry the grain for a few hours, and then pile it into a heap until it is warm to the touch (12 to 24 hours). Spread the grain into a layer 8 to 20 inches thick (the "wet couch") and turn every 6 to 8 hours to keep it evenly moist and warm (Wright 1994, 106). If the small white sprouts begin to lose their shiny white appearance, sprinkle the grain with more water. The grain is ready when the sprouts are roughly equal in length to the long dimension of the grain.

Next you must dry the sprouted grain. A food dehydrator works best, but malt can also be dried in any clean well-ventilated area. Spread the grain on a clean floor and turn it often until dried. Shake the dried grain in a burlap bag to knock the sprouts off the grain, and then sift the sprouts out of the grain by shaking it in screened trays. The dried sprouted grain is now called malt and is stored whole until ready for use. You can crush or grind malt into coarse meal a day or two before use.

Mash

Mashing converts all the starches in the grain or vegetable matter into sugars. All home distillers have their own special recipes for mashing and fermentation, so I will just give you a quick summary of one process. The process is typically altered a bit to optimize for different grains or vegetables. In *The Secrets of Building an Alcohol-Producing Still,* Vince Gingery (1994) provides a detailed recipe for corn mash and offers several old moonshiners' tips for dealing with primitive conditions and grains. *Practical Distiller* (Monzert 1987) offers tips and recipes for quite a variety of spirits. *Distillation of Alcohol and De-Naturing* (Wright 1994) provides good tips and recipes for mashes and ferments of grains, potatoes, and beets. According to the *Practical Distiller*, the usual proportions are one part malt for every four to seven parts of adjunct (unmalted coarsely ground grain), and 18 gallons of water for every bushel of adjunct/malt mixture (9:4 ratio). Blume's book offers a wealth of information on brewing alcohol from a variety of feedstocks (cattails, Jerusalem artichokes, buffalo gourds, hemp, etc.) and includes how-to information on making alcohol from cellulosics and starches in addition to plant

sugars.

First Stage

This is the premalt stage. Two different enzymes in the malt, protease and diastase, change the chemical structure of the mash. Diastase is the enzyme that converts starches into sugars. Protease is the enzyme that digests proteins and converts them into nutrients that the yeast feed on during fermentation, and operates best around 122°F. Both protease and diastase work together in the premalt stage. While the protease breaks down the proteins, the diastase helps the mash to liquefy by converting the sticky starches into sugars.

Take about one-quarter of the water to be used and add it to the mash pot (or tub). Heat the water to between 130°F and 140°F and add the all of the adjunct and about one-fourth of the malt, stirring constantly to break up lumps and cakes of grain. Try to keep the temperature between 122°F and 130°F for 30 minutes until the mash starts to thin and liquefy. *Do not* allow the temperature to drop below 120°F (the solution may turn to vinegar).

Second Stage

This is the gelatinization stage. Starch granules are covered by a protective cellulosic wall and are not easily reached by the diastase unless that wall is broken down. In this stage, the solution is cooked to break down the cellulose. Slowly raise the temperature to the boiling point. When the mash gets hot and thickens, you can thin it with another one-fourth of the total water. Hold the temperature at boiling for about 15 minutes to break down the cellulose. Allow it to cool to 155°F.

Third Stage

This is the saccharifying stage, which converts the remaining starches into sugars. Temperature is critical in this stage. The diastase works best at 155°F. Its action is greatly reduced below 150°F and totally stops above 170°F. Add the rest of the malt (three-fourths of the full amount) to the mash solution. Preheat the rest of your water to 170°F for rinse water. Let the mash stand for a couple of hours until saccharification is complete. Saccharification is complete when the mash loses its mealy white look and turns dark brown, becomes thin and easily stirred, tastes sweet, and smells like fresh bread. If you remove a bit of mash and add a drop of iodine, it will turn purple if any starch is still present (you may not be able to get rid of all the starch). Heat the mash to 170°F to halt the enzyme action, and then strain the liquid from the mash into a vat (or large jars). Rinse the strained mash thoroughly with the hot rinse water and add the rinse to the vat. This strained solution is called the “wort.” The strained mash makes great chicken feed or compost. Loosely cover the wort vat and let it cool to around 80°F.

Fermentation

The next step is to ferment the solution. In the old days, fermentation relied on hit-or-miss luck from airborne yeasts, resulting in a significant number of batches being spoiled by undesirable airborne organisms. By reserving a portion of mix from batches that fermented well, you get a more reliable starter for new batches. Cool the wort to 80°F and add either a starter batch of

yeast or straight brewers yeast. To “proof ” the yeast, I recommend beginning a starter batch about a day before the wort is ready for fermentation. Dissolve a tablespoon of sugar and a packet of wine or beer yeast (or brewer’s yeast) in a couple cups of warm (about 80°F) sweet juice. Cover loosely and place in a warm spot for several hours until very foamy. Take 2 cups of the cool wort and add, along with another tablespoon of sugar, to the starter. After another few hours, the starter should be very frothy and ready to “pitch” (throw into the wort vat).

Cleanliness is very important, because undesirable microorganisms can spoil the wort by turning it into vinegar or causing it to putrefy. It is a good idea to sanitize vats, containers, and any utensils that might contact the ferment with a solution of 2 cups of liquid chlorine bleach mixed in 5 gallons of water. The ferment should be kept around 80°F, but no hotter than 85°F and no cooler than 65°F. As the yeast-making process continues, the ferment will get very foamy, emit a hissing sound, and form a crusty yeast layer on the top surface. When the fermenting process is coming to a close, the hissing sound ceases and the fluid starts to clear. The yeast layer is skimmed, and the fluid is immediately run into the still for distillation. The fermented liquid is called the “wash.” When the vinous fermentation is complete, the yeasty crust will sink to the bottom, and the bacterial process of turning the alcohol into vinegar will begin. If unchecked, you will end up with vinegar instead of alcohol.

Distillation

The equipment for distillation ranges from crude moonshine stills to very sophisticated equipment designed for commercial alcohol production. A simple still is shown in Figure 14-5. The boiler (A), also known as the “kettle,” is equipped with a snug-fitting cover (D) that allows for cleaning and charging between uses. To prevent the loss of steam, the joint between the cover and kettle is sealed with a packing of moist flour mixed with a little salt. A mixture of alcohol and water vapors flows into the “worm” (B) where it is condensed back into a liquid. The worm is cooled by cold water in the cooling tank (C). In a primitive still of this type, the liquid is usually run through the still two or three times until the alcohol level reaches the desired concentration.

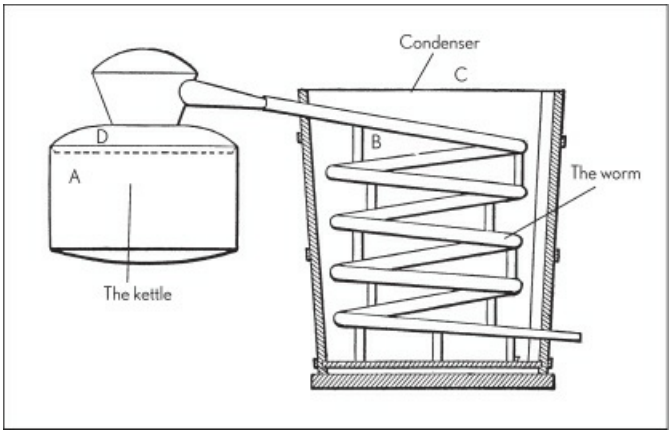


Figure 14-5. Simple still. (Illustration courtesy of *Distillation of Alcohol and De-Naturing*, by F. B. Wright, Lindsay

Publications, 1994)

If the still is boiled too rapidly, the liquid will boil up into the worm, building considerable back pressure, and the top will blow off the kettle. To guard against this calamity, rap with a wrench or metal pipe against the connection pipe running between the kettle and the worm. If it sounds hollow, it is okay, but if it gives off a dull thud (indicating that liquid, not steam, is filling the piping), douse the fire immediately to prevent blowing the top off the kettle. If the distilled liquor is for consumption, charcoal is added to soak up "fusel" oil floating on top of the distillate. This oil tastes lousy and may make a person sick. More sophisticated stills incorporating rectifying stacks will usually eliminate the fusel oil.

Various improvements on the simple still design result in a highly concentrated alcohol processed in a single pass through the still. One such improvement is the "doubler" shown in Figure 14-6, located between the kettle and the condenser. In the doubler tank (A), hot vapors from the kettle condense in the doubler until it is heated to the boiling point of alcohol (roughly 173°F). At this point, the alcohol vapors will pass through the doubler, but most of the water vapors will be condensed and return to the kettle through the return pipe (B).

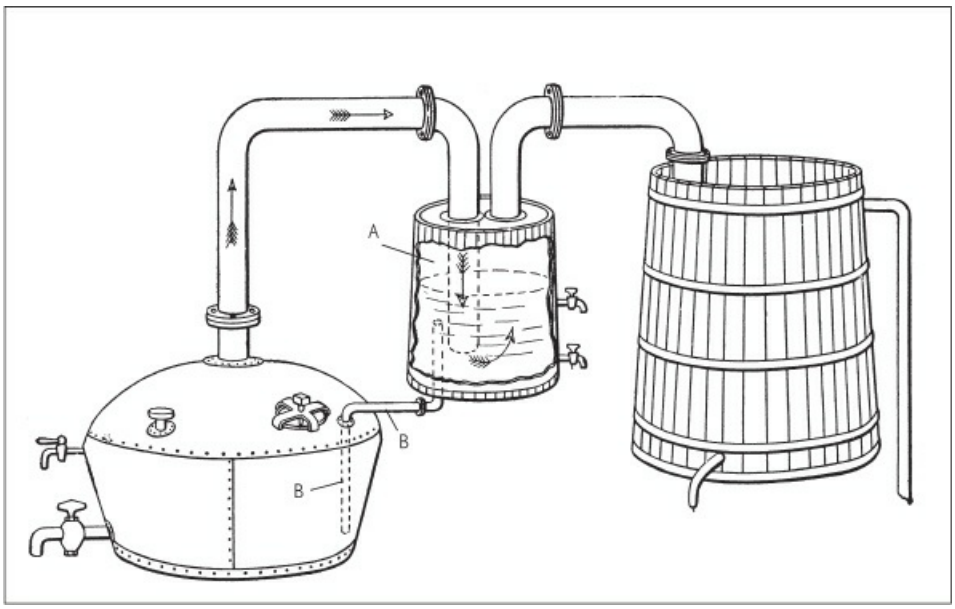


Figure 14-6. Still with a "doubler." (Illustration courtesy of *Practical Distiller*, by Leonard Monzert, Lindsay Publications, 1987)

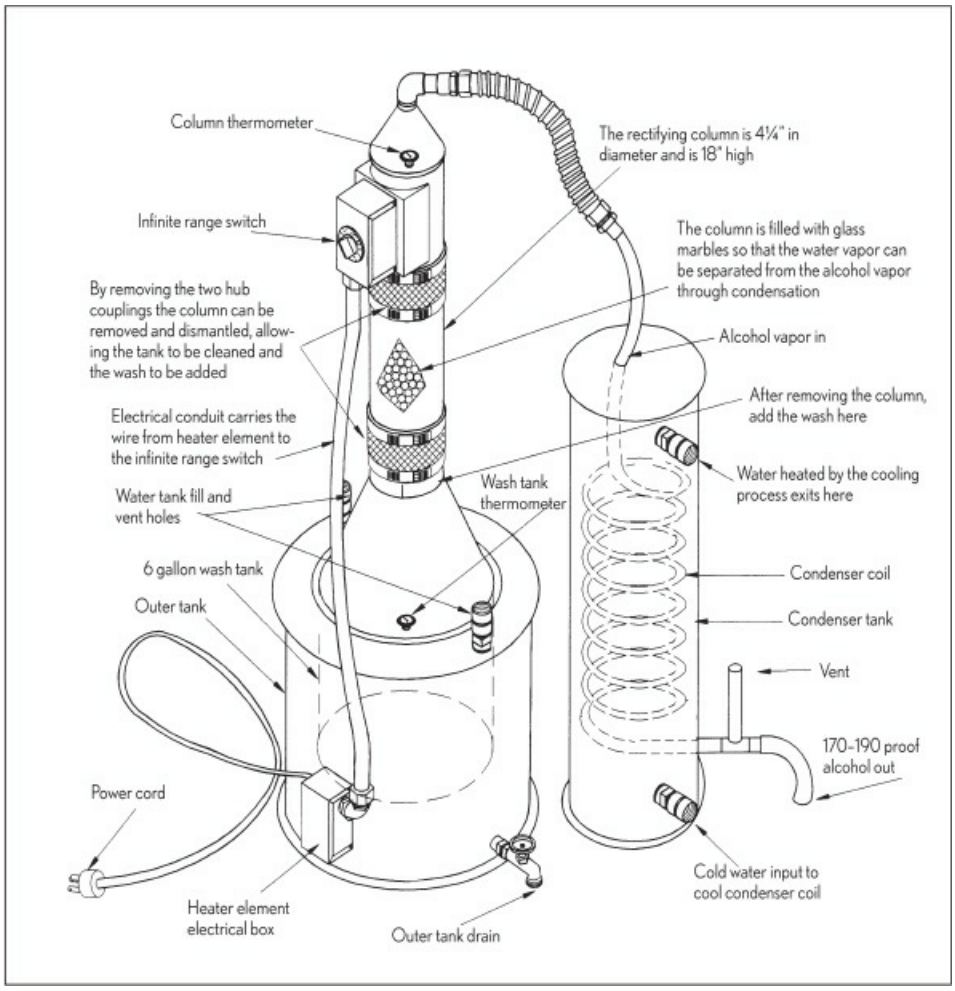

Column thermometer
The rectifying column is 4¼" in diameter and is 18" high
Infinite range switch
The column is filled with glass marbles so that the water vapor can be separated from the alcohol vapor through condensation
By removing the two hub couplings the column can be removed and dismantled, allowing the tank to be cleaned and the wash to be added
Alcohol vapor in
After removing the column, add the wash here
Electrical conduit carries the wire from heater element to the infinite range switch
Water heated by the cooling process exits here
Wash tank thermometer
Water tank fill and vent holes
6 gallon wash tank
Condenser coil
Outer tank
Condenser tank
Vent
170–190 proof alcohol out
Power cord
Cold water input to cool condenser coil
Heater element electrical box
Outer tank drain

Figure 14-7. Vince Gingery's homemade electric still. (Illustration courtesy of *The Secrets of Building an Alcohol-Producing Still*, by Vincent R. Gingery, David J. Gingery Publishing, 1994)

In his book, *The Secrets of Building an Alcohol-Producing Still,* Vince Gingery (1994) provides details for building the small electric-powered still shown in Figure 14-7. In this still, Gingery incorporates a simple rectifying column to condense water vapor out of the gaseous output from the kettle. The water vapor condenses on the surface of the marbles held within the rectifying column and flows back into the kettle. The result is a highly concentrated alcohol (170 to 190 proof) suitable for fuel.

VINEGAR

Vinegar is another valuable product that is made by natural fermentation. In this case, vinegar is made by the acetic bacteria, which digest alcohol and turn it into mild concentrations of acetic acid. Vinegar is useful for preserving foods (pickling) and as an ingredient in salad dressings and various sauces. Commercial vinegar is made by aerating properly cultured alcoholic liquids. Apple cider vinegar was traditionally made by filling clean barrels with pressed apple cider. The barrels were covered with cloth and stored in a place that was not too hot or cold. The cider first fermented, and then the alcoholic cider was converted into vinegar by acetic bacteria carried on

the feet of vinegar flies. If your ferment does not have a high concentration of alcohol, it may putrefy from the wrong kind of bacteria culturing in the solution (a high alcohol content will kill the undesirable bacteria). See Carla Emery's *Encyclopedia of Country Living* for several old-time vinegar recipes. See *Practical Distiller* by Leonard Monzert for instructions on building and operating a mid-sized vinegar generator.

NATURAL GLUES

Pitch Glue

Pitch is nature's hot-melt adhesive. Using a knife, scrape dry or oozing pitch from pine and fir trees. The pitch should be slowly melted in a pot. Debris floats to the top or settles to the bottom. To reduce brittleness and improve its body, you can add finely ground charcoal or wood ashes in quantities up to one half the volume of the pitch. Use the pitch glue while hot, just like hotmelt glue, to repair cracks in pots, attach feathers onto arrows, waterproof baskets, and so on. Make pitch sticks to store extra pitch. Repeatedly dip sticks into pitch until the pitch forms into a hotdog-shaped lump. Pitch glue is waterproof. You can cover the surface of pitch-glued objects with finely ground charcoal to remove excessive stickiness. You can make your own pitch varnish by dissolving about one part of crushed pitch in four parts of rubbing alcohol.

Hide Glue

> Hide glue is almost four times stronger than airplane cement and a third stronger than five-minute epoxy. **—Bart and Robin Blankenship, *Earth Knack: Stone Age Skills for the 21st Century***

Hide glues are surprisingly strong, but use them with caution, since they are water soluble. To extract the natural glue from hides, steep hide shavings and/or slender strips in very hot water for several hours. Jim Riggs likes to boil his hide and water combination to extract the glue, but Bart and Robin Blankenship state that the strength of the glue is considerably weakened by boiling and recommend that you keep the temperature below 180°F. After an hour or two of boiling, or 12 to 24 hours of steeping, remove the gelatinous hide scraps and strain the fluid into another pot for concentrating the glue. Add more water to the first pot and cook for another hour before straining the fluid and squeezing the scraps to extract the remaining glue. This is an odorous process that is best done outdoors or under a well-vented hood. You can also make glues from boiling down different fish skins and bladders, sinews, cartilage, hoofs, and horns.

Steep or boil the strained fluid until it thickens to a syrupy consistency. Apply it like Elmer's glue. Hide glue works well on wood and for bow backing. It is not waterproof, but can be waterproofed with fat, oil, or a layer of pitch varnish (see the "Pitch Glue" section). Liquid hide glue will quickly spoil. To store excess hide glue, continue cooking until it has reached the

consistency of Jell-O. Cut the gelled hunk of hide glue into ¼-inch-thick strips and dry these strips until completely hard. To reconstitute, grind the dried strips into a fine powder and mix with two parts of water to one part powdered glue. Let mixture sit for about one-half hour, and then heat (Blankenship 1996, 159–163; Wescott 1999, 183–190).

VEGETABLE OILS

Extracting oil from nuts and vegetables can be somewhat involved. The easiest way to get oil is to grind your seeds into a butter and allow the oil to separate to the top, like it does in natural peanut butter. In her *Encyclopedia of Country Living*, Carla Emery describes two other processes for home extraction of olive oil. A brief summary is provided here.

In the first process, olives are dipped for about 30 seconds in a boiling solution of a half-pound of lye per gallon of water. Leave the olives to drain until the lye has nearly dissolved their skins, and then plunge the olives into cold water to stop the lye softening. Rub the softened olives against the screens in screened trays until the pits separate from the flesh and the flesh sieves through the screens. Simmer this pulp for about a half-hour in two to three parts of water, and then allow it to sit for several days. Skim the oil from the top.

In the second process, olives are placed in a burlap sack and smashed with a mallet. The burlap sack is placed in either a homemade press or a commercial press to expel the juices. The pressed pulp is combined with an equal part of water, boiled for a while, and then pressed again. The process is repeated to about the fourth pressing, when all the juices are collected, and the oil is allowed to settle out and is skimmed as before.

For a makeshift home press, Emery suggests using a strong watertight tray for the press base. Place the burlap bag filled with crushed olives in the center of this tray and cover it with a thick board. Place a car jack on top of this thick board and attach it with ropes tied to each corner of the tray. Raise the jack to press the olives.

Both processes will produce a bitter-tasting olive oil. To improve the taste of the oil, mix the oil with an equal quantity of warm water. Stir for several minutes, then allow it to settle for several hours. Draw the water off the bottom of the container, then repeat the process several times until the oil no longer tastes bitter. Filter the final product to remove cloudiness.

REFERENCES

***e Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book,* by Carla Emery.** 2008, 928 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1570615535. Published by Sasquatch Books, 615 Seco Ave., Seattle, WA 98104. List price $29.95

This is a great all-around reference containing a wealth of information and resource lists. It includes good sections on soap and candle making; home remedies; coldpressed oils; formulas for homemade nontoxic cleansers; and tons of directions, guidance, and recipes for everything having to do with growing, raising, processing, and cooking animal and vegetable foods. Voluminous, thorough, entertaining, and practical, Carla Emery's book has instructions for several basic soaps and is more than adequate for occasional soap making and for soap making

under primitive conditions.

***ıart Soapmaking: The Simple Guide to Making Traditional Handmade Soap Quickly, Safely, and Reliably, or How to Make Luxurious Handcrafted Soaps for Family, Friends, and Yourself,* by Anne L. Watson.** 2007, 115 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0938497424. Published by Shepard Publications, Olympia, WA (see www.shepardpub.com). List price $12.50

This book makes soapmaking clear and simple. Without a lot of fluff, this book tells you what you need to know to make a variety of soaps easily and safely, plus it gives you sources for supplies and online information to easily expand your repertoire. Written by a professional artisan soapmaker, this is probably the best soapmaking book on the market to ensure that a beginner's first experience is positive and successful. For more soapmaking info and Web links, check out Anne Watson's Web site at www.annelwatson.com/soapmaking.

***ıe Everything Soapmaking Book: Recipes and Techniques for Creating Colorful and Fragrant Soaps*, by Alicia Grosso.** 2007, 305 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1598692297. Published by Adams Media, 57 Littlefield St., Avon, MA 02322. List price $14.95

A thorough book that covers everything you need to know about soapmaking, including a variety of methods, recipes, and sources for materials. If you are seriously interested in soap, this book will take you miles beyond Emery's *Encyclopedia of Country Living*. An excellent book to use for expanding your soap repertoire. Suitable for the beginner to the expert.

***ıe Candlemaker's Companion: A Complete Guide to Rolling, Pouring, Dipping, and Decorating Your Own Candles,* by Betty Oppenheimer.** 1997, 176 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1580173667. Published by Storey Publishing, 210 MASS MoCA Way, North Adams, MA 01247. List price $18.95

An excellent guide to making candles by a variety of processes. Includes clear line drawings and a good list of suppliers, but no photographs.

***ıveman Chemistry: 28 Projects from the Creation of Fire to the Production of Plastics,* by Kevin M. Dunn.** 2003, 409 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1581125665. Published by Universal Publishers, 23331 Water Circle, Boca Raton, FL 33486. List price $29.95

This is an entertaining, practical, and educational read authored by a professor of chemistry at Hampden-Sydney College, where he teaches the course that inspired the book. A bit quirky, which I guess helps to keep his nonchemistry major students motivated and interested in his lectures, this book's projects cover the gamut from making fire and charcoal to paper, gunpowder, dyes, soap, batteries, and plastics. Valuable for understanding chemistry, this manual could actually come in useful someday if our techno-society takes the plunge.

***ıdale's Book of Practical Formulas,* Paula Dreifus Bakule (editor).** 1997, 464 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1567310467. Published by Fine Communications, P.O. Box 0930, Planetarium Station, New York, NY 10024-0540. List price $12.98

This is an interesting collection of practical, useful, do-it-yourself recipes for the average home. Lots of great ideas for making your own home and health care products from basic ingredients readily available in local stores. Sections include car care, cooking, gardening, beauty, health, home repair and remodeling, housekeeping, crafts, pet care (with pet food recipes), and outdoor life. More focused on practical, modern, healthy products made from commercially available materials than on frontier-type formulas made from scratch.

***enley's Formulas for Home and Workshop,* by Gardner D. Hiscox, M.E.** 1979, 809 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0517293072. Published by Crown Publishing Group, 201 E. 50th St., New York, NY 10022.

This is a very interesting reference that could come in handy if central services went down for a considerable period of time or if you simply wanted to become more self-reliant. Unfortunately, it is also out of print, but you may be able to find a good used copy floating around (I did). Originally published in 1907 and last revised in 1927, *Henley's Formulas* is a compilation of recipes, formulas, and processes for making thousands of items that we take for granted. It covers a wide range of goods including adhesives, brushes, candles, soap, cosmetics, disinfectants, inks, dyes, paints, solders, fertilizers, explosives, varnishes, and how to do your own photography, metallurgy, and leather tanning, among many other things. Many of the formulas require raw chemical ingredients, and a significant portion of these are potentially quite dangerous. Exercise caution, and realize that some of the remedies and ingredients might be hazardous to your health.

***agner's Chemical Technology 1872*, by Rudolf Wagner, Ph.D., William Crookes, F.R.S. (trans).** 1988, 762 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 0-917914-99-6. Published by Lindsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915. List price $33.95

This reprint of the state-of-the-art, late-1800s manual on chemical technology is another one for the techno-history buffs. Want to know how to make your own sulfuric acid so you can turn bones into glue? How about transforming bones into phosphorus for matches, beets into sugar, or corn into starch? Chances are that most of us wouldn't stand a chance of reproducing twentieth-century technology on our own, but a good team of industrious folks might be able to use this book to recreate a significant portion of late nineteenth-century technology. Includes information on soap, sugar, starches, salts, acids, explosives, vegetable fibers, silk, leather, limes and mortars, glass, stoneware, steel and other ferrous metals, nonferrous metals, paper, vinegar, dyeing, and more.

***cohol Can Be a Gas: Fueling an Ethanol Revolution for the 21st Century,* by David Blume.** 2007, 596 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0979043772. Published by The International Institute For Ecological Agriculture, 309 Cedar Street #127, Soquel, CA 95060. List price $47.00

David Blume's opus, *Alcohol Can Be a Gas*, is the definitive guide to weaning America from the oil habit via biofuels. This will tell you everything you need to know about alcohol production, including feedstocks, equipment, distillation, mashes, and how to modify your internal combustion engines (if necessary) to run on alcohol. This book is encyclopedic in scope, and is for everyone from policymakers to consumers to the backyard tinkerer who wishes to make ethanol and convert an existing gasoline-powered car to run on ethanol fuel. See the Chapter 2 references for more information. *Highly recommended.*

***actical Distiller,* by Leonard Monzert.** 1987, 156 pp. (paperback), ISBN 0-917914-58-9. Published by Lindsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915. List price $8.95

This reprint of a classic 1889 text on distilling alcohol tells you pretty much everything you need to know about how to make malt, ferment mash, and build and operate your own distillery. Even though distilling your own alcoholic beverages without a permit is illegal, this book shows you how to do it right without poisoning yourself, and with simple equipment. When the alcohol is made for use as a fuel, you can easily obtain a free permit from the Bureau of Alcohol,

Tobacco, and Firearms (ATF), making it a totally legal process.

***stillation of Alcohol and De-Naturing,* by F. B.Wright.** 1994, 271 pp. (paperback), ISBN 1-55918-142-7. Published by Lindsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley, IL 60915. List price $14.95

If your goal is fuel-grade alcohol, this reprint of a 1918 text will help you get there. Compared to *Practical Distiller,* this book contains apparatus diagrams that are more modern and provides more detailed information about most of the processes, but does not offer as much practical wisdom for making consumable spirits.

***e Secrets of Building an Alcohol-Producing Still,* by Vincent R. Gingery.** 1994, 82 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1878087164. Published by David J. Gingery Publishing, P.O. Box 318, Rogersville, MO 65742. List price $12.95

This book provides practical detailed instructions for making a compact, portable, electric-powered still to distill fermented grain into 170–190 proof ethanol for use as fuel. It covers step-by-step instructions for the entire alcohol-making process, including fermentation. With less effort and attention, this procedure still produces a higher grade of purified alcohol than old-fashioned moonshine stills. Gingery also includes an interesting mini-history of alcohol, old-fashioned moonshining tips, and some rough guidelines for converting carburetors to run on alcohol. Available from Lindsay Publications.

ndsay Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 538, Bradley IL 60915; phone: (815) 935-5353; fax: (815) 935-5477; Web site: www.lindsaybks.com.

Lindsay Publications reprints and distributes a huge variety of older manuals on how to make and build almost anything, including numerous reprints of older technology handbooks and recipes. They have an eclectic collection of vintage, historical, quirky, and off-the-wall books.

15

Engineering, Machines, and Materials

> Engineering: 1. a) the science concerned with putting scientific knowledge to practical uses, divided into different branches, as civil, electrical, mechanical, or chemical engineering; b) the planning, designing, construction, or management of machinery, roads, bridges, buildings, waterways, etc.
>
> ***—Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language, Second College Edition***

Thinking back on my past, I find it amusing that when I started undergraduate school I didn't really know what a mechanical engineer was, even though I had a strong sense that it would become my vocation. Once upon a time, engineering was more art than science, depending mostly on the engineer's experience, intuition, and brute force tests to ensure the success of a design. Modern engineers draw on a wealth of experience and analytical tools compiled and developed by engineers and scientists over centuries of manufacturing, building, and design. Much of this vast array of knowledge is available to the lay designer or engineer in the form of engineering handbooks. These encyclopedic volumes provide recommendations, charts, basic information about materials and process, and "cookbook" formulas that don't require an engineering degree to apply (although I admit that it can be helpful).

In this chapter, I provide an introduction to a few valuable concepts that the lay designer or inventor can apply to certain situations. Should the need arise and there is not an available engineer to consult with, a basic understanding of these concepts will help the lay designer to properly apply "cookbook" equations from engineering manuals. I will also include a few equations, a bit of practical math, and several minireviews for recommend texts that might come in handy someday, even if you aren't an engineer. Perhaps the discussions and diagrams in the following sections will help you to make sense out of some concepts that baffled you in school. If they still don't make sense, don't worry about it, just move on. If you wish to make practical calculations to check the strength of a design, I recommend that you pick up at least one of the mechanical engineering references.

ENGINEERING

Forces and Statics

In physics, a force is defined as the cause or agent that puts a stationary object into motion or changes the direction or speed of a moving object. In the seventeenth century, popular anecdote

says that Sir Isaac Newton formulated the basis of the laws of mechanical physics (mechanics) after being struck by a falling apple. He realized that an object at rest will stay at rest until acted upon by a force, and similarly an object in motion will maintain the same speed and direction unless compelled by a force to change speed or direction. In the English system, forces are typically measured in "pounds" or "ounces."

Sum of Forces Equals Zero

You might think of numerous times when you exerted a large force upon an object and it did not move. For example, push against a brick wall and chances are slim that you will be able to move it, unless you happen to be driving a bulldozer. The case of pushing against a brick wall with your hands is an example of "statics." Statics means that even though there are forces applied to an object (the brick wall), none of the objects is accelerating (no change in motion = statics), so the sum of all the forces must be zero. If you push hard against a brick wall, your feet are pushing equally hard in the opposite direction, so the sum of the forces acting on your body is zero and your body stays stationary.

Another example of statics is a bathroom scale. When you stand on a bathroom scale, the mass of your body is acted upon by the Earth's gravitational pull. The scale measures the force caused by the acceleration due to gravity acting upon the mass of your body and the result is your weight. If you flew to the moon, your mass would remain the same, but your weight (a force) measured on the same bathroom scale would be one-sixth of your weight on Earth because the moon's gravitational acceleration is one-sixth of the Earth's. In terms of statics, your weight pushes against the scale and the scale pushes back with an equal and opposite force, which is measured by the spring on the scale, so the sum of the forces is zero.

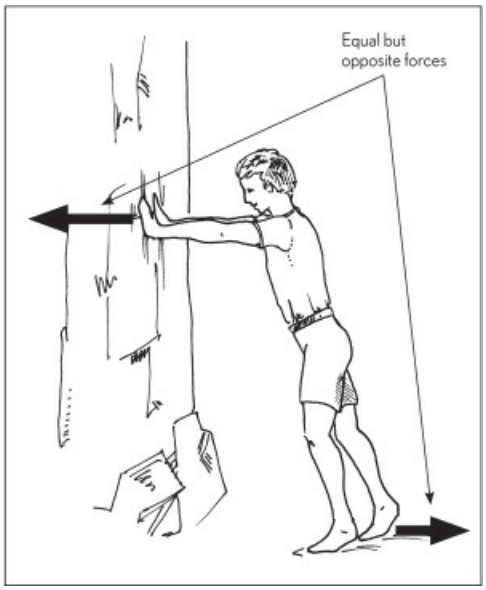


Figure 15-1. Static push (sum of forces equals zero).

For analyzing a static situation, engineers use something called a "free-body diagram." They take an object, or group of objects, and draw all the forces acting upon this object (or group). If the object is static, the sum of all these forces must be zero. Forces are not always pointed in the

same direction. When a second force is going off at an angle to a first force, the second force can be considered to have a portion (component) in line with the first force and a different component at right angles (perpendicular) to the first force. For simplicity, let's call these components a vertical component and a horizontal component.

Scientists and engineers like to describe forces in terms of "vectors," which sounds complex and technical, but it's really pretty simple. A vector is simply something that has both a quantity and a direction and is typically shown graphically by an arrow. In the case of Figure 15-2, a force of 40 pounds of push is applied in a direction that is 30° above horizontal. The "magnitude" or quantity of this vector is 40 pounds. The direction is 30°. This force can be divided into a vertical component and a horizontal component. Through simple trigonometry (see the "Mathematics" section of this chapter), if you multiply the force F (40 pounds) times the sine 30°, you get a vertical component of 20 pounds. Similarly, multiplying the force F (40 pounds) times the cosine 30°, you get a horizontal component of 34.64 pounds.

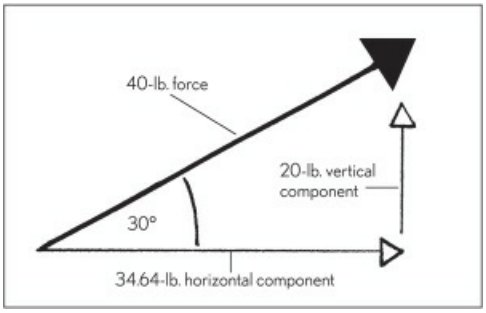


Figure 15-2. Components of a force.

The sum of all the forces acting on a static object, or cluster of objects (a "free body"), must add up to zero in all directions. For ease of analysis, forces going off in different directions are separated into their horizontal and vertical components. In a static situation (no change in motion), all the horizontal components must add up to zero (i.e., they must cancel each other out). Similarly, all the vertical components must add up to zero. For a practical application of this knowledge, let's say that you were rock climbing in Yosemite Valley and you anchored yourself to a taught sling strung between two anchors. Your buddy is climbing up from below and he happens to fall. Now suddenly the combined weight of both you and your buddy (300 pounds) is hanging on your rope clipped to the center of the taut sling (now it's very, very taut). With your lives depending on these two anchors, you start to wonder whether you should have tied into your anchors a little differently. Let's say that the taut sling only sags to 5° below horizontal (see Figure 15-3).

The horizontal components of the sling forces on each anchor are equal but in opposite directions, so they cancel each other out. The vertical components are equal, and the sum of the vertical forces on both slings must be equal but opposite to the 300-pound weight of the two climbers. This means that the vertical force on each anchor is equal to 150 pounds. Using simple trigonometry, the sling tension on each anchor multiplied times sine 5° must be equal to the vertical force of 150 pounds.

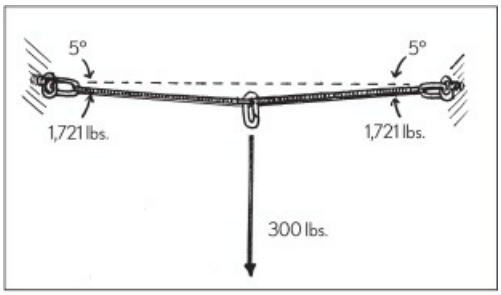


Figure 15-3. "Free-body diagram" for two 150-pound rock climbers hanging on a couple of anchors.

The result is that tension on each sling is over 1,700 pounds to hold only 150 pounds of climber's weight per sling. Pretty scary!

Now let's say that the first climber had understood this concept and tied into his anchors with a nice loose sling that hung down at 60° below horizontal instead of 5°. The tension is now multiplied by sine 60° instead of sine 5°, so the tension is now only 173 pounds per anchor—much better. Even if you don't understand the math, just remember the concept.

Moment (Twist)

Forces are not always nice clean pushes or pulls. Sometimes forces give a twisting action. These are called "moments" or "torque." Picture a child's playground merry-go-round in your mind. If you set a bunch of kids on the merrygo-round, nothing happens (static) until someone starts to pull or push on the outside of the merry-go-round, and it starts to spin. Imagine that two children are pulling on the outer rim of the merry-go-round with equal but opposite forces. What happens? The merry-go-round is in static balance and doesn't spin. The second rule of statics is that the sum of moments (torque) must also be equal to zero. Torque is defined as the product of a force multiplied by a distance. In the English system, torque and moment are typically measured in "foot-pounds" or "inch-ounces." Let's say you have a 1½-foot-long wrench and apply a 50-pound push to the end of the wrench. In this case, you are applying 75 foot-pounds of torque (50 pounds × 1½ feet).

Both a lever and a screw thread (such as in a vise) act on this same principle. When you slowly lift an item with a lever, it is considered a static problem. The sum of the moments around the fulcrum (a lever's pivot point) must be equal to zero. In Figure 15-4, a lever is used to lift a 300-pound rock. The horizontal distance from the rock to the fulcrum is 2 feet. The horizontal distance from the fulcrum to your hand is 10 feet. Since the sum of the moments around the fulcrum must be equal to zero, 300 pounds multiplied by 2 feet must be equal to the force on your hand multiplied by 10 feet. This means that you only have to apply 60 pounds of force to the lever to lift the 300-pound rock. Archimedes once said that if you gave him a big enough lever, he could lift the whole world.

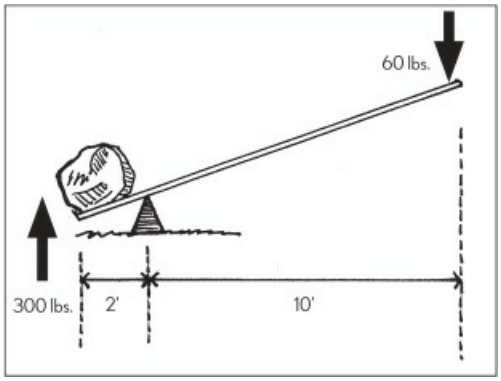


Figure 15-4. Lifting a rock with a lever.

One more concept that is very helpful in static analysis is “center of gravity.” Every object or cluster of objects has a center point where it is perfectly balanced around that point in all directions. When an object spins in the air, it spins around its center of gravity. For the purpose of performing a static analysis of a body with significant mass, the force of gravity pulling on the mass is assumed to act on the center of gravity. Imagine that you try to push against a wall with a force of 50 pounds. Naturally, you will lean forward while you exert this push. Why do you do this? If you stood straight up, then as soon as you pushed against the wall, you would start to topple backwards. Leaning forward to brace yourself balances the moments as well as the forces to create a static situation.

In Figure 15-5, when you lean forward to get your center of gravity 1 foot in front of your feet, you will be able to push with a horizontal force of only 30 pounds at a distance of 5 feet above the ground (5 feet × 30 lb push = 1 foot × 150 lb weight). If you hunker down and push at a 3-foot distance above the ground, you can now push with a force of 50 pounds. If you simultaneously lean forward further and hunker down, placing your center of gravity 2 feet in front of your feet, you will be able to push with a force of 100 pounds (3 feet × 100 lb push = 2 feet × 150 lb weight).

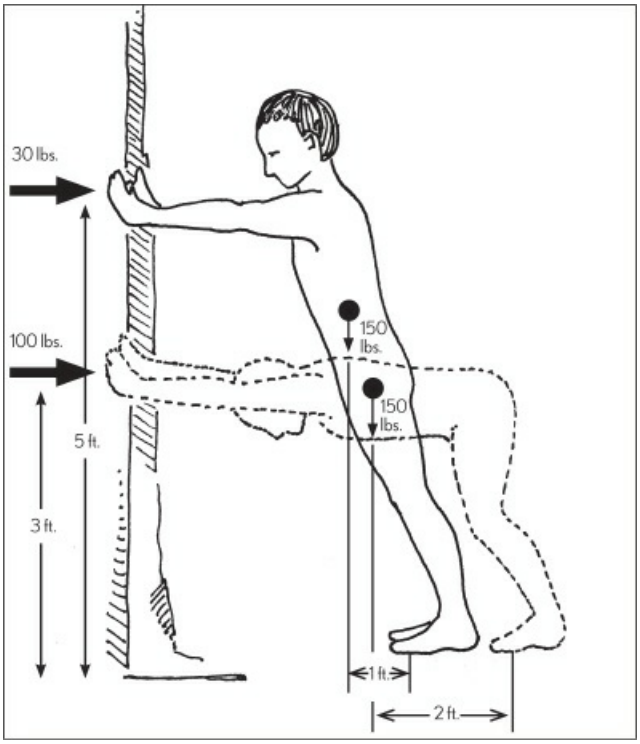


Figure 15-5. Sum of moments equals zero.

Stress and Strength (Mechanics)

Tension and Tensile Strength

Now that you understand a little bit about forces and moments, we can begin to talk about the strength of materials and beams. Simple tension is when you pull on an object without giving it any twisting or bending forces. "Stress" is the engineering term to describe the amount of force acting on an object (or portion of an object) per unit area. When trying to figure out whether something is strong enough, the most common material property that engineers refer to is the "tensile strength," which is the amount of stress that a material can handle before it breaks. In the English system, this is usually figured in terms of pounds per square inch (psi). To determine the tensile strength of a material, a sample with a known cross-sectional area is pulled apart on a tensile test machine that records how much force it took to break the sample, and then that force is divided by the cross-sectional area to determine the breaking stress ("ultimate tensile strength"). Some of the properties of tensile strength are pretty intuitive. For example, if you make a rectangular chunk of wood twice as thick, its strength in tension will be twice as much. Another useful engineering term is "yield stress." The yield stress is the point at which a material has reached its maximum stress before starting to plastically deform (yield) and take on a permanent deformation.

Compression

Compression can get a lot more complicated than simple tension. In short, squat columns,

compression behaves pretty similarly to tension, and you can usually figure compression strength based on the tensile

strength, but in long, slender columns, something very different happens. Imagine a simple wooden yardstick. If you could grip the ends tightly, you could probably hang more than your full body weight on it without breaking. Now stand that same yardstick on end and push on it. With very little force, the slender yardstick will bow in the middle and snap. This is called "buckling," and there are engineering formulas to calculate the buckling strength of slender beams, but they are beyond the scope of this book. Some materials, such as concrete, have much higher compressive strengths than their tensile (pulling) strengths. The main reason that concrete structures are generally reinforced with steel rebar is to carry most of the tensile bending stresses in the steel rebar instead of the concrete, because concrete typically has poor tensile strength.

Bending

Bending is very different from simple tension. When you bend a beam, the side on the inside of the curve gets compressed while the opposite side gets tensioned. There is a line through the center of a beam, called the "neutral axis," that is neither compressed nor tensioned.

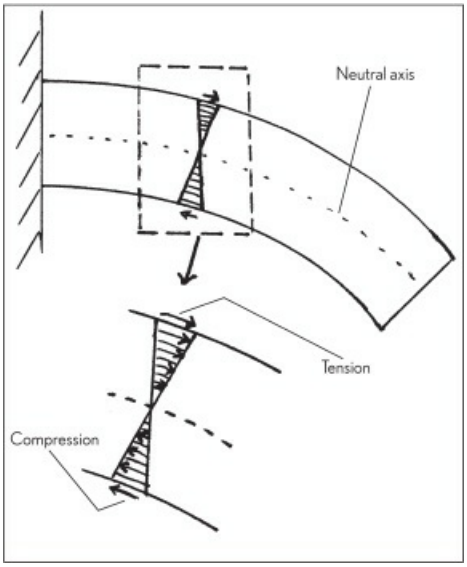


Figure 15-6. Beam bending.

Whereas the strength of a beam in tension is directly proportional to the cross-sectional area of the beam, the strength and stiffness of a beam in bending are heavily dependent on the geometry of its cross section, not just the area. For example, if you double the width of a rectangular beam, you double its tensile strength, stiffness, and bending strength. If you double its height, you still just double the tensile strength, but its bending stiffness and strength go up by a factor of 8.

It turns out that the top and bottom areas of beams make by far the most difference in beam strength and stiffness. That is why most steel beams have a cross section like a classic capital "I." In fact, to conserve wood, modern engineered floor joists are now fabricated with narrow plywood vertical runners capped by a wider section on the top and bottom, much like a steel I-beam. Tubular beams also save considerable material over solid round beams of similar stiffness,

though not as efficiently as an I-beam. When calculating beam bending strengths and deflections, there is an important factor known as the "area moment of inertia." This is a stiffness factor that is highly dependent on the cross-sectional geometry and dimensions, and is commonly shown as the letter *I* in engineering equations. For example, the area moment of inertia for a rectangular beam is $1/3 \times b \times h^3$, where *b* is the width and *h* is the height of the beam. In the case of a round beam, such as a tree trunk, $I = (\pi d^4)/64$. From this equation, you can see that doubling the diameter of a round beam diameter increases its stiffness and bending strength by a factor of 16. To calculate the *I* values for I-beams and cylinders that are symmetric about the neutral axis, first calculate the I value for the solid shape and then subtract the I values for the areas of space.

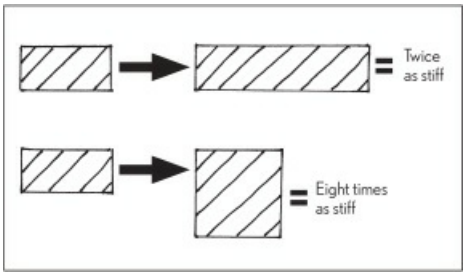


Figure 15-7. Rectangular beam stiffness versus cross section.

Mechanical engineering and machinery handbooks carry charts for many beams of different geometry that enable one to quickly calculate the area moment of inertia for a wide variety of cross sections. They also offer charts for many different simplified beam loading configurations that make it relatively easy to calculate the strength of your design by simply matching it up with the figure that most closely represents this design, and then plugging your load and distance numbers into the equation.

Basic Beam Equations

When I am analyzing beam strength, stresses, and deflections, I usually use the handbook formulas in *Machinery's Handbook* or *Roark's Formulas for Stress and Strain.* In case you ever need to ensure that a simple hoist or bridging beam is strong enough for a particular application and you don't have access to an engineering handbook, I provide equations for maximum stress in three of the simplest beam cases (*Machinery's Handbook* gives full stress and deflection equations for 24 different cases of beam loading, and *Roark's Formulas* has many more).

Case 1. Beam Supported at Both Ends with a Load in the Center

You can assume that one-half the weight of the beam adds to the sum of other loads applied to the center of the beam. Loads that move from one end to the other, such as a truck crossing a bridge, cause the most stress when they are at the center point. "Simply supported" means that the ends of the beam are free to rotate as the beam flexes under load.

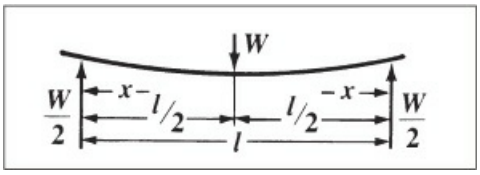


Figure 15-8. Diagram for case 1. (Illustration courtesy of *Machinery's Handbook*, 26th ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J. McCauley, Industrial Press, 2000)

The maximum stress, *s*, is at the center of the beam. In the formula, $s = (y \times W \times L)/4I$, is equal to the maximum distance from the beam's neutral axis. For symmetrical beams, the neutral axis runs along the center of the beam, so for a rectangular beam or I-beam, *y* is equal to one-half the beam height. For beams with a circular cross section, *y* is equal to the radius of the beam. *I* is the area moment of inertia. See the previous section for equations for *I* for simple shapes, or see a mechanical engineering handbook to calculate *I* for more complicated beam cross sections.

Case 2. Beam Consisting of Built-In Ends with a Load in the Center

This case is the same as case 1, except that the ends of the beam are constrained to stay horizontal, either because they are built into something or because the beam is just a section of a long beam with multiple supports.

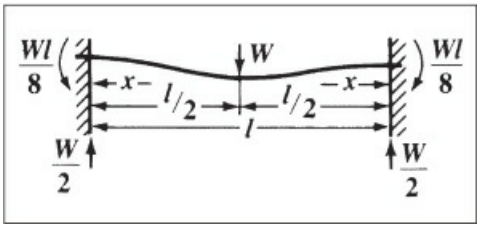


Figure 15-9. Diagram for case 2. (Illustration courtesy of *Machinery's Handbook*, 26th ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J.

McCauley, Industrial Press, 2000)

The maximum stress, *s*, is at the center of the beam and at the ends by the built-in supports in the following formula: $s = (y \times W \times L)/8I$.

Case 3. Cantilevered Beam with a Load at the End

For simplicity, assume that one-half the weight of the beam adds to the sum of other loads applied to the end of the beam. The anchored end of the beam is considered "built-in."

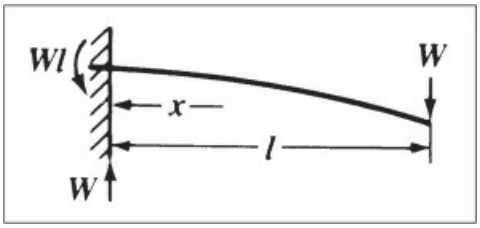


Figure 15-10. Diagram for case 3. (Illustration courtesy of *Machinery's Handbook*, 26th ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J. McCauley, Industrial Press, 2000)

The maximum stress, s, is at the end by the built-in support in the following formula: $s = (y \times W \times L)/I$.

> **NOTE: The source for all beam and area moment of inertia equations is *Machinery's Handbook,* 21st ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, and Holbrook L. Horton, Industrial Press, 1982.**

Safety Factor

Whenever I calculate the strength of a design, I employ a safety factor. The size of the safety factor I choose depends on several other factors, including my level of confidence in the accuracy of the analysis, the importance of other factors such as corrosion and fatigue (many repeated cycles), how expensive/difficult it is to add material to make the design safer, and the severity of the consequences of failure. A narrow safety factor might be on the order of 1.5. For instance, if I wanted to carry a load of 1,000 pounds, I would design my construction to carry at least 1,500 pounds. In general, I like to see a safety factor of at least 2.5, preferably 4, and sometimes as high as 10.

FLUIDS

For practical handbook calculations of fluid flows through pipes, I almost always use Lindeburg's *Mechanical Engineering Reference Manual for the PE*

Exam. It is very clear and has all the information I need in one area of the book, plus sample problems that help me remember what to do if it's been years since I last calculated a similar fluid flow. To calculate pressure losses for fluids flowing through pipes, you can go through a fairly involved chain of steps using one of the recommended engineering handbooks, or you can easily estimate these losses using the water pipe sizing chart in the "Micro-Hydropower" section of Chapter 11. Due to friction losses in pipe fittings, figure that each threaded elbow or tee counts for about as much pressure loss as six feet of the same sized pipe (this is called "equivalent length"). Handbooks give you a chart with specific values of equivalent lengths for most sizes and types of standard pipe fittings and valves.

Water pressure, pump output, and piping pressure losses are often specified by the number of feet of "head." In a static situation, water pressure increases with the depth. Head is the depth of static water that corresponds to a certain pressure. Multiply the number of "feet of head" by 0.433 to convert head into psi (pounds per square inch). For example, at ground level beneath a 50-foot-high water tower, the static pressure in the water pipe is 50 feet of head, or $50 \times 0.433 = 21.65$ psi.

When you pump water, the amount of work it takes to pump the water is a direct function of the water pressure, flow rate, and pump efficiency. Disregarding pump efficiency losses, the pump horsepower (work) is equal to the flow rate (Q in gallons per minute) multiplied times the pressure (in feet of head) divided by 3,960: $W = (Q \times H)/3{,}960$.

Similarly, if you are generating power off a fluid flow, this same equation tells you the theoretical maximum power available from a fluid flow (efficiency losses will reduce the actual amount of power that you can generate). At a given pressure, if you double the flow rate, you

double the horsepower. At a given flow rate, if you double the pressure, you double the horsepower.

MATERIALS

Materials at the disposal of preindustrial societies were mostly limited to those that could be grown, foraged, or hunted. Modern society has a huge variety of materials at our beck and call. Both *Mark's Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers* and the *Machinery's Handbook* contain numerous charts depicting various properties for hundreds of modern materials. The following page is a chart with a few properties of some common materials. See the recommended handbooks for more complete information.

MATHEMATICS

Both *Mark's Handbook* and the *Machinery's Handbook* contain extensive sections devoted to mathematics. Lindeburg's engineering review manuals have decent sections devoted to math that are more instructive but not as extensive. Appearing below are a few simple rules and equations that I use on a regular basis for mechanical design. Also included are old-fashioned trigonometry and logarithm tables just in case you need to perform calculations someday without access to a hand-held calculator or computer. In the days before electronic calculators, log and trig tables and/or a slide rule were considered essential equipment for every engineer. The slide rule enabled engineers to rapidly perform complex calculations to three significant digits (three digits of accuracy). A slide rule contains built-in trigonometry and logarithm tables for quick reference and easy calculation with accuracy that is adequate for most engineering solutions but not for bookkeeping.

Rectangles

Area of a rectangle = length × width

Volume of a rectangular solid = length × width × height

Circular Forms

Perimeter of a circle = $\pi \times$ diameter

> **NOTE: Pi (π) equals 3.14159 and is a very handy number that corresponds to a fixed ratio that relates the radius and diameter of circular forms to their circumference, area, and volume.**

Area of a circle = $\pi \times r^2$ (r is the radius)
Volume of a sphere = $4/3 \times \pi r^3$
Volume of cylinder = $\pi \times r^2 \times l$ (l is the length of the cylinder)

Material	Tensile strength (10^3 psi)	Modulus of elasticity (10^6 psi)	Compressive Strength (10^3 psi)	Density (lb/in^3)	Notes
Cast iron, gray	20–60	12–18			Cast iron is a brittle material
Cast steel	60–100	30			Yield stress 30,000–70,000 psi
Cast iron, malleable	40–100	25			Yield stress 30,000–80,000 psi
Cast iron, ductile	60–120	23			Yield stress 40,000–90,000 psi
Mild steel (A 36)	58–80	30		0.283	Yield stress 36,000 psi min
Steel, low carbon (1018)	60–103	30		0.283	Yield stress 45,000 7" rod, turned Yield stress 70,000 1" cold rolled
Steel, medium carbon (1045)	80–182	30		0.283	Yield stress 55,000 5" rod, turned Yield stress 85,000 1" cold rolled
Steel, high carbon (1095)	90–213	30		0.283	Yield stress 20,000–150,000 psi (depends on heat treat)
Steel, stainless (302)	85–125	28		0.283	Yield stress 35,000–95,000 psi
Aluminum, sand cast	19–35	10.3		0.098	Yield stress 8,000–25,000 psi
Aluminum, wrought (1100)	13–24	10–11.4		0.098	Annealed condition yield 5,000 psi, H18 temper yield 22,000 psi
Aluminum, wrought (2024)	27–68	10.6		0.1	T4 temper yield 47,000 psi
Red brass	39–105	16		0.316	Yield stress 10,000–63,000 psi
Yellow brass	46–128	16		0.316	Yield stress 14,000–62,000 psi
Copper, wrought	32–57	17			Yield stress 10,000–53,000 psi
Die cast zinc (Alloy 3)	41			0.24	Yield stress 32,000 psi
Pewter	7.6			0.263	
Brickwork, common	0.05		1		
Concrete	0.2– 0.6	3–5	1.5–8	150 1b/ft^3	Average strength is 2,000–3,000 psi, High is 6,000–8,000. Strength depends on how much cement and water are used in mix.
Granite	0.7	4–16	13–55	160–190 1b/ft^3	
Marble		5–11.5	8–27	165–179 1b/ft^3	
Slate	0.5	6–16	9–10	168–180 1b/ft^3	
Sandstone	0.3	0.7–10	5–20	119–168 1b/ft^3	
Limestone	0.3	3–9	2.5–28	117–175 1b/ft^3	
Oak, red northern	8.5	1.82		44 1b/ft^3	Working stress approximately 25 percent of tensile. (See *Mark's Handbook*)
Oak, white	8.2	1.78		48 1b/ft^3	Working stress approximately 25 percent of tensile. (See *Mark's*)
Birch, yellow	10.1	2.01		43 1b/ft^3	Working stress approximately 25 percent of tensile. (See *Mark's*)
Douglas fir	7.8	1.95		34 1b/ft^3	Working stress approximately 25 percent of tensile. (See *Mark's*)
Pine, ponderosa	6.3	1.29		28 1b/ft^3	Working stress approximately 25 percent of tensile. (See *Mark's*)
Spruce, white or red	6.5	1.34		28 1b/ft^3	Working stress approximately 25 percent of tensile. (See *Mark's*)

(Source: *Machinery's Handbook,* 26th ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J. McCauley, Industrial Press, 2000; *Mark's Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers,* 10th ed., edited by Eugene A. Avalone and Theodore Baumeister III, McGrawHill, 1996; Earl M. Jorgensen Co., *Steel and Aluminum Stock List*, 1984; and *Elements of the Mechanical Behavior of Solids,* by Nam P. Suh and Arthur L. Turner, 1975.)

Trigonometry

When you add the sum of the three internal angles of any single triangle, they always total 180°. A "right triangle" is any triangle that has a 90° angle. In any right triangle, the two shorter legs are next to the 90° angle, and the longest leg, called the "hypotenuse," is the leg opposite the 90° angle. "Similar triangles" are triangles that have exactly the same size angles. No matter how large or small similar triangles are, they always have the exact same proportions. These ratios may be looked up in trig (short for trigonometry) tables or found with the trig functions on a calculator. Figure 15-11 illustrates a typical right triangle. The little box drawn inside one corner indicates that it is a 90° angle.

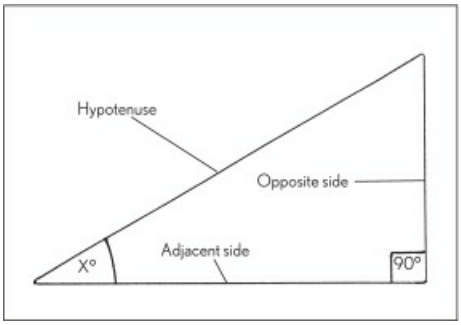


Figure 15-11. Typical right triangle.

Basic Trigonometric Ratios for Right Triangle Angles

Sine *x* = opposite side/hypotenuse (sine is abbreviated "sin")

Cosine *x* = adjacent side/hypotenuse (cosine is abbreviated "cos")

Tangent *x* = opposite side/adjacent side (tangent is abbreviated "tan")

Cotangent *x* = adjacent side/opposite side (cotangent is abbreviated "cot")

Secant *x* = hypotenuse/adjacent side (secant is abbreviated "sec")

Cosecant *x* = hypotenuse/opposite side (cosecant is abbreviated "cosec")

> **NOTE: In each of the above cases, insert the value of the angle that you are using in place of *x*.**

When I design most anything (even the addition to my house), I almost always use basic trigonometry. Since I left engineering school (with the exception of engineering exams), I believe that I have used calculus only twice, but I have used trigonometry thousands of times. This is very useful math, and it's not hard to understand once you realize that it is just a bunch of fixed ratios for a right triangle with any specific angle.

Law of Sines and Law of Cosines

The law of sines and the law of cosines are handy tools for calculating the unknown angles or lengths of sides for triangles that don't have a right angle, provided that you already know a combination of any three angles and sides (except for all three angles). See Figure 15-12 for an

understanding of the assignment of letters to specific sides and angles used in the equation for the law of cosines or the law of sines.

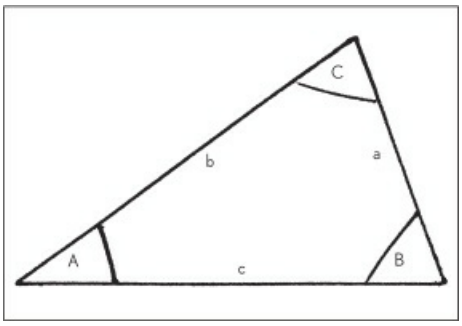


Figure 15-12. Triangle conventions for the law of sines or cosines.

Law of Sines

$a/b = (\sin A)/(\sin B)$ or $b/c = (\sin B)/(\sin C)$ or $a/c = (\sin A)/(\sin C)$

Law of Cosines

$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$

Logarithms

Logarithms are one of those things that many people had to learn in high school. When I have a modern calculator at my fingertips, I only use logarithms for dealing with either huge or extremely tiny numbers. If I didn't have access to a calculator, logarithms would be indispensable for almost any complex calculation. Logarithms tremendously simplify hand calculations that involve multiplying or dividing large numbers and any calculations that involve raising a number to a power beyond two (or the "square" of a number). They are especially useful for raising a number to a fractional power. I have absolutely no idea how I would calculate a fractional exponent, such as the value of 120.3.5, without either a calculator or a log table.

Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot		Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot	
0° 0′	0.000000	1.000000	0.000000	—	**90° 0′**	**7° 30′**	0.130526	0.991445	0.131652	7.595754	**82° 30′**
10	0.002909	0.999996	0.002909	343.7737	**50**	**40**	0.133410	0.991061	0.134613	7.428706	**20**
20	0.005818	0.999983	0.005818	171.8854	**40**	**50**	0.136292	0.990669	0.137576	7.268725	**10**
30	0.008727	0.999962	0.008727	114.5887	**30**	**8° 0′**	0.139173	0.990268	0.140541	7.115370	**82° 0′**
40	0.011635	0.999932	0.011636	85.93979	**20**	**10**	0.142053	0.989859	0.143508	6.968234	**50**
50	0.014544	0.999894	0.014545	68.75009	**10**	**20**	0.144932	0.989442	0.146478	6.826944	**40**
1° 0′	0.017452	0.999848	0.017455	57.28996	**89° 0′**	**30**	0.147809	0.989016	0.149451	6.691156	**30**
10	0.020361	0.999793	0.020365	49.10388	**50**	**40**	0.150686	0.988582	0.152426	6.560554	**20**
20	0.023269	0.999729	0.023275	42.96408	**40**	**50**	0.153561	0.988139	0.155404	6.434843	**10**
30	0.026177	0.999657	0.026186	38.18846	**30**	**9° 0′**	0.156434	0.987688	0.158384	6.313752	**81° 0′**
40	0.029085	0.999577	0.029097	34.36777	**20**	**10**	0.159307	0.987229	0.161368	6.197028	**50**
50	0.031992	0.999488	0.032009	31.24158	**10**	**20**	0.162178	0.986762	0.164354	6.084438	**40**
2° 0′	0.034899	0.999391	0.034921	28.63625	**88° 0′**	**30**	0.165048	0.986286	0.167343	5.975764	**30**
10	0.037806	0.999285	0.037834	26.43160	**50**	**40**	0.167916	0.985801	0.170334	5.870804	**20**
20	0.040713	0.999171	0.040747	24.54176	**40**	**50**	0.170783	0.985309	0.173329	5.769369	**10**
30	0.043619	0.999048	0.043661	22.90377	**30**	**10° 0′**	0.173648	0.984808	0.176327	5.671282	**80° 0′**
40	0.046525	0.998917	0.046576	21.47040	**20**	**10**	0.176512	0.984298	0.179328	5.576379	**50**
50	0.049431	0.998778	0.049491	20.20555	**10**	**20**	0.179375	0.983781	0.182332	5.484505	**40**
3° 0′	0.052336	0.998630	0.052408	19.08114	**87° 0′**	**30**	0.182236	0.983255	0.185339	5.395517	**30**
10	0.055241	0.998473	0.055325	18.07498	**50**	**40**	0.185095	0.982721	0.188349	5.309279	**20**
20	0.058145	0.998308	0.058243	17.16934	**40**	**50**	0.187953	0.982178	0.191363	5.225665	**10**
30	0.061049	0.998135	0.061163	16.34986	**30**	**11° 0′**	0.190809	0.981627	0.194380	5.144554	**79° 0′**
40	0.063952	0.997953	0.064083	15.60478	**20**	**10**	0.193664	0.981068	0.197401	5.065835	**50**
50	0.066854	0.997763	0.067004	14.92442	**10**	**20**	0.196517	0.980500	0.200425	4.989403	**40**
4° 0′	0.069756	0.997564	0.069927	14.30067	**86° 0′**	**30**	0.199368	0.979925	0.203452	4.915157	**30**
10	0.072658	0.997357	0.072851	13.72674	**50**	**40**	0.202218	0.979341	0.206483	4.843005	**20**
20	0.075559	0.997141	0.075775	13.19688	**40**	**50**	0.205065	0.978748	0.209518	4.772857	**10**
30	0.078459	0.996917	0.078702	12.70621	**30**	**12° 0′**	0.207912	0.978148	0.212557	4.704630	**78° 0′**
40	0.081359	0.996685	0.081629	12.25051	**20**	**10**	0.210756	0.977539	0.215599	4.638246	**50**
50	0.084258	0.996444	0.084558	11.82617	**10**	**20**	0.213599	0.976921	0.218645	4.573629	**40**
5° 0′	0.087156	0.996195	0.087489	11.43005	**85° 0′**	**30**	0.216440	0.976296	0.221695	4.510709	**30**
10	0.090053	0.995937	0.090421	11.05943	**50**	**40**	0.219279	0.975662	0.224748	4.449418	**20**
20	0.092950	0.995671	0.093354	10.71191	**40**	**50**	0.222116	0.975020	0.227806	4.389694	**10**
30	0.095846	0.995396	0.096289	10.38540	**30**	**13° 0′**	0.224951	0.974370	0.230868	4.331476	**77° 0′**
40	0.098741	0.995113	0.099226	10.07803	**20**	**10**	0.227784	0.973712	0.233934	4.274707	**50**
50	0.101635	0.994822	0.102164	9.788173	**10**	**20**	0.230616	0.973045	0.237004	4.219332	**40**
6° 0′	0.104528	0.994522	0.105104	9.514364	**84° 0′**	**30**	0.233445	0.972370	0.240079	4.165300	**30**
10	0.107421	0.994214	0.108046	9.255304	**50**	**40**	0.236273	0.971687	0.243157	4.112561	**20**
20	0.110313	0.993897	0.110990	9.009826	**40**	**50**	0.239098	0.970995	0.246241	4.061070	**10**
30	0.113203	0.993572	0.113936	8.776887	**30**	**14° 0′**	0.241922	0.970296	0.249328	4.010781	**76° 0′**
40	0.116093	0.993238	0.116883	8.555547	**20**	**10**	0.244743	0.969588	0.252420	3.961652	**50**
50	0.118982	0.992896	0.119833	8.344956	**10**	**20**	0.247563	0.968872	0.255516	3.913642	**40**
7° 0′	0.121869	0.992546	0.122785	8.144346	**83° 0′**	**30**	0.250380	0.968148	0.258618	3.866713	**30**
10	0.124756	0.992187	0.125738	7.953022	**50**	**40**	0.253195	0.967415	0.261723	3.820828	**20**
20	0.127642	0.991820	0.128694	7.770351	**40**	**50**	0.256008	0.966675	0.264834	3.775952	**10**
7° 30′	0.130526	0.991445	0.131652	7.595754	**82° 30′**	**15° 0′**	0.258819	0.965926	0.267949	3.732051	**75° 0′**
	cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle		cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle

(Table courtesy of *Machinery's Handbook*, 26th ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J. McCauley, Industrial Press, 2000)

Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot		Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot	
30° 0′	0.500000	0.866025	0.577350	1.732051	**60° 0′**	**37° 30′**	0.608761	0.793353	0.767327	1.303225	**52° 30′**
10	0.502517	0.864567	0.581235	1.720474	**50**	**40**	0.611067	0.791579	0.771959	1.295406	**20**
20	0.505030	0.863102	0.585134	1.709012	**40**	**50**	0.613367	0.789798	0.776612	1.287645	**10**
30	0.507538	0.861629	0.589045	1.697663	**30**	**38° 0′**	0.615661	0.788011	0.781286	1.279942	**52° 0′**
40	0.510043	0.860149	0.592970	1.686426	**20**	**10**	0.617951	0.786217	0.785981	1.272296	**50**
50	0.512543	0.858662	0.596908	1.675299	**10**	**20**	0.620235	0.784416	0.790697	1.264706	**40**
31° 0′	0.515038	0.857167	0.600861	1.664279	**59° 0′**	**30**	0.622515	0.782608	0.795436	1.257172	**30**
10	0.517529	0.855665	0.604827	1.653366	**50**	**40**	0.624789	0.780794	0.800196	1.249693	**20**
20	0.520016	0.854156	0.608807	1.642558	**40**	**50**	0.627057	0.778973	0.804979	1.242268	**10**
30	0.522499	0.852640	0.612801	1.631852	**30**	**39° 0′**	0.629320	0.777146	0.809784	1.234897	**51° 0′**
40	0.524977	0.851117	0.616809	1.621247	**20**	**10**	0.631578	0.775312	0.814612	1.227579	**50**
50	0.527450	0.849586	0.620832	1.610742	**10**	**20**	0.633831	0.773472	0.819463	1.220312	**40**
32° 0′	0.529919	0.848048	0.624869	1.600335	**58° 0′**	**30**	0.636078	0.771625	0.824336	1.213097	**30**
10	0.532384	0.846503	0.628921	1.590024	**50**	**40**	0.638320	0.769771	0.829234	1.205933	**20**
20	0.534844	0.844951	0.632988	1.579808	**40**	**50**	0.640557	0.767911	0.834155	1.198818	**10**
30	0.537300	0.843391	0.637070	1.569686	**30**	**40° 0′**	0.642788	0.766044	0.839100	1.191754	**50° 0′**
40	0.539751	0.841825	0.641167	1.559655	**20**	**10**	0.645013	0.764171	0.844069	1.184738	**50**
50	0.542197	0.840251	0.645280	1.549715	**10**	**20**	0.647233	0.762292	0.849062	1.177770	**40**
33° 0′	0.544639	0.838671	0.649408	1.539865	**57° 0′**	**30**	0.649448	0.760406	0.854081	1.170850	**30**
10	0.547076	0.837083	0.653551	1.530102	**50**	**40**	0.651657	0.758514	0.859124	1.163976	**20**
20	0.549509	0.835488	0.657710	1.520426	**40**	**50**	0.653861	0.756615	0.864193	1.157149	**10**
30	0.551937	0.833886	0.661886	1.510835	**30**	**41° 0′**	0.656059	0.754710	0.869287	1.150368	**49° 0′**
40	0.554360	0.832277	0.666077	1.501328	**20**	**10**	0.658252	0.752798	0.874407	1.143633	**50**
50	0.556779	0.830661	0.670284	1.491904	**10**	**20**	0.660439	0.750880	0.879553	1.136941	**40**
34° 0′	0.559193	0.829038	0.674509	1.482561	**56° 0′**	**30**	0.662620	0.748956	0.884725	1.130294	**30**
10	0.561602	0.827407	0.678749	1.473298	**50**	**40**	0.664796	0.747025	0.889924	1.123691	**20**
20	0.564007	0.825770	0.683007	1.464115	**40**	**50**	0.666966	0.745088	0.895151	1.117130	**10**
30	0.566406	0.824126	0.687281	1.455009	**30**	**42° 0′**	0.669131	0.743145	0.900404	1.110613	**48° 0′**
40	0.568801	0.822475	0.691572	1.445980	**20**	**10**	0.671289	0.741195	0.905685	1.104137	**50**
50	0.571191	0.820817	0.695881	1.437027	**10**	**20**	0.673443	0.739239	0.910994	1.097702	**40**
35° 0′	0.573576	0.819152	0.700208	1.428148	**55° 0′**	**30**	0.675590	0.737277	0.916331	1.091309	**30**
10	0.575957	0.817480	0.704551	1.419343	**50**	**40**	0.677732	0.735309	0.921697	1.084955	**20**
20	0.578332	0.815801	0.708913	1.410610	**40**	**50**	0.679868	0.733334	0.927091	1.078642	**10**
30	0.580703	0.814116	0.713293	1.401948	**30**	**43° 0′**	0.681998	0.731354	0.932515	1.072369	**47° 0′**
40	0.583069	0.812423	0.717691	1.393357	**20**	**10**	0.684123	0.729367	0.937968	1.066134	**50**
50	0.585429	0.810723	0.722108	1.384835	**10**	**20**	0.686242	0.727374	0.943451	1.059938	**40**
36° 0′	0.587785	0.809017	0.726543	1.376382	**54° 0′**	**30**	0.688355	0.725374	0.948965	1.053780	**30**
10	0.590136	0.807304	0.730996	1.367996	**50**	**40**	0.690462	0.723369	0.954508	1.047660	**20**
20	0.592482	0.805584	0.735469	1.359676	**40**	**50**	0.692563	0.721357	0.960083	1.041577	**10**
30	0.594823	0.803857	0.739961	1.351422	**30**	**44° 0′**	0.694658	0.719340	0.965689	1.035530	**46° 0′**
40	0.597159	0.802123	0.744472	1.343233	**20**	**10**	0.696748	0.717316	0.971326	1.029520	**50**
50	0.599489	0.800383	0.749003	1.335108	**10**	**20**	0.698832	0.715286	0.976996	1.023546	**40**
37° 0′	0.601815	0.798636	0.753554	1.327045	**53° 0′**	**30**	0.700909	0.713250	0.982697	1.017607	**30**
10	0.604136	0.796882	0.758125	1.319044	**50**	**40**	0.702981	0.711209	0.988432	1.011704	**20**
20	0.606451	0.795121	0.762716	1.311105	**40**	**50**	0.705047	0.709161	0.994199	1.005835	**10**
37° 30′	0.608761	0.793353	0.767327	1.303225	**52° 30′**	**45° 0′**	0.707107	0.707107	1.000000	1.000000	**45° 0′**
	cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle		cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle

Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot		Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot	
15° 0′	0.258819	0.965926	0.267949	3.732051	75° 0′	22° 30′	0.382683	0.923880	0.414214	2.414214	67° 30
10	0.261628	0.965169	0.271069	3.689093	50	40	0.385369	0.922762	0.417626	2.394489	20
20	0.264434	0.964404	0.274194	3.647047	40	50	0.388052	0.921638	0.421046	2.375037	10
30	0.267238	0.963630	0.277325	3.605884	30	23° 0′	0.390731	0.920505	0.424475	2.355852	67° 0′
40	0.270040	0.962849	0.280460	3.565575	20	10	0.393407	0.919364	0.427912	2.336929	50
50	0.272840	0.962059	0.283600	3.526094	10	20	0.396080	0.918216	0.431358	2.318261	40
16° 0′	0.275637	0.961262	0.286745	3.487414	74° 0′	30	0.398749	0.917060	0.434812	2.299843	30
10	0.278432	0.960456	0.289896	3.449512	50	40	0.401415	0.915896	0.438276	2.281669	20
20	0.281225	0.959642	0.293052	3.412363	40	50	0.404078	0.914725	0.441748	2.263736	10
30	0.284015	0.958820	0.296213	3.375943	30	24° 0′	0.406737	0.913545	0.445229	2.246037	66° 0′
40	0.286803	0.957990	0.299380	3.340233	20	10	0.409392	0.912358	0.448719	2.228568	50
50	0.289589	0.957151	0.302553	3.305209	10	20	0.412045	0.911164	0.452218	2.211323	40
17° 0′	0.292372	0.956305	0.305731	3.270853	73° 0′	30	0.414693	0.909961	0.455726	2.194300	30
10	0.295152	0.955450	0.308914	3.237144	50	40	0.417338	0.908751	0.459244	2.177492	20
20	0.297930	0.954588	0.312104	3.204064	40	50	0.419980	0.907533	0.462771	2.160896	10
30	0.300706	0.953717	0.315299	3.171595	30	25° 0′	0.422618	0.906308	0.466308	2.144507	65° 0′
40	0.303479	0.952838	0.318500	3.139719	20	10	0.425253	0.905075	0.469854	2.128321	50
50	0.306249	0.951951	0.321707	3.108421	10	20	0.427884	0.903834	0.473410	2.112335	40
18° 0′	0.309017	0.951057	0.324920	3.077684	72° 0′	30	0.430511	0.902585	0.476976	2.096544	30
10	0.311782	0.950154	0.328139	3.047492	50	40	0.433135	0.901329	0.480551	2.080944	20
20	0.314545	0.949243	0.331364	3.017830	40	50	0.435755	0.900065	0.484137	2.065532	10
30	0.317305	0.948324	0.334595	2.988685	30	26° 0′	0.438371	0.898794	0.487733	2.050304	64° 0′
40	0.320062	0.947397	0.337833	2.960042	20	10	0.440984	0.897515	0.491339	2.035256	50
50	0.322816	0.946462	0.341077	2.931888	10	20	0.443593	0.896229	0.494955	2.020386	40
19° 0′	0.325568	0.945519	0.344328	2.904211	71° 0′	30	0.446198	0.894934	0.498582	2.005690	30
10	0.328317	0.944568	0.347585	2.876997	50	40	0.448799	0.893633	0.502219	1.991164	20
20	0.331063	0.943609	0.350848	2.850235	40	50	0.451397	0.892323	0.505867	1.976805	10
30	0.333807	0.942641	0.354119	2.823913	30	27° 0′	0.453990	0.891007	0.509525	1.962611	63° 0′
40	0.336547	0.941666	0.357396	2.798020	20	10	0.456580	0.889682	0.513195	1.948577	50
50	0.339285	0.940684	0.360679	2.772545	10	20	0.459166	0.888350	0.516875	1.934702	40
20° 0′	0.342020	0.939693	0.363970	2.747477	70° 0′	30	0.461749	0.887011	0.520567	1.920982	30
10	0.344752	0.938694	0.367268	2.722808	50	40	0.464327	0.885664	0.524270	1.907415	20
20	0.347481	0.937687	0.370573	2.698525	40	50	0.466901	0.884309	0.527984	1.893997	10
30	0.350207	0.936672	0.373885	2.674621	30	28° 0′	0.469472	0.882948	0.531709	1.880726	62° 0′
40	0.352931	0.935650	0.377204	2.651087	20	10	0.472038	0.881578	0.535446	1.867600	50
50	0.355651	0.934619	0.380530	2.627912	10	20	0.474600	0.880201	0.539195	1.854616	40
21° 0′	0.358368	0.933580	0.383864	2.605089	69° 0′	30	0.477159	0.878817	0.542956	1.841771	30
10	0.361082	0.932534	0.387205	2.582609	50	40	0.479713	0.877425	0.546728	1.829063	20
20	0.363793	0.931480	0.390554	2.560465	40	50	0.482263	0.876026	0.550513	1.816489	10
30	0.366501	0.930418	0.393910	2.538648	30	29° 0′	0.484810	0.874620	0.554309	1.804048	61° 0′
40	0.369206	0.929348	0.397275	2.517151	20	10	0.487352	0.873206	0.558118	1.791736	50
50	0.371908	0.928270	0.400646	2.495966	10	20	0.489890	0.871784	0.561939	1.779552	40
22° 0′	0.374607	0.927184	0.404026	2.475087	68° 0′	30	0.492424	0.870356	0.565773	1.767494	30
10	0.377302	0.926090	0.407414	2.454506	50	40	0.494953	0.868920	0.569619	1.755559	20
20	0.379994	0.924989	0.410810	2.434217	40	50	0.497479	0.867476	0.573478	1.743745	10
22° 30′	0.382683	0.923880	0.414214	2.414214	67° 30′	30° 0′	0.500000	0.866025	0.577350	1.732051	60° 0′
	cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle		cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle

What Is a Logarithm?

The logarithm (abbreviated as “log”) of a number is the power to which the number 10 would be raised to equal that number. For example, the log of 100 is equal to 2, since $10^2 = 100$. The log of .01 is equal to –2, since $10^{-2} = 1/10^2 = .01$. Similarly, the log of 10,000 equals 4, and the log of a million equals 6. Log tables typically provide logarithms for numbers between 1 and 10. To find numbers less than 1 or greater than 10, you convert the number into a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by 10 raised to some power. For instance, to find the log of 13,500,000, you would first convert this number to 1.35×10^7. Next, find the log of 1.35 using a log table, which is equal to 0.1303. The log of 13,500,000 is equal to 0.1303 + 7, or 7.1303. To find the anti-log of a logarithm, simply reverse this process. If you don’t understand any of this, don’t worry about it. If the need arises to perform a complex calculation and you don’t have access to a modern electronic calculator, hopefully you can find someone who understands logarithms.

What Is an Anti-Logarithm?

An “anti-log” is the opposite of a logarithm. To convert a log back into a number, you raise 10 to the power of the log and you get a regular number again. The easy way to do this is to subtract

out the whole number from the log and use a log table to find the anti-log of the remaining decimal (or fraction) between 1 and 0. Raise 10 to the whole number of the log and multiply by the anti-log of the fraction and you have converted the log back into a regular number. The whole reason for using logs is to simplify complex calculations, but you need to convert the logs back into regular numbers again (this is called finding the "anti-log") to get a meaningful answer. For example, the anti-log of 3 is equal to 1,000 because $10^3 = 1{,}000$. The anti-log of 2.49 is 309 because the anti-log of 0.49 is 3.09, and the anti-log of 2 is $10^2 = 100$, and $100 \times 3.09 = 309$. This will become clearer in the following sections.

Multiplication with Logarithms

When multiplying large numbers, you simply add the logs of the numbers and then convert the sum back (take the anti-log) into a regular number. It is easier to add large numbers, especially a string of numbers, than to multiply them, so logs simplify complex string calculations.

Division with Logarithms

When dividing large numbers, you simply subtract the log of the divisor (the number on the bottom) from the log of the number on the top, and then convert this value back (take the anti-log) into a regular number. It is easier to subtract large numbers, especially a string of numbers, than to multiply them, so logs simplify complex string calculations. In complex strings, you can both add logs of multiplied numbers and subtract logs of divisors all in one calculation, before taking the anti-log to convert it back into a regular number.

Exponents (Powers) with Logarithms

The real beauty of logarithms comes into play when you start calculating numbers raised to powers (exponents), especially when exponents are large or fractional numbers (most fractional exponents are almost impossible to calculate by hand). When you raise a number to a power (exponent), the same operation in logs simply multiplies the log of the number by its exponent, and then you use anti-logs to convert the answer back into a regular number. For instance, finding the value of 127^7 would probably take me at least an hour with hand multiplication but only a couple of minutes with logarithms. First, convert the number into $(1.27 \times 10^2)^7$. Next, using a log table, find that the log of 1.27 is equal to 0.1038, so the log of 127 is equal to 2.1038. Now multiply 2.1038×7 and you find that the log of 127^7 is equal to 14.726. Next, taking the anti-log of 0.726 = 5.32 (0.726 is the non–whole number portion), you find that the answer is the rather large number 5.32×10^{14}. Finding this number by manual multiplication would have been an extremely tedious task.

LOGARITHMS

Table of Common Logarithms

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	000000	004321	008600	012837	017033	021189	025306	029384	033424	037426
11	041393	045323	049218	053078	056905	060698	064458	068186	071882	075547
12	079181	082785	086360	089905	093422	096910	100371	103804	107210	110590
13	113943	117271	120574	123852	127105	130334	133539	136721	139879	143015
14	146128	149219	152288	155336	158362	161368	164353	167317	170262	173186
15	176091	178977	181844	184691	187521	190332	193125	195900	198657	201397
16	204120	206826	209515	212188	214844	217484	220108	222716	225309	227887
17	230449	232996	235528	238046	240549	243038	245513	247973	250420	252853
18	255273	257679	260071	262451	264818	267172	269513	271842	274158	276462
19	278754	281033	283301	285557	287802	290035	292256	294466	296665	298853
20	301030	303196	305351	307496	309630	311754	313867	315970	318063	320146
21	322219	324282	326336	328380	330414	332438	334454	336460	338456	340444
22	342423	344392	346353	348305	350248	352183	354108	356026	357935	359835
23	361728	363612	365488	367356	369216	371068	372912	374748	376577	378398
24	380211	382017	383815	385606	387390	389166	390935	392697	394452	396199
25	397940	399674	401401	403121	404834	406540	408240	409933	411620	413300
26	414973	416641	418301	419956	421604	423246	424882	426511	428135	429752
27	431364	432969	434569	436163	437751	439333	440909	442480	444045	445604
28	447158	448706	450249	451786	453318	454845	456366	457882	459392	460898
29	462398	463893	465383	466868	468347	469822	471292	472756	474216	475671
30	477121	478566	480007	481443	482874	484300	485721	487138	488551	489958
31	491362	492760	494155	495544	496930	498311	499687	501059	502427	503791
32	505150	506505	507856	509203	510545	511883	513218	514548	515874	517196
33	518514	519828	521138	522444	523746	525045	526339	527630	528917	530200
34	531479	532754	534026	535294	536558	537819	539076	540329	541579	542825
35	544068	545307	546543	547775	549003	550228	551450	552668	553883	555094
36	556303	557507	558709	559907	561101	562293	563481	564666	565848	567026
37	568202	569374	570543	571709	572872	574031	575188	576341	577492	578639
38	579784	580925	582063	583199	584331	585461	586587	587711	588832	589950
39	591065	592177	593286	594393	595496	596597	597695	598791	599883	600973
40	602060	603144	604226	605305	606381	607455	608526	609594	610660	611723
41	612784	613842	614897	615950	617000	618048	619093	620136	621176	622214
42	623249	624282	625312	626340	627366	628389	629410	630428	631444	632457
43	633468	634477	635484	636488	637490	638489	639486	640481	641474	642465
44	643453	644439	645422	646404	647383	648360	649335	650308	651278	652246
45	653213	654177	655138	656098	657056	658011	658965	659916	660865	661813
46	662758	663701	664642	665581	666518	667453	668386	669317	670246	671173
47	672098	673021	673942	674861	675778	676694	677607	678518	679428	680336
48	681241	682145	683047	683947	684845	685742	686636	687529	688420	689309
49	690196	691081	691965	692847	693727	694605	695482	696356	697229	698101
50	698970	699838	700704	701568	702431	703291	704151	705008	705864	706718
51	707570	708421	709270	710117	710963	711807	712650	713491	714330	715167
52	716003	716838	717671	718502	719331	720159	720986	721811	722634	723456
53	724276	725095	725912	726727	727541	728354	729165	729974	730782	731589
54	732394	733197	733999	734800	735599	736397	737193	737987	738781	739572
55	740363	741152	741939	742725	743510	744293	745075	745855	746634	747412
56	748188	748963	749736	750508	751279	752048	752816	753583	754348	755112
57	755875	756636	757396	758155	758912	759668	760422	761176	761928	762679
58	763428	764176	764923	765669	766413	767156	767898	768638	769377	770115
59	770852	771587	772322	773055	773786	774517	775246	775974	776701	777427

(Table courtesy of *Machinery's Handbook*, 26th ed., edited by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J. McCauley, Industrial Press, 2000)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
60	778151	778874	779596	780317	781037	781755	782473	783189	783904	784617
61	785330	786041	786751	787460	788168	788875	789581	790285	790988	791691
62	792392	793092	793790	794488	795185	795880	796574	797268	797960	798651
63	799341	800029	800717	801404	802089	802774	803457	804139	804821	805501
64	806180	806858	807535	808211	808886	809560	810233	810904	811575	812245
65	812913	813581	814248	814913	815578	816241	816904	817565	818226	818885
66	819544	820201	820858	821514	822168	822822	823474	824126	824776	825426
67	826075	826723	827369	828015	828660	829304	829947	830589	831230	831870
68	832509	833147	833784	834421	835056	835691	836324	836957	837588	838219
69	838849	839478	840106	840733	841359	841985	842609	843233	843855	844477
70	845098	845718	846337	846955	847573	848189	848805	849419	850033	850646
71	851258	851870	852480	853090	853698	854306	854913	855519	856124	856729
72	857332	857935	858537	859138	859739	860338	860937	861534	862131	862728
73	863323	863917	864511	865104	865696	866287	866878	867467	868056	868644
74	869232	869818	870404	870989	871573	872156	872739	873321	873902	874482
75	875061	875640	876218	876795	877371	877947	878522	879096	879669	880242
76	880814	881385	881955	882525	883093	883661	884229	884795	885361	885926
77	886491	887054	887617	888179	888741	889302	889862	890421	890980	891537
78	892095	892651	893207	893762	894316	894870	895423	895975	896526	897077
79	897627	898176	898725	899273	899821	900367	900913	901458	902003	902547
80	903090	903633	904174	904716	905256	905796	906335	906874	907411	907949
81	908485	909021	909556	910091	910624	911158	911690	912222	912753	913284
82	913814	914343	914872	915400	915927	916454	916980	917506	918030	918555
83	919078	919601	920123	920645	921166	921686	922206	922725	923244	923762
84	924279	924796	925312	925828	926342	926857	927370	927883	928396	928908
85	929419	929930	930440	930949	931458	931966	932474	932981	933487	933993
86	934498	935003	935507	936011	936514	937016	937518	938019	938520	939020
87	939519	940018	940516	941014	941511	942008	942504	943000	943495	943989
88	944483	944976	945469	945961	946452	946943	947434	947924	948413	948902
89	949390	949878	950365	950851	951338	951823	952308	952792	953276	953760
90	954243	954725	955207	955688	956168	956649	957128	957607	958086	958564
91	959041	959518	959995	960471	960946	961421	961895	962369	962843	963316
92	963788	964260	964731	965202	965672	966142	966611	967080	967548	968016
93	968483	968950	969416	969882	970347	970812	971276	971740	972203	972666
94	973128	973590	974051	974512	974972	975432	975891	976350	976808	977266
95	977724	978181	978637	979093	979548	980003	980458	980912	981366	981819
96	982271	982723	983175	983626	984077	984527	984977	985426	985875	986324
97	986772	987219	987666	988113	988559	989005	989450	989895	990339	990783
98	991226	991669	992111	992554	992995	993436	993877	994317	994757	995196
99	995635	996074	996512	996949	997386	997823	998259	998695	999131	999565
100	000000	000434	000868	001301	001734	002166	002598	003029	003461	003891
101	004321	004751	005181	005609	006038	006466	006894	007321	007748	008174
102	008600	009026	009451	009876	010300	010724	011147	011570	011993	012415
103	012837	013259	013680	014100	014521	014940	015360	015779	016197	016616
104	017033	017451	017868	018284	018700	019116	019532	019947	020361	020775
105	021189	021603	022016	022428	022841	023252	023664	024075	024486	024896
106	025306	025715	026125	026533	026942	027350	027757	028164	028571	028978
107	029384	029789	030195	030600	031004	031408	031812	032216	032619	033021
108	033424	033826	034227	034628	035029	035430	035830	036230	036629	037028
109	037426	037825	038223	038620	039017	039414	039811	040207	040602	040998

CONVERSIONS

The following table provides handy English-metric and English-English conversion factors.

MULTIPLY	BY	TO OBTAIN
Atmospheres	76.0	cms mercury
(physics)		
atm	1.013	bar
atm	29.92	ins mercury
atm	33.90	ft water
atm	1.0333	kgs/sq cm
atm	14.70	lbs/sq in
atm	1.058	tons/sq ft
Atmosphere		
(technical)	1	kg/sq. cm.
at	0.9681	atm
at	0.9807	bar
at	14.233	psi
Bar	10^5	newtons/sq m
bar	.9869	atm (physics)
bar	1.0197	at (tech.)
bar	14.504	psi
Barrels-Oil	42	gals-oil
BT Units	0.2520	kg-calories
BTU s	777.9	ft-lbs
BTU s	3.927×10^{-4}	hp-hrs
BTU s	107.5	kgs-meters
BTU s	2.928×10^{-4}	kw-hrs
BTU/Min	12.96	ft-lbs/sec
BTU/min	0.02356	hp
BTU/min	0.01757	kw
BTU/min	17.57	watts
Centimeters	0.3937	inches
cm	0.01	meters
cm	10	mm
Cms Mercury	0.01316	atm
cms mercury	0.4461	ft water
cms mercury	136.0	kgs/sq meter
cms mercury	27.85	lbs/sq ft
cms mercury	0.1934	lbs/sq in
Cms/Second	1.969	ft/min
cms/sec	0.03281	ft/sec
cms/sec	0.036	km/hr
cms/sec	0.6	meters/min
cms/sec	0.02237	miles/hr
cms/sec	3.728×10^{-4}	miles/min
Cms/Sec/Sec	0.03281	ft/sec/sec
Cubic Cms	3.531×10^{-5}	cu ft
cu cms	6.102×10^{-2}	cu in
cu cms	10^{-6}	cu meters
cu cms	1.308×10^{-6}	cu yds
cu cms	2.642×10^{-4}	gals
cu cms	10^{-3}	liters
cu cms	2.113×10^{-3}	pints (liq)
cu cms	1.057×10^{-3}	quarts (liq)
Cubic Feet	2.832×10^{4}	cubic cms
cu ft	1728	cu inches
cu ft	0.02832	cu meters
cu ft	0.03704	cu yds
cu ft	7.48052	gals
cu ft	28.32	liters
cu ft	59.84	pints (liq)
cu ft	29.92	quarts (liq)
Cu Ft/min	472.0	cu cms/sec
cu ft/min	0.1247	gals/sec
cu ft/min	0.4720	liters/sec
cu ft/min	62.43	lbs w/min
cu ft/sec	448.831	gals/min
Cu Inches	16.39	cc
cu ins	5.787×10^{-4}	cu ft
cu ins	1.639×10^{-5}	cu meters
cu ins	2.143×10^{-5}	cu yds
cu ins	4.329×10^{-3}	gals
cu ins	1.639×10^{-2}	liters
cu ins	0.03463	pints (liq)
cu ins	0.01732	quarts (liq)
Cu Meters	10^6	cc
cu M	35.31	cu ft
cu M	61,023	cu ins
cu M	1.308	cu yds
cu M	264.2	gals
cu M	10^3	liters
cu M	2113	pints (liq)
cu M	1057	quarts (liq)
Cu Yards	7.646×10^5	cu cms
cu yds	27	cu ft
cu yds	46,656	cu ins
cu yds	0.7646	cu meters
cu yds	202.0	gals
Decimeters	0.1	meters
Degs (Angle)	60	minutes
degs (angle)	0.01745	radians
degs (angle)	3600	secs
Degrees/Sec	0.01745	radians/sec
degs/sec	0.1667	revs/min
degs/sec	0.002778	revs/sec

MULTIPLY	BY	TO OBTAIN
Feet	30.48	cms
ft	12	ins
ft	0.3048	meters
ft	1/3	yds
Ft of Water	0.02950	atms
ft of w	0.8826	ins mercury
ft of w	0.03048	kgs/sq cm
ft of w	62.32	lbs/sq ft
ft of w	0.4328	lbs/sq in
Feet/Min	0.5080	cms/sec
ft/min	0.01667	ft/sec
ft/min	0.01829	kms/hr
ft/min	0.3048	m/min
ft/min	0.01136	miles/hr
Ft/Sec/Sec	30.48	cms/sec/sec
ft/sec/sec	0.3048	Ms/sec/sec
Ft.Pounds	1.286×10^{-3}	BTUs
ft lbs	5.050×10^{-7}	hp-hrs
ft lbs	3.241×10^{-4}	kg-calories
ft lbs	0.1383	kgm
ft lbs	3.766×10^{-7}	kw-hrs
Ft-lbs/Min	1.286×10^{-3}	BTUs/min
ft-lbs/min	0.01667	ft-lbs/sec
ft-lbs/min	3.030×10^{-5}	hp
ft-lbs/min	3.241×10^{-4}	kg-calories/min
ft-lbs/min	2.260×10^{-5}	kws
Ft-Lbs/Sec	7.717×10^{-2}	BTUs/min
ft-lbs/sec	1.818×10^{-3}	hp
ft-lbs/sec	1.945×10^{-2}	kg-calories/min
ft-lbs/sec	1.356×10^{-3}	kws
Gallons	3785	ccs
gals	0.1337	cu ft
gals	231	cu ins
gals	3.785×10^{-3}	cu meters
gals	3.785	liters
gals	8	pints (liq)
gals	4	quarts(liq)
Gallons,Imp	1.20095	US gals
gallons, US	0.83267	imp gals
Gals Water	8.3304	lbs water
Gallons/Min	2.228×10^{-3}	cu ft/sec
gals/min	0.06308	liters/sec
gals/min	8.0208	cu ft/hr
Horse-Power	42.44	BTUs/min
hp	33,000	ft-lbs/min
hp	550	ft-lbs/sec
hp	1.014	hp (metric)
hp	10.70	kg-calories/min
hp	0.7457	kws
hp	745.7	watts
Hp-Hours	2547	BTUs
hp- hrs	1.98×10^6	ft-lbs
hp- hrs	641.7	kg-calories
hp- hrs	2.737×10^5	kg-meters
hp- hrs	0.7457	kw-hrs
Inches	2.540	cms
Ins Mercury	0.03342	atms
ins mercury	1.133	ft water
ins mercury	0.03453	kgs/sq cm
ins mercury	70.73	lbs/sq ft
ins mercury	0.4912	lbs/sq in
Ins of Water	0.002458	atms
ins of w	0.07355	ins mercury
ins of w	0.002540	kgs/sq cm
ins of w	5.202	lbs/sq ft
ins of w	0.03613	lbs/sq in
Kilopond	980,665	dynes
kgs	2.205	lbs
kgs	1.102×10^{-3}	tons (short)
kgs	10^3	ponds
Kgs/Sq Cm	0.9678	atms
kgs/sq cm	32.81	ft water
kgs/sq cm	28.96	ins mercury
kgs/sq cm	2048	lbs/sq ft
kgs/sq cm	14.22	lbs/sq in
Kilometers	10^5	cms
kms	3281	ft
kms	10^3	meters
kms	0.6214	miles
Kms/Hr	27.78	cms/sec
kms/hr	54.68	ft/min
kms/hr	0.9113	ft/sec
kms/hr	16.67	meters/min
kms/hr	0.6214	miles/hr
Kms/Hr/Sec	27.78	cms/sec/sec
kms/hr/sec	0.9113	ft/sec/sec
kms/hr/sec	0.2778	Ms/sec/sec

MULTIPLY	BY	TO OBTAIN
Kilowatts	56.92	BTUs/min
kws	4.425×10^4	ft-lbs/min
kws	737.6	ft-lbs/sec
kws	1.341	hp
kws	14.34	kg-calories/min
kws	10^3	watts
Kilowatt-Hrs	3415	BTUs
kw-hrs	2.655×10^6	ft-lbs
kw-hrs	1.341	hp- hours
kw-hrs	860.5	kg-calories
kw-hrs	3.671×10^5	kg-meters
Liters	10^3	ccs
liters	0.03531	cu ft
liters	61.02	cu ins
liters	10^{-2}	cu meters
liters	0.2642	gals
liters	1.057	quarts(liq)
Liters/Min	4.403×10^{-3}	gals/sec
Meters	100	cms
meters	3.281	ft
meters	39.37	ins
meters	10^{-3}	kms
meters	10^3	mms
meters/min	1.667	cms/sec
meters/min	3.281	ft/min
meters/min	0.05468	ft/sec
meters/min	0.06	kms/hr
meters/min	0.03728	miles/hr
Meters/Sec	196.8	ft/min
meters/sec	3.281	ft/sec
meters/sec	3.6	kms/hr
meters/sec	0.06	kms/min
meters/sec	2.237	miles/hr
meters/sec	0.03728	miles/min
Microns	10^{-6}	meters
microns	39×10^{-6}	in
Miles/Hr	44.70	cms/sec
miles/hr	88	ft/min
miles/hr	1.467	ft/sec
miles/hr	1.609	kms/hr
miles/hr	26.82	meters/min
Millimeters	0.1	cms
mms	0.03937	ins
Mins (Angle)	2.909×10^{-4}	radians
Newton	0.1020	kgs
Ounces	0.0625	lbs
ozs	28.349527	pond
Ozs (Fluid)	1.805	cu in
ozs (fluid)	0.02957	liters
Ponds	980.7	dynes
ponds	10^{-3}	kgs
ponds	10^3	milliponds
ponds	0.03527	ozs
ponds	2.205×10^{-3}	lbs
Ponds/Cm	5.600×10^{-3}	lbs/in
Ponds/Cu Cm	62.43	lbs/cu ft
ponds/cu cm	0.03613	lbs/cu in
Ponds/Liter	58.417	grains/gal
ponds/liter	8.345	lbs/1000 gals
ponds/liter	0.062427	lbs/cu ft
ponds/liter	1000	parts/million
Pounds	16	ozs
lbs	0.0005	tons (short)
lbs	4.44	newtons (N)
lbs	453.5924	ponds
Lbs of Water	0.01605	cu ft
lbs of water	27.73	cu in
lbs of water	0.1204	gals
Lbs of w/Min	2.679×10^{-4}	cu ft/sec
Pounds/Cu Ft	5.787×10^{-4}	lbs/cu in
Pounds/Cu In	1728	lbs/cu ft
Pounds/Sq In	0.06804	atms
lbs/sq in	2.311	ft water
lbs/sq in	2.036	in mercury
lbs/sq in	0.07031	kgs/sq cm
Radians	57.29578	degrees
Tons (Long)	1016	kgs
tons (long)	2240	lbs
tons (long)	1.12000	tons (short)
Tons (Short)	2000	lbs
tons (short)	907.18486	kgs
tons (short)	0.89287	tons (long)
tons (short)	0.90718	tons (metric)
Watts	0.05692	BTUs/min
watts	44.26	ft-lbs/min
watts	0.7376	ft-lbs/sec
watts	1.341×10^{-3}	hp
watts	0.01434	kg-calories/
watts	10^{-3}	kws
Watt-Hours	3.415	BTUs
watt-hrs	2655	ft-lbs
watt-hrs	1.341×10^{-3}	hp-hrs
watt-hrs	0.8605	kg-calories
watt-hrs	367.1	kg-meters
watt-hrs	10^{-3}	kw-hrs

(Table courtesy of *Mechanical Engineering Reference Manual for the PE Exam*, by Michael R. Lindeburg, P.E., Professional Publications, 1998)

REFERENCES

Engineering

***ark's Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers,* 11th edition, Eugene A. Avalone and Theodore Baumeister III (editors).** 2006, 1,800 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0071428675. Published by McGraw-Hill Companies, 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $199.95

> Broad in its coverage, yet concise in its treatment of each topic, the handbook is a virtual encyclopedia—covering all aspects of the multifaceted field of mechanical engineering and related disciplines. . . . With more useful information than any other single source, this is the most practical and reliable handbook on mechanical engineering ever published. —*Canadian Metalworking and Machinery*

This is a great reference to have for your personal technology library. It contains a huge amount of practical information about materials, machines, processes, and engineering principles. From basic math to calculus, patent law to economic analysis, strength of steel beams to wooden trusses, pouring concrete to piping water, burning coal to solar energy, you can find it in *Mark's Handbook*. Mechanical engineering is the mother of most engineering disciplines, and the mechanical engineer often ties together widely varying technologies to make things work. *Mark's Handbook* includes a 91-page chapter on electrical engineering and basic electronics, because mechanical engineers often need to understand electronics well enough to design simple circuits or to properly interface with electrical engineers.

***E Review Manual: Rapid Preparation for the General Fundamentals of Engineering Exam,* by Michael R. Lindeburg, P.E.** 2006, 872 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1591260721. Published by Professional Publications, Inc., 1250 Fifth St., Belmont, CA 94002-3863. List price $86.00

Most people buy this book to help them study for the Fundamentals of Engineering exam (FE, used to be called EIT), which is a prerequisite for taking any of the professional engineering exams required for certification as a professional engineer. I recommend it as an excellent study guide and source for practical engineering information covering a broad range of fields, including mathematics, electronics, computers, controls, heat transfer, thermodynamics, fluids, mechanics, statics, dynamics, materials science, chemistry, physics, and engineering economics. Unlike most engineering handbooks, Lindeburg's study guides include solved examples of common engineering problems, so that you can figure out similar problems even if you have been out of school for years or don't have an engineering degree (it does require an aptitude for this sort of thing). This book contains only practical material that covers real-world engineering (no advanced theory or deriving of equations).

***echanical Engineering Reference Manual for the PE Exam,* 12th edition, by Michael R. Lindeburg, P.E.** 2006, 1288 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1591260493. Published by Professional Publications, Inc., 1250 Fifth St., Belmont, CA 94002-3863. List price $210.00

This is one of the most valuable reference texts I own. It has most of the charts and equations that I need to solve the real-world engineering problems that I regularly come across in my design practice. Most people buy this book to help them study for the Professional Engineering exam (PE) in mechanical engineering, and then continue to refer to it on a regular basis because it is such a wonderful practical reference. Because I have been out of school for over 30 years and I'm not an analysis guru, the examples and solved problems help me to solve similar real-world problems, and they would be invaluable to a nonengineer trying to apply the information in the manual.

***ark's Formulas for Stress and Strain,* by Warren C. Young and Richard G. Budynas.** 2001, 832 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0070725423. Published by McGraw-Hill Companies, 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $94.00

Want to know whether your steam boiler can take the pressure? How about whether that steel I-beam can support a 30-foot bridge across the river? With this stress/strain "cookbook," engineers and even lay designers can perform accurate stress (strength) analysis of fairly sophisticated designs without resorting to complex numerical methods or computer-aided finite element analysis. Just scan the simple diagrams to find the case closest to yours, and then plug the numbers into the equations. No calculus required, just high school algebra. I now use a computer program to perform much more accurate stress analysis than I could ever get using handbook equations, but if the computers fail some day, I suppose that I will once again rely on this handbook as I did for the first 20 years of my engineering career.

***vil Engineering Reference Manual for the PE Exam*, 10th edition, by Michael Lindeburg, P.E.** 2005, 1,424 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1591260431. Published by Professional Publications, Inc., 1250 Fifth St., Belmont, CA 94002-3863. List price $224.00

Civil engineering is based on most of the same disciplines as mechanical engineering, but applied on a larger scale, like for buildings, roads, bridges, and dams. Most people buy this book to help them study for the Professional Engineering exam (PE) in civil engineering and then continue to refer to it on a regular basis because it is such a wonderful practical reference.

***ındard Handbook for Civil Engineers*, 5th edition, Jonathan T. Ricketts, M. Kent Loftin, and Frederick S. Merritt (editors).** 2006, 1,600 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0071364737. Published by McGraw-Hill Companies, 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $157.50

A giant one-stop review of the field of civil engineering, this book gives you access to everything from the fundamentals of civil engineering to the most recent planning, design, and construction techniques related to 23 different disciplines—including systems design; geotechnical engineering; structural design with steel, wood, and concrete; and community and regional planning. Definitely not the best text for advanced structural analysis and seismic design, but a good overall reference guide.

***ectrical Engineering Reference Manual for the Electrical and Computer PE Exam*, 7th edition, by John A. Camara.** 2006, 748 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-1591260967. Published by Professional Publications, Inc., 1250 Fifth St., Belmont, CA 94002-3863. List price $210.00

Like the mechanical equivalents, this is a good reference for practical electrical engineering and design. It won't help you to design the latest microprocessor chip, but it will give you guidance for power systems, motors, circuit design, logic circuits, amplifying circuits, and so on.

Machinery

***achinery's Handbook*, 27th edition, by Erik Oberg, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, and Henry H. Ryffel.** 2004, 2,704 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0831127008. Published by Industrial Press, Inc., 989 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10018. List price $89.95

I have yet to see a highly skilled professional machinist who did not have a copy of this book on his or her workbench. Most design engineers also have a copy. This is not an instruction manual on how to machine metal, but it contains crucial information on millions of details that

are important to drafting technicians, engineers, designers, and machinists. Want to cut a spur gear, calculate the strength of a steel I-beam, or figure out the size and thread system for a broken screw on some piece of obscure machinery (or machine a new one)? This book will provide the details, dimensions, and other specifications that you need to make proper hardware and components.

***ectric Motor Repair,* 3rd edition, by Robert Rosenberg and August Hand.** 1986, 896 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0030595844. Published by Delmar Publishers, 10650 Toebben Dr., Independence, KY 41051. List price $190.95

This is a terrific practical handbook on electric motor repair and control. It is a complete hands-on approach to the repair and control of AC and DC motors, written by a long-term vocational instructor of electric motor repair. If you ever needed to scavenge together the parts and wire to rewind an armature or otherwise repair an alternator or motor, this is the book you would want to have on hand. It is arranged in a double spiral-bound layout, with the illustrations in a volume on one side and the text on the opposite side. The unique binding ties both volumes together, yet they can be opened and laid flat on a workbench for easy simultaneous viewing of both the text and illustration volumes. You don't have to flip pages with greasy hands while in the middle of a repair. This latest edition features a chapter on solid state and microprocessor controls.

***genious Mechanisms for Designers and Inventors*, Franklin D. Jones, John A. Newell, and Holbrook L. Horton (editors).** 1977, 2,103 pp., ISBN 978-0831110840. Published by Industrial Press, Inc., 200 Madison Ave., New York, NY 10016. List price $125.00

Prior to the current electronics age, in which microprocessors and servomechanisms have taken over most aspects of motion control, ingenious mechanisms were developed to control a wide variety of machine motions and special functions. Much of this knowledge has disappeared from current engineers' and machinists' curriculums due to replacement by electronic controls. These texts record the functional details of ingenious mechanisms from the past few centuries. Volume I was first published in 1930, Volume II in 1936, Volume III in 1951, and Volume IV in 1977. Among the mechanisms described and illustrated by working diagrams are cam applications and special cam designs, intermittent motions from gears and cams, interlocking devices, valve diagrams, reversing mechanisms of special design, tripping or stop mechanisms, drives of crank type for reciprocating driven members, feeding mechanisms and auxiliary devices, feeding and ejecting mechanisms, and many, many more.

***ndard Handbook of Machine Design,* 3rd edition, Joseph E. Shigley, Charles R. Mischke, and Thomas Brown Jr (editors).** 2004, 1,200 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0071441643. Published by McGraw-Hill Companies, 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020. List price $131.00

A fine book for the serious designer of machinery. The *Standard Handbook of Machine Design* offers quick, reliable solutions to just about any machine design problem you'll ever face —whether it involves problems with wear, strength, usability, or safety.

***Diderot Pictorial Encyclopedia of Trades and Industry: Manufacturing and the Technical Arts in Plates Selected from "L'Encyclopedie, ou Dictionnaire Raisonne des Sciences, des Arts et des Metiers," Volume One,* by Denis Diderot.** 1993, 239 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-

0486274287. Published by Dover Publications, Inc., 31 E. Second St., Mineola, NY 11501. List price $29.95

First printed in 1751, the plates contained in this historical encyclopedia offer a unique look at machines and technologies just prior to the Industrial Revolution. Volume I covers agriculture, articles of war, iron foundry and forge, mining, and metalworking. Volume II covers glassworks, printing, masonry, goldsmithing/ jewelry, leatherworks, carpentry, and more. Both are fine books for techno-history buffs. Want to make an authentic nineteenth-century windmill to grind grain? The *Encyclopedia* will show you how.

dustrial Press, 989 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10018; phone: (212) 889-6330; fax: (212) 545-8327; Web site: www.industrialpress.com.

Industrial Press publishes the well-known *Machinery's Handbook* plus about a hundred other technical books about machines, manufacturing, engineering, and technology.

RESOURCES

Appearing below are a few catalogs (among hundreds) that are particularly useful and carry a broad range of items.

. W. Grainger, Inc., 100 Grainger Parkway, Lake Forest, IL 60045-5201; phone: (888) 361-8649; fax: (847) 535-9221; Web site: www.grainger.com.

Grainger is an industrial supply company offering a huge selection of industrial hardware, supplies, and tools. I would be willing to bet that at least nine out of ten industrial maintenance specialists in the United States have a Grainger catalog in their bookcases. Grainger has a couple hundred branches, so I suggest you call or use their Web site to locate the nearest branch. I use Grainger to supply many of the off-the-shelf components for the custom machinery that I design. Their catalog is encyclopedia-sized. Grainger is great for things like motors, compressors, blowers, tanks, wheels, fittings, fasteners, bearings, regulators, and so on.

cMaster-Carr Supply Company, P.O. Box 5370, Princeton, NJ 08543; phone: (609) 689-3000; fax: (609) 259-8900; Web site: www.mcmaster.com.

Similar to Grainger, McMaster-Carr is an industrial supply company that seems to stock nearly everything under the sun. A sampling of the items they stock includes pumps, compressors, plumbing items, fasteners, machine tools, motors, controllers, hand tools, conveyors, instrumentation, and HVAC. Over 465,000 items are packed into their online catalog, and they claim that 98 percent of these are in stock. Available from five locations spread across the country.

ock Drive Products/Sterling Instrument, P.O. Box 5416, New Hyde Park, NY 11042-5416; phone: (516) 328-3300; fax: (516) 326-8827; Web site: www.sdp-si.com.

A great source for small quantities of precision parts for the inventor, engineer, or home shop. This company stocks a huge quantity of hardware, bearings, small motors, and various drive components.

even Engineering, 230 Ryan Way, South San Francisco, CA 94080-6730; phone: (800) 670-

4183; fax: (888) 258-9200; Web site: www.stevenengineering.com.

Steven Engineering is a huge supplier of industrial controls, switches, controllers, enclosures, and so on—anything related to wiring and electronic control of machines and industrial processes. Like most companies that used to offer giant catalogs, they have switched over to mostly online catalogs.

lmund Scientific, 60 Pearce Ave., Tonawanda, NJ 14150; phone: (800) 728-6999; fax: (856) 547-3292; Web site: www.edsci.com.

A fine source for optics, microscopes, telescopes, and lab supplies. Want to cook up some of the recipes in *Henley's Formulas* or *Wagner's Chemical Technology*? Edmund's could supply some of the necessary equipment.

16

Making the Shift to Sustainability

> In the course of history, there comes a time when humanity is called to shift to a new level of consciousness, to reach a higher moral ground. A time when we have to shed our fear and give hope to each other. That time is now.
>
> **—Wangari Muta Maathai, Ph.D., winner of the 2004 Nobel Peace Prize**

Things which matter most must never be at the mercy of things which matter least.

—Johann Wolfgang Goethe

If we are to avoid global collapse, it will require more of the "will to do it" than the knowledge of "how to do it." Before starting a large complicated project, there isn't a builder, writer, or Hollywood producer who knows exactly how they are going to accomplish the myriad of tasks required to make their project a success. They do not know all the details about "how" they will arrive at the finish, but they have the guts, drive, determination, and confidence that they can and will make it to that finish. This kind of determination and drive are what we collectively need to make it to our "finish line"—the goal of a sustainable world and a bright future for our children!

When a builder starts a building, he or she always starts with a plan. This plan is a working picture, including a general plan plus numerous specific details, first formulated as a vision within the designer's head, and then later transformed through many hours of hard work into a "blueprint." Typically, this plan is modified considerably in the early planning stages, and a bit more here and there during the building process itself, because no matter how carefully you plan ahead, something always comes up that causes you to change your mind and modify your plans before you reach the finish.

Right now, today, we have the knowledge of how to create a sustainable future, but we lack the will. Lester Brown's *Plan B 3.0: Mobilizing to Save Civilization* and Amory Lovins et al.'s *Winning the Oil Endgame*, among others, provide excellent road maps for building a sustainable future. *Cradle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things*, written by eco-architect William McDonough and the chemist Michael Braungart, provides a clear vision for transforming the way we make our products and buildings so they can actually give back to the diversity and health of the planet rather than "take away" from nature, as has been the case since the Industrial Revolution began. Add to this David Holmgren's *Permaculture: Principles and Pathways Beyond Sustainability,* which provides a philosophical vision and roadmap for restructuring the way we do business and for designing our buildings, communities, and cities to nurture a viable global culture that can continue ad infinitum while avoiding the wholesale crash-and-burn that

will be the unavoidable consequence of continued business as usual. What we lack is the dedication on the part of the world's governments to make this happen. It is especially disturbing that the United States, which should be leading by example, has instead delayed or actively worked against any and all global legislation designed to curtail greenhouse gases and make meaningful changes in the way the world conducts its business.

A POOR TRACK RECORD

> No matter how dark things seem to be or actually are, raise your sights and see the possibilities. Always see them, for they're always there. **—Norman Vincent Peale**

The track record for proactive actions on the part of many leaders over the past few decades is rather dismal. Since the 1960s, the U.S. Army Corp of Engineers has been telling government officials that the levies around New Orleans were a catastrophe waiting to happen. These same engineers laid out detailed plans for fixing the levies, but various officials over the years have always decided to spend the money on something else. Similarly, when President George W. Bush's administration was evaluating the situation in Iraq before the American invasion, career officers in the upper echelons of the U.S. military presented what they believed was a proper budget and plan to adequately secure and rebuild Iraq after winning the war. They stressed that it was absolutely critical that the initial period of occupation be managed properly, or else we risked a high probability that the situation in Iraq would degrade into chaos, resulting in great tragedy that would include immense suffering and loss of life. Former Secretary of Defense Donald Rumsfeld said that he was a military man himself and felt he knew better than these "pessimists," and slashed their budgets in half. Both the U.S. soldiers and the Iraqi people have suffered tremendously as a result of this "optimism."

Jimmy Carter, a peanut farmer and the governor of Georgia before becoming president, was also trained as an engineer and had been the commander of a nuclear submarine when he was in the Navy, working directly under Admiral Rickover. A four-star admiral with a record-breaking 63 years of continuous military service, Rickover praised Carter as the best and brightest of all the men who had worked under his command. With his engineering and scientific background, Carter is one of the few U.S. leaders to clearly understand the concepts of depletion and limits to growth. During the OPEC oil embargo of the early 1970s, followed by the Iranian revolution and the ensuing Iraq-Iran War that sparked a second oil crisis in the late 1970s, Carter got to see firsthand the serious disruption wrought on the American economy by rapid oil price inflation. He saw the danger of America's growing reliance on foreign oil, and knew that it would take long-range planning, dedication, many years of time, and significant resources to develop and implement the alternative fuels, technologies, and conservation methods necessary for building an economy that could withstand the shocks of the coming peak in world oil production. He spoke candidly to the American people about this very real threat to America's future prosperity, and implemented visionary programs to promote the development of sustainable non-oil alternatives combined with energy conservation practices.

For his practical realism and honesty, Carter was labeled a pessimist, and the American people chose to replace this visionary leader with a more charismatic one who told us what we wanted

to hear rather than the facts. Reagan's optimistic "supply side trickle-down theory," combined with the faith that the "free market" would conquer all the world's ills and that this Earth would endlessly provide a limitless supply of all the natural resources that man would ever need, was far more palatable to the American people than Carter's practical scientific reasoning. Non-OPEC production ramped up as new sources of oil in far-off places were rapidly developed (most of these new sources, such as the UK's North Sea oil field, the Alaskan North Slope, and the Indonesian oil fields are already in serious decline), oil prices dropped in the 1980s, and almost everyone gleefully forgot about Carter's practical vision as the world burned its fossil fuel legacy at record speed, while wasting precious time and resources that would have been better spent helping to develop the infrastructure for a sustainable global economy.

South Africa presents another example of poor planning and lack of visionary leadership. In 1998, a government report warned that the nation would face serious electrical power shortages by 2007 unless generating capacity was increased to match the economy's growth rate. Their current administration, led by President Thabo Mbeki, who assumed office in June of 1999, was not able to induce private investors to build additional power plants. South Africa accounts for a third of sub-Saharan Africa's economic output and has been an economic shining star in a continent plagued by political unrest, famine, and extreme poverty. In fact, several neighboring countries rely on energy exports from South Africa to keep their own business economies running. As predicted, energy demand has outstripped supply, and the winter of 2008 found South Africa plagued with crippling rolling blackouts that caused the coal and diamond mines to shut down, food to rot in freezers, and so on, resulting in great financial hardship and economic ruin for many businesses. The air conditioners and lights often went out for 5 hours or more during the middle of the workday inside shopping malls, businesses, and industrial centers across the country. It takes several years for new power generation facilities to be planned and built, and an economy and state that are floundering pose high risks, making it hard to entice private investors to put up the many of millions of dollars it takes to build each new power plant. The situations in both New Orleans and South Africa make it quite clear that it is much harder and more expensive to fix a problem once a system falls into chaos than it would have been to prevent failure in the first place.

The U.S. government's spending priorities in the various energy fields provide further examples of our failure to act proactively. During 2007–2008, the U.S. government spent roughly $3 billion a week in the Persian Gulf (where we get about 6 percent of all our energy). This weekly expenditure was roughly equal to the entire annual budget for *all* energy development pertaining to energy independence.

From 1973 (the year of the first oil crisis coinciding with the Arab oil embargo unleashed upon America as punishment for our support of the state of Israel) until 2006, the United States spent roughly $90 billion on energy research and development designed to improve our energy independence, but spent approximately 40 times this amount ($3,460 billion) on two gulf wars, military protection for the Persian Gulf, and fuel pump "shock costs"—surcharges due to fuel price bumps incurred during each of the Persian Gulf crises (see Figure 16-1).

After the Arab oil embargo of 1973, President Nixon launched "Project Independence" with a goal of making America independent of foreign energy sources by 1980. In his January 1974 State of the Union Address, Nixon said, "Let this be our national goal . . . the United States will not be dependent on any other country for the energy we need to provide our jobs, to heat our

homes, and to keep our transportation moving." President Carter carried this legacy forward, but unfortunately subsequent administrations dropped the ball, and we are suffering from their short-sightedness today.

This shows you where our government's priorities lie. Fighting oil wars and using up our world's remaining fossil and nuclear fuels as fast as possible in order to maintain business as usual is hardly a long-term recipe for success and sustainability. This policy simply promotes hitting the proverbial wall faster, sooner, and more catastrophically than if we took measures to develop viable alternatives, slow consumption, and promote conservation to buy us the time we need to build a sustainable infrastructure. The question is: Do we collectively wake up and rise to this challenge, or do we optimistically pretend that our scientists and engineers will fix our world while our governments dedicate their priorities and resources elsewhere?

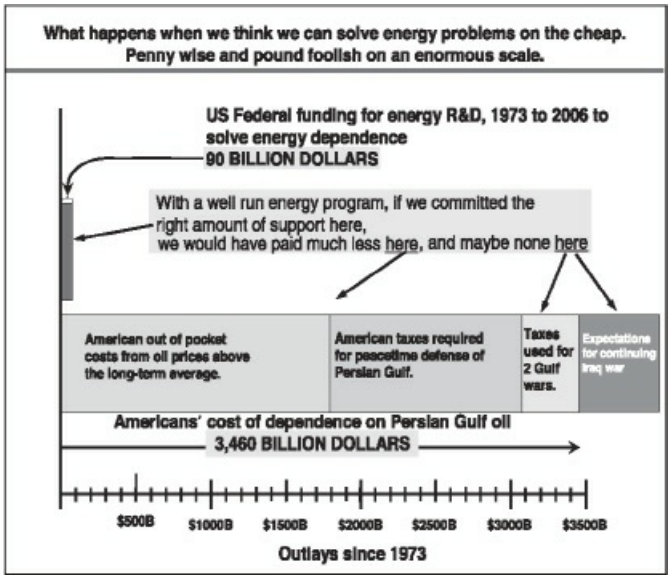

What happens when we think we can solve energy problems on the cheap.
Penny wise and pound foolish on an enormous scale.
US Federal funding for energy R&D, 1973 to 2006 to solve energy dependence
90 BILLION DOLLARS
With a well run energy program, if we committed the right amount of support here,
we would have paid much less here, and maybe none here
American out of pocket costs from oil prices above the long-term average.
American taxes required for peacetime defense of Persian Gulf.
Taxes used for 2 Gulf wars.
Expectations for continuing Iraq war
Americans' cost of dependence on Persian Gulf oil
3,460 BILLION DOLLARS
$500B
$1000B
$1500B
$2000B
$2500B
$3000B
$3500B
Outlays since 1973

Figure 16-1. Energy R & D expenses versus cost of American dependence on Persian Gulf oil. (Illustration courtesy of Glenn Rambach, 2006)

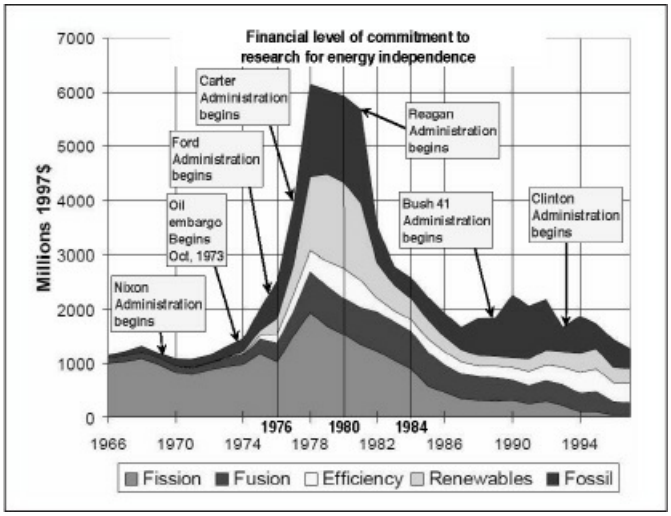


Figure 16-2. U.S. Government financial commitment to research for energy independence.

PROACTIVE SUCCESS STORIES

Germany's FIT (Feed-In Tariffs) policy has been the single most important policy to drive economies of scale in Germany's solar industry. Between 2000 (when FITs started) and 2006, renewable energy increased from 6.3 to 12 percent of Germany's total energy consumption, according to the nation's Federal Ministry for the Environment, Nature Conservation and Nuclear Safety (BMU). The country expects that the share of electricity generated by renewables will reach 27 percent in 2020 and 45 percent in 2030. **—Jigar Shah, Chief Strategy Officer for SunEdison**

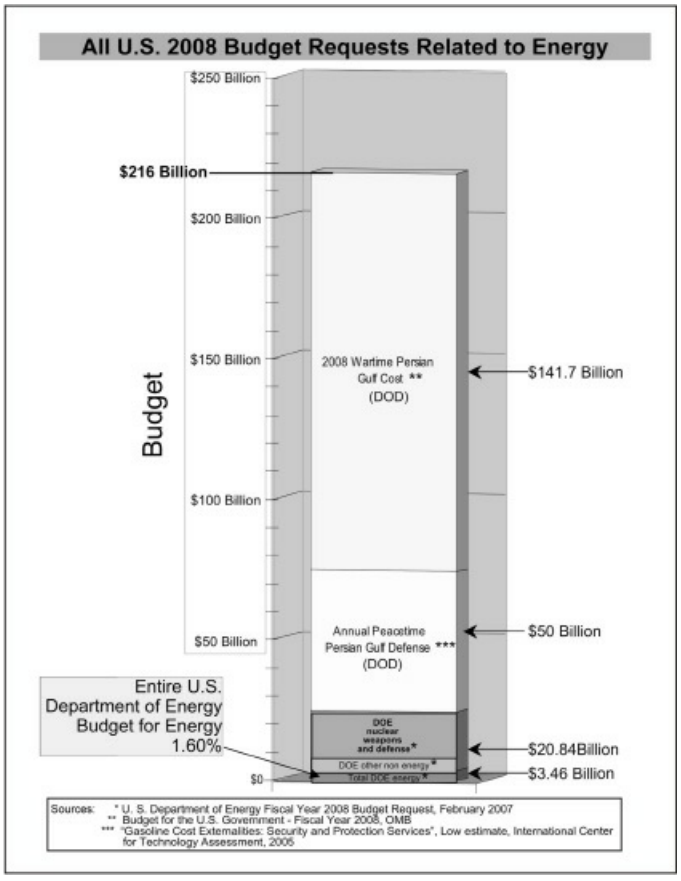

All U.S. 2008 Budget Requests Related to Energy
$250 Billion
$216 Billion
$200 Billion
$150 Billion
$100 Billion
$50 Billion
$0
Budget
2008 Wartime Persian Gulf Cost **
(DOD)
$141.7 Billion
Annual Peacetime Persian Gulf Defense ***
(DOD)
$50 Billion
Entire U.S. Department of Energy Budget for Energy 1.60%
DOE nuclear weapons and defense*
$20.84Billion
DOE other non energy*
Total DOE energy*
$3.46 Billion
Sources: * U. S. Department of Energy Fiscal Year 2008 Budget Request, February 2007
** Budget for the U.S. Government - Fiscal Year 2008, OMB
*** "Gasoline Cost Externalities: Security and Protection Services", Low estimate, International Center for Technology Assessment, 2005

Figure 16-3. 2008 U.S. annual budget requests related to energy. (Illustration courtesy of Glenn Rambach, 2006)

On a more positive note, there are examples of cases where leaders have made proactive choices to the benefit of their peoples, and some of their more recent actions are contributing to the development of technologies and business models that could form the foundation of a sustainable future. Sometimes it takes a catastrophe to wake people up to the need for positive action.

Such was the case when the Netherlands was devastated by "The Misery of 1953," as the

worst flood in Dutch history is often called. On the evening of January 31, 1953, a monster North Sea storm, packing hurricane-force winds, struck the Netherlands (Holland), Belgium, and the United Kingdom. The storm surge was highest on the coast of the Netherlands, where a surge of 12 to 15 feet above normal flowed up estuaries on the North Sea and breeched their famous system of dikes, flooding most of two provinces in the southwest Netherlands. Since much of the Netherlands, like New Orleans, is below sea level, many people and livestock were caught by surprise in total darkness when the dikes were breached during the middle of the night. As a result, 1,835 people drowned, approximately 72,000 people were evacuated, roughly 200,000 cows, horses, and pigs died in the floodwaters, and 1,250 square miles (about 8 percent of the total land mass of the Netherlands) was flooded (SEMP 2006). Following this catastrophe, Dutch leaders promised their people that they would do their best to prevent a tragedy like this from ever happening again. A plan was concocted for building a mammoth system of new dikes combined with floodgate causeways to bridge the mouths of Holland's southern waterways and bays. From 1958 to 1987, at a cost of billions of guilders, the Dutch people built an incredible system of dams and floodgates that is capable of shutting off miles of deltas and estuaries in the event of an approaching storm surge, yet remains open during normal weather to allow tides and marine life to ebb and flow with the natural cycles of the sea.

Another example of proactive government action is Germany's Green Party support for renewable energy. Under the leadership of the Green Party, in 2000 Germany instituted a program of "Feed-In Tariffs" (FITs). In a nutshell, FITs place a legal obligation on utilities to purchase electricity from renewable energy installations at a guaranteed rate for a predetermined minimal amount of time (20 years, for example). This rate is scientifically determined for each technology (wind, solar, biomass, etc.) to ensure profitable operations for new renewable energy installations. Germany's energy law guarantees the owners of windmill and solar farms an above-market price for their energy over a period of as long as 20 years. Combined with low interest rate loans for renewable energy installations, these policies allow anyone with a chunk of land and good credit to get a bank loan for installing grid-tied renewable energy installations, and to start turning a profit on these installations as soon as they start pumping energy back into the grid. The result has been a boon to Germany's economy in general, and has resulted in an explosion in the growth of its wind and solar power industries. Since implementing FITs, Germany has become a world leader in renewable energy, generating billions of dollars a year in exports and creating over a quarter of a million new jobs (Mendonca 2007).

Ironically, the United States is credited with the first FITs programs and was once the global leader in the development, manufacture, and installation of renewable energy systems. It has recently fallen significantly behind the growth curves of Germany and several other EU nations due to lack of commitment to long-term FITs or similar incentive programs to promote renewable energy development and installation. The start-stop tax incentive programs intermittently added and dropped by the U.S. government have contributed to several boom-and-bust cycles that have allowed foreign competition to leapfrog ahead of America in this arena. For some reason (well-paid lobbyists?), the United States has no problem giving huge tax breaks and subsidies to big coal, gas, nuclear, and oil companies, but buys into "free market" arguments against most FITs or "feebate"-type incentives for promoting the growth of renewable energy resources, even though these proposed incentives will cost a mere fraction of the breaks already given to the nonrenewable energy sources that are contributing to global warming and ecological

decline. By 2008, most countries in the EU had slashed their traditional subsidies to the coal, gas, oil, and nuclear industries while shifting these funds to FIT-type programs to assist the growth of renewables—a trend notably lacking in the United States.

In addition to looking at the failures of numerous societies, Jared Diamond's *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed* also looks at the positive examples of longterm sustainable societies that successfully implemented practices of self-government and regulation, thereby avoiding collapse. He relates how both the tiny island of Tikopia and the large archipelago of Tonga managed to live sustainably for a period of more than 3,000 years, whereas the medium-sized Easter Islanders failed the test of sustainability and collapsed miserably, leaving behind a deforested island populated by a tiny fraction of its prior population, who live a pitiful existence without even enough wood to build fishing canoes or get warm in front of a fire on a cold winter's night. In the case of tiny Tikopia, it appears that its small size lent itself to a bottom-up management style wherein each person could see the effects of his or her own personal actions and thus behaved responsibly. In Tonga, a central government run by a lineage of chiefs ruled firmly to ensure that the populace in general lived in a manner that contributed to the long-term health of the kingdom. Diamond also takes a look at the inspiring example of the New Guinea Highlanders, who have worked out a system of population control and sustainable agriculture. Archeological records indicate that in their 7,000 years of agriculture, the New Guinea Highlands has the longest-lasting example of continuous agriculture known to man.

A little closer to our Western world, Diamond also looks at how Japan's shoguns turned the tide on a potentially devastating pattern of widespread deforestation. Nine years after a devastating fire destroyed the city of Meireki, a proclamation by the shogun in 1666 warned of the dangers of erosion, stream siltation, and flooding due to deforestation, followed by urgings for the populace to plant seedlings. Later that decade, Japan launched a massive effort to regulate its forests, culminating in an elaborate system of woodland management that was in place by 1700, which fostered the reforestation of large portions of Japan and the implementation of sustainable woodland harvesting procedures in spite of a high population density and industrial growth rate (Diamond 2005, 294–306).

The Brazilian city of Curitiba provides an excellent example of proactive visionary urban planning. If there is a Mr. Ecocity anywhere on the planet, it is without question Jaime Lerner, the former mayor of Curitiba who led the work to transform his city, starting in 1972, into a world model of ecological and social policies. During his 12 years in office, Lerner devised many of Curitiba's innovative, inexpensive solutions to city problems. For example, in the early days of the public transit system, to increase its funding and encourage ridership, he made a special city lottery, valuing bus fare as lottery tickets. To combat Curitiba's growing litter problem, he created more incentives for recycling, including exchanging bottles, cans, and other recyclables for food.

> The starting is very important. If you wait until you have all the answers, you will never start. . . . You have to take risks, because you cannot have all the answers. But fortunately, planning is a process that you can always correct. So, that's why you don't have to wait. You don't have to be perfect first. **—Jaime Lerner, the former mayor of Curitiba, Brazil, from *Ecocities: Rebuilding Cities in Balance with Nature***

Lerner believed in implementing plans swiftly—in just 72 hours, he converted several blocks of the downtown into Brazil's first pedestrian mall. The first Monday after Lerner's Department of Public Works installed the barriers to block off the downtown streets, creating a car-free pedestrian zone, protesting car drivers and merchants had plans to remove these barriers and restore their "car freedom of the streets." Lerner's city employees were ready with an ingenious nonviolent solution—they filled these streets with long rolls of drawing paper and hundreds of school children armed with crayons. The happy children drawing colorful pictures on top of the streets formed a human barricade that no one breached. Reluctantly, the merchants decided to give the experiment a chance, and it turned out that their businesses flourished in the positive, peaceful, car-free environment (Register 2006, 125–130).

Throughout our history, great movements of social change were rarely started by government leaders. In general, the movements that eventually led to revolutionary shifts were founded by a small number of highly motivated people, who believed passionately in the need for change. In each case of revolutionary societal transformation, the seed that started among a small group of creative thinkers took root and grew to the point where massive numbers of people united to thrust visionary leaders into positions of power. Think of it—the end of slavery, the implementation of women's rights, civil rights, child labor laws, the start of all great religions, and democracy itself all began as small movements that grew over periods of considerable time until they gained enough momentum that these revolutionary ideas blossomed into mainstream practice.

LIMITATIONS TO A FREE-MARKET ECONOMIC POLICY

> This we know; all things are connected like the blood that unites us. We do not weave the web of life, we are merely a strand in it. Whatever we do to the web, we do to ourselves. **—Chief Seattle**

What is the "free market" anyway? It is the basic philosophy that the laws of "supply and demand" will automatically regulate the pricing, manufacture, and supply of goods and services. Free-market corporate decision makers are responsible to their stockholders for maximizing the profitability of their corporations. In today's global market, unless a corporation is operating in a highly profitable niche market, this usually means mass producing products where labor is cheapest (essentially slave labor), environmental controls are at a minimum, and with little concern or regard for the future sustainability of the world. Spending extra money in any of these areas would cut into profits and may impair the corporate entity's ability to compete with other corporations that are already operating without ethical concerns for the welfare of their workers, pollution of the environment, consumption of nonrenewable resources, and so on. Society often applauds and rewards the corporate warrior whose dedication to the "bottom line" dictates the cold-hearted decision to replace older workers nearing the top of their pay scale with younger associates who are willing to work longer hours for half the pay of their more seasoned counterparts, or lay off thousands of American workers as they close local manufacturing facilities while opening similar plants in offshore locations.

There are several areas that our governments consider too important to leave up to chance and a free market policy—including public education, our country's military defense, large dams and

bridges, plus the giant network of interstate freeways. Why do we feel that we must leave our most important assets, the health and natural resources of our planet's ecosystems, up to this sacred cow called "The Free Market"? Would Hitler have been stopped if we left it up to the free market? When the stock market collapsed in 1929, plunging the entire developed world into a financial crisis known as "The Great Depression," governments stepped in to implement economic regulations and policies designed to boost flagging economies and put people back to work, as well as to put in place legislative safeguards designed to prevent such a global economic catastrophe from ever occurring again. When it was deemed important to America's national security and financial future, the U.S. government, under the leadership of Theodore Roosevelt, bought out the failed French attempt to build a canal across the Isthmus of Panama and subsequently completed the project over a 10-year period extending from 1904 to 1914. A major key to the success of this project was conquering the local scourges of yellow fever and malaria that had killed many thousands of French engineers and workers during the prior French sojourn in Panama.

State, local, and federal governments often put together financial incentives to promote certain business ventures, such as the redevelopment of aging inner city neighborhoods or decrepit industrial parks and waterfronts. If we can support these kinds of non–free market incentives, and pay hundreds of billions of dollars in tax breaks and subsidies for the coal, oil, and nuclear industries and hundreds of billions of dollars for a failed war in Iraq, then why can't we put the same kinds of focus and financial support into building the sustainable technologies, infrastructure, and business incentives to create a world that works for our children and our children's children?

TRAGEDY OF THE COMMONS

> The tragedy of the commons develops in this way. Picture a pasture open to all. It is to be expected that each herdsman will try to keep as many cattle as possible on the commons. Such an arrangement may work reasonably satisfactorily for centuries because tribal wars, poaching, and disease keep the numbers of both man and beast well below the carrying capacity of the land. Finally, however, comes the day of reckoning, that is, the day when the long-desired goal of social stability becomes a reality. At this point, the inherent logic of the commons remorselessly generates tragedy. As a rational being, each herdsman seeks to maximize his gain. Explicitly or implicitly, more or less consciously, he asks, "What is the utility *to me* of adding one more animal to my herd?" This utility has one negative and one positive component. The positive component is a function of the increment of one animal. Since the herdsman receives all the proceeds from the sale of the additional animal, the positive utility is nearly +1. The negative component is a function of the additional overgrazing created by one more animal. Since, however, the effects of overgrazing are shared by all the herdsmen, the negative utility for any particular decision-making herdsman is only a fraction of –1. Adding together the component partial utilities, the rational herdsman concludes that the only sensible course for him to pursue is to add another animal to his herd. And another; and another. . . . But this is the conclusion reached by

> each and every rational herdsman sharing a commons. Therein is the tragedy. Each man is locked into a system that compels him to increase his herd without limit—in a world that is limited. Ruin is the destination toward which all men rush, each pursuing his own best interest in a society that believes in the freedom of the commons. Freedom in a commons brings ruin to all. **—Garrett Hardin, "The Tragedy of the Commons," *Science*, December 13, 1968**

Another area in which the free market has shown itself a dismal failure is referred to as "The Tragedy of the Commons." Wherever people live and propagate, there are common resources shared by the residents of the community. These shared resources might be in the form of common grazing lands (as in the case discussed above), common fisheries, oil fields, river water, aquifers, hunting grounds, rain forests, and so on. From the high-tech, free market world to the most primitive, remote third-world villages, common sense dictates that the industrious individual, village, or corporation will do best for itself by maximizing its utilization of common resources for personal gain and/or maximum profit. In the case of the herdsman, it means growing more livestock; in the case of the oilman, it means drilling more wells and pumping more oil; in the case of the fisherman, it means buying or building more fishing boats and catching more fish; in the case of the farmer, it means growing more crops on more land; and in the case of the logger, it means cutting down more trees.

All of this is well and good when we are living in a world sparsely populated by human beings and well below the carrying capacity of local ecosystems. The tragedy comes into play when the local carrying capacity has been reached or exceeded. At this point, without strict management of local resources in a sustainable manner agreed to by all (the end of the "free market"), the same logic of personal gain leads to rapid wholesale ruin. When there is no governing body to control consumption and dole out the "fair share" to each participant, then pure logic dictates that one must maximize his or her use of the remaining limited resources before someone else beats him or her to these same resources, thereby cutting into the first person's potential profit, food for the family, and so forth. History has shown that relying on guilt or the innate "goodness of man" to control consumption and behavior is a recipe for failure. All it takes is for one person to come along and ignore all the rules before another one says, "I had better jump in and get my share too before it is all gone." Pretty soon, all those good intentions have been thrown out the window, and voluntary restrictions have turned into a free-for-all rush to get my share before another person snatches it first. We are seeing the majority of the ocean's fisheries failing due to "The Tragedy of the Commons" as the world's high-tech fishing fleets are converging on ever-more-remote fisheries while most of the more convenient, once-vibrant local fisheries have either collapsed already or are rapidly approaching their demise.

> A vast flotilla of industrial trawlers from the European Union, China, Russia and elsewhere, together with an abundance of local boats, have so thoroughly scoured northwest Africa's ocean floor that major fish populations are collapsing. This has crippled coastal economies and added to the surge of illegal immigrants who brave the high seas in wooden pirogues hoping to reach Europe. While reasons for immigration are as varied as fish species, Europe's lure has clearly intensified as northwest Africa's fish population has dwindled . . . in the view of West African fisherman, Europe is having its fish and eating them, too. Their own waters

> largely fished out, European nations have steered their heavily subsidized fleets to Africa. . . . **—Sharon LaFraniere, "Europe Takes Africa's Fish, and Boatloads of Migrants Follow,"** ***New York Times,*** **2008**

Hardin also offers the example of a bank robber. A typical bank robber treats a bank's funds as "common property" that he believes he has a right to plunder as he sees fit. We seem to have no problem restricting the rights of a bank robber to treat bank funds as common property, yet we experience great difficulty implementing practical restrictions to restrict the rights to plunder the common property of our planet at will, even though the good of all and the future health of our planet are far more dependent upon maintaining natural ecosystems than they are upon maintaining the private property rights of private bank accounts.

SUSTAINABLE COMMUNITIES

> Would it be an exaggeration to claim that the emergence of the ecovillage movement is the most significant event in the 20th Century? I don't think so. — **Ted Trainer, University of New South Wales, Australia**

After the Declaration of Independence, America became a living laboratory for developing the principles and practices of democracy that eventually spread to most of the planet. Similarly, one might say that ecovillages are the living laboratories for developing models of sustainability that may be applied by peoples and governments throughout the world. There is no single role model, set of rules, or fixed guidelines to define what is, and what is not, an ecovillage. Ecovillages are urban or rural communities of people who strive to create a supportive social environment with a low-impact way of life, learning to live peacefully together and with the planet. To achieve this, they integrate various aspects of ecological design, permaculture, ecological building, green production, renewable energy, peaceful conflict resolution, community building practices, and so on. Ecovillages are grounded in the deep understanding that all things and all creatures are interconnected.

For some, ecovillages provide a space for learning—a place where hands-on types of workshops are offered in retreat settings to visitors from the "outside world" on subjects such as green building, organic gardening, renewable energy, sustainable sewage treatment "living machines," permaculture, etc. In this way, practical, sustainable skills may be learned directly from the people who have developed and used these skills as a part of their daily lives.

For others, ecovillages become their long-term home, providing a strong sense of community in a supportive, united, interconnected way that is notably lacking in most Western communities. Many ecovillages grow most of their own food and develop local businesses in keeping with the sustainable goals of the ecovillage. Ecovillages have developed, implemented, and fine-tuned practical solutions for community-sized sustainable systems to generate power, purify drinking water, treat wastewater, and so on. For a terrific introduction to ecovillages, I recommend you pick up a copy of *Ecovillage Living:Restoring the Earth and Her People*, edited by Hildur Jackson and Karen Svensson (see references). This book introduces the reader to many common principles of ecovillage design and implementation and provides an eclectic, colorful collection of photographs, articles, interviews, and anecdotes gleaned from numerous ecovillages located in

different parts of the world.

SUSTAINABLE CITIES

> We can build cities that are very different and very healthy. That kind of city is called the "ecocity." In its design and functioning it is informed by ecological principles: assiduous recycling, maintaining maximum biodiversity, being very efficient in energy and materials, having a compact generally three-dimensional form like a complex living organism. . . . Growth cannot go on forever, and the ecocity shows how we can actually shrink for prosperity. . . . The ecocity by design could be humanity at its best. **—Richard Register, author of *Ecocities: Rebuilding Cities in Balance with Nature***

For the first time in recorded history, more people now live in cities than in rural areas. If we cannot turn our cities into self-regulating sustainable systems that process and recycle their own wastes, produce most of their own energy, and provide a quality existence for their multitude of inhabitants, then our chances of creating a sustainable world are slim indeed.

No single "Green City" presently exists that is a perfect example of an ecologically healthy sustainable city. What we see are numerous examples of cities that perform admirably well in certain areas, such as solar, wind, and recycling technologies; green buildings and green businesses; urban environmental restoration projects, urban gardening, and organic farming; and programs that actively encourage individuals to use foot, bicycle, and public modes of transportation while discouraging the use of private automobiles within the city. Car-free urban centers and "mixed use" and "balanced" development projects represent land use and architectural changes moving in the right direction.

For example, with a population of 15 million, Cairo, Egypt, reuses and recycles most of its solid waste. With the support of the city authorities, the Zaballeen, a Coptic Christian community, acquired recycling and composting equipment to handle most of Cairo's solid waste. Metals and plastics are remanufactured into new products. Wastepaper is reprocessed into new paper and cardboard. Rags are made into sacks and other products, and organic wastes are composted. A huge amount of land is saved from being used as landfill, and a large part of the ten thousand people in the Coptic community of Zaballeen are gainfully employed remanufacturing and recycling Cairo's waste (Girardet 1999, 40).

Curitiba is probably the closest existing example of an ecocity. Twenty-seven blocks of pedestrian streets, dozens of parks and plazas, and a transit system co-developed with five areas of high-density residential and commercial development along streets reserved for buses—all these have become objects of study and envy. Waterways were restored and open landscapes created to harmlessly flood, then subside, with storm runoff where formerly hundreds of houses were flooded. Educational programs incorporating ecological lifestyle changes along with basic skills for life in the city were provided in old recycled buses that became classrooms for a community of sparse economic means.

We are at a point of crisis in the way we live, which is largely determined by the way we build and run our communities. This continuing trend is promoting global warming, species extinction,

loss of habitat and agricultural land, serious public health problems, and even war. It is time that we take a close look at the best examples of green technologies and urban planning from around the world and start applying these systems to improve the sustainability of all cities on our planet. The application of sustainable goals and technologies will have little impact on the future of the world unless we can make the shift from the small scale of an ecovillage here and there to large-scale application in cities across the globe.

CRADLE TO CRADLE

> If our systems contaminate Earth's biological mass and continue to throw away technical materials (such as metals) or render them useless, we will indeed live in a world of limits, where production and consumption are restrained, and the Earth will literally become a grave. If humans are truly going to prosper, we will have to learn to imitate nature's highly effective cradle-to-cradle system of nutrient flow and metabolism, in which the very concept of waste does not exist. To eliminate the concept of waste means to design things—products, packaging, and systems—from the very beginning on the understanding that waste does not exist. It means that the valuable nutrients contained in the materials shape and determine the design: form follows evolution, not just function. **—William McDonough and Michael Braungart, *Cradle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things***

There is no waste in nature: no garbage dumps, no places to throw things "away," because there is no "away" anywhere in the natural scheme of things. What appears to be waste from one plant or animal becomes food for another. Industrial man has traditionally made his "things" in a cradle-to-grave manner—where each manufactured item has a finite life, eventually reaching the end of its life cycle in some kind of grave. But nature functions in a more efficient manner, where the end of the line for one item becomes food for another element of this great biosphere in an endless cradle-to-cradle cycle of continuous death and rebirth. Nature does not just recycle, it "upcycles." When a tree grows, its leaves and roots enrich the soil, leaving the Earth a richer, better place. With each organism of the natural world contributing its own tiny part to nature's process of upcycling, the natural way of things is a relentless progression toward increased fertility and complexity.

Most of the time, when we recycle, we are actually "downcycling"—meaning that the quality of the input material is degraded with each pass through the recycling process. For example, typically when a car is recycled, not all the metal in the car can be perfectly separated. Copper from the wiring system along with zinc and other metals from various components gets mixed together with the high-quality steel alloys from the frame and body when the car is melted down, resulting in an inferior alloy of steel that probably sees its next incarnation as something like cheap rods of rebar for reinforcing concrete, since its increased contaminant level renders it inadequate for use in a car frame or as a body panel. Another example of "downcycling" is the reprocessing of paper products. Each time a paper product is dissolved and reused, its average fiber length and strength degrades, and contaminants from prior inks and chemical processing make the product less useful and more toxic compared to virgin wood fibers. Some people are so

sensitive to chemicals that they break out in a rash when handling newsprint because of its elevated toxic contaminant level due to a high recycled fiber content.

The point of all of this discussion is that the key to developing a sustainable world is to use the cradle-to-cradle example of nature as our ultimate guideline. In a finite world, everything we throw "away" becomes that much less of a finite supply of natural resources available to our world. Every high-quality technical material (refined and synthesized industrial materials such as metal, plastic, concrete, etc.) that is degraded in a downcycling process is that much less quality technical material available for our use. If we can change the way we make our "stuff," and the composition of it so the technical materials can be upcycled and the raw materials are pure and simple enough to become food for something else, then we have truly embarked on the path of sustainability. When this occurs, then humankind can stop degrading the planet's ecosystems and start increasing the richness of our environment, just as the natural world has done for countless eons.

As long as our manufacturing processes keep producing toxic chemicals that nature cannot break down and consume as part of its food chain, we will face an inevitable continual slide toward degradation and the ultimate collapse of ecosystems and life as we know it. However, by applying the principles of cradle-to-cradle manufacturing, we can turn this around. Implementing these principles requires careful planning, analysis, and focused intention. This is not just a fairy tale—these principles have been successfully demonstrated in textile mills, book making, and numerous other industries. By designing materials and processes from the top down—looking to the end result (no toxic materials in the end product or in the processing), a textile mill was developed to produce 100 percent nontoxic textiles (no trace of toxins in the dyes or fibers), the effluent for this mill was drinkable water, and its profits have soared in an age when most textile mills, outside of the Far East, have had trouble turning a profit. In fact, this mill's effluent was so clean that the environmental inspectors thought their instruments were broken. When their meters indicated that the effluent was cleaner than the public water supply coming into the plant, the inspectors had to visit another plant to check their readings and prove to themselves that their instruments had not malfunctioned (McDonough 2002, 105–109).

Doing things right means designing our products and manufacturing processes to be nontoxic and to be easily disassembled into biological nutrients (i.e., things that can be composted and fed back into the ecosystem) and technical nutrients (i.e., things that can be recycled or upcycled back into the manufacturing stream as a raw material for a new product). If we do things right, we will have all the time in the world at our disposal, since our products will neither deplete resources nor pollute our world. When designed as a cradle-to-cradle product, the product is entirely "good," not just a little less bad, which is what we get when we simply improve process efficiency and reduce—but don't eliminate—toxicity. If we continue to do things in the old way, given our increasing population and industrial pressures combined with the failing health of the world's ecosystems, we have very little time left before our increasing levels of toxic environmental pollution combine with depletion of natural resources to bring down the ecosystems that keep our planet running in a manner that sustains human life.

THE NATURAL STEP

> We have the capacity and ability to create a remarkably different economy, one that can restore ecosystems and protect the environment while bringing forth innovation, prosperity, meaningful work, and true security. The restorative economy unites ecology and commerce into one sustainable act of production and distribution that mimics and enhances natural processes. **—Paul Hawken, *The Ecology of Commerce***

The Natural Step (TNS) is an international, nonprofit organization dedicated to promoting a deeper worldwide understanding of sustainability and committed to transforming the way we do business and manufacture goods in our world. It is the brainchild of Swedish doctor Karl-Henrik Robèrt. Robèrt's passion for sustainability developed in the late 1980s when he was working as a medical doctor and cancer treatment researcher. He felt a deep sorrow and fear in his heart concerning the destruction of the Earth's environment. Working with his microscope, he saw that there were environmental limits that must be maintained within and around each cell and that when these limits are breached, the cell's death is absolutely certain. The parallels to our Earth's perilous condition of continuous environmental degradation became obvious, and Robèrt's passion for the issue of sustainability turned into an obsession.

As Robèrt's ideas began to crystallize into a formula for sustainability, he wrote a scientific paper on this subject, and shared it with numerous Swedish colleagues and scientists. After something like 22 drafts, this paper was published, and their consensus for a sustainability definition and guidelines became known as "The Natural Step." Robèrt recognized that our world is essentially a closed system, meaning that outside of the sun's energy streaming to Earth, there are no new materials and resources to be found on this planet other than what was here to begin with. If we are to stand a chance of modifying humankind's practices and industry in sustainable ways, then we must first understand what it means to be "sustainable."

In two simple sentences, TNS defines the following four minimum environmental conditions as necessary elements for maintaining life sustainably in a closed-system world such as planet Earth:

In the sustainable society, nature is not subject to systematically increasing:

1. Concentrations of substances extracted from the Earth's crust;
2. Concentrations of substances produced by society; or
3. Degradation by physical means. And in that society:
4. People are not subject to conditions that systematically undermine their capacity to meet their needs.

These four conditions provide us with a definition to help us determine whether a society is sustainable or not. TNS also provides a collection of strategic methods and resources for helping organizations, whether they are governmental or industrial, to make genuine progress on the road to sustainability. Robèrt's sustainability conversations expanded beyond his circle of friends and the scientific community to public television, Swedish media stars, leading politicians, and even to the King of Sweden. Robèrt's ideas have had a profound effect on many businesses, including IKEA, McDonalds, Electrolux, and many others.

Let's take a closer look at the four TNS conditions for sustainability:

1. **Stored deposits:** In a sustainable society, nature is not subject to increasing

concentrations of potentially toxic materials that have been "liberated" from where they were stored as deposits inside the Earth's crust. Mankind has been refining natural substances, such as mercury, lead, and radioactive materials, in unnatural concentrations. These substances that were previously bound into stable, durable matrices, such as bedrock or coal, are now accumulating in the biosphere, where they are metabolized into living organisms at ever increasing concentrations. Nothing disappears from our world, and everything that is not bound into a solid, stable matrix eventually disperses into the ecosystem.

2. **Synthetic compounds and other unnatural material byproducts of society:** In a sustainable society, nature is not subject to increasing concentrations of unnatural synthetic compounds. If this condition is not met, eventually the concentrations of these substances will reach concentration levels where irreversible changes begin to occur, with potentially dire consequences. The solution is to proactively substitute more common compounds, or ones that break down easily, for certain persistent and unnatural compounds, and for society to use substances efficiently. Remember that even using less of a toxic compound (improved efficiency) will still add up over time to too much of a bad thing, if this compound decomposes slower than the rate at which it is inserted into the biosphere.
3. **Physical degradation of ecosystems and natural resources:** We must draw our resources from wellmanaged ecosystems. Our health and prosperity depend on the capacity of nature to restructure our wastes into new resources. Human activities need to work in harmony with the cyclic principles of nature.
4. **Human needs:** Unless basic human socioeconomic needs are met worldwide through fair and efficient use of resources, it will be difficult to coordinate efforts and cooperation to meet conditions one, two, and three on a global scale. In a sustainable society, human needs are met worldwide.

(*Adapted from The Natural Step for Business,* by Brian Nattrass and Mary Altomare, 2001)

BACKCASTING

> Spotting the obstacles to sustainable development and imagining how we overcame them is a first vital step in constructing a sustainability strategy and action plan. The method was not invented by TNS but adapted and attached to our principles for success. Backcasting without such principles is not really much use in our quest for a sustainable future. **—David Cook, *The Natural Step Towards a Sustainable Society***

The Natural Step's (TNS) four conditions provide a helpful working definition of sustainability to guide a corporation or other organization along its path toward sustainability, but it does not tell anyone what the details of the steps along this path will look like. For this one needs vision, leadership, and planning. TNS assists companies as they plan their journey toward sustainability by providing management tools and a framework as developed by joint industry/TNS programs. These tools and framework are continuously evolving with each new program as more

corporations begin to take steps toward a sustainable future. One of the powerful tools utilized by TNS is called "backcasting."

No one knows exactly how we will reach a sustainable future. The traditional methods of forecasting are not very effective for planning a path to sustainability, since they tend to project more of the past into the future with a few modifications here and there, but nothing radically different. This is where backcasting comes into play. Backcasting means mentally visualizing a future in which we have already reached our goals successfully, then looking back from this vantage point to see how we reached these goals. It is a powerful tool that helps bypass the mind's tendency to project the past forward, including the limitations of the old way of doing things. Groups backcast best when encouraged to be imaginative together and to look outside of the box, letting go of all the normal constraints and limitations of today's world and its thinking. Powerful backcasting questions might include: How would our sustainable products differ from our current products? What would this company and its suppliers look like in a sustainable world? How would we upcycle our products, or use them as a basic nutrient for the ecosystem?

ECOLOGICAL FOOTPRINT

> What if humans designed products and systems that celebrate an abundance of human creativity, culture and productivity? That are so intelligent and safe, our species leaves an ecological footprint to delight in, not lament?
>
> Consider this: all the ants on the planet, taken together, have a biomass greater than that of humans. Ants have been incredibly industrious for millions of years. Yet their productivity nourishes plants, animals, and soil. Human industry has been in full swing for little over a century, yet it has brought about a decline in almost every ecosystem on the planet. Nature doesn't have a design problem. People do. **—William McDonough and Michael Braungart, *Cradle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things***

Mathis Wackernagel and his colleagues have developed a powerful tool that is useful for tracking humankind's progress, or lack of progress, toward sustainability. This resource management tool is known as the "Ecological Footprint" and is defined as "the area of biologically productive land and water required to produce the resources consumed and to assimilate the wastes generated by humanity, under the predominant management and production practices in any given year." Today, humanity's Ecological Footprint is over 23 percent larger than what the planet can regenerate (see Figure 16-4). In other words, it now takes more than 1 year and 2 months for the Earth to regenerate what we use in a single year. We maintain this overshoot by liquidating the planet's ecological resources (Global Footprint Network 2006).

By measuring the Ecological Footprint of a population (an individual, a city, a nation, or all of humanity) we can assess our overshoot, which helps us manage our ecological assets more carefully. Ecological Footprints enable people to take personal and collective actions in support of a world where humanity lives within the means of one planet. If we continue consuming the resources of our world faster than they regenerate and/or deposit wastes (carbon dioxide, toxic chemicals, radioactive materials, human excrement, etc.) faster than the biosphere can assimilate

these materials, then our excessive consumption and human byproducts will eventually catch up with us, causing catastrophic collapse of the systems that support human life on Earth.

As of 2003, the average amount of viable land that is required to grow our food, timber, cotton, and such, and also process our waste, is roughly 1.75 hectares (about 4.3 acres) per person. From Figure 16-5, we see that the footprint for North America is about 9.5 hectares per person, meaning that it would take 5.4 Earths to provide the current human population of our planet with everything they need to live if everyone adopted the consumption habits of North America. Figure 16-5 also shows that both the Asia-Pacific regions and Africa, on the average, are living within the Earth's sustainable limit as defined by the ecological footprint. This is not very surprising, when you consider that the areas of the planet with higher human population densities and/or lower available average economic resources and technologies are consuming far less per person than those areas whose abundant technological and financial resources give them access, via the global market, to resources from other parts of the world.

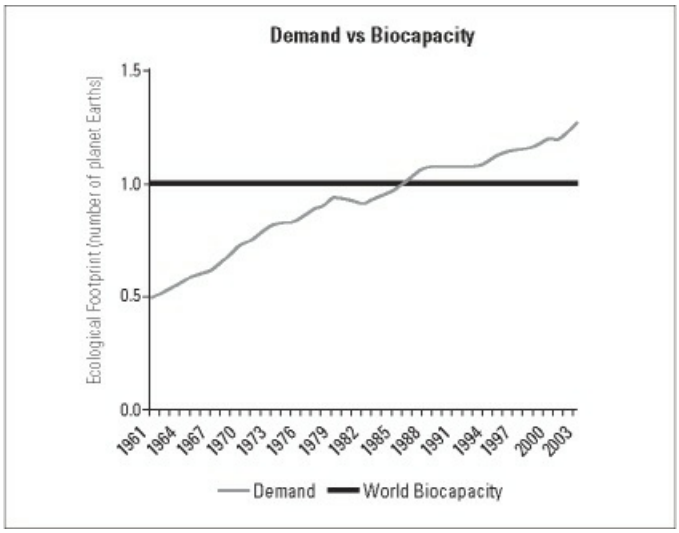


Figure 16-4. Ecological footprint of humankind from 1961 to 2003. (Illustration courtesy of Global Footprint Network)

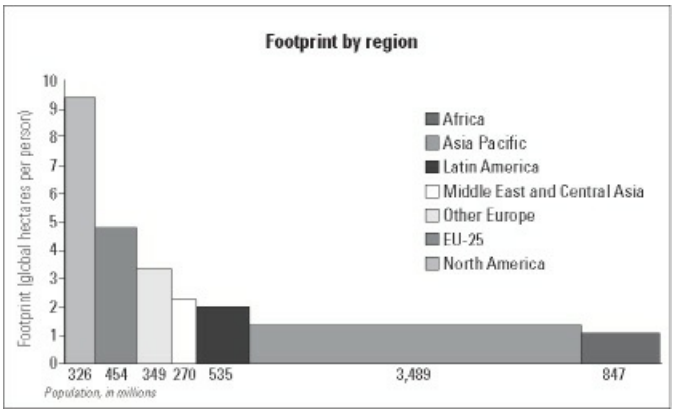


Figure 16-5. Ecological footprint by region. (Illustration courtesy of Global Footprint Network)

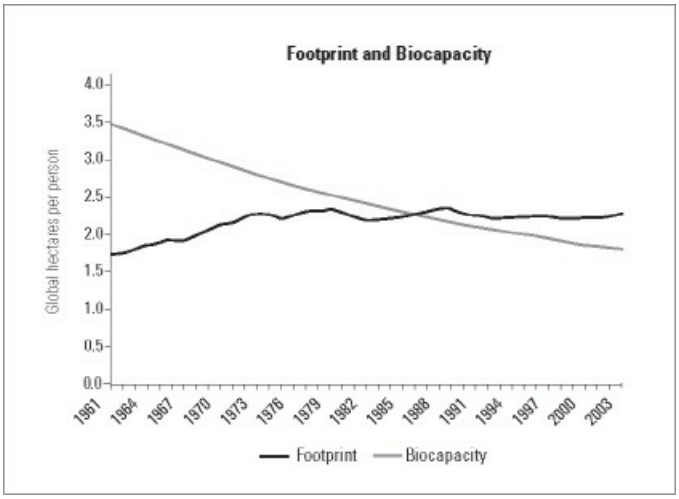


Figure 16-6. Ecological footprint and biocapacity. (Illustration courtesy of Global Footprint Network)

> Meanwhile, trade has obviously been a major factor in raising Gross World Product in the post-war period. Less obviously, it has also become a major mechanism by which the rich (inadvertently?) appropriate much of the world's carrying capacity and extend their own Ecological Footprints. However, as the total human load on the ecosphere increases and the depletion of natural capital accelerates, trade reduces the ecological safety net for all. In this light, far from overcoming the ecological limits to material growth, expanding trade assists
>
> humanity to overshoot dangerously the long-term carrying capacity of the planet.
> **—Mathis Wackernagel and William Rees, *Our Ecological Footprint: Reducing Human Impact on the Earth***

The Ecological Footprint is not just a "big picture" tool, it is also a terrific tool for comparing the "resource intensity" for competing technologies. For example, in his master's thesis, Yoshihiko Wada looked at the Ecological Footprint for growing a given quantity of tomatoes in British Columbia's heated greenhouses compared to growing them by intensive field agriculture. In addition to the actual land directly occupied by the growing process, this study also took into account the land equivalents needed to support all the material and energy inputs for each process, such as fertilizer production and energy to heat the greenhouses. Even though it took seven to nine times as much land to grow tomatoes outside as it took to grow them inside heated hydroponic greenhouses, Wada's work showed that the Ecological Footprint for the hothouse tomatoes was actually 10 to 20 times greater than the Ecological Footprint for the tomatoes grown outside (Wackernagel 1996, 108–109).

A similar approach could be applied to essentially any group of competing technologies to help make the optimum choice from the sustainability point of view. As we saw in the above example, the obvious assumption is that the hothouse tomatoes would be the preferred sustainable choice, since they occupied 1/7th to 1/9th of the land taken up by intensive outdoor agriculture, but this assumption is far from the truth.

NEGATIVE POPULATION GROWTH

> We will, all of us, bear the responsibility of a world gone wrong. If we continue as usual, a disastrous future beckons: whole cities swamped by slums, whole societies destroyed by climate change. **—Anna Tibaijuka, Executive Director, UN-HABITAT, *State of the World 2007: Our Urban Future*, by Worldwatch Institute**

According to Mathis Wackernagel, human demands exceeded the Earth's ecological capacity around the year 1980, when the Earth's population was roughly 4.5

billion (Wackernagel 2002). From the point of view of this Ecological Footprint evaluation, we might assume that the Earth's sustainable population is around the 4.5

billion that it was back in 1980; however, this assumption does not take many other factors into account. Our current agricultural practices are heavily dependant upon fossil fuels both to run machinery and as the key feedstocks for synthetic fertilizers. Additionally, modern, chemical-intensive farming methods are flushing away topsoil hundreds of times faster than it is regenerating, years of irrigation use are causing massive losses of farmland to salinity, aquifers are being unsustainably overdrawn in many of the world's "breadbasket" areas resulting in further losses of irrigated farmland, and marginal lands are being lost to overgrazing and climate change. For these and many other reasons, some scientists place the long-term sustainable human population limit more in the range of 1 to 2 billion people.

However you look at it, given the planetary degradation that has occurred between 1950 when the world population was estimated at 2.5 billion and 2008 with a population of 6.7 billion, it is clear that if we don't stop population growth and start reducing the world's human population, then nature will do it for us. All of humankind's admirable efforts to create a sustainable world will be negated by population growth, if we can't get our current birth rates under control, especially in thirdworld countries. Since our thirdworld brother's local ecosystems each form critical elements in the planet's biosphere, we who have the necessary tools and technologies must help solve the world's population problem. If we can't reverse the current trend of population growth, then we will drift into ecological collapse as the totally avoidable consequence of our lack of action.

GETTING A GRIP ON "KING COAL"

> First, there should be a moratorium on building any more coal-fired power plants until we have the technology to capture and sequester the CO_2. That technology is probably five or ten years away. It will become clear over the next ten years that coal-fired power plants that do not capture and sequester CO_2 are going to have to be bulldozed. That's the only way we can keep CO_2 from getting well into the dangerous level, because our consumption of oil and gas alone will take us close to the dangerous level. And oil and gas are such convenient fuels (and located in countries where we can't tell people not to mine them) that they surely will be used. So why build old-technology power plants if you're not going to be able to

operate them over their lifetime, which is fifty or seventy-five years? It doesn't make sense. Besides, there's so much potential in efficiency, we don't need new power plants if we take advantage of that. **—James Hansen, "Climate Change: Why We Can't Wait," *The Nation,* 2007**

Coal has long been considered an abundant, cheap source of energy. It is also a major contributor to greenhouse gases, since it releases considerably more carbon dioxide, per unit of usable energy, than either oil or natural gas. For this reason, even though it only accounts for a quarter of world energy consumption, it generates 39 percent of global carbon dioxide emissions, so getting a grip on climate change mandates that we get a grip on coal consumption. Unfortunately, until the West steps in to provide new, high-tech, renewable energy solutions, the developing world will continue to see coal as key to their efforts to lift their people out of extreme poverty by building coal-fired power plants and using coal to smelt steel and to make concrete.

In just a few short years of rapid industrial growth, China passed the United States as both the world's number-one coal consumer and the number-one emitter of greenhouse gases. China now consumes more coal than the United States, the European Union, and Japan combined, and their coal consumption is growing at a rate of about 10 percent per year. In 2006, China installed more new coal-burning power plant capacity than all of Great Britain, opening an average of one large coal-fired power plant every week. China's growth in the use of coal is reflected by other developing countries such as India, which hopes to boost coal production by 50 percent between 2008 and 2012 and quadruple it by 2030 (Mufson 2008).

In a world that is already running short on natural gas and oil, coal has long been seen as the solution to our energy problems for the next hundred years. Under the looming specter of potentially disastrous climate changes of a magnitude large enough to shatter our world's ecosystems and humankind's global economy, it is clear that we must do whatever is in our power to implement energyconserving measures and renewable energy technologies to head off the construction of new coal-fired power plants. Unless we are able to develop an effective carbonsequestering technology to contain the carbon emissions from coal-fired power plants (per Hansen this technology is at least 5 to 10 years away) and the resources to implement these technologies worldwide, we should be tearing these plants down, not building new ones at our current record pace.

DOING YOUR PART

Recognizing that in this unique moment it is not possible to know what's possible . . . we discover we are free. We're free to throw ourselves into the most thrilling, planetary struggle our species has ever known. We can probe deeply, asking together, "What might be a richer understanding of democracy—one strong enough to stand up to extremists' claims?" **—Frances Moore Lappé, *Getting a Grip: Clarity, Creativity and Courage in a World Gone Mad*** Character may be manifested in the great moments, but it is made in the small ones. **— Sir Winston Churchill**

Here are a few avenues to explore—individually and collectively—to promote change:

- **Conservation.** Conscientiously conserving, recycling, and reusing resources and products will help to slow the process of planetary degradation. There is a sort of consumption "food chain," in which some savings have far more positive impact than others. Consuming fewer goods and improving up-front process efficiencies have the most impact. Reusing goods has a middle impact. Recycling is a relatively easy and painless thing to do, requiring minimal changes in our consumeroriented lifestyle, and it is usually better than throwing away. However, recycling has the least positive impact of the three options, since it is at the tail end of the consumption "food chain," and it takes additional energy and resources to recycle.
- **Collective action.** Individually, none of us will save the world, but collectively we can decide that we (the people) wish to make a sustainable future the number-one priority of business and government. We can change the world, but it takes massive numbers of people to make changes on the scale of the end of slavery or the institution of women's rights. Hitler would have conquered the world if stopping him had been number ten on the priority list. Stopping Hitler was a matter of survival. Changing the way we do business is also a matter of survival.
- **Buy local.** In the United States, the average item of food traveled 1,518 miles in 1998, and this number has been increasing about 10 percent per decade. Buying local produce and goods keeps your dollars in your local communities, and saves the energy wasted by shipping goods around the world.
- **Planet-friendly diet.** Health and environmental impacts from the agribusiness production of meat range from massive destruction of rain forests for cattle grazing to methane pollution and the consumption of huge amounts of pesticides, oil, fertilizer, water, vegetable protein, and topsoil. Fisheries are collapsing across the planet due to annual catches that far exceed the sustainabile rate, combined with destructive practices, such as the use of huge driftnets. Eating less meat and wild fish helps the planet.

  Raising the livestock needed to produce the 276 million tons of meat consumed in 2006 was responsible for almost a fifth of total greenhouse gas emissions. — **Worldwatch Institute, *Vital Signs 2007–2008***

- **Political action.** We can join forces with others to promote recycling, clean air, and water and the preservation of woodlands, wetlands, and forests. We can push for tax reforms and regulations that support planet-friendly practices and eliminate subsidies for businesses that "spend" our natural resources or otherwise hurt the environment. Individually we make a statement by doing business only with planet-friendly companies and voting for candidates with a good environmental record.
- **Restructure business.** Implementing analysis tools, such as The Natural Step, and evaluating products and manufacturing systems from the point of view of cradle-to-cradle (as opposed to our current cradle-to-grave throw-away products) is critical for changing the way we do business and starting down the road to sustainability.
- **Replace your light bulbs.** By replacing a single 75-watt incandescent light bulb with an 18-watt compact fluorescent bulb, you will save about $37.06 in combined utility and

bulb costs over the lifetime of one fluorescent bulb. These energy-efficient bulbs produce the same quantity and quality of light as a regular 75-watt bulb and last about 13 times as long. Over the life of one compact fluorescent, you will save yourself the hassle of buying and replacing 13 incandescent bulbs. The energy savings from a single bulb will accomplish one of the following: (A) Spare the Earth more than 1,500 pounds of carbon dioxide and about 20 pounds of sulfur dioxide spewing from the stack of a coal-fired power plant. (B) Avoid the production in a nuclear plant of half a curie of high-level radioactive waste (which is a lot) and two-fifths of a ton of TNT-equivalent of plutonium. (C) Keep an oilfired power plant from burning 1.25 barrels of oil—enough to run a family car for a thousand miles or to run Honda's new hybrid car from Los Angeles to New York and on to Miami before it needed more gas.

- **Choose a fuel-efficient car.** For most people, the type of car they drive will have the single greatest impact on their contribution to global greenhouse gases. Hybrids, biodiesel-capable diesels, and super-efficient gasoline-burning cars make a huge difference in your carbon footprint. Simply adopting European mileage standards would eliminate all of America's current need to import oil from OPEC countries. In just a few short years, most Brazilians have switched to flex-fuel vehicles that are capable of running on ethanol, gasoline, or a combination of both, and gasoline-only vehicles have dropped dramatically in resale value.
- **Ride a bicycle, take a bus/train, or carpool.** Each gallon of gasoline burned releases 19.6 pounds of carbon dioxide, the most common greenhouse gas, into the atmosphere. Reducing your consumption of gasoline significantly reduces your impact on the planet. Rebuilding America's rail, barge, and bus systems is critical both for reducing greenhouse gas omissions as well as maintaining commerce and quality of life as fuel costs escalate in a world running short on oil.
- **Reduce heating and air conditioning.** About 25 percent of greenhouse gases come from energy used to heat and cool buildings. Energy-conserving design typically reduces building loads by 90 percent or more. Insulating your house, upgrading appliances to energy-efficient models, and installing energy-efficient windows can make a huge reduction on your monthly energy bill. Wearing sweaters in the winter and light clothing in the summer will make a big difference too.
- **Install renewable energy systems in your home or business.** Modern solar and wind-energy systems have come down in cost and are much easier to operate and maintain than they used to be. In windy locations, a small wind turbine could provide most or all of the energy that your home needs. New roof-integrated solar panels provide cost-effective long-term reliable energy with no moving parts to wear out. Solar hot water systems will usually pay for themselves in a year or two through the energy savings on your monthly utility bill.
- **Personal independence and self-sufficiency.** Developing self-sufficient living skills helps us prepare for the uncertainties of the future.
- **Self-sufficient communities.** There is a growing movement to build communities based on principles of self-sufficiency, ecological design, sustainability, and cooperation.

PLANNING FOR THE FUTURE

> Today the Hudson River is an international model for ecosystem protection. It was a national joke in 1966, an open sewer, turning color sometimes three times a week, depending upon what color they were painting the trucks at the G. M. plant in Tarrytown. . . . The administration is now saying we have to choose between economic prosperity and environmental protection. That is a false choice. . . . In 100 percent of the situations, good environmental policy is identical to good economic policy if we want to measure our economy based upon how it produces jobs over the long-term. If we treat the planet as if it were a business in liquidation, converting our natural resources to cash as quickly as possible, to have few years of pollution-based prosperity, we can generate an instantaneous cash flow and the illusion of a prosperous economy. But our children are going to pay for our joy ride with denuded landscapes and poor health and huge cleanup costs. Environmental injury is deficit spending. **—Robert F. Kennedy Jr., *Troubled Water: Saints, Sinners, Truths and Lies about the Global Water Crisis*, by Anita Roddick**

Planning for the future occurs at many levels. On the micro-level, we are primarily concerned with planning for personal survival and the survival of our immediate families. This kind of planning involves evaluating local environmental hazards and storing emergency supplies and provisions to deal with these hazards. Does your area have the potential for hurricanes, tornadoes, wildfires, floods, or earthquakes? For the longer term, micro-planning might include growing your own food and becoming energy self-sufficient.

A middle level of planning extends your vision to the community. By banding together with like-minded people, an entirely self-sufficient community might be formed, or perhaps simply a network that shares information, skills, and inspiration and provides needed support. There is strength in both the numbers and the diversity of abilities and resources that a community provides. If a general breakdown of society should ever occur, the safest places may well be within strong, self-reliant communities, and we may see a return of the city-states similar to those of ages long past.

The macro-level encompasses a more global view. You may think that humanity is not capable of changing its current direction, that human beings have always been selfish and greedy and will never change. The historical record, however, shows us major shifts and changes. Think about it. What happened to slavery, cannibalism, and even human sacrifice? Once common in many parts of the world, they now exist as isolated cases of aberrant behavior. It takes time for a conscious idea to grow to the point where it gains momentum. Sometimes an idea appears to avalanche through the universe, miraculously leaping across oceans and boundaries. This type of event, referred to as “remote shared learning,” or “the hundredth monkey phenomenon,” has shattered some traditional scientific concepts.

THE “HUNDREDTH MONKEY PHENOMENON”

> Every act, thought, and choice adds to the permanent mosaic: our decisions ripple through the universe of consciousness to affect the lives of all. Every act or decision made that supports life, supports all life, including our own. **— David R. Hawkins, M.D., Ph.D.**

"Remote shared learning" among different members of the same species has been observed in the wild and has been demonstrated numerous times in repeatable laboratory experiments. A famous example of remote shared learning concerned the opening of milk bottles by wild birds in England. For nearly a hundred years, milk bottles had been left undisturbed at homeowners' doors. In 1921, it was recorded that a small bird had been seen opening the cardboard tops of milk bottles in Southampton, England. The first species of bird observed opening milk bottles was the blue tit. By 1937, eleven different species of birds had begun opening milk bottles, and this activity had spread to 89 English cities. Then the most amazing thing happened. Blue tits in Sweden, Denmark, and Holland began attacking milk bottles. The behavior had leapt across borders and the ocean at a rate far too fast to have been passed from bird to bird as a learned behavior (Hartmann 1997, 107).

An equally famous example concerns the Japanese monkeys, *Macaca fuscata*. In 1952, scientists studying the behavior of these monkeys on the island of Koshima provided food for them by dropping sweet potatoes onto the sand. The monkeys liked the sweet potatoes and tolerated the sand, which clung to the outside. One day, a bright 18-month-old female monkey named Imo figured out that she could wash the potatoes in the ocean to remove the gritty sand. She gradually taught this brand new idea and behavior to other monkeys in their group. By 1958, all the young monkeys on the island were washing their potatoes, but only a few of the adults had managed to learn this behavior. Something startling was observed in the autumn of 1958. Suddenly, essentially all of the monkeys in this tribe were observed washing their potatoes, including the older ones who for years hadn't caught on to the behavior of the younger monkeys. Not only did the older monkeys on the island of Koshima start to wash their potatoes, but scientists observed that colonies of monkeys on the other islands and the mainland of Takasakiyama also started to wash their food in the ocean (Keyes 1981, 11–16).

It was proposed that when the knowledge was limited to a few monkeys, the behavior was passed on by observation and learning. But when a significant number of monkeys had learned this behavior—for the sake of simplicity they called it 100 monkeys—it appeared that some critical mass of consciousness had been reached. The new awareness was transmitted mind to mind within the species without being limited by the physical parameters of time and space. The phenomenon of remote shared learning, or the hundredth monkey phenomenon, has also been demonstrated in a number of studies involving learned behavior in laboratory rats. This phenomenon gives evidence of our interconnectedness and lends credence to the belief that positive changes in human consciousness—species-wide learning—can occur once a critical mass is reached.

> According to my tradition, from the beginning of creation, every morning, when the sun comes up, we are each given four tasks by our Creator for that day. First, I must learn at least one meaningful thing today. Second, I must teach at least one meaningful thing to another person. Third, I must do something for some other person, and it will be best if that person does not even realize that I have done

something for them. And, fourth, I must treat all living things with respect. This spreads these things throughout the world. **—Cree storyteller, from Thom Hartmann's *The Last Hours of Ancient Sunlight***

PLAN B: LIVE LOCALLY, THINK GLOBALLY

Our business analysis supports an exciting and astounding conclusion: intelligently investing an incremental $90 billion over the next two decades in retooling the domestic automotive, trucking, and airplane industries and another $90 billion in domestic energy infrastructure, could create the capacity to achieve an oilfree future. . . . Envision a secure national fuels infrastructure based largely or wholly on U.S. energy resources and on vibrant rural communities farming biofuels, plastics, wind and carbon. Think of over one million new, high-wage jobs, and the broad wealth creation from infusing the economy with $133 billion per year of new disposable income from lower crude-oil costs. Recognize with pride that with this new economy, the U.S. is nearly achieving international greenhouse targets as a free byproduct. Picture increased energy and national security as oil use heads toward zero, and as the U.S. regains the leverage of using petrodollars to buy what our society really needs rather than handing those dollars to oil suppliers to feed an addiction. **—Amory B. Lovins et al., *Winning the Oil Endgame: Innovations for Profits, Jobs, and Security*** Restructuring the earth will take an enormous international effort, one even larger and more demanding than the often-cited Marshall Plan that helped rebuild war-torn Europe and Japan. And such an initiative must be undertaken at wartime speed lest environmental deterioration translate into economic decline, just as it did for earlier civilizations that violated nature's thresholds and ignored its deadlines. . . . Shifting one sixth of the world military budget to the Plan B budget would be more than adequate to move the world onto a path that would sustain progress. . . . If we cannot restructure the tax system to enable the markets to tell the truth, we almost certainly will not make it. Let your political representatives know that a world spending nearly $1 trillion a year for military proposes is simply out of sync with reality in a situation where the future of civilization is in question. Ask them if $161 billion per year is an unreasonable expenditure to save civilization. Ask them if diverting one sixth of the global military budget to saving civilization is too costly. **—Lester R. Brown, *Plan B 2.0: Rescuing a Planet Under Stress and a Civilization in Trouble***

There is a growing consensus that we cannot sustain business as usual much longer without serious risk of global collapse. Whereas traditional government policy reflects a common belief that today's technologies simply cannot sustain our world at a modern level of comfort and free enterprise without continuing our massive consumption of oil and coal, recent serious studies from well-respected institutions indicate otherwise. If "Plan A" (business as usual) is clearly not working, then an intelligent proactive society would focus its attention on creating "Plan B," a practical road map for actively guiding, promoting, and coaxing our business and energy systems

from their current globally devastating forms into new forms designed to lead us into a sustainable world. A real Plan B is composed of genuine present-day technologies, or near-term technologies, whose viability and practicality have already been proven, and does not consist of optimistically hoping for some new techno-miracle to save us from hitting the energy, climate, and ecosystem limits of our rapidly degrading planet. Such a Plan B already exists, and according to Amory Lovins of the Rocky Mountain Institute and Lester Brown of the Earth Policy Institute, these plans may be implemented for a fraction of what the United States currently spends annually on its military budget.

Envision a world in which plug-in hybrid cars run primarily off electricity produced via renewable energy, conserving the use of fossil fuels to cover long-distance journeys beyond the capacity of an overnight battery charge. Over time we could cover most, if not all, of those fossil fuel requirements with locally grown and distilled biofuels as they help revitalize America's farms. While the United States has been increasing the size of its subsidies to the oil, coal, and nuclear industries, Germany has been revitalizing its economy by restructuring taxes to increase the taxes on energy use while reducing taxes on income. Germany is rapidly on its way toward weaning its economy from foreign oil and hugely reducing the country's carbon footprint, while at the same time creating many thousands of jobs in the renewable energy and environmental sectors. The technology exists, right now, today, to make radical changes in the ways we do business and to turn our global economy in the direction of a sustainable future. What is missing is just the will and the conviction that not only should we do this, but we must do this.

There is no one "right" way to create Plan B. Anyone who has successfully completed a large project, whether it is building a home, writing a book, making a movie, or building a successful business, knows that when they first started their project, they did not yet know all the details for how they would take it to completion, but they had a vision of where they wanted to go and a belief that they had the strength to carry them through to the end of their project. It is a combination of human ingenuity, creativity, sweat, hard work, and inspiration that fills in the details as a project progresses from beginning to end.

Plan B is a massive work in progress and will no doubt see thousands of revisions to its details, but here are a few common threads:

1. **Change the tax structure.** Plan B will succeed only if we shift the tax structure to provide significant support for those materials, processes, industries, and investments that contribute toward building a sustainable economy while penalizing those industries and structures that stick to the "old way" of doing things and continuing to consume our dwindling resources and ecosystems in nonsustainable ways. Funds gained from fees and penalties can be used to pay for rebates and tax incentives that promote the rapid industrial retooling and changeover to energy- and resource-conserving processes, machines, automobiles, and so on. Whether we accomplish this feat through "fee-bates," FITs, "cap-and-trade" legislation, or various other combinations of fines and incentives is not important. What matters is that these incentives work, as proven through real data, and that we implement these changes with wartime speed before it is too late. During World War II, in a matter of just 6 months, the entire U.S. production of consumer automobiles was shut down and converted to wartime production to support the war effort. **We can do this!**
2. **Rebuild our cities.** Over one-half of the human population now live in cities, and they

consume roughly one-half of our energy and materials. By restructuring our cities for mass transportation, moving away from their current focus centered on the individual travel by automobile, and retrofitting our buildings for energy efficiency and integrated, distributed, renewable energy power generation (our buildings can generate most or all the power they need using current technologies), we could reduce our cities' fossil fuel consumption by a factor of 10:1 within the next decade or two.

3. **Rebuild our railways, waterways, and mass transit systems:** A world running short on oil must focus on efficiency rather than simple convenience. If we don't act now while our economy is still working reasonably well, how will we get around, or ship our goods, if gas goes to $10 or $20 dollars per gallon and we have not developed better alternatives to diesel trucks for long-distance hauling or private automobiles for local transportation?
4. **Rebuild our homes, office buildings, and factories.** Today's showpiece energy-efficient buildings often consume one-tenth the energy of the average building, and some buildings are net energy producers that actually generate more power than they consume. The current crash in the building market could be turned around with zero-interest loans and tax incentives to retrofit buildings for energy efficiency, providing badly needed jobs while cutting greenhouse gas emissions and reducing oil imports and trade deficits. From a resource, energy, and materials point of view, it is far "greener" to retrofit existing buildings than to tear them down and start over.
5. **Rebuild our industries.** There must be domestic and international financial incentives to revitalize economies while saving energy and materials through junking old, inefficient processes and machines and replacing them with state-of-the-art technologies. The Western world has benefited greatly from the use of natural resources gleaned from underdeveloped countries. It is time we repay this debt by sharing renewable and sustainable technologies with the developing world, doing our part to ensure that we leave behind a world that can feed and sustain our children. All of our efforts will be to no avail if we take care of our own country while doing little to help replace the inefficient processes and industries of rapidly industrializing giants like India and China.
6. **Fund and support renewable energy development.** Focus on the rapid development of renewable energy sources, such as solar, wind, geothermal, and biofuels, with particular emphasis on wind power, which is already cost competitive with coal. When you level the playing field by eliminating subsidies, wind energy is already more cost effective than coal, nuclear, or oil for the generation of electricity. Develop biofuels from multiple sources (preferably other than corn), including cellulosics and algae, to provide oil alternatives both in the transportation industries and as material feedstocks for industrial processes such as plastics.
7. **Eliminate population growth.** Reduce global population growth to the point where the population of our planet levels off, followed by a decline in world population. On a planet where the estimated long-term carrying capacity is on the order of 1 to 2 billion people, if we can't control our own population growth, nature will do it for us. Most people would agree that it is much more humane to provide family-planning education and birth control materials for all people on Earth than for the population to find its natural level through starvation, plagues, and wars.
8. **Share the wealth.** Develop binding multinational regulations and governing bodies to

ensure that the world's oceans and forests are harvested sustainably. Develop some form of resource equity-sharing program to reward third-world countries for conserving their resources, such as rain forests, topsoil, and sensitive ecosystems. We must revamp our economic systems, which currently reward businesses that are causing great ecological harm by allowing businesses to reap higher profits due to the fact that they are not charged for the harmful resource depletion and environmental degradation resulting from their business practices. Simply exporting our polluting heavy industries to the third world, where they are not as well controlled or monitored as in the West, only makes the global sustainability problem even worse.

9. **Reach out to developing countries.** The developing countries of the world all want what the Western countries already have. They must not be left out of the equation. We have the potential to rapidly develop and deploy technologies to shift our economy from a carbon-intensive energy base to one based on renewables. By sharing this technology with the developing world, we can help to significantly improve their average standard of living while at the same time allowing them to leapfrog older coal- and oil-based technologies, much as how the cell phone created the opportunity for most of the developing world to bypass landlinebased phone systems. If we miss this opportunity, our chances of avoiding catastrophic global climate changes, or economic and ecological collapse, are practically zero.
10. **Replace coal-burning power plants.** If we are to stand a chance for capping greenhouse gas emissions, current coal-burning power-plant technology must be replaced. If a successful carbon dioxide– sequestering technology proves feasible, we could continue to burn coal, but only when the new technology is in place.
11. **Global relocalization: buy local.** Economies are bound to relocalize as energy and transportation costs rise, making it once again both environmentally and economically beneficial to live, work, produce, grow, and buy locally. Buying local helps keep our dollars circulating locally in what is known as the "local multiplier effect." When we buy foreign oil, produce, or material goods, these dollars often leave our country for good.
12. **Make decisions based on sustainability.** All business decisions should be made while giving serious consideration as to whether those decisions contribute toward sustainability or take us further from the goal of creating a sustainable world.

EFFECTIVE ACTION

> Never doubt that a small group of thoughtful, committed citizens can change the world; indeed, it's the only thing that ever has. **— Margaret Mead**
>
> Most of the important things in the world have been accomplished by people who have kept on trying when there seemed to be no hope at all.
>
> **—Dale Carnegie**

If we wish to create a positive future for the human race, we must rise above the level of thinking and doing business that has brought us to today's state of the world. The hundredth monkey

phenomenon offers hope that if enough people change their thinking and their actions, the world will follow suit—but actions alone are not enough. They must be *effective* actions.

Stephen Covey, author of *The 7 Habits of Highly Effective People,* is one of the world's most popular business consultants and inspirational speakers. Studying many of the most successful people on the planet, he has formulated their "habits of success" into seven simple principles that everyone, in all walks of life, can apply in their own lives.

The first three habits for success form the foundation that the other habits rest upon. Habit number one is to be "proactive" rather than "reactive." Proactive people take the initiative to achieve their goals and know that, in some way, they are responsible for the circumstances of their lives. Proactive people may not always like their outer circumstances but know that they can consciously choose their response. Covey cites the example of Victor Frankl, who survived several years of confinement in a Nazi concentration camp, which took the lives of almost all of his family. In the midst of torture and physical degradation, Frankl realized that he had no control over what the guards did to his body, but that he did have control over his inner being and mind. No one could take that from him unless he allowed it. Through mental exercises, imagination, and discipline, he developed his internal power and became an inspiration to others, including some of the Nazi guards. Reactive people, on the other hand, are more like leaves blowing in the wind. They are often found in the role of victim or are always fighting fires in their personal life and at work. Proactive people try to plan ahead to avoid the fire.

Habit number two is to "begin with the end in mind." How can you expect to be successful at something if you don't have a vision of where you want to go? Builders must start with a vision in their minds of the building they wish to build. Next, they draw up the plans, typically modifying them a bit here and there. Finally, they build the structure, usually incorporating a few more changes into the process. To successfully navigate our future, it takes vision on all three levels: the micro, middle, and macro levels. Without a vision of the kind of world we hope to create in our future, we cannot plan an appropriate course of action to get us there.

Habit number three is to "put first things first." This habit is about priorities. To be effective, we must devote significant chunks of time and resources to our highest priorities while focusing on one thing at a time to avoid becoming scattered and ineffective. This seems so obvious, yet can we honestly claim that we—or our leaders and governments—stick to this habit? Perhaps someday soon we will put our best minds and resources to good use for the benefit of all humanity. Most of us would do everything in our power to help our children battle a life-threatening illness. Can we not band together to do the same for our planet?

Mother Theresa once said, "We cannot do great things, only small things with great love." Great world changes start with small, personal, internal changes on a one-to-one basis, which blossom into massive movements encompassing much of humanity. The time and place to start is now and with yourself. Remember that the journey of a thousand miles begins with the first step.

CHOOSE WISELY

> The ultimate measure of a man is not where he stands in moments of comfort and convenience, but where he stands at times of challenge and controversy. —

Martin Luther King, Jr.

With all my being, I know that humankind cannot continue behaving as if the world was an infinite reservoir of natural resources that we may do with as we wish, consumed in ever-increasing amounts by an ever-increasing population. One of the things that defines humanity is the dual powers of creativity and free will. We have the power to choose wisely or foolishly, but choose we must. To choose to do nothing is still making a choice.

We may choose a planetary future from two paths traveling in opposite directions. We may choose to accept our responsibility in the co-creation of ourselves along with planet Earth—the source of everything around us and everything that we have come to be over the millennia. This type of responsibility requires a fully conscious and compassionate awareness of the consequences of our actions for the long-term health of both the Earth and humankind.

On the other hand, like lemmings rushing to the ocean, we can proceed toward famines, collapsing ecosystems, wars, and plagues. This is the path of business as usual, waiting for science and technology to come up with solutions, and ultimately suffering the consequences of the collapse of natural systems that took countless millennia to evolve.

Throughout human history, great changes have followed actions that began at a grassroots level before blossoming into large-scale movements. Individuals, households, and communities changed their attitudes and behaviors and made sacrifices. The choice is ours. For our own sakes and those of our children to the seventh generation and beyond, we must choose a path with a future that we can all look forward to. In the words of Robert Muller, a high-ranking official with the United Nations:

> Nothing but happiness is good enough for the genial and proud human race on planet Earth.
>
> Maximum peace, beauty, and happiness and not maximum economic welfare must be the objectives of the coming World Renaissance. The beauty of flowers is due to the care of the gardener. The beauty of the world will depend on the care of its gardeners. Let us therefore all become living gardeners of the world.

REFERENCES

The Big Picture

***an B 3.0: Mobilizing to Save Civilization,* by Lester R. Brown.** 2008, 399 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393330878. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $16.95

If you want to read a single book that summarizes clearly the current state of the world and how we got there, followed by a clear road map for how we must change our personal habits and government policies to give us the best chance to turn over a decent world to our children while avoiding global collapse, then this is the book for you. Brown shows us that if the United States

would devote just one-sixth of its current military budget toward his Plan B budget, we would stand a good chance of turning our world around. *Plan B* is usually updated to a new edition every year or two, so make sure you get the latest edition (4.0, 5.0, etc.).

***inning the Oil Endgame: Innovation for Profits, Jobs, and Security,* by Amory B. Lovins, E. Kyle Datta, Odd-Even Bustnes, Jonathan G. Koomey, and Nathan J. Glasgow.** 2005, 305 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1844071944. Published by the Rocky Mountain Institute, 1739 Snowmass Creek Road, Snowmass, CO 81654. List price $40.00

Amory Lovins, physicist, ecologist, technical innovator, and founder of the Rocky Mountain Institute, has coauthored a clear practical blueprint for weaning America from our oil addiction while jump-starting the economy and regaining our position as the world's leader in sustainable technology and innovation. The Rocky Mountain Institute has been hired by numerous governments and large corporations, including Wal-Mart and the Department of Defense, to study their internal systems and make recommendations for improving materials, process, and energy efficiencies. If you are a technically oriented person who likes details, facts, and figures, then this is the book for you. Lovins, who invented the term "negawatts" and has been a pioneer in the sustainability movement, clearly shows us that we can thrive while beating Peak Oil if we would just do the right things on a national and global scale.

***adle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things,* by William McDonough and Michael Braungart.** 2002, 208 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865475878. Published by North Point Press, a division of Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 19 Union Square West, New York, NY 10003. List price $27.50

This is a visionary, inspiring, practical book that provides a roadmap for transforming the way we make things from their current resource-depleting, toxic-waste-concentrating modes into nature-nurturing, nontoxic, and resource-friendly ways of doing business. The authors of this book are an architect and a chemist, who are actively guiding major corporations, manufacturers, and builders as they develop and implement these policies and ideas into their products and processes. Included are several case histories that show how their framework, vision, and guidance have helped clients to achieve radical improvements over the status quo. Truly an awesome book!

***ıtural Capitalism: Creating the Next Industrial Revolution*, by Paul Hawken, Amory Lovins, and Hunter Lovins.** 1999, 378 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0316353007. Published by Little, Brown and Co., Time Life Building, Sixth Ave., New York, NY 10020. List price $18.99

I wish *Natural Capitalism* were required reading for all engineers, businesspeople, and politicians. This book provides a blueprint for a worldwide business revolution that could go a long way toward providing a sustainable future for our children. *Natural Capitalism* explores changes that could reduce our current use of resources (the "natural capital" of the planet) by factors on the order of 10 to 1, without reducing our standard of living, by applying existing technologies and redirecting the way we do business. A rational, well-documented book with many case examples, it was written by three highly regarded members of the ecological movement, including founders of the Rocky Mountain Institute.

***rmaculture: Principles and Pathways Beyond Sustainability,* by David Holmgren.** 2002, 286 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0646418445. Published by Holmgren Design Services, 16 Fourteenth

St., Hepburn, Victoria 3461, Australia. List price $30.00

This is a visionary book for applying permaculture principles to help the world develop sustainable practices and more. By "going beyond sustainability," it looks at ways to restore the Earth while providing commerce, shelter, and sustenance for humankind. There has been plenty of environmental degradation over the past century, and Holgrem proposes changing the way the world works so we do more than just tread water, but actually start healing the planet and reversing the damage that we've done. Holmgren, along with Bill Mollison, are the co-originators of the concept and principles of permaculture. This is not a "how to grow a permaculture garden in your backyard" kind of book. For that, you should look to the references in Chapter 6.

***08 State of the World: Innovations for a Sustainable Economy,* by The Worldwatch Institute.** 2008, 250 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0393330311. Published by W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 500 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10110. List price $18.95

Worldwatch Institute comes out with a new edition of their excellent *State of the World* every year. *State of the World* summarizes current trends and includes several excellent informative chapters, contributed by different Worldwatch staff members and guest authors, on topics concerning the state and future of the world. This year's edition is exceptional. A collection of topnotch authors have each contributed articles on their personal areas of expertise pertaining to creating a viable sustainable world economy.

***e Natural Step for Business: Wealth, Ecology and the Evolutionary Corporation*, 2nd edition, by Brian Nattrass and Mary Altomare**. 2001, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865713840. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $16.95

The Natural Step (TNS) provides a framework and guidelines for businesses to make the move to sustainability. In addition to describing the concepts and framework of TNS, this book also provides a number of instructive case studies for how TNS has been applied and adopted by businesses and corporations to make truly meaningful shifts in the way they do business and help them plan their path toward sustainability. The authors are internationally recognized authorities on organizational strategies and the North American practice leaders for The Natural Step—one of the world's leading consultancies for sustainable development.

***e Natural Step: Towards a Sustainable Society (Schumacher Briefing #11),* by David Cook**. 2004, 96 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1903998472. Published by Green Books Ltd., Foxhole, Dartington, Totnes, Devon TQ9 6EB, England (distributed in the U.S. by Chelsea Green Publishing). List price $11.95

If you want a quick introduction to the framework and principles of TNS, this is a compact book that can be read over the course of a long plane ride. The author was appointed chief executive of TNS International in 2004, so he knows this material well, and has seen firsthand how it can radically shift the internal climate and focus of major corporations.

***ep Economy: The Wealth of Communities and the Durable Future,* by Bill McKibben**. 2007, 261 pp. (hardcover), ISBN 978-0805076264. Published by Times Books, Henry Holt and Company, 175 Fifth Ave., New York, NY 10010. List price $25.00

In this book Bill McKibben, author of the groundbreaking *End of Nature*, challenges the cult

of growth and globalization and explores both what is working in our world and what is not. He offers us a glimpse of a better world where business takes place on a smaller, more personal level with a better shot at ushering in a sustainable future.

***imate Solutions: A Citizen's Guide, What Works, What Doesn't and Why,* by Peter Barnes.** 2008, 94 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1603580052. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $9.95

With all the climate solution proposals on the table, it can be difficult to figure out which of the myriad of proposals actually stands a decent chance of preventing global catastrophe, and which ones give "feel-good" lip service to battling climate change, but in truth embody such small shifts in our carbon habits that they won't do much good. This book takes a critical look at each of the main types of proposals, and tells you which ones are worth far more than the paper they are written on and which ones are not.

***ur Ecological Footprint: Reducing Human Impact on the Earth,* by Mathis Wackernagel and William Rees**. 1996, 160 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865713123. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $14.95

The ecological footprint is a valuable tool for gauging our progress (or lack of progress) on the road to sustainability, helping us to determine the most effective direction to take, and for determining the relative impacts of various options, such as urban developments, energy installations, industrial processes, and so on. This book entertains as it illuminates many different sustainability concepts in teaching the reader about ecological footprints.

***tting a Grip: Clarity, Creativity and Courage in a World Gone Mad,* by Frances Moore Lappé.** 2007, 208 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0979414244. Published by Small Planet Media, 25 Mt. Auburn St., Cambridge, MA 02138. Distributed by Chelsea Green Publishing. List price $14.95

This excellent inspiring book is not specifically about sustainability, but rather about rewriting democracy to build the kind of world that works. Simply because we have not seen the results we want from democracy over the last 50 years is no reason to stop trying. The time to wake up and take charge is now, and Lappé gives us tools to help us take our power back while proactively driving meaningful change in our world to avert global crisis and collapse. Shift happens!

Personal Action on a Smaller Scale

***dical Simplicity: Small Footprints on a Finite Earth,* by Jim Merkel**. 2003, 288 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865714731. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $17.95

If you truly want to live a low-impact life on Earth and wish to do your individual part to make sustainability a way of life, then you should get this book. This is a powerful, practical workbook to help you evaluate your footprint on planet Earth, look critically at the various options for reducing your personal impact, decide what level of personal impact you feel you can accept, and plan the changes to shift your life so that it becomes a living testament to your

commitment to a sustainable world. Written by a man who lives and walks his talk, Merkel is an ex-military engineer who quit his job and changed his life after the Exxon Valdez ecological disaster.

***w Carbon Diet: A 30 Day Program to Lose 5,000 Pounds,* by David Gershon.** 2006, 76 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0963032720. Published by Empowerment Institute, P.O. Box 428, Woodstock, NY 12498. Distributed by Chelsea Green Publishing. List price $12.95

This is a well-organized, clear, simple guide to quickly reducing your carbon footprint on our planet. Includes personal action items and checklists as well as community action suggestions.

***rve God, Save the Planet: A Christian Call to Action,* by J. Matthew Sleeth, M.D.** 2007, 256 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0310275343. Published by Zondervan, 5300 Patterson Ave. SE, Grand Rapids, MI 49530. List price $14.99

At a time when fundamentalist Christian neocons often preach that it is our God-given right to ruin this planet, Matthew Sleeth gives us a refreshing Christian view that it is our biblical imperative to serve God by saving the planet. Sleeth, a former emergency room director and chief of medical staff, now writes, preaches, and teaches full time about faith and the environment.

***s Easy Being Green: A Handbook for Earth-Friendly Living,* by Crissy Trask.** 2006, 168 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1586857721. Published by Gibbs Smith, P.O. Box 667, Layton, UT 84041. List price $12.95

Not as radical or potentially life-changing as *Radical Simplicity*, this book is a handy and entertaining guide to help you make positive, lower impact choices as you go about your daily life. The steps and products recommended in this book will help you to make wise consumer and lifestyle decisions that significantly reduce your ecological impact, while you vote with your choices and pocketbook to help support businesses, practices, and products that make a significant difference.

***hat Can I Do?: An Alphabet for Living,* by Lisa Harrow.** 2004, 127 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1931498661. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $7.95

If you are computer savvy and like to do your reading and research on the Internet, then this book could be quite helpful. In addition to offering brief suggestions and guidelines for political and personal actions, its primary focus is an A–Z directory to the best Internet Web sites for in-depth information and action (organized under the category headings, such as political action, air quality, water issues, health, fair trade, global warming, junk mail, nuclear, plastics, and so on).

***et for a New America: How Your Food Choices Affect Your Health, Happiness and the Future of Life on Earth,* by John Robbins.** 1998, 423 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0915811816. Published by H.J. Kramer, Inc., P.O. Box 1082, Tiburon, CA 94920. List price $14.95

This is a very powerful, engrossing, and eloquent book about the staggering social, ethical, environmental, and health impacts of eating meat. Until reading this book, most people (me included) have no idea of the magnitude of the hidden costs for supporting a heavy meat diet. This book has converted many people to vegetarianism who had not previously given it much thought.

Sustainable Communities

***ocities: Rebuilding Cities in Balance with Nature,* by Richard Register**. 2006, 373 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865715523. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $23.95

A deep, inspiring, visionary book that offers a collection of examples and ideas for how to positively transform our cities into nurturing, balanced, ecologically based centers that honor both the human spirit and the biosphere. Register is one of the world's foremost thinkers and innovators in the field of ecologically based city planning and development. He is the founder of Urban Ecology and Ecocity Builders, and convened the first International Ecocity Conference in 1990.

***e Renewable City: A Comprehensive Guide to an Urban Revolution,* by Peter Droege**. 2006, 322 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0470019269. Published by John Wiley and Sons Ltd., The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, England. List price $55.00

Whether you are a city planner, political decision maker, architect, or simply a concerned citizen who is worried about the future of our cities in a post–Peak Oil world, I highly recommend that you read this book. It is an original guide to an entirely unprecedented urban transformation, from our current unsustainable energy- and resource-intensive cities into cities and towns powered by renewable energy, transporting people efficiently, and processing our wastes sustainably. This is a useful, practical guide for transforming the way we build and manage our cities. It is based upon the most successful past and present urban sustainability trends and emerging technologies, integrating renewable energy and innovative transportation solutions into urban planning and the design of cities. A powerful tool for the innovative implementation of current best-practices, applying lessons from advanced cities around the world.

***Convenient Truth: Urban Solutions from Curitiba, Brazil,* by Giovani Vaz Del Bello.** 2007 (DVD), ASIN B000OONRSY. Produced by Maria Terezinha Vaz, Maria Vaz Photography, P.O. Box 4005, Felton, CA 95018. List price $20.00

One of the best ways to learn about practical solutions that can be applied to help make our cities more sustainable is to watch this fine documentary on Curitiba, Brazil, the world's leading example of proactive city planning guided by ecological and humanistic principles.

***ovillage Living: Restoring the Earth and Her People,* Hildur Jackson and Karen Svensson (editors).** 2002, 183 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1903998168. Published by Green Books Ltd., Foxhole, Dartington, Totnes, Devon TQ9 6EB, England. List price $24.95

This beautiful book is a great introduction to ecovillages. In addition to providing a visual tour through a number of ecovillages from across the globe, it also includes articles written by a variety of ecovillage innovators that show you how they each provide unique solutions to sustainable ecological living that could be applied on a larger scale to solving these problems in our cities.

***wiotas: A Village to Reinvent the World,* by Alan Weisman.** 1999, 240 pp. (paperback), ISBN

978-1890132286. Published by Chelsea Green Publishing, P.O. Box 428, White River Junction, VT 05001. List price $16.95

Gaviotas is a village in the remote, barren, rain-leached savannas of eastern Columbia. The United Nations named the village a model for the developing world. Founded by a group of idealists in 1971, it provides a glimmer of hope for our planet. If in the middle of turbulent and brutal Columbia, a utopian society of artists, engineers, and visionaries can create a sustainable community where they grow crops and regenerate indigenous rainforest on the barren local landscapes—while innovative inventions generate power, process and recycle human waste, and pump and purify water—then perhaps we really can spread sustainability throughout the world.

***eating a Life Together: Practical Tools to Grow Ecovillages and Intentional Communities,* by Diane Leafe Christian**. 2003, 272 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-0865714717. Published by New Society Publishers, P.O. Box 189, Gabriola Island, British Columbia V0R 1X0, Canada. List price $27.95

If you are interested in joining or founding an ecovillage, then this book should be on your "must read" list. The author is a member of Earthhaven Ecovillage in North Carolina and was the editor of *Communities Magazine* (a worldwide magazine about and for ecovillages and intentional communities) from 1993 to 2007. During this period of resurgent interest in these types of communities, she noted that about 90 percent of them failed and 10 percent were successful, and that there were certain strategies and characteristics that were shared by the successful communities that contributed to their success. Similarly, there were other actions common among the failures. Diane shares here examples and observations of both the successful communities and the failed ones for the benefit of all.

***eating Sustainable Cities (Schumacher Briefing #2),* by Herbert Girardet**. 1999, 77 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1903998472. Published by Green Books Ltd., Foxhole, Dartington, Totnes, Devon TQ9 6EB, England. List price $10.95

This is an excellent introduction to the challenges and strategies for transforming our cities in the direction of sustainability. The author is a visiting professor of environmental planning at Middlesex University in London. His writings, television specials, and research make him one of the world's foremost thinkers and city planners involved in the movement to transform the world's cities in a positive direction, and have earned him a UN Global 500 award.

***ovillages: New Frontiers for Sustainability (Schumacher Briefing #12),* by Jonathan Dawson**. 2006, 94 pp. (paperback), ISBN 978-1870098779. Published by Green Books Ltd., Foxhole, Dartington, Totnes, Devon TQ9 6EB, England. List price $14.00

Another book in the line of Schumacher Briefings, this one provides an overview and analysis of ecovillages, followed by a resource guide for those who wish to find out more on this subject.

Magazines

orld Watch Magazine. Subscription: $33.00 per year for 6 issues. Worldwatch Institute, P.O. Box 879, Oxon Hill, MD 20750. Call (877) 539-9946 or see their Web site at www.worldwatch.org.

This excellent magazine provides a "vision for a sustainable world." *World Watch Magazine* offers excellent insightful, educational, and illuminating articles on sustainability, ecology, and current trends/solutions.

Magazine. Subscription: $19.95 per year for 6 issues. E/The Environmental Magazine, 28 Knight St., Norwalk, CT 06851. Call (800) 967-6572 or see their Web site at www.emagazine.com.

E provides a mix of features, news, and lifestyle stories to keep you up to date on all things environmental—from recycling to rainforests, the global village, and your own backyard. *E* reports on key issues and provides practical information on topics such as healthy food choices, eco-friendly products, eco-travel, environmental alerts, etc.

le Magazine. Subscription: $29.95 per year for 10 issues. Ode Magazine, 35 Miller Ave., Suite 330, Mill Valley, CA 94941. Call (888) 633-6242 or see their Web site at www.odemagazine.com.

Ode is a print and online publication about positive news—the people and ideas that are changing our world for the better. I truly enjoy reading this magazine, which is a refreshing solutions-oriented change from most of the negative news you normally see.

s Magazine. Subscription: $17.00 per year for 4 issues. Yes Magazine, 284 Madrona Way NE, Suite 116, Bainbridge Island, WA 98110. Call (800) 937-4451 or see their Web site at www.yesmagazine.org.

Yes is a positive, solutions-oriented type of magazine. *Yes* invites readers to be part of a global community of change makers. Each issue focuses on a theme, showing the possibilities and practical steps that can lead us all to a more positive sustainable future.

mmunities Magazine. Subscription: $24.00 per year for 4 issues. Fellowship for Intentional Community, RR 1 Box 156-W, Rutledge, MO 63563. Call (800) 995-8342 or see their Web site at www.communities.ic.org.

Published by the Fellowship for Intentional Communities, *Communities* is the primary source for the latest issues, information, and inspiring new ideas for intentional communities in North America, including urban co-ops, cohousing, ecovillages, and rural communities.

e Permaculture Activist. Subscription: $23.00 per year for 4 issues. The Permaculture Activist, P.O. Box 5516, Bloomington, IN 47407. Call (812) 335-0383 or see their Web site at www.permacultureactivist.net.

This is the "official" permaculture periodical in the U.S. Lots of great articles, book reviews, product reviews, and so on. Their Web site offers a wealth of information, permaculture links, calendars of events, permaculture course listings, seed sources, and such.

RESOURCES

orldwatch Institute, 1776 Massachusetts Ave., N.W., Washington, D.C. 20036-1904; phone: (202) 452-1999; fax: (202) 296-7365; Web site:www.worldwatch.org.

Check out WI books and the Web site for accurate and enlightening information on the state of the world. WI is dedicated to fostering the evolution of an environmentally sustainable society—one in which human needs are met in ways that do not threaten the health of the natural

environment or the prospects of future generations. The institute seeks to achieve this goal through the conduct of interdisciplinary nonpartisan research on emerging global environmental issues, the results of which are widely disseminated throughout the world.

ɔcky Mountain Institute, 1739 Snowmass Creek Road, Snowmass, CO 81654; phone: (970) 927-3851; fax: (970) 927-3420; Web site: www.rmi.org.

Rocky Mountain Institute is a nonprofit research and educational foundation with a vision across boundaries. Its mission is to foster the efficient and sustainable use of resources as a path to global security. The institute creates, and helps individuals and private sector businesses to practice, new solutions to old problems—mainly by harnessing the problem-solving power of market economics and of advanced techniques for resource efficiency. These people are real shakers and movers in the movement to create a sustainable future for our planet. They consult for several megacorporations, and have helped Wal-Mart and the Department of Defense to radically improve their energy and materials efficiencies.

ıe Natural Step, 317 SW Alder, Suite 1050, Portland, OR 97204; phone: (530) 241-1140; fax: (530) 227-2917; Web site: www.naturalstep.org.

Originally founded in Sweden, The Natural Step now has branches in a number of other countries, including the UK, U.S., Canada, Australia, Italy, France, Brazil, and South Africa. Since 1988, The Natural Step has worked to accelerate global sustainability by guiding companies, communities, and governments onto an ecologically, socially, and economically sustainable path. More than 70 people in 11 countries work with an international network of sustainability experts, scientists, universities, and businesses to create solutions, innovative models, and tools for leading the transition to a sustainable future.

DBC (McDonough Braungart Design Chemistry), 1001 E. Market St., Suite 101, Charlottesville, VA 22902; phone: (434) 295-1111; fax: (434) 295-1500; Web site: www.mbdc.com.

MBDC is a product and process design firm dedicated to revolutionizing the design of products and services worldwide. William McDonough and Dr. Michael Braungart, authors of the groundbreaking book *Cradle-To-Cradle*, founded MBDC in 1995 to promote and shape what they call the "Next Industrial Revolution"

through the introduction of a new design paradigm called Cradle to Cradle Design and the implementation of eco-effective design principles. Know anybody who is active in the manufacturing or design fields? If so, encourage them to work with MDBC to help their company make the shift to sustainable products and manufacturing.

obal Footprint Network, 312 Clay Street, Suite 300, Oakland, CA 94607; phone: (510) 839-8879; fax: (510) 251-2410; Web site:www.footprintnetwork.org.

The Global Footprint Network is dedicated to advancing the scientific rigor and practical application of the Ecological Footprint, a tool that quantifies human demands on nature and nature's capacity to meet these demands. Conceived in 1990 by Mathis Wackernagel and William Rees at the University of British Columbia, the Ecological Footprint is now in wide use by governments, communities, and businesses to monitor current ecological resource balances and to plan for the future. Their vision is to make the Ecological Footprint just as prominent for measuring a country's ecological impact and sustainability progress as the gross domestic

product (GDP) is for measuring economic output.

obal Ecovillage Network, 312 Clay Street, Suite 300, Oakland, CA 94607; phone: (510) 839-8879; fax: (510) 251-2410; Web site: www.gen.ecovillage.org.

The Global Ecovillage Network is a global confederation of people and communities that meet and share their ideas; exchange technologies; develop cultural and educational exchanges, directories, and newsletters; and are dedicated to restoring the land and living "sustainable plus" lives by putting more back into the environment than they take out. This organization provides a forum and support for the world's network of ecovillages, an ecovillage directory, resource listings, calendar of events, and so on.

ocity Builders, P.O. Box 697, Oakland, CA 94604; phone: (510) 444-4508; fax: (510) 444-4508; Web site: www.ecocitybuilders.org.

Ecocity Builders is a nonprofit organization dedicated to reshaping cities for the long-term health of human and natural systems. Their goals include returning healthy biodiversity to the heart of our cities, agriculture to community gardens and the streets, and convenience and pleasure to walking, bicycling, and transit. They seek to build thriving city and neighborhood centers while reversing sprawl development; to build whole cities based on human needs and "access by proximity" rather than cities built in the current pattern of automobile-driven excess, wasteful consumption, and the destruction of the biosphere. Check out the annual Ecocity World Summit for an incredible array of awesome speakers and presentations.

ıe Community Solution, P.O. Box 243, Yellow Springs, OH 45387; phone: (866) 767-2161; Web site: www.communitysolution.org.

The Community Solution program is a national resource of knowledge and practices for low-energy living and self-reliant communities. They provide educational resources concerning the global oil production peak and climate change, and design solutions to the current unsustainable, fossil-fuel based, overly centralized way of living. They have an excellent Web site for educating yourself about both our biggest problems as well as potential solutions and personal/global action.

Bibliography

Note: The following list includes references used in this book as well as additional recommended works.

AA Solar. "Design Guide." Available at http://www.aaasolar.com. Accessed April 2000.

BC TV. "Over a Barrel." Transcript of program televised on February 9, 1999. Available at http://www.abc.net.au/lateline/stories/s49069.htm. Accessed June 2, 2000.

EI (Alternative Energy Institute). "Report on the World Oil Forum: October 30, 1998 in Denver, Colorado, USA," February 14, 1999. Available at http://www.altenergy.org/2/nonrenewables/fossil_fuel/depletion/denver_energy_meeting/denver_ Accessed May 1999.

gricola, Georgius. *De re Metallica*. Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 1950.

exander, R. F. "Beginning Considerations for Passive Solar Design: Comments on the Page 36 House Plan." *Adobe Builder*, Spring 1997.

ibek, Ken. *Biohazard: The Chilling True Story of the Largest Covert Biological Weapons Program in the World—Told from the Inside by the Man Who Ran It*. New York: Dell Publishing, 1999.

lsopp, Michelle, Richard Page, Paul Johnston, and David Santillo. *Oceans in Peril: Protecting Marine Biodiversity.* Washington, DC: Worldwatch Institute, 2007.

nann, Jennifer Thorne, Alex Wilson, and Katie Ackerly. *Consumer Guide to Home Energy Savings: All New Listings of the Most Efficient Products You Can Buy,* 9th edition. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2007.

ıderson, Lorraine, and Rick Palkovic. *Cooking with Sunshine: The Complete Guide to Solar Cuisine with 150 Easy Sun-Cooked Recipes.* New York: Marlowe and Company, 2006.

ıdrews, Jack. *New Edge of the Anvil: A Resource Book for the Blacksmith*. Berlin, MD: SkipJack Press, 1994.

O, Lono Kahuna Kupua. *Don't Drink the Water (Without Reading This Book): The Essential Guide to Our Contaminated Drinking Water and What You Can Do About It*. Pagosa Springs, CO: Kali Press, 1998.

RM (Atmospheric Radiation Measurement program of the U.S. Department of Energy). "Methane Gas" and "Carbon Dioxide." Available at http://www.arm/gov/docs/education/globwarm/methexpert.html and http://www.arm.gov/docs/education/globwarm/carbexpert.html, respectively. Accessed April 2000.

ıhworth, Susan. *Seed to Seed: Seed Saving and Growing Techniques for Vegetable Gardeners.*

Decorah, IA: Seed Savers Exchange, 2002.

cheson, John. “Ticking Time Bomb.” *Baltimore Sun*, December 15, 2004. Available at http://www.commondreams.org/views04/1215-24.htm. Downloaded October 2007.

Kisson, Alan. *Believing Cassandra: An Optimist Looks at a Pessimist’s World.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1999.

ıerbach, Paul S. *Wilderness Medicine*, 5th edition. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, an imprint of Elsevier, 2007.

ıken, John Van. *The End Times: Prophecies of the Coming Changes: Including Prophecies and Predictions from the Bible, Nostradamus, Holy Mother, Edgar Cayce*. Virginia Beach, VA: A.R.E. Press, 1996.

/allone, Eugene A., and Theodore Baumeister III, eds. *Mark’s Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1996.

———. *Mark’s Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers,*11th edition. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006.

WEA (American Wind Energy Association). “1999 Global Wind Energy Market Report.” Available at http://www.awea.org/news/news991223glo.html. Accessed April 2000.

———. “Global Wind Energy Market Report: Wind Energy Expands Steadily in 2004.” Available at http://www.awea.org/pubs/documents/globalmarket2005.pdf. Accessed February 2008.

———. “Wind Power Outlook 2007.” Available at http://www.awea.org/pubs/documents/Outlook_2007.pdf. Accessed February 2008.

ıiracli-Levy, Juliette De. *Complete Herbal Handbook for Farm and Stable*. New York: Faber and Faber, 1991.

ıird, George, Andrew Alcorn, and Phil Haslam. “The Energy Embodied in Building Materials—Updated New Zealand Coefficients and their Significance.” *IPENZ Transactions*, vol. 4, no. 1/CE, 1997. Available at http://www.ipenz.org.nz/ipenz/publications/indexes/transaction/transactions97/civil/7baird.pdf. Accessed December 2007.

ıkule, Paula Dreifus, ed. *Rodale’s Book of Practical Formulas*. New York: Fine Communications, 1997.

ılch, James F., M.D., and Phyllis A. Balch, C.N.C. *Prescription for Nutritional Healing: A Practical A–Z Reference to Drug-Free Remedies Using Vitamins, Minerals, Herbs and Food Supplements*. New York: Avery Publishing Group, 1997.

ıldwin, William J., D.D.S. *Spirit Releasement Therapy: A Technique Manual.* Terra Alta, WV: Headline Books, 1995.

ımboo Technologies. “Bamboo’s Role in Environmental Restoration.” Available at http://www.bambooliving.com/environment.html. Accessed January 2008.

ınks, Howard. “Cheap Oil: Enjoy It While It Lasts.” *Forbes*, June 15, 1998.

ıranowski, Zane, C. N. *Colloidal Silver: The Natural Antibiotic Alternative*. New York: Healing Wisdom Publications, 1995.

ırker, Jennifer Stein. *The Morning Hill Solar Cookery Book.* Canyon City, OR: Morning Hill Associates, 1999.

ırlow, Russ. "Residential Fuel Cells: Hope or Hype?" *Home Power Magazine*, no. 72, August/September 1999.

ırnes, Peter. *Climate Solutions: A Citizen's Guide, What Works, What Doesn't and Why.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing, 2008.

ırrow, C. J. *Land Degradation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1991.

ırtholomew, Mel. *Square Foot Gardening*. Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1981.

———. *All New Square Foot Gardening: Grow More in Less Space!* Franklin, TN: Cool Springs Press , 2006.

3C News. "Atlantic Ocean's CO_2 Absorption Halves." October 20, 2007. Available at http://www.abc.net.au/news/stories/2007/10/20/2065101.htm?section=world. Accessed November 2007.

———. "Virtually Untreatable TB Found." September 6, 2006. Available at http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/health/5317624.stm. Accessed November 2007.

:arak, Barry, and Celia W. Dugger. "Power Failures Outrage South Africa." *The New York Times*, January 31, 2008.

:ard, D. C. *Shelters, Shacks and Shanties and How to Build Them*. New York: The Lyons Press, 1999.

:ck, Robert C., D.Sc. *A First Aid Kit of the Future: The Beck Protocol.* Kelowna, British Columbia, Canada: Sharing Health From the Heart, Inc., 2002.

:cker, Gavin de. *The Gift of Fear: And Other Survival Signals That Protect Us from Violence.* New York: Dell Publishing, 1999.

:cker, Robert O. *Cross Currents: The Perils of Electropollution, the Promise of Electromedicine.* New York: Tarcher/Penguin, 1990.

:cker, Robert O., M.D., and Gary Selden. *The Body Electric:Electromagnetism and the Foundation of Life.* New York: William Morrow and Company, 1985.

:eby, John. *Future Fertility: Transforming Human Waste into Human Wealth*. Willits, CA: Ecology Action, 1995.

———. *Test Your Soil with Plants!* Willits, CA: Ecology Action, 1995.

:langer, Jerry. *Storey's Guide to Raising Dairy Goats: Breeds, Care, Dairying***.** North Adams, MA: Storey Publishing, 2000.

:ll, Frank A., Jr. "Review of Effects of Silver-Impregnated Carbon Filters on Microbial Water Quality." *Journal AWWA*, August 1991.

:llo, Giovani Vaz Del. *A Convenient Truth: Urban Solutions from Curitiba, Brazil* (DVD). Felton, CA: Maria Vaz Photography, 2007.

:nson, Tedd. *Building the Timber Frame House: The Revival of a Forgotten Craft.* Newtown, CT: Taunton Press, 1986.

———. *The Timber Frame-Home: Design, Construction, Finishing.* Newtown, CT: Taunton Press, 1997.

———. *Timberframe: The Art and Craft of the Post-and-Beam Home.* Newtown, CT: Taunton Press, 1999.

:rger, Steve. "Ancient Arts, Modern Technology." *Natural Home Magazine*, July/August 2000.

ringuccio, Vannoccio. *The Pirotechnia of Vannoccio Biringuccio:The Classic Sixteenth-Century Treatise on Metals and Metallurgy*. Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 2006.

ankenship, Bart, and Robin Blankenship. *Earth Knack: Stone Age Skills for the 21st Century*. Layton, UT: Gibbs Smith, 1996.

ume, David. *Alcohol Can Be a Gas: Fueling an Ethanol Revolution for the 21st Century.* Santa Cruz, CA: International Institute for Ecological Agriculture, 2007.

umenthal, Betsy. *Hands On Dyeing.* Loveland, CO: Interweave Press, 1988.

›wer, John. *The Healthy House: How to Buy One, How to Build One, How to Cure a Sick One*. Bloomington, IN: The Healthy House Institute, 1998.

adley, Fern Marshall, and Barbara W. Ellis, eds. *Rodale's All-New Encyclopedia of Organic Gardening: The Indispensable Resource for Every Gardener*. Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1993.

agg, Paul C., N.D., Ph.D., and Patricia Bragg, N.D., Ph.D. *The Miracle of Fasting: Proven Throughout History for Physical, Mental, and Spiritual Rejuvenation.* Santa Barbara, CA: Health Science, 2004.

ennan, Barbara Ann. *Hands of Light: A Guide to Healing Through the Human Energy Field.* New York: Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishers, 1988.

ill, Steve, and Evelyn Dean. *Identifying and Harvesting Edible and Medicinal Plants in Wild (and Not So Wild) Places.* New York: Hearst Books, 1994.

inker, Francis, N.D. *Herb Contraindications and Drug Interactions.* Sandy, OR: Eclectic Medical Publications, 1998.

ower, Michael, and Warren Levon. *The Consumer's Guide to Effective Environmental Choices*. New York: Three Rivers Press, 1999.

own, Deni. *New Encyclopedia of Herbs and Their Uses: The Definitive Guide to Identification, Cultivation, and Uses of Herbs (The Herb Society of America).* New York: DK Publishing, 2001.

own, Lester R. "Climate Change Has World Skating on Thin Ice," *Worldwatch Issue Alert*, no. 7, August 29, 2000.

———. *Plan B 2.0: Rescuing a Planet Under Stress and a Civilization in Trouble*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2006.

———. *Plan B 3.0: Mobilizing to Save Civilization*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2008.

———. "Distillery Demand for Grain to Fuel Cars Vastly Understated: World May be Facing Highest Grain Prices in History." *Earth Policy Institute Eco-Economy Updates*, January 4, 2007. Available at http://www.earth-policy.org/Updates/2007/Update63.htm. Accessed December 2007.

own, Lester R., Christopher Flavin, and Hillary French. *State of the World 1999: A Worldwatch Institute Report on Progress Towards a Sustainable Society*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1999.

———. *State of the World 2000*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2000.

own, Lester R., Christopher Flavin, and Sandra Postel. *Saving the Planet: How to Shape an Environmentally Sustainable Global Economy*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1991.

own, Lester R., Michael Renner, and Christopher Flavin. *Vital Signs 1998: The Environmental Trends That Are Shaping Our Future*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1998.

own, Lester R., Michael Renner, and Brian Halweil. *Vital Signs 1999: The Environmental Trends That Are Shaping Our Future*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1999.

———. *Vital Signs 2000: The Environmental Trends That Are Shaping Our Future*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2000.

own, Rachel. *The Weaving, Spinning and Dyeing Book.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1983.

own, Tom, Jr. *Tom Brown's Field Guide to Nature Observation and Tracking.* New York: Berkley Publishing Group, 1988.

———. *Tom Brown's Field Guide to Wilderness Survival.* New York: Berkley Publishing Group, 1987.

yant, Edward A., George P. Fulton, and George C. Budd. *Disinfection Alternatives for Safe Drinking Water*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1992.

ıbel, Mike, and Nancy Bubel. *Root Cellaring: Natural Cold Storage of Fruits and Vegetables.* Pownal, VT: Storey Publishing, 1991.

ıchanan, Rita. *A Weaver's Garden: Growing Plants for Natural Dyes and Fibers.* Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 1999.

ıhner, Stephen Harrod. *Herbal Antibiotics: Natural Alternatives for Treating Drug-Resistant Bacteria.* Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1999.

ırns, Max. *Cottage Water Systems: An Out-of-the City Guide to Pumps, Plumbing, Water Purification, and Privies*. Toronto, Ontario, Canada: Cottage Life Books, 1999.

rnes, Michael. "Antarctic Melting May Be Speeding Up." *Reuters*, March 23, 2007. Available at http://www.commondreams.org/archive/2007/03/23/25/. Accessed March 2007.

ımara, John A. *Electrical Engineering Reference Manual for the Electrical and Computer PE Exam,* 7th edition. Belmont, CA: Professional Publications, Inc., 2006.

ımpbell, Colin J. “The Twenty-First Century: The World’s Endowment of Conventional Oil and Its Depletion.” January 1996. Available at http://www.hubbertpeak.com/campbell/camfull.htm. Accessed March 2000.

———. *The Coming Oil Crisis*. Geneva, Switzerland: Petroconsultants S.A., 1997.

ımpbell, Stu. *The Home Water Supply: How to Find, Filter, Store and Conserve It.* Pownal, VT: Storey Publishing, 1983.

ırlo, George, and Martin Schram. *Cell Phones: Invisible Hazards in the Wireless Age*. New York: Carroll and Graf Publishers, an imprint of Avalon Publishing Group, 2002.

ırpenter, Bob. “Cast Earth: A New Form of Earthbuilding Takes Shape.” *Adobe Builder*, Spring 1997.

ırroll, Ricki. *Home Cheesemaking: Recipes for 75 Homemade Cheeses.* North Adams, MA: Storey Publishing, 2002.

ırroll, Ricki, and Robert Carroll. *Cheesemaking Made Easy.* Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1995.

ısh, John D., and Martin G. Cash. *Producer Gas for Motor Vehicles*. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1997.

ıtton, William R., Jr. *Overshoot: The Ecological Basis of Revolutionary Change.* Champaign, IL: University of Illinois Press, 1982.

ıvitch, Susan Miller. *The Soapmaker’s Companion: A Comprehensive Guide with Recipes, Techniques, Know-How*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1997.

DIAC (Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Center). “Frequently Asked Global Change Questions.” Available at http://cdiac.esd.ornl.gov/pns/faq.html. Accessed April 2000.

ıambers, Robert. *Log Building Construction Manual*. River Falls, WI: Robert Chambers, 1999.

ıandler, Deborah. *Learning to Weave.* Loveland, CO: Interweave Press, 1995.

ıappell, Steve. *The Alternative Building Sourcebook: Traditional, Natural, and Sustainable Building Products and Services.* Brownfield, ME: Maple Press, 1998.

———. *A Timber Framer’s Workshop: Joinery, Design, and Construction of Traditional Timber Frames*. Brownfield, ME: Maple Press, 1998.

ıarney, Len. *Build a Yurt: The Low-Cost Mongolian Round House*. New York: Sterling Publishing Company, 1981.

ıatfield, Kimball, L.Ac., O.M.D. *Medicine from the Mountains:Medicinal Plants of the High Sierra Nevada.* South Lake Tahoe, CA: Range of Light Publications, 1997.

ıevallier, Andrew, F.N.I.M.H. *Encyclopedia of Herbal Medicine:The Definitive Reference to 550 Herbs and Remedies for Common Ailments.* New York: DK Publishing, 2000.

ıilton, Pamela, C.H.T., and Hugh Harmon, Ph.D. *Odyssey of the Soul, A Trilogy: Book I, Apocatastasis.* Rancho Mirage, CA: Quick Book Publishing, 1997.

ıiras, Daniel D. *The Homeowner’s Guide to Renewable Energy:Achieving Energy Independence through Solar, Wind, Biomass and Hydropower*. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada:

New Society Publishers, 2006.

———. *The Natural House: A Complete Guide to Healthy, Energy-Efficient, Environmental Homes.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2000.

———. *The New Ecological Home: A Complete Guide to Green Building Options.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2004.

———. *The Solar House: Passive Heating and Cooling*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2002.

ıopra, Deepak, M.D. *Quantum Healing: Exploring the Frontiers of Mind/Body Medicine*. New York: Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, 1989.

ıristian, Diane Leafe. *Creating a Life Together: Practical Tools to Grow Ecovillages and Intentional Communities.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2003.

ark, Elizabeth Wheeler. *Addicted to Baskets: 20 Original Baskets with Step-by-Step Instructions*. New Bern, NC: Griffin and Tilghman Publishing, 1997.

ark, Hulda Regehr, Ph.D., N.D. *The Cure for All Advanced Cancers* . Chula Vista, CA: New Century Press, 1999.

———. *The Cure for All Diseases.* Chula Vista, CA: New Century Press, 1995.

———. *The Cure and Prevention of all Cancers*. Chula Vista, CA: New Century Press, 2007.

ark, Sam. *Independent Builder: Designing and Building a House Your Own Way.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1996.

ŃN News. "America's Food Supply Vulnerable?; Saudi Arabian Oil and Terror," aired December 6, 2004. Transcript available at http://transcripts.cnn.com/TRANSCRIPTS/0412/06/pzn.01.html. Accessed November 2007.

———. "Italy Recovering from Big Blackout," September 28, 2003. Available at http://www.cnn.com/2003/WORLD/europe/09/28/italy.blackout/index.html. Accessed October 2007.

———. "Major Power Outage Hits New York, Other Large Cities," August 14, 2003. Available at http://www.cnn.com/2003/US/08/14/power.outage/. Accessed March 2008.

———. "Sagging Power Lines, Hot Weather Blamed for Blackout," August 11, 1996. Available at http://www.cnn.com/US/9608/11/power.outage. Accessed June 2000.

ŃR (Center for Nutritional Research). "All About Colostrum." Available at http://www.bovinecolostrum.com/info/allabout.htm. Accessed June 2000.

›bleigh, Rolfe. *Handy Farm Devices and How to Make Them.* New York: The Lyons Press, 2007.

›ffee, Hugh L. *Ditch Medicine: Advanced Field Procedures for Emergencies.* Boulder, CO: Paladin Press, 1993.

›hen, Mark Nathan. *Health and the Rise of Civilization*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1989.

›leman, Eliot. *Four-Season Harvest*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1992.

———. *The New Organic Grower: A Master's Manual of Tools and Techniques for the Home and Market Gardener*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1995.

›lwell, Rita R., et al. "Reduction of Cholera in Bangladeshi Villages by Simple Filtration." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, January 14, 2003. Available at http://www.pubmedcentral.nih.gov/articlerender.fcgi?artid=298724. Accessed December 2007.

›nant, Jeff and Pam Fadem. *A Community Guide to Environmental Health.* Berkeley, CA: Hesperian, 2008.

›ok, David. *The Natural Step: Towards a Sustainable Society (Schumacher Briefing #11).* Totnes, Devon, UK: Green Books Ltd., 2004.

›uplan, Francois, Ph.D. *The Encyclopedia of Edible Plants of North America: Nature's Green Feast*. New Canaan, CT: Keats Publishing, Inc., 1998.

›vey, Stephen R. *The 7 Habits of Highly Effective People*. New York: Fireside Books, 1990.

›wens, Deborah, and Tom Monte. *A Gift for Healing: How You Can Use Therapeutic Touch*. New York: Crown Publishing Group, 1996.

›x, Carol. *Learning to Grow All Your Own Food: One-Bed Model for Compost, Diet and Income Crops*. Willits, CA: Ecology Action, 1991.

ook, William G. *The Yeast Connection: A Medical Breakthrough.* New York: Vintage Books, 1986.

ımmings, Stephen, M.D., and Dana Ullman, M.P.H. (contributor). *Everybody's Guide to Homeopathic Medicines: Safe and Effective Remedies for You and Your Family.* New York: J. P. Tarcher, 2004.

ınningham, Sally Jean. *Great Garden Companions: A Companion-Planting System for a Beautiful, Chemical-Free Vegetable Garden.* Emmaus, PA: Rodale Books, 2000.

ımerow, Gail. *Storey's Guide to Raising Chickens: Care, Feeding, Facilities*. North Adams, MA: Storey Publishing, 1995.

ınkoff Solar. "Solar Water Pumping: A Practical Introduction." Available at www.dankoffsolar.com/reference/briefintro. Accessed May 2000.

ınks, Lisa Marie. *Building Your Ark: Your Personal Survival Guide to the Year 2000 Crisis.* West Fork, AR: DAL Enterprises, 1998.

ırley, Julian. *High Noon for Natural Gas: The New Energy Crisis*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2004.

ıvis, Elizabeth. *Heart and Hands: A Midwife's Guide to Pregnancy and Birth.* Berkeley, CA: Celestial Arts, 1997.

ıvis, Scott. *Microhydro: Clean Power from Water*. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada:

New Society Publishers, 2004.

ıwson, Jonathan. *Ecovillages: New Frontiers for Sustainability (Schumacher Briefing #12).* Totnes, Devon, UK: Green Books Ltd., 2006.

ıy, Laura. *Practical Intuition: How to Harness the Power of Your Instinct and Make It Work for You.* New York: Broadway Books, 1997.

:Korne, Clayton, ed. *JLC Field Guide to Residential Construction:A Manual of Best Practice, Volume 1.* Williston, VT: The Journal of Light Construction, 2003.

———. *JLC Field Guide to Residential Construction: A Manual of Best Practice, Volume 2.* Williston, VT: The Journal of Light Construction, 2005.

:l Porto, David, and Carol Steinfeld. *Composting Toilet System Book: A Practical Guide to Choosing, Planning and Maintaining Composting Toilet Systems.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1999.

:sert Research Institute (DRI). "Fuel Cells." Available at http://www.dri.edu/Projects/Energy/Fuelcells. Accessed May 2000.

:yo, Holly Drennan. *Dare To Prepare!* Pueblo West, CO: Deyo Enterprises, LLC, 2006.

amond, Jared. *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed.* New York: Viking Penguin, 2005.

ckson, Murray. *Where There Is No Dentist.* Berkeley, CA: The Hesperian Foundation, 1999.

derot, Denis. *A Diderot Pictorial Encyclopedia of Trades and Industry: Manufacturing and the Technical Arts in Plates Selected from "L'Encyclopedie, ou Dictionnaire Raisonne des Sciences, des Arts et des Metiers,"* Vol. 1. Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 1993.

tzhuyzen, Klaas van. "A Metal Melting Furnace." Available at wuarchive.wustl.edu/edu/arts/metal/TOC/proces/cast/ag_cast.html. Accessed May 2000.

ɔnelan, Peter. *Growing To Seed*. Willits, CA: Ecology Action, 1999.

ɔssey, Larry, M.D. *Healing Words: The Power of Prayer and the Practice of Medicine.* San Francisco, CA: Harper San Francisco, 1997.

ɔwding, Charles. *Organic Gardening: The Natural No-Dig Way.* Dartington, Totnes, UK: Green Books, Ltd., 2007.

'oege, Peter. *The Renewable City: A Comprehensive Guide to an Urban Revolution*. Chichester, West Sussex, England: John Wiley and Sons, 2006.

ıke, James A., Ph.D. *The Green Pharmacy: New Discoveries in Herbal Remedies for Common Diseases and Conditions from the World's Foremost Authority on Healing Herb*s. Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1999.

———. "Half the Story Is Worse Than No Story at All: Dr. Duke Responds to the Washington Post." Unpublished letter sent to author, April 18, 2000.

———. "Nature's Medicine: The Green Pharmacy." *Mother Earth News*, December/January 2000.

ınn, Kevin M. *Caveman Chemistry: 28 Projects from the Creation of Fire to the Production of Plastics.* Boca Raton, FL: Universal Publishers, 2003.

rl M. Jorgensen Co. *Steel and Aluminum Stock List*. Chicago: 1984.

stman, Wilbur F. *The Canning, Freezing, Curing and Smoking of Meat, Fish and Game*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1983.

ston, David. *The Rammed Earth House.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1996.

———. *The Rammed Earth House: Completely Revised Edition.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2007.

ology Action. "Worldwide Loss of Soil." Available at http://www.growbiointensive.org/biointensive/soil.html. Accessed January 2000.

osystems. "The Hubbert Peak of Oil Production." Available at http://www.hubbertpeak.com.
Eddy, Mary Baker. *Science and Health with Key to the Scriptures.* Boston, MA: The First Church of Christ, Scientist, 1991.

len, Donna. *Energy Medicine.* New York: Tarcher/Penguin, 1999.

ley, Anna. *Solviva: How to Grow $500,000 on One Acre and Peace on Earth*. Vineyard Haven, MA: Trailblazer Press, 1998.

lwards, David A., M.D., H.M.D. *Theory and Practice of Biological Medicine*. San Juan, Manila, Philippines: MG Reprographics, 1995.

nstein, Patricia. *Intuition: The Path to Inner Wisdom.* Rockport, MA: Element Books, 1997.

sler, Peter. "Powerful New Pollutants Imperil Drinking Water Supply." *USA Today*, October 21, 1998.

arius, Carol. *Small-Scale Livestock Farming: A Grass-Based Approach for Health, Sustainability, and Profit*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1999.

iade, Mircea. *Shamanism.* Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1986.

ias, Thomas S., and Peter A. Dykeman. *Edible Wild Plants: A North American Field Guide*. New York: Sterling Publishing Company, 1990.

liot, Doug. *Wild Roots: A Forager's Guide to the Edible and Medicinal Roots, Tubers, Corms, and Rhizomes of North America*. Rochester, VT: Healing Arts Press, 1995.

lis, Barbara W., and Fern Marshall Bradley, eds. *The Organic Gardener's Handbook of Natural Insect and Disease Control: A Complete Problem-Solving Guide to Keeping Your Garden and Yard Healthy without Chemicals.* Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1996.

pel, Thomas J. *Participating in Nature: Thomas J. Elpel's Guide to Primitive Living Skills.* Pony, MT: HOPS Press, 1999.

nery, Carla. *The Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book*. Seattle, WA: Sasquatch Books, 1998.

———. *The Encyclopedia of Country Living: An Old-Fashioned Recipe Book,* 10th edition.

Seattle, WA: Sasquatch Books, 2008.

ıergy Systems and Design. “The Stream Engine.” Available at http://www.microhydropower.com. Accessed April 2000.

ıvironmental Building News. “Cement and Concrete: Environmental Considerations.” *Environmental Building News*, vol. 2, no. 2, March/April 1993.

ıstein, Gerald, M.D. *Healing Visualizations: Creating Health Through Imagery*. New York: Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, 1989.

ans, Ianto, Michael G. Smith, and Linda Smiley. *The Hand-Sculpted House: A Practical and Philosophical Guide to Building a Cob Cottage.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2002.

ving, Rex A. *Power with Nature: Alternative Energy Solutions for Homeowners*. Masonville, CO: PixyJack Press, 2006.

rber, Dr. M. Paul. *The Micro Silver Bullet.* Houston, TX: Professional Physicians Publishing Health Services, 1998.

rnham, A. B. *Home Tanning and Leather Making Guide.* Columbus, OH: Fur-Fish-Game, 1959.

ltwell, Ray. *Small-Scale Poultry Keeping: A Guide to Free-Range Poultry Production*. New York: Faber and Faber, 1992.

ıch, Richard. *Welder’s Handbook: A Complete Guide to Mig, Tig, Arc, and Oxyacetylene Welding*. New York: Penguin Putnam, 1997.

———. *Welder’s Handbook: A Guide to Plasma Cutting, Oxyacetylene, ARC, MIG, and TIG Welding*. New York: Penguin Group, 2007.

ınnery, Tim. *The Weather Makers: How Man Is Changing the Climate and What It Means for Life on Earth*. New York: Atlantic Monthly Press, 2005.

rgey, William W., M.D., ed. *Wilderness Medical Society Practice Guidelines*. Guilford, CT: Globe Pequot Press, 1999.

———. *Wilderness Medicine: Beyond First Aid*. Guilford, CT: Globe Pequot Press, 1999.

ster, Steven, Roger Torey Peterson, and James A. Duke, Ph.D. *A Field Guide to Medicinal Plants: Eastern and Central North America*. Peterson Field Guide Series. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1999.

x News. “Man Claims Skin Treatment Turned Face Permanent Blue.” December 20, 2007. Available at http://www.foxnews.com/story/0,2933,317564,00.html. Accessed January 2008.

iedman, Kenneth, Ph.D. *The New Silver Solution*. Alpine, UT: American Biotech Labs, 2006.

kuoka, Masanobu. *The One-Straw Revolution*. Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1978.

———. *The Road Back to Nature: Regaining the Paradise Lost*. Tokyo and New York: Japan Publications, 1987.

he) Gardeners and Farmers of Terre Vivante. *Preserving Food without Freezing or Canning: Traditional Techniques Using Salt, Oil, Sugar, Alcohol, Vinegar, Drying, Cold Storage, and*

Lactic Fermentation. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2007.

ırten, M.O., N.D., D.C. *The Health Secrets of a Naturopathic Doctor*. West Nyack, NY: Parker Publishing, 1967.

———. *The Magic of Advanced Body Manipulation for Home and Professional Use*. San Jose, CA: Maximillian World Publishers, 1983.

———. *The Natural and Drugless Way for Better Health*. New York: Arco Publishing, 1973.

ıskin, Ina May. *Spiritual Midwifery.* Summertown, TN: Book Publishing Company, 2002.

:lbspan, Ross. *The Heat Is On*. Reading, MA: Perseus Books, 1997.

:rshon, David. *Low Carbon Diet: A 30 Day Program to Lose 5000 Pounds.* Woodstock, NY: Empowerment Institute, 2006.

ll, Paul G., Jr. *Pocket Guide to Wilderness Medicine and First Aid*. Camden, ME: Ragged Mountain Press, 1997.

ngery, David J. *The Charcoal Foundry*. Rogersville, MO: David J. Gingery Publishing, 1983.

ngery, Vincent R. *The Secrets of Building an Alcohol-Producing Still*. Rogersville, MO: David J. Gingery Publishing, 1994.

pe, Paul. *Wind Energy Basics: A Guide to Small and Micro Wind Systems*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1999.

———. *Wind Power for Home and Business: Renewable Energy for the 1990s and Beyond*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1993.

———. *Wind Power: Renewable Energy for Home, Farm and Business*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2004.

rardet, Herbert. *Creating Sustainable Cities (Schumacher Briefing, #2).* Totnes, Devon, UK: Green Books Ltd., 1999.

adwell, Malcolm. *Blink: The Power of Thinking Without Thinking*. New York: Little, Brown and Company, 2005.

obal Footprint Network. "Ecological Footprint: Overview." Global Footprint Network, October, 2006. Available at http://www.footprintnetwork.org/gfn_sub.php?content=footprint_overview. Accessed March 2008.

ɔddard Institute for Space Studies. "Global Land-Ocean Temperature Index in .01 C." Available at http://data.giss.nasa.gov/gistemp/tabledata/GLB.Ts+dSST.txt.AccessedOctober2007.

ɔlden Genesis Company. *Solar Electric Design Guide,* 1999.

ɔnzales, Laurence. *Deep Survival: Who Lives, Who Dies, and Why*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2004.

ɔre, Al. *An Inconvenient Truth: The Planetary Emergency of Global Warming and What We Can Do about It.* Emmaus, PA: Rodale Books, 2006.

:ant, Bruce. *Encyclopedia of Rawhide and Leather Braiding*. Centreville, MD: Cornell Maritime

Press, 1972.

———. *How to Make Cowboy Horse Gear*. Centreville, MD: Cornell Maritime Press, 1956.

'een, James. *The Herbal Medicine Maker's Handbook: A Home Manual*. Berkeley, CA: Crossing Press, 2000.

'ohman, Joann S. *Keeping a Family Cow.* Dixfield, ME: Coburn Farm Press, 2000.

'osso, Alicia. *The Everything Soapmaking Book: Recipes and Techniques for Creating Colorful and Fragrant Soaps.* Cincinnati, OH: Adams Media, F and W Publications, 2007.

ıelberth, Cedar Rose, and Dan Chiras. *The Natural Plaster Book:Earth, Lime and Gypsum Plasters for Natural Homes.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2003.

ıgliotta, Guy."Health Concerns Grow over Herbal Aids." *Washington Post*, March 19, 2000.

ıdley, Josie, and Carol Staudacher. *Hypnosis for Change*. New York: New Harbinger Publications, 1996.

ılacy, Beth, and Dan Halacy. *Cooking with the Sun: How to Build and Use Solar Cookers.* Lafayette, CA: Morning Sun Press, 1992.

ılfpenny, James C. *A Field Guide to Mammal Tracking in North America.* Boulder, CO: Johnson Books, 1986.

ıll, Charles A. S., et al. *Provisional Results from EROI Assessments.* Syracuse, NY: State University of New York, College of Environmental Science and Forestry, 2008. From a pre-publication copy (per author). Now published as a series of on-line articles on *The Oil Drum*. Available at http://www.theoildrum.com/tag/charles_hall.

ımmond, D. Corydon, ed. *Handbook of Hypnotic Suggestions and Metaphors*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1990.

ındal, Kathleen A., M.D., and the American Red Cross. *The American Red Cross First Aid and Safety Handbook*. New York: Little, Brown and Company, 1992.

ınsen, James. "Climate Change: Why We Can't Wait." *The Nation*, May 7, 2007. Available at http://www.alternet.org/environment/50795. Accessed March 2008.

ırdin, Garrett. "The Tragedy of the Commons." *Science*, December 13, 1968. Available at http://www.garretthardinsociety.org/articles/art_tragedy_of_the_commons.html. Accessed March 2008.

ırner, Michael J., Ph.D. *The Way of the Shaman.* San Francisco, CA: Harper San Francisco, 1990.

ırney, Corbin. *The Way It Is: One Water . . . One Air . . . One Mother Earth*. Nevada City, CA: Blue Dolphin Publishing, 1995.

ırrington, H.D. *Edible Native Plants of the Rocky Mountains*. Albuquerque, NM: University of New Mexico Press, 1998.

ırrow, Lisa. *What Can I Do?: An Alphabet for Living.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2004.

ɹrtmann, Thom. *The Last Hours of Ancient Sunlight: The Fate of the World and What We Can Do Before It's Too Late*. New York: Crown Publishing Group, 2004.

———. *The Last Hours of Ancient Sunlight: Waking Up to Personal and Global Transformation*. Northfield, VT: Mythical Books, 1998.

———. *The Prophet's Way: Touching the Power of Life*. Northfield, VT: Mythical Books, 1997.

ɹrvey, Mark. *The National Outdoor Leadership School's Wilderness Guide: The Classic Handbook, Revised and Updated*. New York: Fireside, a division of Simon and Schuster, 1999.

ɹsluck, Paul N. *Metal Working: A Book of Tools, Materials and Processes for the Handyman*. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1907 (reprinted 1994).

ɹvens, Ronald A., and Catherine R. Walters. *Hypnotherapy Scripts: A Neo-Ericksonian Approach to Persuasive Healing*. New York: Brunner/Mazel Publishers, 1989.

ɹwken, Paul. *The Ecology of Commerce.* New York: Collins Business, 1993.

ɹwken, Paul, Amory Lovins, and L. Hunter Lovins. *Natural Capitalism: Creating the Next Industrial Revolution.* Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1999.

ɹwkins, David R., M.D., Ph.D. *Power vs. Force: The Hidden Determinants of Human Behavior*. Carlsbad, CA: 2002.

ɹynes, N. Bruce, D.V.M. *Keeping Livestock Healthy: A Veterinary Guide to Horses, Cattle, Pigs, Goats and Sheep*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1994.

ɛede, Richard and the staff of the Rocky Mountain Institute. *Homemade Money: How to Save Energy and Dollars on Your Home.* Amherst, NH: Brick House Publishing Company, 1995.

ɛinberg, Richard. *The Oil Depletion Protocol: A Plan to Avert Oil Wars, Terrorism and Economic Collapse*. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

———.*The Party's Over: Oil, War and the Fate of Industrial Societies,* 2nd ed. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2005.

———. *Power Down: Options and Actions for a Post-Carbon World*. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2004.

ɛllweg, Paul. *Flintknapping—The Art of Making Stone Tools*. Canoga Park, CA: Canyon Publishing Company, 1984.

ɛmenway, Toby. *Gaia's Garden: A Guide to Home-Scale Permaculture*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2000.

ɛnderson, Donald R., M.D., M.P.H., and Deborah Mitchell. *Colostrum, "Nature's Healing Miracle."* Salt Lake City, UT: CNR Publications, 1999.

scox, Gardner D., M.E. *Henley's Formulas for Home and Workshop*. New York: Avenel Books, 1927 (reprinted 1979).

ɔbson, Phyllis. *Making Homemade Soaps and Candles*. Charlotte, VT: Garden Way Publishing, 1974.

ɔffman, David. *The Complete Illustrated Holistic Herbal: A Safe and Practical Guide to Making*

and Using Herbal Remedies. Rockport, MA: Element Books, 1996.

———. *Holistic Herbal: A Safe and Practical Guide to Making and Using Herbal Remedies.* Hammersmith, London, England: Thorsons, 2003.

———. *Medical Herbalism: The Science and Practice of Herbal Medicine.* Rochester, VT**:** Healing Arts Press, 2003.

›gue, John. *The Millennium Book of Prophecy: 777 Visions and Predictions from Nostradamus, Edgar Cayce, Gurudjieff, Tamo-san, Madame Blavatsky, the Old and New Testament Prophets and 89 Others*. San Francisco, CA: Harper San Francisco, 1997.

›lland, Geoffrey B., and James J. Provenzano. *The Hydrogen Age: Empowering a Clean-Energy Future.* Layton, UT: Gibbs Smith, 2007.

›lmgren, David. *Permaculture: Principles and Pathways beyond Sustainability*. Hepburn, Victoria, Australia: Holmgren Design Services, 2002.

›me Energy Magazine* editors. *No Regrets Remodeling: Creating a Comfortable, Healthy Home That Saves Energy*. Berkeley, CA: Energy Auditor and Retrofitter, 1997.

›nervogt, Tanmaya. *The Power of Reiki: An Ancient Hands-On Healing Technique.* New York: Henry Holt and Company, 1998.

›wden, Daniel. "Deforestation: The Hidden Cause of Global Warming." *The Independent*, May 14, 2007. Available at http://environment.independent.co.uk/climate_change/article2539349.ece. Accessed May 2007.

ınter, Roy C. *The Art of Hypnosis: Mastering Basic Techniques.* Dubuque, IA: Kendall/Hunt Publishing Company, 2000.

ıpping, Carol. *Stocking Up III: The All-New Edition of America's Classic Preserving Guide.* Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1986.

ıtchins, Alma R. *Indian Herbology of North America.* Boston, MA: Shambala Publications, 1991.

ıtton, Primrose, and Jerry Ongerth, Ph.D. "Performance Evaluation of Ten Commercially Available Portable Water Filters." Department of Water Engineering, University of New South Wales, Australia, February 1997.

ıtton, William. *Coming Earth Changes: The Latest Evidence*. Virginia Beach, VA: A.R.E. Press, 1996.

ırra, Corazon, D.M.D., H.M.D., and David A. Edwards, M.D., H.M.D. *A Primer of Biotoxicology.* San Juan, Manila, Philippines: MG Reprographics, 1996.

ɡerman, Sandra. *Soul Retrieval: Mending the Fragmented Self.* San Francisco, CA: Harper San Francisco, 1991.

ɡram, Colin. *The Drinking Water Book: A Complete Guide to Safe Drinking Water.* Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press, 1991.

ːernational Correspondence Schools. *Secrets of Green-Sand Casting*. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1903 (reprinted 1983).

ɣersin, Allen R. *Micro-Hydropower Sourcebook: A Practical Guide to Design and Implementation in Developing Countries*. Arlington, VA: NRECA International Foundation, 1986.

ɛke, Dave, and Eric Toensmeier. *Edible Forest Gardens: Ecological Vision and Theory for Temperate Climate Permaculture—Volume One: Vision and Theory*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2005.

———. *Edible Forest Gardens: Ecological Design and Practice for Temperate Climate Permaculture—Volume Two: Design and Practice*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2005.

ɛkson, Hildur, and Karen Svensson, eds. *Ecovillage Living:Restoring the Earth and Her People*. Totnes, Devon, UK: Green Books Ltd., 2002.

ɛob, Stanley W., M.D., Ronald M. Lawrence, M.D., and Martin Zucker. *The Miracle of MSM: The Natural Solution for Pain*. New York: Berkley Publishing Group, Division of Penguin Putnam, 1999.

ɑvons, John. *The Complete 21-Bed Biointensive Mini-Farm*. Willits, CA: Ecology Action, 1987.

———. *How to Grow More Vegetables (and Fruits, Nuts, Berries, Grains, and Other Crops) Than You Ever Thought Possible on Less Land Than You Can Imagine*. Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press, 1995.

ffrey, Kevin. *Independent Energy Guide: Electrical Power for Home, Boat and RV*. Ashland, MA: Orwell Cove Press, 1995.

ɑkins, Joseph C. *The Humanure Handbook: A Guide to Composting Human Manure.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2005.

ɑsen, Derrick, and George Draffan. *Strangely Like War: The Global Assault on Forests*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2003.

hnson, Dusty. *Saddlemaking: Lessons in Construction, Repair, and Evaluation*. Loveland, CO: Saddleman Press, 2005.

hnston, David. *Green Building: Your Edge in the Home Building Marketplace* (DVD). Boulder, CO: What's Working, 2006.

hnston, David, and Kim Master. *Green Remodeling: Changing the World One Room at a Time.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2004.

nas, Wayne B., M.D. and Jennifer Jacobs, M.D., M.P.H. *Healing with Homeopathy: The Doctor's Guide.* New York: Warner Books, 1998.

nes, Franklin Day, John A. Newell, and Holbrook L. Horton. *Ingenious Mechanisms for Designers and Inventors*. New York: Industrial Press, 1977.

y, W. Brugh, M.D. *Joy's Way: A Map for the Transformational Journey: An Introduction to the Potentials for Healing with Body Energies.* New York: J. P. Tarcher, 1979.

ɯchadorian, James. *The Passive Solar House: The Complete Guide to Heating and Cooling Your Home.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2006.

———. *The Passive Solar House: Using Solar Design to Heat and Cool Your Home.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1997.

ıhn, Lloyd. *Home Work: Handbuilt Shelter.* Bolinas, CA: Shelter Publications, 2004.

ıtz, Sandor Elix. *Wild Fermentation: The Flavor, Nutrition, and Craft of Live-Culture Foods.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2003.

ıy, Jane, and David Perlman. "Definitive Climate Research Released." *San Francisco Chronicle*, November 18, 2007.

:arny, Cresson H. *Nuclear War Survival Skills: Updated and Expanded 1987 Edition*. Cave Junction, OR: Oregon Institute of Science and Medicine, 1999.

:mp, William H. *The Renewable Energy Handbook: A Guide to Rural Energy Independence, Off-Grid and Sustainable Living*. Tamworth, Ontario, Canada: Aztext Press, 2005.

———. *Biodiesel, Basics and Beyond: A Comprehensive Guide to Production and Use for the Home and Farm.* Tamworth, Ontario, Canada: Aztext Press, 2006.

:mper, Donald W. *Healthwise Handbook: A Self-Care Guide for You.* Boise, ID: Healthwise Publications, 2006.

:nnedy, Joseph, Michael G. Smith, and Catherine Wanek, editors. *The Art of Natural Building: Design, Construction, Resources.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2002.

:yes, Ken Jr. *The Hundredth Monkey*. St. Mary, KY: Vision Books, 1981.

ndstedt, Paul. *American Farmstead Cheese: The Complete Guide to Making and Selling Artisan Cheeses.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2005.

ng, Bruce, P.E. *Buildings of Earth and Straw: Structural Design for Rammed Earth and Straw-Bale Architecture*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1996.

———. *The Design of Straw Bale Buildings: The State of the Art.* San Rafael, CA: Green Building Press, 2006.

———. *Making Better Concrete: Guidelines to Using Fly Ash for Higher Quality, Eco-Friendly Structures.* San Rafael, CA: Green Building Press, 2005.

ng, Doug. *The Emergency–Disaster Survival Guidebook*. Sandy, UT: ABC Preparedness Company, 1994.

ng, Paul. *The Complete Yurt Handbook*. Maple Grove, Bath, UK: Eco-Logic Books, 2001.

are, Michael T. *Blood and Oil: The Dangers and Consequences of America's Growing Dependency on Imported Petroleum.* New York: Metropolitan Books, 2004.

ober, Kelly. *A Guide to Raising Pigs: Care, Facilities, Breed Selection, Management*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1997.

ɔlbert, Elizabeth. *Field Notes from a Catastrophe: Man, Nature, and Climate Change.* New York: Bloomsbury Publishing, 2006.

ɔmp, Richard J., Ph.D. *Practical Photovoltaics*. Ann Arbor, MI: Aatec Publications, 1995.

ɔppel, Tom. *Powering the Future: The Ballard Fuel Cell and the Race to Change the World*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1999.

ɔuhoupt, Rudy. *The Shop Wisdom of Rudy Kouhoupt*. Traverse City, MI: Village Press, 1989.

ieger, Dolores, Ph.D., R.N. *The Therapeutic Touch: How To Use Your Hands to Help or to Heal.* New York: Simon and Schuster, 1992.

upp, Fred, and Miriam Horn. *Earth: The Sequel: The Race to Reinvent Energy and Stop Global Warming*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 2008.

ibler-Ross, Elisabeth. *On Death and Dying: What the Dying Have to Teach Doctors, Nurses, Clergy and Their Own Families.* New York: Simon and Schuster, 1997.

ınstler, James Howard. *The Long Emergency: Surviving the Converging Catastrophes of the Twenty-First Century*. New York: Atlantic Monthly Press, 2005.

cinski, Paul, and Michael Bergeron. *Serious Straw Bale: A Home Construction Guide for All Climates.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2000.

Franiere, Sharon. "Europe Takes Africa's Fish, and Boatloads of Migrants Follow." *The New York Times,* January 14, 2008.

/ailable at http://www.nytimes.com/2008/01/14/world/africa/14fishing.html?scp=2sq=st=nyt. Accessed January 2008. Laherrère, Jean. "Forecast of Oil and Gas Supply to 2050" *Petrotech 2003: Hydrocarbons Resources*, 2003. Available at http://www.oilcrisis.com/laherrere/Petrotech090103.pdf. Accessed May 2008.

ncaster, Brad. *Rainwater Harvesting for Drylands: Volume 1, Guiding Principles to Welcome Rain into Your Life and Landscape.* Tucson, AZ: Rainsource Press, 2006.

ne, Tom. *Solar Hot Water Heating: Lessons Learned, 1977 to Today.* Gainesville, FL: ECS Solar Energy Systems, 2008.

ppé, Frances Moore. *Getting a Grip: Clarity, Creativity and Courage in a World Gone Mad.* Cambridge, MA: Small Planet Media, 2007.

ubin, Reginald, and Gladys Laubin. *The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction, and Use*. Norman, OK: University of Oklahoma Press, 1989.

yton, Peggy. *Emergency Food Storage Survival Handbook:Everything You Need to Know to Keep Your Family Safe in a Crisis.* New York: Three Rivers Press, 2002.

adbeater, Eliza. *Handspinning*. Mountain View, MO: Select Books, 1983.

an, Geoffrey. "Global Warming Is Three Times Faster Than Worst Prediction." *The Independent*, June 4, 2007. Available at http://environment.independent.co.uk/climate_change/article2609305.ece. Accessed June 2007.

Baron, Wayne. *Preparation for Nuclear Disaster*. Commack, NY: Nova Science Publishers, 1998.

eb, Stephen, Ph.D. *The Coming Economic Collapse: How You Can Thrive When Oil Costs $200 a Barrel*. New York: Warner Business Books, 2006.

nz-Porter, Louisa. *Growing Medicinal Herbs in as Little as Fifty Square Feet.* Willits, CA: Ecology Action, 1995.

vine, Stephen, and Ondrea Levine. *Who Dies? An Investigation of Conscious Living and Conscious Dying.* New York: Anchor Books/ Doubleday, 1989.

vitt, B. Blake, ed. *"*Cell Towers: Wireless Convenience or Environmental Hazard?" *Proceedings of the "Cell Towers Forum"State of the Science/State of the Law.* Sheffield, MA: Safe Goods/ New Century Publishing, 2001.

———. *Electromagnetic Fields: A Consumer's Guide to the Issues and How to Protect Ourselves.* Lincoln, NE: iUniverse, Inc., 2007.

vitt, B. Blake, and Theresa Morrow. "Electrosmog: What Price Convenience?" *WestView,* July 2007.

y, Beth M. *The Forgotten Nutrient MSM: On Our Way Back to Health with Sulfur*. Detroit Lakes, MN: B. L. Publications, 1998.

———. *Immune System Control: Colostrum and Lactoferrin.* Detroit Lakes, MN: B. L. Publications, 2000.

gon, Linda, ed. *Homespun Handknit: Caps, Socks, Mittens and Gloves.* Loveland, CO: Interweave Press, 1988.

ndeburg, Michael R., P.E. *Civil Engineering Reference Manual for the PE Exam*, 10th edition. Belmont, CA: Professional Publications, 2005.

———. *FE Review Manual: Rapid Preparation for the General Fundamentals of Engineering Exam*. Belmont, CA: Professional Publications, 2000.

———. *Mechanical Engineering Reference Manual for the PE Exam*, 12th edition. Belmont, CA: Professional Publications, 2000.

ndemann, Peter A. "Colloidal Silver: A Closer Look". Available at http://www.elixa.com/silver/lindmn.htm. Accessed August, 2006.

nden, Eugene. *The Winds of Change: Climate, Weather, and the Destruction of Civilizations*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2006.

on, Dirk Van. *The Family Cow*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1983.

vins, Amory B., E. Kyle Datta, Odd-Even Bustnes, Jonathan G. Koomey, and Nathan J. Glasgow. *Winning the Oil Endgame:Innovation for Profits, Jobs, and Security.* Snowmass, CO: Rocky Mountain Institute, 2005.

wenhaupt, Harris. "A Revolutionary Innovation in Traditional Earth Construction," Phoenix, AZ. Available at http://www.castearth.com/cedesc.html. Accessed March 17, 2000.

cas, Rex A. *Men in Crisis: A Study of a Mine Disaster*. New York: Basic Books, 1969.

cas, Winafred B. *Regression Therapy: A Handbook for Professionals—Vol. 1, Past-Life Therapy*. Crest Park, CA: Deep Forest Press, 1993.

———. *Regression Therapy, a Handbook for Professionals—Volume 2, Special Instances of*

Altered State Work. Crest Park, CA: Deep Forest Press, 1993.

ıdwig, Art. *Create an Oasis with Greywater: Choosing, Building and Using Greywater Systems —Includes Branched Drains.* Santa Barbara, CA; Oasis Design, 2006.

———. *Create an Oasis with Greywater: Your Complete Guide to Managing Greywater in the Landscape*. Santa Barbara, CA: Oasis Design, 2000.

———. *Water Storage: Tanks, Cisterns, Aquifers, and Ponds for Domestic Supply, Fire, and Emergency Use—Includes How to Make Ferrocement Water Tanks,* Santa Barbara, CA; Oasis Design, 2005.

ıgt, P. van der, and A. van den Dobbelsteen. "An Environmental, Financial and Practical Assessment of Bamboo as a Building Material for Bearing Structures*." Proceedings of the 7th World Bamboo Congress*, New Delhi, India, 2004.

acfarlan, Allan A. *Exploring the Outdoors with Indian Secrets: Skills for Observing and Matching Wits with Nature*. Mechanicsburg, PA: Stackpole Books, 1982.

ackenzie, David, and Ruth Goodwin, eds. *Goat Husbandry*. New York: Faber and Faber, 1996.

aclean's. "Kobe Earthquake," January 30, 1995. Available at http://thecanadianencyclopedia.com/index.cfm?PgNm=TCEParams=M1ARTM0010379.Downloaded9/22/2007. Magwood, Chris, Peter Mack, and Tina Therrien. *More Straw Bale Building: A Complete Guide to Designing and Building with Straw.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2005.

arshall, Stewart. *Building Small Cupola Furnaces*. Lopez Island, WA: Marshall Machine and Engineering Works, 1996.

artin, Jeanne Marie, and Zoltan P. Rona, M.D. *Complete Candida Yeast Guidebook: Everything You Need to Know About Prevention, Treatment, and Diet*, 2nd edition. New York: Three Rivers Press, 2000.

astny, Lisa. "Melting of Earth's Ice Cover Reaches New High." Worldwatch News Brief #00-02, 2000.

athot, R. E. *Gas Engines and Producer-Gas Plants*. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1905.

azria, Edward. *The Passive Solar Energy Book: Expanded Professional Edition.* Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1979.

cCann, John D. *Build the Perfect Survival Kit*. Iola, WI: KP Books, 2005.

cCarthy, Michael, and Clifford Coonan, "The Great Pall of China." *The Independent*, April 25, 2007. Available at http://environment.independent.co.uk/climate_change/article2483839.ece. Accessed April 2007.

cCaughey, Betsy. "To Catch a Deadly Germ." *New York Times*, November 14, 2006.

cClure, Susan, and Sally Roth, eds. *Companion Planting: Rodale's Successful Organic Gardening.* Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1994.

cDaniel, Dr. Robert S. *Essentially Soap: The Elegant Art of Handmade Soap Making, Scenting,*

Coloring and Shaping. Iola, WI: Krause Publications, 2000.

cDonough, William, and Michael Braungart. *Cradle to Cradle:Remaking the Way We Make Things.* New York: North Point Press, a division of Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 2002.

cHenry, Paul Graham, Jr. *Adobe: Build It Yourself*. Tucson, AZ: The University of Arizona Press, 1998.

cKibben, Bill. *Deep Economy: The Wealth of Communities and the Durable Future.* New York: Times Books, Henry Holt and Company, 2007.

———. *The End of Nature.* New York: Anchor Books, Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group, 1989.

cLean, Frank Allen. *The Shop Wisdom of Frank McLean*. Traverse City, MI: Village Press, 1992.

cPherson, John. "*How To" Build This Log Cabin for $3000*. Randolph, KS: Prairie Wolf, 1993.

cPherson, John, and Geri McPherson. *Primitive Wilderness Living and Survival Skills.* Randolph, KS: Prairie Wolf, 1993.

———.*Primitive Wilderness Skills, Applied and Advanced.* Randolph, KS: Prairie Wolf, 1999.

eadows, Donella H., Dennis L. Meadows, and Jorgen Randers. *Beyond the Limits: Confronting Global Collapse, Envisioning a Sustainable Future*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1993.

eadows, Donella H., Dennis L. Meadows, Jorgen Randers, and William W. Behrens III. *The Limits to Growth*. New York: Signet Books, 1975.

eadows, Donella, Jorgen Randers, and Dennis Meadows. *Limits to Growth: The 30-Year Update*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2004.

ehl-Madronna, Lewis, M.D. *Coyote Medicine: Lessons from Native American Healing.* New York: Fireside Books, 1998.

eitzner, Laura, and Martin Price. *Amaranth to Zai Holes: Ideas for Growing Food Under Difficult Conditions.* North Fort Myers, FL: E C H O Publications, 1996.

endonca, Miguel. "Energy, Ethics and Feed-In Tariffs." *World Future Council*, April 30, 2007. Available at http://www.celsias.com/2008/01/10/energy-ethics-and-feed-in-tariffs/. Accessed March 2008.

erkel, Jim. *Radical Simplicity: Small Footprints on a Finite Earth.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2003.

erritt, Frederick S., M. Kent Loftin, and Jonathan T. Ricketts, eds. *Standard Handbook for Civil Engineers*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1995.

etcalf, Mark. *Colloidal Silver: Making and Using Your Own.* Forest Grove, OR: Silver Solutions, 1998.

ettler, John J., and Elayne Sears. *Basic Butchering of Livestock and Game.* Pownal, VT: Storey Publishing/Garden Way Publishing, 1989.

eyerowitz, Steve, Beth Robbins, and Michael Parman. *Juice Fasting and Detoxification: Use the*

Healing Power of Fresh Juice to Feel Young and Look Great. Summertown, TN: Book Publishing Company, 2002.

ichael, Valerie. *The Leatherworking Handbook: A Practical Illustrated Sourcebook of Techniques and Projects.* Strand, UK: Cassell Wellington House, 1995.

iller, Emmet E., M.D. *Deep Healing: The Essence of Mind/Body Medicine.* Carlsbad, CA: Hay House, 1997.

iller, Jeremy. "Boston's Earthquake Problem." *Boston Globe*, May 28, 2006. Available at http://www.boston.com/news/globe/magazine/articles/2006/05/28/bostons_earthquake_problem/. Accessed July 2007.

indell, Earl L., R.Ph., Ph.D. *The MSM Miracle: Enhance Your Health with Organic Sulfur*. Lincolnwood, IL: Keats, 1997.

inogue, Coll, and Robert Sanderson. *woodfired Ceramics:Contemporary Practices.* Philadelphia, PA: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2000.

ollison, Bill. *Permaculture: A Designer's Manual.* Tyalgum, New South Wales, Australia: Tagari Publications, 1999.

onzert, Leonard. *Practical Distiller*. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1889 (reprinted 1987).

orrow, Rosemary. *Earth User's Guide to Permaculture,* 2nd edition. Pymble, New South Wales, Australia: Kangaroo Press, 2006.

ountaineers, The. *Mountaineering: Freedom of the Hills*. Seattle, WA: Mountaineers Books, 2003.

owat, Farley. *People of the Deer*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1952.

ueller, John. "Is There Still a Terrorist Threat?: The Myth of the Omnipresent Enemy." *Foreign Affairs,* The Council on Foreign Relations, September/October 2006. Available at http://www.foreignaffairs.org/20060901facomment85501/john-mueller/is-there-still-a-terrorist-threat-the-myth-of-the-omnipresent-enemy.html?mode=print. Accessed March 2008.

ufson, Steven, and Blaine Harden. "Coal Can't Fill World's Burning Appetite." *Washington Post*, March 20, 2008. Available at http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/content/article/2008/03/19/AR2008031903859_pf.html. Accessed March 2008.

uller, Brigitte, and Horst Gunther. *The Complete Book of Reiki Healing*. Mendocino, CA: Life Rhythm, 1995.

uller, Robert. *Most of All, They Taught Me Happiness*. Garden City, NY: Doubleday Company, 1978.

ullin, Ray C. *House Wiring with the National Electrical Code:Based on the 1999 National Electrical Code*. Albany, NY: Delmar Publishers, 1999.

urray, Michael T., N.D. *Chronic Candidiasis: Your Natural Guide to Healing with Diet, Vitamins, Minerals, Herbs, Exercise, and Other Natural Methods*. New York: Three Rivers Press, 1997.

urray, Michael T., and Joseph E. Pizzorno, N.D. *The Encyclopedia of Natural Medicine*, 2nd edition. Rocklin, CA: Prima Publishing, 1997.

yhrman, Matts, and S. O. MacDonald. *Build It with Bales: A Step-by-Step Guide to Straw-Bale Construction,* Version Two. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1998.

yss, Caroline, Ph.D. *Anatomy of the Spirit: The Seven Stages of Power and Healing.* New York: Harmony Books, 1996.

———. *Why People Don't Heal and How They Can.* New York: Harmony Books, 1997.

AIHC (North American Industrial Hemp Council) "Hemp Facts," downloaded from http://naihc.org/hemp_information/hemp_facts.html March 2000.

uiman, Ingrid. "Artemisia annua." Available at http://www.cancersalves.com/botanical_approaches/individual_herbs/artemisia.html. Accessed January, 2008.

———. *Cancer Salves: A Botanical Approach to Treatment***.** Poulsbo, WA: Seventh Ray Press, 1999.

———. "Chaparral." Available at http://www.cancersalves.com/botanical_approaches/individual_herbs/chaparral.html. Accessed January, 2008.

ıttrass, Brian, and Mary Altomare. *The Natural Step for Business:Wealth, Ecology and the Evolutionary Corporation*, 2nd edition. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2001.

:w England Solar Electric. *The Solar Electric Independent Home Book.* Worthington, MA: New England Solar Electric, 1995.

:w York Times.* "Experts Mostly Back Way U.S. Reacted in TB Case." July 5, 2007. Available at http://www.nytimes.com/2007/07/05/us/05tb.html?_r=1oref=slogin. Accessed July 2007.

———."Study Sees 'Global Collapse' of Fish Species." November 3, 2006. Available at http://www.nytimes.com/2006/11/03/science/03fish.html. Accessed November 2008.

———. "TB Patient Is Isolated after Taking Two Flights." May 30, 2007. Available at http://www.nytimes.com/2007/05/30/us/30tb.html?ex=1338177600en=24ae4499127b619cei=5088partner=rssnytemc=rss. Accessed May 2007.

———. "Until All the Fish Are Gone." January 21, 2008. Available at http://www.nytimes.com/2008/01/21/opinion/21mon1.html?scp=1sq=st=nyt. Accessed January 2008.

grosh, Leon I. *Low Fire: Other Ways to Work in Clay*. Worcester, MA: Davis Publications, 1980.

›rthrup, Christiane, M.D. *Women's Bodies, Women's Wisdom:Creating Physical and Emotional Health and Healing*. New York: Bantam Books, 2006.

›erg, Erik, Franklin D. Jones, and Holbrook L. Horton. *Machinery's Handbook*, 21st edition.

New York: Industrial Press, Inc., 1982.

›erg, Erik, Franklin D. Jones, Holbrook L. Horton, Henry H. Ryffel, and Christopher J. McCauley, editors. *Machinery's Handbook*, 26th ed. New York: Industrial Press, 2000.

———. *Machinery's Handbook*, 27th edition. New York: Industrial Press, 2004.

ły, Penelope. *The Complete Medicinal Herbal.* New York: Dorling Kindersley, 1993.

kowski, William, Sheila Daar, and Helga Olkowski. *Common-Sense Pest Control: Least-Toxic Solutions for Your Home, Garden, Pets and Community*. Newtown, CT: Taunton Press, 1991.

———. *The Gardener's Guide to Common-Sense Pest Control*. Newtown, CT: Taunton Press, 1996.

sen, Cynthia. *ESSIAC: A Native Herbal Cancer Remedy.* Pagosa Springs, CO: Kali Press, 1998.

sen, Frederick L. *The Kiln Book: Materials, Specifications and Construction*. Iola, WI: Krause Publications, 2000.

›penheimer, Betty. *The Candlemaker's Companion: A Complete Guide to Rolling, Pouring, Dipping, and Decorating Your Own Candles*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1997.

·lov, Dimitry. *Reinventing Collapse: The Soviet Example and American Prospects.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2008.

hl, Greg. *Biodiesel: Growing a New Energy Economy.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2005.

———. *The Citizen-Powered Energy Handbook: Community Solutions to a Global Crisis.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2007.

———. *Natural Home Heating: The Complete Guide to Renewable Options.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2003.

tagonia. "Rag Seller" (archive article). Available at http://www.patagonia.com. Accessed March 2000.

arce, Fred. *When Rivers Run Dry: Water—The Defining Crisis of the Twenty-First Century*. Boston, MA: Beacon Press, 2006.

arson, David. *The Natural House Catalog: Everything You Need to Create an Environmentally Friendly Home*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1996.

lletier, R. Kenneth. *Mind as Healer, Mind as Slayer: Discover the Life and Death Link Between Stress and Serious Illness . . . and What You Can Do About It*. New York: Dell Publishing, 1992.

rkins, John. *Shape Shifting: Shamanic Techniques for Global and Personal Transformation.* Rochester, VT: Destiny Books, 1997.

rko, Sandra J., Ph.D., C.C.N. *The Homeopathic Treatment of Influenza: Surviving Influenza Epidemics and Pandemics Past, Present, and Future with Homeopathy—Special Bird Flu Edition*. San Antonio, TX: Benchmark Homeopathic Publications, 2005.

rrin, Noel, and Daniel C. Beard. *Shelters, Shacks and Shanties:How to Build Them*. New York: The Lyons Press, 1999.

terson, Roger Tory, and Lee A. Peterson. *Field Guide to Edible Wild Plants: Eastern and Central North America.* Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1982.

eiffer, Dale Allen. *Eating Fossil Fuels: Oil, Food, and the Coming Crisis in Agriculture.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

———. *The End of the Oil Age.* Lulu.com, 2004.

———. "Natural Gas Crisis." From The Wilderness Publications, June 23, 2003. Available at http://www.fromthewilderness.com/free/ww3/062303_nat_gas_crisis.html. Accessed December 2007.

att, Anne McGinn. "Water-Borne Killers." *World Watch*, March/ April 1996.

ug Power. "Benefits for Consumers." Available at http://www.plugpower.com/about. Accessed May 2000.

ole, William, ed. *The Heart of Healing.* Atlanta GA: Turner Publishing, 1993.

pulation Information Network (POPIN) of the United Nations Population Division. "World Population Growth From Year 0 to Stabilization," June 7, 1994. Available at gopher://gopher.undp. org:70/00/ungophers/popin/wdtrends/histor. Accessed April 2000.

stel, Sandra. *Pillar of Sand: Can the Irrigation Miracle Last?* New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1999.

end, Ashley Davis, A.C.S.W. *Transcending Loss: Understanding the Lifelong Impact of Grief and How to Make It Meaningful.* New York: The Berkley Publishing Group, 1997.

gliese, Michael, C.M.R., C.M.T. *The Homeowner's Guide to Mold*. Kingston, MA: RS Means Company, Reed Construction Data, 2006.

le, Walter, ed. *Solar Hydrogen Chronicles*. Richmond, CA: H-Ion Solar, 1998.

hme, Lotta. *Leather: Preparation and Tanning by Traditional Methods*. Portland, OR: Caber Press, 1996.

mbach, Glenn. "Energy: A Report from the Field, Lessons Learned and Choices for Future Transportation." From keynote presentation at *Whatcha Gonna Drive: The Future of Personal Transportation* conference in Grass Valley, California, on November 19, 2006. Available at http://files.meetup.com/315249/Energy%20Report%20from%20the%20Field%20-%20FCP.pdf. Downloaded March 2008.

mlow, Bob, and Benjamin Nusz. *Solar Water Heating: A Comprehensive Guide to Solar Water and Space Heating Systems.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

ven, Lee. *Hands On Spinning.* Loveland, CO: Interweave Press, 1987.

ad, Piers Paul. *Alive: The Story of the Andes Survivors*. New York: Avon Books, 1992.

ader's Digest. *Back To Basics: How to Learn and Enjoy Traditional American Skills.* Pleasantville, NY: The Reader's Digest Association, 1999.

———. *Complete Guide to Sewing: Step-By-Step Techniques for Making Clothes and Home*

Furnishings. Pleasantville, NY: Reader's Digest Association, 1995.

———. *The New Complete Do-It-Yourself Manual*. Pleasantville, NY: Reader's Digest Association, 1991.

gister, Richard. *Ecocities: Rebuilding Cities in Balance with Nature.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

illy, Harold J. D., Ph.T., D.S., and Ruth Hagy Brod. *The Edgar Cayce Handbook for Health through Drugless Therapy*. Virginia Beach, VA: A.R.E. Press, 1975.

nders, Eileen, N.D. *Food Additives, Nutrients, and Supplements A-To-Z: A Shopper's Guide.* Santa Fe, NM: Clear Light Publishers, 1999.

ıeingold, Howard, ed. *The Millennium Whole Earth Catalog:Access to Tools and Ideas for the Twenty-First Century*. San Francisco, CA: Harper San Francisco, 1994.

chards, Matt. *Deerskins into Buckskins: How to Tan with Natural Materials.* Rexford, MT: Backcountry Publishing, 2004.

cketts, Jonathan T., M. Kent Loftin, and Frederick S. Merritt, editors. *Standard Handbook for Civil Engineers*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006.

ghetti, Maggie. *Crocheting in Plain English.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 1988.

———. *Knitting in Plain English.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 2007.

tter, Keith. *The Residential Hydropower Book*. Nevada City, CA: Sierra Solar Systems, 1986.

ɔbbins, John. *Diet for a New America: How Your Food Choices Affect Your Health, Happiness and the Future of Life on Earth.* Tiburon, CA: H.J. Kramer, 1998.

———. *Reclaiming Our Health: Exploding the Medical Myth and Embracing the Source of True Healing.* Tiburon, CA: H. J. Kramer, 1996.

ɔberts, Paul. *The End of Oil: On the Edge of a Perilous New World.* New York: Houghton Mifflin Company, 2004.

ɔbertson, Dougal. *Survive the Savage Sea*. New York: Bantam Books, 1973.

ɔbinson, Lynn A. *Divine Intuition: Your Guide to Creating a Life You Love*. New York: DK Publishing, 2001.

ɔbinson, Raoul A. *Return to Resistance: Breeding Crops to Reduce Pesticide Dependence*. Davis, CA: AgAccess, 1996.

ɔcky Mountain Institute. *Green Developments* (CD-ROM, Vers. 2.0). Snowmass, CO: Rocky Mountain Institute, 2001.

ɔddick, Anita. *Troubled Water: Saints, Sinners, Truths and Lies about the Global Water Crisis*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2004.

ɔlling Thunder, edited by Carmen Sun Rising Pope. *Rolling Thunder Speaks: A Message for Turtle Island*. Santa Fe, NM: Clear Light Publishers, 1999.

ɔsen, Gary, Ph.D. *Environmentally Friendly Mold Remediation Techniques That Significantly*

Reduce Childhood Asthma. Tampa, FL: Hope Academic Press, 2007.

›sen, Gary, Ph.D., and James Schaller, M.D. *When Traditional Medicine Fails: Your Guide to Mold Toxins.* Tampa, FL: Hope Academic Press, 2006.

›sen, Sidney, ed. *My Voice Will Go with You: The Teaching Tales of Milton H. Erikson*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 1991.

›senberg, Robert, and August Hand. *Electric Motor Repair*. Albany, NY: Delmar Publishers, 1986.

›y, Rob. *Earth-Sheltered Houses: How to Build an Affordable Underground Home.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

———. *Timber Framing for the Rest of Us: A Guide to Contemporary Post and Beam Construction.* Gabriola Island, BC, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2004.

ıdolf, John Collin. "The Warming of Greenland." *New York Times*, January 16, 2007. Available at http://www.nytimes.com/2007/01/16/science/earth/16gree.html?_r=1oref=slogin. Accessed January 2007.

ınyon, Linda. *A Survival Acre*. Phoenix, AZ: APOA Books, 1995.

chs, Allan, D.C., C.C.N. *The Authoritative Guide to Grapefruit Seed Extract: A Breakthrough in Alternative Treatment for Colds, Infections, Candida, Allergies, Herpes, and Many Other Ailments.* Mendocino, CA: LifeRhythm, 1997.

ck, Kevin. "Deadly Bacteria Found to Be More Common." *New York Times*, October 17, 2007.

laman, R. A. *Dictionary of Leather-Working Tools c. 1700–1950 and the Tools of Allied Trades*. Mendham, NJ: Astragal Press, 1996.

latin, Joel. *Pastured Poultry Profits: Net $25,000 in 6 Months on 20 Acres*. Swoope, VA: Polyface, 1996.

———. *Salad Bar Beef*. Swoope, VA: Polyface, 1996.

———. *You Can Farm: The Entrepreneur's Guide to Start and Succeed in a Farming Enterprise*. Swoope, VA: Polyface, 1998.

lvato, Joseph A. *Environmental Engineering and Sanitation*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

nds, David R. "Global Food Riots Turn Deadly." *Washington Times*, April 10, 2008.

rdone, Susan Breslow. "Sea Sick: The Norwalk Virus Strikes." *Your Guide to Honeymoons/Romantic Travel.* Available at http://www.honeymoons.about.com/od/cruising/a/Seasick.htm. Accessed December 2007.

haeffer, John. *Real Goods Solar Living Sourcebook: Your Complete Guide to Renewable Energy Technologies and Sustainable Living, Special 30th Anniversary Edition*. Hopland, CA: Gaim Real Goods, 2007.

haeffer, John (introduction), and Douglas R. Pratt, ed. *The Real Goods Solar Living Sourcebook: The Complete Guide to Renewable Energy Technologies and Sustainable Living.* White River

Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1999.

ience Daily. “Mayo Clinic Study Implicates Fungus as Cause of Chronic Sinusitis,” September 10, 1999. Available at http://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/1999/09/990910080344.htm. Accessed January, 2008.

ager, Ashley. “Steep Decline in Oil Production Brings Risk of War and Unrest, Says New Study.” *Guardian Unlimited*, October 22, 2007. Available at http://www.guardian.co.uk/oil/story/0%2C%2C2196435%2C00.html. Accessed October 2007.

MP (Suburban Emergency Management Project). “The Catastrophic 1953 North Sea Flood of the Netherlands.” January 11, 2006. Available at http://www.semp.us/publications/biot_reader.php?BiotID=317. Downloaded March 2008.

ymour, John. *The Self-Sufficient Life and How to Live It: The Complete Back-To-Basics Guide*. New York: DK Publishing, 2003.

aring Health From the Heart. *A First Aid Kit of the Future: The Beck Protocol.* Thousand Oaks, CA: Sharing From the Heart/ The Reality Zone, 2007.

earer, Harry. “New Orleanians Learn They Have to Help Themselves Rebuild after the Worst Disaster to Shatter Their World.” *San Francisco Chronicle*, August 26, 2007.

eldrake, Rupert. *A New Science of Life: The Hypothesis of Morphic Resonance*. Rochester, VT: Park Street Press, 1995.

ell, Scott. “Environmental Impacts of Cement and Flyash,” as reported in “Concrete, Flyash and the Environment—Proceedings.” *Environmental Building News*. Available at http://www.ebuild.com/Archives/Features/Flyash/shell.html. Accessed March 16, 2000.

igley, Joseph E., and Charles R. Mischke, eds. *Standard Handbook of Machine Design*, 3rd edition. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

urtleff, William, and Akiko Aoyagi. *Book of Tofu.* New York: Ballantine Books, 1992.

ebert, Al, Ph.D. *The Survivor Personality: Why Some People Are Stronger, Smarter, and More Skillful at Handling Life’s Difficulties . . . and How You Can Be Too.* New York: The Berkeley Publishing Group, 1996.

egel, Bernie, M.D. *Love, Medicine and Miracles: Lessons Learned about Self-Healing from a Surgeon’s Experience with Exceptional Patients*. New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1986.

erra Solar. “Design Center.” Available at http://www.sierrasolar.com/design/design. Accessed April 2000.

ler, Lyn. *The Basket Book: Over 30 Magnificent Baskets to Make and Enjoy*. New York: Sterling Publishing Company, 1988.

———. *A Basketmaker’s Odyssey: Over, Under, Around and Through—24 Great Basket Patterns from Easy Beginner to More Challenging Advanced*. Matthews, NC: Word Weaver’s Ink, 2007.

llin, John O. “The Blackout of 2003: Why We Fell Into the Heart of Darkness.” *Public Utilities Reports, Inc.*, September 15, 2003. Available at http://www.pur.com/pubs/4251.cfm. Accessed

October 2007.

lverfacts.com. “Silver Safety,” updated August 20, 2007. Available at http://www.silverfacts.com/safety.html. Downloaded January, 2008.

lverman, Harold M., Phar.M.D., ed. *The Pill Book: The Illustrated Guide to the Most Prescribed Drugs in the United States*. New York: Bantam Books, 2008.

nmons, Matthew R. *Twilight in the Desert: The Coming Saudi Oil Shock and the World Economy*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons, 2005.

nmons, Paula. *Raising Sheep the Modern Way*. Pownal, VT: Garden Way Publishing, Storey Communications, 1989.

———. *Storey’s Guide to Raising Sheep: Breeds, Care, Facilities***.** North Adams, MA: Storey Publishing, 2000.

nonton, O. Carl, M.D., Stephanie Matthews-Simonton, and James L. Creighton. *Getting Well Again*. New York: Bantam Books, 1992.

eeth, Matthew J., M.D. *Serve God, Save the Planet: A Christian Call to Action.* Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 2007.

nith, Edward C. *The Vegetable Gardener’s Bible: Discover Ed’s High-Yield W-O-R-D System for All North American Gardening Regions*. North Adams, MA: Storey Publishing, 2000.

nith, Jeffrey M. *Seeds of Deception: Exposing Industry and Government Lies about the Safety of the Genetically Engineered Foods You’re Eating.* Fairfield, IA: Yes Books, 2003.

nythe, Benjamin R. *Killing Cancer: The Jason Winters Story*. Las Vegas, NV: Vinton Publishing Company, 1993.

ell, Clarke, and Tim Callahan. *Building Green: A Complete How to Guide to Alternative Building Methods.* New York: Lark Books, a division of Sterling Publishing Company, 2005.

bon, Jack A. *Build a Classic Timber-Framed House*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1994.

bon, Jack, and Roger Schroeder. *Timber Frame Construction: All About Post-and-Beam Building*. Pownal, VT: Storey Books, 1984.

bsey, Mark D. “Managing Water in the Home: Accelerated Health Gains from Improved Water Supply.” World Health Organization, 2002. Available at http://whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2002/WHO_SDE_WSH_02.07.pdf. Downloaded February 2008.

lar Energy International. *Photovoltaics: Design and Installation Manual.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2004.

lomon, Shay. *Little House on a Small Planet: Simple Homes, Cozy Retreats, and Energy Efficient Possibilities*. Guilford, CT: The Lyons Press, 2006.

lomon, Steve. *Gardening When It Counts: Growing Food in Hard Times*. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

aulding, C.E., D.V.M. *Veterinary Guide for Animal Owners*. Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 2001.

eight, Charlotte F., and John Toki. *Hands in Clay*, 5th edition. Columbus, OH: McGraw-Hill,

2003.

igarelli, Jack A. *Crisis Preparedness Handbook: A Comprehensive Guide to Home Storage and Physical Survival*. Alpine, UT: Cross-Current Publishing, 2002.

ate of Illinois, Circuit Court of Cook County, Fourth Division. "Modified Opinion Upon Denial of Rehearing." November 27, 2002. Available at http://www.state.il.us/court/opinions/appellatecourt/2002/1stdistrict/november/html/1002507.htm Downloaded January 2008.

een, Athena Swentzell, and Bill Steen. *The Beauty of Straw Bale Homes*. White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2000.

een, Athena Swentzell, Bill Steen, and David Bainbridge, with David Eisenberg. *The Straw Bale House.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1994.

ein, Diane. *All Women Are Healers: A Comprehensive Guide to Natural Healing*. Watsonville, CA: The Crossing Press, 1990.

———. *Essential Reiki: A Complete Guide to an Ancient Healing Art.* Watsonville, CA: The Crossing Press, 1995.

ein, Kathy. *Beyond Recycling: A Re-User's Guide.* Santa Fe, NM: Clear Light Publishers, 1997.

ern, Nicholas. *The Economics of Climate Change: The Stern Review.* Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2007.

evens, James Talmage. *Making the Best of Basics: Family Preparedness Handbook*. Seattle, WA: Gold Leaf Press, 1997.

orey, John, and Martha Storey. *Storey's Basic Country Skills: A Practical Guide to Self-Reliance*. North Adams, MA: Storey Publishing, 1999.

oyke, Godo. *The Carbon Busters Home Energy Handbook: Slowing Climate Change and Saving Money.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2007.

ong, Steven J., with William G. Scheller. *The Solar Electric House: Energy for the Environmentally Responsive, Energy-Independent Home*. Still River, MA: Sustainability Press, 1993.

h, Nam P., and Arthur L. Turner. *Elements of the Mechanical Behavior of Solids*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1975.

mmit, Ginger, and Jim Widess. *The Complete Book of Gourd Craft: 22 Projects, 55 Decorative Techniques, 300 Inspirational Designs*. Asheville, NC: Lark Books, 1998.

n Bear and Waban Wind. *Black Dawn, Bright Day: Indian Prophecies for the Millennium That Reveal the Fate of the Earth.* New York: Fireside Books, 1992.

sanka, Sarah. *The Not So Big House: A Blueprint for the Way We Really Live*. Newtown, CT: Taunton Press, 2001.

stainable Agriculture Network. *Sustainable Agriculture Directory of Expertise,* 3rd edition. Burlington, VT: Sustainable Agriculture Publications, University of Vermont, 1996.

ncronos Design. *Building with Awareness: The Construction of a Hybrid Home* (DVD). Corrales, NM: Syncronos Design, 2006.

wrell, Paul. *Camping Wilderness Survival: The Ultimate Outdoors Book*. Self-published, 1996.

bbetts, Charles. *Self-Hypnosis and Other Mind Expanding Techniques.* Glendale, CA: Westwood Publishing Company, 1997.

rtzakian, Peter. *A Thousand Barrels a Second: The Coming Oil Break Point and the Challenges Facing an Energy Dependent World.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006.

eobald, Robert. *Reworking Success: New Communities at the Millennium*. Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 1997.

eodosakis, Jason, Barry Fox, and Brenda D. Adderly. *The Arthritis Cure: The Medical Miracle That Can Halt, Reverse, and May Even Cure Osteoarthritis*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1997.

eophilus, translated by John G. Hawthorne and Cyril Stanley Smith. *On Divers Art: The Foremost Medieval Treatise on Painting, Glassmaking and Metalwork.* Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 1979.

omas, Sharon, and Marcia Zalbowitz. "Fuel Cells: Green Power." Los Almos, NM: Los Alamos National Laboratory. Available at http://www.education.lanl.gov/resources/fuelcells. Accessed May 2000.

omas, Steven, and George P. Looby, D.V.M. *Backyard Livestock:Raising Good, Natural Food for Your Family*. Woodstock, VT: The Countryman Press, 2007.

ompson, Frank Charles, D.D., Ph.D. *The Thompson Chain Reference Bible: New International Version*. Indianapolis, IN: *Kirkbride Bible Company,* 1983.

bbets, Joe M. "Adobe Surfing the Chinese Way." *Adobe Builder*, Spring 1997.

———. *The Earthbuilder's Encyclopedia* (CD-ROM). Bosque, NM: Southwest Solar Adobe, 2001.

———. "World's Largest Earth Block Project Doing Well at Loreto Bay, Baja California Sur, Mexico." *Adobe Builder*, Issue #12, 2007. (Chapter 7 quotation includes additional comments from personal conversation between the author and Joe Tibbets.) Tierney, Kathleen J., and Goltz, James D. *Emergency Response:Lessons Learned from the Kobe Earthquake*. Disaster Research Center, 1997.

erra, Michael, L.Ac. O.M.D. *The Way of Chinese Herbs.* New York: Pocket Books, 1998.

———. *The Way of Herbs.* New York: Pocket Books, 1998.

lford, Gregory L. *Edible and Medicinal Plants of the West*. Missoula, MT: Mountain Press Publishing, 1997.

ensmeier, Eric. *Perennial Vegetables: From Artichoke to 'Zuiki' Taro, a Gardener's Guide to Over 10 Delicious, Easy-to-Grow Edibles.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 2007.

uber, Tijn, and Kim Ridley. "Could Homeopathy Prevent a Pandemic?" *Ode Magazine,* January

2006.

ask, Crissy. *It's Easy Being Green: A Handbook for Earth-Friendly Living.* Layton, UT: Gibbs Smith, 2006.

oy, Jack. *Wood-Fired Stoneware and Porcelain*. Iola, WI: Krause Publications, 1995.

ıderwood, John. "Fire Resistant Details: Studying the Houses That Survived the 1993 Laguna Beach Fire Storm Yields Lessons in Building to Withstand the Heat." FineHomebuilding.com. Available at http://www.taunton.com/finehomebuilding/how-to/articles/fire-resistant-details.aspx. Accessed August 2007.

ıion of Concerned Scientists (UCS). "World Scientists' Warning to Humanity," Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1992. Available at http://www.ucsusa.org/resources/warning.html. Accessed September 4, 2000.

S. Bureau of Census, International Data Base. "Total Midyear Population for the World: 1950–2050." Available at http://www.census.gov/ipc/www/worldpop.html. Accessed December 29, 1999.

S. Census Bureau. "U.S. and World Population Clocks – POPClocks" Available at http://www.census.gov/main/www/popclock.html. Accessed December 7, 2007.

S. Navy. *U.S. Navy Foundry Manual.* Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1989.

ınderhaeghe, Lorna R., and Patrick J. D. Bouic, Ph.D. *The Immune System Cure: Optimize Your Immune System in 30 Days—The Natural Way.* New York: Kensington Publishing Company, 1999.

ɔnolia, Carol, and Kelly Lerner. *Natural Remodeling for the Not-So-Green House: Bringing Your Home into Harmony with Nature.* New York: Lark Books, a division of Sterling Publishing Company, 2006.

dal, John. "Global Food Crisis Looms as Climate Change and Fuel Shortages Bite." *The Guardian*, November 2, 2007. Available at http://www.guardian.co.uk/environment/2007/nov/03/food.climatechange. Accessed December 2007.

ɡue Knitting Magazine*, eds. *Vogue Knitting.* New York: Pantheon Books, 2002.

ɔrhis, Dan. "Portable Water Filters: A Designer's Perspective," Seattle, Washington, 1997. Available at http://www.marathonceramics.com/designrev.html. Accessed December 2, 1999.

ackernagel, Mathis et al. "Tracking the Ecological Overshoot of the Human Economy." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* (PNAS), vol. 99, no. 14, 2002. Available at http://www.pnas.org/cgi/reprint/142033699v1. Accessed March 2008.

ackernagel, Mathis, and William Rees. *Our Ecological Footprint:Reducing Human Impact on the Earth.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 1996.

agner, Rudolf, Ph.D. *Wagner's Chemical Technology*, trans. by William Crookes. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1988.

alker, John R. *Machining Fundamentals: from Basic to Advanced Techniques*. Tinley Park, IL:

Goodheart-Willcox, 2000.

ang, Michael, and May Wu. “Life-Cycle Analysis of Transportation Fuels With the GREET Model.” Center for Transportation Research, Argonne National Laboratory. Strategic Biofuels Policy Discussion Forum, Golden Colorado, August 16, 2007.

atkins, James C. Paul, and Andrew Wandless. *Alternative Kilns and Firing Techniques: Raku, Saggar, Pit, Barrel*. New York: Lark Books, a division of Sterling Publishing, 2001.

atson, Anne L. *Smart Soapmaking: The Simple Guide to Making Traditional Handmade Soap Quickly, Safely, and Reliably, or How to Make Luxurious Handcrafted Soaps for Family, Friends, and Yourself.* Olympia, WA: Shepard Publications, 2007.

eil, Andrew, M.D. *8 Weeks to Optimum Health: A Proven Program for Taking Full Advantage of Your Body’s Natural Healing Power*. New York: Alfred A Knopf, 2006.

eisman, Alan. *Gaviotas: A Village to Reinvent the World.* White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green Publishing Company, 1999.

eismann, Adam, and Katy Bryce. *Building with Cob: A Step-By-Step Guide.* Totnes, Devon, UK: Green Books, 2006.

eiss, Eric A., M.D. *A Comprehensive Guide to Wilderness and Travel Medicine*. Oakland, CA: Adventure Travel Kits, 1997.

———. *Wilderness 911: A Step-By-Step Guide for Medical Emergencies and Improvised Care in the Backcountry.* Seattle, WA**:** Mountaineers Books, 1998.

erner, David, Carol Thuman, and Jane Maxwell. *Where There Is No Doctor: A Village Health Care Handbook.* Berkeley, CA: Hesperian Foundation, 1992.

escott, David, ed. *Primitive Technology: A Book of Earth Skills*. Layton, UT: Gibbs Smith, 1999.

eygers, Alexander G. *The Complete Modern Blacksmith*. Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press, 1997.

hitefield, Patrick. *The Earth Care Manual: A Permaculture Handbook for Britain and other Temperate Climates*. East Meon, Hampshire, UK: Permanent Publications, 2004.

hittaker, John C. *Flintknapping: Making and Understanding Stone Tools.* Austin, TX: University of Texas Press, 1994.

hitten, Greg. *Herbal Harvest: Commercial Organic Production of Quality Dried Herbs.* Melbourne, Australia: Bloomings Books Pty Ltd, 2004.

igginton, Eliot, ed. *The Foxfire Book: Hog Dressing, Log Cabin Building, Mountain Crafts and Foods, Planting by the Signs, Snake Lore, Hunting Tales, Faith Healing, Moonshining*. New York: Anchor Books/Doubleday, 1972.

———. *Foxfire 2: Ghost Stories, Spring Wild Plant Foods, Spinning and Weaving, Midwifing, Burial Customs, Corn Shuckin’s, and Wagon Making*. New York: Anchor Books/ Doubleday, 1973.

———. *Foxfire 5: Iron Making, Blacksmithing, Flintlock Rifles, Bear Hunting*. New York: Anchor Books/Doubleday, 1979.

ikipedia. “Northeast Blackout of 2003.” Available at http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/2003_North_America_blackout. Accessed July 2007.

ilkerson, James A., M.D., ed. *Medicine for Mountaineering and Other Wilderness Activities*. Seattle, WA: The Mountaineers, 2001.

ilson, Alex. *Your Green Home: A Guide to Planning a Healthy, Environmentally Friendly New Home.* Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

ilson, Alex, and Mark Piepkorn, eds. *Green Building Products:The GreenSpec Guide to Residential Building Materials.* Brattleboro, VT: BuildingGreen, Inc., and Gabriola Island, British Columbia, Canada: New Society Publishers, 2006.

iseman, John. *The SAS Survival Handbook: How to Survive in the Wild, in Any Climate, on Land or at Sea.* London: Harper Collins Publishers, 1996.

oofenden, Ian, and Mick Sagrillo. “How to Buy a Wind-Electric System.” *Home Power*, no. 122, December 2007/January 2008. Available at http://www.homepower.com/view/?file=HP122_pg28_Woofenden. Accessed February 2008.

orld Health Organization. “Cumulative Number of Confirmed Cases of Avian Influenza A/(H5N1) Reported to WHO.” November 12, 2007. Available at http://www.who.int/csr/disease/avian_influenza/country/cases_table_2007_11_12/en/print.html, Accessed November 2007.

———. “Frequently Asked Questions—XDR-TB.” Available at http://www.who.int/tb/xdr/faqs/en/index.html, Accessed November 2007.

orldwatch Institute. *2007 State of the World: Our Urban Future.* New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2007.

———. *2008 State of the World: Innovations for a Sustainable Economy.* New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2008.

———. *Vital Signs 2006–2007: The Trends That Are Shaping Our Future.* New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2006.

———. *Vital Signs 2007–2008: The Trends That Are Shaping Our Future.* New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2007.

orthington, Amy. “The Radiation Poisoning of America.” *Idaho Observer*, October 7, 2007. Available at http://www.worldhealth.net/p/the-radiation-poisoning-of-america.html. Accessed January 2008.

right, F. B. *Distillation of Alcohol and De-Naturing*. Bradley, IL: Lindsay Publications, 1918 (reprinted 1994).

ırbrough, Raymond B. *Electrical Engineering Reference Manual for the PE Exam*. Belmont, CA: Professional Publications, 1997.

ɔung, Warren C., and Richard G. Budynas. *Roark’s Formulas for Stress and Strain*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

ıao, Xiaolan, C.M.D. *Ancient Healing for Modern Women: Traditional Chinese Medicine for All*

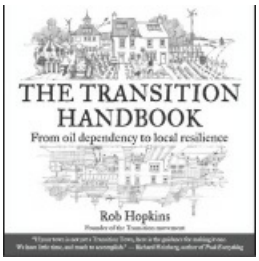
Phases of a Woman's Life. New York: Walker and Company, 2006.
mmerman, Elizabeth. *Knitting Without Tears.* New York: Fireside Books, 1973.

the politics and practice of sustainable living

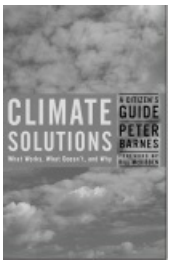
CHELSEA GREEN PUBLISHING

Chelsea Green Publishing sees books as tools for effecting cultural change, and seeks to empower citizens to participate in reclaiming our global commons and become its impassioned stewards. If you enjoyed *When Technology Fails,* please consider these other great books related to sustainable living.

Green Guides 6-pack
ISBN 978-1-60358-034-2
Paper • $44.95

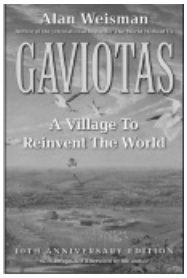


The Transition Handbook: From Oil Dependency to Local Resilience
ROB HOPKINS
ISBN 978-1-900322-18-8
Paper • $24.95

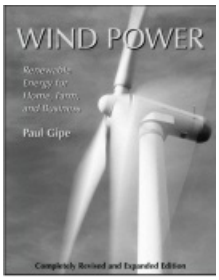


Climate Solutions:
A Citizen's Guide

PETER BARNES
ISBN 978-1-60358-005-2
Paper • $9.95



Gaviotas: A Village to Reinvent the World, 10th Anniversary Edition
ALAN WEISMAN
ISBN 978-1-60358-056-4
Paper • $16.95



Wind Power: Renewable Energy for Home, Farm, and Business
PAUL GIPE
ISBN 978-1-931498-14-2
Paper • $50.00

Biodiesel: Growing a New Energy Economy, Second Edition
GREG PAHL
ISBN 978-1-933392-96-7
Paper • $19.95

For more information or to request a catalog,
visit **www.chelseagreen.com**or
call toll-free **(800) 639-4099**.

CHELSEA
GREEN
PUBLISHING
the politics and practice of sustainable living